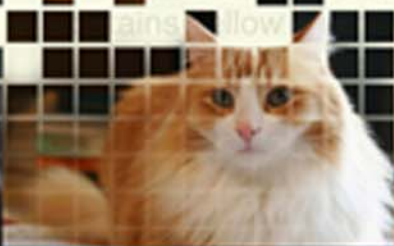


An Illustrated Guide to

# Veterinary Medical Terminology

Third Edition



Janet Romich

Wing

Cranium

Vertebrae

Spine

Thorax

Abdomen

Pelvis

Legs

Hooves

Claws

Teeth

Gums

Salivary glands

Stomach

Intestines

Bladder

Uterus

Vagina

Penis

Scrotum

Testes

Prostate

Urethra

Rectum

Anus

Perineum

Perianal area

Anal sacs

Rectal glands

Rectal ampulla

Rectal pouch

Rectal diverticulum

Rectal prolapse

Rectal stricture

Rectal neoplasia

Rectal cancer

Rectal polyps

Rectal adenomas

Rectal carcinomas

Rectal sarcomas

Rectal lymphomas

Rectal melanomas

Rectal leiomyomas

Rectal leiomyosarcomas

Proxim

epiphy

Physis

Metap

Distal

epiphy

Metap

Physis

Distal

epiphy

Metap

Physis

Distal

epiphy

Metap

Physis

Distal

epiphy

Metap

Physis

Distal

epiphy

Metap

Physis

Distal

epiphy

Metap

# AN ILLUSTRATED GUIDE TO VETERINARY MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

THIRD EDITION

JANET AMUNDSON ROMICH, DVM, MS



---

Australia • Brazil • Japan • Korea • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States

**An Illustrated Guide to Veterinary  
Medical Terminology, Third Edition****Janet Amundson Romich, DVM, MS**Vice President, Career and Professional  
Editorial: Dave Garza

Director of Learning Solutions: Matthew Kane

Acquisitions Editor: Benjamin Penner

Managing Editor: Marah Bellegarde

Senior Product Manager: Darcy M. Scelsi

Editorial Assistant: Scott Royael

Vice President, Career and Professional  
Marketing: Jennifer McAvey

Marketing Director: Debbie Yarnell

Marketing Coordinator: Jonathan Sheehan

Production Director: Carolyn Miller

Production Manager: Andrew Crouth

Senior Content Project Manager:  
Elizabeth C. Hough

Senior Art Director: David Arsenault

Technology Project Manager: Benjamin Knapp

© 2009, 2006, 2000 Delmar, Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at  
**Professional & Career Group Customer Support, 1-800-648-7450**

For permission to use material from this text or product,  
submit all requests online at **[cengage.com/permissions](http://cengage.com/permissions)**

Further permissions questions can be e-mailed to  
**[permissionrequest@cengage.com](mailto:permissionrequest@cengage.com)**

Library of Congress Control Number: 2008938145

ISBN-13: 978-1-4354-2012-0

ISBN-10: 1-4354-2012-8

**Delmar**5 Maxwell Drive  
Clifton Park, NY 12065-2919  
USA

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada  
by Nelson Education, Ltd.

For your lifelong learning solutions, visit **[delmar.cengage.com](http://delmar.cengage.com)**Visit our corporate website at **[cengage.com](http://cengage.com)****Notice to the Reader**

Publisher does not warrant or guarantee any of the products described herein or perform any independent analysis in connection with any of the product information contained herein. Publisher does not assume, and expressly disclaims, any obligation to obtain and include information other than that provided to it by the manufacturer. The reader is expressly warned to consider and adopt all safety precautions that might be indicated by the activities described herein and to avoid all potential hazards. By following the instructions contained herein, the reader will assume all risks in connection with such instructions. The publisher makes no representations or warranties of any kind, including but not limited to, the warranties of fitness for particular purpose or merchantability, nor are any such representations implied with respect to the material set forth herein, and the publisher takes no responsibility with respect to such material. The publisher shall not be liable for any special, consequential, or exemplary damages resulting, in whole or part, from the readers' use of, or reliance upon, this material.

# CONTENTS

## Preface vii

## 1 Ready, Set, Go / 1

Introduction to Medical Terminology 1  
Anatomy of a Medical Term 2  
Prefixes 3  
Combining Vowels 3  
Combining Forms 3  
Suffixes 4  
Analyzing Medical Terms 5  
What Did You Say? 5  
General Pronunciation Guidelines 6  
Does Spelling Count? 6  
Review Exercises 7  
Crossword Puzzles 10  
Word Search 14  
Case Study 15

## 2 Where, Why, and What? / 17

In Position 17  
The Plane Truth 18  
Studying 19  
You Have Said a Mouthful 20  
The Hole Truth 20  
Lying Around 22  
Moving Right Along 22  
Setting Our Cytes Ahead 22  
It's in the Genes 22  
Grouping Things Together 25  
1, 2, 3, Go 27  
Review Exercises 31  
Crossword Puzzles 35  
Label the Diagrams 37  
Case Study 40

## 3 Meat and Bones / 41

Functions of the Skeletal System 41  
Structures of the Skeletal System 42  
Boning Up 45  
Structural Support 54  
Test Me: Skeletal System 54  
Pathology: Skeletal System 56  
Procedures: Skeletal System 60  
Functions of the Muscular System 61  
Structures of the Muscular System 61  
Show Some Muscle 63  
What's In a Name? 63  
Test Me: Muscular System 64  
Pathology: Muscular System 65  
Procedures: Muscular System 65  
Review Exercises 65  
Crossword Puzzle 70  
Word Search 71  
Label the Diagrams 72

## 4 Head to Toe (and All Parts in Between) / 73

Two Words, Same Meaning 73  
Common Anatomical Terms for Equine Species 74  
Common Anatomical Terms for Cattle 76  
Common Anatomical Terms for Goats 78  
Common Anatomical Terms for Sheep 80  
Common Anatomical Terms for Swine 81  
Common Anatomical Terms for Dogs and Cats 82  
Review Exercises 85  
Crossword Puzzle 87  
Word Searches 88  
Label the Diagrams 92

## 5 What Is in a Name? / 97

What Is Your Name? 97  
Review Exercises 101  
Crossword Puzzle 104

## 6 Gut Instincts / 105

Functions of the Digestive System 105  
Structures of the Digestive System 106  
Digestion 120  
Test Me: Digestive System 121  
Pathology: Digestive System 123  
Procedures: Digestive System 129  
Review Exercises 131  
Crossword Puzzles 134  
Word Search 136  
Label the Diagrams 137  
Case Studies 138

## 7 Null and Void / 141

Functions of the Urinary System 141  
Structures of the Urinary System 142  
Urine 145  
Test Me: Urinary System 145  
Pathology: Urinary System 148  
Procedures: Urinary System 150  
Review Exercises 151  
Crossword Puzzles 154  
Label the Diagrams 156  
Case Studies 157

## 8 Have a Heart / 161

Functions of the Cardiovascular System 161  
Structures of the Cardiovascular System 162  
Test Me: Cardiovascular System 171  
Pathology: Cardiovascular System 172  
Procedures: Cardiovascular System 177  
Review Exercises 178



Crossword Puzzle	181
Label the Diagrams	182
Case Studies	183
<b>9 A Breath of Fresh Air / 185</b>	
Functions of the Respiratory System	185
Structures of the Respiratory System	186
Breathing	192
Test Me: Respiratory System	192
Pathology: Respiratory System	194
Procedures: Respiratory System	196
Review Exercises	197
Crossword Puzzle	200
Label the Diagrams	201
Case Studies	202
<b>10 Skin Deep / 203</b>	
Functions of the Integumentary System	203
Structures of the Integumentary System	204
Test Me: Integumentary System	210
Pathology: Integumentary System	211
Procedures: Integumentary System	217
Review Exercises	217
Crossword Puzzle	221
Label the Diagrams	222
Case Studies	223
<b>11 The Great Communicator / 225</b>	
Functions of the Endocrine System	225
Structures of the Endocrine System	226
Test Me: Endocrine System	230
Pathology: Endocrine System	231
Procedures: Endocrine System	232
Review Exercises	233
Crossword Puzzle	237
Label the Diagrams	238
Case Studies	239
<b>12 1 + 1 = 3 (or More) / 241</b>	
The Reproductive System	241
Functions of the Male Reproductive System	242
Structures of the Male Reproductive System	242
Functions of the Female Reproductive System	245
Structures of the Female Reproductive System	245
The Estrous Cycle	247
Mating, Pregnancy, and Birth	249
Test Me: Reproductive System	253
Pathology: Reproductive System	253
Procedures: Reproductive System	255
Review Exercises	257
Crossword Puzzle	261
Case Studies	262
<b>13 Nerves of Steel / 265</b>	
Functions of the Nervous System	265
Structures of the Nervous System	265
Central Nervous System	268
Peripheral Nervous System	272
Test Me: Nervous System	275
Pathology: Nervous System	276
Procedures: Nervous System	280
Review Exercises	281
Crossword Puzzle	285
Case Studies	286
<b>14 Seeing and Hearing / 289</b>	
Functions of the Eye	289
Structures of the Eye	290
Vision	293
Test Me: Eyes	293
Pathology: Eyes	295
Procedures: Eyes	297
Functions of the Ear	298
Structures of the Ear	298
Mechanism of Hearing	300
Mechanism of Equilibrium	300
Test Me: Ears	301
Pathology: Ears	301
Procedures: Ears	303
Review Exercises	303
Crossword Puzzles	307
Case Studies	309
<b>15 Feed and Protect Me / 311</b>	
Hematologic System	311
Test Me: Hematologic System	316
Pathology: Hematologic System	316
Lymphatic System	318
Immune System	320
Test Me: Immune and Lymphatic Systems	322
Pathology: Immune and Lymphatic Systems	323
Procedures: Immune and Lymphatic Systems	323
Oncology	323
Test Me: Oncology	324
Pathology: Oncology	324
Procedures: Oncology	325
Review Exercises	326
Crossword Puzzle	330
<b>16 Testing Testing / 331</b>	
Basic Physical Examination	331
Laboratory Terminology	333
Basic Medical Terms	337
Pathogenic Organisms	337
Types of Diseases	337
Disease Terminology	339
Endoscopy	339
Centesis	339
Imaging Techniques	340
Review Exercises	344
Crossword Puzzle	348
<b>17 Drugs, Diseases, and Dissection / 351</b>	
Pharmacologic Terms	351
Surgical Terms	355
Review Exercises	362
Crossword Puzzle	365

## 18 Dogs and Cats / 367

Dogs and Cats 367  
 Anatomy and Physiology Terms 368  
 Breed-Related Terms 369  
 Descriptive Terms 370  
 Vaccinations of Dogs and Cats 371  
 Review Exercises 372  
 Crossword Puzzle 374  
 Case Studies 375

## 19 Horses, etc. / 379

Horses, Donkeys, Mules, and Ponies 379  
 Mode of Movement 380  
 Anatomy, Physiology, and Disease Terms 381  
 Markings 382  
 Equipment 384  
 Management Terms 384  
 Types of Horses 387  
 Terms for Unsoundness in Horses 388  
 Equine Vaccinations 388  
 Review Exercises 390  
 Crossword Puzzle 392  
 Case Studies 393

## 20 Make Room for the Ruminants / 395

Ruminants 395  
 Cattle 395  
 Sheep 401  
 Goats 403  
 Camelids 403  
 Vaccinations of Ruminants 404  
 Review Exercises 405  
 Crossword Puzzle 407  
 Case Studies 408

## 21 Hog Heaven / 411

Pigs 411  
 Equipment and Industry Terms 412  
 Swine Management Terms 414  
 Swine Vaccinations 414  
 Review Exercises 415  
 Crossword Puzzle 417  
 Case Studies 418

## 22 Birds of a Feather / 421

Birds 421  
 Anatomy and Physiology Terms 422  
 Poultry Terms 426  
 Pet Bird Terms 428  
 Ratite Terms 430  
 Review Exercises 431  
 Crossword Puzzle 433  
 Case Studies 434

## 23 All the Rest / 437

Laboratory Animals, Pocket Pets, and Reptiles 437  
 Rodents 442  
 Ferrets 447  
 Rabbits 448  
 Reptiles 450  
 Amphibians 453  
 Review Exercises 454  
 Crossword Puzzle 456  
 Case Studies 457

## Appendix A: Abbreviations / 463

## Appendix B: Plural Forms of Medical Terms / 469

Appendix C: Prefixes, Combining Forms,  
and Suffixes for Medical Terms / 471

## Index / 487





# PREFACE

## TO THE STUDENT

Medical terminology may seem like a foreign language to you. Many of the terms are unfamiliar, seem strange, or do not make sense. However, to communicate in the medical world, you need a thorough understanding of the language.

Most medical terms are based on word parts that already may be familiar to you. You may have heard words such as *appendicitis*, *gastritis*, and *tonsillectomy* or used them in the past. You may not realize how many medical terms you already know. Building on this foundation, new word parts will make learning medical terminology more logical.

This text and the accompanying materials simplify the process of learning medical terminology. Review the introductory sections so that you are familiar with the organizational scheme of the textbook and StudyWARE™. Once you become comfortable with the materials, you will find yourself learning medical terms faster than you ever imagined possible.

## Chapter Organization

The chapters in *An Illustrated Guide to Veterinary Medical Terminology, Third Edition*, are organized in the following fashion:

- Introduction to medical terms
- Anatomical foundations
- Body systems
- Species-specific chapters

Chapter 1 provides the basics of how medical terms are formed, analyzed, and defined. Chapter 2 provides terms used in everyday dialogue regarding positioning of animals and relationships between body parts. Chapters 3 and 4 discuss anatomical landmarks both internally (musculoskeletal system) and externally (common terms for landmarks on an animal's body). Chapter 5 consists of terms used in the animal industry to describe males and females of selected species and terms for their young and for groups of their species. Chapters 6 through 15 are organized by body systems. These chapters describe the anatomy of the body system; include clinical terms used in reference to it; and conclude with diagnostic tests, pathology, and procedures for the body system. Chapters 16 and 17 relate tests, procedures, and treatments used in the care of animals in the medical field. Chapters 18 through 23 are species-specific chapters that you can study independently to enhance your knowledge of a particular species or that your instructor

may incorporate into other chapters to assess your progress. Appendix A consists of tables of abbreviations, and Appendix B contains plural forms of medical terms. Appendix C lists prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes.

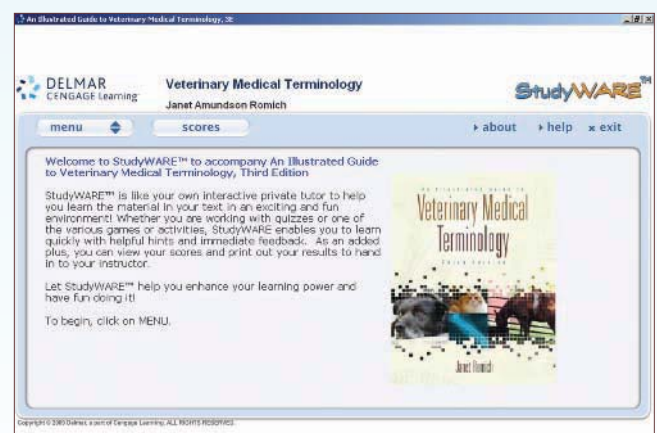
## How to Use StudyWARE™ to Accompany *An Illustrated Guide to Veterinary Medical Terminology, Third Edition*

The StudyWARE™ software helps you learn terms and concepts in *An Illustrated Guide to Veterinary Medical Terminology, Third Edition*. As you study each chapter in the text, make sure you explore the activities in the corresponding chapter of the software. Use StudyWARE™ as your own private tutor to help you learn the material in *An Illustrated Guide to Veterinary Medical Terminology, Third Edition*.

Getting started is easy. Install the software by inserting the CD-ROM into your computer's CD-ROM drive and following the on-screen instructions. When you open the software, enter your first and last name so the software can store your quiz results. Then choose a chapter from the menu to take a quiz or to explore one of the activities.

## Menus

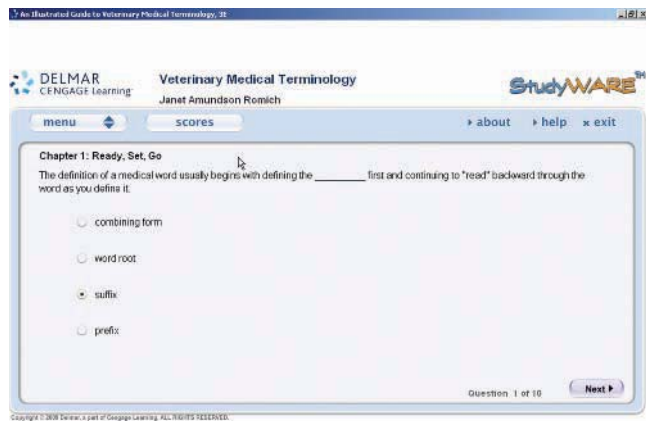
You can access the menus from wherever you are in the program. The menus include Quizzes and other Activities.



## QUIZZES

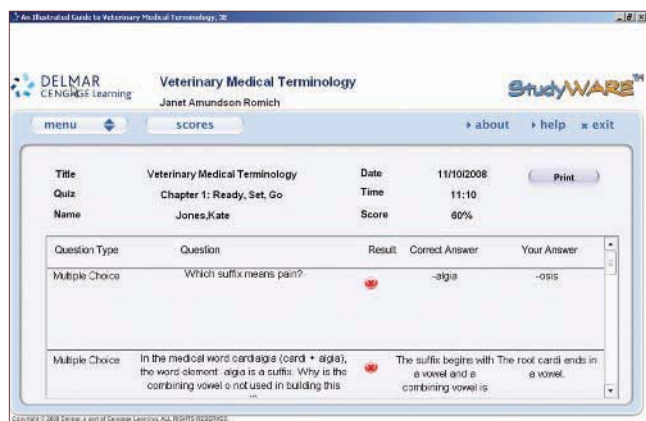
Quizzes are made up of multiple-choice questions. You can take the quizzes in practice mode and in quiz mode. Use practice mode to improve your mastery of the material. You have multiple

tries to get the answers correct. Instant feedback tells you whether you're right or wrong and helps you learn quickly by explaining why an answer was correct or incorrect. Use quiz mode when you are ready to test yourself and keep a record of your scores. In quiz mode, you have one try to get the answers right, but you can take each quiz as many times as you want.



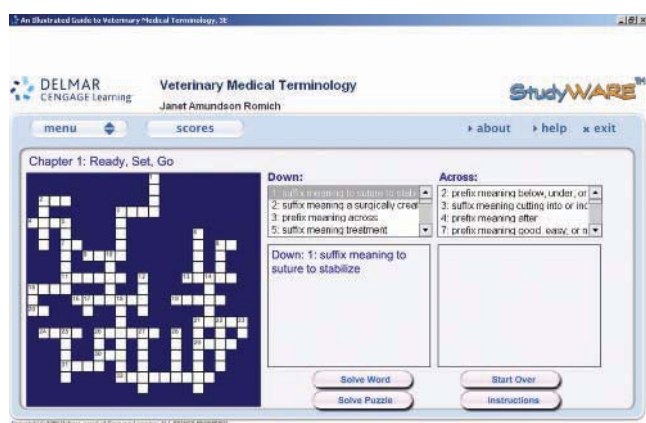
## SCORES

You can view your previous score for each quiz and print your results to hand in to your instructor.



## ACTIVITIES

Activities include image labeling, hangman, crossword puzzles, and flash cards. Have fun while increasing your knowledge!



## AUDIO LIBRARY

The StudyWARE™ Audio Library is a reference that includes audio pronunciations and definitions. Use the audio library to practice pronunciation and to review definitions for medical terms. You can browse terms by chapter or search by key word. Listen to pronunciations of the terms you select or listen to an entire list of terms.

Note: Instructors should expect students to master the terms in each section before they progress to the next section since the word parts will not be repeated in subsequent chapters. For example, the prefix *hypo-* may first appear in the gastrointestinal chapter but not be repeated in the endocrine chapter. However, words containing the prefix *hypo-* will be found in the endocrine chapter.

## TO THE INSTRUCTOR

An *eResource* to accompany *An Illustrated Guide to Veterinary Medical Terminology, Third Edition*, is available to help you with course instruction. The *eResource* contains an instructor's guide that provides answer keys for all exercises in the text, teaching tips, and activities to enhance your teaching of medical terminology. A test bank contains 1,000 questions in the following formats: multiple choice, short answer, and matching. An image library containing the images from the text can be used to create PowerPoint® slides, transparencies, or handouts for students. PowerPoint® presentations can be used to deliver lectures or to provide as handouts to students.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Special thanks to the following people who helped review this text and answered many questions regarding medical terminology throughout its development. Without their expertise, the text would not have been as complete.

**Kevin R. Berry, CVT**

Gaska Dairy Health Services, Columbus, WI

**Kay Bradley, BS, CVT**

Madison Area Technical College, Madison, WI

**Kenneth Brooks, DVM, Diplomate ABVP**

Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC, Lodi, WI

**Eric Burrough, DVM**

Kirkwood Community College, Cedar Rapids, IA

**Stephen J. Carleton, DVM**

Quinnipiac University, Connecticut

**Anne E. Chauvet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM—Neurology**

University of Wisconsin Veterinary Medical Teaching Hospital, Madison, WI

**Jane Clark, DVM**

Madison Area Technical College, Madison, WI

**Michael T. Collins, DVM, PhD**

University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine, Madison, WI

**Thomas Curro, DVM, MS**

Henry Doorly Zoo, Omaha, Nebraska

**Deb Donohoe, LATG**

Medical College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI

**Wendy Eubanks, CVT**

Delafield Small Animal Hospital, Delafield, WI

**Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT**

Poynette Veterinary Service, Inc., Poynette, WI

**Kelly Gilligan, DVM**

Four Paws Veterinary Clinic, LLC, Prairie du Sac, WI

**John H. Greve, DVM, PhD**

Iowa State University, Ames, IA

**Gerald Hackett, DVM**

California Polytechnic University, Pomona, CA

**Brain J. Heim, DVM**

Cedar Valley College, Lancaster, Texas

**Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD, Diplomate ACVIM, MRCVS**

Glasgow University, Scotland

**Linda Kratochwill, DVM**

Crowe-Goebel Veterinary Clinic, Scanlon, MN

**Amy Lang, RTR**

University of Wisconsin Veterinary Medical Teaching Hospital, Madison, WI

**Laura L. Lien, CVT, BS**

Moraine Park Technical College, Fond du Lac, WI

**Carole Maltby, DVM**

Maple Woods Community College, Kansas City, MO

**A. Edward Marshall, DVM, PhD**

Auburn University, Auburn, AL

**Sheila McGuirk, DVM, PhD, Diplomate ACVIM**

University of Wisconsin Veterinary Medical Teaching Hospital, Madison, WI

**James T. Meronek, DVM, MPH**

USDA-APHIS Veterinary Services Madison, WI

**David Morales, DVM**

Oklahoma State University, Oklahoma City, OK

**Karl Peter, DVM**

Foothill College, Los Altos Hills, CA

**Kathrine Polzin, BA, CVT**

University of Wisconsin Veterinary Medical Teaching Hospital, Madison, WI

**Stuart Porter, VMD**

Blue Ridge Community College, Weyers Cave, VA

**Teri Raffel, CVT**

Madison Area Technical College, Madison, WI

**Linda Sullivan, DVM**

University of Wisconsin Veterinary Medical Teaching Hospital, Madison, WI

**Laurie Thomas, BA, MA**

Clinicians Publishing Group/Partners in Medical Communications, Clifton, NJ

**Beth Uldal Thompson, VMD**

Veterinary Technician/Veterinary Learning Systems, Trenton, NJ

I also would like to express my gratitude to Beth Thompson, VMD, and Laurie Thomas, BA, MA, of Veterinary Learning Systems for their determination in advancing my writing skills through the publication of journal articles for *Veterinary Technician Journal*. Without their guidance I would not have honed my writing skills. I also would like to thank the many veterinary technician and laboratory animal technician students at Madison Area Technical College for their support and continued critique of the veterinary terminology course. A special thank-you goes to the 1998 veterinary technician and laboratory animal technician students at Madison Area Technical College, who learned terminology through my rough draft of the original text. Finally, I would like to thank the excellent staff at Cengage Delmar Learning and my family for their continued support.

## ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Dr. Janet Romich received her Bachelor of Science degree in Animal Science from the University of Wisconsin—River Falls and her Doctor of Veterinary Medicine and Master of Science degree from the University of Wisconsin—Madison. Currently, Dr. Romich teaches at Madison Area Technical College in Madison, Wisconsin, where she has taught and continues to teach a variety of science-based courses. Dr. Romich was honored with the Distinguished Teacher Award in 2004 for use of technology in the classroom, advisory and professional activities, publication list, and fund-raising

efforts. She received the Wisconsin Veterinary Technician Association's Veterinarian of the Year Award in 2007 for her contributions in educating veterinary technician students and promoting the use of veterinary technicians in the workplace. She is a member of the Biosafety Committee for a biopharmaceutical company, an IACUC member for a hospital research facility, and an advisory board member for a distance learning veterinary technician program. Dr. Romich authored the textbooks *Fundamentals of Pharmacology for Veterinary Technicians* and *Understanding Zoonotic Diseases*, as well as served as a coauthor on *Delmar's Veterinary Technician Dictionary*. Dr. Romich remains active in veterinary practice through her relief practice, where she works in both small- and mixed-animal practices.

## HOW TO USE THIS TEXT

*An Illustrated Guide to Veterinary Medical Terminology, Third Edition*, helps you learn and retain medical terminology using a logical approach to medical word parts and associations. Following are the keys to learning from this text.

### Illustrations

Complete with detailed labeling, the text's line drawings clarify key concepts and contain important information of their own. In addition to line drawings, photos are included to enhance the visual perception of medical terms and improve retention of medical terms and use of these terms in the real world. Review each illustration and photo carefully for easy and effective learning.

### Charts and Tables

Charts and tables condense material in a visually appealing and organized fashion to ensure rapid learning. Some tables include terms organized by opposites or body systems to facilitate relating the information to various situations.

### New Terms

New terms appear in bold type, followed by the pronunciation and definition.

## Pronunciation System

The pronunciation system is an easy approach to learning the sounds of medical terms. This system is not laden with linguistic marks and variables, ensuring that students do not get bogged down in understanding the key. Once students become familiar with the key, it is very easy for them to progress in speaking the medical language.

## Pronunciation Key

### PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

- Pronunciation guides for common words are omitted.
- Any vowel that has a dash above it represents the long sound, as in *ā hay*, *ē we*, *ī ice*, *ō toe*, and *ū unicorn*.
- Any vowel followed by an "h" represents the short sound, as in *ah apple*, *eh egg*, *ih igloo*, *oh pot*, and *uh cut*.
- Unique letter combinations are as follows: *oo boot*, *ər higher*, *oy boy*, *aw caught*, and *ow ouch*.

### OTHER PRONUNCIATION GUIDELINES

Word parts are represented in the text as prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes. The notation for a prefix is a word part followed by a hyphen. The notation for a combining form (word root and its vowel to ease pronunciation) is the root followed by a slash and its vowel, as in *nephhr/o*. The notation for a suffix is a hyphen followed by the word part. The terms *prefix*, *combining form*, and *suffix* do not appear in the definitions.

## Learning Objectives

The beginning of each chapter lists learning objectives so that students know what is expected of them as they read the text and complete the exercises.

## Review Exercises

Exercises at the end of each chapter help you interact with and review the chapter's content. The exercises include several formats: multiple choice, matching, case studies, word building, diagram labeling, and crossword puzzles. The answers to the exercises are found in the Instructor's Manual.

# CHAPTER 1

## READY, SET, GO

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and recognize the parts of a medical term
- Define commonly used prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes presented in this chapter
- Analyze and understand basic medical terms
- Recognize the importance of spelling medical terms correctly
- Practice pronunciation of medical terms
- Recognize the importance of medical dictionary use
- Practice medical dictionary use

### INTRODUCTION TO MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

Medical terms are used every day in medical offices, newspapers, television, and conversational settings. Most people are familiar with many medical terms; however, other medical terms seem complicated and foreign. Learning and understanding how medical terminology developed can help in mastering these terms.

Current medical vocabulary is based on terms of Greek and Latin origin, **eponyms** (words formed from a person's name), and modern language terms. The majority of medical terms are derived from word parts based on Greek and Latin words. Increasing familiarity with these Greek and Latin terms as well as the ability to identify word parts aids in learning common medical terms and recognizing unfamiliar medical terms by word analysis. Medical terminology may seem daunting at first because of the length of medical words and the seemingly complex spelling rules, but once the basic rules of breaking down a word into its constituents are mastered, the words become easier to read and understand.

## ANATOMY OF A MEDICAL TERM

Many medical terms are composed of word part combinations. Recognizing these word parts and their meanings simplifies learning medical terminology. These word parts are as follows:

- **prefix:** word part found at the beginning of a word. Usually indicates number, location, time, or status.
- **root:** word part that gives the essential meaning of the word.
- **combining vowel:** single vowel, usually an *o*, that is added to the end of a root to make the word easier to pronounce.
- **combining form:** combination of the root and combining vowel.
- **suffix:** word part found at the end of a word. Usually indicates procedure, condition, disease, or disorder.

**Table 1-1 Contrasting Prefixes**

Without a prefix, the root <b>traumatic</b> means pertaining to injury.	<b>A-</b> (ah or ā) means without or no. <b>Atraumatic</b> means without injury.
Without a prefix, the root <b>uria</b> means urination.	<b>An-</b> (ahn) means without or no. <b>Anuria</b> means absence of urine.
<b>Ab-</b> (ahb) means away from. <b>Abduction</b> means to take away from the midline.	<b>Ad-</b> (ahd) means toward. <b>Adduction</b> means move toward the midline.
Without a prefix, the root <b>emetic</b> means pertaining to vomiting.	<b>Anti-</b> (ahn-tī or ahn-tih) means against. <b>Antiemetics</b> work against or prevent vomiting.
<b>Dys-</b> (dihs) means difficult, painful, or bad. <b>Dysphagia</b> means difficulty eating or swallowing.	<b>Eu-</b> (yoo) means good, easy, or normal. <b>Euthyroid</b> means having a normally functioning thyroid gland.
<b>Endo-</b> (ehn-dō) means within or inside.  <b>Endocrine</b> means to secrete internally.	<b>Ex-</b> (ehcks) or <b>exo-</b> (ehcks-ō) means without, out of, outside, or away from. <b>Exocrine</b> means to secrete externally (via a duct).
<b>Endo-</b> means within or inside. <b>Endoparasite</b> is an organism that lives within the body of the host.	<b>Ecto-</b> (ehck-tō) means outside. <b>Ectoparasite</b> is an organism that lives on the outer surface of the host.
<b>Hyper-</b> (hī-pār) means elevated, higher, or more than normal. <b>Hyperglycemia</b> means elevated amounts of blood glucose.	<b>Hypo-</b> (hī-pō) means depressed, lower, or less than normal. <b>Hypoglycemia</b> means depressed amounts of blood glucose.
<b>Inter-</b> (ihn-tār) means between. <b>Intercostal</b> means between the ribs.	<b>Intra-</b> (ihn-trah) means within. <b>Intramuscular</b> means within the muscle.
<b>Poly-</b> (pohl-ē) means many or excessive. <b>Polyuria</b> means excessive amount or frequency of urination.	<b>Oligo-</b> (ohl-ih-gō) means scant or little. <b>Oliguria</b> means scant amount or frequency of urination.
<b>Pre-</b> (prē) means before. <b>Preanesthetic</b> means pertaining to before anesthesia.	<b>Post-</b> (pōst) means after. <b>Postanesthetic</b> means pertaining to after anesthesia.
<b>Sub-</b> (suhb) means below, under, or less.  <b>Sublingual</b> means under the tongue.	<b>Super-</b> (soo-pār) and <b>supra-</b> (soo-prah) mean above, beyond, or excessive. <b>Supernumerary</b> means more than the regular number. <b>Suprascapular</b> means above the shoulder blade.

Understanding the meaning of the word parts allows the dissection of medical terms in a logical way. By breaking down unfamiliar terms into recognizable word parts, the veterinary professional can greatly increase his or her medical vocabulary.

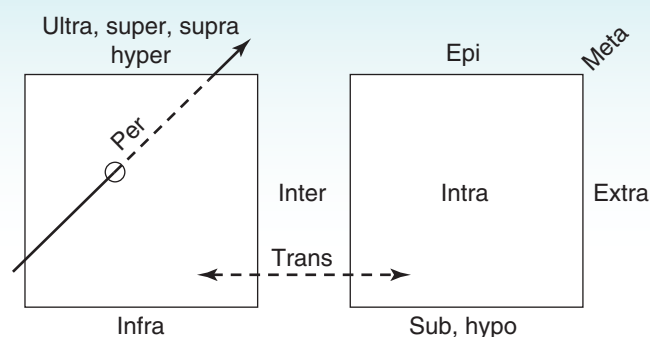
## PREFIXES

Prefixes are added to the beginning of a word or root to modify its meaning. For example, the term *operative* can be modified using various prefixes.

- The prefix **pre-** means before. **Preoperative** means before or preceding an operation.
- The prefix **peri-** (pehr-ē) means around. **Perioperative** means pertaining to the period around an operation or the period before, during, and after an operation.
- The prefix **post-** means after. **Postoperative** means after an operation.

**Table 1-2 Directional Prefixes and Their Meanings**

Prefix	Pronunciation	Definition
epi-	(eh-pē)	upper
extra-	(ehcks-trah)	outside
hyper-	(hī-pər)	above, increased, or more than normal
hypo-	(hī-pō)	below, under, or decreased
infra-	(ihn-frah)	below or beneath
inter-	(ihn-tər)	between
intra-	(ihn-trah)	within
meta-	(meht-ah)	beyond
per-	(pər)	throughout
sub-	(suhb)	below, under, or decreased
super-	(soo-pər)	above, increased, or more than normal
supra-	(soo-prah)	above, increased, or more than normal
trans-	(trahnz)	across
ultra-	(uhl-trah)	above, increased, or more than normal



**Figure 1-1** Directional prefixes

Many prefixes have another prefix whose meaning is opposite of its own. Initially, when learning prefixes, it is helpful to learn them in these pairs or in similar groups (Table 1-1, Table 1-2, and Figure 1-1).

## COMBINING VOWELS

A combining vowel sometimes is used to make the medical term easier to pronounce. The combining vowel is used when the suffix begins with a consonant, as in the suffix **-scope**. An **arthroscope** is an instrument used to visually examine the joint. Because the suffix *-scope* begins with a consonant, the combining vowel *o* is used. *O* is the most commonly used combining vowel; however, *i* and *e* may be used as well. A combining vowel is not used when the suffix begins with a vowel, as in the suffix **-itis**. **Gastritis** is inflammation of the stomach. Because the suffix *-itis* begins with a vowel, the combining vowel *o* is not used.

A combining vowel is always used when two or more root words are joined. For example, when **gastr/o** (stomach) is joined with **enter/o** (small intestine), the combining vowel is used with **gastr/o**, as in the term **gastroenteritis**. A combining vowel is not used between a prefix and the root word.

## COMBINING FORMS

The combining form is a word root plus a combining vowel. Combining forms usually describe a part of the body. New words are created when combining forms are added to prefixes, other combining forms, and suffixes. For example, the term *panleukopenia* is composed of the following word parts:

- **pan-** (pahn), a prefix meaning all
- **leuk/o** (loo-kō), a combining form meaning white
- **-penia** (pē-nē-ah), a suffix meaning deficiency or reduction in number

**Panleukopenia** is a deficiency of all types of white blood cells.

## SUFFIXES

Suffixes are attached to the end of a word part to modify its meaning. For example, the combining form *gastr/o* means stomach and can be modified using various suffixes.

- The suffix **-tomy** means cutting into or incision. **Gastrotomy** is incision into the stomach.
- The suffix **-stomy** means a surgically created opening. **Gastrostomy** is a surgically created opening between the stomach and the body surface.
- The suffix **-ectomy** means surgical removal or excision. **Gastrectomy** is surgical removal of the stomach.

Many suffixes can be grouped together by meaning or by the category they modify. Initially, when learning suffixes, it is easiest if the learner groups them by meaning or category.

### “Pertaining To” Suffixes

- **-ac** (ahck), as in **cardiac** (pertaining to the heart).
- **-al** (ahl), as in **renal** (pertaining to the kidney).
- **-an** (ahn), as in **ovarian** (pertaining to the ovary).
- **-ar** (ahr), as in **lumbar** (pertaining to the loin, lower back).
- **-ary** (ahr-ē), as in **alimentary** (pertaining to the gastrointestinal tract).
- **-eal** (ē-ahl), as in **laryngeal** (pertaining to the larynx).
- **-ic** (ihck), as in **enteric** (pertaining to the intestines).
- **-ine** (ihn), as in **uterine** (pertaining to the uterus).
- **-ous** (uhs), as in **cutaneous** (pertaining to the skin).
- **-tic** (tihck), as in **nephrotic** (pertaining to the kidneys).

### Surgical Suffixes

- **-ectomy** (ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal, as in **mastectomy**, surgical removal of the breast or mammary glands.
- **-pexy** (pehck-sē) = suture to stabilize, as in **gastropexy**, surgically stabilizing the stomach to the abdominal wall.
- **-plasty** (plahs-tē) = surgical repair, as in **rhinoplasty**, surgical repair of the nose.
- **-stomy** (stō-mē) = surgically created opening, as in **colostomy**, a surgically created opening between the colon and body surface.
- **-tomy** (tō-mē) = cutting into, as in **laparotomy**, an incision into the abdomen.

### Procedural Suffixes

- **-centesis** (sehn-tē-sihs) = surgical puncture to remove fluid or gas (for diagnosis or for treatment to remove excess fluid or gas), as in **cystocentesis**, a surgical puncture of the urinary bladder with a needle to remove fluid (urine).

- **-gram** (grahm) = record of, as in **electrocardiogram**, the electrocardiographic hard copy record.
- **-graph** (grahf) = instrument that records (or used as a record), as in **electrocardiograph**, the machine that records the electrical activity of the heart.
- **-graphy** (grahf-ē) = procedure that records, as in **electrocardiography**, the procedure used to record the electrical activity of the heart.
- **-lysis** (lī-sihs) = separation or breakdown, as in **urinalysis**, separation of the urine into its constituents.
- **-scope** (skōp) = instrument to visually examine, as in **endoscope**, an instrument used to visually examine inside the body.
- **-scopy** (skōp-ē) = procedure to visually examine, as in **endoscopy**, the procedure of visually examining inside the body.
- **-therapy** (thehr-ah-pē) = treatment, as in **chemotherapy**, treatment with chemical substances or drugs.

### Double R Suffixes

- **-rrhagia** or **-rrhage** (rā-jē-ah or rihdj) = bursting forth, as in **hemorrhage**, bursting forth of blood from the vessels.
- **-rrhaphy** (rahf-ē) = to suture, as in **enterorrhaphy**, suturing of the intestines.
- **-rrhea** (rē-ah) = flow, discharge, as in **diarrhea**, complete discharge of the bowels.
- **-rrhexis** (rehck-sihs) = rupture, as in **myorrhesis**, rupture of the muscle.



#### What is the difference between human and veterinary medical terminology?

Most times the medical terms used in human medical settings are identical to the ones used in veterinary medical settings. The greater number of species in veterinary medicine and the addition of terms used in animal production greatly expand the vocabulary of veterinary professionals. Species-specific anatomical differences also influence the terms used in a specific area. Do you know where the calf muscle is located on a person? Where is the calf muscle in a calf?

## Conditional and Structural Suffixes

- **-algia** and **-dynia** (ahl-jē-ah and dihn-ē-ah) = pain, as in **arthralgia** and **arthrodynia**, or joint pain.
- **-itis** (i-tih-s) = inflammation, as in **hepatitis**, inflammation of the liver.
- **-malacia** (mah-lā-shē-ah) = abnormal softening, as in **osteomalacia**, abnormal softening of bone.
- **-megaly** (mehg-ah-lē) = enlargement, as in **cardiomegaly**, enlargement of the heart.
- **-osis** (ō-sih-s) = abnormal condition, as in **cardiosis**, an abnormal condition of the heart.
- **-pathy** (pahth-ē) = disease, as in **enteropathy**, a disease of the small intestine.
- **-sclerosis** (skleh-rō-sih-s) = abnormal hardening, as in **arteriosclerosis**, abnormal hardening of the arteries.
- **-um** (uhm) = structure, as in **pericardium**, the structure surrounding the heart.

Suffixes may change a word's part of speech. Different suffixes may change the word from a noun (naming people, places, or things) to an adjective (descriptor) (Figure 1–2). Examples of this include the following terms:

- **Cyanosis** is a noun meaning condition of blue discoloration, whereas **cyanotic** is an adjective meaning pertaining to blue discoloration.
- **Anemia** is a noun meaning a blood condition of deficient red blood cells and/or hemoglobin, whereas **anemic** is an adjective meaning pertaining to a blood condition of deficient red blood cells and/or hemoglobin.
- **Mucus** is a noun meaning a slimelike substance that is composed of glandular secretion, salts, cells, and leukocytes, whereas **mucous** is an adjective meaning pertaining to mucus.
- **Ilium** is a noun meaning a part of the hip, whereas **iliac** is an adjective meaning pertaining to the hip.
- **Condyle** is a noun meaning a rounded projection on a bone, whereas **condylar** is an adjective meaning pertaining to a rounded projection on a bone.

Noun	Suffix	Adjective	Suffix
cyanosis	<b>-osis</b>	cyanotic	<b>-tic</b>
anemia	<b>-ia</b>	anemic	<b>-ic</b>
mucus	<b>-us</b>	mucous	<b>-ous</b>
ilium	<b>-um</b>	iliac	<b>-ac</b>
condyle	<b>-e</b>	condylar	<b>-ar</b>
carpus	<b>-us</b>	carpal	<b>-al</b>

**Figure 1–2** Suffix variation depending on usage

- **Carpus** is a noun meaning the joint between the radius and ulna and metacarpal bones, whereas **carpal** is an adjective meaning pertaining to the joint between the radius and ulna and metacarpal bones.

## ANALYZING MEDICAL TERMS

Medical terminology can be more easily understood when the following objectives are adhered to when a medical term is examined for the first time:

- **Dissect:** Analyze the word structurally by dividing it into its basic components.
- **Begin at the end:** After dividing the word into its basic parts, define the suffix first, the prefix second, and then the root. If there are two roots, divide each one and read them from left to right.
- **Anatomical order:** Where body systems are involved, the words usually are built in the order in which the organs occur in the body. For example, **gastroenteritis** is the proper term for inflammation of the stomach and small intestine. Because food passes from the stomach into the small intestine, the medical term for *stomach* appears before the medical term for *small intestine*. The order of word parts in a medical term may also represent the order of blood flow through organs. The exception to this involves some diagnostic procedures in which tools or substances are passed retrograde, or in the opposite direction of anatomical order. In these cases, the words are built in the order in which the equipment passes the body part.

Using these guidelines, analyze the term *ovariohysterectomy*. First, divide the term into its basic components: **ovari/o/hyster/ectomy**. Defining from back to front, the suffix **-ectomy** is surgical removal, one combining form **ovari/o** means ovary, and the other combining form **hysteri/o** means uterus. Together the term **ovariohysterectomy** means surgical removal of the ovaries and uterus. This term is based on the order in which the ovaries and uterus are found in the body.

## WHAT DID YOU SAY?

Proper pronunciation of medical terms takes time and practice. Listening to how medical professionals pronounce words, using medical dictionaries and textbooks, and listening to prepared audio are the best ways to learn pronunciation. There are individual variations based on geographic location and personal preference. Medical dictionaries also vary in how they present pronunciation of medical terms. Some sources mark the syllable receiving the greatest emphasis with a primary accent ( ' ) and the syllable receiving the second most emphasis with a secondary accent ( " ). Other sources bold-face and capitalize the syllable receiving the most emphasis,

and other sources do not emphasize syllables. Consult with references before pronouncing a word.

## GENERAL PRONUNCIATION GUIDELINES

Vowels can be short or long (Table 1–3). Consonants are generally pronounced as in other English words.

## DOES SPELLING COUNT?

Be aware of spelling when using medical terminology. Changing one or two letters can change the meaning of a word. **Hepatoma** is a liver mass, whereas **hematoma** is a mass or collection of blood. The **urethra** takes urine from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body, whereas **ureters** collect urine from the kidney and transport it to the urinary bladder.

Medical terms may be pronounced the same but have different meanings, so spelling is important. For example, ileum and ilium are pronounced the same. However, **ileum** is the distal part of the small intestine (*e* = enter/o or *e* = eating), whereas **ilium** is part of the pelvic bone (pelvic has an **i** in it). Some medical terms have the same spelling as terms used for other body parts. For example, the combining form **myel/o** represents the spinal cord and bone marrow. (It originates from the term meaning white substance.) Other terms have different spellings depending on how the term is used grammatically. For example, when used as a noun, *mucus* (the slimy stuff secreted from mucous membranes) is spelled differently than when it is used as an adjective (as in *mucous membrane*).

In looking up a medical term in the dictionary, spelling plays an important role. However, the term may not be spelled the way it sounds. The following guidelines can be used to find a word in the dictionary:

- If it sounds like *f*, it may begin with *f* or *ph*.
- If it sounds like *j*, it may begin with *g* or *j*.
- If it sounds like *k*, it may begin with *c*, *ch*, *k*, or *qu*.
- If it sounds like *s*, it may begin with *c*, *ps*, or *s*.
- If it sounds like *z*, it may begin with *x* or *z*.

**Table 1–3 Pronunciation Guide**

Vowel	Sound	Example
"a" at the end of a word	ah	idea
"ae" followed by r or s	ah	aerobic
"i" at the end of a word	ī	bronchi
"oe"	eh	oestrogen (old English form)
"oi"	oy	sarcoid
"eu"	ū	euthanasia
"ei"	ī	Einstein
"ai"	ay	air
"au"	aw	auditory

### Exceptions to Consonant Pronunciations

Consonant	Sound	Example
"c" before e, i, and y	s	cecum
"c" before a, o, and u	k	cancer
"g" before e, i, and y	j	genetic
"g" before a, o, and u	g	gall
"ps" at beginning of word	s	psychology
"pn" at beginning of word	n	pneumonia
"c" at end of word	k	anemic
"cc" followed by i or y	first c = k, second c = s	accident
"ch" at beginning of word	k	chemistry
"cn" in middle of word	both c (pronounce k) and n (pronounce eh)	gastrocnemius
"mn" in middle of word	both m and n	amnesia
"pt" at beginning of word	t	pterodactyl
"pt" in middle of word	both p and t	optical
"rh"	r	rhinoceros
"x" at beginning of word	z	xylophone xenograph

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The prefix \_\_\_\_\_ means away from.
  - a. ad-
  - b. ab-
  - c. ex-
  - d. endo-
2. The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ means an instrument to visually examine.
  - a. -ectomy
  - b. -scope
  - c. -scopy
  - d. -graphy
3. The prefix \_\_\_\_\_ means elevated, while the prefix \_\_\_\_\_ means depressed.
  - a. pre-, post-
  - b. endo-, exo-
  - c. hyper-, hypo-
  - d. inter-, intra-
4. The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ means pertaining to.
  - a. -al
  - b. -ary or -ar
  - c. -ic
  - d. all of the above
5. The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ means incision.
  - a. -ex
  - b. -tomy
  - c. -ectomy
  - d. -graphy
6. The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ means abnormal condition.
  - a. -osis
  - b. -rrhea
  - c. -rrhagia
  - d. -uria
7. The suffix \_\_\_\_\_ means separation or breaking into parts.
  - a. -gram
  - b. -pexy
  - c. -um
  - d. -lysis
8. The prefix \_\_\_\_\_ means below.
  - a. supra-
  - b. super-
  - c. inter-
  - d. sub-
9. The prefix(es) \_\_\_\_\_ mean(s) many.
  - a. olig
  - b. a-, an-
  - c. poly-
  - d. eu-
10. The prefix(es) \_\_\_\_\_ mean(s) without or no.
  - a. a-, an-
  - b. olig-
  - c. dys-
  - d. hyper-
11. The suffix *-algia* means
  - a. pain
  - b. excessive
  - c. liver
  - d. abnormal condition
12. The prefix *pre-* means
  - a. after
  - b. around
  - c. before
  - d. during
13. Which suffix may be part of the term meaning a procedure to visually examine?
  - a. -lysis
  - b. -scopy
  - c. -rrhexis
  - d. -scope
14. Which type of word part is always placed at the end of a term?
  - a. combining form
  - b. prefix
  - c. suffix
  - d. root

## 8 Chapter 1

15. Which type of word part is always placed at the beginning of a term?
- combining form
  - prefix
  - suffix
  - root
16. Which word part gives the essential meaning of a term?
- combining form
  - prefix
  - suffix
  - root
17. Which word association is incorrect?
- inter-* means between
  - sub-* means below, under, or less
  - an-* means without or no
  - ad-* means away from
18. Which suffix means to rupture?
- rrhage
  - rrhaphy
  - rrhea
  - rrhexis
19. Which prefix means around?
- hyper-
  - hypo-
  - peri-
  - supra-
20. In the term *panleukopenia*, the *o* between *leuk* and *penia* is called a
- combining form
  - suffix
  - combining vowel
  - root

### Matching

Match the word parts in Column I with the definition in Column II.

#### Column I

- \_\_\_\_\_ -itis
- \_\_\_\_\_ -gram
- \_\_\_\_\_ post-
- \_\_\_\_\_ -tomy
- \_\_\_\_\_ pre-
- \_\_\_\_\_ -centesis
- \_\_\_\_\_ -therapy
- \_\_\_\_\_ dys-
- \_\_\_\_\_ peri-
- \_\_\_\_\_ ren/o
- \_\_\_\_\_ hepat/o
- \_\_\_\_\_ -megaly
- \_\_\_\_\_ -ectomy

#### Column II

- incision or cutting into
- before
- surgical puncture to remove fluid or gas
- difficult, painful, or bad
- enlargement
- excision or surgical removal
- liver
- kidney
- inflammation
- record
- after
- treatment
- around

## Fill in the Blanks

Write the medical terms that represent the following definitions.

1. Pertaining to the stomach \_\_\_\_\_
2. Inflammation of the liver \_\_\_\_\_
3. Abnormal softening of bone \_\_\_\_\_
4. Joint pain \_\_\_\_\_
5. Procedure to visually examine inside the body \_\_\_\_\_
6. Heart enlargement \_\_\_\_\_
7. Pertaining to the kidney \_\_\_\_\_
8. Bursting forth of blood from vessels \_\_\_\_\_
9. Suturing of stomach to body wall \_\_\_\_\_
10. Treatment with chemicals or drugs \_\_\_\_\_

## Spell Check

Cross out any misspelled words in the following sentences and replace them with the proper spelling.

1. Thick mucous was evident in the cat with upper respiratory disease. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Urine was collected via cistocentesis so that the urinalysis could be performed to determine whether the dog had a urinary tract infection. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The horse's diarrhea was caused by intestinal parasites. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The cutaneus lesion was not cancerous. \_\_\_\_\_
5. A local anesthetic was used so that the surgery could be performed on the cow. \_\_\_\_\_

## Word Part Identification

Underline the word root(s) in the following terms.

1. hepat/itis
2. gastr/o/intestin/al
3. cardi/o/logy
4. intra/ven/ous
5. nephr/osis

Underline the suffix in the following terms.

6. hepat/itis
7. gastr/o/intestin/al
8. cardi/o/logy
9. intra/ven/ous
10. nephr/osis

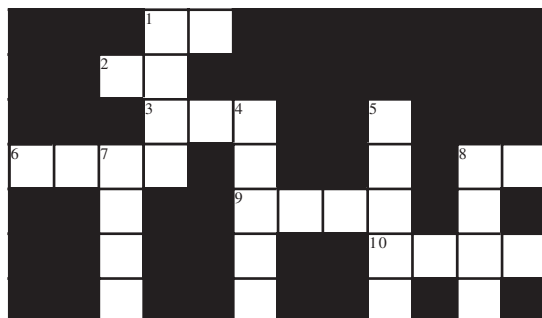
Underline the prefix in the following terms.

11. hyper/secretion
12. peri/card/itis
13. endo/cardi/um
14. poly/uria
15. ur/o/lith

## CROSSWORD PUZZLES

### Prefix Puzzle

Supply the correct prefix in the appropriate space for the definition listed.



#### Across

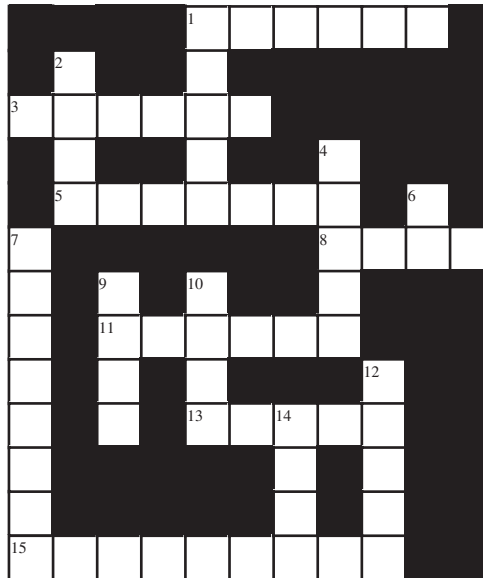
- 1 outside
- 2 without
- 3 opposite of good
- 6 less than normal
- 8 opposite of towards
- 9 after
- 10 outside

#### Down

- 1 inside
- 4 excessive
- 5 between
- 7 many
- 8 against

## Suffix Puzzle

Supply the correct suffix in the appropriate space for the definition listed.



### Across

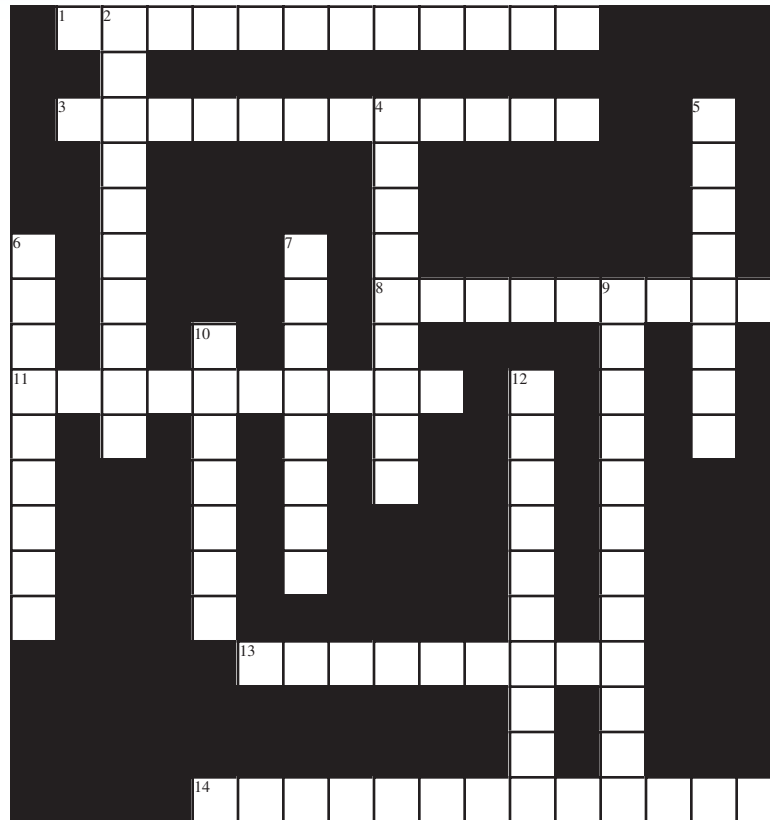
- 1 bursting forth
- 3 procedure that records
- 5 abnormal softening
- 8 cutting into
- 11 surgical removal
- 13 surgically create new opening
- 15 abnormal hardening

### Down

- 1 discharge
- 2 record of
- 4 disease
- 6 structure
- 7 surgical puncture to remove fluid
- 9 suture to stabilize
- 10 inflammation
- 12 breakdown
- 14 abnormal condition

**Medical Terms Puzzle**

Supply the correct medical term in the appropriate space for the definition listed.

**Across**

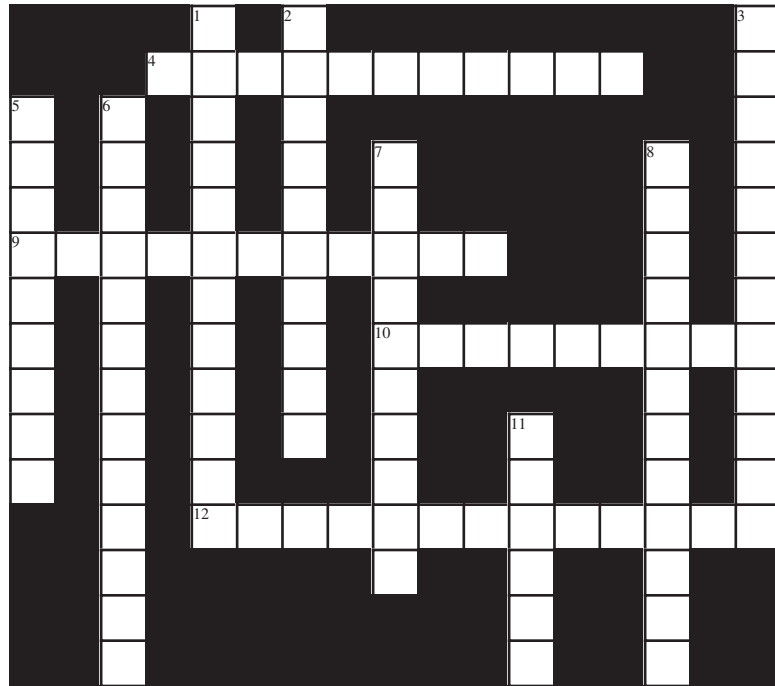
- 1 enlargement of the heart
- 3 before an operation
- 8 pertaining to the skin
- 11 separation of urine into its components
- 13 inflammation of the liver
- 14 increased amount of blood glucose

**Down**

- 2 without injury
- 4 away from midline
- 5 infrequent urination
- 6 towards midline
- 7 frequent urination
- 9 organism that lives on the outer surface of the host
- 10 pertaining to the heart
- 12 surgical removal of the mammary glands

## Medical Terms Puzzle

Supply the correct medical term in the appropriate space for the definition listed.



### Across

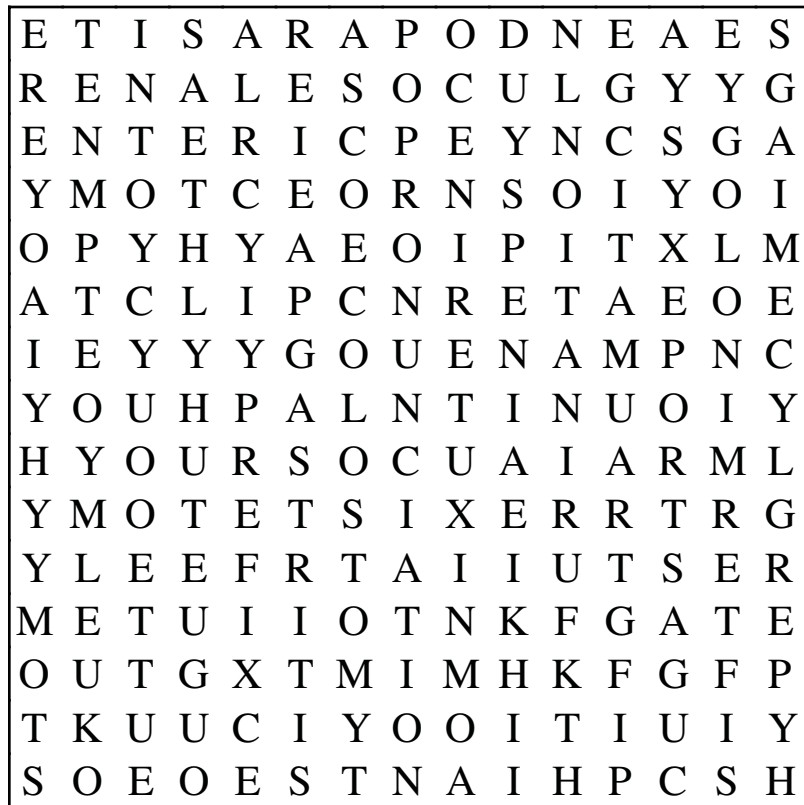
- 4 disease of intestines
- 9 structure surrounding the heart
- 10 instrument to visually examine inside the body
- 12 excess of regular number

### Down

- 1 between the ribs
- 2 bursting forth of blood from vessels
- 3 treatment with drugs
- 5 difficulty eating or swallowing
- 6 within muscle
- 7 pertaining to the gastrointestinal tract
- 8 abnormal softening of bone
- 11 pertaining to the loin

## WORD SEARCH

Find the following medical terms or word parts in the puzzle below. (Make sure you understand what the terms mean as you find them.)



terminology  
pronunciation  
penia  
leuko  
hyper  
hypo  
endoparasite  
hyperglycemia  
glucose  
urination  
traumatic

uterine  
gastritis  
colostomy  
gastropexy  
renal  
enteric  
prefix  
suffix  
ectomy  
tomy  
stomy

## CASE STUDY

---

Fill in the blanks to complete the case history.

A 5-yr-old male neutered cat is presented to a veterinary clinic with \_\_\_\_\_ (painful urination) and \_\_\_\_\_ (scant urine production). Upon examination the abdomen is palpated and \_\_\_\_\_ (enlarged urinary bladder) is noted. After completing the examination, the veterinarian suspects an obstruction of the \_\_\_\_\_ (tube that carries urine from the urinary bladder to outside the body). Blood is taken for analysis, and the cat is admitted to the clinic. The cat is anesthetized, and a urinary catheter is passed. Urine is collected for \_\_\_\_\_ (breakdown of urine into its components). In addition to the obstruction, the cat is treated for \_\_\_\_\_ (inflammation of the urinary bladder).

In this case study, the meanings of some unfamiliar medical terms (underlined>) cannot be understood by breaking up the term into its basic components. Using a print or online dictionary, define the following medical terms.

1. palpated \_\_\_\_\_
2. obstruction \_\_\_\_\_
3. catheter \_\_\_\_\_



# CHAPTER 2

## WHERE, WHY, AND WHAT?

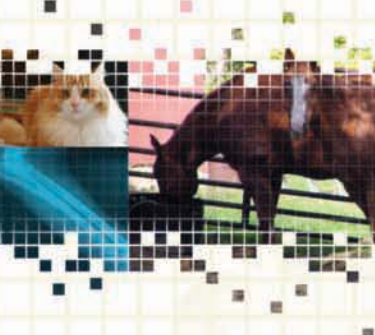
### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and recognize body planes, positional terms, directional terms, and body cavities
- Identify terms used to describe the structure of cells, tissues, and glands
- Define terms related to body cavities and structure
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce medical terms related to pathology and procedures
- Identify body systems by their components, functions, and combining forms
- Identify prefixes that assign numeric value

### IN POSITION

Positional terms are important for accurately and concisely describing body locations and relationships of one body structure to another. The terms *forward* and *backward*, *up* and *down*, *in* and *out*, and *side to side* are not clear enough descriptions by themselves to have universal understanding in the medical community. Therefore, very specific terms were developed so that there would be no confusion as to the meaning being conveyed. Listed in Table 2–1 and illustrated in Figures 2–1, 2–2, 2–3, and 2–4 are directional terms used in veterinary settings.



**Table 2-1 Terms Used to Describe Direction and Surface**

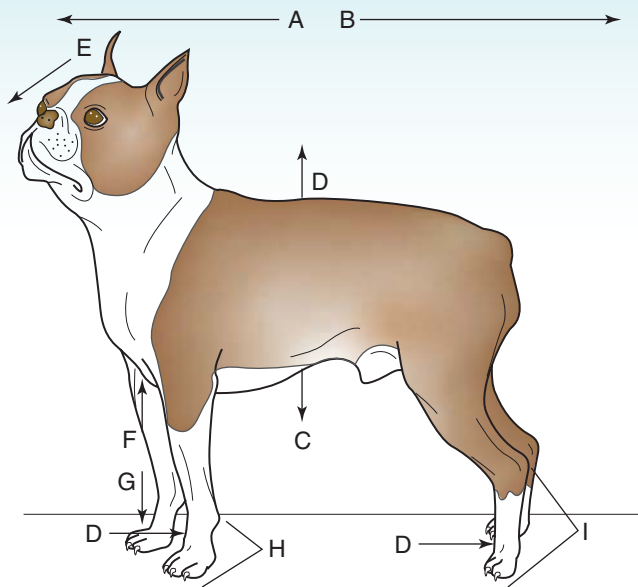
<p><b>Ventral</b> (vehn-trahl) refers to the belly or underside of a body or body part. (<i>Ventr/o</i> in Latin means belly.) (<i>Venture</i> means to undertake.) (A ventral fin is on the belly.)</p>	<p><b>Dorsal</b> (dōr-sahl) refers to the back. (<i>Dors/o</i> in Latin means back.) (<i>Endorse</i> means sign on the back.) (A dorsal fin is on the back.) Also refers to the cranial surface of the manus (front paw) and pes (rear paw).</p>
<p><b>Cranial</b> (krā-nē-ahl) means toward the head. (<i>Crani/o</i> in Latin means skull.)</p>	<p><b>Caudal</b> (kaw-dahl) means toward the tail. (<i>Cauda</i> in Latin means tail.)</p>
<p><b>Anterior</b> (ahn-tēr-ē-ār) means front of the body. (<i>Anteri/o</i> in Latin means before.) Used more in description of organs or body parts because front and rear are confusing terms in quadrupeds. A quadruped's belly is oriented downward, not forward as in humans.</p>	<p><b>Posterior</b> (pohs-tēr-ē-ār) means rear of the body. (<i>Posteri/o</i> in Latin means behind.)</p>
<p><b>Rostral</b> (rohs-trahl) means nose end of the head. (<i>Rostrum</i> in Latin means beak.) <b>Cephalic</b> (seh-fahl-ihck) means pertaining to the head. (<i>Kephale</i> in Greek means head.)</p>	<p><b>Caudal</b> (kaw-dahl) means toward the tail. (<i>Cauda</i> in Latin means tail.)</p>
<p><b>Medial</b> (mē-dē-ahl) means toward the midline. (<i>Medi/o</i> in Latin means middle.)</p>	<p><b>Lateral</b> (laht-ār-ahl) means away from the midline. (<i>Later/o</i> in Latin means side.)</p>
<p><b>Superior</b> (soo-pēr-ē-ār) means uppermost, above, or toward the head. Used more commonly in bipeds. (<i>Super</i> in Latin means above.)</p>	<p><b>Inferior</b> (ihn-fēr-ē-ār) means lowermost, below, or toward the tail. Used more commonly in bipeds. (<i>Inferi</i> in Latin means lower.)</p>
<p><b>Proximal</b> (prohck-sih-mahl) means nearest the midline or nearest to the beginning of a structure. (<i>Proxim/o</i> in Latin means next.)</p>	<p><b>Distal</b> (dihs-tahl) means farthest from the midline or farthest from the beginning of a structure. (<i>Dist/o</i> in Latin means distant.)</p>
<p><b>Superficial</b> (soop-ār-fihsh-ahl) means near the surface; also called external. (<i>Super</i> in Latin means above.)</p>	<p><b>Deep</b> (dēp) means away from the surface; also called internal. (<i>Deep</i> means beneath the surface.)</p>
<p><b>Palmar</b> (pahl-mahr) means the caudal surface of the manus (front paw) including the carpus (from the antebrachial joint distally). (<i>Palmar</i> in Latin means hollow of the hand.)</p>	<p><b>Plantar</b> (plahn-tahr) means the caudal surface of the pes (rear paw) including the tarsus (from the tibiotarsal joint distally). (<i>Plantar</i> in Latin means sole of the foot.)</p>

## THE PLANE TRUTH

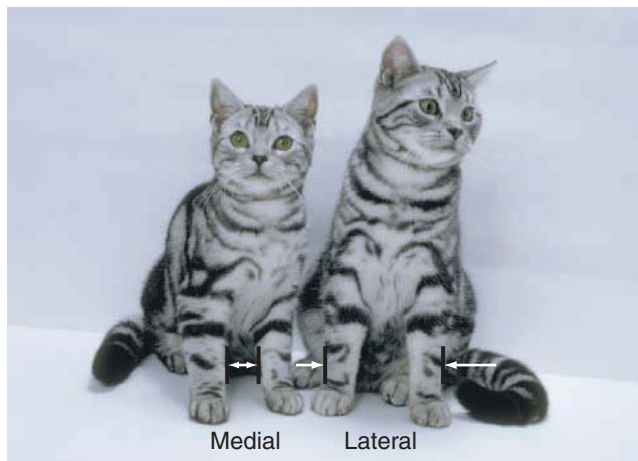
Planes are imaginary lines that are used descriptively to divide the body into sections.

- **Midsagittal** (mihd-sahdj-ih-tahl) **plane** is the plane that divides the body into *equal* right and left halves. It also is called the **median** (mē-dē-ahn) plane and the midline (Figure 2-3).

- **Sagittal** (sahdj-ih-tahl) **plane** is the plane that divides the body into unequal right and left parts (Figure 2-4).
- **Dorsal** (dōr-sahl) **plane** is the plane that divides the body into dorsal (back) and ventral (belly) parts (Figure 2-4). It also is called the **frontal** (frohn-tahl) plane or **coronal** (kō-roh-nahl) plane. In humans, the frontal plane is a vertical plane because people stand erect.



**Figure 2-1** Directional and surface terms. The arrows on this Boston terrier represent the following directional terms: A = cranial, B = caudal, C = ventral, D = dorsal, E = rostral, F = proximal, G = distal, H = palmar, I = plantar.

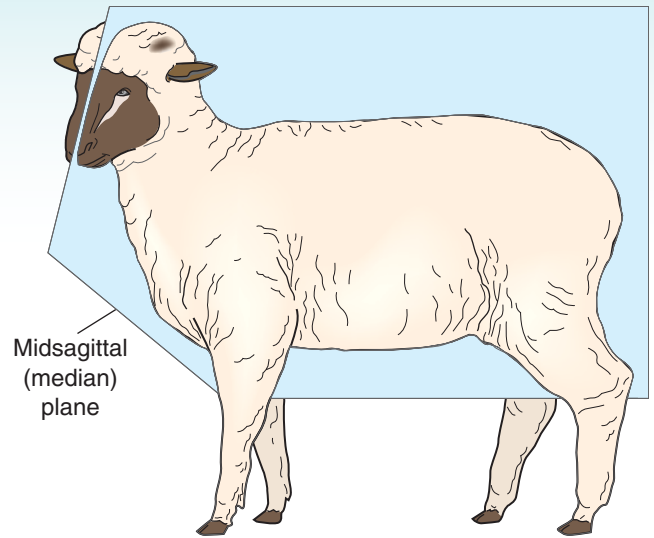


**Figure 2-2** Medial versus lateral. The lines on these cats represent the directional terms *medial* and *lateral*. (Photo by Isabelle Francais.)

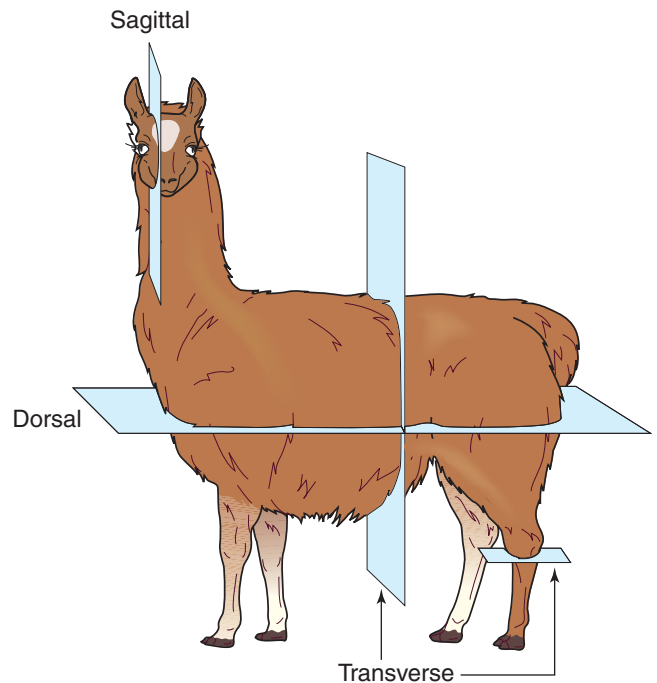
- **Transverse** (trahnz-vərs) **plane** is the plane that divides the body into cranial and caudal parts (Figure 2-4). It also is called the **horizontal plane** or **cross-sectional plane**. The transverse plane also may be used to describe a perpendicular transection to the long axis of an appendage.

## STUDYING

The suffix **-logy** means the study of. Specific terms are used to describe specific branches of study. The study of body structure is called **anatomy** (ah-naht-ō-mē). **Physiology** (fihz-ē-ohl-ō-jē) is the study of body function(s). **Pathology** (pahth-ohl-ō-jē)



**Figure 2-3** Planes of the body. The midsagittal, or median, plane divides the body into *equal* left and right portions.



**Figure 2-4** Planes of the body. The sagittal plane divides the body into *unequal* right and left parts, the dorsal plane divides the body into back and belly parts, and the transverse plane divides the body into cranial and caudal parts. The transverse plane also describes a perpendicular transection to the long axis of an appendage.

is the study of the nature, causes, and development of abnormal conditions. Combining physiology and pathology results in the term **pathophysiology** (pahth-ō-fihz-ē-ohl-ō-jē), which is the study of changes in function caused by disease. The study of disease causes is **etiology** (ē-tē-ohl-ō-jē).



### Are directional terms the same in humans and animals?

Original human anatomy drawings posed a man with his palms forward. Human positional terminology is still based on that pose. If this original drawing had had the palms turned away, human and veterinary anatomical terminology would have been identical.



### Directional term confusion

The terms *anterior*, *posterior*, *superior*, and *inferior* can be confusing when used with quadrupeds. In quadrupeds, *ventral* is a better term for *anterior* and *dorsal* is a better term than *posterior*.

What does *anterior* mean in a quadruped (cranial or dorsal)?

What does *superior* mean in a quadruped (cranial, dorsal, superficial, or proximal)?

## YOU HAVE SAID A MOUTHFUL

Describing positions in the mouth has become increasingly important with the rise of veterinary dentistry. The dental **arcade** (ahr-kād) is the term used to describe how teeth are arranged in the mouth. *Arcade* means a series of arches, which is how the teeth are arranged in the oral cavity. Surfaces of the teeth are named for the area in which they contact (Figure 2–5). The **lingual** (lihng-gwahl) **surface** is the aspect of the tooth that faces the tongue. Remember that linguistics is the study of language, and the tongue is used to make sounds. Some people use lingual surface to describe the tooth surface that faces the tongue on both the maxilla (upper jaw) and mandible (lower jaw). More correctly, the **palatal** (pahl-ah-tahl) **surface** is

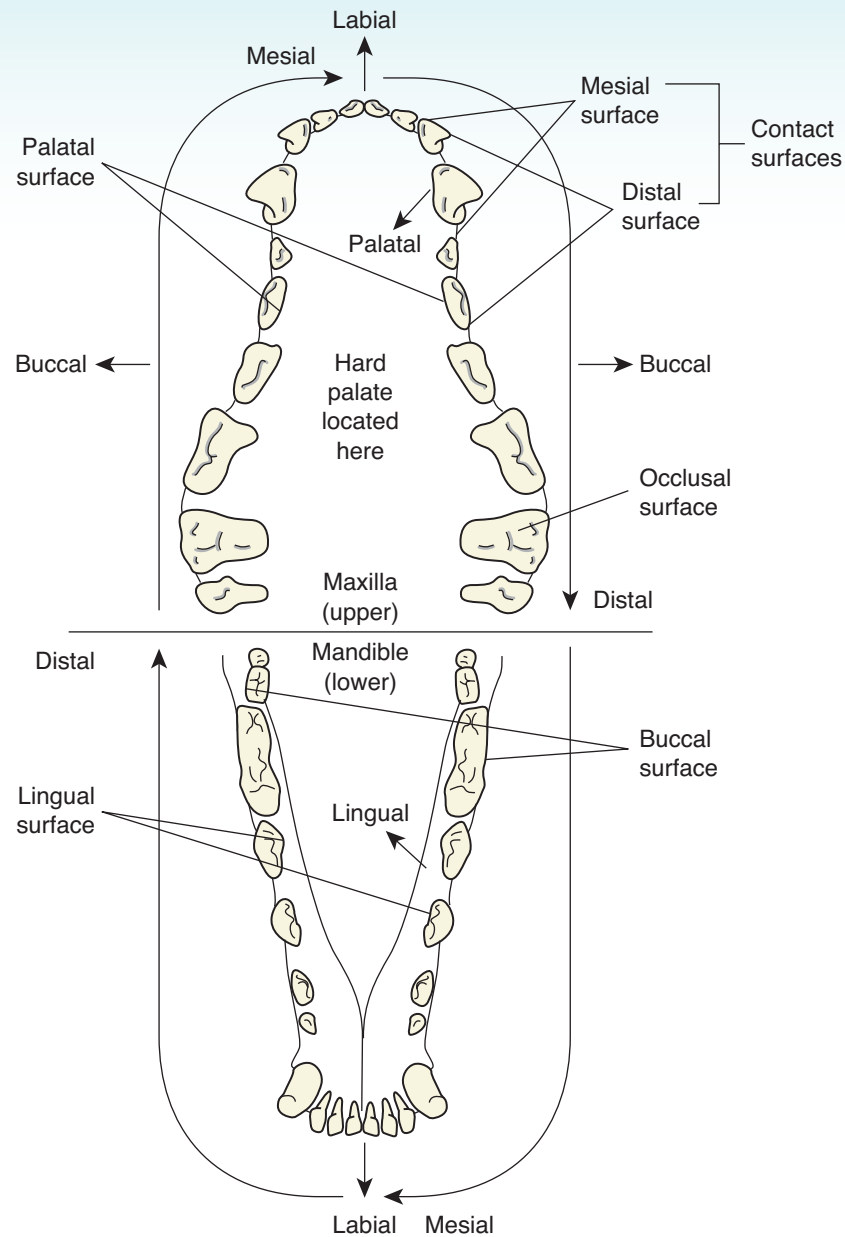
the tooth surface of the maxilla that faces the tongue, and the lingual surface is the tooth surface of the mandible that faces the tongue. The **buccal** (buhk-ahl or būk-ahl) **surface** is the aspect of the tooth that faces the cheek. *Bucca* is Latin for cheek. The buccal surface is sometimes called the **vestibular** (vehs-tih-buh-lahr) **surface**. *Vestibule* in Latin means space or cavity at an entrance. The **occlusal** (ō-klū-zahl) **surfaces** are the aspects of the teeth that meet when you chew. Think of the teeth occluding, or stopping, things from passing between them when you clench them. The **labial** (lā-bē-ahl) **surface** is the tooth surface facing the lips. *Labia* is the medical term for lips. **Contact** (kohn-tahckt) **surfaces** are the aspects of the tooth that touch other teeth. Contact surfaces are divided into **mesial** (mē-zē-ahl) and **distal** (dihs-tahl). The mesial contact surface is the one closest to the midline of the dental arcade or arch. The distal contact surface is the one furthest from the midline of the dental arcade (think distance). Each tooth has both contact surfaces, even the last molar, which touches only one tooth surface.

## THE HOLE TRUTH

A body **cavity** (kahv-ih-tē) is a hole or hollow space in the body that contains and protects internal organs. The **cranial** (krā-nē-ahl) **cavity** is the hollow space that contains the brain in the skull. The **spinal** (spī-nahl) **cavity** is the hollow space that contains the spinal cord within the spinal column. The **thoracic** (thō-rahsh-ihck) **cavity**, or **chest cavity**, is the hollow space that contains the heart and lungs within the ribs between the neck and diaphragm. The **abdominal** (ahb-dō-hm-ih-nahl) **cavity** is the hollow space that contains the major organs of digestion located between the diaphragm and pelvic cavity. The abdominal cavity is commonly called the **peritoneal** (pehr-ih-tohn-ē-ahl) **cavity**, but that is not quite accurate. The peritoneal cavity is the hollow space within the abdominal cavity between the parietal peritoneum and the visceral peritoneum. The **pelvic** (pehl-vihck) **cavity** is the hollow space that contains the reproductive and some excretory systems (urinary bladder and rectum) organs bounded by the pelvic bones.

Cavities are just one way to segregate the body. Regional terms are also used to describe areas of the body. The **abdomen** (ahb-dō-mehn) is the portion of the body between the thorax and the pelvis containing the abdominal cavity. The **thorax** (thaw-rahcks) is the chest region located between the neck and diaphragm. The **groin** (groyn) is the lower region of the abdomen adjacent to the thigh; it also is known as the **inguinal** (ihng-gwih-nahl) **area**.

**Membranes** (mehm-brānz) are thin layers of tissue that cover a surface, line a cavity, or divide a space or an organ. The **peritoneum** (pehr-ih-tō-nē-uhm) is the membrane lining the walls of the abdominal and pelvic cavities and it



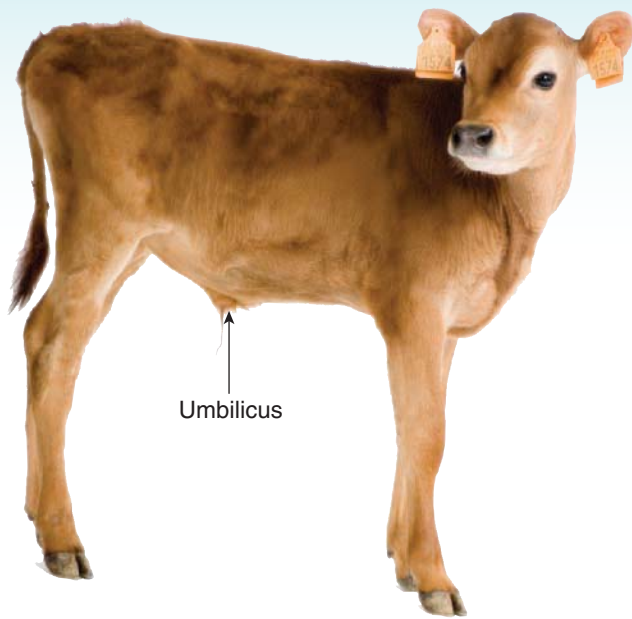
**Figure 2-5** Teeth surfaces of the mandible and maxilla. Teeth surfaces are identified by the area they are near.

covers some organs in this area. The peritoneum may be further divided in reference to its location. The **parietal** (pah-rī-eh-tahl) **peritoneum** is the outer layer of the peritoneum that lines the abdominal and pelvic cavities, and the **visceral** (vihs-ər-ahl) **peritoneum** is the inner layer of the peritoneum that surrounds the abdominal organs. Inflammation of the peritoneum is called **peritonitis** (pehr-ih-tō-nī-tihs).

Other terms associated with the abdomen and peritoneum include the umbilicus, mesentery, and retroperitoneal. The

**umbilicus** (uhm-bihl-ih-kuhs) is the pit in the abdominal wall marking the point where the umbilical cord entered the fetus (Figure 2-6). In veterinary terminology, the umbilicus is also called the **navel** (nā-vuhl). The **mesentery** (mehs-ehn-tehr-ē or mehz-ehn-tehr-ē) is the layer of the peritoneum that suspends parts of the intestine in the abdominal cavity. **Retroperitoneal** (reh-trō-pehr-ih-tō-nē-ahl) means superficial to the peritoneum.

Other membranes of the body are described with the specific body region in which they are found.



**Figure 2-6** The umbilicus marks the point where the umbilical cord entered the fetus. (Courtesy of iStock photo.)

## LYING AROUND

*Lay, lie, laid, and lying* are confusing words in English. However, the only medical term for lying down is **recumbent** (rê-kuhm-behnt). Recumbent is then modified depending on which side is facing down (Figure 2-7).

- **Dorsal recumbency** (dôr-sahl rê-kuhm-behn-sê) is lying on the back.
- **Ventral recumbency** (vehn-trahl rê-kuhm-behn-sê) is lying on the belly = **sternal** (stər-nahl) **recumbency**.
- **Left lateral recumbency** (laht-ər-ahl rê-kuhm-behn-sê) is lying on the left side.
- **Right lateral recumbency** is lying on the right side.

Two less commonly used terms derived from human medical terminology refer to lying down. **Prone** (prôn) means lying in ventral or sternal recumbency; **supine** (soo-pīn) means lying in dorsal recumbency.

To clarify the recumbency terms, remember the following:

- lay = to put, place, or prepare
- laid = past tense of *lay*
- laying = present tense of *lay*
- lie = to recline or be situated
- lain = past tense of *lie*
- lying = present tense of *lie*

## MOVING RIGHT ALONG

Medical terms used to describe movement may involve changing prefixes or suffixes to change direction. The terms **adduction** and **abduction** look very similar yet have opposite meanings (Figure 2-8).

**Adduction** (ahd-duhck-shuhn) means movement toward the midline (think addition to something), and **abduction** (ahb-duhck-shuhn) means movement away from the midline (think child abduction).

**Flexion** (flehck-shuhn) means closure of a joint angle, or reduction of the angle between two bones. Contracting the biceps involves flexing the elbow. **Extension** (ehcks-tehn-shuhn) means straightening of a joint or an increase in the angle between two bones (Figure 2-9). You extend your hand for a handshake. **Hyperflexion** (hī-pər-flehcks-shuhn) and **hyperextension** (hī-pər-ehcks-tehn-shuhn) occur when a joint is flexed or extended too far. Hyperflexion is the palmar or plantar movement of the joint angles. Hyperextension is the dorsal movement of the joints beyond the reference angle.

*Supination* and *pronation* are two less commonly used terms in veterinary settings. **Supination** (soo-pih-nā-shuhn) is the act of rotating the limb or body part so that the palmar surface is turned upward, and **pronation** (prō-nā-shuhn) is the act of rotating the limb or body part so that the palmar surface is turned downward. Think of supination as the movement involved with eating soup while cupping the hand. **Rotation** (rō-tā-shuhn) is another term of movement that means circular movement around an axis.

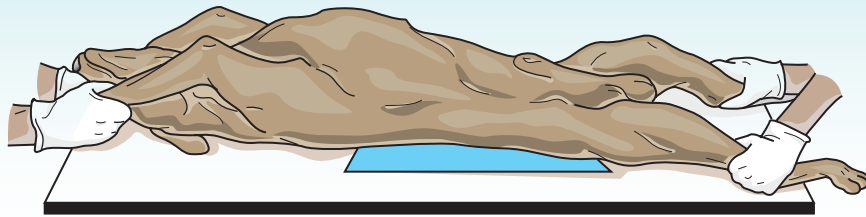
## SETTING OUR CYTES AHEAD

Cells are the structural units of the body (Figure 2-10). The combining form for cell is **cyt/o** (sī-tō). Cells are specialized and grouped together to form tissues and organs. **Cytology** (sī-tohl-ō-jē) is the study of cells. The suffix *-logy* means the study of. Cytology involves studying cell origin, structure, function, and pathology.

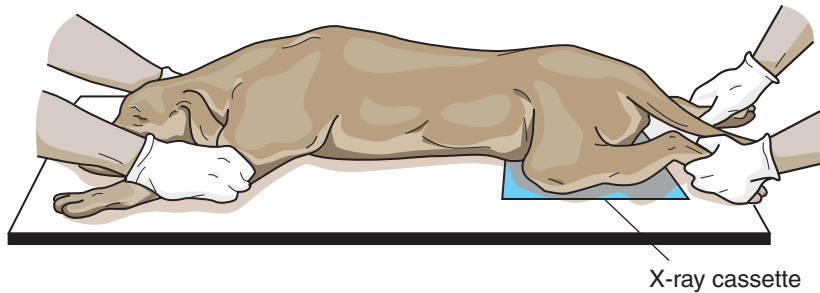
The cell membrane, cytoplasm, and nucleus are collectively called the **protoplasm** (prō-tō-plahzm). The suffix *-plasm* (plahzm) means formative material of cells, and the combining form *prot/o* means first. The **cell membrane** (also called the plasma membrane) is the structure lining the cell that protects the cell's contents and regulates what goes in and out of the cell. **Cytoplasm** (sī-tō-plahzm) is the gelatinous material located in the cell membrane that is not part of the nucleus. The **nucleus** (nū-klē-uhs) is the structure in a cell that contains nucleoplasm, chromosomes, and the surrounding membrane. **Nucleoplasm** (nū-klē-ōplahzm) is the material in the nucleus, and **chromosomes** (krō-mō-sōmz) are the structures in the nucleus composed of DNA, which transmits genetic information.

## IT'S IN THE GENES

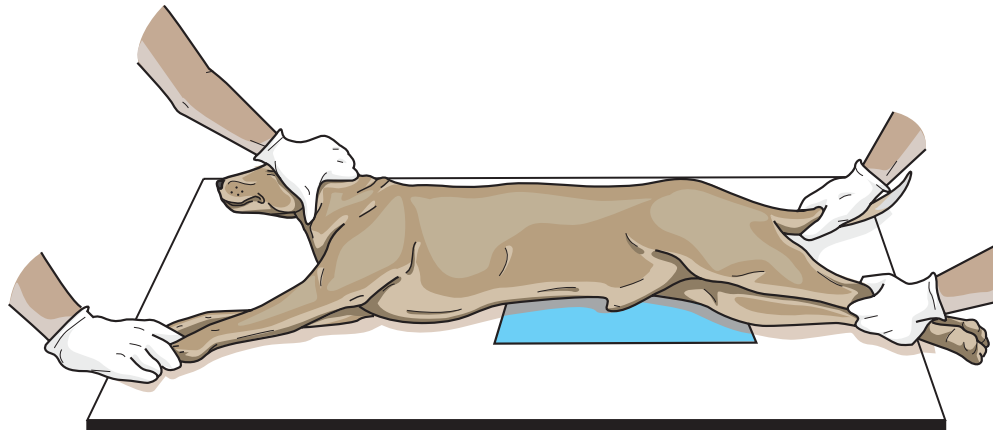
*Genetic* is a term used to denote something that pertains to genes or heredity. A **genetic** (jehn-eh-tihck) **disorder** is any inherited disease or condition caused by defective genes. This term is different from **congenital** (kohn-jehn-ih-tahl), which denotes something that is present at birth. A genetic defect may



(a) Dorsal recumbency

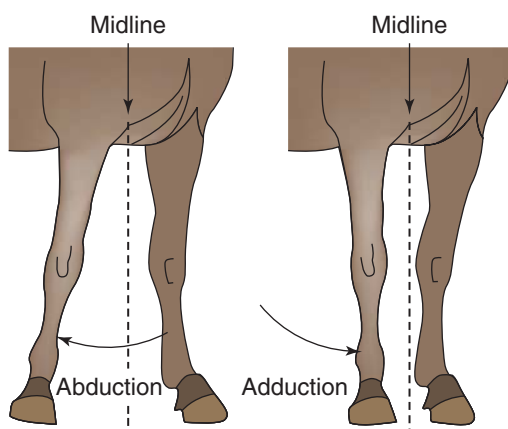
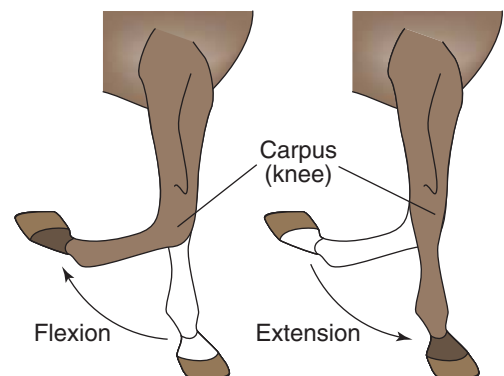


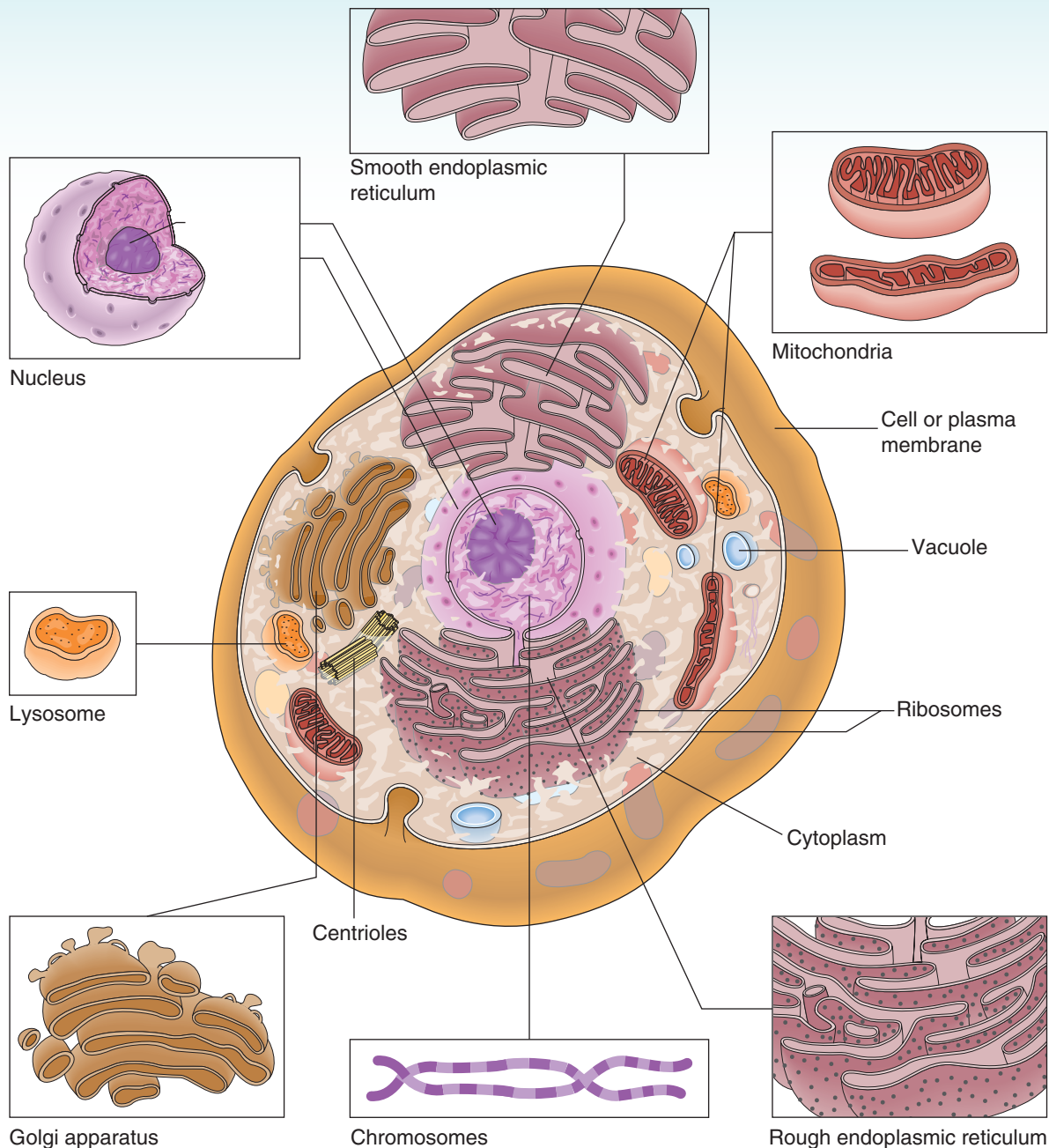
(b) Ventral recumbency/sternal recumbency



(c) Lateral recumbency

**Figure 2-7** Recumbency positions. The position in which an animal lies is important in veterinary medicine, especially in radiographing an animal. (a) This dog is in *dorsal recumbency*. (b) This dog is in *ventral*, or *sternal*, *recumbency*. (c) This dog is in *right lateral recumbency*.

**Figure 2-8** Adduction versus abduction.**Figure 2-9** Flexion and extension of the carpus (knee) of a horse.



**Figure 2-10** Parts of the cell. Parts of the cell include the cell or plasma membrane (serves as the cell's boundary and is semipermeable to allow some things in and out of the cell); nucleus (controls cellular activity and contains genetic material of the cell); nucleolus (produces RNA that forms ribosomes); cytoplasm (semifluid medium containing organelles); chromosomes (structures in the nucleus composed of DNA, which transmits genetic information); centrioles (rod-shaped organelles that maintain cell shape and move chromosomes during cell replication); mitochondria (energy producers of the cell); Golgi apparatus (chemical processor of the cell); endoplasmic reticulum (collection of folded membranes that may contain ribosomes, known as rough endoplasmic reticulum, which synthesize protein, or may be void of ribosomes, known as smooth endoplasmic reticulum, which synthesizes lipids, and some carbohydrates); ribosomes (site of protein synthesis); vacuoles (small membrane-bound organelles containing water, food, or metabolic waste); and lysosomes (digestive system of the cell).

be congenital, but a congenital defect implies only that something faulty is present at birth. An **anomaly** (ah-nohm-ah-lē) is a deviation from what is regarded as normal. *Anomaly* may be used instead of *defect*.

## GROUPING THINGS TOGETHER

A group of specialized cells that is similar in structure and function is a **tissue** (tihsh-yoo). The study of the structure, composition, and function of tissue is **histology** (hihs-tohl-ō-jē). **Hist/o** is the combining form for tissue.

There are four types of tissue: epithelial, connective, muscle, and nervous. **Epithelial tissue** (ehp-ih-thē-lē-ahl tihsh-yoo) or **epithelium** (ehp-ih-thē-lē-uhm) covers internal and external body surfaces and is made up of tightly packed cells in a variety of arrangements (Figure 2–11). *Epi-* is a prefix that means above, *thel/o* is a combining form that means nipple but is now used to denote any thin membrane, and *-um* is a suffix that means structure. Epithelial tissue is further divided into mesothelium and endothelium. **Endothelium** (ehn-dō-thē-lē-uhm) is the cellular covering that forms the lining of the internal organs, including the blood vessels. *Endo-* is a prefix

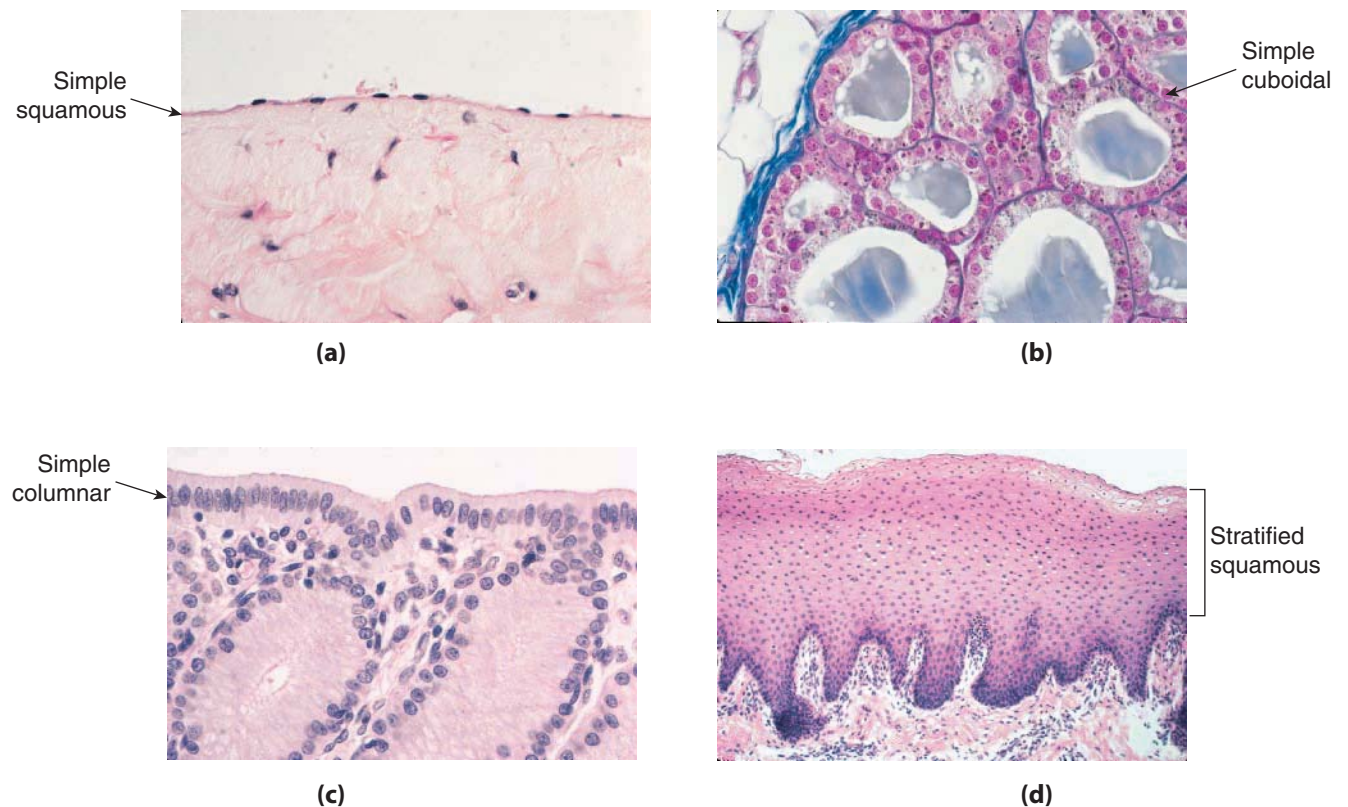
meaning within. **Mesothelium** (mēs-ō-thē-lē-uhm) is the cellular covering that forms the lining of serous membranes such as the peritoneum. The prefix *meso-* means middle.

**Connective tissue** is another tissue type. Connective tissue adds support and structure to the body by holding the organs in place and binding body parts together (Figure 2–12). Bone, cartilage, dense connective tissue (found in tendons and ligaments), loose connective tissue, and blood are all types of connective tissue. **Adipose** (ahd-ih-pohs) tissue, another form of connective tissue, is also known as fat. **Adip/o** is the combining form for fat.

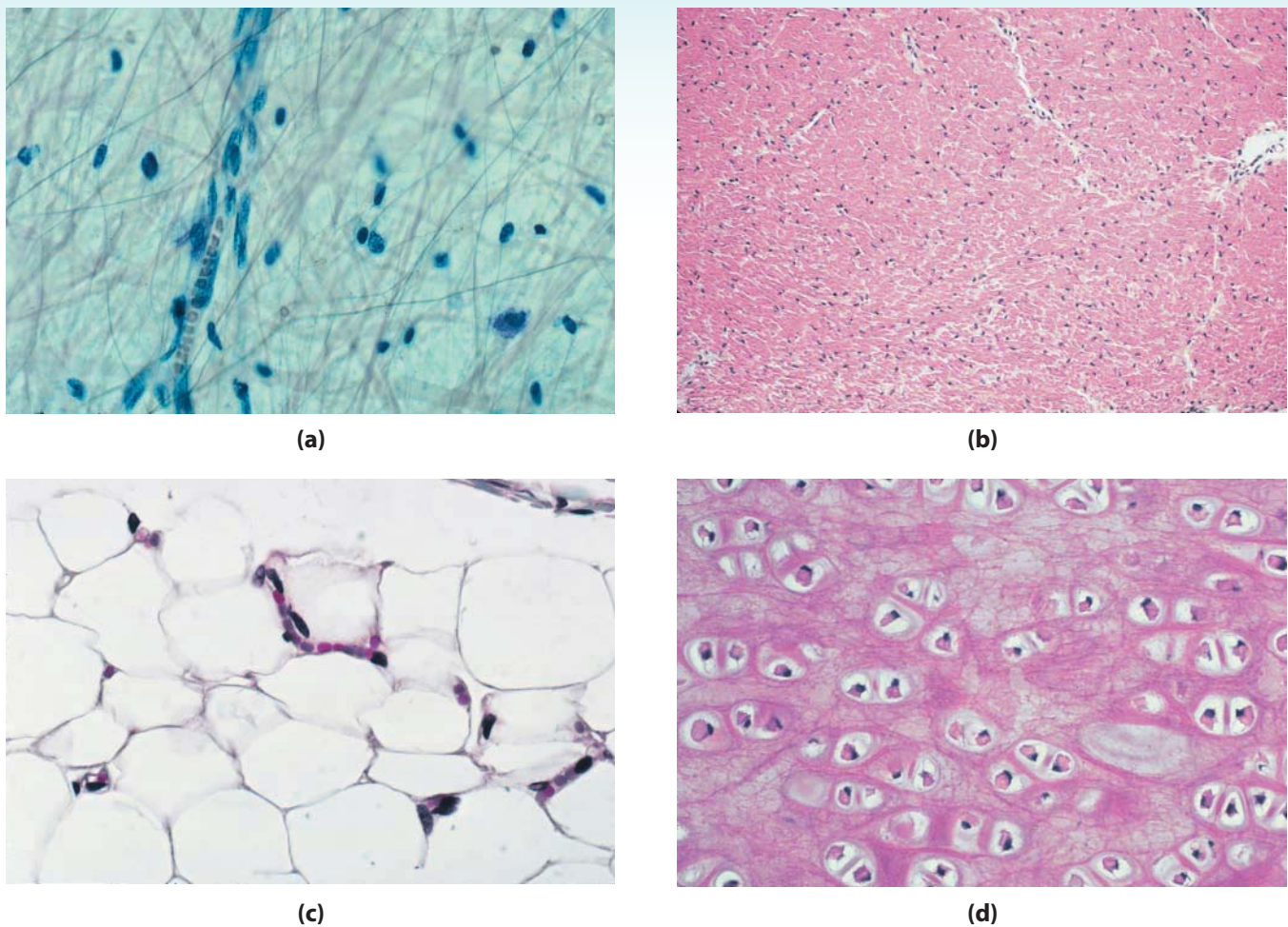
**Muscle tissue** is another tissue type that contains cell material with the specialized ability to contract and relax. Three muscle types exist in animals: skeletal, smooth, and cardiac (Figure 2–13). These muscle types are covered in Chapter 3.

**Nervous tissue** is the last tissue type (Figure 2–14). Nervous tissue contains cells with the specialized ability to react to stimuli and conduct electrical impulses. The nervous system is covered in greater depth in Chapter 13.

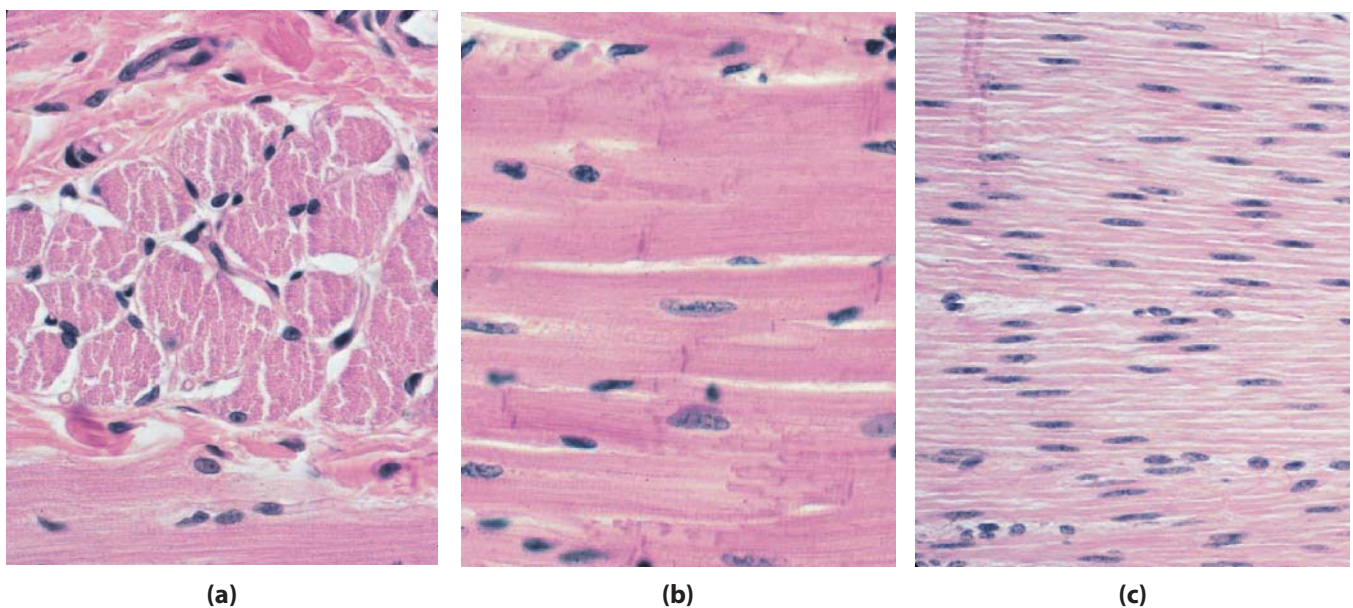
Tissue can form normally or abnormally. The suffix **-plasia** (plā-zē-ah) is used to describe formation, development, and growth of tissue and cell numbers. The suffix **-trophy** (trō-fē)



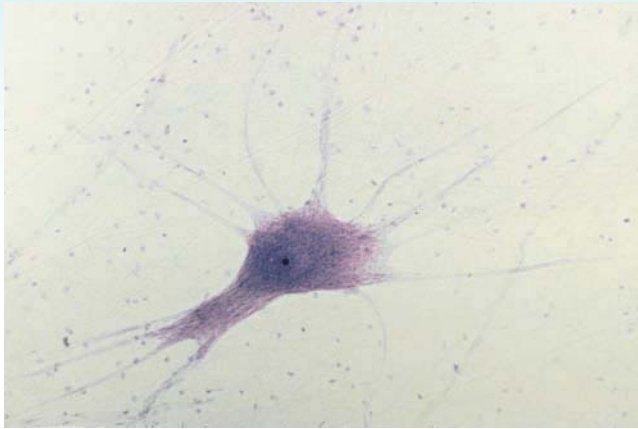
**Figure 2–11** Epithelial tissue. Some examples of epithelial tissue include (a) simple (single layer) squamous (cells are flattened) epithelial tissue, (b) simple cuboidal (cells are cube shaped) epithelial tissue, (c) simple columnar (cells are column shaped) epithelial tissue, and (d) stratified (multilayered) squamous epithelial tissue. (Photomicrographs courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, MS, VMD.)



**Figure 2-12** Connective tissue. Some examples of connective tissue include (a) loose connective tissue (typically found attached to abdominal organs), (b) dense connective tissue (found in tissues such as ligaments), (c) adipose tissue (lipid or fat tissue), and (d) cartilage (articular cartilage is found on the ends of bones). (Photomicrographs courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, MS, VMD.)



**Figure 2-13** Muscle tissue. The three types of muscle include (a) skeletal muscle, (b) cardiac muscle, and (c) smooth muscle. (Photomicrographs courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, MS, VMD.)



**Figure 2–14** Nervous tissue. Photomicrograph of a neuron from the spinal cord of a bovine. (Photomicrographs courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, MS, VMD.)

means formation, development, and increase in the *size* of tissue and cells. The use of different prefixes describes problems with tissue formation.

- **Anaplasia** (ahn-ah-plā-zē-ah) is a change in the structure of cells and their orientation to each other.
- **Aplasia** (ā-plā-zē-ah) is lack of development of an organ or a tissue or a cell.
- **Dysplasia** (dihs-plā-zē-ah) is abnormal growth or development of an organ or a tissue or a cell.
- **Hyperplasia** (hī-pər-plā-zē-ah) is an abnormal increase in the number of normal cells in normal arrangement in an organ or a tissue or a cell.
- **Hypoplasia** (hī-pō-plā-zē-ah) is incomplete or less than normal development of an organ or a tissue or a cell.
- **Neoplasia** (nē-ō-plā-zē-ah) is any abnormal new growth of tissue in which multiplication of cells is uncontrolled, more rapid than normal, and progressive. Neoplasms usually form a distinct mass of tissue called a **tumor** (too-mər). Tumors may be **benign** (beh-nīn), meaning not recurring, or **malignant** (mah-lihg-nahnt), meaning tending to spread and be life threatening. The suffix **-oma** (ō-mah) means tumor or neoplasm.
- **Atrophy** (ah-tō-fē) is decrease in size or complete wasting of an organ or tissue or cell.

- **Dystrophy** (dihs-trō-fē) is defective growth in the size of an organ or tissue or cell.
- **Hypertrophy** (hī-pər-tō-fē) is increase in the size of an organ or tissue or cell.

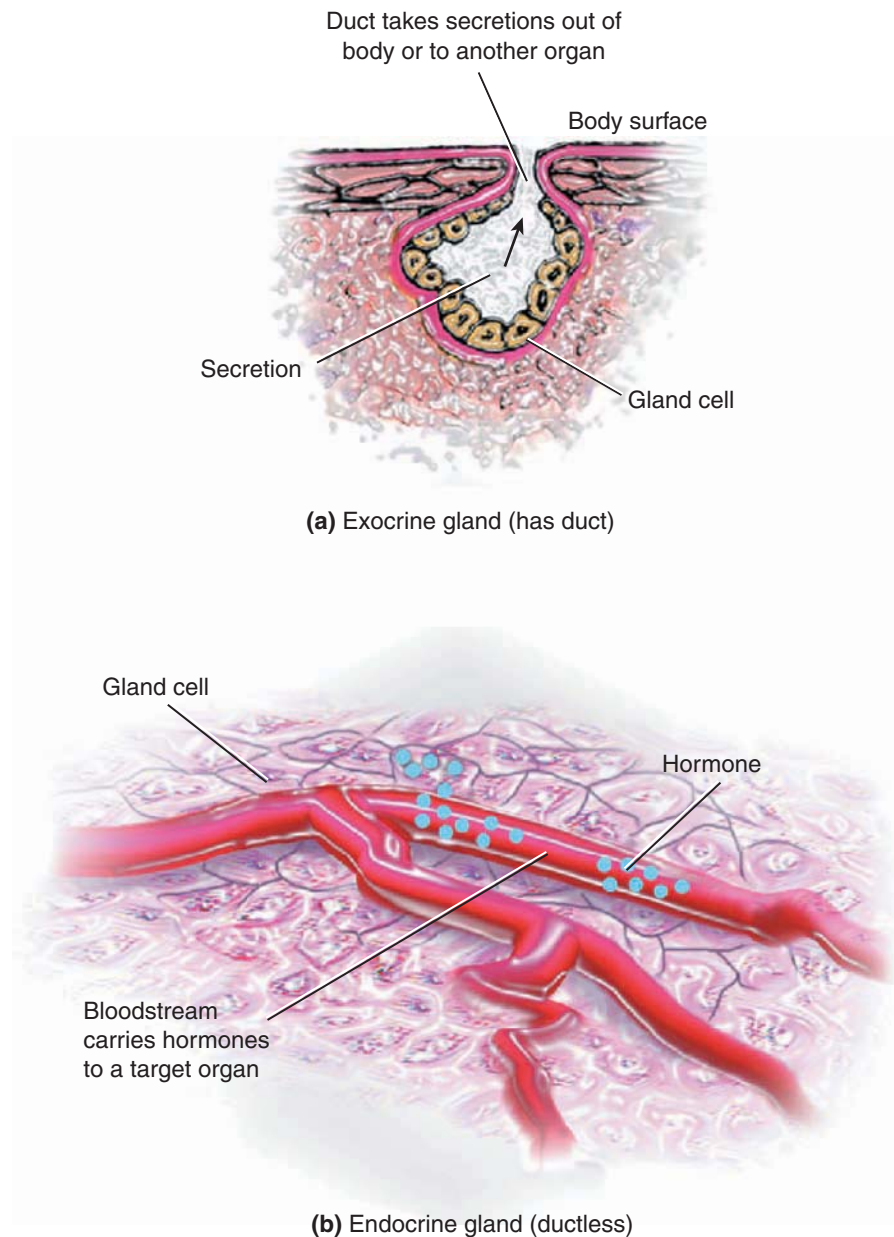
The prefix *a-* means without, *hypo-* means less than normal, *hyper-* means more than normal, *dys-* means bad, *ana-* means without, and *neo-* means new.

**Glands** (glahndz) are groups of specialized cells that secrete material used elsewhere in the body. *Aden/o* is the combining form for gland. Glands are divided into two categories: exocrine and endocrine (Figure 2–15). **Exocrine** (ehck-soh-krihn) **glands** are groups of cells that secrete their chemical substances into ducts that lead out of the body or to another organ. Examples of exocrine glands are sweat glands, sebaceous glands, and the portion of the pancreas that secretes digestive chemicals. **Endocrine** (ehn-dō-krihn) **glands** are groups of cells that secrete their chemical substances directly into the bloodstream, which transports them throughout the body. Endocrine glands are ductless. Examples of endocrine glands are the thyroid gland, the pituitary gland, and the portion of the pancreas that secretes insulin.

An **organ** (ohr-gahn) is a part of the body that performs a special function or functions. Each organ has its own combining form or forms, as listed in Table 2–2. The combining forms have either Latin or Greek origins. If a body part has two combining forms that are used to describe it, how do you know which form to use? In general, the Latin term is used to describe or modify something, as in *renal disease* and *renal tubule*. The Greek term generally is used to describe a pathological finding, as in *nephritis* and *nephropathy*.

## 1, 2, 3, GO

Medical terms can be further modified by the use of prefixes to assign number value (Table 2–3), numerical order, or proportions. The following prefixes are also used in everyday English, so some of them may be familiar. For example, unicorns are animals with one horn (*uni* = one, *corn* = horn). It would make sense then that a **bicornuate uterus** (*bi* = two, *corn* = horn) is a uterus with two horns. Knowing that *lateral* means pertaining to the side, it would make sense that **unilateral** (yoo-nih-lah-tər-ahl) means pertaining to one side. **Bilateral** (bi-lah-tər-ahl) means pertaining to two sides.



**Figure 2–15** Types of glands. Exocrine glands secrete their chemical substances into ducts that lead out of the body or to another organ. Endocrine glands secrete their chemical substances (hormones) directly into the bloodstream.

**Table 2-2 Combining Forms for Organs**

Body System	Combining Form	Major Functions
Skeletal system	bones = <b>oste/o</b> (ohs-tē-ō), <b>oss/e</b> (ohs-ē), or <b>oss/i</b> (ohs-ih) joints = <b>arthr/o</b> (ahr-thrō) cartilage = <b>chondr/o</b> (kohn-drō)	Support and shape, protection, hematopoiesis, mineral storage
Muscular system	muscles = <b>my/o</b> (mī-ō) fascia = <b>fasc/i</b> (fahs-ē) or <b>fasci/o</b> (fahs-ē-ō) tendons = <b>ten/o</b> (tehn-ō), <b>tend/o</b> (tehn-dō), or <b>tendin/o</b> (tehn-dih-nō)	Locomotion, movement of body fluids, body heat generation
Cardiovascular system	heart = <b>cardi/o</b> (kahr-dē-ō) arteries = <b>arteri/o</b> (ahr-tē-rē-ō) veins = <b>ven/o</b> (vēn-ō) or <b>phleb/o</b> (fleh-bō) blood = <b>hem/o</b> (hē-mō) or <b>hemat/o</b> (hē-maht-ō)	Delivers oxygen and nutrients to tissue, transports cellular waste from body, performs immune function and endocrine function
Lymphatic and immune systems	lymph vessels, fluid, and nodes = <b>lymph/o</b> (lihm-fō) tonsils = <b>tonsill/o</b> (tohn-sih-lō) spleen = <b>splen/o</b> (spleh-nō) thymus = <b>thym/o</b> (thī-mō)	Provide nutrients to and remove waste from tissues, protect the body from harmful substances
Respiratory system	nose or nares = <b>nas/o</b> (nā-zō) or <b>rhin/o</b> (rī-nō) pharynx = <b>pharyng/o</b> (fahr-ihn-gō) trachea = <b>trache/o</b> (trā-kē-ō) larynx = <b>laryng/o</b> (lahr-ihng-gō) lungs = <b>pneum/o</b> (nū-mō) or <b>pneumon/o</b> (nū-mohn-ō)	Brings oxygen into the body for transportation to the cells, removes carbon dioxide and some water waste from the body
Digestive system	mouth = <b>or/o</b> (ōr-ō) or <b>stomat/o</b> (stō-maht-ō) esophagus = <b>esophag/o</b> (eh-sohf-ah-gō) stomach = <b>gastr/o</b> (gahs-trō) small intestine = <b>enter/o</b> (ehn-tār-ō) large intestine = <b>col/o</b> (kō-lō) or <b>colon/o</b> (kō-lohn-ō) liver = <b>hepat/o</b> (hehp-ah-tō) pancreas = <b>pancreat/o</b> (pahnh-kre-ah-tō)	Digestion of ingested food, absorption of digested food, elimination of solid waste
Urinary system	kidneys = <b>ren/o</b> (rē-nō) or <b>nephro/o</b> (nehf-rō) ureters = <b>ureter/o</b> (yoo-rē-tār-ō) urinary bladder = <b>cyst/o</b> (sihs-tō) urethra = <b>urethr/o</b> (yoo-rē-thrō)	Filters blood to remove waste, maintains electrolyte balance, regulates fluid balance
Nervous system and special senses	nerves = <b>neur/o</b> (nū-rō) or <b>neur/i</b> (nū-rē) brain = <b>encephal/o</b> (ehn-sehf-ah-lō) spinal cord = <b>myel/o</b> (mī-eh-lō) eyes = <b>ophthalm/o</b> (ohf-thahl-mō), <b>ocul/o</b> (ohck-yoo-lō), <b>opt/o</b> (ohp-tō), or <b>opt/i</b> (ohp-tē) sight = <b>optic/o</b> (ohp-tih-kō) ears = <b>ot/o</b> (ō-tō), <b>aur/i</b> (awr-ih), or <b>aur/o</b> (awr-ō) <b>audit/o</b> (aw-dih-tō), or <b>aud/i</b> (aw-dē) external ear = sound = <b>acoust/o</b> (ah-koo-stō) or <b>acous/o</b> (ah-koo-sō)	Coordinating mechanism, reception of stimuli, transmission of messages

*continued*

**Table 2-2 Combining Forms for Organs (continued)**

Body System	Combining Form	Major Functions
Integumentary system	skin = <b>dermat/o</b> (dər-mah-tō), <b>derm/o</b> (dər-mō), or <b>cutane/o</b> (kyoo-tā-nē-ō)	Protection of body, temperature, and water regulation
Endocrine system	adrenals = <b>adren/o</b> (ahd-reh-nō) gonads = <b>gonad/o</b> (gō-nahd-ō) pineal = <b>pineal/o</b> (pī-nē-ahl-ō) pituitary = <b>pituit/o</b> (pih-too-ih-tō) thyroid = <b>thyroid/o</b> (thī-royd-ō) or <b>thyr/o</b> (thī-rō)	Integrates body functions, homeostasis, growth
Reproductive system	testes = <b>orch/o</b> (ōr-kō), <b>orchi/o</b> (ōr-kē-ō), <b>orchid/o</b> (ōr-kih-d-ō), or <b>testicul/o</b> (tehst-tihck-yoo-lō) ovaries = <b>ovari/o</b> (ō-vā-rē-ō) or <b>oophor/o</b> (ō-ohf-ehr-ō) uterus = <b>hyster/o</b> (hihs-tehr-ō), <b>metr/o</b> (mē-trō), <b>metr/i</b> (mē-trē), <b>metri/o</b> (mē-trē-ō), or <b>uter/o</b> (yoo-tar-ō)	Production of new life

**Table 2-3 Prefixes Assigning Number Value**

Number Value	Latin Prefix	Greek Prefix	Examples
1	uni-	mono-	unicorn, unilateral monochromatic, monocyte
2	duo-, bi-	dyo-	duet, bilateral, dyad
3	tri-	tri-	trio, triceratops, triathlon
4	quadri- or quadro-	tetr- or tetra-	quadruplet, tetralogy, tetroxide
5	quinqu-, quint-	pent- or penta-	quintet, pentagon
6	sex-	hex- or hexa-	sexennial, hexose, hexagon
7	sept- or septi-	hept- or hepta-	septuple, heptarchy
8	octo-	oct-, octa-, or octo-	octave, octopus
9	novem- or nonus-	ennea-	nonuple, ennead
10	deca- or decem-	dek- or deka-	decade, dekanem

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. Lateral means
  - a. near the beginning
  - b. near the front
  - c. toward the side
  - d. toward midline
2. The sagittal plane divides the body into
  - a. cranial and caudal portions
  - b. left and right portions
  - c. equal left and right halves
  - d. dorsal and ventral portions
3. The paw is \_\_\_\_\_ to the shoulder.
  - a. caudal
  - b. cranial
  - c. proximal
  - d. distal
4. The transverse plane divides the body into
  - a. cranial and caudal portions
  - b. left and right portions
  - c. equal left and right halves
  - d. dorsal and ventral portions
5. The lining of the abdominal cavity and some of its organs is called the
  - a. mesentery
  - b. peritoneum
  - c. thoracum
  - d. membrane
6. The study of structure, composition, and function of tissues is called
  - a. cytology
  - b. histology
  - c. pathology
  - d. organology
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ plane divides the body into dorsal and ventral portions.
  - a. sagittal
  - b. midsagittal
  - c. dorsal
  - d. transverse
8. The medical term for lying down is
  - a. lateral
  - b. sternal
  - c. recumbent
  - d. surface
9. The medical term for increase in size of an organ, tissue, or cell is
  - a. atrophy
  - b. hypertrophy
  - c. dystrophy
  - d. hyperplasia
10. The medical term for the caudal surface of the rear paw, hoof, or foot is
  - a. ventral
  - b. dorsal
  - c. palmar
  - d. plantar
11. The term for toward the midline is
  - a. medial
  - b. lateral
  - c. proximal
  - d. distal
12. The term for nearest the midline or the beginning of a structure is
  - a. medial
  - b. lateral
  - c. proximal
  - d. distal

13. The term for away from the midline is
  - a. medial
  - b. lateral
  - c. proximal
  - d. distal
14. The term for farthest from the midline or beginning of a structure is
  - a. medial
  - b. lateral
  - c. proximal
  - d. distal
15. The term that refers to the back is
  - a. ventral
  - b. dorsal
  - c. cranial
  - d. caudal
16. The term that means toward the tail is
  - a. ventral
  - b. dorsal
  - c. cranial
  - d. caudal
17. The term that means toward the head is
  - a. ventral
  - b. dorsal
  - c. cranial
  - d. caudal
18. The term that refers to the belly or underside of a body is
  - a. ventral
  - b. dorsal
  - c. cranial
  - d. caudal
19. Which type of tissue covers internal and external body surfaces?
  - a. adipose
  - b. epithelial
  - c. connective
  - d. cytoplasm
20. The term for a hole or hollow space in the body that contains and protects internal organs is
  - a. abdomen
  - b. peritoneal
  - c. cavity
  - d. membrane

**Matching**

Match the number in Column I with its prefix in Column II. Each number may have more than one correct answer.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ one	a. hept-
2. _____ two	b. mono-
3. _____ three	c. tri-
4. _____ four	d. deka-
5. _____ five	e. duo-
6. _____ six	f. uni-
7. _____ seven	g. penta-
8. _____ eight	h. octo-
9. _____ nine	i. quadri-, quadro-
10. _____ ten	j. tetra-
	k. sex-
	l. nonus-
	m. deca-
	n. quinqu-

Match the pathology term in Column I with its definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
11. _____ anaplasia	a. abnormal growth or development of an organ or a tissue or a cell
12. _____ aplasia	b. a change in the structure of cells and their orientation to each other
13. _____ dysplasia	c. an abnormal increase in the number of normal cells in normal arrangement in an organ, a tissue, or a cell
14. _____ hyperplasia	d. incomplete or less than normal development of an organ, a tissue, or a cell
15. _____ hypoplasia	e. lack of development of an organ, a tissue, or a cell

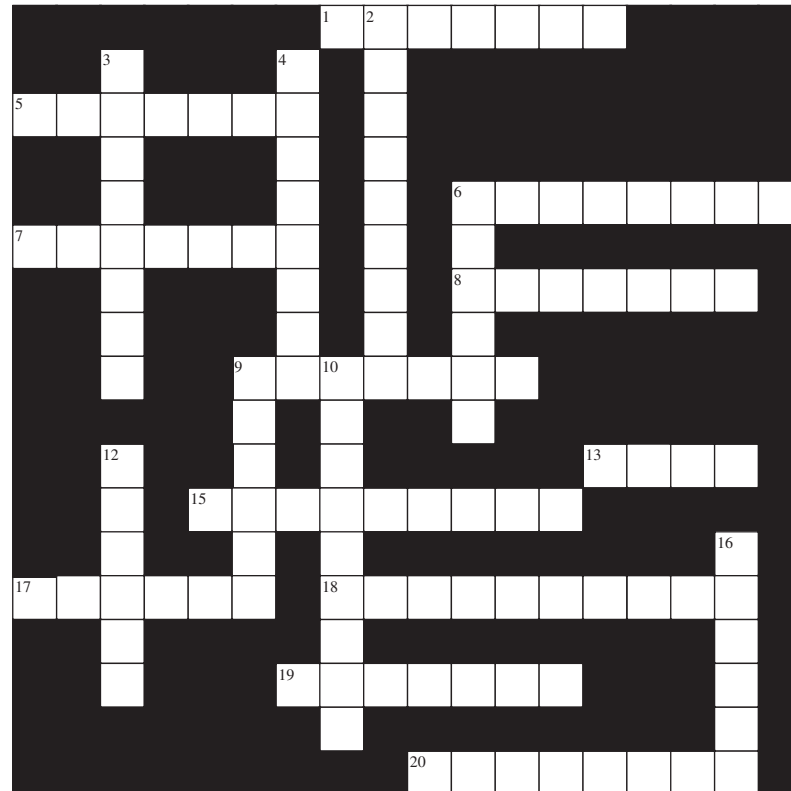
**Fill in the Blanks**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ is also known as the navel.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ glands secrete chemical substances directly into the bloodstream.
3. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is any new growth of tissue in which multiplication of cells is uncontrolled, more rapid than normal, and progressive.
4. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a deviation from what is regarded as normal.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ cavity contains the heart and lungs.
6. The caudal surface of the front paw, foot, or hoof is the \_\_\_\_\_ surface.
7. The shoulder is \_\_\_\_\_ to the pelvis.
8. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is the basic structural unit of the body.
9. The stomach is located \_\_\_\_\_ to the heart.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is the palmar or plantar movement of joint angles.
11. Another term for groin is \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a layer of the peritoneum that suspends parts of the intestine in the abdominal cavity.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is the suffix for formative material of cells.
14. Not malignant is \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The five combining forms for uterus are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.
16. The plane that divides the animal into equal right and left halves is the \_\_\_\_\_.
17. The plane that divides the animal into cranial and caudal parts is the \_\_\_\_\_.
18. The study of body structure is called \_\_\_\_\_.
19. The study of body function is called \_\_\_\_\_.
20. The aspect of the tooth of the mandible that faces the tongue is called the \_\_\_\_\_.
21. The aspect of the tooth that faces the cheek is called the \_\_\_\_\_.
22. Movement toward the midline is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Movement away from the midline is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
24. Groups of specialized cells that secrete material used elsewhere in the body are known as \_\_\_\_\_.
25. A part of the body that performs a special function or functions is known as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.

## CROSSWORD PUZZLES

### Directional Terms and Planes of the Body

Supply the correct term in the appropriate space for the definition listed.



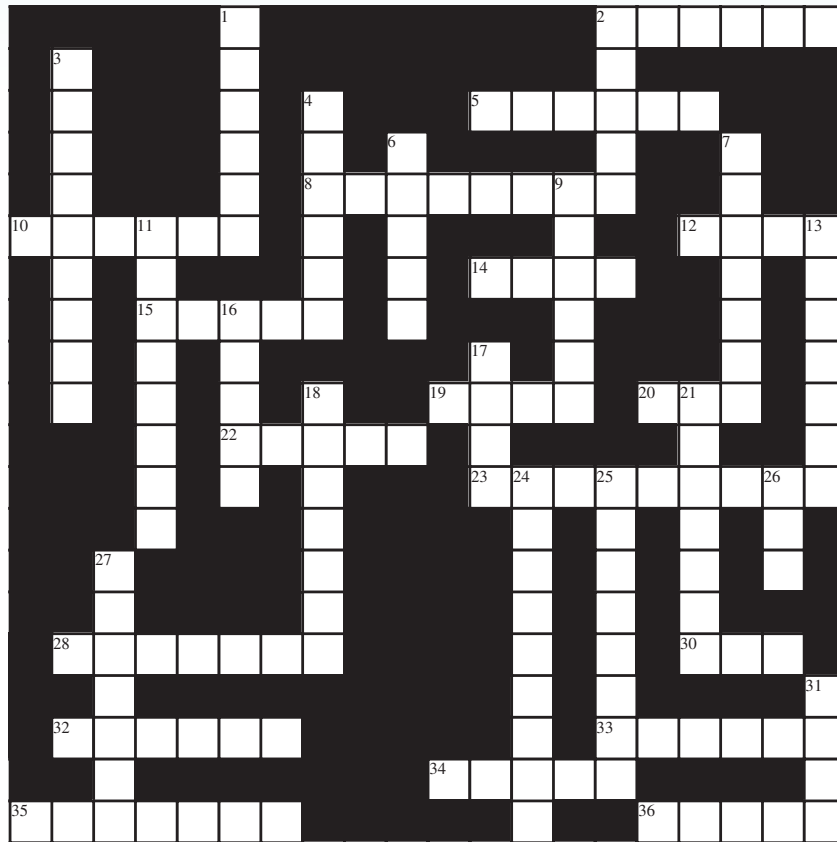
#### Across

- 1 pertaining to the belly
- 5 to reduce the angle between two bones
- 6 situated nearest the midline
- 7 bottom of the rear foot, hoof, or paw
- 8 pertaining to towards the side
- 9 pertaining to towards the head
- 13 positioned away from the surface
- 15 to move towards midline
- 17 situated farthest from midline
- 18 plane dividing the body into cranial and caudal portions
- 19 pertaining to the nose end of the head
- 20 plane dividing the body into left and right portions

#### Down

- 2 to increase the angle between two bones
- 3 pertaining to the head
- 4 below or lowermost
- 6 bottom of the front foot, hoof, or paw
- 9 pertaining to towards the tail
- 10 to move away from midline
- 12 pertaining to the back
- 16 pertaining to towards midline

## Organ Combining Forms



### Across

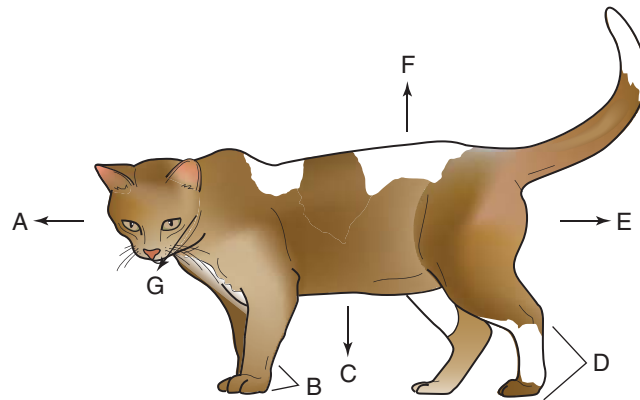
- 2 kidney
- 5 lungs
- 8 pharynx
- 10 spleen
- 12 blood
- 14 nose or nares
- 15 bone
- 19 vein
- 20 ear
- 22 spinal cord
- 23 eye
- 28 urethra
- 30 mouth
- 32 small intestine
- 33 lymph vessel, fluid, or node
- 34 uterus
- 35 cartilage
- 36 urinary bladder

### Down

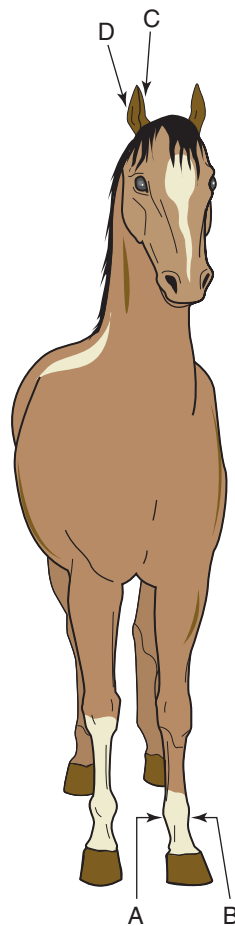
- 1 joint
- 2 nerves
- 3 brain
- 4 liver
- 6 fascia
- 7 ureters
- 9 stomach
- 11 esophagus
- 13 testes
- 16 thymus
- 17 tendon
- 18 skin
- 21 trachea
- 24 pancreas
- 25 tonsil
- 26 muscle
- 27 larynx
- 31 large intestine

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

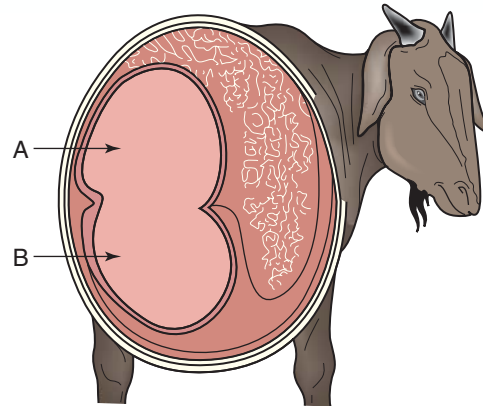
For Figures 2–16, 2–17, 2–18, 2–19, 2–20, and 2–21, follow the instructions provided in the captions.



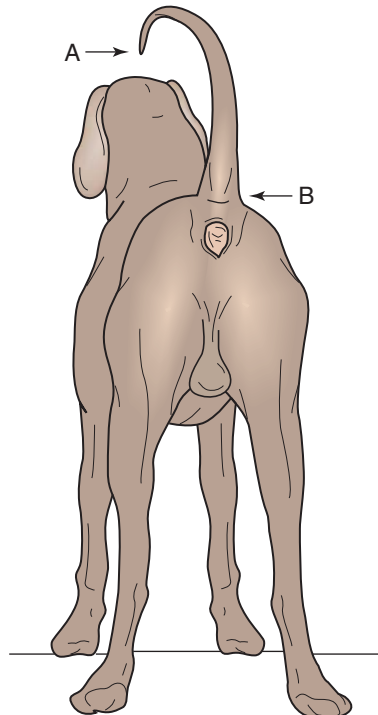
**Figure 2–16** Label the arrows with the proper directional term.



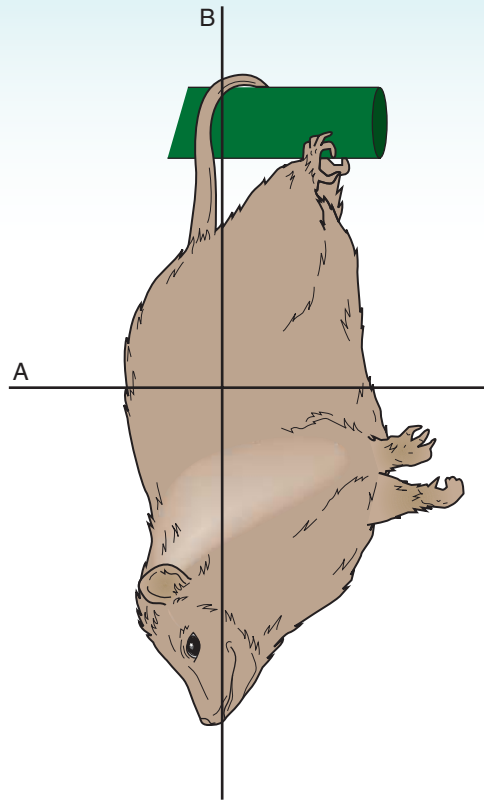
**Figure 2–17** Label the arrows with the proper directional term.



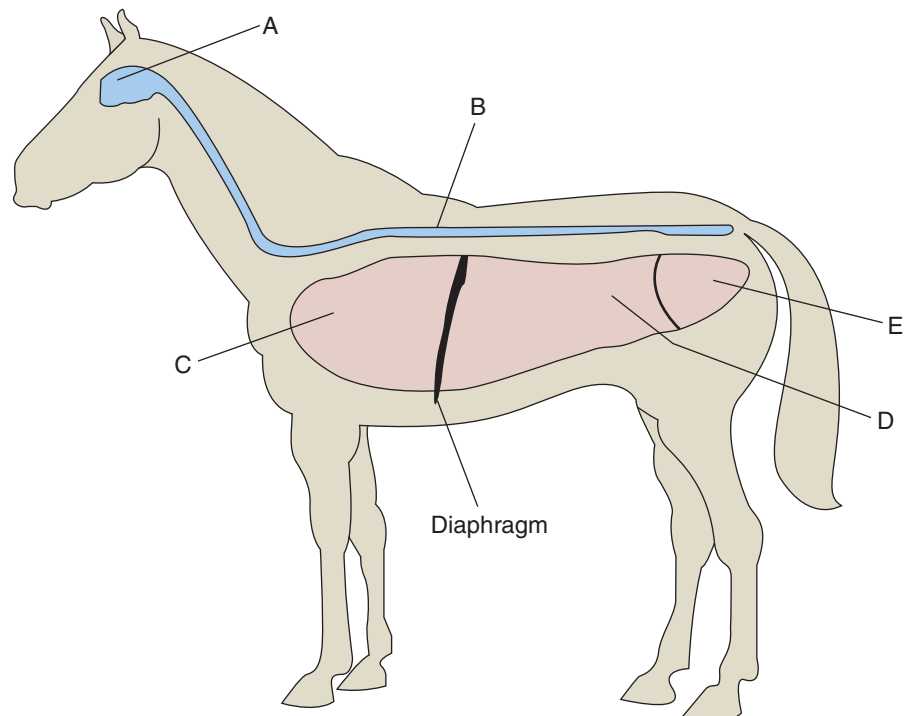
**Figure 2–18** Label the sacs of the rumen. Through which plane is this goat sectioned?



**Figure 2–19** Is point A the more proximal or more distal end of the tail? Is point B the more proximal or more distal end of the tail?



**Figure 2-20** What plane of the body is plane A? What plane of the body is plane B?



**Figure 2-21** Label the body cavities in this drawing using the terminology on page 20 as a guide.

## CASE STUDY

---

After reading the case study, define the list of terms.

A 7-year-old male Siberian husky presented to the clinic with a cough that has become more severe in the past few weeks. Today the dog collapsed while playing fetch and was rushed to the veterinary clinic. Once the dog was stabilized, thoracic radiographs were taken and a tumor was seen in the cranial thoracic area. There also was hypertrophy of the right side of the heart. The veterinarian was concerned that the dog may have a malignant tumor and requested more tests.

Define the terms using the word parts.

1. thoracic \_\_\_\_\_
2. tumor \_\_\_\_\_
3. cranial \_\_\_\_\_
4. hypertrophy \_\_\_\_\_
5. malignant \_\_\_\_\_

# CHAPTER 3

## MEAT AND BONES

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the major structures and functions of the musculoskeletal system
- Describe bone anatomy terms
- Differentiate between the axial and appendicular skeletons
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the musculoskeletal system
- Construct musculoskeletal terms from word parts

### FUNCTIONS OF THE SKELETAL SYSTEM

The **musculoskeletal** (muhs-kyoo-lō-skehl-eh-tahl) **system** consists of two systems that work together to support the body and allow movement of the animal—the skeletal system and the muscular system. The skeletal system forms the framework that supports and protects an animal's body. Within bone is the red bone marrow, which functions to form red blood cells, white blood cells, and clotting cells. Joints aid in the movement of the body. Cartilage protects the ends of bones where they contact each other. Cartilage is also found in the ear and nose. The muscular system is covered later in this chapter.



# STRUCTURES OF THE SKELETAL SYSTEM

The skeletal system consists of bones, cartilage, joints, ligaments, and tendons.

## Make the Connection

The skeleton is made up of various forms of connective tissues. Connective tissue is a type of tissue in which the proportion of cells to extracellular matrix is small. Connective tissue binds together and supports various structures of the body. Bone, tendons, ligaments, and cartilage are all connective tissues associated with the skeletal system.

## Bone

Bone, a form of connective tissue, is one of the hardest tissues in the body. Embryonically, the skeleton is made of cartilage and fibrous membranes that harden into bone before birth.

**Ossification** (ohs-ih-fih-kā-shuhn), the formation of bone from fibrous tissue, continues until maturity, which varies with species. Normal bone goes through a continuous process of building up and breaking down throughout an animal's life. This process allows bone to heal and repair itself. Bone growth



### Descriptive Word Parts for the Skeletal System

**epi-** = above, **physis** = growth, **dia-** = between, **peri-** = surrounding, **oste/o-** = bone, **-um** = structure, **endo-** = within or inner, **meta-** = beyond

Table 3-1 Terminology Applied to Bone

#### Types of Bone

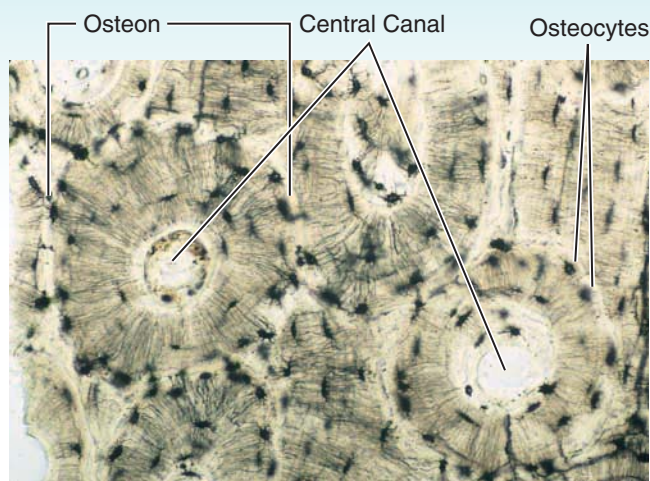
<b>cortical bone</b> (kōr-tih-kahl)	hard, dense, strong bone that forms the outer layer of bone; also called compact bone <b>cortex</b> = bark or shell in Latin
<b>cancellous bone</b> (kahn-sehl-uhs)	lighter, less strong bone that is found in the ends and inner portions of long bones; also called spongy bone <b>cancellous</b> = latticework in Latin

#### Bone Anatomy Terms

<b>epiphysis</b> (eh-pihf-ih-sihs)	wide end of a long bone, which is covered with articular cartilage and is composed of cancellous bone <b>proximal epiphysis</b> = located nearest the midline of the body <b>distal epiphysis</b> = located farthest away from the midline of the body
<b>diaphysis</b> (dī-ahf-ih-sihs) <b>physis</b> (fi-sihs)	shaft of a long bone that is composed mainly of compact bone cartilage segment of long bone that involves growth of the bone; also called the <b>growth plate</b> or <b>epiphyseal cartilage</b> (Figure 3-3)
<b>metaphysis</b> (meh-tahf-ih-sihs)	wider part of long bone shaft located adjacent to the physis; in adult animals, it is considered part of the epiphysis
<b>periosteum</b> (pehr-ē-ohs-tē-uhm) <b>endosteum</b> (ehn-dohs-tē-uhm)	tough, fibrous tissue that forms the outer covering of bone tough, fibrous tissue that forms the lining of the medullary cavity

#### Bone Classification

<b>long bones</b>	bones consisting of shaft, two ends, and a marrow cavity (i.e., femur)
<b>short bones</b>	cube-shaped bones with no marrow cavity (i.e., carpal bones)
<b>flat bones</b>	thin, flat bones (i.e., pelvis)
<b>pneumatic bones</b>	sinus-containing bones (i.e., frontal bone)
<b>irregular bones</b>	unpaired bones (i.e., vertebrae)
<b>sesamoid bones</b>	small bones embedded in a tendon (i.e., patella) (the only exception is the distal sesamoid of the horse)



**Figure 3–1** Microscopic structure of compact bone, showing osteons with a central canal. The bone matrix is deposited in a circular arrangement. Darkly stained osteocytes are visible in the matrix. (Photomicrograph courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, MS, VMD.)

is balanced between the actions of **osteoblasts** (ohs-tē-ō-blahsts) and **osteoclasts** (ohs-tē-ō-klahsts). Osteoblasts (**oste/o** = bone, **-blasts** = immature) are immature bone cells that produce bony tissue, and osteoclasts (**oste/o** = bone, **-clasts** = break) are phagocytic cells that eat away bony tissue from the medullary cavity of bone (Figure 3–1). When osteoblasts mature, they become **osteocytes** (ohs-tē-ō-sītz). The combining forms for bone are **oste/o**, **oss/e**, and **oss/i**.

Red bone marrow, located in cancellous bone, is **hematopoietic** (hēm-ah-tō-poy-eh-tihck). The combining form **hemat/o** means blood, and the suffix **-poietic** means pertaining to formation. Thus, red bone marrow produces red blood cells, white blood cells, and clotting cells. The **medullary** (mehd-yoo-lahr-ē) **cavity** of bone, or the inner space of bone, contains yellow bone marrow. In adult animals, yellow bone marrow replaces red bone marrow. Yellow bone marrow is composed mainly of fat cells and serves as a fat storage area.

Bone is divided into different categories based on bone types, bone shapes, and bone functions (Table 3–1 and Figure 3–2).

## Cartilage

**Cartilage** (kahr-tih-lihdj) is another form of connective tissue that is more elastic than bone. The elasticity of cartilage makes it useful in the more flexible portions of the skeleton. **Articular** (ahr-tihck-yoo-lahr) **cartilage**, a specific type of cartilage, covers the joint surfaces of bone. The **meniscus** (meh-nih-skuhs) is a curved fibrous cartilage found in some joints, such as the canine stifle, that cushions forces applied to the joint. The combining form for cartilage is **chondr/o**.



### Soft versus Hard

Bone diseases can cause abnormal changes. Bones can become softer than normal or harder than normal. To describe these changes, the suffixes **-malacia** (abnormal softening) and **-sclerosis** (abnormal hardening) are used.

## Joints

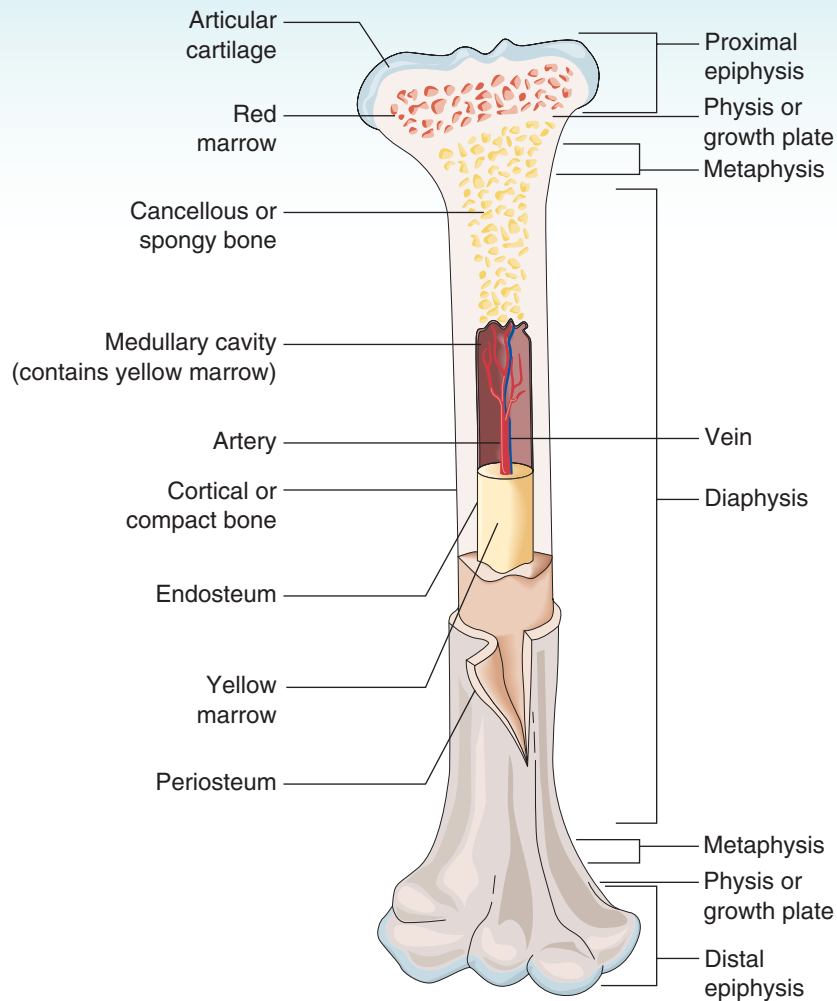
**Joints** or **articulations** (ahr-tihck-yoo-lā-shuhns) are connections between bones. *Articulate* means to join in a way that allows motion between the parts. The combining form for joint is **arthr/o**. The different types of joints are based on their function and degree of movement.

Joints are classified based on their degree of movement (Figure 3–4). **Synarthroses** (sihn-ahrth-rō-sēz) allow no movement, **amphiarthroses** (ahm-fih-ahrth-rō-sēz) allow slight movement, and **diarthroses** (dī-ahrth-rō-sēz) allow free movement.

Synarthroses are immovable joints usually united with fibrous connective tissue. An example of a synarthrosis is a suture. A **suture** (soo-chuhr) is a jagged line where bones join and form a nonmovable joint. Sutures typically are found in the skull. A **fontanelle** (fohn-tah-nehl) is a soft spot remaining at the junction of sutures that usually closes after birth.

Amphiarthroses are semimovable joints. An example of an amphiarthrosis is a symphysis. A **symphysis** (sihm-fih-sihs) is a joint where two bones join and are held firmly together so that they function as one bone. Another term for *symphysis* is **cartilaginous joint**. The halves of the mandible fuse at a symphysis to form one bone. This fusion is the **mandibular symphysis**. The halves of the pelvis also fuse at a symphysis, which is called the **pubic symphysis**.

Diarthroses are freely movable joints. Examples of diarthroses are synovial joints. **Synovial** (sih-nō-vē-ahl) **joints** are further classified as ball-and-socket joints (also called **enarthrosis** (ehn-ahr-thrō-sihs) or spheroid joints), arthrodial (ahr-thrō-dē-ahl) or condyloid (kohn-dih-loyd) joints, trochoid (trō-koyd) or pivot (pih-voht) joints, ginglymus (jih-n-glih-muhs) or hinge joints, and gliding joints. **Ball-and-socket joints** allow a wide range of motion in many directions, such as the hip and shoulder joints. **Arthrodial** or **condyloid joints** are joints with oval projections that fit into a socket, such as the carpal joints (where the radius meets the carpus). **Trochoid joints** include



**Figure 3–2** Anatomy of a long bone.



**Figure 3–3** Radiograph of the radius and ulna of a young dog. Note the growth plate (physis) visible in the radius and ulna.

pulley-shaped joints like the connection between the atlas to the axis. **Hinge joints** allow motion in one plane or direction, such as canine stifle and elbow joints. **Gliding joints** move or glide over each other, as in the radioulnar joint or the

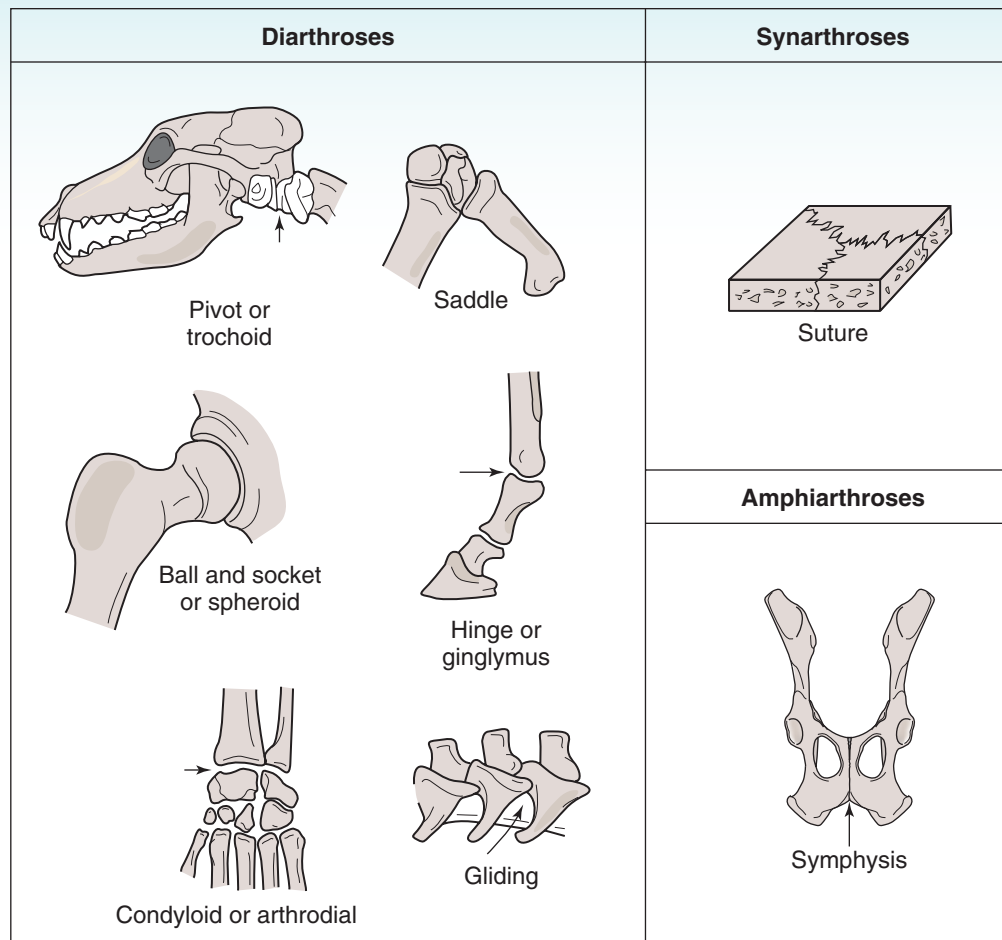
articulating process between successive vertebrae. Primates have an additional joint called the saddle joint. The only **saddle joint** is located in the carpometacarpal joint of the thumb. This saddle joint allows primates to flex, extend, abduct, adduct, and circumduct the thumb.

## Ligaments and Tendons

A **ligament** (lih-ah-mehnt) is a band of fibrous connective tissue that connects one bone to another bone. **Ligament/o** is the combining form for ligament. A ligament is different from a tendon. A **tendon** (tehn-dohn) is a band of fibrous connective tissue that connects muscle to bone. The combining forms for tendon are **ten/o**, **tend/o**, and **tendin/o**.

## Bursa

A **bursa** (bär-sah) is a fibrous sac that acts as a cushion to ease movement in areas of friction. Within the shoulder joint is a bursa where a tendon passes over bone. The combining form for bursa is **burs/o**. More than one bursa is **bursae** (bär-sā).



**Figure 3–4** Types of joints.

A way to remember that a tendon connects a muscle to bone is that both tendon and muscle have the same number of letters or that the Achilles tendon attaches the calf muscle to a bone.

## Synovial Membrane and Fluid

Bursae and synovial joints have an inner lining called the **synovial** (sīh-nō-vē-ahl) **membrane**. The synovial membrane secretes synovial fluid, which acts as a lubricant to make joint movement smooth. **Synovi/o** is the combining form for synovial membrane and synovial fluid.

## BONING UP

The skeleton is descriptively divided into two parts: the axial skeleton and the appendicular skeleton. The **axial** (ahcks-ē-ahl) **skeleton** is the framework of the body

that includes the skull, auditory ossicles, hyoid bones, vertebral column, ribs, and sternum. The **appendicular** (ahp-ehn-dihck-yoo-lahr) **skeleton** is the framework of the body that consists of the extremities, shoulder, and pelvic girdle. *Append* means to add or hang, so think of the appendages or extremities as structures that hang from the axial skeleton.

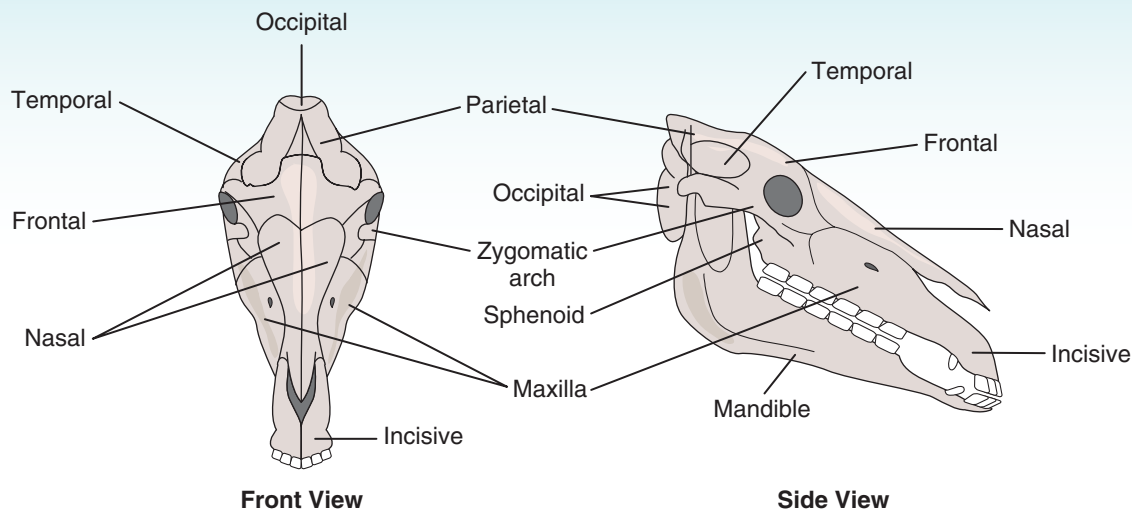
## The Axial Skeleton

The axial skeleton is composed of bones that lie around the body's center of gravity.

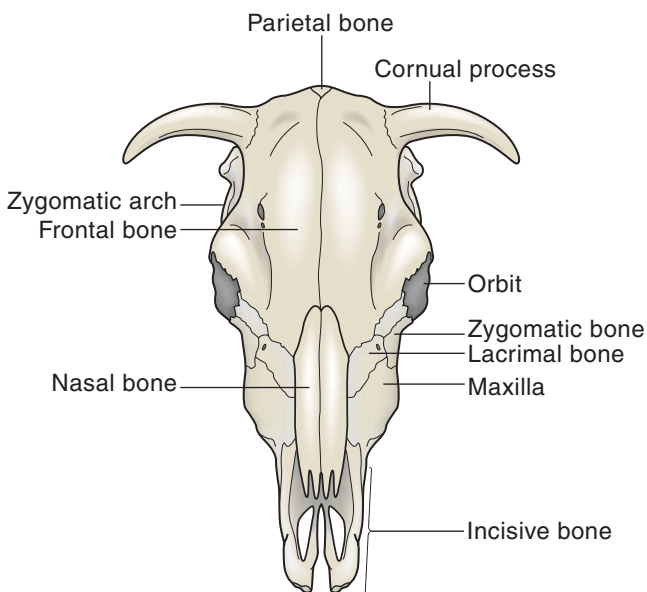
### Take It From The Top

The **cranium** (krā-nē-uhm) is the portion of the skull that encloses the brain. The combining form **crani/o** means skull. The cranium consists of the following bones (Figure 3–5):

- **frontal** (frohn-tahl) = forms the roof of the cranial cavity or “front” or cranial portion of the skull. In some species, the horn, or cornual (kohrn-yoo-ahl) process, arises from the frontal bone (Figure 3–6).
- **parietal** (pah-rī-ih-tahl) = paired bones that form the roof of the caudal cranial cavity.



**Figure 3-5** Selected bones of the skull and face.



**Figure 3-6** Skull of an ox, dorsal view.

Skull shapes in dogs can vary by breed. Examples of skull shapes in dogs include the following:

- **Brachycephalic** (brā-kē-seh-fahl-ihck) dogs have short, wide heads, as do pugs and Pekingese.
- **Dolichocephalic** (dō-lih-kō-seh-fahl-ihck) dogs have narrow, long heads, as do collies and greyhounds.
- **Mesocephalic** (mehs-ō-seh-fahl-ihck) dogs have average width to their heads, as do Labrador retrievers. Also called **mesati-cephalic** (mehs-āt-ih-seh-fahl-ihck).

- **occipital** (ohck-sihp-ih-tahl) = forms the caudal aspect of the cranial cavity where the foramen magnum, or opening for the spinal cord, is located. **Foramen** (fō-rā-mehn) is an opening in bone through which tissue passes. **Magnum** (māg-nuhm) means large.
- **temporal** (tehm-pohr-ahl) = paired bones that form the sides and base of the cranium.
- **sphenoid** (sfeh-noyd) = paired bones that form part of the base of the skull and parts of the floor and sides of the bony eye socket.
- **ethmoid** (ehth-moyd) = forms the rostral part of the cranial cavity.
- **incisive** (ihn-sīs-ihv) = forms the rostral part of the hard palate and lower edge of nares.

- **pterygoid** (tahr-ih-goyd) = forms the lateral wall of the nasopharynx.

In addition to bones, the skull also has air- or fluid-filled spaces. These air- or fluid-filled spaces are called **sinuses** (sin-uhs-ehz).

### Let's Face It

The bones of the face consist of the following:

- **zygomatic** (zī-gō-mah-tihck) = projections from the temporal and frontal bones to form the cheekbone.
- **maxilla** (mahck-sih-lah) = forms the upper jaw.
- **mandible** (mahn-dih-buhl) = forms the lower jaw.
- **palatine** (pahl-ah-tihn) = forms part of the hard palate.

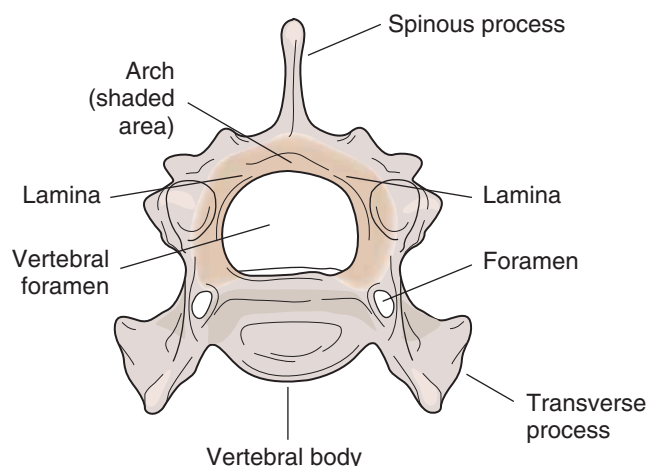
- **lacrimal** (lahck-rih-mahl) = forms the medial part of the orbit.
- **incisive** (ihn-sī-sihv) = forms the rostral part of the hard palate and lower edge of nares.
- **nasal** (nā-sahl) = forms the bridge of the nose.
- **vomer** (vō-mər) = forms the base of the nasal septum. The **nasal septum** (nā-sahl seh-p-tuhm) is the cartilaginous structure that divides the two nasal cavities.
- **hyoid** (hī-oyd) = bone suspended between the mandible and the laryngopharynx.

## Back To Basics

The **vertebral** (vər-teh-brahl) **column** (also called the **spinal column** and **backbone**) supports the head and body and protects the spinal cord. The vertebral column consists of individual bones called **vertebra** (vər-teh-brah). The combining forms for vertebra are **spondyl/o** and **vertebr/o**. More than one vertebra are called **vertebrae** (vər-teh-brā).

Vertebrae are divided into parts, and the parts may vary depending on the location of the vertebra and its function (Figure 3–7). The **body** is the solid portion ventral to the spinal cord. The **arch** is the dorsal part of the vertebra that surrounds the spinal cord. The **lamina** (lahm-ih-nah) is the left or right dorsal half of the arch. Processes project from the vertebrae. The term *process* means projection. A **spinous process** is a single projection from the dorsal part of the vertebral arch. **Transverse processes** project laterally from the right and left sides of the vertebral arch. **Articular processes** are paired cranial and caudal projections located on the dorsum of the vertebral arch.

**Foramen** (fō-rā-mehn) means opening. The opening in the middle of the vertebra through which the spinal cord passes is the **vertebral foramen**. The vertebrae are separated and cushioned from each other by cartilage discs called **intervertebral discs**.



**Figure 3–7** Parts of a vertebra.

The vertebral formulas for different species are as follows:

- dogs and cats: C = 7, T = 13, L = 7, S = 3, Cy = 6–23
- equine: C = 7, T = 18, L = 6 (or L = 5 in some Arabians), S = 5, Cy = 15–21
- bovine: C = 7, T = 13, L = 6, S = 5, Cy = 18–20
- pigs: C = 7, T = 14–15, L = 6–7, S = 4, Cy = 20–23
- sheep and goats: C = 7, T = 13, L = 6–7, S = 4, Cy = 16–18
- chicken: C = 14, T = 7, LS = 14, Cy = 6 (lumbar and sacral vertebrae are fused)

Vertebrae are organized and named by region. The regions are identified in Table 3–2 and Figures 3–8 and 3–9.

In addition, the first two vertebrae have individual names. C1 (or cervical vertebra one) is called the **atlas**, and C2 (or cervical vertebra two) is called the **axis**. (Remember that they follow alphabetical order.)

## Stick to Your Ribs

**Ribs** are paired bones that attach to thoracic vertebrae (Figure 3–10). The combining form for rib is **cost/o**. Ribs are sometimes called **costals**.

The **sternum** (stər-nuhm), or breastbone, forms the midline ventral portion of the rib cage. The sternum is divided into three parts: the manubrium, body, and xiphoid process. The **manubrium** (mah-nū-brē-uhm) is the cranial portion of the sternum. The **body** of the sternum is the middle portion. The caudal portion of the sternum is known as the **xiphoid** (zī-foyd) **process**.

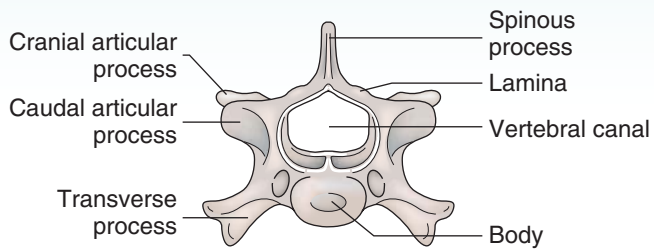
The ribs, sternum, and thoracic vertebrae make up the boundaries of the thoracic cavity. The **thoracic cavity**, or **rib cage**, protects the heart and lungs (Figure 3–11).

## The Appendicular Skeleton

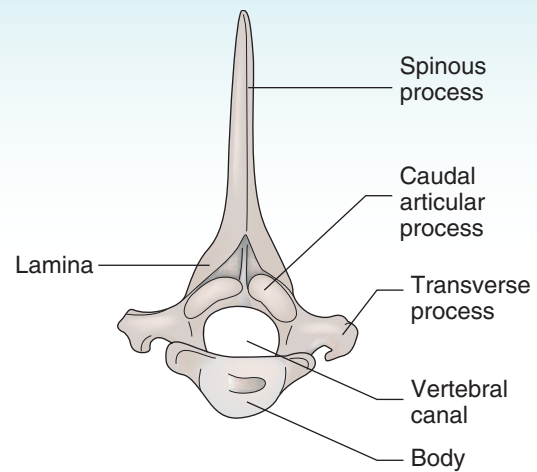
The appendicular skeleton is composed of the bones of the limbs.

### From the Front

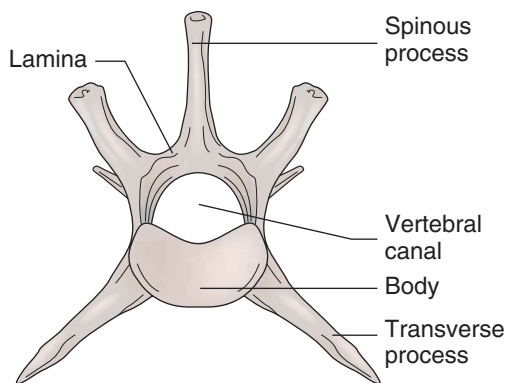
The bones of the front limb from proximal to distal consist of the scapula, clavicle, humerus, radius, ulna, carpus, metacarpals, and phalanges.



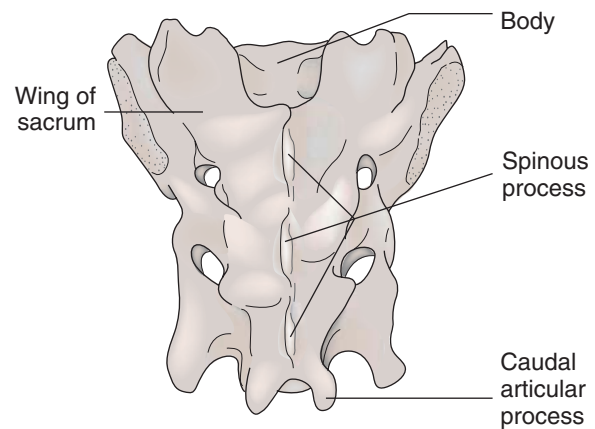
(a) Cervical Vertebrae - Caudal View



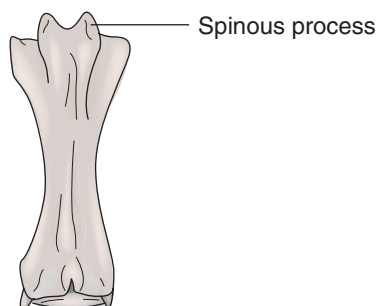
(b) Thoracic Vertebrae - Caudal View



(c) Typical Lumbar Vertebra - Cranial View



(d) Sacrum - Dorsal View

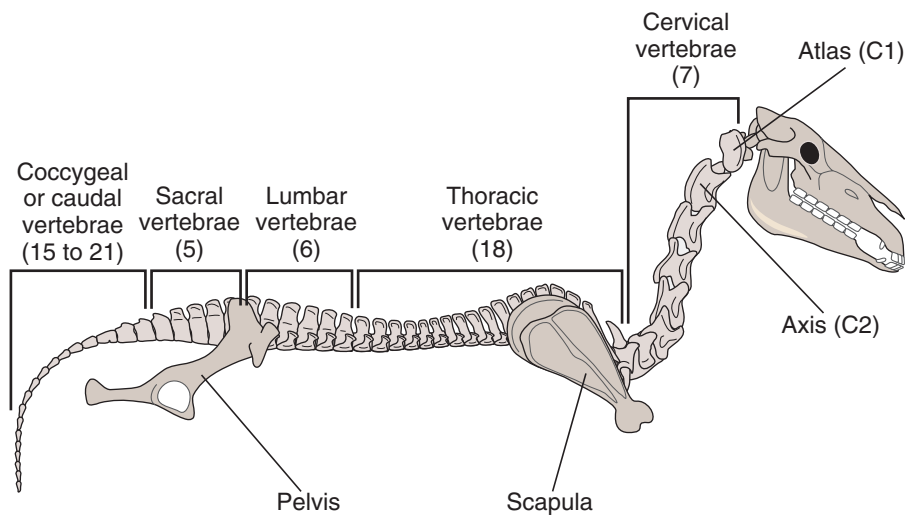
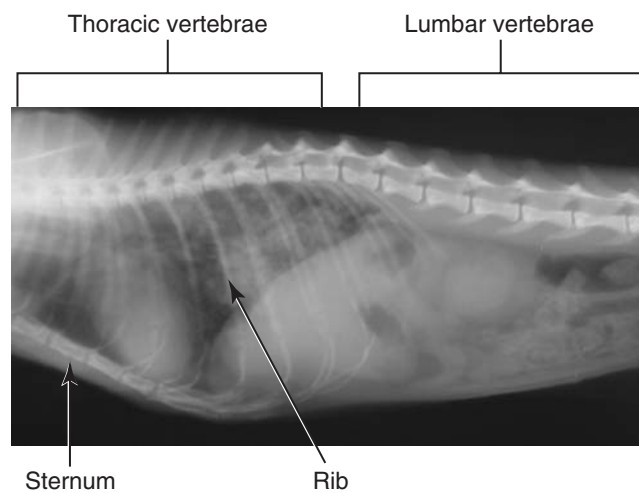


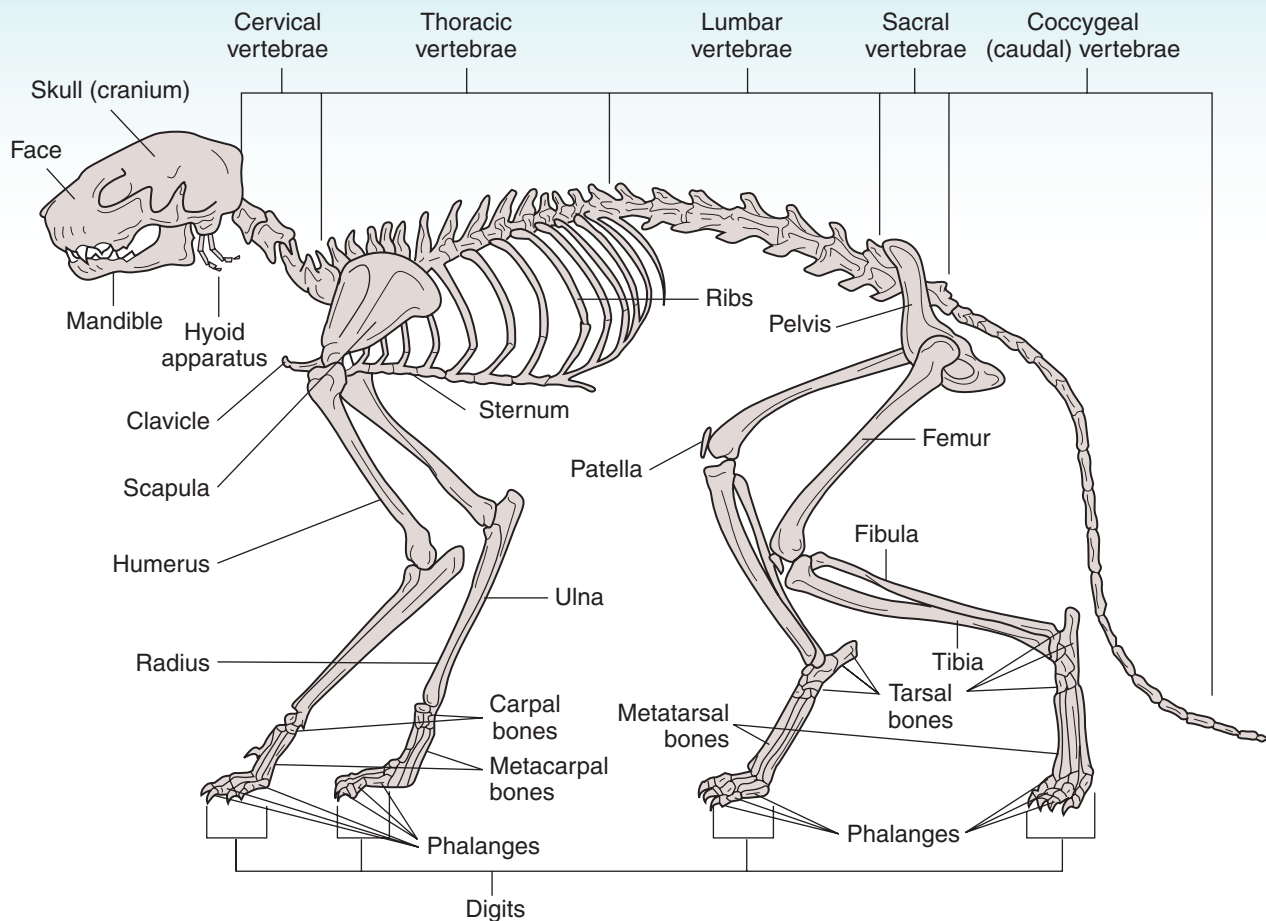
(e) Coccygeal Vertebrae - Dorsal View

**Figure 3–8** Comparison of the structure of cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal vertebrae: (a) caudal view of a cervical vertebra, (b) caudal view of a thoracic vertebra, (c) caudal view of a lumbar vertebra, (d) dorsal view of fused sacral vertebrae, and (e) dorsal view of a coccygeal vertebra.

**Table 3-2 Vertebral Regions**

<b>Cervical</b> (sihr-vih-kahl)	<b>Thoracic</b> (thō-rahs-ihck)	<b>Lumbar</b> (luhm-bahr)	<b>Sacral</b> (sā-krahl)	<b>Coccygeal</b> (kohck-sih-jē-ahl) (also called caudal)
Neck area "C"	Chest area "T"	Loin area "L"	Sacrum area "S"	Tail area "Cy" or "Cd"

**Figure 3-9** Vertebral column of a horse.**Figure 3-10** Radiograph of a cat showing the thoracic and lumbar spine. Ribs and sternum also are visible.

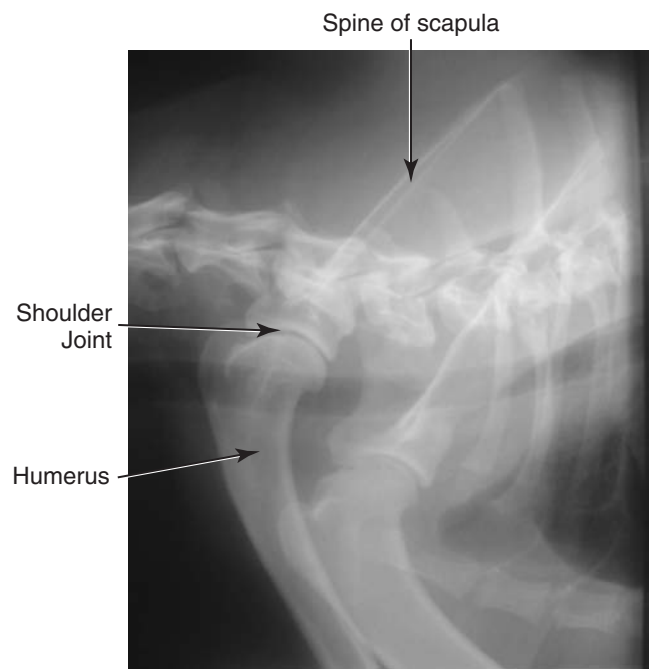


**Figure 3-11** Cat skeleton.

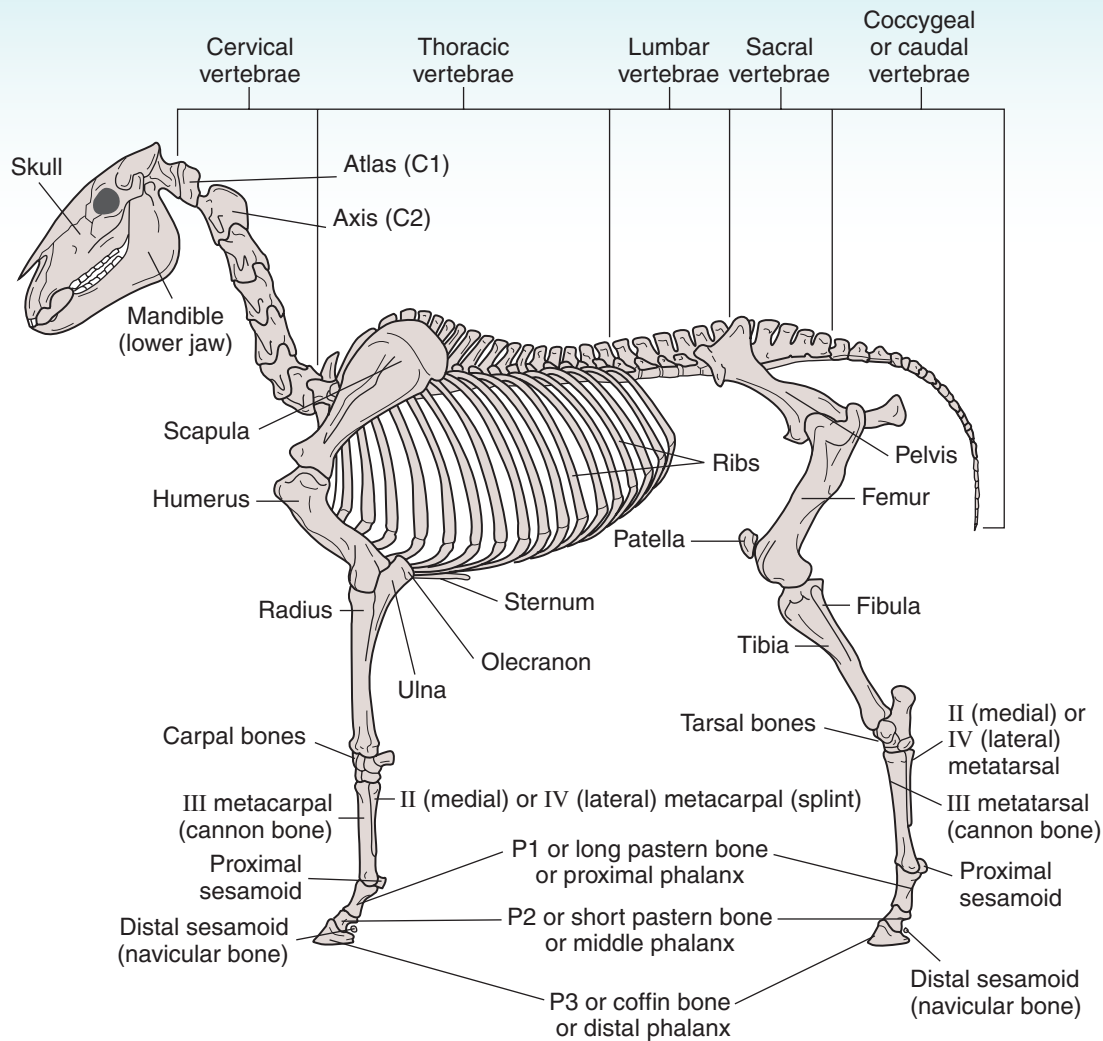
The **scapula** (skahp-yoo-lah), or **shoulder blade**, is a large triangular bone on the side of the thorax (Figure 3-12). The **clavicle** (klahv-ih-kuhl), or **collarbone**, is a slender bone that connects the sternum to the scapula. Some animal species have only a **vestigial** (vehs-tihj-ē-ahl), or **rudimentary**, clavicle, whereas other animal species, such as swine, ruminants, and equine, do not have a clavicle.

The **humerus** (hū-mər-uhs) is the long bone of the proximal front limb. The humerus is sometimes called the **brachium**. The radius and ulna are the two bones of the forearm or distal front limb. This region is called the **antebrachium**. **Ante-**means before. The **radius** (rā-dē-uhs) is the cranial bone of the front limb, and the **ulna** (uhl-nah) is the caudal bone of the front limb. The ulna has a proximal projection called the **olecranon** (ō-lehck-rah-nohn) that forms the point of the elbow. Some species have a fused radius and ulna.

The **carpal** (kahr-pahl) **bones** are irregularly shaped bones in the area known as the **wrist** in people. In small animals, this joint is called the **carpus**, and in large animals, this joint is called the **knee**. The **metacarpals** (meht-ah-kahr-pahlz) are bones found distal to the carpus (**meta-** = beyond). The metacarpals are identified by numbers from medial to lateral.



**Figure 3-12** Radiograph of the scapula and shoulder (scapulohumeral) joint of a dog.



**Figure 3-13** Horse skeleton.

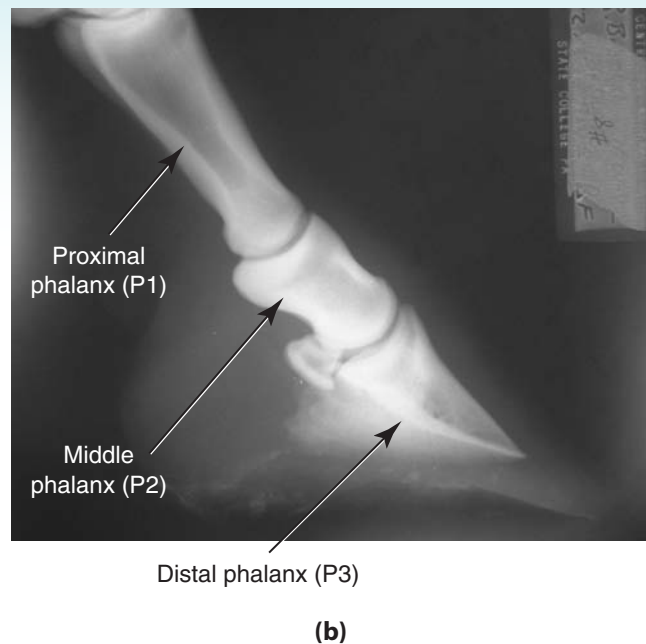
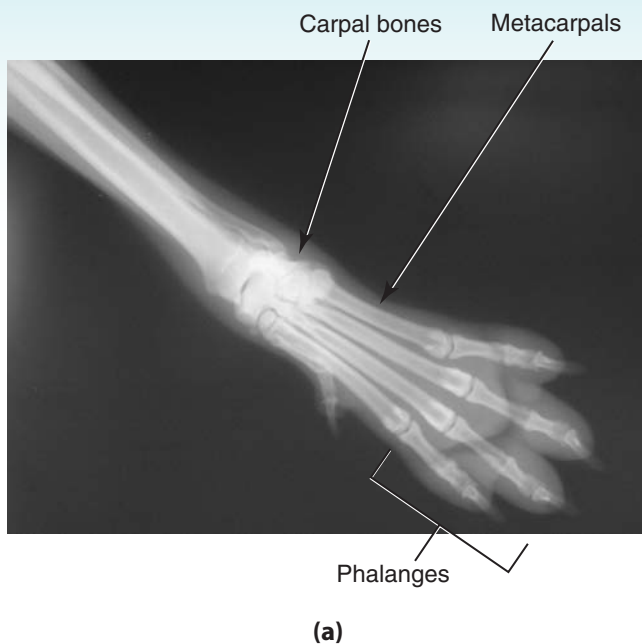
In some species such as the horse, certain metacarpals do not articulate with the phalanges. In the horse, metacarpals (and metatarsals) II and IV do not articulate with the phalanges and are commonly called **splint bones**. Splint bones are attached by an **interosseous** (ihn-tər-ohs-ē-uhs) ligament to the large third metacarpal (or metatarsal) bone, which is commonly called the **cannon bone** (Figure 3-13).

The **phalanges** (fā-lahn-jēz) are the bones of the digit. One bone of the digit is called a **phalanx** (Figures 3-14a and b). Phalanges are numbered from proximal to distal. Most digits have three phalanges, but the most medial phalanx (digit I) has only two phalanges. **Digits** are the bones analogous to the human finger and vary in number in animals (Figure 3-15). Digit I of dogs is commonly called the **dewclaw** and may be removed shortly after birth. **Ungulates** (uhng-yoo-lätz), or animals with hooves, also have digits that are numbered in the same fashion. Animals with a cloven hoof, or split hoof, have digits III and IV, and digits II and V are vestigial. The vestigial digits of cloven-hoofed animals are also called

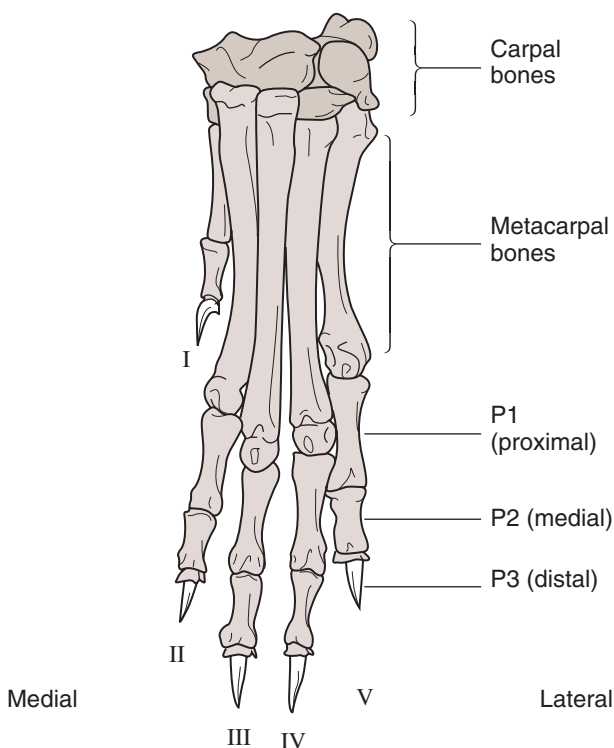
dewclaws. Cloven-hoofed animals, such as ruminants and swine, have three phalanges in their digits, with the distal-most phalanx (P3) encased in the hoof. Equine species have one digit (digit III). Within that digit are three phalanges. In livestock, the joints between the phalanges or between the phalanges and other bones have common names. The joint between metacarpal (metatarsal) III and the digit is the **fetlock joint**. The joint between P1 and P2 is known as the **pastern joint**. The joint between P2 and P3 is known as the **coffin joint**. The phalangeal bones also have common names in livestock. P1 is the **long pastern bone**, P2 is the **short pastern bone**, and P3 is the **coffin bone**. (See Chapter 4 for an illustration.)

Phalanx 3 (P3) also may be called a **claw** in nonhooved animals. The combining form for claw is **onych/o**. In cats, a surgical procedure to remove the claws is commonly called a **declaw**; the medical term is **onychectomy** (ohn-ih-kehk-tō-mē).

**Sesamoid** (sehs-ah-moyd) **bones** are small nodular bones embedded in a tendon or joint capsule. There are multiple sesamoid



**Figure 3-14** (a) Radiograph of the carpal bones, metacarpals, and phalanges of a dog. (b) Radiograph of the foot of a horse. The phalanges of a horse's foot are numbered proximal to distal. The proximal phalanx is commonly known as P1, or the long pastern bone. The middle phalanx is commonly known as P2, or the short pastern bone. The distal phalanx is commonly known as P3, or the coffin bone.



**Figure 3-15** Digits versus phalanges. The digits of the hoof or paw are numbered medially to laterally. The phalanges are numbered from proximal to distal.

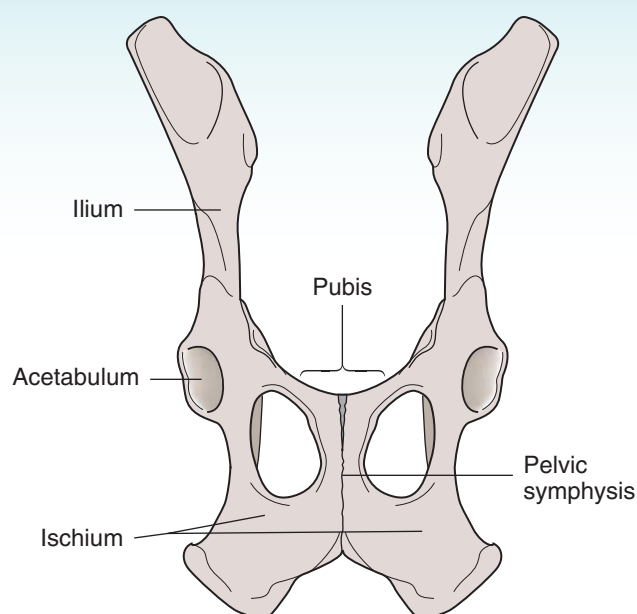
bones in animals. Some sesamoid bones also have a common name. The **navicular bone** of horses is the common name for the sesamoid bone located inside the hoof on the palmar or plantar surface of P3.

### To the Back

The bones of the rear limb include the pelvis, femur, tibia, fibula, tarsals, metatarsals, and phalanges.

The **pelvis** (pehl-vihs), or **hip**, consists of three pairs of bones: ilium, ischium, and pubis. The **ilium** (ihl-ē-uhm) is the largest pair that is blade-shaped. The ilium articulates with the sacrum to form the **sacroiliac** (sā-krō-ihl-ē-ahck) **joint**. The **ischium** (ihskē-uhm) is the caudal pair of bones. The **pubis** (pehw-bihs) is the ventral pair of bones that are fused on midline by a cartilaginous joint called the **pubic symphysis** (pehw-bihck sihm-fih-sihs). The **acetabulum** (ahs-eh-tahb-yoo-luhm) is the large socket of the pelvic bone that forms where the three bones meet. The acetabulum forms the ball-and-socket joint with the femur (Figure 3-16).

The **femur** (fē-muhr), or **thigh bone**, is the proximal long bone of the rear leg. The head of the femur articulates proximally with the acetabulum. The **femoral** (fehm-ohr-ahl) **head**, or head of the femur, is connected to a narrow area, which is called the **femoral neck**. Other structures found on



**Figure 3-16** Parts of the pelvis.

One way to remember the order of the ilium and ischium is that they follow alphabetical order from cranial to caudal. In cattle, the points of the ilium and ischium are called **hooks** and **pins**, respectively. They too follow alphabetical order from cranial to caudal.

the femur are the **trochanters** (trō-kahn-tehrs), which means large, flat, broad projections on a bone, and **condyles** (kohn-dilz), which means rounded projection (Figure 3-17).

The **patella** (pah-tehl-ah) is a large sesamoid bone in the rear limb. In people, it is called the kneecap and the joint is known as the knee. *Knee* is not a good term to use to describe the joint between the femur and tibia in animals because in large animals, *knee* is commonly used to describe the carpus. In animals, the joint that houses the patella is called the **stifle joint**. Another sesamoid bone in the rear limb of some animals is the **popliteal** (pohp-liht-ē-ahl). The popliteal sesamoid is located on the caudal surface of the stifle.

The tibia and fibula are the distal long bones of the rear limb. The **tibia** (tihb-ē-ah) is the larger and more weight-bearing bone of the two. The **fibula** (fihb-yoo-lah) is a long, slender bone. Some animals do not have a fibula that extends to the distal end, whereas other animals have the tibia and fibula fused. The area of the rear limb between the stifle and hock is called the **crus** (kruhs).



### Sound Alikes

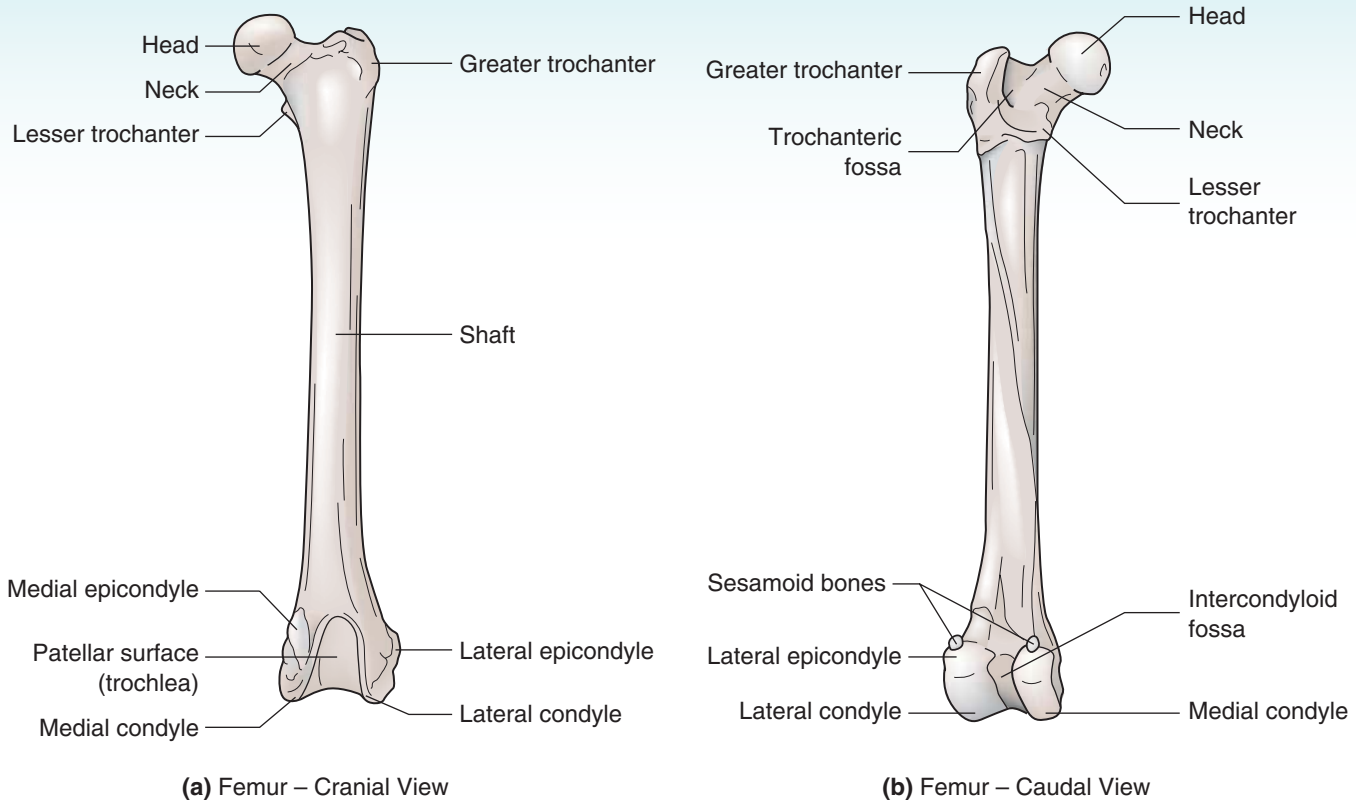
*Ileum* and *ilium* are pronounced the same, yet they have different meanings. Ileum is the distal or aboral (the end opposite the mouth) part of the small intestine, and ilium is part of the pelvic bone. One way to keep these spellings straight is to remember that ileum has an *e* in it, as in *eating* and *enter/o*, which involve the digestive tract. Ilium and pelvis both have an *i* in them.



### Knee Deep in Trouble

The term *knee* can be a confusing term in veterinary medicine. Laypeople may use the term *knee* to refer to the stifle joint of dogs and cats; however, in large animals, *knee* is used to describe the carpal joint. Most people in veterinary medicine use the term *stifle* for the joint located in the rear leg between the femur and tibia/fibula and reserve *knee* for the carpal joint in large animals.

The tarsal bones are irregularly shaped bones found in the area known as the ankle in people. In small animals, this joint is called the **tarsus** (tahr-suhs), and in large animals, it is called the **hock** (hohck). One of the tarsal bones is the **talus** (tahl-uhs). The talus is the shorter, medial tarsal bone located in the proximal row of tarsal bones. Talus and tarsus both begin with *t* and sound similar, which makes associating them together easy. The long, lateral tarsal bone located in the proximal row of tarsal bones is the **calcaneus** (kahl-kā-nē-uhs). Calcaneus and carpus both begin with *c* and sound similar, but they are not located in the same area. Calcaneus was named because it reminded someone of a piece of chalk, which consists mainly



**Figure 3-17** Femur of the cat: (a) cranial view (b) caudal view.

of calcium. The metatarsals are bones found distal to the tarsus (**meta-** = beyond). The metatarsals are numbered and have similar names as the metacarpals.

The phalanges are the bones of the digit (both front and rear limbs). The terminology used for the phalanges in the front limb is also used for the rear limb.

## STRUCTURAL SUPPORT

Bones are not structurally smooth and often have bumps or grooves or ridges (Figures 3-18a, b, and c). All of these structures have a medical term that describes them. Knowing what these descriptive terms mean can make learning bone parts easier.

**aperture** (ahp-ər-chər) = opening.

**canal** (kahn-ahl) = tunnel.

**condyle** (kohn-dil) = rounded projection (that articulates with another bone).

**crest** (krehst) = high projection or border projection.

**crista** (krihs-tah) = ridge.

**dens** (dehnz) = toothlike structure.

**eminence** (ehm-ih-nehns) = surface projection.

**facet** (fahs-eh) = smooth area.

**foramen** (fō-rā-mehn) = hole.

**fossa** (fohs-ah) = trench or hollow depressed area.

**fovea** (fō-vē-ah) = small pit.

**head** = major protrusion.

**lamina** (lahm-ih-nah) = thin, flat plate.

**line** = low projection or ridge.

**malleolus** (mah-lē-ō-luhs) = rounded projection (distal end of tibia and fibula).

**meatus** (mē-ā-tuhs) = passage or opening.

**process** (proh-sehs) = projection.

**protuberance** (prō-too-bər-ahns) = projecting part.

**ramus** (rā-muhs) = branch or smaller structure given off by a larger structure.

**sinus** (sīn-uhs) = space or cavity.

**spine** (spīn) = sharp projection.

**sulcus** (suhl-kuhs) = groove.

**suture** (soo-chuhr) = seam.

**trochanter** (trō-kahn-tehr) = broad, flat projection (on femur).

**trochlea** (trōck-lē-ah) = pulley-shaped structure in which other structures pass or articulate.

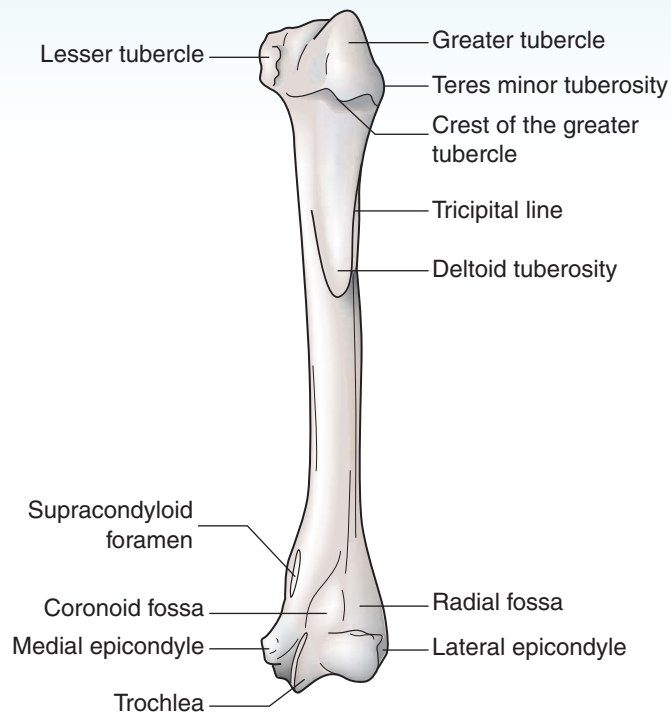
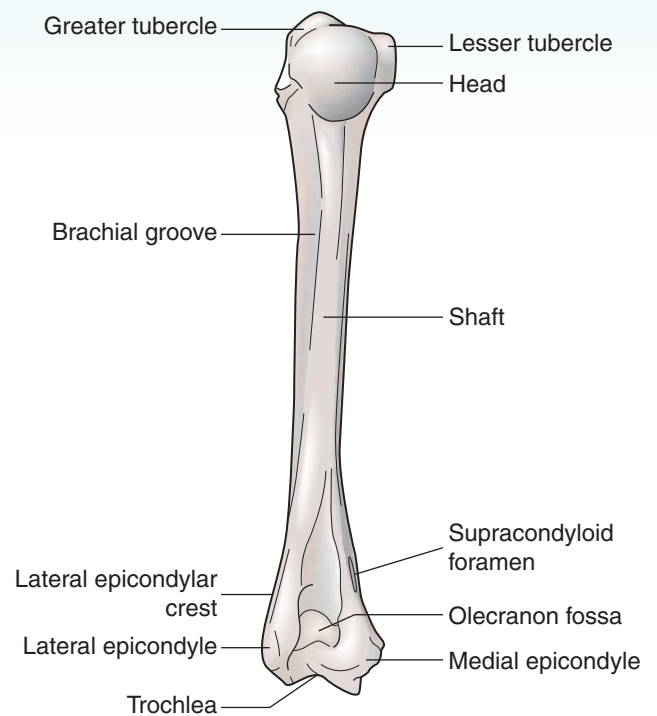
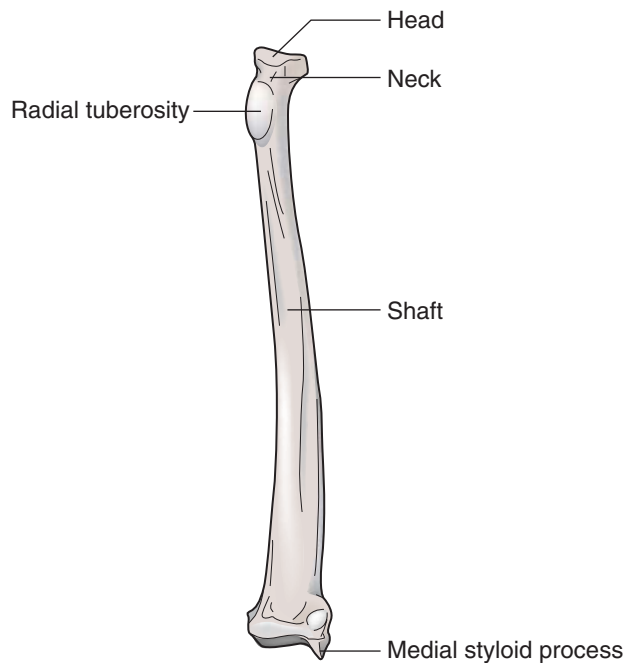
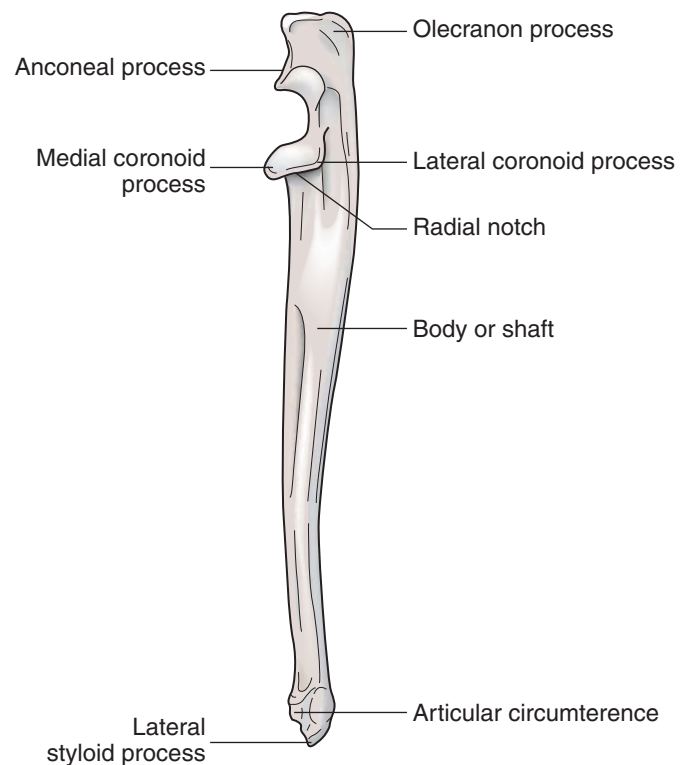
**tubercle** (too-behr-kuhl) = small, rounded surface projection.

**tuberosity** (too-beh-rohs-ih-tē) = projecting part.

## TEST ME: SKELETAL SYSTEM

Diagnostic procedures performed on the skeletal system include the following:

- **arthrocentesis** (ahr-thrō-sehn-tē-sihs) = surgical puncture of a joint to remove fluid for analysis.
- **arthrography** (ahr-throhgh-rah-fē) = injection of a joint with contrast material for radiographic examination.

**Humerus – Cranial View****Humerus – Caudal View****(a)****Radius****Ulna****(b)**

**Figure 3–18** (a) Cranial and caudal view of the humerus of the cat; (b) radius and ulna of the cat; and (c) ventral view of the tibia and fibula of the cat.

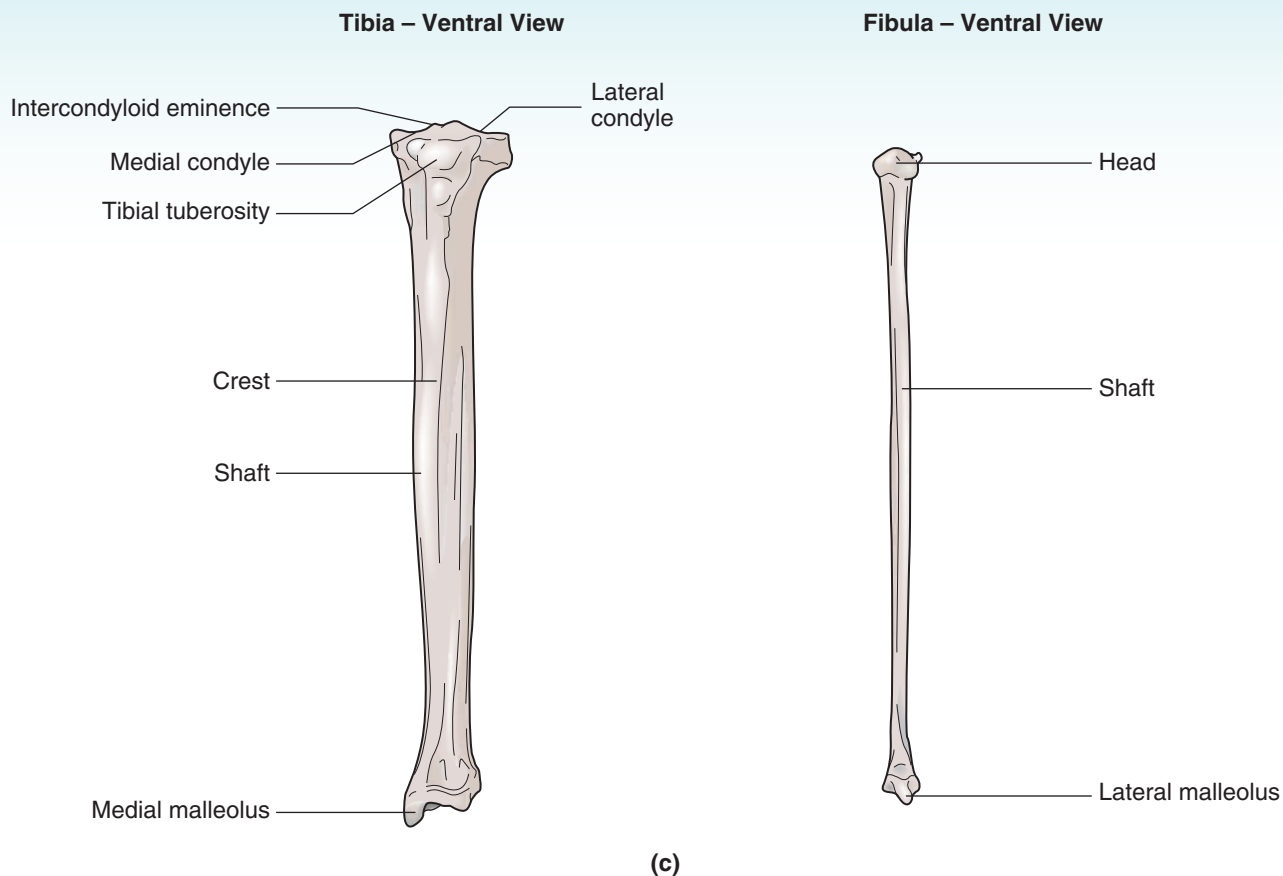


Figure 3-18 (continued)

- **arthroscopy** (ahr-throhs-kō-pē) = visual examination of the joint using a fiberoptic scope (called an arthroscope when used in the joint).
- **radiology** (rā-dē-ohl-ō-jē) = study of internal body structures after exposure to ionizing radiation; used to detect fractures and diseases of bones (Figure 3-19).

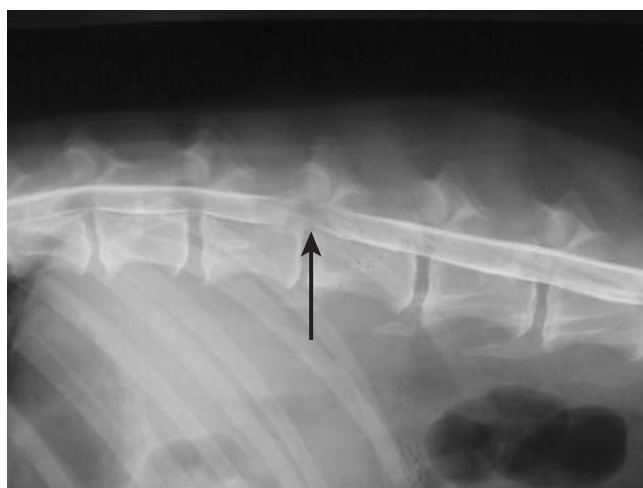
## PATHOLOGY: SKELETAL SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the skeletal system include the following:

- **ankylosis** (ahng-kih-lō-sihs) = loss of joint mobility caused by disease, injury, or surgery.
- **arthralgia** (ahr-thrahl-jē-ah) = joint pain.
- **arthritis** (ahr-thrī-tihs) = inflammatory condition of joints.
- **arthrodynia** (ahr-thrō-dihn-ē-ah) = joint pain.
- **arthropathy** (ahr-throhp-ah-thē) = joint disease.
- **bursitis** (bər-sī-tihs) = inflammation of the bursa.
- **chondromalacia** (kohn-drō-mah-lā-shē-ah) = abnormal cartilage softening.
- **chondropathy** (kohn-drohp-ah-thē) = cartilage disease.
- **discospondylitis** (dihs-kō-spohn-dih-li-tihs) = inflammation of the intervertebral disc and vertebrae.
- **exostosis** (ehck-sohs-tō-sihs) = benign growth on the bone surface.
- **gouty arthritis** (gow-tē ahr-thrī-tihs) or **gout** = joint inflammation associated with the formation of uric acid crystals in the joint (seen more commonly in birds).
- **hip dysplasia** (dihs-plā-zē-ah) = abnormal development of the pelvic joint causing the head of the femur and the acetabulum not to be aligned properly; most commonly seen in large breed dogs (Figure 3-19).
- **intervertebral disc disease** (ihn-tər-vər-tē-brahl dihsk dih-zēz) = rupture or protrusion of the cushioning disc found between the vertebrae that results in pressure on the spinal cord or spinal nerve roots; also called **herniated disc**, **ruptured disc**, or **IVDD** (Figure 3-20).
- **kyphosis** (kī-fō-sihs) = dorsal curvature of the spine; also called hunchback.
- **Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease** (lehg cah-veh pər-thehz dih-zēz) = idiopathic necrosis of the femoral head and neck of small breed dogs; also called avascular necrosis of the femoral head and neck.
- **lordosis** (lōr-dō-sihs) = position in which the vertebral column is abnormally curved ventrally; seen in cats in heat; commonly called **swayback**.



**Figure 3-19** Radiograph of the canine hip with hip dysplasia. Note the shallow acetabulum present in this dog's pelvis. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, Lodi, Wisconsin.)



**Figure 3-20** Myelogram showing intervertebral disc disease. Dye injected into the spinal column shows compression of the spinal cord. (Courtesy of David Sweet, VMD.)

- **luxation** (luhck-sā-shuhn) = dislocation or displacement of a bone from its joint.
- **myeloma** (mī-eh-lō-mah) = tumor composed of cells derived from hematopoietic tissues of bone marrow.



**Figure 3-21** Radiograph of dog's shoulder with osteophyte at proximal end of humerus. (Courtesy of Amy Lang, University of Wisconsin Veterinary Teaching Hospital.)

- **ostealgia** (ohs-tē-ahl-jē-ah) = bone pain.
- **osteitis** (ohs-tī-tihs) = inflammation of bone.
- **osteoarthritis** (ohs-tē-ō-ahr-thrī-tihs) = degenerative joint disease commonly associated with aging or wear and tear on the joints; also called **degenerative joint disease**, or **DJD**.
- **osteochondrosis** (ohs-tē-ō-kohn-drō-sihs) = degeneration or necrosis of bone and cartilage followed by regeneration or recalcification.
- **osteochondrosis dissecans** (ohs-tē-ō-kohn-drō-sihs dehsh-ih-kahns) = degeneration or necrosis of bone and cartilage followed by regeneration or recalcification with dissecting flap of articular cartilage and some inflammatory joint changes; detached pieces of articular cartilage are called **joint mice** or **osteophytes** (ohs-tē-ō-fitz) (Figure 3-21).
- **osteomalacia** (ohs-tē-ō-mah-lā-shē-ah) = abnormal softening of bone.
- **osteomyelitis** (ohs-tē-ō-mī-eh-lī-tihs) = inflammation of bone and bone marrow.
- **osteonecrosis** (ohs-tē-ō-neh-kro-sihs) = death of bone tissue.
- **osteoporosis** (ohs-tē-ō-pō-rō-sihs) = abnormal condition of marked loss of bone density and an increase in bone porosity.
- **osteosclerosis** (ohs-tē-ō-skleh-rō-sihs) = abnormal hardening of bone.
- **periostitis** (pehr-ē-ohs-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the fibrous tissue that forms the outermost covering of bone.
- **rheumatoid arthritis** (roo-mah-toyd-ahr-thrī-tihs) = autoimmune disorder of the connective tissues and joints.
- **sequestrum** (sē-kwehs-truhm) = piece of dead bone that is partially or fully detached from the adjacent healthy bone (Figure 3-22).



**Figure 3-22** Radiograph of horse's leg with a sequestrum. (Courtesy of Any Lang, University of Wisconsin Veterinary Teaching Hospital.)

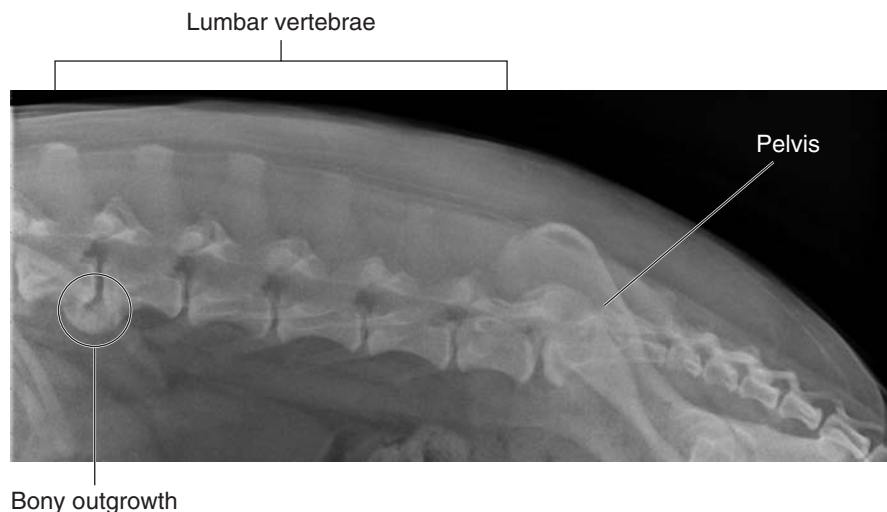
- **spondylitis** (spohn-dih-li-tihs) = inflammation of the vertebrae.
- **spondylosis** (spohn-dih-lō-sihs) = any degenerative disorder of the vertebrae.

- **spondylosis deformans** (spohn-dih-lō-sihs dē-fōr-mahnz) = chronic degeneration of the articular processes and the development of bony outgrowths around the ventral edge of the vertebrae (Figure 3-23).
- **subluxation** (suhb-luhck-sā-shuhn) = partial dislocation or displacement of a bone from its joint (Figure 3-24).
- **synovitis** (sihn-ō-vī-tihs) = inflammation of the synovial membrane of joints.

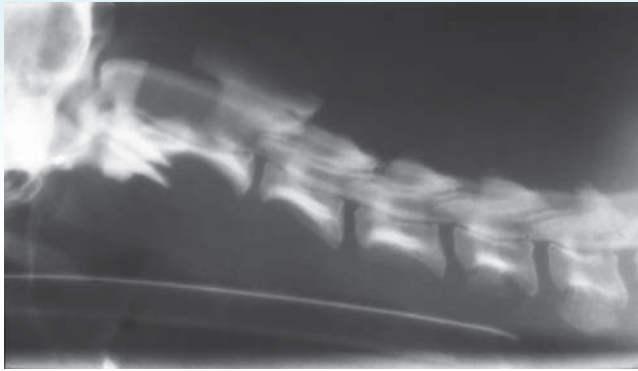
## Fracture Terminology

See Figure 3-25.

- **avulsion** (ā-vuhl-shuhn) **fracture** = broken bone in which the site of muscle, tendon, or ligament insertion is detached by a forceful pull.
- **callus** (kahl-uhs) = bulging deposit around the area of a bone fracture that may eventually become bone.
- **closed fracture** = broken bone in which there is no open wound in the skin; also known as a **simple fracture**.
- **comminuted** (kohm-ih-noot-ehd) **fracture** = broken bone that is splintered or crushed into multiple pieces (Figure 3-26).
- **compression** (kohm-prehs-shuhn) **fracture** = broken bone produced when the bones are pressed together.
- **crepitation** (krehp-ih-tā-shuhn) = cracking sensation that is felt and heard when broken bones move together.
- **fracture** (frahck-shər) = broken bone.
- **greenstick fracture** = bone that is broken only on one side and the other side is bent; also called **incomplete fracture**.
- **immobilization** (ihm-mō-bihl-ih-zā-shuhn) = act of holding, suturing, or fastening a bone in a fixed position, usually with a bandage or cast.



**Figure 3-23** Radiograph of the lumbar spine of a dog. This dog is showing an age-related change called spondylosis deformans. In this disease, bone spurs (bony outgrowths) are formed that eventually can bridge between vertebrae. (Courtesy of Eli Larson, DVM.)



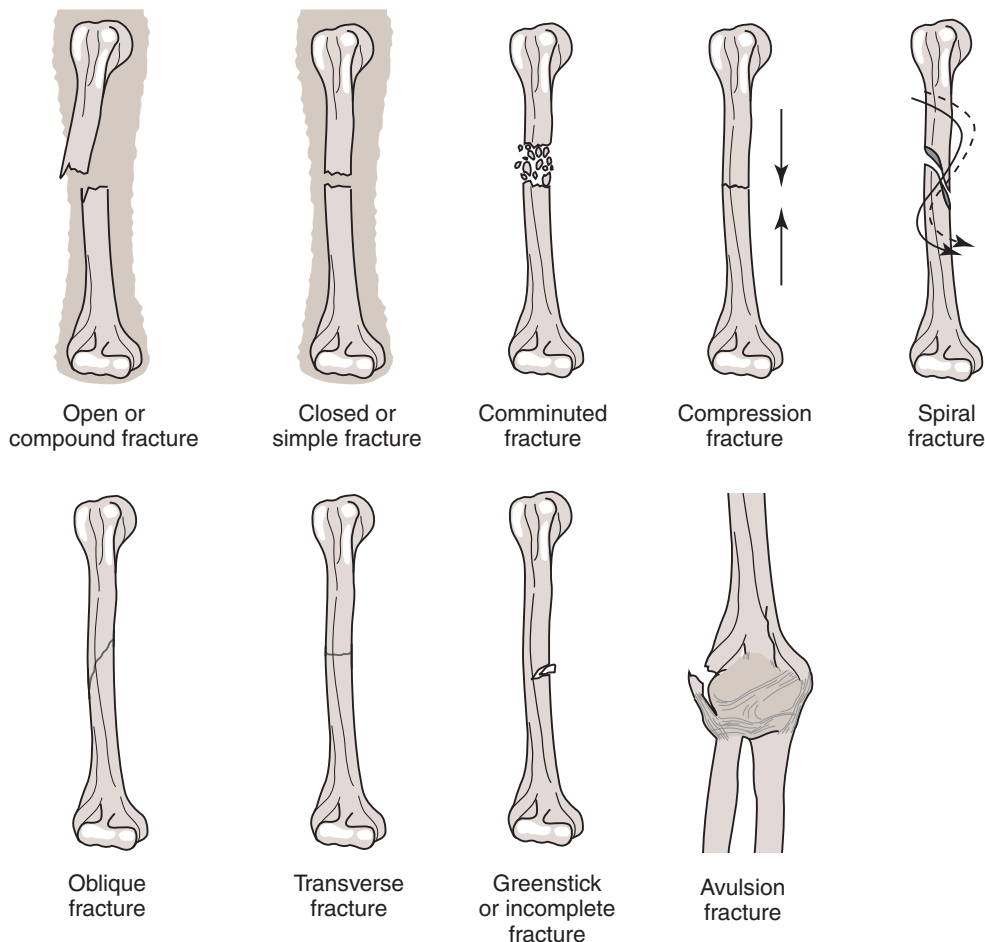
**Figure 3–24** Radiograph of atlas-axis subluxation in a dog.  
(Courtesy of Anne E. Chavet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM-Neurology,  
University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)



### In or out

Bones may abnormally bend in or bend out. Medical terms for this condition in bones are *varus* (vahr-uhs) and *valgus* (vahl-guhs). *Valgus* means bend out (think bend laterally; both *valgus* and *lateral* have an *l*), and *varus* means bend in.

- **manipulation** (mahn-ihp-yoo-lā-shuhn) = attempted realignment of the bone involved in a fracture or dislocation; also known as **reduction**.
- **oblique** (ō-blēck) **fracture** = broken bone that has an angular break diagonal to the long axis.
- **open fracture** = broken bone in which there is an open wound in the skin; also known as a **compound fracture**.
- **physeal** (fi-sē-ahl) **fracture** = bone that is broken at the epiphyseal line or growth plate; these fractures are further categorized as **Salter-Harris I–V fractures**.
- **spiral** (spi-rah) **fracture** = broken bone in which the bone is twisted apart or spiraled apart.
- **transverse** (trahnz-vərs) **fracture** = broken bone that is broken at right angles to its axis or straight across the bone.



**Figure 3–25** Fracture types.

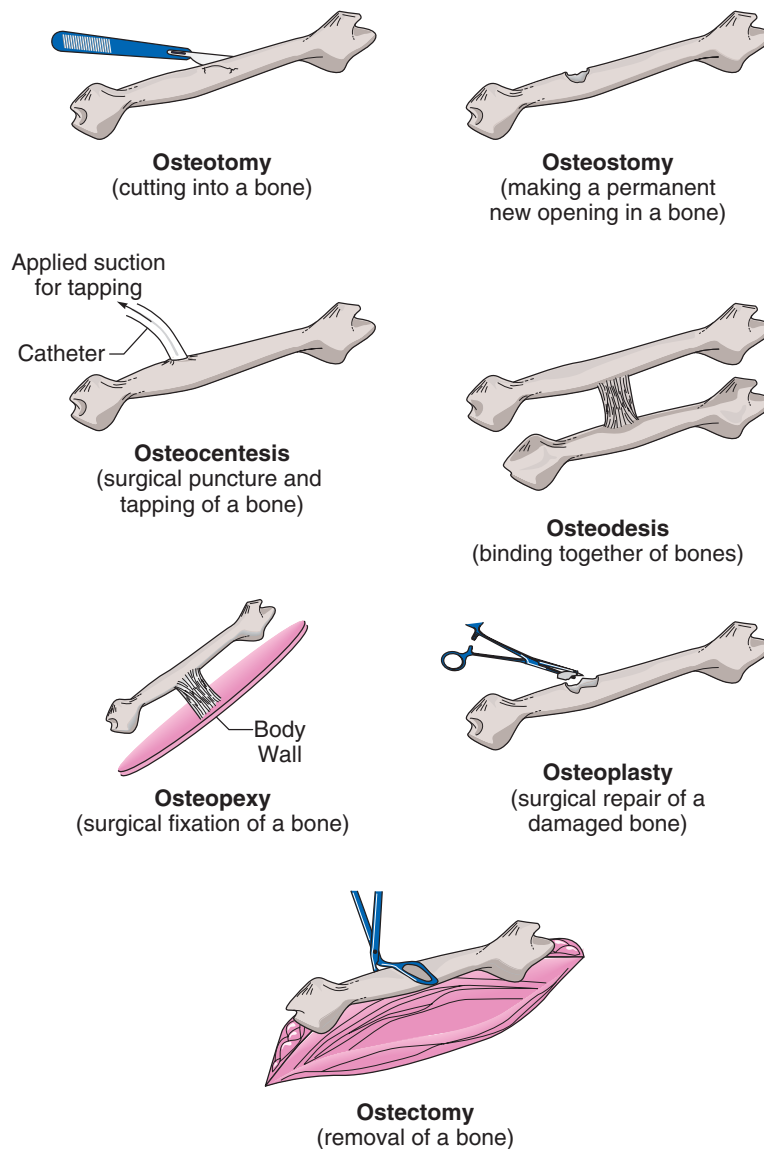


**Figure 3-26** Comminuted fracture of the radius and ulna in a cat.

## PROCEDURES: SKELETAL SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the skeletal system (Figure 3-27) include the following:

- **amputation** (ahmp-yoo-tā-shuhn) = removal of all or part of a body part.
- **arthrodesis** (ahr-thrō-dē-sihs) = fusion of a joint or the spinal vertebrae by surgical means.
- **chemonucleolysis** (kē-mō-nū-klē-ō-lī-sihs) = process of dissolving part of the center of an intervertebral disc by injecting a foreign substance.
- **craniotomy** (krā-nē-oht-ō-mē) = surgical incision or opening into the skull.
- **laminectomy** (lahm-ih-nehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the dorsal arch of a vertebra.



**Figure 3-27** Surgical procedures of bone.

- **onychectomy** (ohn-ih-kehk-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a claw.
- **osteotomy** (ohs-tehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of bone.
- **osteocentesis** (ohs-tē-ō-sehn-tē-sihs) = surgical puncture of a bone.
- **osteodesis** (ohs-tē-ō-dē-sihs) = fusion of bones.
- **osteopexy** (ohs-tē-ō-pehck-sē) = surgical fixation of a bone to the body wall.
- **osteoplasty** (ohs-tē-ō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of bone.
- **osteostomy** (ohs-tē-ohs-tō-mē) = surgical creation of a permanent new opening in bone.
- **osteotomy** (ohs-tē-ohs-tō-mē) = surgical incision or sectioning of bone.
- **trephination** (treh-fih-nā-shuhn) = process of cutting a hole into a bone using a **trephine** (trē-fīn) (circular sawlike instrument used to remove bone or tissue).

## FUNCTIONS OF THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Muscles are organs that contract to produce movement. Muscles make movement possible. One type of movement is **ambulation** (ahm-bū-lā-shuhn), or walking, running, or otherwise moving from one place to another. Another type of movement is contraction of organs or tissues that result in normal functioning of the body. For example, contraction of sections of the gastrointestinal tract allows food to move through the digestive system, and contraction of vessels allows movement of fluids such as blood. Movement also results in heat generation to keep the body warm.

## STRUCTURES OF THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM

The muscular system is composed of specialized cells called muscle fibers whose predominant function is contractibility.

### Muscle Fibers

Muscles are made up of long, slender cells called muscle fibers. Each muscle consists of a group of muscle fibers encased in a fibrous sheath. The combining form for muscle is **my/o**; the combining forms for fibrous tissue are **fibr/o** and **fibros/o**.

Three types of muscle cells are based on their appearance and function. The three types are skeletal, smooth, and cardiac (Table 3–3 and Figure 3–28).

### Making Another Connection

Like the skeletal system, the muscular system also contains various forms of connective tissue. The connective tissues that support the muscular system are described next.

### Fascia

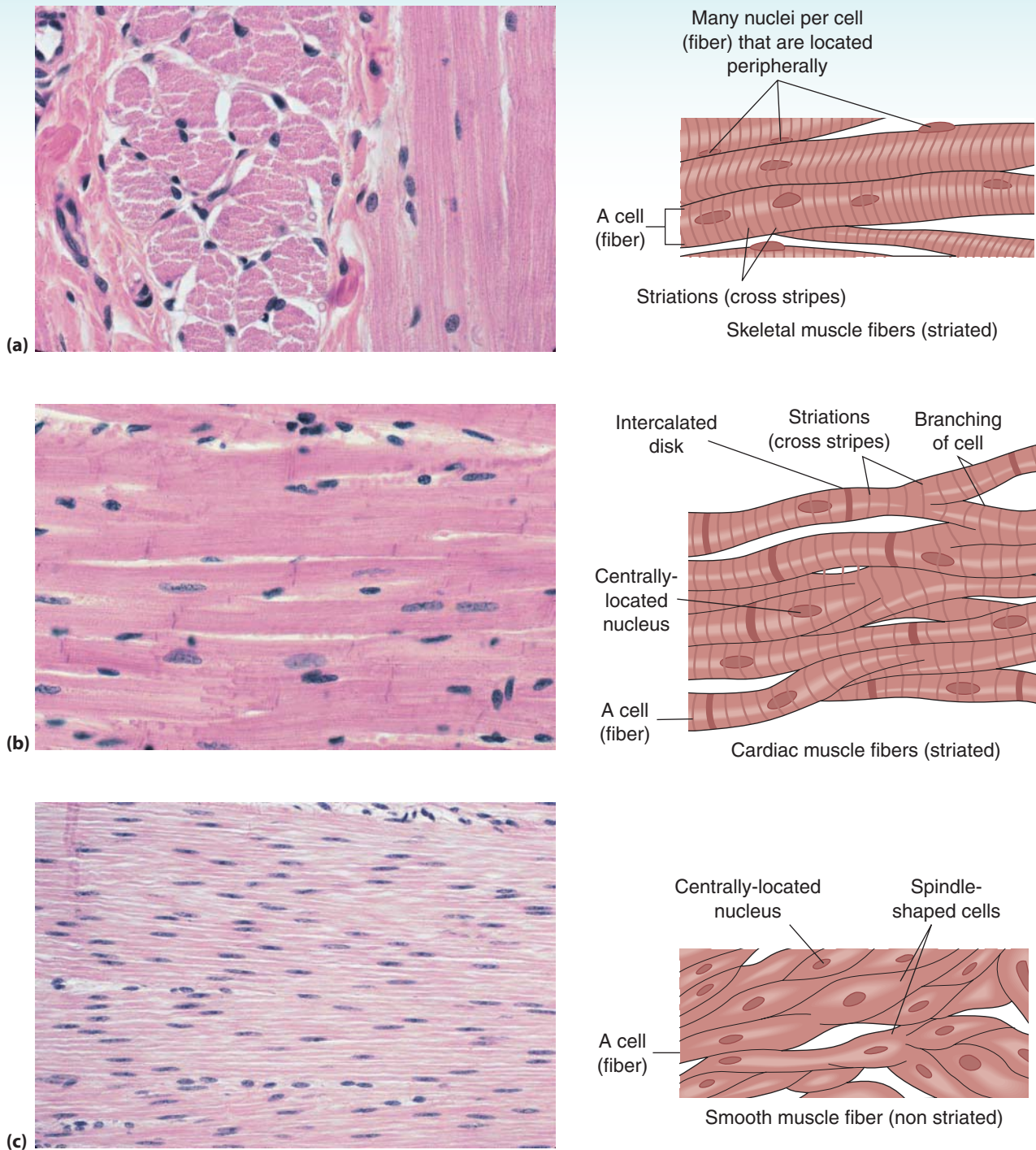
**Fascia** (fahsh-ē-ah) is a sheet of fibrous connective tissue that covers, supports, and separates muscles. The combining forms for fascia are **fasci/o** and **fasc/i**.

### Tendons

A **tendon** (tehn-dohn) is a narrow band of connective tissue that attaches muscle to bone. The combining forms for tendon are **tend/o**, **tendin/o**, and **ten/o**. Remember to make the distinction between a tendon and a ligament (Figure 3–29).

**Table 3–3 Muscle Types**

Muscle Type	Description	Microscopic Appearance	Function
<b>skeletal</b>	<b>striated</b> (strī-āt-ehd) <b>voluntary</b>	long, cylindrical, multinucleated cells with dark and light bands to create a striated or striped look	attach bones to the body and make motion possible
<b>smooth</b>	<b>nonstriated</b> <b>unstriated</b> <b>involuntary</b> <b>visceral</b>	spindle-shaped without stripes or striations	produce slow contractions to allow unconscious functioning of internal organs
<b>cardiac</b>	<b>striated</b> <b>involuntary</b>	elongated branched cells that lie parallel to each other and have dark and light bands	involuntary contraction of heart muscle

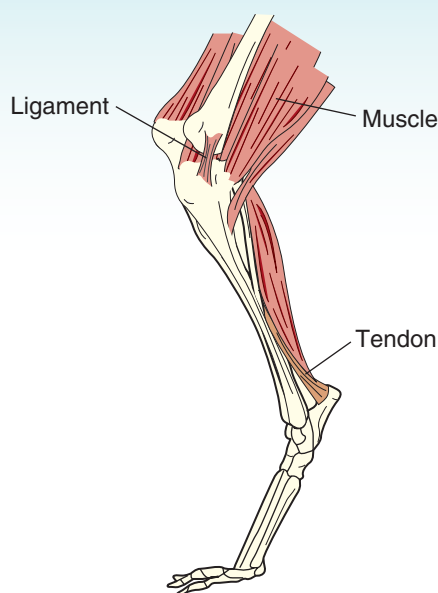


**Figure 3-28** The three types of muscle tissues. (a) Skeletal muscle from the tongue of a cat. The photomicrograph shows cells cut along their length and in cross section. (b) Cardiac muscle from the heart of a goat. Note the intercalated disks that connect the cells. These structures allow the cells to act together with an organized contraction. (c) Smooth muscle from the colon of a horse. Note that smooth muscle lacks the striations found in cardiac and skeletal muscle. (Photomicrographs courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, MS, VMD.)

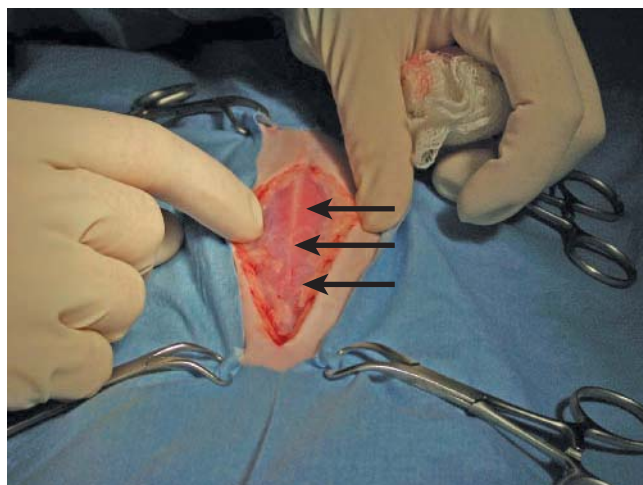
Tendons connect muscles to bones or other structures. One example is the linea alba. *Linea alba* means white line in Latin. The **linea alba** is a fibrous band of connective tissue on the ventral abdominal wall that is the median attachment of the abdominal muscles (Figure 3-30).

### Aponeurosis

An **aponeurosis** (ahp-ō-nū-rō-sihs) is a fibrous sheet that provides attachment to muscular fibers and is a means of origin or insertion of a flat muscle. The combining form for



**Figure 3–29** Tendons versus ligaments. Tendons are dense fibrous connective tissues that connect muscle to bone; ligaments are dense fibrous connective tissues that connect bone to bone.



**Figure 3–30** The linea alba of a cat. (Courtesy of Kelly Gilligan, DVM.)

aponeurosis is **aponeur/o**, and the plural form of aponeurosis is **aponeuroses**.

## SHOW SOME MUSCLE

One of the functions of muscle is to allow movement. The combining form **kinesi/o** and the suffix **-kinesis** mean movement. **Kinesiology** (kih-nē-sē-ohl-ō-jē) is the study of movement.

Some muscles are arranged in pairs that work opposite or against each other. One muscle pair may produce movement in one direction, whereas another muscle pair produces movement in the opposite direction. Muscles that work against or opposite each other are called **antagonistic** (ahn-tā-gohn-ihs-tihck). **Anti-** means against; **agon** means struggle. Other muscles of the body are arranged to work with another muscle. **Synergists** (sihn-ər-jihsts) are muscles that contract at the same time as another muscle to help movement or support movement (synergists are also called agonistic (ā-gohn-ihs-tihck)). **Syn-** means together; **erg** means work. Antagonistic muscles work by producing contraction of one pair of muscles while the other pair relaxes. **Contraction** (kohn-trahck-shuhn) means tightening. **Relaxation** (rē-lahk-sā-shuhn) means lessening of tension. During contraction, the muscle becomes shorter and thicker. During relaxation, the muscle returns to its original shape. Muscles are signaled to contract or relax by nerve impulses. A **neuromuscular** (nū-rō-muhs-kū-lahr) **junction** is the point at which nerve endings come in contact with the muscle cells.

**Tonus** (tō-nuhs), or muscle tone, is balanced muscle tension. The combining form for tone, tension, or stretching is **ton/o**.

## WHAT'S IN A NAME?

At first glance, the names of muscles and the task of learning them may seem impossible. Dividing muscle names into their basic components or taking a closer look at how the names were derived may help in learning their names and functions.

### Beginning and Ending

Muscles are formed by where they begin and where they end. Terms used to denote these two locations are **muscle origin** (ōr-ih-jihn) and **muscle insertion** (ihn-sihr-shuhn), respectively. Muscle origin is the place where a muscle begins, or originates, and is the more fixed attachment or the end of the muscle closest to the midline. Muscle insertion is the place where a muscle ends, or inserts, and is the more movable end or portion of the muscle farthest from the midline. Muscles may be named according to where they originate and end. Brachioradialis muscles are connected to the brachium (humerus) and to the radius.

### How Do They Move?

Muscles move in a variety of ranges. **Range of motion** is a term used to describe the types of muscle movements. Range of motion is sometimes abbreviated ROM. Muscles may be named for the manner in which they move, as follows:

- **abductor** (ahb-duhck-tər) = muscle that moves a part away from the midline.
- **adductor** (ahd-duhck-tər) = muscle that moves a part toward the midline.

- **flexor** (flehck-sər) = muscle that bends a limb at its joint or decreases the joint angle.
- **extensor** (ehcks-tehn-sər) = muscle that straightens a limb or increases the joint angle.
- **levator** (lē-vā-tər) = muscle that raises or elevates a part.
- **depressor** (dē-prehs-sər) = muscle that lowers or depresses a part.
- **rotator** (rō-tā-tər) = muscle that turns a body part on its axis.
- **supinator** (soo-pih-nā-tər) = muscle that rotates the palmar or plantar surface upward.
- **pronator** (prō-nā-tər) = muscle that rotates the palmar or plantar surface downward.

### Where Are They?

Muscles also are named for their location on the body or organ they are near. **Pectoral muscles** are located on the chest (**pector** = chest). Muscles may also be named for their location in relation to something else. **Epaxial** (ehp-ahcks-ē-ahl) **muscles** are located above the pelvic axis (**epi** = above, **axis** = line about which rotation occurs), **intercostal muscles** are located between the ribs (**inter** = between, **cost/o** = rib), **infraspinal muscles** are located beneath the spine of the scapula (**infra** = beneath or below), and **supraspinal muscles** are located above the spine of the scapula (**supra** = above). Muscle names also may indicate their location within a group, such as **inferior** (below or deep), **medius** (middle), and **superior** (above). Other terms indicating depth of muscles are **externus** (outer) and **internus** (inner). **Orbicularis** are muscles surrounding another structure.

### Which Way Do They Go?

Muscles may also be named according to the direction of the muscle fibers.

- **Rectus** (rehck-tuhs) means straight. Rectus muscles align with the vertical axis of the body.
- **Oblique** (ō-blēck) means slanted. Oblique muscles slant outward away from the midline.
- **Transverse** means crosswise. Transverse muscles form crosswise to the midline.
- **Sphincter** means tight band. Sphincter muscles are ring-like and constrict the opening of a passageway.

### How Many Parts Are There?

Some muscles are named for the number of divisions they have.

- **Biceps** (bī-sehpz) generally have two divisions (heads); **bi**- means two.
- **Triceps** (trī-sehpz) generally have three divisions (heads); **tri**- means three.

- **Quadriceps** (kwohd-rih-sehps) generally have four divisions (heads); **quadri**- means four.

Some muscles are not paired or divided. **Azygous** (ah-zī-guhs) means not paired (**a**- means without; **zygote** means joined).

### How Big Is It?

Muscles may also be named for their size. Muscles may be small (**minimus**) or large (**maximus** or **vastus**), broad (**latissimus**) or narrow (**longissimus** or **gracilis**). **Major** and **minor** also are used to describe larger and smaller parts, respectively.

### How Is It Shaped?

Some muscles are shaped like familiar objects and have been named accordingly.

- **Deltoid** (dehl-toyd) muscles look like the Greek letter delta (Δ).
- **Quadratus** (kwohd-rā-tuhs) muscles are square or four-sided.
- **Rhomboideus** (rohmb-boy-dē-uhs) muscles are diamond-shaped. (Rhomboid is a four-sided figure that may have unequal adjoining sides but equal opposite sides.)
- **Scalenus** (skā-lehn-uhs) muscles are unequally three-sided. (*Skalenos* is Greek for uneven.)
- **Serratus** (sihr-ā-tuhs) muscles are saw-toothed. (*Serratus* is Latin for notched.)
- **Teres** (tər-ēz) muscles are cylindrical. (*Teres* is Latin for smooth and round or cylindrical.)

### No Rules

Sometimes muscles are named for what they look like or how they relate to something else. **Sartorius muscle** (one muscle of the thigh area) is named because this muscle flexes and adducts the leg of a human to that position assumed by a tailor sitting cross-legged at work (*sartorius* means tailor). The **gemellus** is named because it is a twinned muscle (*gemellus* means twin). The **gastrocnemius muscle** is the leg muscle that resembles the shape of the stomach (**gastr/o** means stomach, **kneme** means leg).

## TEST ME: MUSCULAR SYSTEM

A diagnostic procedure performed on the muscular system is as follows:

- **electromyography** (ē-lehck-trō-mī-ohg-rah-fē) = process of recording the electrical activity of the muscle cells near the recording electrodes; abbreviated EMG. An **electromyogram** (ē-lehck-trō-mī-ō-grahm) is the record of the strength of muscle contraction caused by electrical stimulation.

## PATHOLOGY: MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the muscular system include the following:

- **adhesion** (ahd-hē-shuhn) = band of fibers that hold structures together in an abnormal fashion.
- **ataxia** (ā-tahck-sē-ah) = lack of voluntary control of muscle movement; “wobbliness.”
- **atonic** (ā-tohn-ihck) = lacking muscle control.
- **dystrophy** (dihs-trō-fē) = defective growth.
- **fasciitis** (fahs-ē-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the sheet of fibrous connective tissue that covers, supports, and separates muscles (fascia).
- **fibroma** (fi-brō-mah) = tumor composed of fully developed connective tissue; also called **fibroid** (fi-broyd).
- **hernia** (hər-nē-ah) = protrusion of a body part through tissues that normally contain it.
- **laxity** (lahcks-ih-tē) = looseness.
- **leiomyositis** (lī-ō-mī-ō-sī-tihs) = inflammation of smooth tissue.
- **myasthenia** (mī-ahs-thē-nē-ah) = muscle weakness.
- **myoclonus** (mī-ō-klō-nuhs) = spasm of muscle.
- **myopathy** (mī-ohp-ah-thē) = abnormal condition or disease of muscle.

- **myositis** (mī-ō-sī-tihs) = inflammation of voluntary muscles.
- **myotonia** (mī-ō-tō-nē-ah) = delayed relaxation of a muscle after contraction.
- **tendinitis** (tehn-dih-nī-tihs) = inflammation of the band of fibrous connective tissue that connects muscle to bone.
- **tetany** (teht-ahn-ē) = muscle spasms or twitching.

## PROCEDURES: MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the muscular system include the following:

- **myectomy** (mī-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of muscle or part of a muscle.
- **myoplasty** (mī-ō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of muscle.
- **myotomy** (mī-oh-tō-mē) = surgical incision into a muscle.
- **tenectomy** (teh-nehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a part of a tendon (fibrous connective tissue that connects muscle to bone).
- **tenotomy** (teh-noht-ō-mē) = surgical division of a tendon (fibrous connective tissue that connects muscle to bone).

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. A common name for the tarsus is the
  - a. elbow
  - b. calcaneus
  - c. hock
  - d. wrist
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ joints are the freely movable joints of the body.
  - a. suture
  - b. synovial
  - c. symphysis
  - d. cartilaginous
3. The correct order of the vertebral segments is
  - a. cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal
  - b. cervical, lumbar, thoracic, coccygeal, and sacral
  - c. thoracic, lumbar, cervical, sacral, and coccygeal
  - d. thoracic, cervical, lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a fibrous band of connective tissue that connects bone to bone.
  - a. fascia
  - b. tendon
  - c. synovial membrane
  - d. ligament
5. The acetabulum is the
  - a. patella
  - b. cannon bone
  - c. large socket in the pelvic bone
  - d. crest of the scapula
6. The three parts of the pelvis are
  - a. ileum, pubis, and acetabulum
  - b. ilium, pubis, and sacrum
  - c. ilium, sacrum, and coccyx
  - d. ilium, ischium, and pubis

7. The digits contain bones that are called
- carpals
  - phalanges
  - tarsals
  - tarsus
8. Components of the axial skeleton include
- scapula, humerus, radius, ulna, and carpus
  - skull, auditory ossicles, hyoid, vertebrae, ribs, and sternum
  - pelvic girdle, femur, tibia, fibula, and tarsus
  - scapula, pelvis, humerus, femur, tibia, fibula, radius, and ulna
9. Another term for growth plate is
- physis
  - shaft
  - diaphysis
  - trophic
10. Bones of the front limb include
- humerus, tibia, fibula, tarsal, metatarsal, and phalanges
  - humerus, radius, ulna, carpal, metacarpal, and phalanges
  - femur, tibia, fibula, tarsal, metatarsal, and phalanges
  - radius, humerus, ulna, carpal, metatarsal, and phalanges
11. *Rectus* means
- ringlike
  - straight
  - angled
  - rotating
12. Muscles may be classified as
- voluntary
  - involuntary
  - cardiac
  - all of the above
13. A term for when a muscle becomes shorter and thicker is
- relaxation
  - contraction
  - rotation
  - depression
14. Levator muscles \_\_\_\_\_ a body part.
- decrease the angle of
  - increase the angle of
  - raise
  - depress
15. A fibrous band of connective tissue that connects muscle to bone is
- cartilage
  - tendon
  - ligament
  - aponeurosis
16. Looseness is called
- laxity
  - rigidity
  - spasm
  - tonus
17. Protrusion of a body part through tissues that normally contain it is called a
- projection
  - hernia
  - prominence
  - myotonia
18. A muscle that forms a tight band is called a(n)
- purse-string
  - sartorius
  - sphincter
  - oblique
19. Surgical removal of a muscle or part of a muscle is called
- myositis
  - myotomy
  - myectomy
  - myostomy
20. Abnormal condition or disease of muscle is called
- myodynia
  - myography
  - myasthenia
  - myopathy

21. Which term describes the shaft of a long bone?
- a. diaphysis
  - b. epiphysis
  - c. endosteum
  - d. periosteum
22. The tarsal bones are found in the
- a. digits
  - b. wrist
  - c. stifle
  - d. hock
23. The manubrium is the
- a. lower jaw
  - b. cranial portion of the sternum
  - c. upper jaw
  - d. caudal portion of the sternum
24. Which term describes the freely movable joints of the body?
- a. synarthroses
  - b. amphiarthroses
  - c. diarthroses
  - d. articulations
25. The opening in a bone through which blood vessels, nerves, and ligaments pass is a(n)
- a. fontanel
  - b. foramen
  - c. meatus
  - d. lamina
26. The acetabulum is commonly called the
- a. collar bone
  - b. patella
  - c. hip socket
  - d. knee
27. Muscles located above the pelvic axis are called
- a. spinatus muscles
  - b. orbicularis muscles
  - c. epaxial muscles
  - d. inferior muscles
28. Muscles under voluntary control are known as
- a. involuntary
  - b. nonstriated
  - c. skeletal
  - d. visceral
29. Minimus is to maximus as
- a. longissimus is to gracilis
  - b. biceps is to triceps
  - c. oblique is to sphincter
  - d. minor is to major
30. A muscle that bends a limb at its joint or decreases the joint angle is called a(n)
- a. flexor
  - b. extensor
  - c. supinator
  - d. pronator

**Matching**

Match the bone or joint in Column I with its common name in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ P1	a. carpus in large animals
2. _____ P2	b. hock
3. _____ P3	c. coffin bone
4. _____ tarsus	d. short pastern
5. _____ splint bone	e. long pastern
6. _____ fetlock joint	f. metacarpal/metatarsal III in equine and metacarpal/metatarsal III and IV in ruminants
7. _____ pastern joint	g. collarbone
8. _____ coffin joint	h. metacarpo-/metatarsophalangeal joint of equine and ruminants
9. _____ knee	i. metacarpal/metatarsal II and IV in equine
10. _____ stifle	j. connection between phalanx I and II in equine and ruminants
11. _____ clavicle	k. distal interphalangeal joint of phalanx II and III in equine and ruminants
12. _____ cannon bone	l. variable digit depending on species; digit I in dogs, digits II and V in ruminants
13. _____ dewclaw	m. synovial joint located between the femur and tibia
14. _____ sternum	n. breastbone

Match the bone in Column I with the area it is located in Column II.

Column I	Column II
15. _____ humerus	a. distal front limb
16. _____ fibula	b. proximal front limb
17. _____ tibia	c. proximal hind limb
18. _____ ulna	d. distal hind limb
19. _____ femur	e. joint in front limb
20. _____ tarsus	f. joint in hind limb
21. _____ radius	g. distal part of front and hind limbs
22. _____ carpus	
23. _____ metacarpal	
24. _____ metatarsal	
25. _____ phalanx	

**Fill in the Blanks**

- \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are terms used for displacement of a bone from its joint.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is the tough, fibrous tissue that forms the outermost covering of bone.

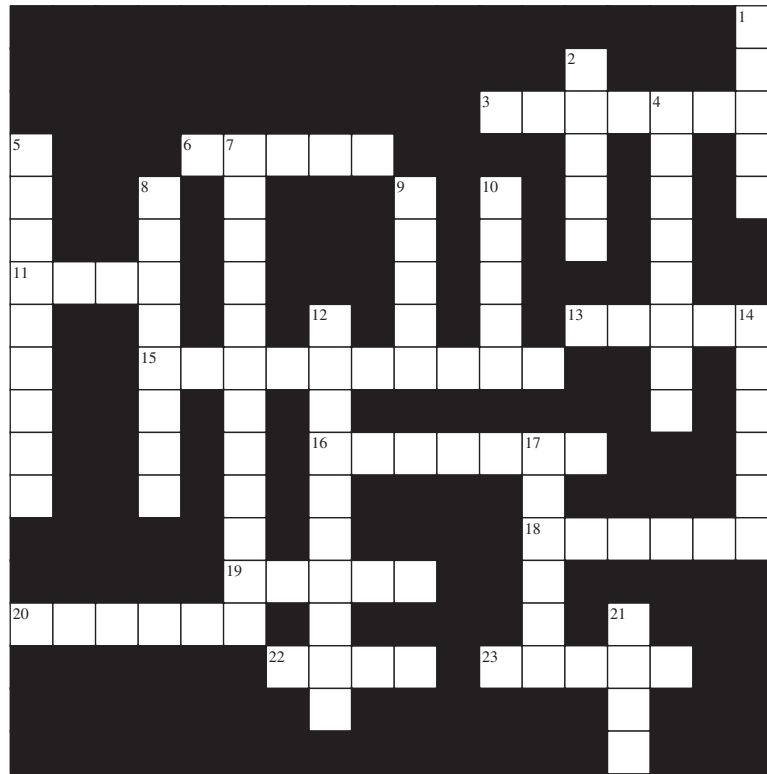
3. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a curved fibrous cartilage found in some synovial joints.
4. Connections between two bones are called \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The caudal portion of the sternum is called the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is removal of all or part of a limb or body part.
7. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a piece of dead bone that is partially or fully detached from the surrounding healthy bone.
8. Inward curvature of a bone is called \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Visual examination of the internal structure of a joint using a fiberoptic instrument is \_\_\_\_\_.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is loss of mobility of a joint.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ is abnormal softening of cartilage.
12. A muscle that straightens a limb at a joint is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Straightening of a limb beyond its normal limits is called \_\_\_\_\_.
14. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a band of fibers that holds structures together in an abnormal fashion.
15. Dogs with short, wide skulls are said to be \_\_\_\_\_.
16. Involuntary muscle is also called \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, or \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Surgical removal of a claw is \_\_\_\_\_.
18. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a broken bone in which there is an open wound in the skin.
19. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the fibrous band of connective tissue on the ventral abdominal wall that is the median attachment of the abdominal muscles.
20. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is the place where muscle ends that is the more movable end or portion away from the midline.
21. Inflammation of a tendon is called \_\_\_\_\_.
22. The opposite of extension is \_\_\_\_\_.
23. The opposite of contraction is \_\_\_\_\_.
24. A muscle that lowers or depresses a part is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
25. The opposite of inferior is \_\_\_\_\_.
26. The term for crosswise is \_\_\_\_\_.
27. The term for slanted is \_\_\_\_\_.
28. The crackling sensation that is felt and heard when broken bones move together is called \_\_\_\_\_.
29. Broken bones that are splintered or crushed into multiple pieces are called \_\_\_\_\_.
30. Abnormal development of the pelvic joint causing the head of the femur and the acetabulum not to be aligned properly is called \_\_\_\_\_.

### True or False

1. Arthrodesis is fusion of a joint or the spinal vertebrae by surgical means.
2. A craniotomy is a surgical incision into a joint.
3. An osteotomy is the surgical removal of a bone.
4. Ataxia is lack of voluntary control of muscle movement.
5. An adhesion is a band of fibers that holds structures together in an abnormal fashion.

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

Supply the correct term in the appropriate space for the definition listed.



### Across

- 3 projection
- 6 sharp projection
- 11 low projection or ridge
- 13 space or cavity
- 15 projecting part
- 16 rounded projection (that articulates with another bone)
- 18 passage or opening
- 19 tunnel
- 20 seam
- 22 toothlike structure
- 23 smooth area

### Down

- 1 trench or hollow depressed
- 2 small pit
- 4 surface projection
- 5 rounded projection (distal end of tibia and fibula)
- 7 projecting part
- 8 opening
- 9 branch or smaller structure given off by a larger structure
- 10 high projection or border projection
- 12 broad, flat projection (on femur)
- 14 groove
- 17 thin, flat plate
- 21 major protrusion

## WORD SEARCH

Define the following terms; then find each term in the puzzle.



defective growth

bent outward

things that work together

place where muscle begins

narrow, long skull

surgical incision into a muscle

inflammation of voluntary muscle

lack of muscle control

circular movement around an axis

small bone embedded in tendon

four-footed animal

study of bone

upper bone of jaw

lower bone of jaw

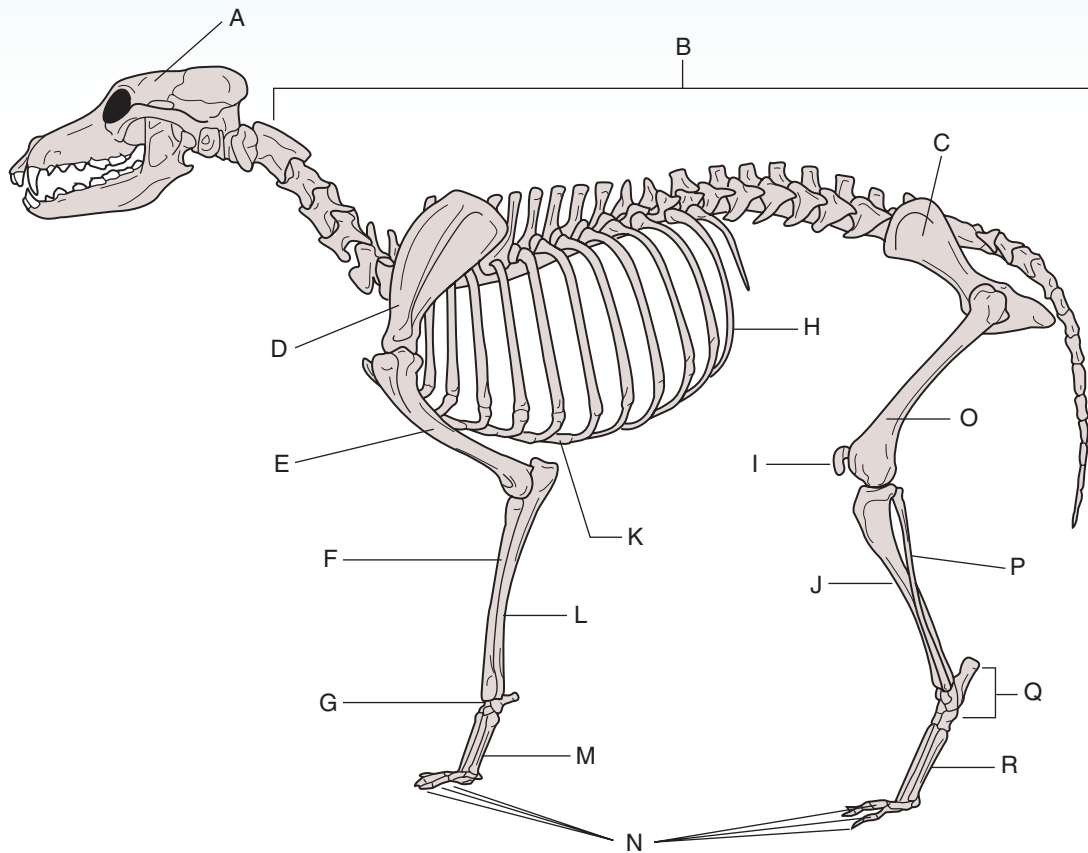
animal with hooves

caudal part of sternum

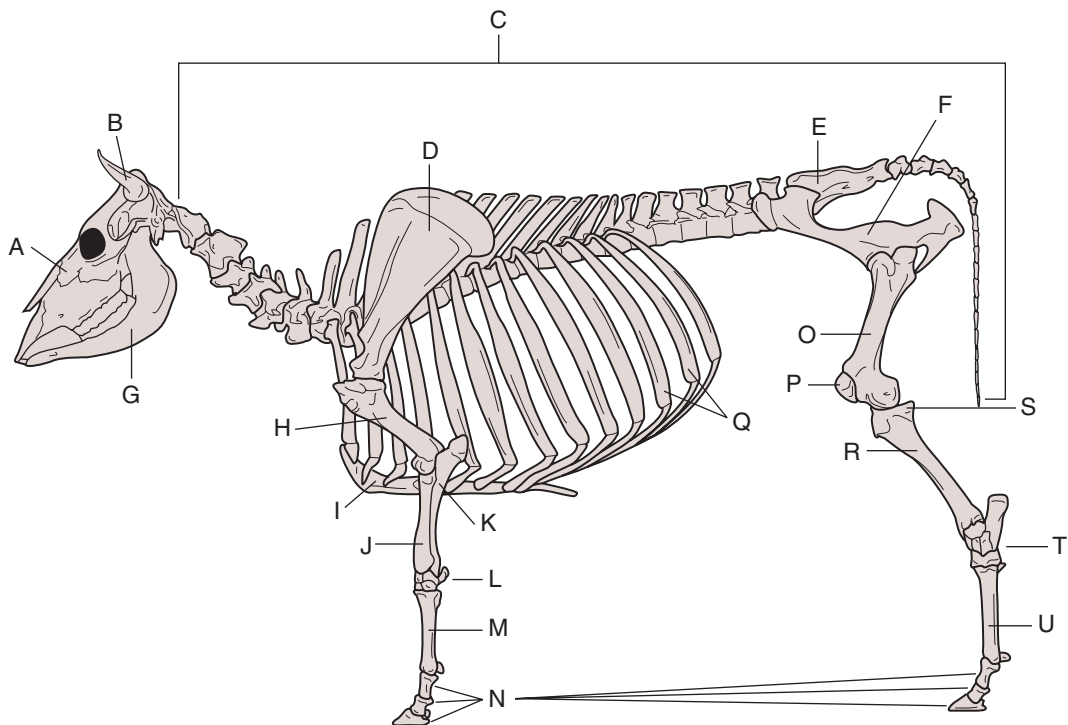
things that work opposite each other

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

Label the Diagrams in Figures 3–31 and 3–32.



**Figure 3–31** Dog skeleton. Label the parts of the dog skeleton indicated by the letters.



**Figure 3–32** Bovine skeleton. Label the parts of the bovine skeleton indicated by the letters.

# CHAPTER 4

## HEAD TO TOE (AND ALL PARTS IN BETWEEN)

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the body parts of various species
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce anatomical terms

### TWO WORDS, SAME MEANING

Medical terminology is a specific language that health care professionals (both human and veterinary) use to describe conditions in a concise manner. Laypeople also have a language that is used to describe anatomy and medical conditions in a concise manner. In veterinary medicine, many different terms are used to describe the anatomy and diseases of many different species. In this chapter, the anatomical lay terms that many people use in the veterinary community are described. The lay terms for diseases are covered in the chapters on individual species.



## COMMON ANATOMICAL TERMS FOR EQUINE SPECIES

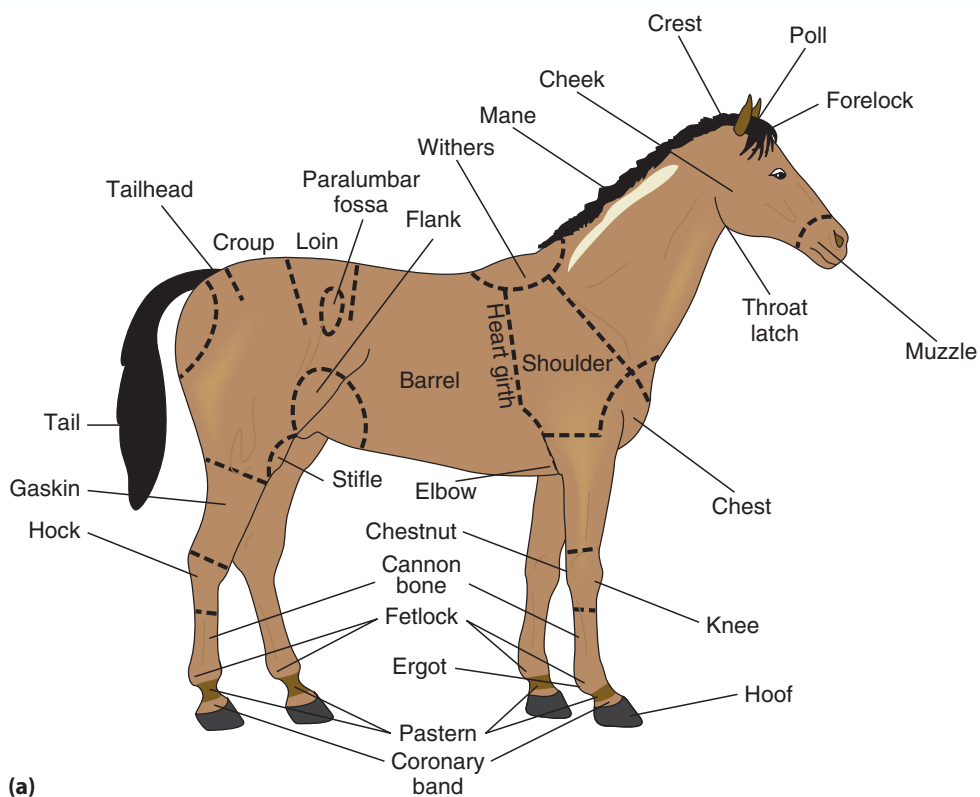
See Figures 4–1a and b.

**barrel** (ba-rəl): capacity of the chest or trunk.

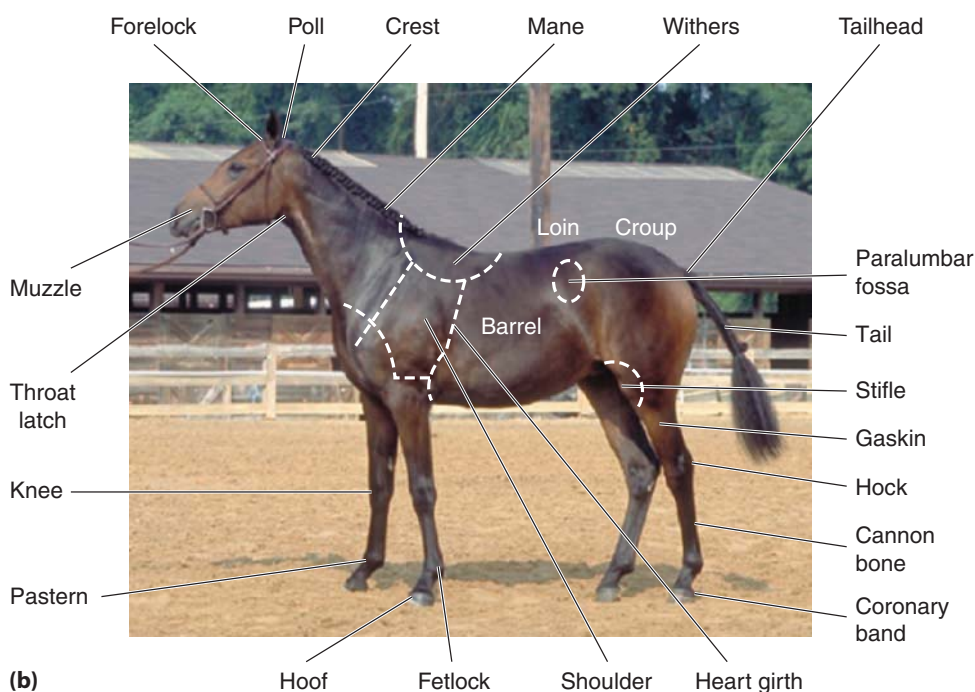
**bars** (bahrz): raised V-shaped structure on distal surface of hoof.

**cannon bone:** third metacarpal (metatarsal) of the horse; also called the shin bone.

**cheek** (chĕk): fleshy portion of either side of the face; forms the sides of the mouth and continues rostrally to the lips.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 4–1** Anatomical parts of a horse [(b) Courtesy of the USDA by Bill Tarpenning.]

**chest** (chehst): part of the body between the neck and abdomen; the thorax.

**chestnuts** (chehs-nuhtz): horny, irregular growths on the medial surface of the equine leg; in the front legs, the chestnuts are just above the knee; in the rear legs, the chestnuts are near the hock.

**coffin** (kawf-ihn) **joint**: distal interphalangeal joint (joint between the short pastern and coffin bones [phalanges II and III, respectively]) in ungulates (Figures 4–2a and b).

**corners** (kawr-nrz): third incisors of equine.

**coronary** (kohr-ō-nār-ē) **band**: junction between the skin and the horn of the hoof; also called the **coronet** (kōr-oh-neht).

**crest** (krehst): root of the mane.

**croup** (kroop): muscular area around and above the tail base.

**cutters** (kuht-ərz): second incisors of equine.

**dock** (dohck): solid part of the equine tail.

**elbow** (ehl-bō): forelimb joint formed by distal humerus, proximal radius, and proximal ulna.

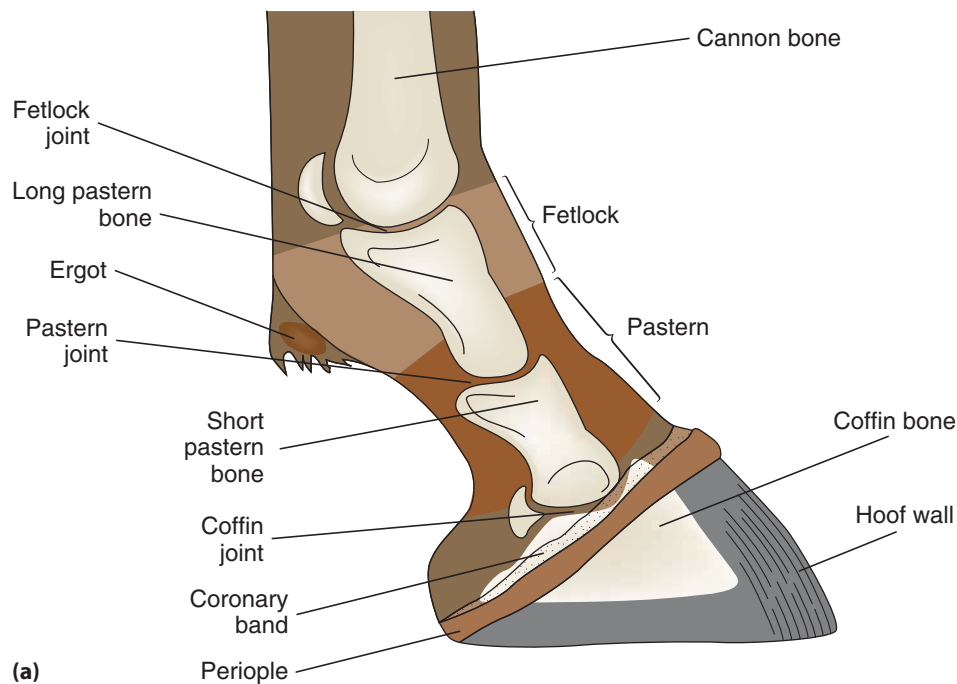
**ergot** (ahr-goht or ər-goht): small keratinized (kehr-ə-tə-nīzd) mass of horn in a small bunch of hair on the palmar or plantar aspects of the equine fetlock.

**fetlock** (feht-lohck): area of the limb between the pastern and the cannon.

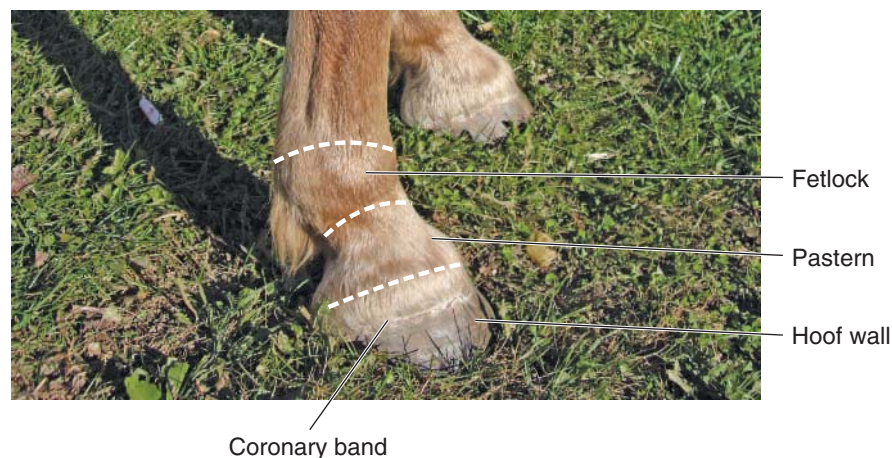
**fetlock** (feht-lohck) **joint**: metacarpophalangeal and metatarsophalangeal joint (joint between the cannon bone and long pastern bone [phalanx I]) in ungulates.

**flank** (flānk): side of the body between the ribs and ilium.

**forelock** (fōr-lohck): in maned animals, the most cranial part of the mane hanging down between the ears and onto the forehead.



(a)



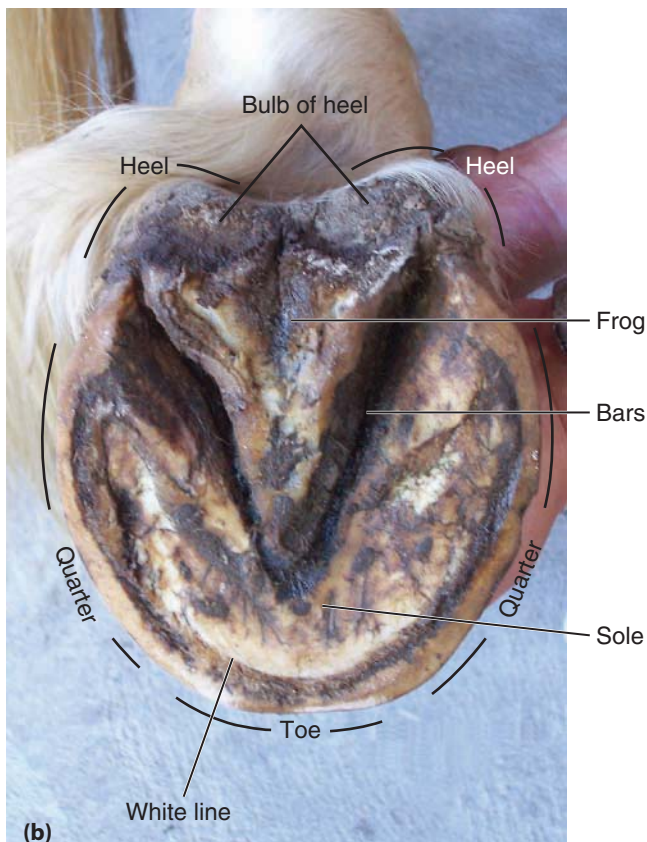
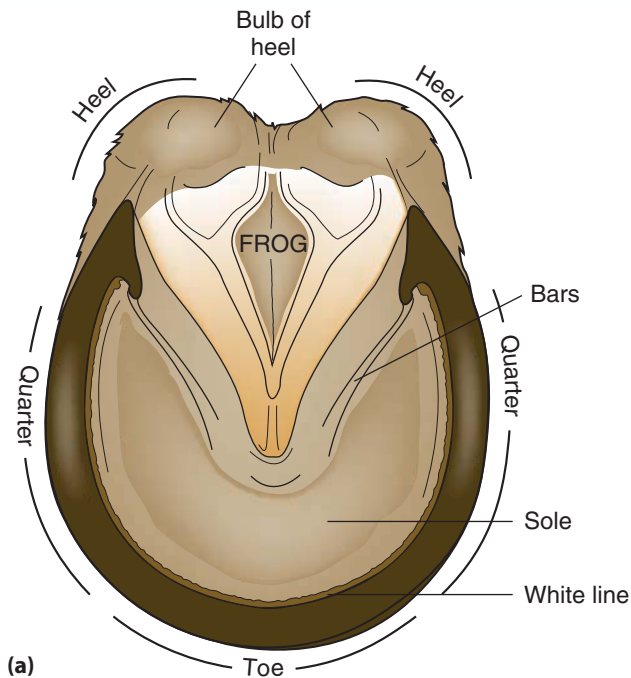
(b)

**Figure 4–2** Anatomical parts of a horse's foot

**frog** (frohg): V-shaped pad of soft horn between the bars on the sole of the equine hoof.

**gaskin** (gahs-kihn): muscular portion of the hindlimb between the stifle and hock; also called the **crus**.

**heart girth** (hahrt gərth): circumference of the chest just caudal to the shoulders and cranial to the back.



**Figure 4-3** Anatomical parts of a horse's hoof [(b) Courtesy of Laura Lien, CVT, BS.]

**heel:** caudal region of the hoof that has an area of soft tissue called the bulb.

**hock** (hohck): tarsal joint.

**hoof** (hoof): hard covering of the digit in ungulates (Figures 4-3a and b).

**hoof wall** (hoof wahl): hard, horny outer layer of the covering of the digit in ungulates.

**knee** (nē): carpus in ungulates (an ungulate is an animal with hooves).

**loin** (loyn): lumbar region of the back between the thorax and pelvis.

**mane** (mān): region of long, coarse hair at the dorsal border of the neck and terminating at the poll.

**muzzle** (muh-zuhl): two nostrils (including the skin and fascia) and the muscles of the upper and lower lip.

**nippers** (nihp-pərz): central incisors of equine.

**paralumbar fossa** (pah-ah-luhm-bahr fohs-ah): hollow area of the flank whose boundaries are the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae (dorsally), the last rib (cranially), and the thigh muscles (caudally).

**pastern** (pahs-tərn): area of the limb between the fetlock and hoof.

**pastern joint:** proximal interphalangeal joint (joint between the long and short pastern bones [phalanges I and II, respectively]) in ungulates.

**poll** (pōl): top of the head; occiput; nuchal crest.

**quarter:** lateral or medial side of the hoof.

**shoulder** (shōl-dər): region around the large joint between the humerus and scapula.

**sole** (sōl): palmar or plantar surface of the hoof; irregular crescent-shaped bottom of hoof.

**stifle joint:** femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds.

**tail** (tāl): caudal part of the vertebral column extending beyond the trunk.

**tail head** (tāl hehd): base of the tail where it connects to the body.

**teat** (tēt): nipple of mammary gland.

**toe:** cranial side of the hoof.

**udder** (uh-dər): mammary gland.

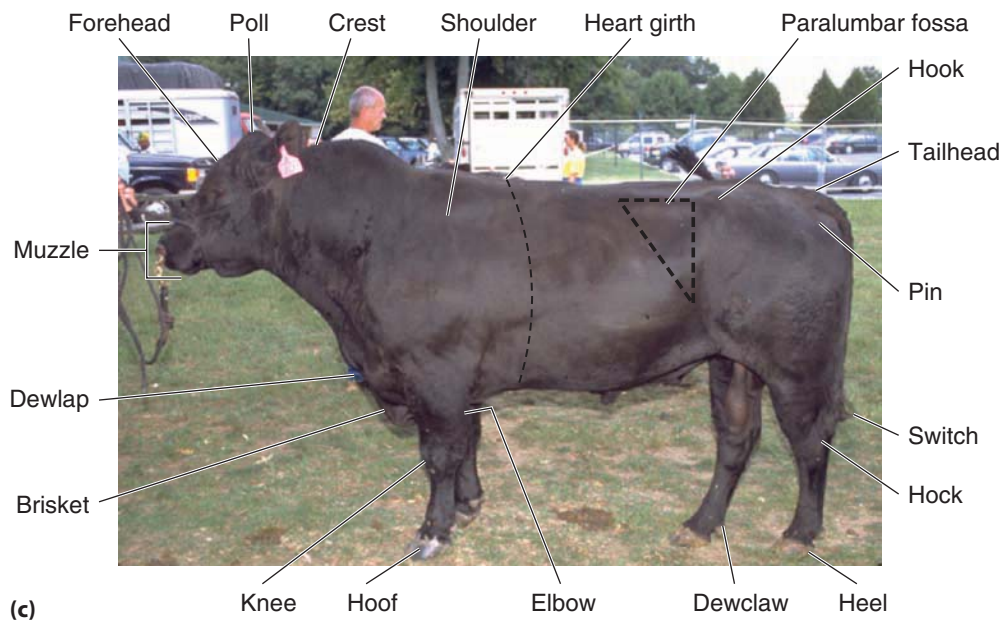
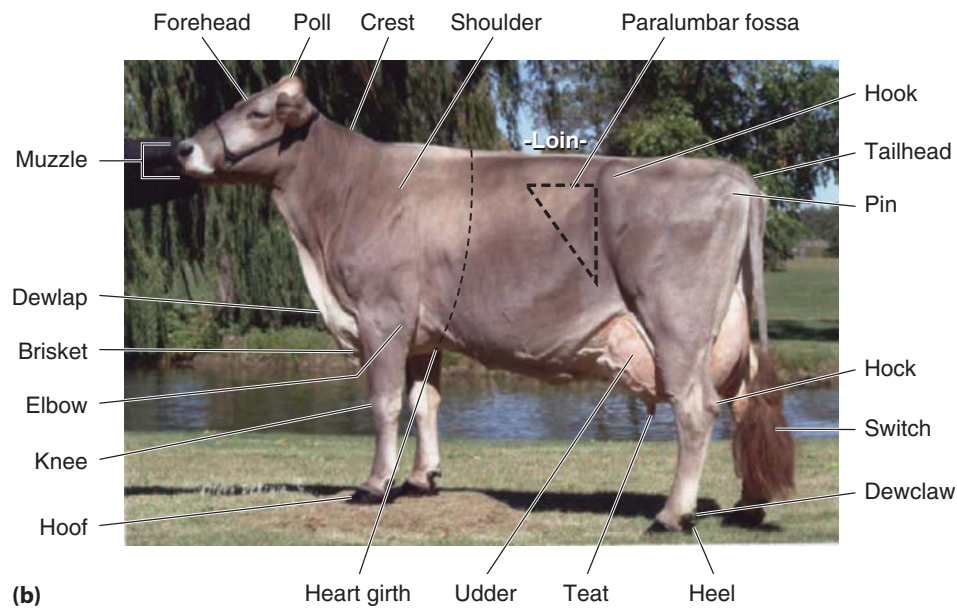
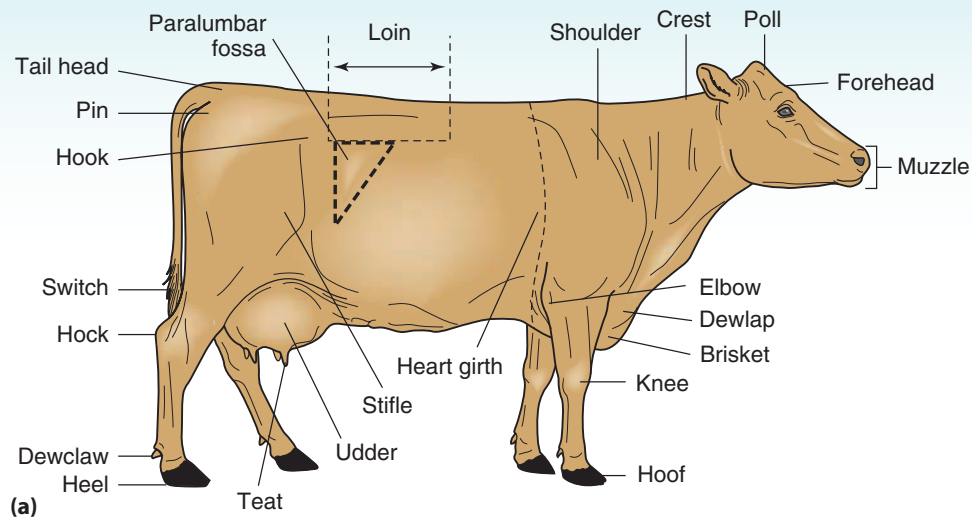
**white line:** fusion between the wall and sole of the hoof.

**withers** (wih-thərz): region over the dorsum where the neck joins the thorax and where the dorsal margins of the scapula lie just below the skin.

## COMMON ANATOMICAL TERMS FOR CATTLE

See Figures 4-4a, b, and c.

**brisket** (brihs-kiht): mass of connective tissue, muscle, and fat covering the cranioventral part of the ruminant chest between the forelegs.



**Figure 4–4** Anatomical parts of a cow [(b) Courtesy of the Brown Swiss Cattle Breeders' Association. (c) Anatomical parts of a bull Courtesy of the USDA by Bob Bill Tarpenning.]

**cannon** (kahn-nohn) **bone:** third and fourth metacarpal (metatarsal) of the ruminant (not commonly used); also called the **shin bone**.

**coffin** (kawf-ihn) **joint:** distal interphalangeal joint (joint between the short pastern and coffin bones [phalanges II and III, respectively]) in ungulates.

**crest** (krehst): dorsal margin of the neck.

**dewclaw** (doo-klaw): accessory claw of the ruminant foot that projects caudally from the fetlock.

**dewlap** (doo-lahp): loose skin under the throat and neck, which may become pendulous in some breeds.

**dock** (dohck): solid part of the tail.

**elbow** (ehl-bō): forelimb joint formed by distal humerus, proximal radius, and proximal ulna.

**fetlock** (feht-lohck) **joint:** metacarpophalangeal and metatarsophalangeal joint (joint between the cannon bone and the long pastern bone [phalanx I]) in ungulates.

**flank** (flānk): side of the body between the ribs and ilium.

**forearm** (fōr-ahrm): part of the foreleg supported by the radius and ulna, between the elbow and knee.

**forehead** (fōr-hehd): region of the head between the eyes and ears.

**heart girth** (hahrt gərth): circumference of the chest just caudal to the shoulders and cranial to the back.

**heel** (hēl): caudal region of the hoof that has an area of soft tissue called the bulb.

**hock** (hohck): tarsal joint.

**hoof** (hoof): hard covering of the digit in ungulates.

**hoof wall** (hoof wahl): hard, horny outer layer of the covering of the digit in ungulates.

**hooks** (hookz): protrusion of the wing of the ilium on the dorsolateral area of ruminants.

**knee** (nē): carpus in ungulates.

**loin** (loyn): lumbar region of the back, between the thorax and pelvis.

**muzzle** (muh-zuhl): two nostrils (including the skin and fascia) and the muscles of the upper and lower lip.

**paralumbar fossa** (pah-ah-luhm-bahr fohs-ah): hollow area of the flank whose boundaries are the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae (dorsally), the last rib (cranially), and the thigh muscles (caudally).

**pastern** (pahs-tərn) **joint:** proximal interphalangeal joint (joint between the long and short pastern bones [phalanges I and II, respectively]) in ungulates.

**pedal** (pē-dahl): pertaining to the foot.

**pins** (pihnz): protrusion of the ischium bones just lateral to the base of the tail in ruminants.

**poll** (pōl): top of the head; occiput; nuchal crest.

**quarter:** one of the four glands in the cow's udder.

**shoulder** (shōl-dər): region around the large joint between the humerus and scapula.

**sole** (sōl): palmar or plantar surface of the hoof; bottom of hoof.

**stifle** (stī-fuhl) **joint:** femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds.

**switch** (swihtch): tuft of hair at the end of the tail.

**tail** (tāl): caudal part of the vertebral column extending beyond the trunk.

**tail head** (tāl hehd): base of the tail where it connects to the body.

**teat** (tēt): nipple of mammary gland.

**toe** (tō): cranial end of the hoof.

**udder** (uh-dər): mammary gland.

## COMMON ANATOMICAL TERMS FOR GOATS

See Figures 4–5 a and b.

**brisket** (brihs-kiht): mass of connective tissue, muscle, and fat covering the cranioventral part of the ruminant chest between the forelegs.

**cannon** (kahn-nohn) **bone:** third and fourth metacarpal (metatarsal) of the ruminant (not commonly used); also called the **shin bone**.

**chine** (chīn): thoracic region of the back.

**coffin** (kawf-ihn) **joint:** distal interphalangeal joint (joint between the short pastern and coffin bones [phalanges II and III, respectively]) in ungulates.

**crest** (krehst): dorsal margin of the neck.

**dewclaw** (doo-klaw): accessory claw of the ruminant foot that projects caudally from the fetlock.

**elbow** (ehl-bō): forelimb joint formed by distal humerus, proximal radius, and proximal ulna.

**fetlock** (feht-lohck) **joint:** metacarpophalangeal and metatarsophalangeal joint (joint between the cannon bone and the long pastern bone [phalanx I]) in ungulates.

**flank** (flānk): side of the body between the ribs and ilium.

**forearm** (fōr-ahrm): part of the foreleg supported by the radius and ulna, between the elbow and knee.

**forehead** (fōr-hehd): region of the head between the eyes and ears.

**heart girth** (hahrt gərth): circumference of the chest just caudal to the shoulders and cranial to the back.

**heel** (hēl): caudal region of the hoof that has an area of soft tissue called the bulb.

**hock** (hohck): tarsal joint.

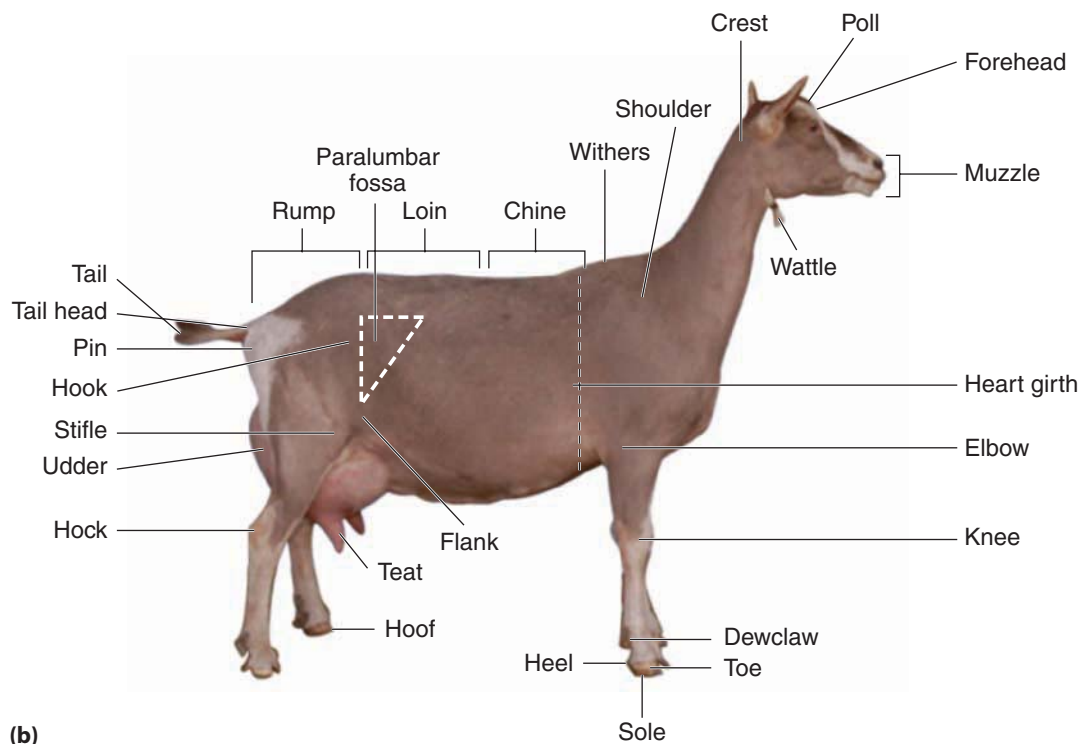
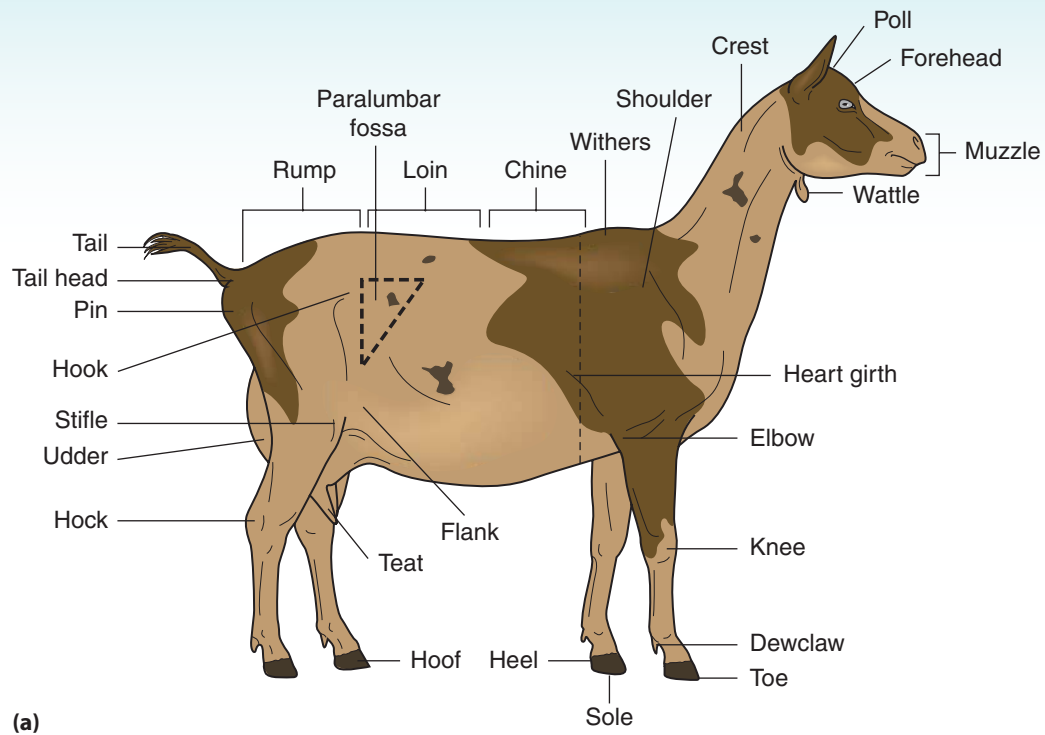
**hoof** (hoof): hard covering of the digit in ungulates.

**hoof wall** (hoof wahl): hard, horny outer layer of the covering of the digit in ungulates.

**hooks** (hookz): protrusion of the wing of the ilium on the dorsolateral area of ruminants.

**horn butt** (hōrn buht): poll region between the eyes and ears of previous horn growth.

**knee** (nē): carpus in ungulates.



**Figure 4-5** Anatomical parts of a goat [(b) Courtesy of iStock Photo.]

**loin** (loyn): lumbar region of the back, between the thorax and pelvis.

**muzzle** (muh-zuhl): two nostrils (including the skin and fascia) and the muscles of the upper and lower lip.

**paralumbar fossa** (pah-ah-luhm-bahr fohs-ah): hollow area of the flank whose boundaries are the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae (dorsally), the last rib (cranially), and the thigh muscles (caudally).

**pastern** (pahs-tərn) **joint**: proximal interphalangeal joint (joint between the long and short pastern bones [phalanges I and II, respectively]) in ungulates.

**pedal** (pē-dahl): pertaining to the foot.

**pins** (pihnz): protrusion of the ischium bones just lateral to the base of the tail in ruminants.

**poll** (pōl): top of the head; occiput; nuchal crest.

**rump** (ruhmp): sacral to tailhead region of the back.

**shoulder** (shōl-dər): region around the large joint between the humerus and scapula.

**sole** (sōl): palmar or plantar surface of the hoof; bottom of hoof.

**stifle** (sti-fuhl) **joint**: femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds.

**tail** (tāl): caudal part of the vertebral column extending beyond the trunk.

**tail head** (tāl hehd): base of the tail where it connects to the body.

**teat** (tēt): nipple of mammary gland.

**toe** (tō): cranial end of the hoof.

**udder** (uh-dər): mammary gland.

**wattle** (waht-tuhl): appendages suspended from the head (usually under the chin).

**withers** (wih-thərz): region over the dorsum where the neck joins the thorax and where the dorsal margins of the scapula lie just below the skin.

## COMMON ANATOMICAL TERMS FOR SHEEP

See Figures 4–6a and b.

**brisket** (brihs-kiht): mass of connective tissue, muscle, and fat covering the cranioventral part of the ruminant chest between the forelegs.

**cannon** (kahn-nohn) **bone**: third and fourth metacarpal (metatarsal) of the ruminant (not commonly used); also called the **shin bone**.

**coffin** (kawf-ihn) **joint**: distal interphalangeal joint (joint between the short pastern and coffin bones [phalanges II and III, respectively]) in ungulates.

**crest** (krehst): dorsal margin of the neck.

**dewclaw** (doo-klaw): accessory claw of the ruminant foot that projects caudally from the fetlock.

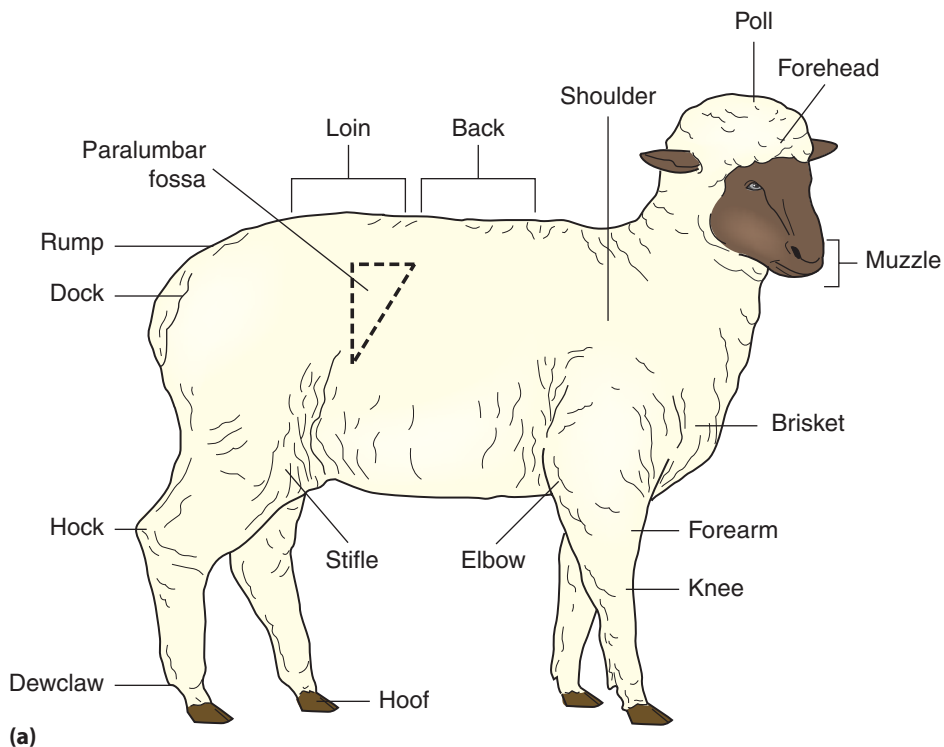
**dock** (dohck): solid part of the tail.

**elbow** (ehl-bō): forelimb joint formed by distal humerus, proximal radius, and proximal ulna.

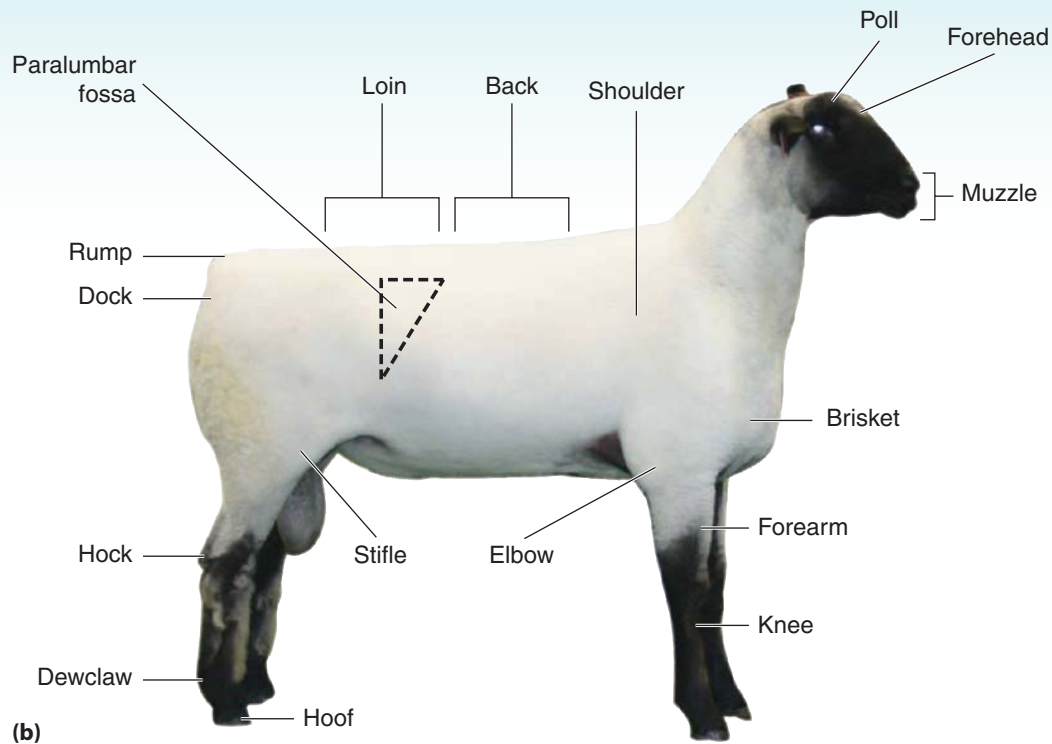
**fetlock** (feht-lohck) **joint**: metacarpophalangeal and metatarsophalangeal joint (joint between the cannon bone and the long pastern bone [phalanx I]) in ungulates.

**flank** (flānk): side of the body between the ribs and ilium.

**forearm** (fōr-ahrm): part of the foreleg supported by the radius and ulna, between the elbow and knee.



**Figure 4–6** Anatomical parts of a sheep [(b) Courtesy of the American Hampshire Sheep Association.]



**Figure 4-6** (continued)

**forehead** (fōr-hehd): region of the head between the eyes and ears.

**heart girth** (hahrt gərth): circumference of the chest just caudal to the shoulders and cranial to the back.

**heel** (hēl): caudal region of the hoof that has an area of soft tissue called the bulb.

**hock** (hohck): tarsal joint.

**hoof** (hoof): hard covering of the digit in ungulates.

**hoof wall** (hoof wahl): hard, horny outer layer of the covering of the digit in ungulates.

**knee** (nē): carpus in ungulates.

**loin** (loyn): lumbar region of the back, between the thorax and pelvis.

**muzzle** (muh-zuhl): two nostrils (including the skin and fascia) and the muscles of the upper and lower lip.

**paralumbar fossa** (pah-ah-luhm-bahr fohs-ah): hollow area of the flank whose boundaries are the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae (dorsally), the last rib (cranially), and the thigh muscles (caudally).

**pastern joint** (pahs-tərn joint): proximal interphalangeal joint (joint between the long and short pastern bones [phalanges I and II, respectively]) in ungulates.

**pedal** (pē-dahl): pertaining to the foot.

**poll** (pōl): top of the head; occiput; nuchal crest.

**rump** (ruhmp): sacral to tailhead region of the back.

**shoulder** (shōl-dər): region around the large joint between the humerus and scapula.

**sole** (sōl): palmar or plantar surface of the hoof; bottom of hoof.

**stifle joint** (stī-fuhl joint): femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds.

**tail head** (tāl hehd): base of the tail where it connects to the body.

**teat** (tēt): nipple of mammary gland.

**toe** (tō): cranial end of the hoof.

**udder** (uh-dər): mammary gland.

## COMMON ANATOMICAL TERMS FOR SWINE

See Figures 4–7a and b.

**coffin joint** (kawf-ihn joint): joint between the short pastern and coffin bones (phalanges II and III, respectively) in ungulates.

**dewclaw** (doo-klaw): accessory claw of the porcine foot that projects caudally from the fetlock.

**elbow** (ehl-bō): forelimb joint formed by distal humerus, proximal radius, and proximal ulna.

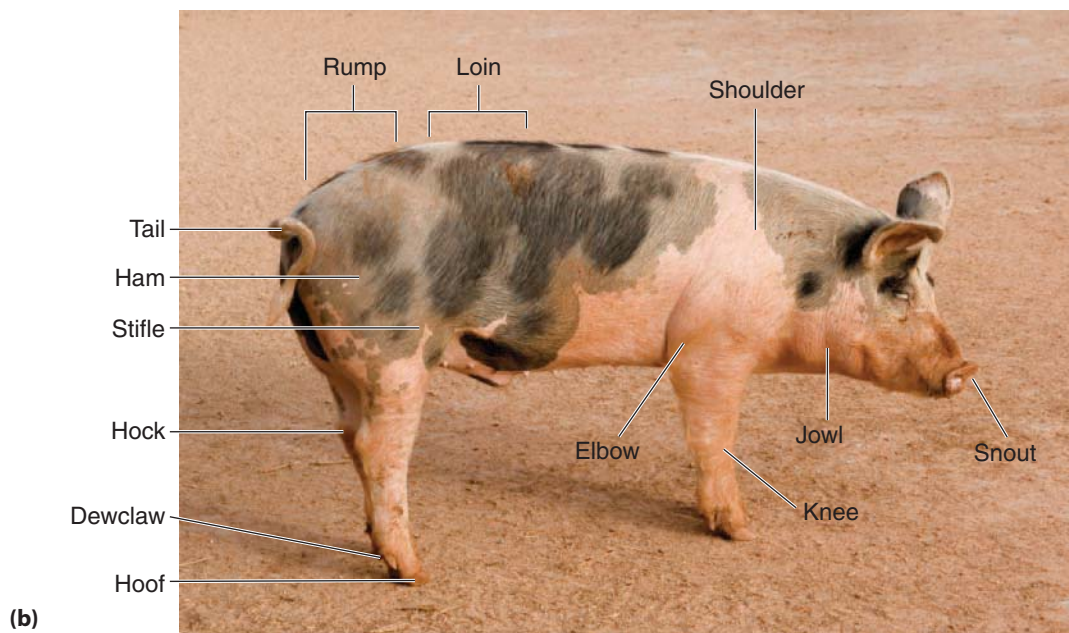
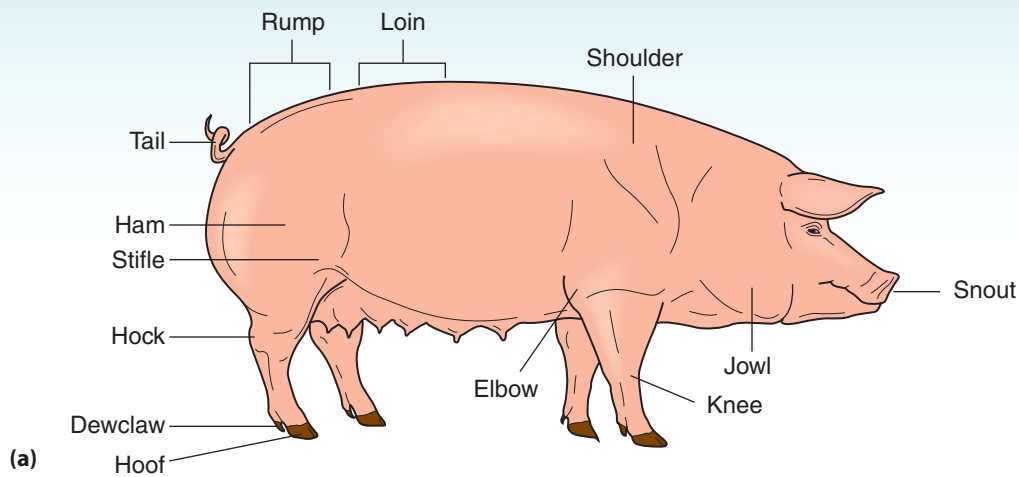
**fetlock joint** (feht-lohck joint): metacarpophalangeal and metatarsophalangeal joint in ungulates.

**flank** (flānk): side of the body between the ribs and ilium.

**ham** (hahm): musculature of the upper thigh.

**hock** (hohck): tarsal joint.

**hoof** (hoof): hard covering of the digit in ungulates.



**Figure 4-7** Anatomical parts of a swine [(b) Courtesy of iStock photo.]

**hoof wall** (hoof wahl): hard, horny outer layer of the covering of the digit in ungulates.

**jowl** (jowl): external throat, especially when fat or loose skin is present.

**knee** (nē): carpus in ungulates.

**loin** (loyn): lumbar region of the back, between the thorax and pelvis.

**pastern joint** (pahs-tərn joint): joint between the long and short pastern bones (phalanges I and II, respectively) in ungulates.

**rump** (ruhmp): sacral to tailhead region of the back.

**shoulder** (shōl-dər): region around the large joint between the humerus and scapula.

**snout** (snowt): upper lip and apex of the nose of swine.

**stifle joint** (sti-fuhl joint): femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds.

**tail** (tāl): caudal part of the vertebral column extending beyond the trunk.

## COMMON ANATOMICAL TERMS FOR DOGS AND CATS

See Figures 4-8a and b and 4-9a and b.

**cheek** (chēk): fleshy portion of either side of the face; forms the sides of the mouth and continues rostrally to the lips.

**chest** (chehst): part of the body between the neck and abdomen; the thorax.

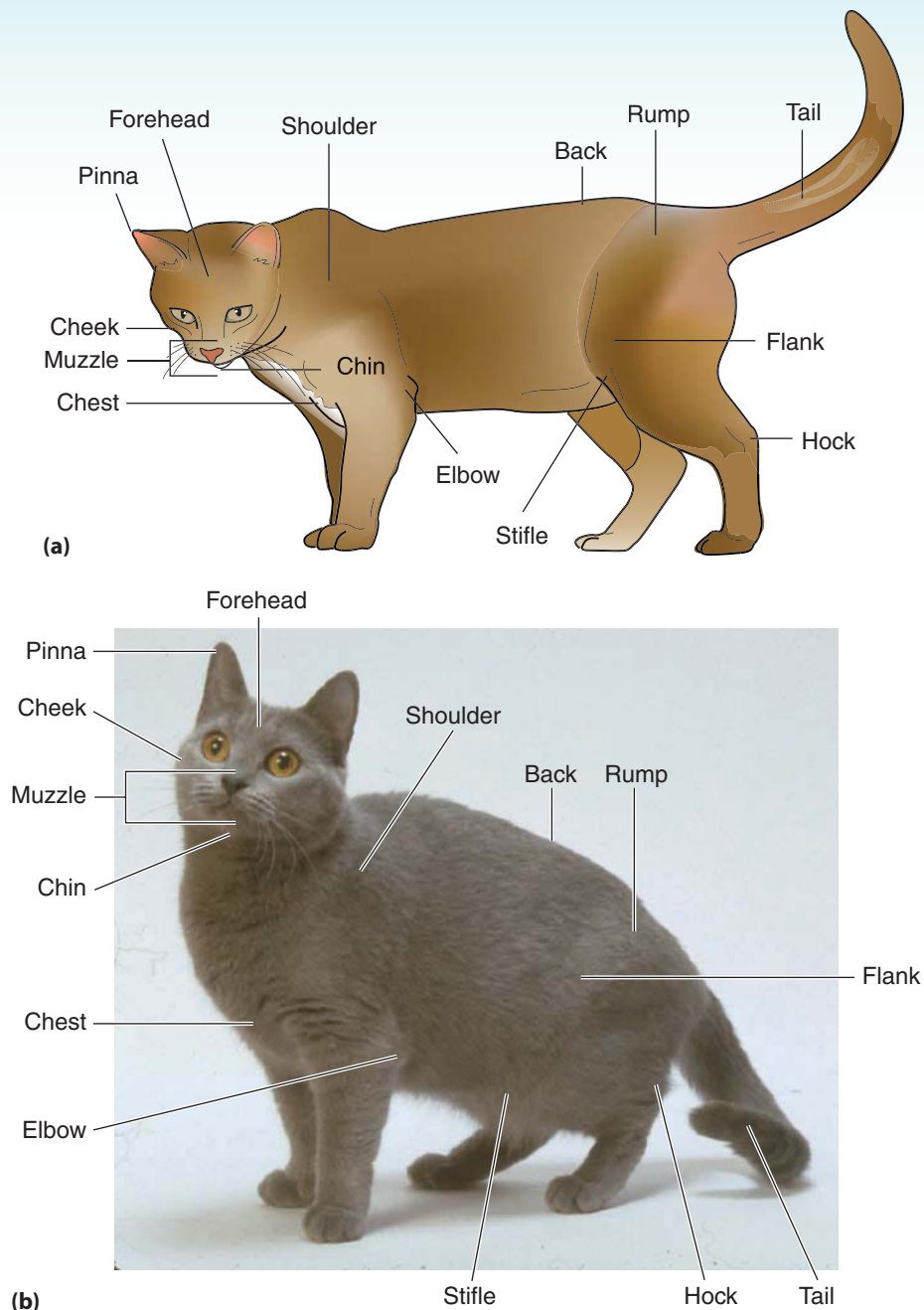
**chin** (chihn): rostroventral protrusion of the mandible.

**dewclaw** (doo-klaw): rudimentary first digit of dogs and cats.

**elbow** (ehl-bō): forelimb joint formed by distal humerus, proximal radius, and proximal ulna.

**flank** (flānk): side of the body between the ribs and ilium.

**forehead** (fōr-hehd): region of the head between the eyes and ears.



**Figure 4-8** Anatomical parts of a cat [(b) Photo by Isabelle Francais.]

**hock** (hohck): tarsal joint; **tarsus** also is used for this joint.

**muzzle** (muh-zuhl): two nostrils (including the skin and fascia) and the muscles of the upper and lower lip.

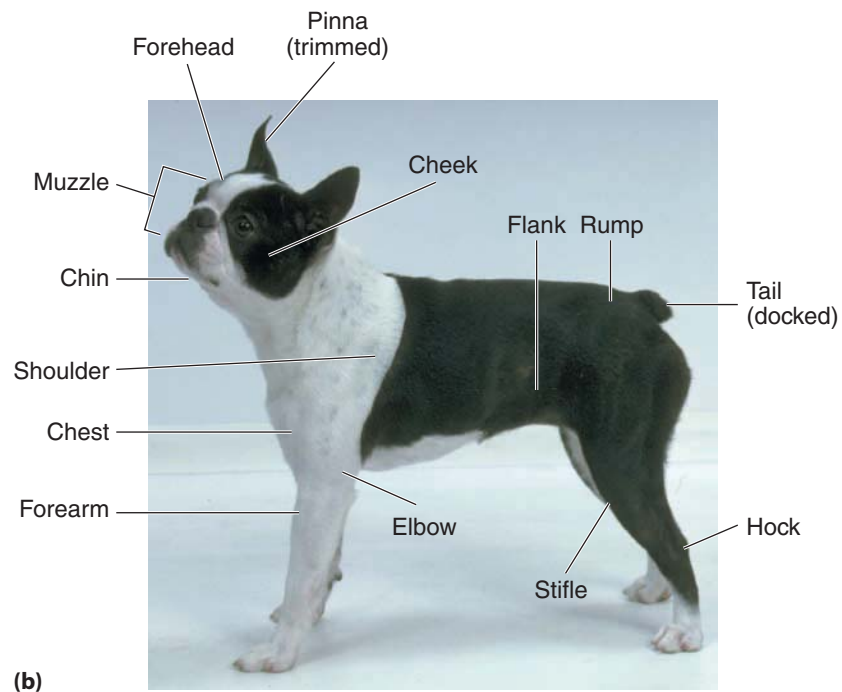
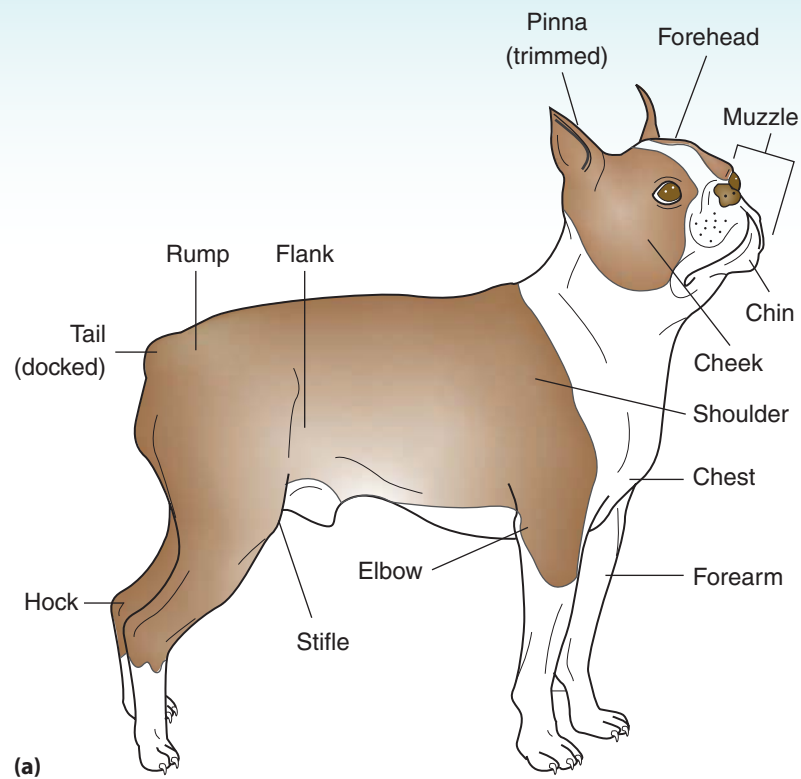
**pinna** (pihn-ah): projecting part of the ear lying outside the head; the **auricle**.

**rump** (ruhmp): sacral to tailhead region of the back; also called the **croup**.

**shoulder** (shöl-där): region around the large joint between the humerus and scapula.

**stifle** (stī-fuhl) **joint**: femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds.

**tail** (tāl): caudal part of the vertebral column extending beyond the trunk.



**Figure 4-9** Anatomical parts of a dog [(b) Photo by Isabelle Francais.]

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

- Another term for the distal interphalangeal joint in ungulates is the
  - coffin joint
  - fetlock joint
  - pastern joint
  - coronary band
- The V-shaped pad of soft horn between the bars on the sole of the equine hoof is known as the
  - sole
  - white line
  - ergot
  - frog
- The anatomical term for the top of the head is the
  - crest
  - poll
  - sole
  - forehead
- The common name for the tarsal joint in animals is the
  - loin
  - stifle
  - hock
  - wrist
- The side of the body between the ribs and ilium is called the
  - rump
  - flank
  - loin
  - ham
- The upper lip and apex of the nose of swine is called the
  - jowl
  - ham
  - snout
  - pinna
- The two nostrils and the muscles of the upper and lower lip are called the
  - snout
  - muzzle
  - cheek
  - crest
- The proximal interphalangeal joint in ungulates is called the
  - pastern joint
  - coffin joint
  - fetlock joint
  - stifle joint
- The protrusions of the ischium bones just lateral to the base of the tail in ruminants are known as
  - tailheads
  - hooks
  - pins
  - docks
- The protrusions of the wing of the ilium on the dorsolateral area of ruminants are known as
  - tailheads
  - hooks
  - pins
  - docks
- The hollow area of the flank is called the
  - pedal fossa
  - paralumbar fossa
  - rump fossa
  - tail fossa
- The mass of connective tissue, muscle, and fat covering the cranioventral part of the ruminant chest is the
  - brisket
  - crest
  - flank
  - loin
- The rudimentary first digit of dogs and cats is the
  - claw
  - digit
  - dewclaw
  - declaw
- The “knee” in people is known as what in animals?
  - hock joint
  - pastern joint
  - coffin joint
  - stifle joint

15. The auricle is also known as the
- cheek
  - forehead
  - chin
  - pinna
16. In swine, the external throat, especially when fat or loose skin is present, is called the
- snout
  - ham
  - jowl
  - loin
17. In equine, the region over the dorsum where the neck joins the thorax and where the dorsal margins of the scapula lie is called the
- shoulder
  - withers
  - flank
  - loin
18. Ilium is to ischium as
- hooks is to pins
  - pins is to hooks
  - pastern is to coffin
  - coffin is to pastern
19. The lumbar region of the back is called the
- rump
  - tailhead
  - loin
  - flank
20. The lateral or medial side of the hoof is the
- frog
  - coronet
  - heel
  - quarter

## Matching

Match the anatomical term in Column I with its definition in Column II.

### Column I

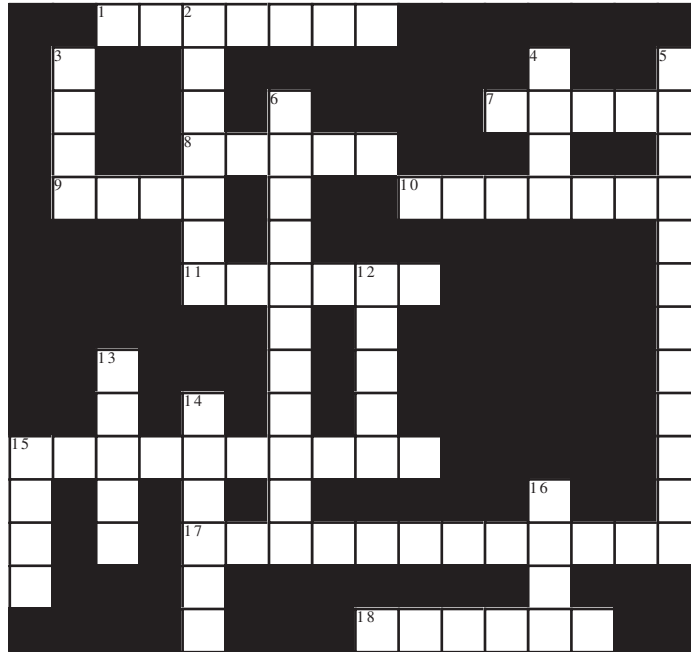
- \_\_\_\_\_ mane
- \_\_\_\_\_ cannon bone
- \_\_\_\_\_ knee
- \_\_\_\_\_ stifle joint
- \_\_\_\_\_ sole
- \_\_\_\_\_ cutters
- \_\_\_\_\_ corners
- \_\_\_\_\_ dock
- \_\_\_\_\_ dewclaw
- \_\_\_\_\_ barrel

### Column II

- carpus in ungulates
- capacity of the chest or trunk
- amputation of the tail; solid part of the equine tail
- region of long, coarse hair at the dorsal border of the neck
- rudimentary first digit of dogs and cats
- third metacarpal or metatarsal bone of the horse
- femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds
- bottom of the hoof
- second incisors of equine
- third incisors of equine

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

Supply the correct anatomical term in the appropriate space for the definition listed.



### Across

- 1 Rudimentary first digit of dogs and cats
- 7 Projecting part of the ear lying outside the head; the auricle
- 8 Protrusion of the wing of the ilium on the dorsolateral area of ruminants
- 9 The carpus in ungulates (an ungulate is an animal with hooves)
- 10 Mass of connective tissue, muscle, and fat covering the cranioventral part of the ruminant chest between the forelegs
- 11 Tuft of hair at the end of the tail
- 15 Circumference of the chest just caudal to the shoulders and cranial to the back
- 17 Metacarpo-phalangeal and metatarso-phalangeal joint in ungulates (2 wds.)
- 18 The two nostrils (including the skin and fascia) and the muscles of the upper and lower lip

### Down

- 2 Region in equine over the dorsum where the neck joins the thorax and where the dorsal margins of the scapula lie just below the skin
- 3 Amputation of the tail
- 4 Protrusion of the ischium bones just lateral to the base of the tail in ruminants
- 5 Joint between the long and short pastern bones (phalanx I and II respectively) in ungulates (2 wds.)
- 6 Joint between the short pastern and coffin bones (phalanx II and III respectively) in ungulates (2 wds.)
- 12 The root of the mane
- 13 Side of the body between the ribs and ilium
- 14 Femorotibial and femoropatellar joint in quadrupeds
- 15 Tarsal joint
- 16 Top of the head; the occiput

## WORD SEARCHES

Find the following anatomical terms in the puzzle below. (Make sure you understand what the terms mean as you find them.)

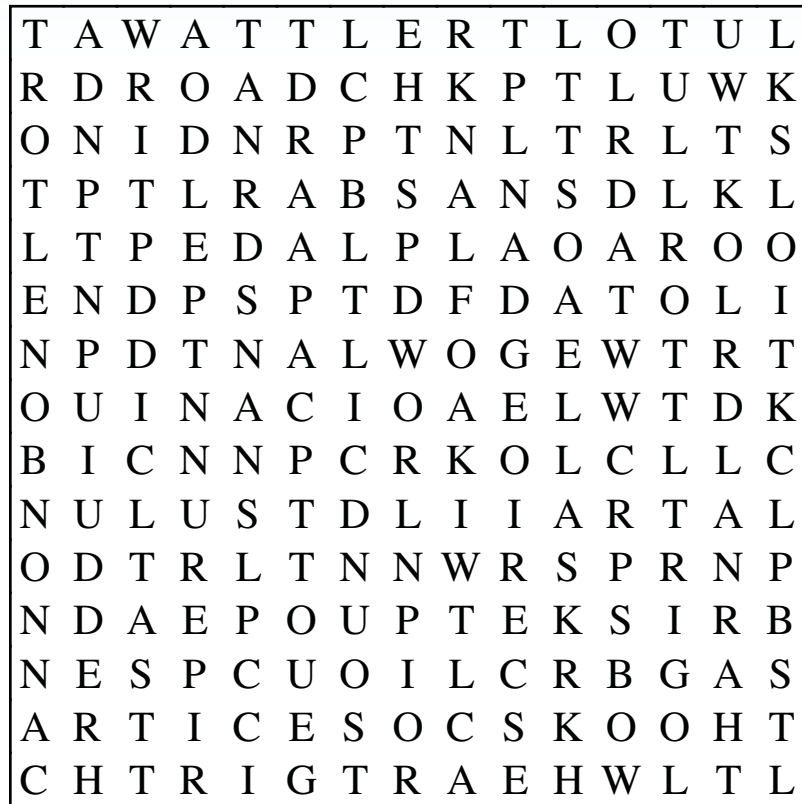
### Dog and Cat Word Search



Hock  
stifle joint  
pinna  
muzzle

chin  
dewclaw  
tail

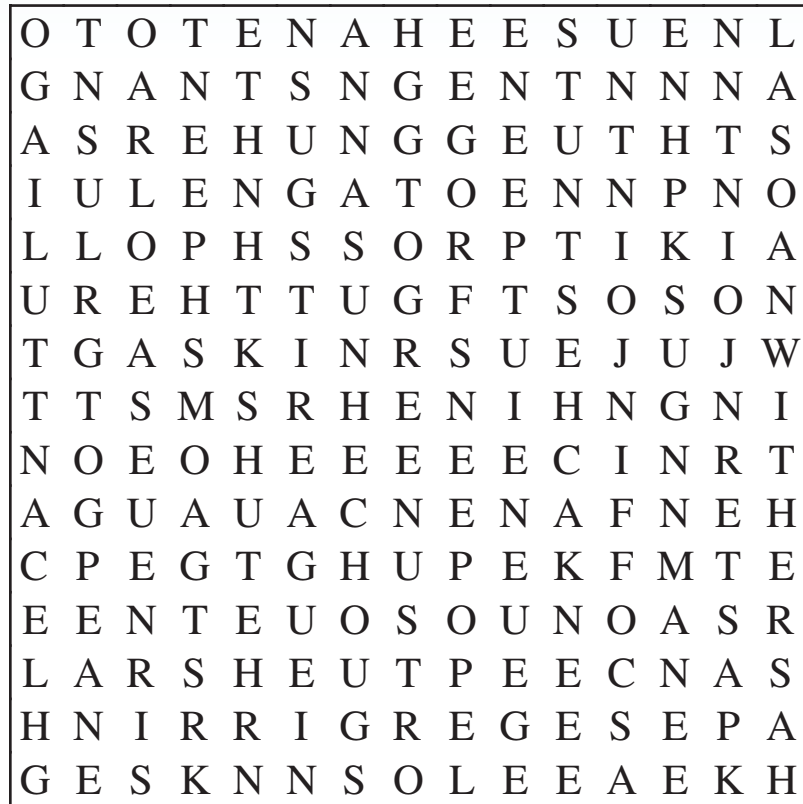
## Ruminant Word Search



cannon bone  
udder  
wattle  
heart girth  
pins  
hooks

loin  
flank  
pedal  
brisket  
dewlap

## Equine Word Search



knee  
poll  
mane  
pastern joint  
coffin joint  
sole

frog  
gaskin  
withers  
chestnuts  
ergot

## Swine Word Search

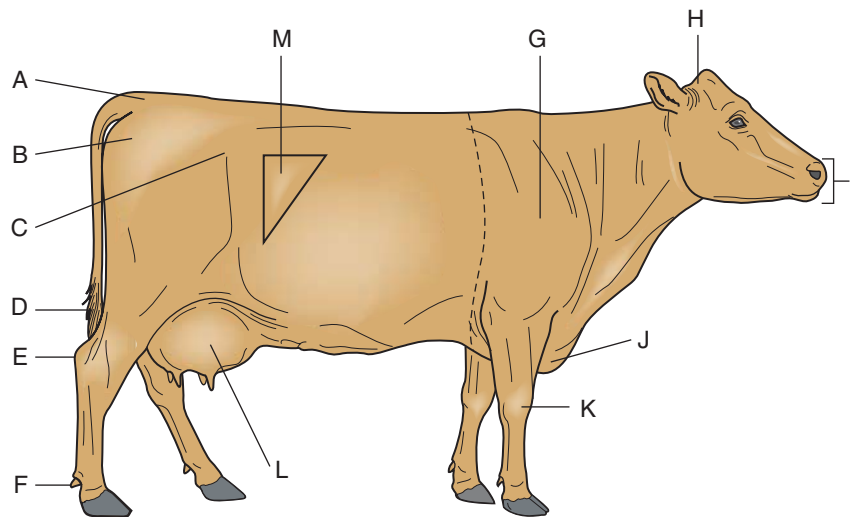


rump  
ham  
jowl

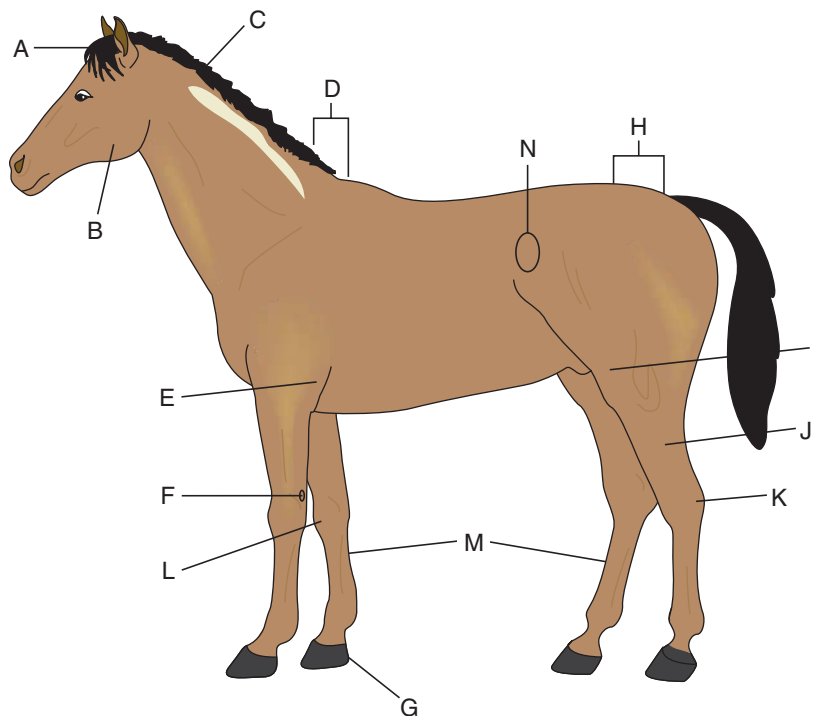
snout  
hoof  
elbow

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

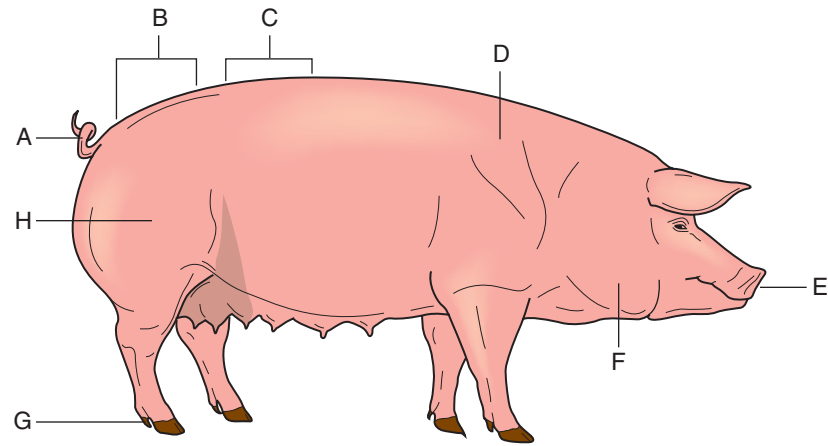
Label Diagrams (Figures 4–10, 4–11, 4–12, 4–13, 4–14, and 4–15)



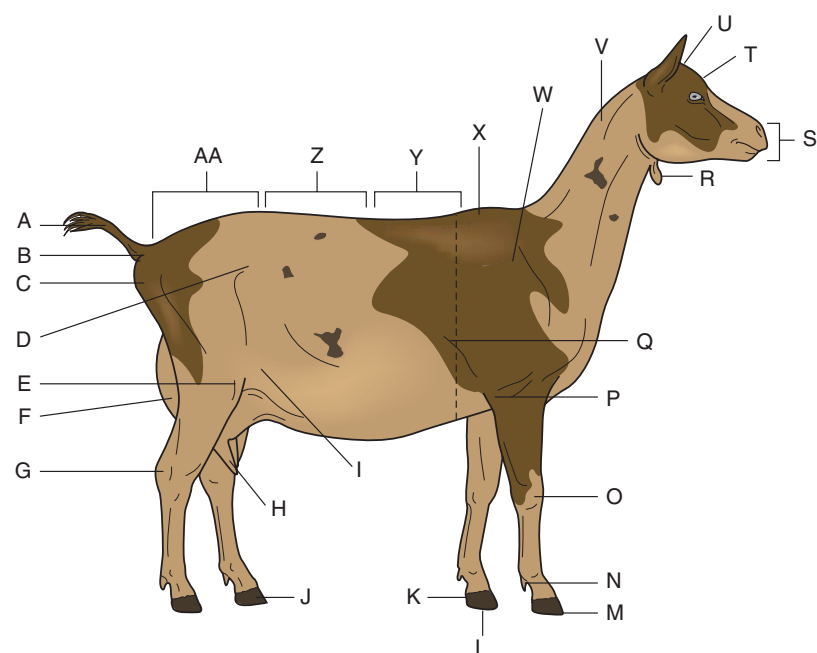
**Figure 4–10** Identify the parts of this cow.



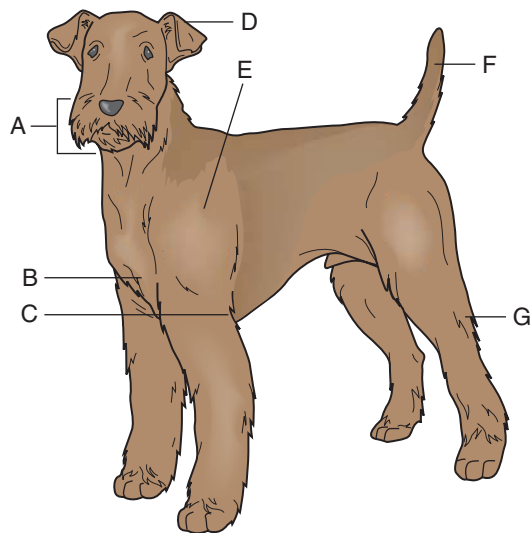
**Figure 4–11** Identify the parts of this horse.



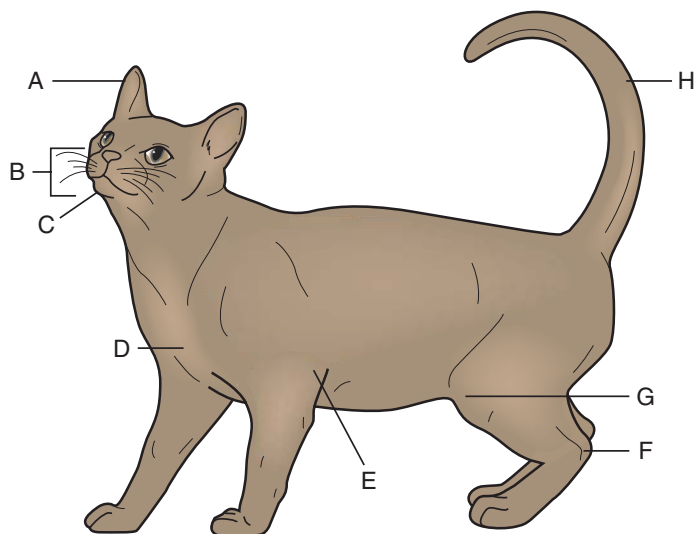
**Figure 4-12** Identify the parts of this swine.



**Figure 4-13** Identify the parts of this goat.

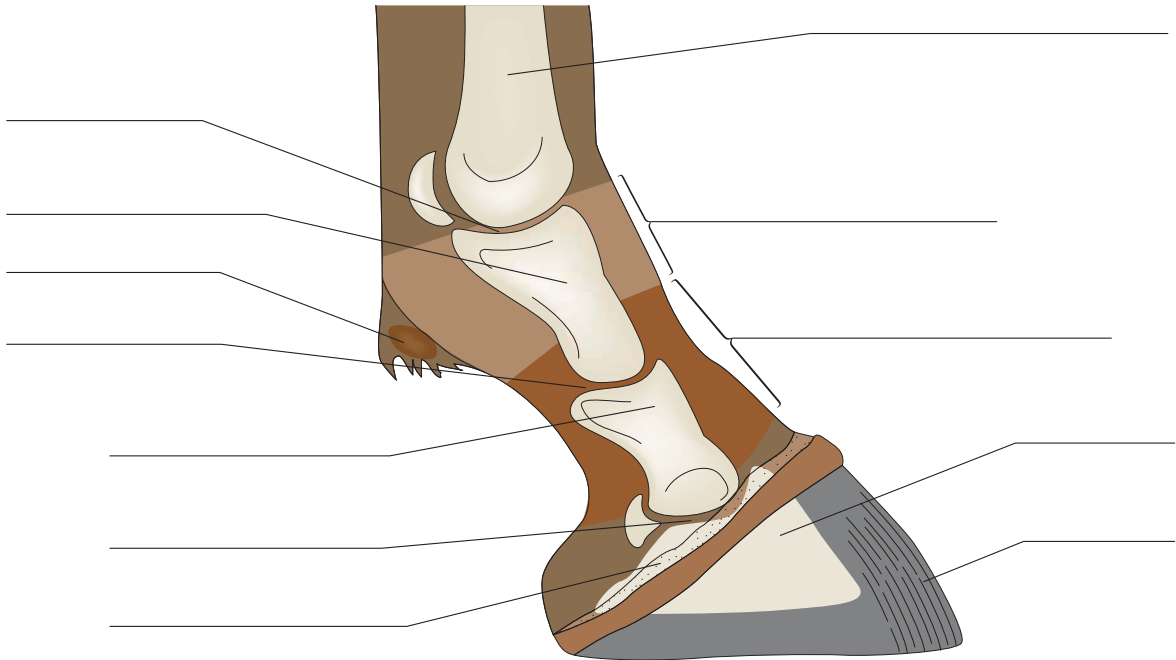


**Figure 4-14** Identify the parts of this dog.



**Figure 4-15** Identify the parts of this cat.

Label the anatomical parts of a horse's foot.





# CHAPTER 5

## WHAT IS IN A NAME?

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and recognize common terms used for animals
- Define common terms used to denote sex and age of animals
- Define common terms used to denote birthing and grouping of animals

### WHAT IS YOUR NAME?

Laypeople and professionals use terms to describe in one word the status of an animal. The term may relate to the sexual status of an animal (intact or sexually functional, or altered or sexually nonfunctional) or the age status of an animal. Terms have also been derived to denote the process of giving birth and the grouping of animals. The following lists provide the terms used to describe animals.



**canine (kā-nīn) = dog****dog/stud** = intact (not sexually altered) male dog.**bitch** = intact female dog.**whelp** (wehlp) or pup = young dog.**whelping** (wehl-pihng) = giving birth to whelps.**pack** = group of dogs.**litter** = multiple offspring born during same labor.**feline (fē-līn) = cat****tom** = intact male cat.**queen** = intact female cat.**kitten** = young cat.**queening** = giving birth to kittens.**lagomorph (lāg-ō-mōrf) = rabbit****buck** = intact male rabbit.**doe** = intact female rabbit.**lapin** (lahp-ihn) = neutered male rabbit.**kit** = young (blind, deaf) rabbit.**kindling** (kihnd-lihng) = giving birth to rabbits.**herd** = group of rabbits.**ferret (fehr-reht)****hob** = intact male ferret.**jill** = intact female ferret.**gib** (gihb) = neutered male ferret.**sprite** (sprit) = spayed female ferret.**kit** = young ferret.**kindling** = giving birth to ferrets.**cavy (kā-vē) = guinea pig****boar** = intact male guinea pig.**sow** = intact female guinea pig.**pup** = young guinea pig.**Gender versus sex**

Veterinary professionals talk only about the sex of an animal. Gender is used to denote whether words pertaining to a noun are masculine, feminine, or neutral. Gender also can be used to denote social constructs, such as the gender or social roles of men and women.

**murine (moo-rēn) = mouse or rat****sire** (sī-ər) = intact male mouse or rat.**dam** (dahm) = intact female mouse or rat.**pup** = young mouse or rat.**psittacine (siht-ah-sēn) = parrot includes other birds with bills for cracking seeds)****cock** = intact male parrot.**hen** = intact female parrot.**chick** = young parrot.**flock** = group of parrots (also called a **company**).**turkey = one kind of poultry****tom** = intact male turkey.**hen** = intact female turkey.**poult** (pōlt) = young turkey.**flock** = group of turkeys.**clutch** (kluhtch) = group of eggs.**chicken = one kind of poultry****rooster** = sexually mature male chicken; also called cock.**hen** = intact female chicken.**capon** (kā-pohn) = young castrated male chicken or domestic fowl.**cockerel** (kohck-ər-ehl) = immature male chicken.**pullet** (puhl-ehl) = immature female chicken.**poult** = young chicken.**chick** = very young chicken.**flock** = group of chickens.**goose = one kind of anserine (ahn-sehr-ihn)****gander** = intact male goose.**goose** = intact female goose.**gosling** = young goose.**gaggle** = group of geese.

*Dam* and *sire* are terms used to denote female parent and male parent, respectively, for many species. When animals are bred, these terms may be used instead of the ones in the lists here. Used correctly, these mean that the male and female have mated and produced an embryo or fetus.

**Dam** is a female parent; **sire** is a male parent.

**duck = one type of anserine****drake** = intact male duck.**duck** = intact female duck.**duckling** = young duck.**flock** = group of ducks.**ratite (rah-tīt) = large, flightless bird (ostrich, emu, and rhea)****rooster** = intact male ratite.**hen** = intact female ratite.**hatchling** = ostrich up to 2 days old.**chick** = young ratite (usually less than 6 months of age).**yearling** = ostrich from 6 months to 12 months of age; rhea from 6 months to 18 months of age.**flock** = group of ratites.**porcine (poor-sin) = pig = swine****boar** (bōr) = intact male pig.**sow** = intact female pig.**barrow** (bār-ō) = male pig castrated when young.**stag** = male pig castrated after maturity.**gilt** (gihlt) = young female pig that has not farrowed.**pig or piglet** = young pig; old term is *shoat*.**farrowing** (fār-ō-ihng) = giving birth to pigs.**herd** = group of pigs.

There are unique names for groups of birds that are particular to one type of bird. Examples include the following:

- flock, flight, pod, or volery of birds
- pandemonium of parrots
- murder of crows
- dole or flight of doves
- brace, bunch, flock, or team of ducks
- aerie or convocation of eagles
- gaggle of geese
- colony of gulls
- cast of hawks
- charm of hummingbirds
- band of blue jays
- watch of nightingales
- ostentation of peacocks
- bevy or covey of quails

**equine (ē-kwīn) = horse, pony, donkey, and mule****stallion** (stahl-yuhn) = intact male equine = 4 years old.**colt** (kōlt) = intact male equine = 4 years old.**mare** (mār) = intact female equine = 4 years old.**filly** (fihl-ē) = intact female equine = 4 years old.**gelding** (gehld-ihng) = castrated male equine.**ridgeling** (rihdj-lihng) or **rig** = cryptorchid equine (one or both testicles have not descended from the abdomen).**foal** = young equine of either sex.**weanling** = young equine = 1 year old.**yearling** = young equine between 1 and 2 years old.**foaling** = giving birth to equine.**herd** = group of equine.**band** = group of horses consisting of one mature stallion, his breeding mares, and the immature male and female offspring of his mares.**brood mare** (bruhd mār) = breeding female equine.**maiden mare** (mā-dehn mār) = female equine never bred.**barren mare** (bār-ehn mār) = intact female horse that was not bred or did not conceive the previous season = open mare.**wet mare** = intact female horse that has foaled during the current breeding season.**agalactic mare** (ā-gahl-ahck-tihck mār) = intact female horse not producing milk.**pony** = equine between 8.2 and 14.2 hands when mature (not a young horse).**donkey = ass = burro****jack** or **jack ass** = intact male donkey.**jenny** = intact female donkey.**What is a mule?**

*Mule* is a general term that applies to the hybrid crossing of equines. *Mule* also is used to denote the offspring of a jack (male donkey) and a mare (female horse). **Hinny** (hihn-ē) is used to denote the offspring of a stallion (male horse) and a jenny (female donkey). Think mule:mare to remember the lineage of this hybrid. Both mules and hinnies are sterile.

**ovine (ō-vīn) = sheep****ram** = intact male sheep.**ewe** (yoo) = intact female sheep.**wether** (weh-thər) = castrated male sheep.**lamb** = young sheep.**hothouse lamb** = young sheep less than 3 months of age.**spring lamb** = young sheep 3–7 months of age.**yearling** = sheep 1–2 years of age (used when marketing sheep).**lambling** = giving birth to sheep.**flock** = group of sheep.**caprine (kahp-rīn) = goat****buck** = intact male goat.**doe** = intact female goat.**wether** = castrated male goat.**kid** = young goat.**kidding** = giving birth to goats.**freshening** = giving birth to dairy animals; also called freshen.**herd** = group of goats.**camelid = llama, alpaca, guanaco, vicuna****bull** = intact male llama (also called a stallion).**cow** = intact female llama.**gelding** = castrated male llama.**cria** (krē-ah) = young llama.**bovine = cattle****bull** = intact male bovine.**jumper bull** = intact male bovine that has just reached maturity and is used for breeding.**cow** = intact female bovine that has given birth.**steer** = male bovine castrated when young.**stag** = male bovine castrated after maturity.**heifer** (hehf-ər) = young female bovine that has not given birth.**calf** = young bovine.**calving** = giving birth to cattle.**freshening** = giving birth to dairy animals; also called freshen.**herd** = group of cattle.**springing heifer** = young female pregnant with her first calf = first calf heifer.**freemartin** (frē-mahr-tihn) = sexually imperfect, usually sterile female calf born as a twin with a male calf.**gomer bull** = bull used to detect female bovines in heat; bull may have penis surgically deviated to the side, may be treated with androgens, or may be vasectomized so as not to impregnate female; also called **teaser bull**.**cervidae = deer, elk, moose, caribou****buck** = intact male deer.**bull** = intact male elk, moose, caribou.**doe** = intact female deer.**cow** = intact female elk, moose, caribou.**fawn** = young deer.**heifer** = young female elk, moose, caribou.**herd** = group of cervidae.**What is a bellwether?**

A *wether* is a neutered sheep or goat. *Bell* is a ringing device. Originally, *bellwether* was used to describe the practice of putting a bell on the lead wether of a flock or herd.

The symbols denoting male ♂ and female ♀ originally stood for Mars (the god of war) and Venus (the goddess of love), respectively. *Mars* and *male* both begin with *m*.

The term **stud** is commonly used in reference to a male animal used for breeding. However, the term *stud* actually refers to the facility or farm where breeding animals are kept.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. A neutered male sheep or goat is a(n)
  - a. bull
  - b. ovine
  - c. wether
  - d. caprine
2. A sexually imperfect, usually sterile female calf born as a twin with a male calf is a
  - a. heifer
  - b. freemartin
  - c. gilt
  - d. filly
3. A cross between a stallion and a jenny is a
  - a. donkey
  - b. mule
  - c. jenny
  - d. hinny
4. Cow is to mare as steer is to
  - a. stallion
  - b. ridgling
  - c. colt
  - d. gelding
5. Parrots are in a group of birds called
  - a. amazon
  - b. psittacine
  - c. lagomorph
  - d. murine
6. In canines, the act of giving birth is
  - a. whelping
  - b. pupping
  - c. packing
  - d. gestation
7. Male and female ferrets are called
  - a. jacks and jills, respectively
  - b. kits and jills, respectively
  - c. hobs and jills, respectively
  - d. jacks and kits, respectively
8. A young llama is called a
  - a. calf
  - b. cria
  - c. clutch
  - d. colt
9. *Freshening* is a term that means
  - a. cleaning an animal to make it smell fresh
  - b. giving birth to a dairy animal
  - c. the act of mating in cattle
  - d. removing the horns of a bovine to enhance mating
10. Giving birth to swine is called
  - a. barrowing
  - b. queening
  - c. farrowing
  - d. tugging
11. Tom is to queen as hob is to
  - a. doe
  - b. bitch
  - c. jill
  - d. cow
12. An intact male rabbit is known as a
  - a. stud
  - b. stallion
  - c. buck
  - d. gander
13. A young female bovine that has not given birth is called a
  - a. cow
  - b. stag
  - c. calf
  - d. heifer
14. A female equine that has never been bred is known as a
  - a. ridgeling mare
  - b. brood mare
  - c. maiden mare
  - d. barren mare

15. A group of eggs is known as a  
 a. flock  
 b. clutch  
 c. poult  
 d. herd
16. The symbol for female is  
 a. f  
 b. I  
 c. o  
 d. ♀
17. A ram is to a wether as a bull is to a  
 a. barrow  
 b. steer  
 c. gelding  
 d. gib
18. A mule is an offspring of a  
 a. male donkey and a female pony  
 b. male pony and a female horse  
 c. male horse and a female donkey  
 d. male donkey and a female horse
19. Giving birth to rabbits is known as  
 a. whelping  
 b. farrowing  
 c. freshening  
 d. kindling
20. A group of dogs is known as a  
 a. pack  
 b. herd  
 c. flock  
 d. gaggle

### Matching

Match the species common name in Column I with its taxonomic name in Column II.

#### Column I

1. \_\_\_\_\_ cattle
2. \_\_\_\_\_ cat
3. \_\_\_\_\_ pig
4. \_\_\_\_\_ parrot
5. \_\_\_\_\_ rat
6. \_\_\_\_\_ dog
7. \_\_\_\_\_ sheep
8. \_\_\_\_\_ mouse
9. \_\_\_\_\_ donkey
10. \_\_\_\_\_ horse
11. \_\_\_\_\_ goat

#### Column II

- a. canine
- b. bovine
- c. equine
- d. feline
- e. caprine
- f. ovine
- g. porcine
- h. psittacine
- i. murine

Match the female name in Column I with its species in Column II.

#### Column I

12. \_\_\_\_\_ bitch
13. \_\_\_\_\_ queen
14. \_\_\_\_\_ dam
15. \_\_\_\_\_ hen

#### Column II

- a. horse
- b. bovine
- c. goat
- d. dog

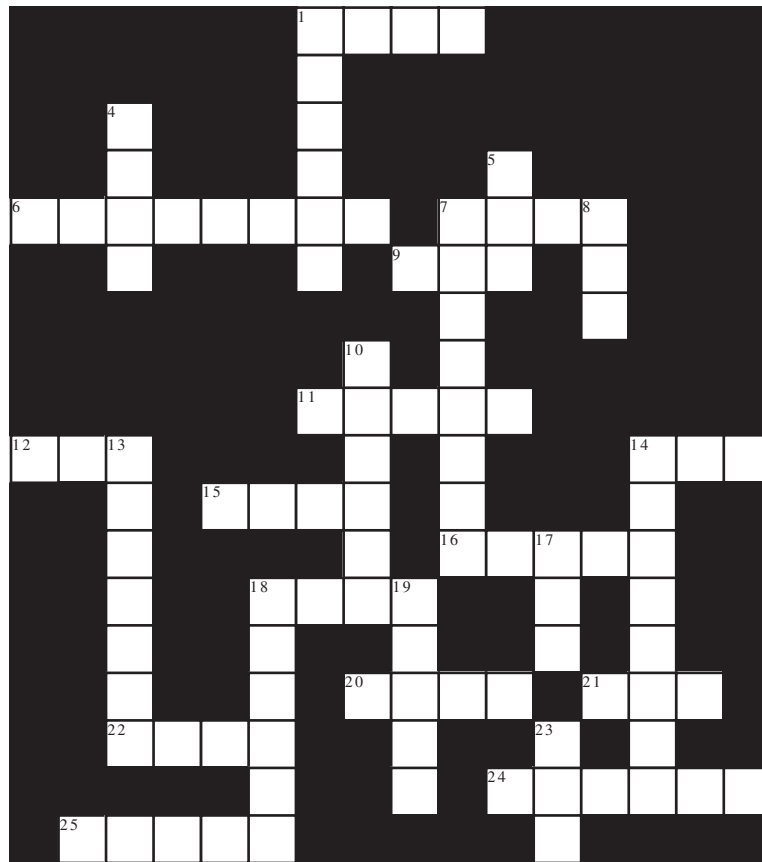
- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 16. _____ ewe   | e. mouse or rat |
| 17. _____ doe   | f. cat          |
| 18. _____ goose | g. sheep        |
| 19. _____ jill  | h. goose        |
| 20. _____ mare  | i. chicken      |
| 21. _____ cow   | j. ferret       |

### Fill in the Blanks

1. A young dog is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A young cat is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A young horse is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A young bovine is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A young goat is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A young sheep is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A young swine is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Young rabbits or ferrets are called \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Young mice or rats are called \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A young llama is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
11. A group of rabbits is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
12. A group of cattle is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
13. A group of turkeys is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
14. A group of sheep is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
15. A group of goats is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
16. An ostrich up to 2 days old is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
17. A ratite less than 6 months of age is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
18. A young deer is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
19. A young castrated male chicken is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
20. A group of eggs is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

Supply the correct term in the appropriate space for the definition listed.



### Across

- 1 male rabbit or goat
- 6 male horse over 4 yrs old
- 7 4 yr old intact male horse
- 9 female rabbit or goat
- 11 female cat
- 12 canine (pl.)
- 14 young goat
- 15 young horse
- 16 castrated rabbit
- 18 feline (pl.)
- 20 group of bovine
- 21 young ferret or rabbit
- 22 caprine (pl.)
- 24 group of geese
- 25 female dog

### Down

- 1 male swine castrated when young
- 4 male swine
- 5 female caprine
- 7 immature male chicken
- 8 male turkey
- 10 immature female chicken
- 13 castrated llama
- 14 giving birth to a ferret or rabbit
- 17 young mouse or rat
- 18 group of eggs
- 19 ovine
- 23 male ovine

# CHAPTER 6

## GUT INSTINCTS

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the major structures and functions of the digestive tract
- Distinguish between monogastric and ruminant digestive system anatomy and physiology
- Describe the processes of digestion, absorption, and metabolism
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the digestive system

### FUNCTIONS OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

The **digestive** (dī-jehs-tihv) **system**, **alimentary** (āl-ih-mehn-tahr-ē) **system**, **gastrointestinal** (gahs-trō-ihn-tehst-ihn-ahl) **system**, and **GI system** are terms used to describe the body system that is a long, muscular tube that begins at the mouth and ends at the anus. The digestive system is responsible for the intake and digestion of food and water, the absorption of nutrients, and the elimination of solid waste products. The combining form for nourishment is **aliment/o**.



## STRUCTURES OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

The major structures of the digestive system include the oral cavity, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, and small and large intestines. The liver, gallbladder, and pancreas are organs associated with the digestive system.

### Mouth

The mechanical and chemical process of digestion begins in the mouth. The mouth contains the major structures of the oral cavity. The **oral** (ôr-ahl) **cavity** contains the lips and cheeks, hard and soft palates, salivary glands, tongue, teeth, and periodontium. The combining forms **or/o** and **stomat/o** mean mouth.

The maxilla and mandible are bones that are the boundaries of the oral cavity. The combining form for jaw is **gnath/o**. An animal that has **prognathia** (prohg-nah- thê-ah) has an elongated mandible, or a mandible that is overshoot. Prognathia is sometimes called sow mouth. An animal that has **brachygnathia** (brahck-ê-nah-thê-ah) has a shortened mandible, or a mandible that is undershot. Brachygnathia is sometimes called parrot mouth.

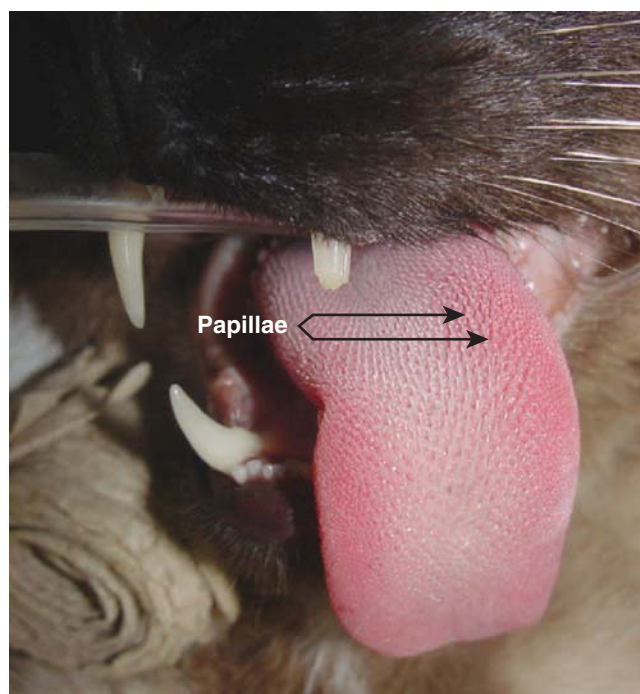
The lips form the opening to the oral cavity. The term **labia** (lâ-bê-ah) is the medical term for lips. A single lip is a **labium** (lâ-bê-uhm). The combining forms for lips are **cheil/o** and **labi/o**. The cheeks form the walls of the oral cavity. The combining form for cheek is **bucc/o**. The term **buccal** (buhk-ahl or bûk-ahl) means pertaining to or directed toward the cheek.

The **palate** (pahl-ah) forms the roof of the mouth. The palate consists of two parts: the hard and soft palates. The **hard palate** forms the bony rostral portion of the palate that is covered with specialized mucous membrane. This specialized mucous membrane contains irregular folds called **rugae** (roo-gâ) (Figure 6-1). Rugae also are found in the stomach. **Rug/o** is the combining form for wrinkle or fold. The **soft palate** forms the flexible caudal portion of the palate. The soft palate is involved in closing off the nasal passage during swallowing so that food does not move into the nostrils. The combining form **palat/o** means palate.

The **tongue** (tuhng) is a movable muscular organ in the oral cavity used for tasting and processing food, grooming, and articulating sound. The tongue moves food during chewing and swallowing. The dorsum of the tongue has **papillae** (pah-pihl-â), or elevations, and the ventral surface of the tongue is highly vascular (Figure 6-2). The types of papillae located on the dorsum of the tongue may appear threadlike, or **filiform** (fihl-ih-fôrm); mushroomlike, or **fungiform** (fuhn-jih-fôrm); or cup-shaped, or **vallate** (vahl-ât). Taste buds are located in the fungiform and vallate papillae. The tongue is connected to the ventral surface of the oral cavity by a band of connective



**Figure 6-1** Rugae of the stomach are visible on this preserved cat.



**Figure 6-2** Papillae are found on the dorsum of the tongue. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

tissue called the **frenulum** (frehn-yoo-luhm). The combining forms for tongue are **gloss/o** and **lingu/o**. The **lingual surface** of the cheek is the side adjacent to the tongue.

The combining forms **dent/o**, **dent/i**, and **odont/o** are used to refer to teeth. **Dentition** (dehn-tihsh-uhn) refers to the teeth as a whole, that is, the teeth arranged in

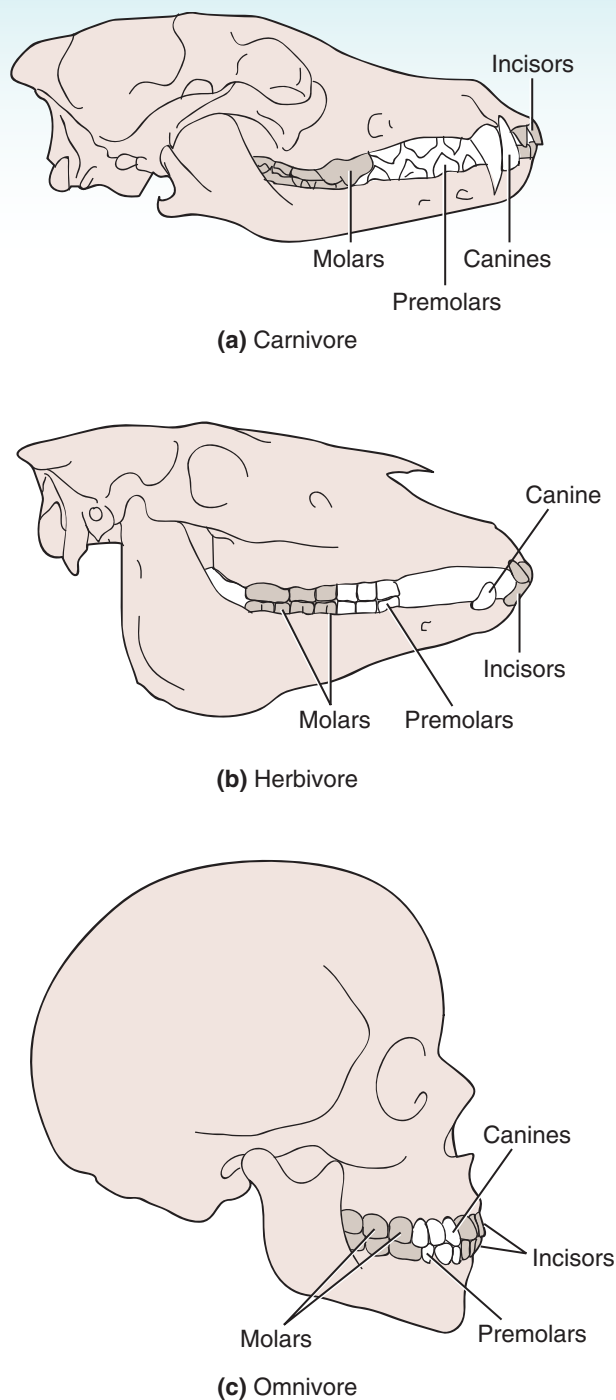
the maxillary (upper) and mandibular (lower) arcades. The primary dentition or **deciduous** (deh-sihd-yoo-uhs) **dentition** is the temporary set of teeth that erupt in young animals and are replaced at or near maturity. **Decidu/o** is the combining form for shedding. The **permanent dentition** is the set of teeth designed to last the lifetime of an animal. Sometimes a deciduous tooth of brachydontic animals is not shed at the appropriate time, and both the deciduous and permanent teeth are situated beside each other. The period in which both deciduous and permanent teeth are present is the mixed dentition. The deciduous tooth that has not been shed is called a **retained deciduous tooth** and may be extracted (removed) professionally.

The four types of teeth have different functions (Figure 6–3):

- **incisor** (ihn-siz-ör) = front tooth used for cutting; an incision is a cut; abbreviated I.
- **canine** (kā-nīn) = long, pointed bonelike tooth located between the incisors and premolars; also called **fang** and **cuspid** (*cuspid* means having a tapering projection; *cuspid* means having one point); abbreviated C.
- **premolar** (prē-mō-lahr) = cheek tooth found between the canine teeth and molars; also called **bicuspid** because they have two points; abbreviated P.
- **molar** (mō-lahr) = most caudally located permanent cheek tooth used for grinding; *molar* comes from the Latin term *to grind*; abbreviated M.

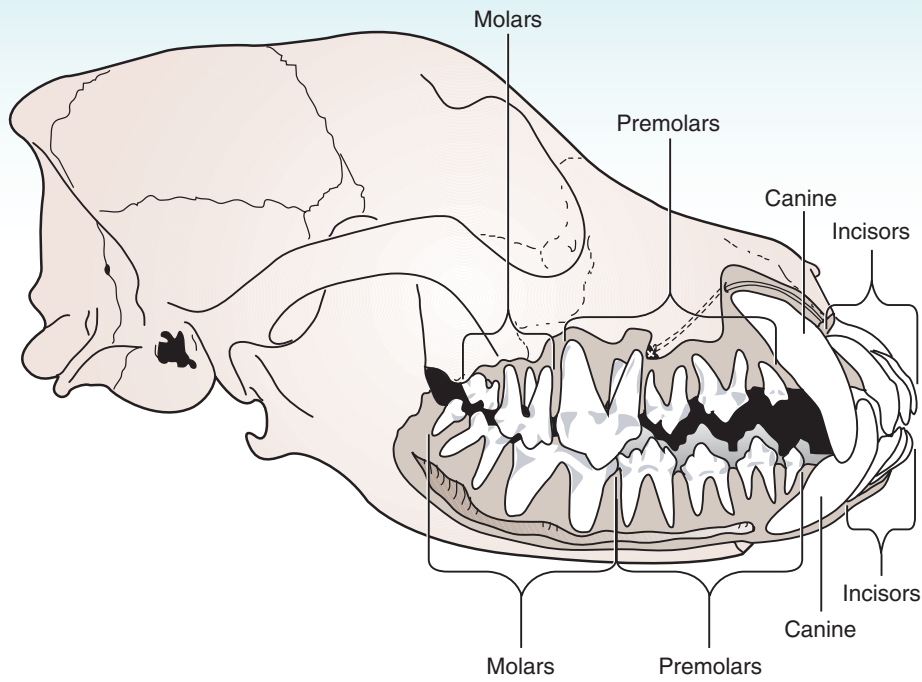
When the number and type of teeth found in an animal are written, a shorthand method is used. This method is called the dental formula. The **dental formula** of an animal represents the type of tooth and the number of each tooth type found in that species. In the dental formula, only one side of the mouth is represented and is preceded by a 2 to indicate that this arrangement is the same on both sides. For example, the dental formula for the adult dog is 2 (I 3/3, C 1/1, P 4/4, M 2/3). This means that an adult dog has 3 upper incisors, 1 upper canine, 4 upper premolars, and 2 upper molars on the left and right sides of its mouth. Similarly, an adult dog has 3 lower incisors, 1 lower canine, 4 lower premolars, and 3 lower molars on the left and right sides of its mouth. Adding all of the numbers together gives the total dentition, which in the adult dog is 42 (Figure 6–4 and Table 6–1).

Teeth also can be identified using the triadan (trī-ə-dahn) system. In this numbering system, each tooth has a three-digit number. The first digit (the quadrant number) represents the quadrant in which the tooth is located. The quadrant numbers start on the animal's upper right side (right side of the maxilla) and continue clockwise to the lower right side (right side of the mandible). The second and third digits represent individual teeth. The numbering of individual teeth starts at rostral midline and increases in number from rostral to caudal. For example, all central incisor teeth in dogs and cats are numbered 01; therefore,



**Figure 6–3** Comparison of skull and teeth. (a) Carnivores (e.g., cats) have pointed canines and incisors for obtaining and tearing flesh. Sharp molars and premolars are essential for shearing flesh. (b) Herbivores (e.g., horses) have teeth adapted to biting off plant material and grinding the food into smaller pieces. (c) Omnivores (e.g., humans) have teeth adapted for eating a variety of foods.

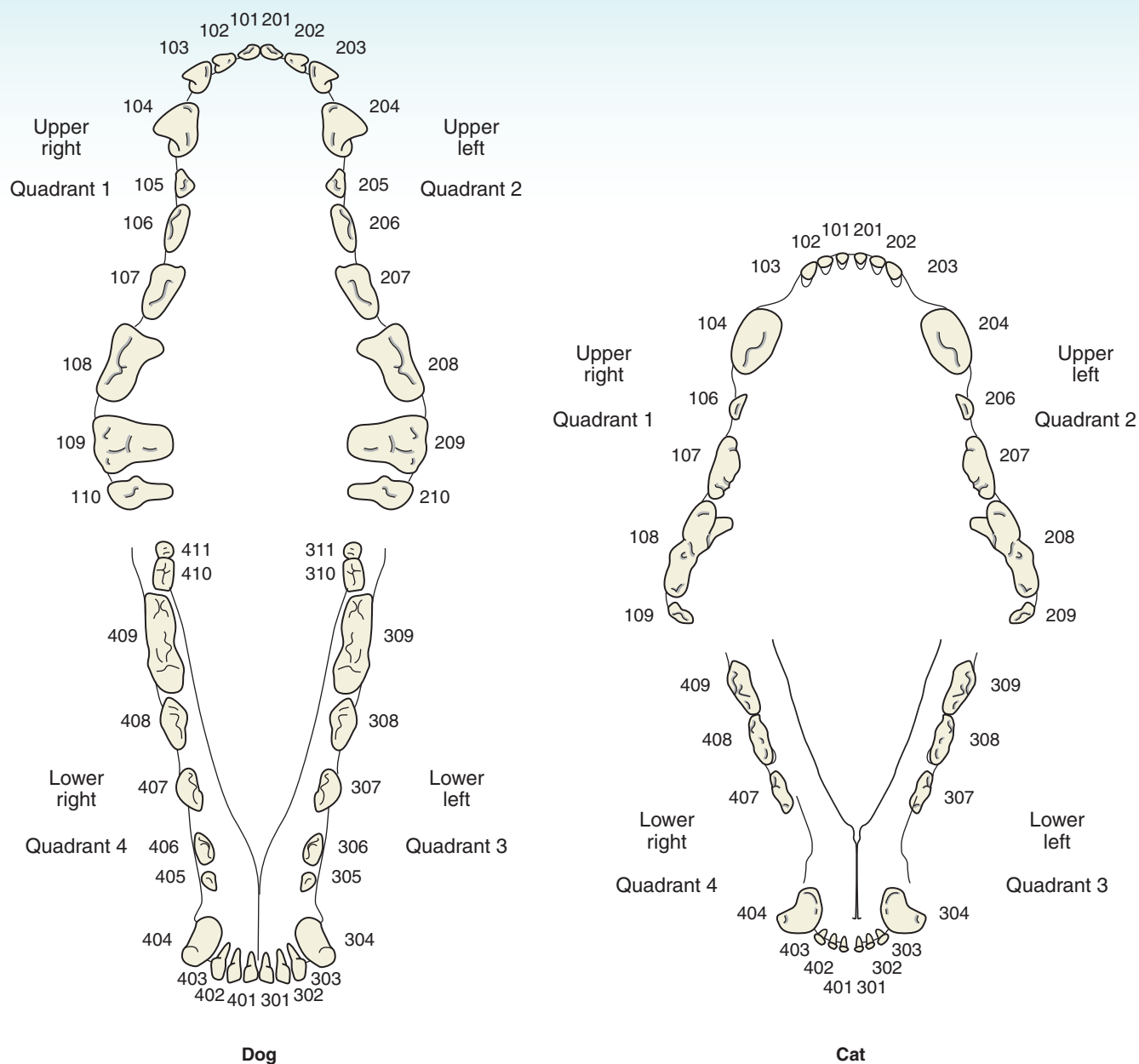
the central incisor on the right side of the maxilla is 101, the central incisor on the left side of the maxilla is 201, the central incisor on the left side of the mandible is 301, and the central incisor on the right side of the mandible is 401. Likewise, all



**Figure 6–4** Types of teeth found in an adult dog.

**Table 6–1 Dental Formulas of Select Adult Animals**

Animal	Formula	Total Number of Adult Teeth
Dog	2(I 3/3, C 1/1, P 4/4, M 2/3)	42
Cat	2(I 3/3, C 1/1, P 3/2, M 1/1)	30
Bovine, sheep, goat	2(I 0/4, C 0/0, P 3/3, M 3/3) or 2(I 0/3, C 0/1, P 3/3, M 3/3)	32
Horse	2(I 3/3, C 1/1, P 3-4/3, M 3/3)	40 or 42
Pig	2(I 3/3, C 1/1, P 4/4, M 3/3)	44
Llama (female)	2(I 1/3, C 1/1, P 2/1, M 3/2)	28
(male)	2(I 1/3, C 1/1, P 2/1, M 3/3)	30
Rabbit	2(I 2/1, C 0/0, P 3/2, M 3/3)	28
Ferret	2(I 3/3, C 2/2, P 4/3, M 1/2)	40
Chinchilla	2(I 1/1, C 0/0, P 1/1, M 3/3)	20
Gerbil	2(I 1/1, C 0/0, P 0/0, M 3/3)	16
Hamster	2(I 1/1, C 0/0, P 0/0, M 3/3)	16
Rat and mouse	2(I 1/1, C 0/0, P 0/0, M 3/3)	16
Guinea pig	2(I 1/1, C 0/0, P 1/1, M 3/3)	20

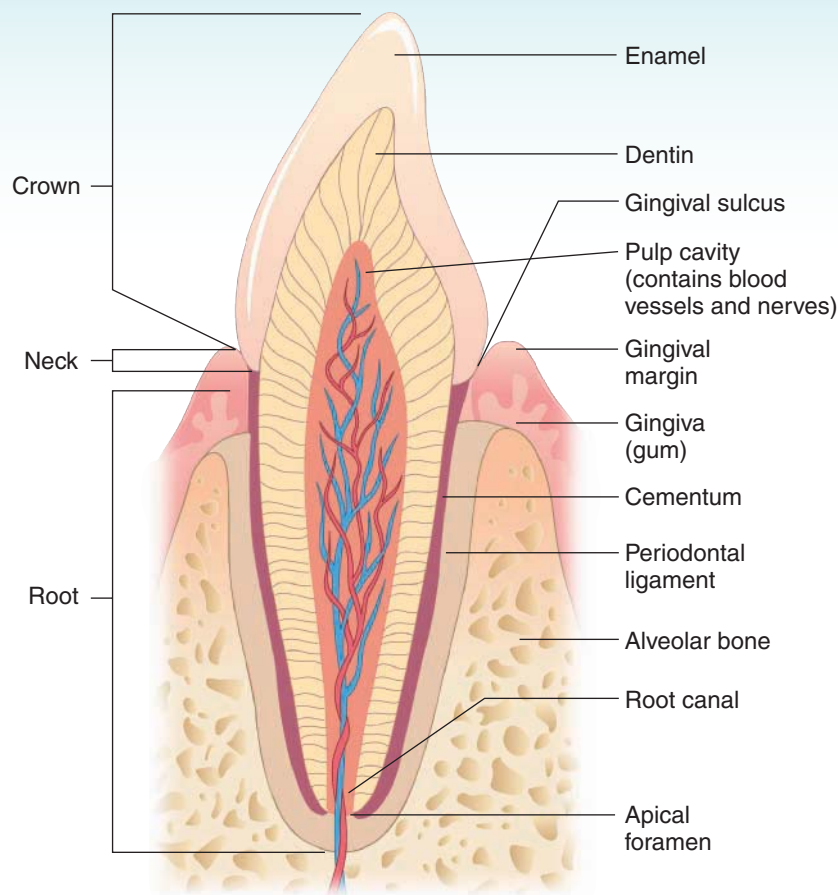


**Figure 6-5** Triadan system of tooth identification.

canine teeth in dogs and cats are numbered 04; therefore, the canine tooth on the right side of the maxilla is 104, the canine tooth on the left side of the maxilla is 204, the canine tooth on the left side of the mandible is 304, and the canine tooth on the right side of the mandible is 404 (Figure 6-5).

The anatomy of the tooth consists of the enamel (located in the crown) or cementum (located in the root), dentin, and pulp (Figure 6-6). The **enamel** (ē-nahm-ahl) is the hard white substance covering the dentin of the crown of the tooth. **Cementum** (sē-mehn-tuhm) is the bonelike connective tissue that covers the root of the tooth. The **dentin** (dehn-tihn) is the connective tissue surrounding the tooth pulp. The tooth **pulp** consists

of nerves, blood vessels, and loose connective tissue. The hole at the tip of the root where nerves and blood vessels enter the tooth is the **apical foramen** (ā-pih-kahl fō-rā-mehn). The **periodontia** (pehr-ē-ō-dohn-shē-ah) are the structures that support the teeth. Teeth are situated in sockets or saclike dilations called **alveoli** (ahl-vē-ō-li). A single socket is called an alveolus (ahl-vē-ō-luhs). The thin layer of compact bone that forms the tooth socket is **alveolar bone** (ahl-vē-ō-lahr bōn). Alveolar bone surrounds the roots of the teeth. The fibrous structure that holds the tooth in the alveolus is the **periodontal** (pehr-ē-ō-dohn-tahl) **ligament**. The periodontal ligament contains collagen fibers that are anchored to the cementum of the tooth and to the alveolar bone.



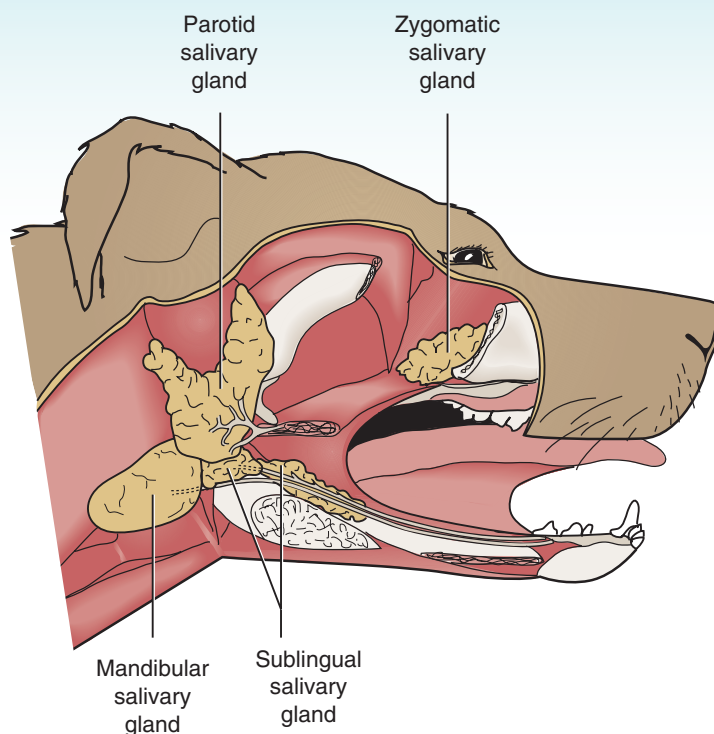
**Figure 6–6** Structure of the tooth in a dog or cat.

Occasionally, teeth are referred to by terms other than those seen in dental formulas. Examples of lay terms for teeth include the following:

- **cheek teeth** premolars and molars
- **needle teeth** deciduous canines and third incisor of pigs
- **wolf teeth** rudimentary premolar 1 in horses
- **milk teeth** first set of teeth
- **tusks** permanent canine teeth of pigs
- **carnassial** (kahr-nā-zē-ahl) **tooth** large, shearing cheek tooth; upper P4 and lower M1 in dogs; upper P3 and lower M1 in cats
- **fighting teeth** set of six teeth in llamas that include upper vestigial incisors and upper and lower canines on each side

The **gingiva** (jih-n-jih-vah) is the mucous membrane that surrounds the teeth and forms the mouth lining. The gingiva is sometimes called the gums. The combining form **gingiv/o** means gums. The space that surrounds the tooth is the **gingival sulcus** (jih-n-jih-vahl suhl-kuhs). The gingival sulcus is located between the tooth and gingival margin.

**Salivary glands** (sahl-ih-vahr-ē glahndz) are a group of cells located in the oral cavity that secrete a clear substance containing digestive enzymes (saliva). The **saliva** (sah-lī-vah) moistens food, begins the digestive process by aiding in bolus formation and some digestive enzyme activity (amylase in some animal species), and cleanses the mouth. Different salivary glands are named for the location in which they are found: the **mandibular** (mahn-dihb-yoo-lahr) **salivary glands** are found near the lower jaw, the **sublingual** (suhb-lihn-gwahl) **salivary glands** are found under the tongue, the **zygomatic** (zī-gō-mah-tihck) **salivary glands** are found medial to the zygomatic arch, and the **parotid** (pah-roht-ihd) **salivary glands** are found near the ear. **Para-** is the prefix for near, and the combining form **ot/o** means ear. The combining forms for salivary glands are **sialaden/o** and **sial/o** (which also means saliva) (Figure 6–7).



**Figure 6-7** Salivary glands of the dog.

Animals may be grouped based on the types of teeth they have. Examples include the following:

- **selenodont** (sē-lēn-ō-dohnt) = animals with teeth that have crescents on their grinding surfaces (e.g., ruminants)
- **lophodont** (lō-fō-dohnt) = animals with teeth that have ridged occlusal surfaces (e.g., equine)
- **bunodont** (boon-ō-dohnt) = animals with teeth that have worn, rounded surfaces (e.g., swine)
- **hypsodont** (hihps-ō-dohnt) = animals with continuously erupting teeth (e.g., cheek teeth of ruminants)
- **pleurodont** (pluhr-ō-dohnt) = animals with teeth attached by one side on the inner jaw surface (e.g., lizards)
- **brachyodont** (brā-kē-dohnt) = animals with permanently rooted teeth (e.g., carnivores)



### Branches of dentistry

Veterinary dental specialties consist of the following:

- **endodontics** (ehn-dō-dohn-tihks) = branch of dentistry that involves treatment of diseases that affect the tooth pulp
- **exodontics** (ehcks-ō-dohn-tihks) = branch of dentistry that involves extraction of teeth and related procedures
- **oral surgery** = branch of surgery that involves surgical correction of the jaw, gums, and inside of the mouth
- **orthodontics** (ohrth-ō-dohn-tihks) = branch of dentistry that involves the guidance and correction of malocclusion
- **periodontics** (pehr-ē-ō-dohn-tihks) = branch of dentistry that studies and treats the diseases of tooth-supporting structures



### Hard to swallow

**Chewing**, also called **mastication** (mahs-tih-kā-shuhn), makes food easier to swallow and can increase the surface area of food particles or ingesta. **Ingesta** (ihn-jehst-ah) is the material taken in orally. This increased surface area increases the contact between digestive enzymes and the food and may speed up the breakdown of food. The first digestive enzymes with which food comes in contact are found in saliva. Sometimes animals salivate or drool when they smell food. **Hypersalivation** (hī-pār-sahl-ih-vā-shuhn) is excessive production of saliva. Hypersalivation also is called **ptyalism** (tī-uh-lihz-uhm) and **hypersialosis** (hī-pār-sī-ahl-ō-sihs). The combining forms for saliva are **sial/o** and **ptyal/o**.

The process of swallowing is called **deglutition** (dē-gloo-tih-shuhn). The combining form **phag/o** means eating or ingestion. Swallowed food passes from the mouth to the pharynx and then to the esophagus.

## Pharynx

The **pharynx** (fār-ihncks) is the cavity in the caudal oral cavity that joins the respiratory and gastrointestinal systems. The pharynx also is called the **throat**. The combining form for pharynx is **pharyng/o**. The pharynx is covered in Chapter 9.

## Gullet

The **esophagus** (ē-sohf-ah-guhs) is a collapsible, muscular tube that leads from the oral cavity to the stomach. The esophagus is located dorsal to the trachea. The combining form **esophag/o** means esophagus. The esophagus enters the stomach through an opening that is surrounded by a **sphincter**. A sphincter (sfihngk-tər) is a ringlike muscle that constricts an opening.

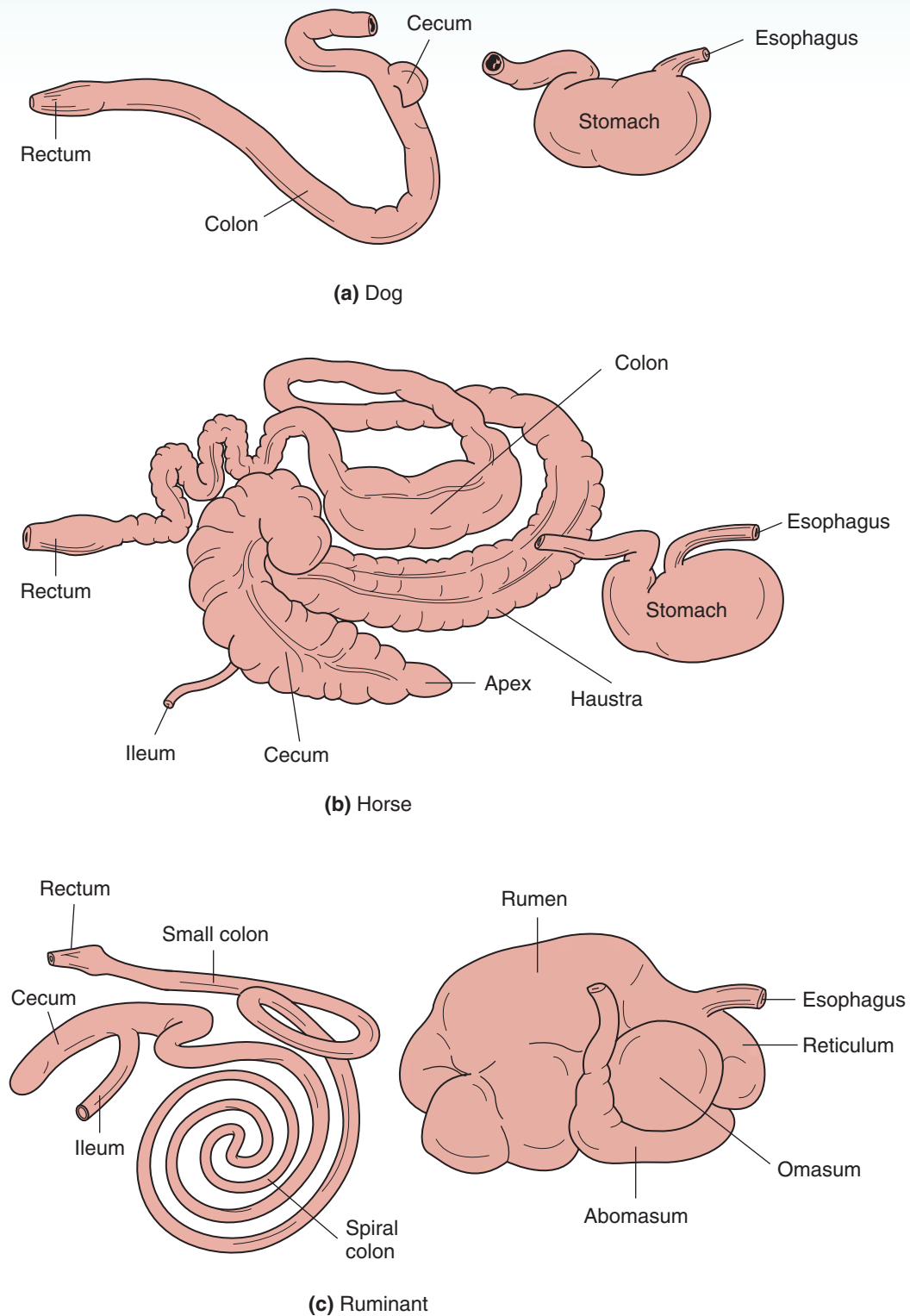
## Stomach

After the esophagus, the remaining organs of digestion are located in the abdominal cavity (Figure 6–8). The **abdomen** is the cavity located between the diaphragm and pelvis. The combining forms for abdomen are **abdomin/o** and **celi/o**. **Lapar/o** is the combining form for abdomen and flank. The **peritoneum** (pehr-ih-tō-nē-uhm) is the membrane lining that covers the abdominal and pelvic cavities and some of the organs in that area. The layer of the peritoneum that lines the abdominal and pelvic cavities is called the **parietal peritoneum**, and the layer of the peritoneum that covers the abdominal organs is called the **visceral peritoneum**.

Food enters the stomach from the esophagus, where it is stored, and the act of digestion begins. The stomach is connected to other visceral organs by a fold of peritoneum called the **lesser omentum** (ō-mehn-tuhm) and to the dorsal abdominal wall by another fold of peritoneum called the **greater omentum** (Figure 6–9). *Omentum* is Latin for apron.

The combining form for stomach is **gastr/o**. Animals can be classified as **monogastric** (mohn-ō-gahs-trihck) or **ruminant** (roo-mihn-ehnt). Monogastric animals have one true, or glandular, stomach. The **glandular stomach** is the one that produces secretions for digestion. Ruminants also have one true, or glandular, stomach (the abomasum), but they also have three forestomachs (the rumen, reticulum, and omasum). The forestomachs of ruminants are actually outpouchings of the esophagus. Because all animals have only one true or glandular stomach, monogastric animals often are called simple nonruminant animals. The parts of the true stomach are as follows (Figure 6–10):

- **cardia** (kahr-dē-ah) = entrance area located nearest the esophagus.
- **fundus** (fuhn-duhs) = base of an organ, which is the cranial, rounded part.
- **body** (boh-dē) = main portion of an organ, which is the rounded base or bottom; also called the **corpus** (kōr-puhs).
- **antrum** (ahn-truhm) = caudal part, which is the constricted part of the stomach that joins the pylorus.
- **pylorus** (pī-lōr-uhs) = narrow passage between the stomach and the duodenum. The combining form **pylor/o** means gatekeeper and refers to the narrow passage between the stomach and duodenum. The **pyloric sphincter** is the muscle ring that controls the flow of material from the stomach to the duodenum of the small intestine.
- **rugae** (roo-gā) = folds present in the mucosa of the stomach. Rugae contain glands that produce gastric juices that aid in digestion, and the mucus forms a protective coating for the stomach lining.



**Figure 6-8** Gastrointestinal tracts. (Small intestinal segments were omitted for clarity.) (a) Dog. (b) Horse. (c) Ruminant.



**Figure 6-9** Omentum in a preserved cat.

## Ruminants

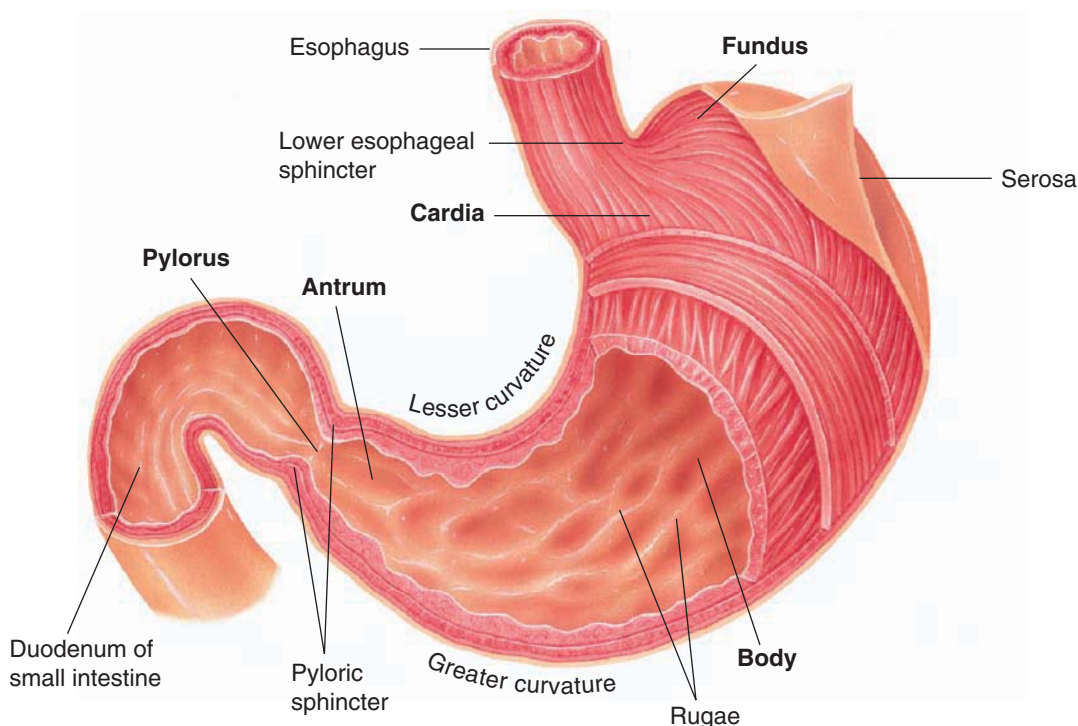
Ruminants are animals that can **regurgitate** (rē-guhr-jih-tāt) and **remasticate** (rē-mahs-tih-kāt) their food. The ruminant stomach is adapted for fermentation of ingested food by bacterial and protozoan microorganisms. Normal microorganisms residing in the gastrointestinal tract are called **intestinal flora** (ih-tehs-tih-nahl flō-rah). These microbes produce enzymes that can digest plant cells through fermentation. Fermentation is aided by regurgitation (return of undigested material from the rumen to the mouth) and remastication (rechewing). Regurgitation and remastication provide finely chopped material with a greater

surface area to the stomach. Regurgitated food particles, fiber, rumen fluid, and rumen microorganisms are called **cud** (kuhd).

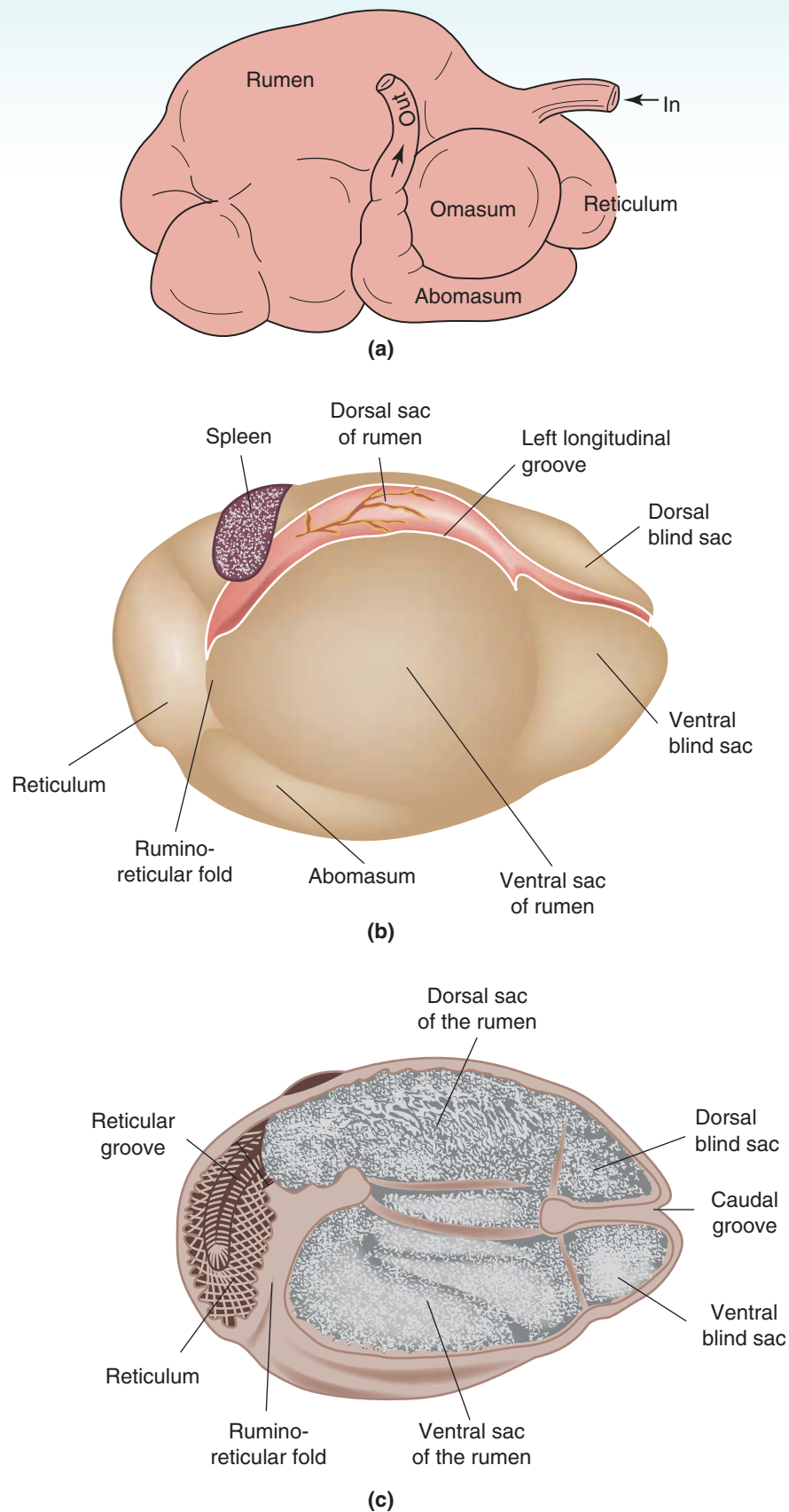
The ruminant stomach is divided into the following four parts (Figures 6-11 and 6-12):

- **rumen** (roo-mehn) = largest compartment of the ruminant stomach that serves as a fermentation vat; also called the **paunch**. The rumen is divided into a ventral sac and a dorsal sac.
- **reticulum** (re-tihck-yoo-luhm) = most cranial compartment of the ruminant stomach; also called the honeycomb because it is lined with a mucous membrane that contains numerous intersecting ridges.
- **omasum** (ō-mā-suhm) = third compartment of the ruminant stomach. The omasum has short, blunt papillae that grind food before it enters the abomasum. Omasal contractions also squeeze fluid out of the food bolus.
- **abomasum** (ahb-ō-mā-suhm) = fourth compartment of the ruminant stomach. Also called the true stomach. The abomasum is the glandular portion that secretes digestive enzymes.

The layout of the ruminant stomach depends on the age of the animal. In adult ruminants, the rumen is the largest compartment and occupies a prominent portion of the left side of the animal. For the most part, the abomasum is on the right side of the animal. In young ruminants, the abomasum is the largest compartment. Forestomach development is associated with roughage intake, and calves are fed only milk for a period of time after birth.



**Figure 6-10** Structures of the stomach.



**Figure 6-11** (a) Parts of the ruminant stomach. (b) Left side of ruminant stomach. (c) Interior view of the rumen and reticulum.

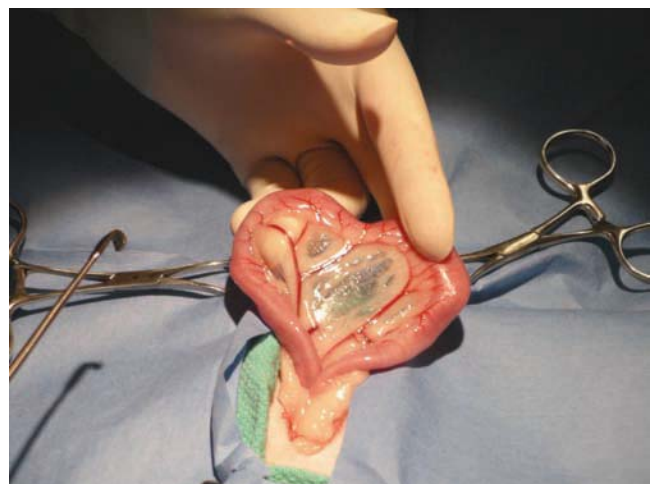


**Figure 6-12** Linings of the four stomachs of cattle. (a) Rumen. Note the small fingerlike projections, the rumen papillae, that increase the surface area for absorption. (b) Reticulum. The distinct lining of the reticulum looks like a honeycomb. (c) Omasum. The lining has large sheets with ingesta between layers. (d) Abomasum. This smooth glandular lining appears very similar to the monogastric stomach.

In adult ruminants, food enters the rumen. A contraction transfers the rumen contents into the reticulum. The foodstuff is then regurgitated or directed toward the caudal part of the rumen or the omasum. The plies of the omasum grind the food, and water is removed. Food enters the abomasum, or true stomach, which is similar to the glandular stomach of the monogastric. In young ruminants, a reticular groove shuttles milk from the esophagus to the abomasum.

### Small Intestine

The small intestine, or small bowel, extends from the pylorus to the proximal part of the large intestine. The small intestine is attached to the dorsal abdominal wall by a fold of the peritoneum called the **mesentery** (mehs-ehn-tehr-ē) (Figure 6-13). Digestion of food and absorption takes place in the small intestine for animals not needing extensive fermentation of their ingested



**Figure 6-13** The mesentery is a fold of peritoneum that attaches the small intestine to the dorsal abdominal wall.

**Rumination** (roo-mehn-ā-shuhn) is the process of bringing up food material from the stomach to the mouth for further chewing. Rumination is a cycle of four phases: regurgitation, remastication, resalivation, and redeglutition.

**Step 1: Regurgitation.** The animal takes a deep breath (glottis is closed); the thoracic cavity enlarges; intrapleural pressure decreases; the cardia opens; and because of the low pressure in the esophagus, the rumen content is aspirated into the esophagus. Reverse peristalsis occurs, and the food bolus quickly enters the mouth.

**Steps 2 and 3: Remastication and resalivation.** Liquid is squeezed out of bolus, and the liquid is reswallowed. Remastication and resalivation occur together, and the animal may chew its cud 100 or more times before swallowing.

**Step 4: Redeglutition.** The bolus is reswallowed, and the next rumination cycle begins. Rumination usually occurs when the animal is quiet. The time spent ruminating each day varies with species and diet. Smaller particles (such as ground feed) take less rumination time.

A **herbivore** (hərb-ih-vör) is an animal that is able to sustain life by eating only plants.

An **omnivore** (ohm-nih-vör) is an animal that sustains life by eating plant and animal tissue.

A **carnivore** (kahr-nih-vör) is an animal that is able to sustain life by eating only animal tissue. A carnivore may eat a plant, but that does not make it an omnivore. A cat is a carnivore, but cats may occasionally eat grass. This does not make them omnivores.

food. The combining form **enter/o** means small intestine. **Gastroenterology** (gahs-trō-ehn-tər-ohl-ō-jē) is the study of the stomach and small intestine.

The small intestine has the following three segments (Figure 6–14):

- **duodenum** (doo-ō-də-nuhm or doo-wahd-nuhm) = proximal or first portion of the small intestine. The proximal portion also is known as the most oral portion. The duodenum is the segment of the small intestine located nearest the mouth. The combining forms **duoden/i** and **duoden/o** mean duodenum.
- **jejunum** (jeh-joo-nuhm) = middle portion of the small intestine. The combining form **jejun/o** means jejunum.
- **ileum** (ihl-ē-uhm) = distal or last portion of the small intestine. The distal portion also is known as the most **aboral** (ahb-ōr-ahl) portion. The ileum is the segment of the small intestine located furthest from the mouth. The combining form **ile/o** means ileum. (Remember that *ileum* is spelled with an *e*, as in *eating* or *entero*. The *ilium* is part of the hip bone.)

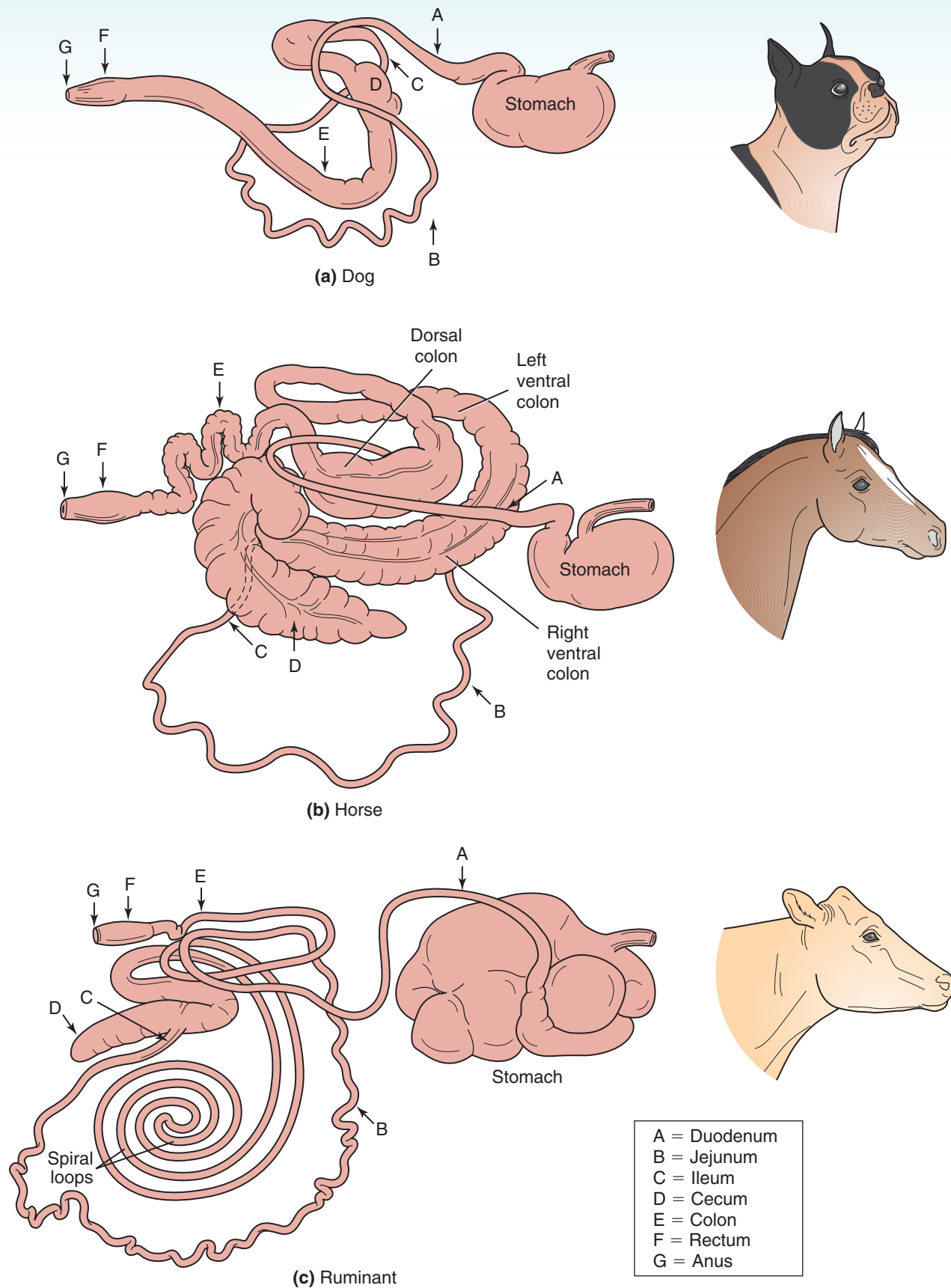
Once food is digested in the small intestine, it forms a milky fluid. This milky fluid is called **chyle** (ki-uhl). Chyle is absorbed through the intestinal wall and travels via the thoracic duct, where it is passed into veins.

## Large Intestine

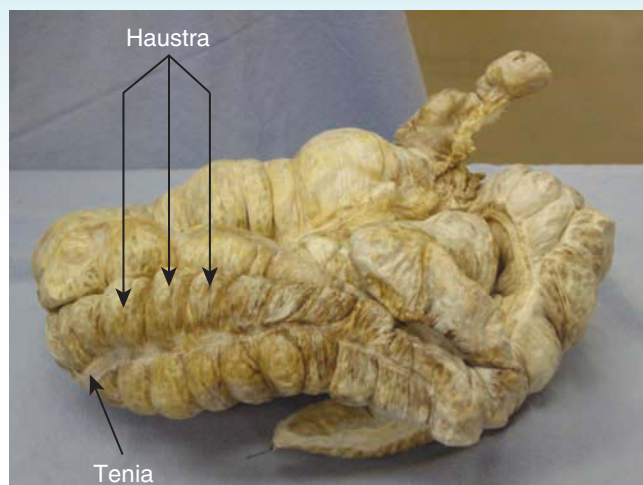
The large intestine, or large bowel, extends from the ileum to the anus. The large intestine consists of the **cecum** (sē-kuhm), **colon** (kō-lihn), **rectum** (rehck-tuhm), and **anus** (ā-nuhs). Development of the large intestine varies between species. Fermentation occurs to some extent in the large intestine of all animals but is a more consuming process in herbivorous animals. In ruminants, the forestomach constitutes a fermentation vat (hence, they are called foregut fermenters) and in nonruminant herbivores (e.g., rabbits and horses), the cecum and colon provide fermentation (hence, they are called hindgut fermenters).

Food enters a pouch, called the cecum, from the ileum. The cecum may be poorly developed, as in the dog, or large, as in the horse, or double-pouched, as in birds. **Cec/o** is the combining form for cecum.

The colon continues from the cecum to its termination at the rectum. The colon consists of ascending, transverse, and descending portions. All animals have a transverse and descending portion. The arrangement from the cecum to the transverse colon varies between species. Dogs and cats have an ascending colon, pigs and ruminants have spiral colons, and horses have large colons. **Col/o** is the combining form for colon. The cecum and colon of pigs and horses are sacculated; these sacculations are called **haustra** (haw-strah) (Figure 6–15). Haustra act as buckets and prolong retention of material so that the microbes have more time for digestion. Haustra are formed because of the longitudinal smooth muscle bands, or **teniae** (tehn-ē-ā), in the cecal wall.



**Figure 6-14** Gastrointestinal tracts of various animals. (a) Dog. (b) Horse. (c) Ruminant.



**Figure 6-15** Haustra and teniae of the equine large intestine.

The rectum is the caudal portion of the large intestine. The combining form **rect/o** means rectum. The anus is the caudal opening of the gastrointestinal tract. The anus is controlled by two anal sphincter muscles that tighten or relax to allow or control defecation. The combining form for anus is **an/o**. **Anorectal** (ā-nō-rehck-tahl) is a term that means pertaining to the anus and rectum. The combining form **proct/o** refers to the anus and rectum collectively.

The anal canal is a short terminal portion of the digestive tract. Dogs and cats have a pair of pouches in the skin between the internal and external anal sphincters. These pouches are called **anal sacs**. Anal sacs are lined with microscopic anal glands that secrete a foul-smelling fluid. Normally, the anal sacs



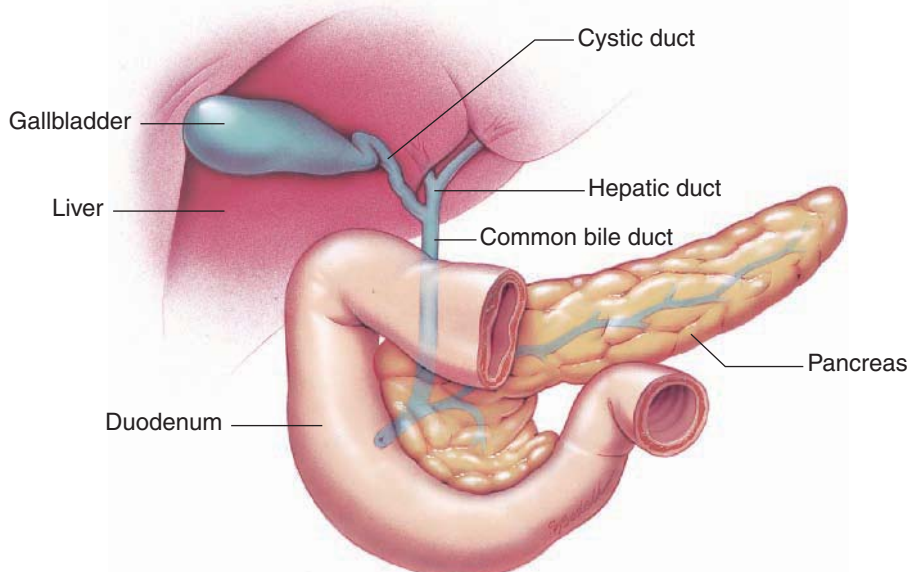
### The colon

The colon is divided into three parts: ascending, transverse, and descending. **Ascending** is the part that progresses upward, or cranially. *Ascend* means to move up. **Transverse** is the part that travels across. **Trans-** is the prefix for across. **Descending** is the part that progresses downward, or caudally. To descend a flight of stairs is to move down. Bends or curves are called **flexures** (flehck-shərz); therefore, the **pelvic flexure** is a bend in the colon near the pelvis, and the **diaphragmatic flexure** is a bend in the colon near the diaphragm.

are compressed during defecation. The fluid may be related to social recognition in dogs and cats.

### Accessories

Accessory organs aid the digestive tract in different ways. The accessory organs of the digestive tract include the salivary glands (covered previously), the liver, the gallbladder, and the pancreas (Figure 6-16).



**Figure 6-16** Accessory organs of digestion.

## Liver

The liver is located caudal to the diaphragm and has several important functions. The combining form for liver is **hepat/o**. The liver removes excess **glucose** (gloo-kohs) from the bloodstream and stores it as **glycogen** (gli-koh-jehn). When blood sugar is low, a condition called **hypoglycemia** (hi-pō-gli-sē-mē-ah) results, and the liver converts glycogen back into glucose and releases it. The liver also destroys old erythrocytes; removes toxins from the blood; produces some blood proteins; and stores iron and vitamins A, B<sub>12</sub>, and D. Liver cells are called **hepatocytes** (heh-paht-ō-sitz). The liver also contains **sinusoids** (sin-yoo-soydz), or channels. The hepatocytes make up the liver **parenchyma** (pah-r-ehnk-ih-mah), or the functional elements of a tissue or organ.

The digestive function of the liver involves the production of **bile** (bil). The term **biliary** (bihl-ē-ār-ē) means pertaining to bile. Bile travels down the hepatic duct to the cystic duct, which leads to the gallbladder (in species that have a gallbladder). Bile alkalizes the small intestine, and bile salts play a part in fat digestion. Fat digestion is called **emulsification** (ē-muhl-sih-fih-kā-shuhn). **Bilirubin** (bihl-ē-roo-bihn) is a pigment produced from the destruction of hemoglobin that is released by the liver in bile.

## Gallbladder

The gallbladder is a sac embedded in the liver that stores bile for later use. When bile is needed, the gallbladder contracts, which forces bile out of the cystic duct into the common bile duct. The common bile duct carries bile into the duodenum. The rat and horse do not have gallbladders but have a continuous flow of bile into the duodenum. The combining form **cyst/o** means cyst, sac of fluid, or urinary bladder. The combining form **chol/e** means bile or gall. The combining form **doch/o** means receptacle. Together these combining forms are used to refer to the bile and its associated structures. **Cholecystic** (kō-lē-sihst-ihck) means pertaining to the gallbladder. **Choledochus** (kō-lehd-uh-kuhs) means common bile duct.

## Pancreas

The **pancreas** (pah-n-kre-ahs) is an elongated gland located near the cranial portion of the duodenum. The main pancreatic duct enters the duodenum close to the common bile duct. (In species such as sheep and goats, it empties directly into the common bile duct.)

**Pancreat/o** is the combining form for pancreas. The pancreas is an organ that has both exocrine and endocrine functions. The endocrine functions are covered in Chapter 11. The exocrine function of the pancreas involves the production of pancreatic juices, which are filled with digestive enzymes.

**Trypsin** (trihp-sihn) is an enzyme that digests protein, **lipase** (li-pās) is an enzyme that digests fat, and **amylase** (ahm-ih-lās) is an enzyme that digests starch. All are produced in the pancreas.

## DIGESTION

**Digestion** (di-jehst-shuhn) is the process of breaking down foods into nutrients that the body can use. **Enzymes** (ehn-zīmz) are substances that chemically change another substance. Digestive enzymes are responsible for the chemical changes that break foods into smaller forms for the body to use. Enzymes typically end with **-ase**. For example, proteases are enzymes that work on proteins, and lipases are enzymes that work on fats. One enzyme that does not end in **-ase** is pepsin, which is an enzyme that digests protein.

**Metabolism** (meh-tahb-ō-lihzm) is the processes involved in the body's use of nutrients. The prefix **meta-** means change or beyond. **Anabolism** (ah-nahb-ō-lihzm) is the building of body cells and substances. **Catabolism** (kah-tahb-ō-lihzm) is the breaking down of body cells and substances.

**Absorption** (ahb-sōrp-shuhn) is the process of taking digested nutrients into the circulatory system. A **nutrient** (nū-trē-ehnt) is a substance that is necessary for normal functioning of the body. Absorption occurs mainly in the small intestine. The small intestine contains tiny hairlike projections called **villi** (vihl-i). A single projection is called a **villus** (vihl-uhs).



### The scoop on poop

The following terms are used for gastrointestinal waste:

- feces
- dung
- manure
- stool
- bowel movement
- excrement
- poop

Terms used to describe gastrointestinal waste include the following:

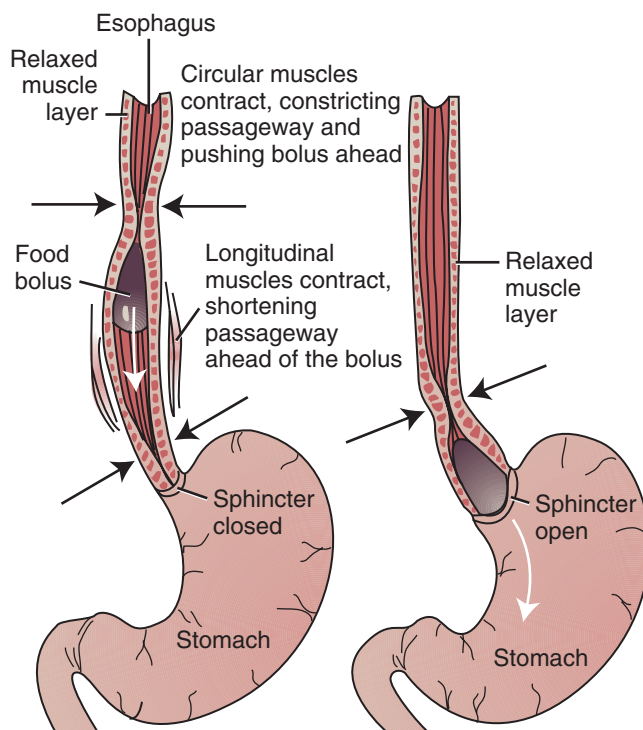
- solid
- loose
- soft
- watery
- mucoid
- bloody

The combining form **vill/i** means tuft of hair. Because the small intestine has villi, or projections, it also has blind sacs, or valleys. These blind sacs are called **crypts** (krihptz). An intestinal crypt is a valley of the intestinal mucous membrane lining the small intestine.

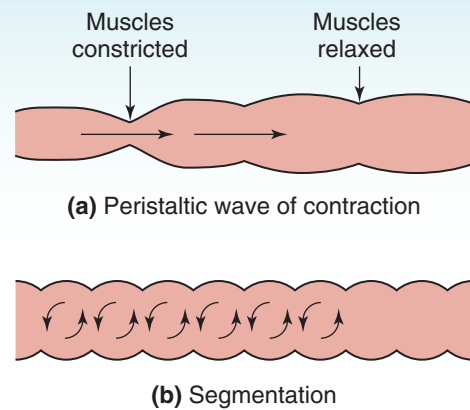
## Path of Digestion

- **Prehension** (prē-hehn-shuhn), or grasping of food, involves collecting food in the oral cavity. The material taken orally is known as **ingesta** (ihn-jehst-ah).
- **Mastication** breaks food into smaller pieces and mixes the ingesta with saliva.
- **Deglutition** moves chewed ingesta into the pharynx and into the esophagus. (The epiglottis closes off the entrance to the trachea and allows food to move into the esophagus.)
- **Peristalsis** (pehr-ih-stahl-sihs) is the series of wavelike contractions of smooth muscles (Figure 6–17). (The suffix **-stalsis** means contraction.) Food moves down the esophagus by gravity and peristalsis.

Ingesta moves into the stomach. In ruminants, it enters the rumen, reticulum, and omasum before entering the true stomach, or abomasum. The true glandular stomach contains **hydrochloric** (hī-drō-klōr-ihck) **acid** and the enzymes **protease** (prō-tē-ās), **pepsin** (pehp-sihn), and **lipase** (lī-pās). The muscular action of the stomach mixes the ingesta with the gastric juices to convert the food to chyme. **Chyme** (kim) is the semifluid mass of partly digested food that passes from the stomach.



**Figure 6–17** Peristalsis actively propels ingesta through the intestinal tract.



**Figure 6–18** Peristalsis versus segmentation. (a) Peristalsis propels food through the digestive system. (b) Segmentation helps break down and mix food through cement-mixer-type action.

Chyme passes from the stomach into the duodenum. Food moves through the small intestine by peristaltic action and **segmentation** (sehgh-mehn-tā-shuhn). Peristalsis consists of contractile waves that propel ingesta caudally; segmentation mixes and thus delays movement of ingesta (Figure 6–18). Digestion is completed in the duodenum after chyme has mixed with bile and pancreatic secretions.

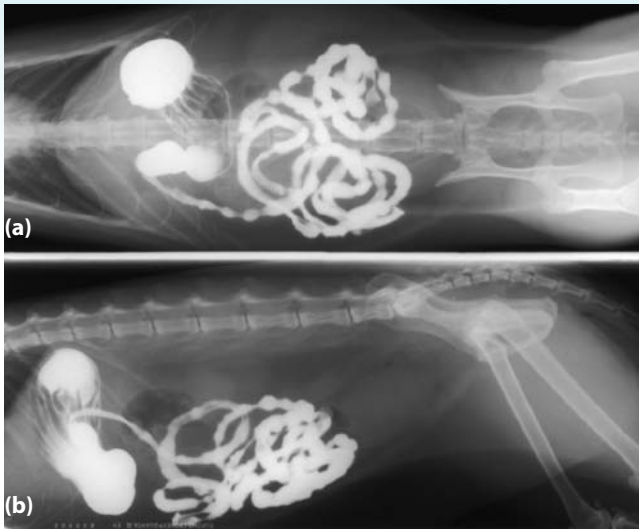
Digested food is absorbed in the small intestine. Another term for absorption is **assimilation** (ah-sih-mih-lā-shuhn).

The large intestine receives waste products of digestion and in some species is responsible for fermentation of plant material and vitamin synthesis. Excess water is absorbed from the waste, and solid feces are formed. **Defecation** (dehf-eh-kā-shuhn) is the emptying of the bowels.

## TEST ME: DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

Diagnostic tests performed on the digestive system include the following:

- **ballottement** (bahl-oht-mehnt) = diagnostic technique of hitting or tapping the wall of a fluid-filled structure to bounce a solid structure against a wall; used for pregnancy diagnosis and determination of abdominal contents.
- **barium** (bār-ē-uhm) = contrast material used for radiographic studies. To evaluate the gastrointestinal tract, barium sulfate may be given orally (and the resulting test is called a barium swallow or upper GI) or barium sulfate may be given rectally (and the resulting test is called a barium enema or lower GI). An **enema** (ehn-ah-mah) is introduction of fluid into the rectum (Figure 6–19).
- **biopsy** (bī-ohp-sē) = removal of tissue to examine. Biopsies can be **incisional** (ihn-sih-shuhn-ahl), in which part of the tissue is removed and examined, or they can be **excisional** (ehcks-sih-shuhn-ahl), in which the entire tissue is removed.



**Figure 6-19** Radiograph of a cat during a barium series. The bright white areas are barium in the gastrointestinal tract. (a) Ventrodorsal view. (b) Lateral view.

- **blood tests** = determination of blood parameters used to detect some diseases of the gastrointestinal tract. For example, bile acids are used to assess liver disease, and elevated amylase levels may indicate pancreatitis. Sometimes it is important to know whether the blood sample was taken as a preprandial or postprandial sample. **Preprandial** (prē-prahn-dē-ahl) is before eating, and **postprandial** (pōst-prahn-dē-ahl) is after eating.
- **colonoscopy** (kō-luhn-ohs-kō-pē) = endoscopic visual examination of the inner surface of the colon; the scope is passed from the rectum through the colon. An **endoscope** (ehn-dō-skōp) is a tubelike instrument with lights and refracting mirrors that is used to examine the body or organs internally (Figure 6-20).
- **esophagoscopy** (ē-sohf-ah-gohs-kō-pē) = endoscopic visual examination of the esophagus; the scope is passed from the oral cavity through the esophagus.
- **fecal examinations** = various procedures used to detect parasitic diseases of animals (Figures 6-21 and 6-22). Specialized fecal tests also can identify bacteria, isolate viruses, or demonstrate abnormal substances present in the stool.
- **gastroscope** (gahs-trohs-kō-pē) = endoscopic visual examination of the inner surface of the stomach; the scope is passed from the oral cavity through the stomach.
- **hemocult** (hēm-ō-kuhl) = test for hidden blood in the stool. **Occult** means hidden.
- **radiography** (rā-dē-ohg-rah-fē) = imaging of internal structures is created by the exposure of sensitized film to X-rays. Radiographs of the gastrointestinal system demonstrate foreign bodies, torsions, organ distention or enlargement, and some masses.
- **ultrasound** (uhl-trah-sownd) = imaging of internal body structures by recording echoes of sound waves.



**Figure 6-20** Endoscopy. (a) An endoscope is passed through the esophagus (esophagoscopy) to view parts of the gastrointestinal tract. (b) View of the intestine from an endoscope. A string foreign body is identified. (c) View of the intestine during surgery to remove the string foreign body. [(a) Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC; (b) Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD; (c) Eli Larson, DVM.]

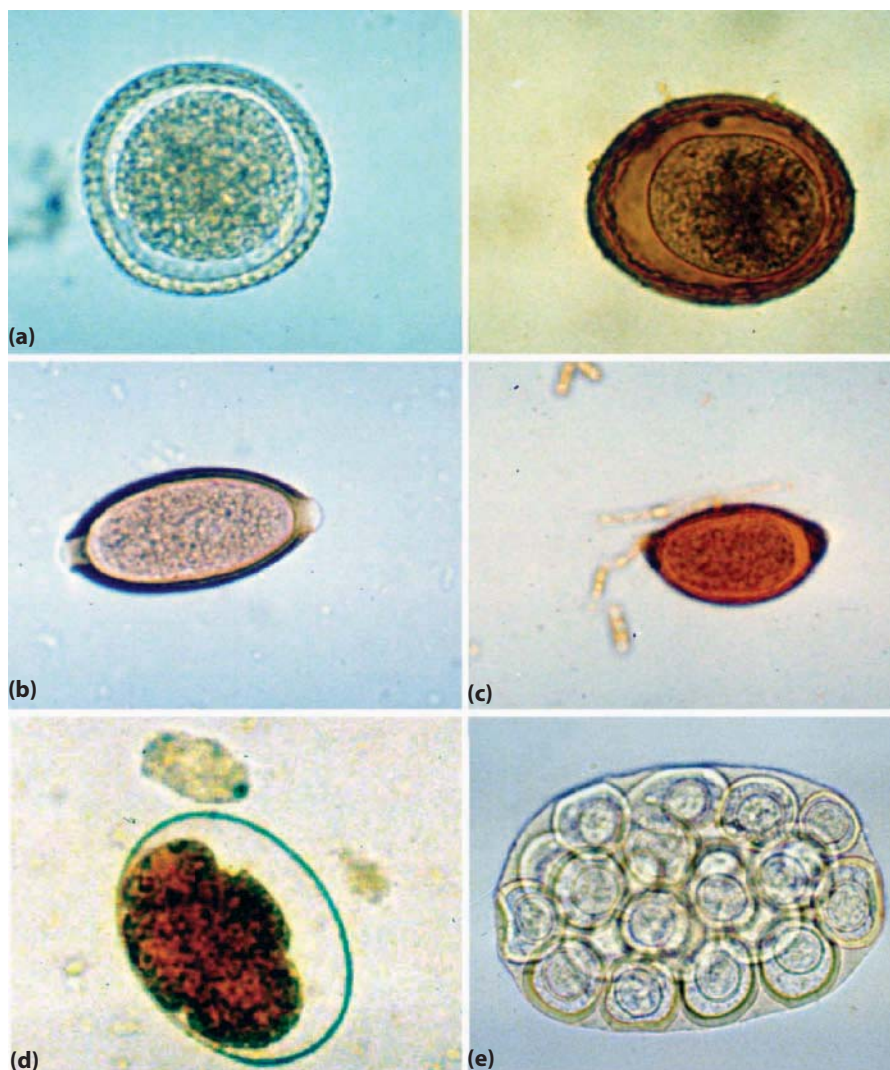


**Figure 6-21** A fecal flotation is a basic test that checks for intestinal parasites (usually by identification of the parasite eggs, or oocysts). Flotation methods are based on the use of flotation fluid with a specific gravity suitable to float the eggs, or oocysts.

## PATHOLOGY: DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the digestive system include the following:

- **achalasia** (ahk-ah-lahz-ah) = inability to relax the smooth muscle of the gastrointestinal tract.
- **adontia** (ā-dohnt-shah) = absence of teeth.
- **aerophagia** (ār-ō-fā-jē-ah) = swallowing of air.
- **anal sacculitis** (ā-nahl sahck-yoo-li-tihs) = inflammation of the pouches located around the anus. The term **inspissation** (ihn-spihs-sā-shuhn) is the process of rendering dry or thick by evaporation and is used to describe the anal sac fluid in animals with anal sacculitis.
- **anorexia** (ahn-ō-rehck-sē-ah) = lack or loss of appetite.
- **ascariasis** (ahs-kah-rī-ah-sihs) = parasitic infestation with roundworms of the genus *Ascaris* (Figure 6-23).



**Figure 6-22** Parasite eggs commonly found on fecal flotation. (a) Roundworm eggs (*Toxocara canis*, left; *Toxocaris leonina*, right). (b) Whipworm, left (*Trichuris vulpis*). (c) Lungworm, right (*Capillaria aerophila*). (d) Hookworm (*Ancylostoma caninum*). (e) Tapeworm (*Dipylidium caninum*).



**Figure 6-23** Ascariasis is a parasitic infestation with roundworms. (Courtesy of North Dakota Department of Education.)

- **ascites** (ah-sī-tēz) = abnormal accumulation of fluid in the abdomen.
- **atresia** (ah-trēz-ah) = occlusion or absence of normal body opening or tubular organ.
- **bloat** (blōt) = accumulation of gas in the digestive tract. In monogastric animals, bloat is accumulation of gas in the stomach. In ruminants, bloat is accumulation of gas in the rumen, abomasum, or cecum. In ruminants, gas accumulation in the rumen is also called **ruminal tympany** (tihm-pahn-ē).
- **borborygmus** (bohr-bō-rihg-muhs) = gas movement in the gastrointestinal tract that produces a rumbling noise.
- **bruxism** (bruhck-sihzm) = involuntary grinding of the teeth.
- **cachexia** (kah-kehcks-ē-ah) = general ill health and malnutrition; used in describing the condition of cancer patients.
- **cholecystitis** (kō-lē-sihs-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the gallbladder.
- **cirrhosis** (sihr-rō-sihs) = degenerative disease that disturbs the structure and function of the liver.
- **colic** (kohl-ihck) = severe abdominal pain.
- **colitis** (kō-li-tihs) = inflammation of the colon.
- **constipation** (kohn-stah-pā-shuhn) = condition of prolonged gastrointestinal transit time, making the stool hard, dry, and difficult to pass.
- **coprophagia** (kō-prō-fā-jē-ah or kohp-rohf-ah-jē-ah) = ingestion of fecal material. The combining form **copr/o** means feces.

- **cribbing** (krihb-ihng) = vice of equine in which an object is grasped between the teeth, pressure is applied, and air is inhaled. See Figure 19-10.
- **dehydration** (dē-hī-drā-shuhn) = condition of excessive loss of body water or fluid.
- **dental calculus** (dehn-tahl kahl-kyoo-luhs) = abnormal mineralized deposit that forms on teeth (Figure 6-24). Calculus is mineral deposit. Dental calculus also is called **tartar** (tahr-tahr).
- **dental caries** (dehn-tahl kār-ēz) = decay and decalcification of teeth, producing a hole in the tooth.
- **diarrhea** (dī-ah-rē-ah) = abnormal frequency and liquidity of fecal material (Figure 6-25).
- **displaced abomasum** (dihs-plāsd ahb-ō-mā-suhm) = disease of ruminants in which the fourth stomach compartment becomes trapped under the rumen; also called DA. It is denoted LDA (left displaced abomasum)



**Figure 6-24** Dental calculus and gingivitis in a dog. (Courtesy of Eli Larson, DVM.)



**Figure 6-25** Bovine with diarrhea caused by *Salmonella* bacteria. (Courtesy of Dr. Ramos-Vara, College of Veterinary Medicine, Michigan State University.)

or RDA (right displaced abomasum) depending on its location. LDAs are more common.

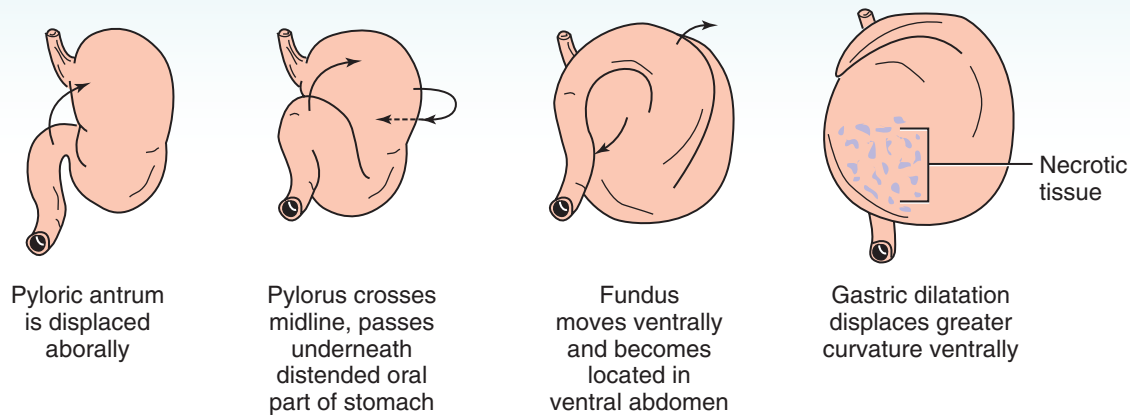
- **diverticulitis** (dī-vər-tihck-yoo-lī-tihs) = inflammation of a pouch or pouches occurring in the wall of a tubular organ. A **diverticulum** (dī-vər-tihck-yoo-luhm) is a pouch occurring on the wall of a tubular organ; diverticula are pouches occurring on the wall of a tubular organ.
- **dyschezia** (dihs-kē-zē-ah) = difficulty defecating. *Chezein* is Greek for stool. The prefix **dys-** means difficult.
- **dysentery** (dihs-ehn-tər-ē) = number of disorders marked by inflammation of the intestine, abdominal pain, and diarrhea.
- **dysphagia** (dihs-fā-jē-ah) = difficulty swallowing or eating. The suffix **-phagia** means eating or swallowing.
- **emaciation** (ē-mā-sē-ā-shuhn) = marked wasting or excessive leanness (Figure 6–26).
- **emesis** (ehm-eh-sihs) = forcible expulsion of stomach contents through the mouth; also known as vomiting. The material vomited is known as **vomit** (voh-mih-tus). When an animal is vomiting, the recommendation is not to give it anything orally. The term for orally is **per os**, which is abbreviated **PO**. If the desire is to give nothing orally, the abbreviation is **NPO**.
- **enteritis** (ehn-tər-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the small intestine.
- **enterocolitis** (ehn-tehr-ō-kō-lī-tihs) = inflammation of the small intestine and large intestine.
- **epulis** (ehp-uhl-uhs) = benign tumor arising from periodontal mucous membranes.
- **eructation** (ē-ruhck-tā-shuhn) = belching or raising gas orally from the stomach.
- **esophageal reflux** (ē-sohf-ah-jē-ahl rē-fluhcks) = return of stomach contents into the esophagus; also called gastroesophageal reflux disease, or GERD.



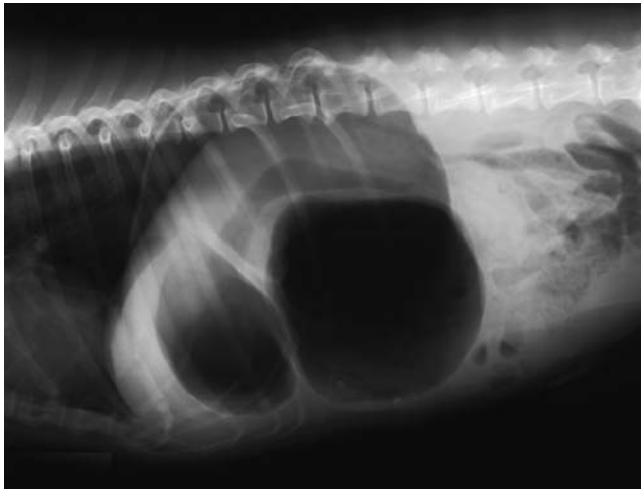
**Figure 6–26** Emaciation in a Jersey cow with Johne's disease. (Courtesy of Michael T. Collins, DVM, PhD, University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)

- **eviscerate** (ē-vihs-ər-āt) = remove or expose internal organs. Evisceration is used to describe the exposure of internal organs after unsuccessful surgical closure of the abdomen (or another area containing organs).
- **exocrine pancreatic insufficiency** (ehck-sō-krihn pah-nkrē-ah-tihck ihn-suh-fih-shehn-sē) = metabolic disease in which the pancreas does not secrete adequate amounts of digestive enzymes and is associated with weight loss, fatty stools, and borborygmus; abbreviated EPI.
- **fecalith** (fēck-ah-liht) = stonelike fecal mass. The suffix **-lithiasis** (lih-thī-ah-sihs) means presence of stones. **Coprolith** (kō-prō-liht) is another name for a fecalith.
- **flatulence** (flaht-yoo-lehns) = excessive gas formation in the gastrointestinal tract.
- **gastric dilatation** (gahs-trihck dihl-ah-tā-shuhn) = condition usually seen in deep-chested canines in which the stomach fills with air and expands. Dilatation is stretching beyond normal.
- **gastric dilatation volvulus** (gahs-trihck dihl-ah-tā-shuhn vohl-vū-luhs) = condition usually seen in deep-chested canines in which the stomach fills with air, expands, and twists on itself; also called GDV (Figures 6–27 and 6–28).
- **gastritis** (gahs-trī-tihs) = inflammation of the stomach.
- **gastroenteritis** (gahs-trō-ehn-tehr-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the stomach and small intestine. Note that anatomically the stomach occurs first, followed by the small intestine. This order is reflected in the order of the medical terms as well.
- **gingival hyperplasia** (jih-n-jih-vahl hī-pər-plā-zē-ah) = overgrowth of the gingiva characterized by firm, non-painful swellings associated with the gingiva.
- **gingivitis** (jih-n-jih-vī-tihs) = inflammation of the gums (Figure 6–24).
- **glossitis** (gloh-s-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the tongue.
- **hematemesis** (hēm-ah-tehm-eh-sihs) = vomiting blood.
- **hematochezia** (hēm-aht-ō-kē-zē-ah) = passage of bloody stool.
- **hemoperitoneum** (hēm-ō-pehr-ih-tō-nē-uhm) = blood in the peritoneum.
- **hepatitis** (hehp-ah-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the liver.
- **hepatoma** (heh-pah-tō-mah) = tumor of the liver.
- **hepatomegaly** (hehp-ah-tō-mehg-ah-lē) = abnormal enlargement of the liver.
- **hiatal hernia** (hī-ā-tahl hār-nē-ah) = protrusion of part of the stomach through the esophageal opening in the diaphragm.
- **hydrops** (hī-drohps) = abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissues or a body cavity; also called **dropsy** (drohp-sē).
- **hyperglycemia** (hī-pər-gli-sē-mē-ah) = elevated blood sugar levels.
- **hypoglycemia** (hī-pō-gli-sē-mē-ah) = lower-than-normal blood sugar levels.

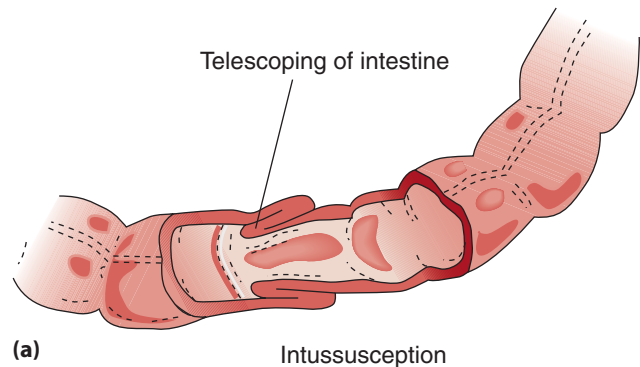
## Gastric Dilatation Volvulus



**Figure 6-27** Gastric dilatation volvulus formation. *Gastric dilatation volvulus* is a term commonly used to describe a condition in deep-chested dogs in which the stomach fills with air, expands, and twists on itself. Because the stomach is “attached” at only two points, it should be more accurately described as a torsion.



**Figure 6-28** Radiograph of a dog with GDV. Note the large gas-distended stomach.



**Figure 6-29** Intussusception is the telescoping of the bowel onto itself.

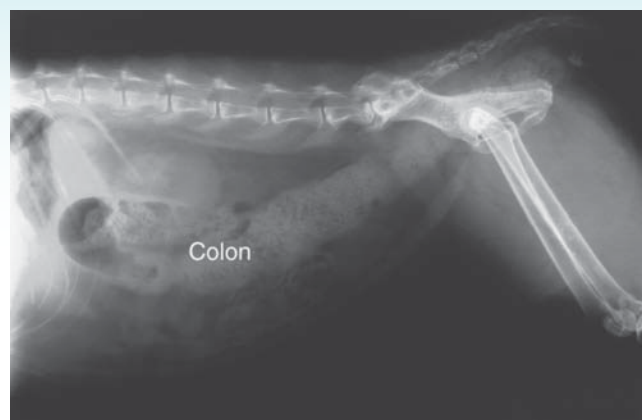
- **ileitis** (ihl-ē-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the ileum.
- **ileus** (ihl-ē-uhs) = stoppage of intestinal peristalsis.
- **impaction** (ihm-pahck-shuhn) = obstruction of an area, usually when feed is too dry.
- **inappetence** (ihn-ahp-eh-tehns) = lack of desire to eat.
- **incontinence** (ihn-kohn-tihn-ehns) = inability to control. A descriptive term usually is applied in front of it; for example, fecal incontinence is the inability to control bowel movements.
- **inguinal hernia** (ihng-gwih-nahl hār-nē-ah) = protrusion of bowel through the inguinal canal; protrusion is seen in the groin.
- **intussusception** (ihn-tuhs-suhs-sehp-shuhn) = telescoping of one part of the intestine into an adjacent part (Figure 6-29).

- **jaundice** (jawn-dihs) = yellow discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes caused by elevated bilirubin levels, also called **icterus** (ihck-tər-uhs) (Figure 6-30).
- **lethargy** (lehth-ahr-jē) = condition of drowsiness or indifference.
- **malabsorption** (mahl-ahb-sōrp-shuhn) = impaired uptake of nutrients from the intestine.

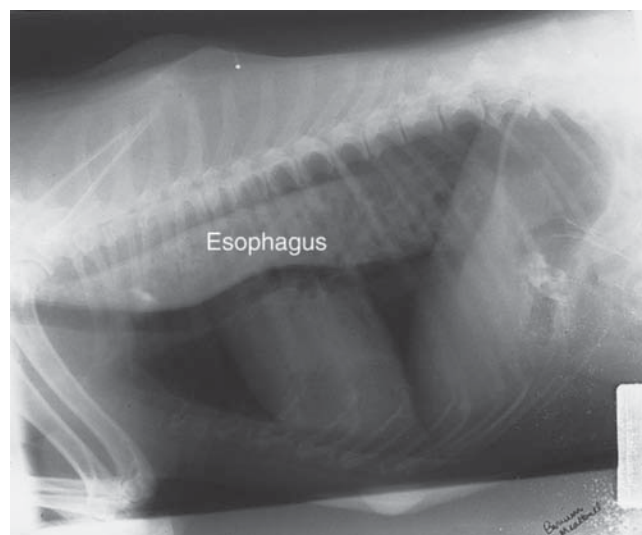


**Figure 6-30** Jaundice is the yellow discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes. (Courtesy of Kim Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

- **malocclusion** (mahl-ō-kloo-shuhn) = abnormal contact between the teeth. The prefix **mal-** means bad, and **occlusion** means any contact between the chewing surfaces of the teeth.
- **megacolon** (mehg-ah-kō-lihn) = abnormally large colon (Figure 6-31a).
- **megaesophagus** (mehg-ah-ē-sohf-ah-guhs) = abnormally large esophagus (Figure 6-31b).
- **melena** (meh-lē-nah) = black stools containing digested blood. Melena suggests a bleeding problem in the upper gastrointestinal tract.
- **nausea** (naw-sē-ah) = stomach upset or sensation of urge to vomit; difficult to use descriptively in animals.
- **obstruction** (ohb-struhck-shuhn) = complete stoppage or impairment to passage. Obstructions usually are preceded by a term that describes its location, as in **intestinal obstruction** (Figure 6-32). When the obstruction is not complete, it is called a **partial obstruction**.
- **oronasal fistula** (ohr-ō-nā-zahl fihs-tyoo-lah) = abnormal opening between the nasal cavity and the oral cavity. Oronasal fistulas may be congenital, traumatic, or associated with dental disease.
- **palatoschisis** (pahl-ah-tohs-kih-sihs) = congenital fissure of the roof of the mouth that may involve the upper lip, hard palate, and soft palate; more commonly called a **cleft palate**.
- **perforating ulcer** (pər-fohr-āt-ihng uhl-sihr) = erosion through the entire thickness of a surface.
- **periapical abscess** (pehr-ē-ā-pih-cahl ahb-sehsz) = inflammation of tissues and collection of pus surrounding the apical portion of a tooth root due to pulpal disease.



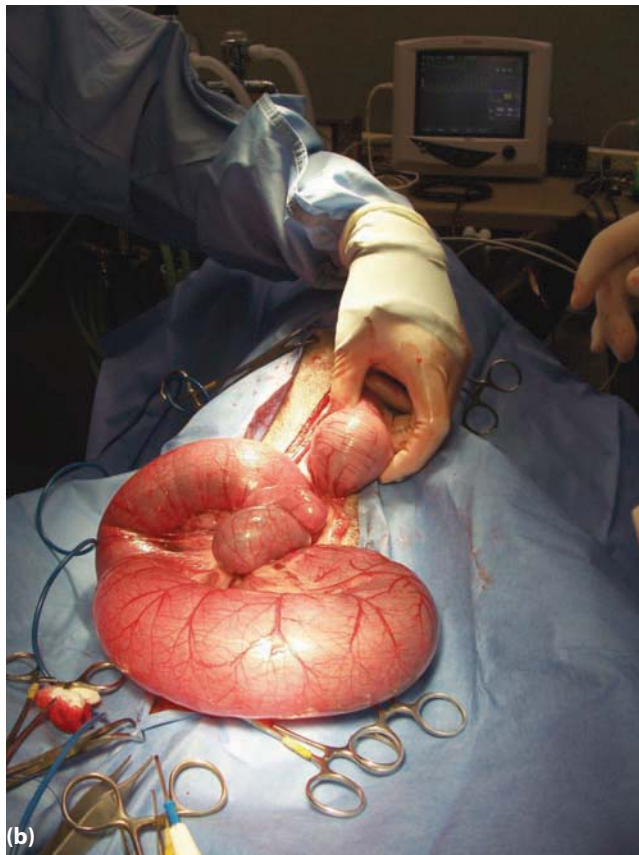
(a)



(b)

**Figure 6-31** Contrast radiography. (a) Megacolon is diagnosed in the dog using contrast radiography. (b) Megaesophagus is diagnosed in the dog using contrast radiography. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC.)

- **periodontitis** (pehr-ē-ō-dohn-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the tissue surrounding and supporting the teeth; also called **periodontal disease**. **Inflammation** is a localized protective response elicited by injury or destruction of tissue. The signs of inflammation are heat, redness, pain, swelling, and loss of function.
- **pica** (pī-kah) = eating and licking abnormal substances or a depraved appetite.
- **plaque** (plahck) = small, differentiated area on a body surface. In the gastrointestinal system, it is used to refer to the mixed colony of bacteria, leukocytes, and salivary products that adhere to the tooth enamel; also called dental plaque.
- **polydipsia** (pohl-ē-dihp-sē-ah) = excessive thirst or drinking.
- **polyp** (pohl-uhp) = small growth on a mucous membrane.
- **polyphagia** (pohl-ē-fā-jē-ah) = excessive eating or swallowing. The prefix **poly-** means many or much.

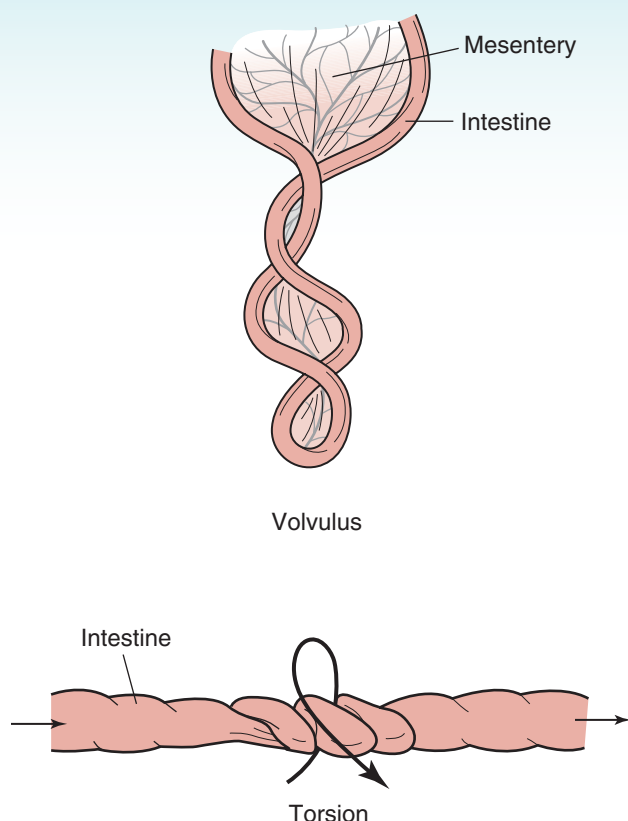


**Figure 6-32** (a) Radiograph of a dog with an intestinal obstruction (golf ball). (b) Surgical view of the dog with an intestinal obstruction. (Courtesy of Eli Larson, DVM.)

- **prolapse** (prō-lahpz) = protrusion of viscera. A descriptive term usually precedes the term *prolapse*. For example, a rectal prolapse is protrusion of the rectum through the anus.
- **quidding** (kwihd-ihng) = condition in which food is taken into the mouth and chewed but falls from the mouth.
- **regurgitation** (rē-gərj-ih-tā-shuhn) = return of swallowed food into the oral cavity; a passive event compared with the force involved with vomiting.
- **salivary mucocoele** (sahl-ih-vahr-ē myoo-kō-sēl) = collection of saliva that has leaked from a damaged salivary gland or duct and is surrounded by granulation tissue (Figure 6-33).
- **scours** (skowrz) = diarrhea in livestock.
- **shunt** (shuhnt) = to bypass or divert. In a **portosystemic** (poor-tō-sihs-tehm-ihck) **shunt**, blood vessels bypass the liver and the blood is not detoxified properly.
- **stenosis** (steh-nō-sihs) = narrowing of an opening. The term *stenosis* usually is used with a descriptive term in front of it. For example, a pyloric stenosis is narrowing of the pylorus as it leads into the duodenum.
- **stomatitis** (stō-mah-ti-tihs) = inflammation of the mouth.
- **tenesmus** (teh-nehz-muhs) = painful, ineffective defecation. Tenesmus also means painful, ineffective urination but is rarely used in this context.
- **torsion** (tör-shuhn) = axial twist; twist around the long axis of gut.
- **trichobezoar** (trī-kō-bē-zōr) = hairball. The combining form **trich/o** means hair.
- **ulcer** (uhl-sihr) = erosion of tissue.
- **volvulus** (vohl-vū-luhs) = twisting on itself (end-to-end twist); twist around long axis of mesentery (Figure 6-34).



**Figure 6-33** Salivary mucocoele in a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 6-34** Different types of twists. Volvulus is a twist around the long axis of the mesentery; torsion is a twist around the long axis of the gut.

## PROCEDURES: DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the digestive system include the following:

- **abdominocentesis** (ahb-dohm-ihn-ō-sehn-tē-sihs) = surgical puncture to remove fluid from the abdomen.
- **abomasopexy** (ahb-ō-mahs-ō-pehcks-ē) = surgical fixation of the abomasum of ruminants to the abdominal wall (Figure 6-35). The suffix **-pexy** means to surgically fix something to a body surface.
- **anastomosis** (ah-nahs-tō-mō-sihs) = surgical connection between two tubular or hollow structures.
- **anoplasty** (ah-nō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the anus.
- **antidiarrheal** (ahn-tih-dī-ə-rē-ahl) = substance that prevents frequent and extremely liquid stool.
- **bolus** (bō-luhs) = rounded mass of food or large pharmaceutical preparation or to give something rapidly.
- **cholecystectomy** (kō-lē-sihs-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the gallbladder.
- **colectomy** (kō-lehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the colon.
- **colostomy** (kō-lahs-tō-mē) = surgical production of an artificial opening between the colon and the body surface.

- **colotomy** (kō-loht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the colon.
- **crown** (krown) = restoration of teeth using materials that are cemented into place; used to cap or completely cover a tooth; also called a **cap**.
- **drench** (drehnch) = to give medication in liquid form by mouth and forcing the animal to drink.
- **emetic** (ē-meh-tihck) = producing vomiting. An **antiemetic** (ahn-tih-ē-meh-tihck) prevents vomiting.
- **enterostomy** (ehn-tər-ohs-tō-mē) = surgical production of an artificial opening between the small intestine and the abdominal wall.
- **esophagoplasty** (ē-sohf-ah-gō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the esophagus.
- **extraction** (ehcks-trahck-shuhn) = removal; used to describe surgical removal of a tooth.

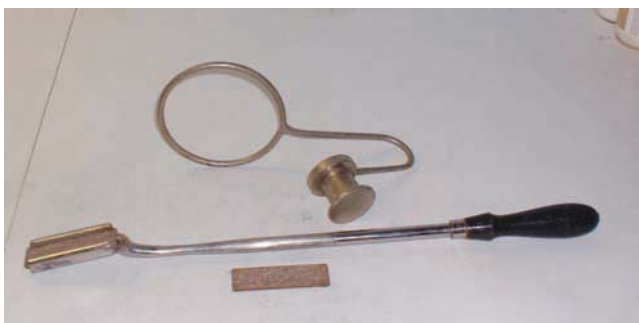


**Figure 6-35** A displaced abomasum is repaired surgically with a procedure called an abomasopexy

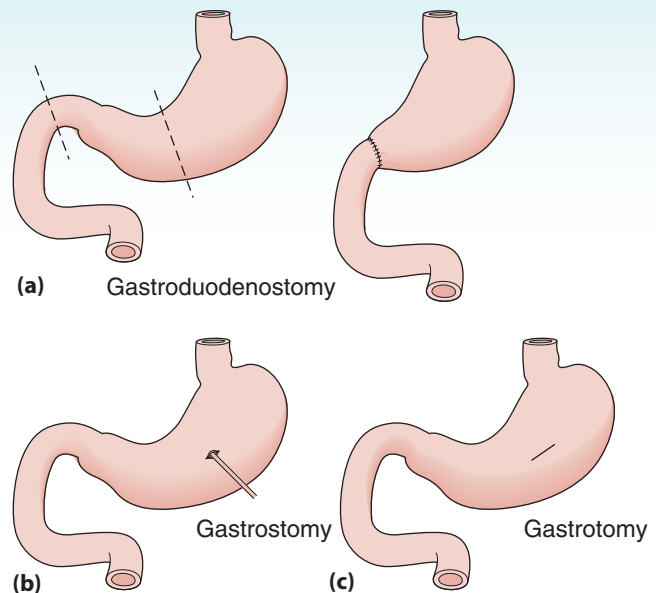


**Figure 6-36** A rumen fistula is an artificial opening created between the rumen and the body surface. (Courtesy of Laura Lien, CVT, BS.)

- **fistula** (fihs-tyoo-lah) = abnormal passage from an internal organ to the body surface or between two internal organs. A ruminant that has an artificial opening created between the rumen and the body surface has a rumen fistula (Figure 6–36). This also is called a **rumenostomy** (roo-mehn-ah-stō-mē). A **perianal fistula** (pehr-ih-ā-nahl fihs-too-lah) is an abnormal passage around the caudal opening of the gastrointestinal tract. **Perianal** means around the anus.
- **float** (flōt) = instrument used to file or rasp an equine's premolar or molar teeth (Figure 6–37); also used to describe the procedure of filing equine teeth.
- **gastrectomy** (gahs-trehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of all or part of the stomach. To clarify the extent of the excision, the term **partial gastrectomy** is used to denote surgical removal of part of the stomach.
- **gastroduodenostomy** (gahs-trō-doo-ō-deh-nohs-tōm-ē) = removal of part of the stomach and duodenum and making a connection between them.
- **gastropexy** (gahs-trō-pehcks-ē) = surgical fixation of the stomach to the abdominal wall.
- **gastrostomy** (gahs-trohs-tō-mē) = surgical production of an artificial opening between the stomach and abdominal wall. The suffix **-stomy** means surgical production of an opening between an organ and a body surface. The opening created during this procedure is a **stoma** (stō-mah). **Effluent** (ehf-floo-ehnt) means discharge and an effluent flow from the stoma created by a -stomy surgery (e.g., gastrostomy).
- **gastrotomy** (gahs-troht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the stomach (Figure 6–38).
- **gavage** (gah-vahzh) = forced feeding or irrigation through a tube passed into the stomach.
- **gingivectomy** (jih-n-jih-vehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the gum tissue.
- **hepatotomy** (hehp-ah-toht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the liver.
- **ileectomy** (ihl-ē-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the ileum.
- **ileostomy** (ihl-ē-ohs-tō-mē) = surgical production of an artificial opening between the ileum and abdominal wall.



**Figure 6–37** A tooth float used to file the teeth of horses. A gag is used to hold the mouth open for the procedure.



**Figure 6–38** (a) Gastroduodenostomy, (b) Gastrostomy, and (c) Gastrotomy.



**Figure 6–39** Nasogastric tube placement in a cat. (Courtesy of Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD.)

- **laparotomy** (lahp-ah-roht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the abdomen; **lapar/o** is the combining form for abdomen or flank.
- **nasogastric intubation** (nā-zō-gahs-trihck ihn-toob-ā-shuhn) = placement of a tube through the nose into the stomach (Figure 6–39).
- **orogastric intubation** (ōr-ō-gahs-trihck ihn-too-bā-shuhn) = passage of a tube from the mouth to the stomach; also called a stomach tube. *Orogastric* means pertaining to the mouth and stomach.
- **palatoplasty** (pahl-ah-tō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of a cleft palate.

- **trocarization** (trō-kahr-ih-zā-shuhn) = insertion of a pointed instrument (trocar) into a body cavity or an organ. The trocar usually is inside a cannula so that once the trocar penetrates the membrane, it can be withdrawn and the cannula remains in place. Trocar-

ization usually is performed for acute cases of bloat to relieve pressure. When trocarization is performed for treatment of ruminal bloat, it may be called ruminal **paracentesis** (pah-ah-sehn-tē-sihs).

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

- Mixing of ingesta in the intestine is called
  - propulsion
  - peristalsis
  - segmentation
  - separation
- Abnormal accumulation of fluid in the abdomen is called
  - ascites
  - effusion
  - icterus
  - bloat
- Telescoping of one part of the intestine into an adjacent part is called
  - volvulus
  - diverticulum
  - parenchyma
  - intussusception
- The small intestine is attached to the dorsal abdominal wall by the
  - peritoneum
  - emesis
  - mesentery
  - omentum
- Eating and licking of abnormal substances is called
  - coprophagy
  - pica
  - dysphagia
  - polyphagia
- Inflammation of the mouth is
  - stomatitis
  - oritis
  - dentitis
  - ositis
- Straining, painful defecation is called
  - strangstolia
  - colostrangia
  - tenesmus
  - epulis
- A tumor of the liver is a
  - hematoma
  - hemoma
  - hepatoma
  - hemotoma
- Marked wasting or excessive leanness is
  - evaluation
  - elimination
  - emesis
  - emaciation
- Forced feeding or irrigation through a tube passed into the stomach is called
  - gavage
  - drench
  - bolus
  - cachexia
- The combining form for the first part of the large intestine is
  - ile/o
  - cec/o
  - duoden/o
  - jejuno/o
- The muscular, wavelike movement used to transport food through the digestive system is
  - mastication
  - peristalsis
  - anastomosis
  - regurgitation

13. The part of the tooth that contains a rich supply of nerves and blood vessels is the
  - a. enamel
  - b. dentin
  - c. pulp
  - d. cementum
14. *Buccal* means
  - a. pertaining to the cheek
  - b. pertaining to the tongue
  - c. pertaining to the throat
  - d. pertaining to the palate
15. *Stomat/o* means
  - a. mouth
  - b. cheek
  - c. stomach
  - d. intestine
16. The term for erosion of tissue is
  - a. melena
  - b. plaque
  - c. shunt
  - d. ulcer
17. The narrow passage between the stomach and the duodenum is the
  - a. ileum
  - b. pylorus
  - c. peritoneum
  - d. mesentery
18. Incontinence means
  - a. prolonged transit time
  - b. dribbling urine
  - c. loose stool
  - d. inability to control
19. A drug used to prevent vomiting is known as an
  - a. emetic
  - b. atresic
  - c. antiemetic
  - d. antiemaciation
20. The formation of a new opening from the large intestine to the surface of the body is known as a(n)
  - a. enterostomy
  - b. colostomy
  - c. colectomy
  - d. enterotomy

## Matching

Match the term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

### Column I

1. \_\_\_\_\_ chyme
2. \_\_\_\_\_ bile
3. \_\_\_\_\_ glycogen
4. \_\_\_\_\_ rugae
5. \_\_\_\_\_ mastication
6. \_\_\_\_\_ aerophagia
7. \_\_\_\_\_ trypsin
8. \_\_\_\_\_ amylase
9. \_\_\_\_\_ villus
10. \_\_\_\_\_ assimilation

### Column II

- a. absorption
- b. tiny hairlike projection on the small intestine
- c. semifluid mass of partly digested food
- d. substance made by the liver that helps with fat digestion
- e. folds present in the mucosa of the stomach
- f. stored energy present in the liver
- g. swallowing of air
- h. breaking food into smaller pieces and mixing with saliva
- i. enzyme that digests starch
- j. enzyme that digests protein

**Fill in the Blanks**

1. Gloss/o and lingu/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Or/o and stomat/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Cheil/o and labi/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Abdomin/o, celi/o, and lapar/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Dent/o, dent/i, and odont/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.

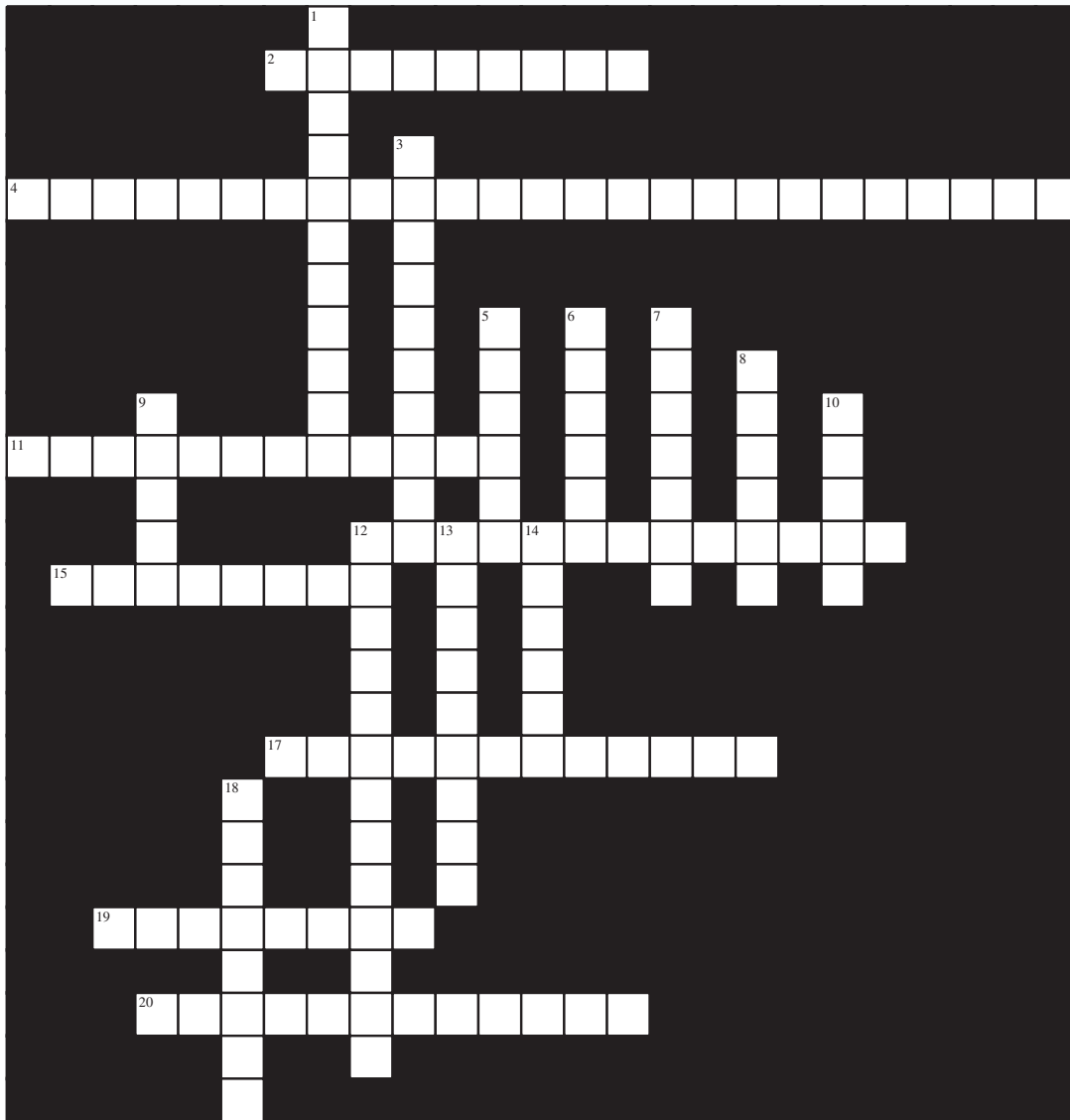
**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |  |           |            |            |
|--|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. twisting of the intestine:                                    | vulvulus  | volvulus   | volvolus   |
| 2. inability to relax the smooth muscles of the digestive tract: | achalsia  | achalasia  | achaelasia |
| 3. yellow discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes:        | jaundise  | jawndise   | jaundice   |
| 4. remove or expose internal organs:                             | eviserate | eviscerate | evicerate  |
| 5. abnormal accumulation of fluid in the abdomen:                | ascites   | asites     | ascetes    |

## CROSSWORD PUZZLES

### Disease Terms Puzzle



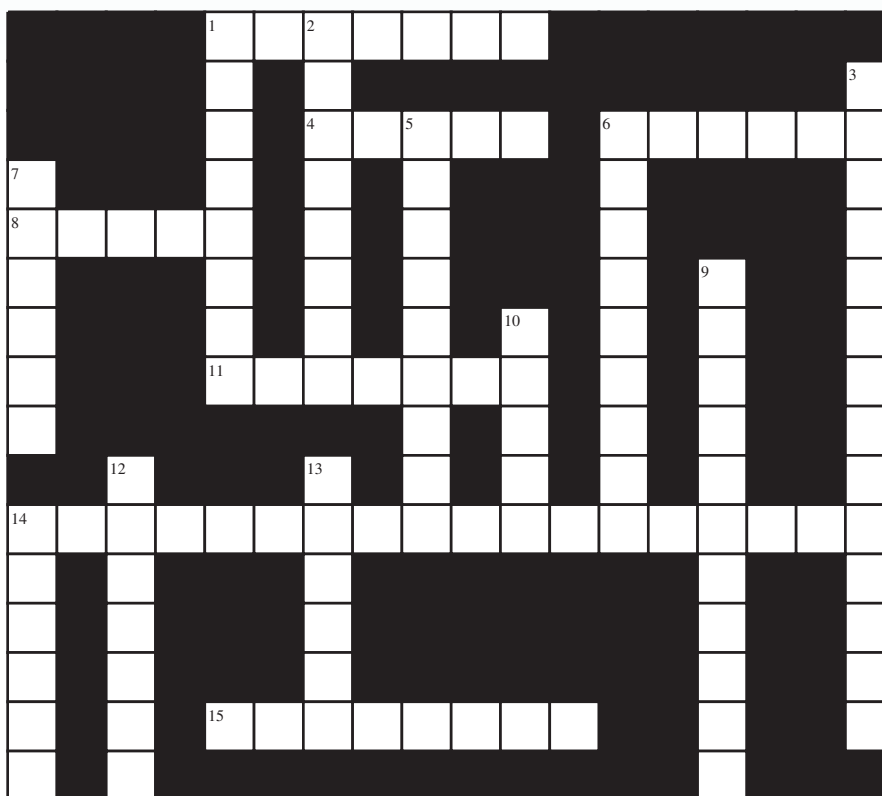
#### Across

- 2 abnormally large portion of the large intestine located between the cecum and rectum
- 4 condition usually seen in deep-chested canines in which the stomach fills with air, expands, and twists on itself
- 11 inability to control
- 12 abnormally large tube that connects the oral cavity to the stomach
- 15 general ill health and malnutrition
- 17 process of rendering dry or thick by evaporation
- 19 stonelike fecal mass
- 20 hairball

#### Down

- 1 condition of excessive loss of body water or fluid
- 3 excessive gas formation in the GI tract
- 5 black stools containing digested blood
- 6 diarrhea in livestock
- 7 abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissues or a body cavity
- 8 another term for dental calculus
- 9 severe abdominal pain
- 10 rounded mass of food, large pharmaceutical preparation, or to give something rapidly
- 12 impaired uptake of nutrients from the intestine
- 13 inflammation of the tongue
- 14 benign tumor arising from periodontal mucous membranes
- 18 excessive salivation

## Digestive Organs Puzzle



### Across

- 1 throat
- 4 caudal portion of the small intestine
- 6 caudal portion of the large intestine
- 8 organ that produces bile
- 11 one of the combining forms for mouth
- 14 cheek teeth
- 15 cranial portion of the small intestine

### Down

- 1 gland that secretes digestive juices as well as hormones
- 2 combining form for nourishment
- 3 entero is the combining form for this GI organ
- 5 collapsible muscular tube that leads from the oral cavity to the stomach
- 6 most cranial compartment of the ruminant stomach
- 7 one of the combining forms for tongue
- 9 organ that stores bile
- 10 part of large intestine located between the cecum and rectum
- 12 middle portion of the small intestine
- 13 combining form for stomach
- 14 roof of the mouth

## WORD SEARCH

Define the following terms; then find each term in the puzzle.

R	T	Y	T	N	N	D	L	T	Y	U	B	T	Y	I	M	A	S	N	N	O	O
Y	A	M	A	O	A	C	A	T	E	E	H	Y	M	Y	C	I	I	T	T	E	N
O	E	O	N	A	N	A	P	O	Y	S	I	S	O	M	O	T	S	A	N	A	A
A	Y	N	E	M	Y	O	A	A	T	E	H	M	T	T	E	T	E	T	E	B	S
D	T	G	O	I	T	T	R	O	T	E	S	L	S	T	N	A	T	N	N	D	O
O	T	N	T	E	N	T	O	Y	O	A	P	Y	O	E	O	I	N	O	O	A	G
A	O	A	T	O	O	O	T	T	B	T	T	A	L	O	I	O	E	O	D	M	A
T	N	N	H	O	N	M	O	O	N	Y	N	T	O	Y	S	S	C	G	T	Y	S
E	D	T	O	C	O	O	M	N	N	T	B	I	C	E	B	I	O	P	S	Y	T
O	N	O	E	T	O	A	Y	Y	I	O	Y	O	N	O	C	D	N	R	E	S	R
S	O	I	S	O	S	M	O	D	N	M	E	M	E	T	I	C	I	Y	T	S	I
O	T	M	E	O	O	D	I	S	M	T	A	A	O	A	G	N	M	H	N	C	C
L	C	S	P	B	R	A	O	O	D	N	A	O	A	N	Y	H	O	T	T	N	I
E	M	E	O	M	R	M	I	N	T	T	A	M	G	M	T	E	D	S	N	T	N
M	X	Y	C	R	O	O	N	T	Y	S	A	O	R	C	O	O	B	T	T	E	T
Y	S	C	H	T	T	T	Y	E	E	O	C	A	G	A	P	O	A	O	O	B	U
O	Y	E	I	A	Y	I	N	E	T	O	S	A	C	A	N	E	M	E	N	T	B
T	A	S	O	O	E	E	N	T	H	S	C	Y	G	I	O	Y	T	O	A	A	A
L	X	N	T	T	M	S	A	L	E	M	N	T	E	T	A	O	N	T	N	G	T
H	T	D	M	A	A	N	O	M	C	N	E	X	T	R	A	C	T	I	O	N	I
A	M	O	A	N	C	Y	N	S	G	A	S	T	R	E	C	T	O	M	Y	N	O
A	N	O	P	L	A	S	T	Y	O	T	N	O	N	A	B	S	I	I	T	M	N

surgical connection between two tubular  
or hollow organs

---

surgical incision into the abdomen

---

surgical removal of all or part of the  
stomach

---

produces vomiting

---

to remove (teeth)

---

surgical repair of the anus

---

surgical production of an artificial opening  
between the portion of the large intestine  
between the cecum and rectum and the  
body surface

---

surgical fixation in ruminants of the fourth  
stomach compartment to the abdominal wall

---

removing tissue to examine

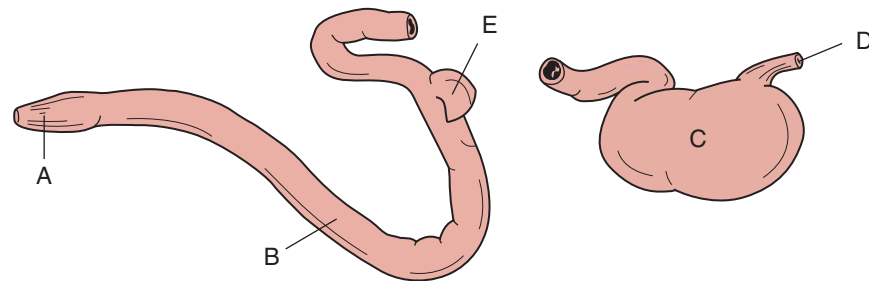
---

substance that prevents frequent and  
extremely liquid stool

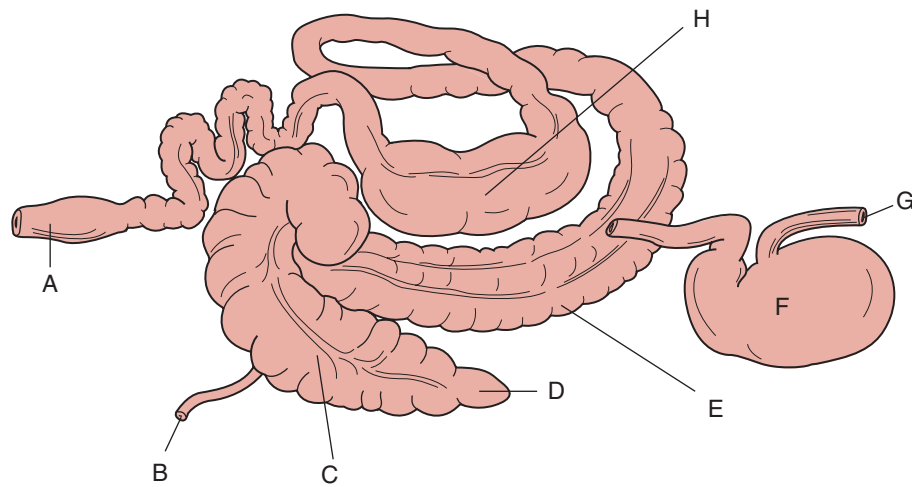
---

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

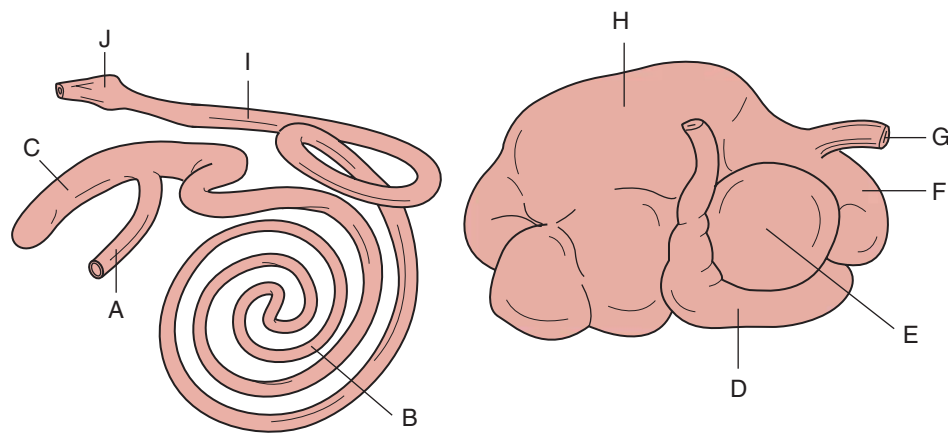
Label the diagram in Figure 6–40.



(a) Dog



(b) Horse



(c) Ruminant

**Figure 6–40** Gastrointestinal tracts. Label the parts of the gastrointestinal tracts.

## CASE STUDIES

Using terms presented in this chapter, the appendices, and a dictionary, define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 3-yr-old F/S New Zealand white rabbit is presented for a few months hx of quidding and ptyalism. The problem has become progressively worse, and although the rabbit has a good appetite, it has difficulty prehending food. On PE, it is noted that there is severe overgrowth of the upper and lower incisors. This problem in rabbits is most often caused by malocclusion of the dental arcades. The premolars and molars are found to be normal. Conservative treatment includes periodic trimming of the overgrown teeth. A more permanent solution involves the extraction of the incisors. Under general anesthesia, all incisors are removed. Analgesics are provided for the first few days postoperatively because rabbits are easily stressed by pain. Once healed, the rabbit returned to its normal eating habits.

1. yr \_\_\_\_\_
2. F/S \_\_\_\_\_
3. hx \_\_\_\_\_
4. quidding \_\_\_\_\_
5. ptyalism \_\_\_\_\_
6. prehending \_\_\_\_\_
7. incisors \_\_\_\_\_
8. malocclusion \_\_\_\_\_
9. dental arcades \_\_\_\_\_
10. premolars \_\_\_\_\_
11. molars \_\_\_\_\_
12. extraction \_\_\_\_\_
13. anesthesia \_\_\_\_\_
14. analgesics \_\_\_\_\_
15. postoperatively \_\_\_\_\_

An 8-wk-old M coonhound is presented to the clinic with an acute history of emesis, hemorrhagic diarrhea, lethargy, and anorexia. The pup was not vaccinated and was healthy until yesterday. Upon PE, it was noted that the pup was pyrexia, dehydrated, and lethargic. Heart and lungs auscultated normally. Stool was collected for parasitic examination, and blood was collected for a CBC and chemistry panel. The stool was negative for parasites, the blood count revealed lymphopenia, and the chemistry panel was normal except for indications of dehydration. A dx of canine parvovirus enteritis was suspected because of the lymphopenia and clinical signs, so virus isolation was performed on a stool sample. Pending virus isolation results, the pup was hospitalized and isolated, IV fluids were administered, and antibiotics were given to prevent a secondary septicemia. Twelve hours after hospitalization the pup expired. A necropsy was done, and the intestines demonstrated loss of intestinal villi and crypt necrosis. The virus isolation test was positive for canine parvovirus infection. The facility was thoroughly disinfected, and the owners were advised to disinfect their facility and vaccinate any future pups.

16. wk \_\_\_\_\_
17. acute \_\_\_\_\_
18. emesis \_\_\_\_\_
19. hemorrhagic \_\_\_\_\_

20. diarrhea \_\_\_\_\_
21. lethargy \_\_\_\_\_
22. anorexia \_\_\_\_\_
23. pyrexia \_\_\_\_\_
24. dehydrated \_\_\_\_\_
25. ausculted \_\_\_\_\_
26. stool \_\_\_\_\_
27. lymphopenia \_\_\_\_\_
28. dx \_\_\_\_\_
29. canine \_\_\_\_\_
30. enteritis \_\_\_\_\_
31. IV \_\_\_\_\_
32. secondary \_\_\_\_\_
33. septicemia \_\_\_\_\_
34. expired \_\_\_\_\_
35. necropsy \_\_\_\_\_
36. intestinal villi \_\_\_\_\_
37. crypt \_\_\_\_\_
38. disinfected \_\_\_\_\_



# CHAPTER 7

## NULL AND VOID

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify the major organs and tissues of the urinary system
- Describe the major functions of the urinary system
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms relating to diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the urinary system

### FUNCTIONS OF THE URINARY SYSTEM

The urinary system's main responsibility is the removal of wastes from the body. The **urinary** (yoo-rih-nār-ē) **system** removes wastes from the body by constantly filtering blood. The major waste product of protein metabolism is **urea** (yoo-rē-ah), which is filtered by the kidney and used in some diagnostic tests to determine the health status of the kidney.

In addition to filtering wastes, the urinary system also maintains proper balance of water, electrolytes, and acids in body fluids and removes excess fluids from the body. Maintaining a proper balance of water, electrolytes, and acids allows the body to have a stable internal environment. This stable internal environment is called **homeostasis** (hō-mē-ō-stā-sihs), and it involves continually adjusting to conditions to maintain a relatively constant internal environment.

One part of the urinary system, the kidney, also produces hormones and affects the secretory rate of other hormones.

**Urin/o** and **ur/o** are combining forms meaning urine or pertaining to the urinary organs.



## STRUCTURES OF THE URINARY SYSTEM

The structures of the normal urinary system include a pair of kidneys, a pair of ureters, a single urinary bladder, and a single urethra (Figure 7-1).

Urine is formed in the kidneys, flows through the ureters to the urinary bladder, is stored in the urinary bladder, and flows through the urethra and outside the body.

### Kidney

Kidneys are located **retroperitoneally** (reh-trō-peh-rih-tō-nē-ah-lē), which means that they are located behind the lining of the abdominal cavity or outside the peritoneal cavity. One kidney sits on each side of the vertebral column below the diaphragm. **Ren/o** (Latin for kidney) and **nephro** (Greek for kidney) are combining forms for kidney. Ren/o (the Latin form) is used

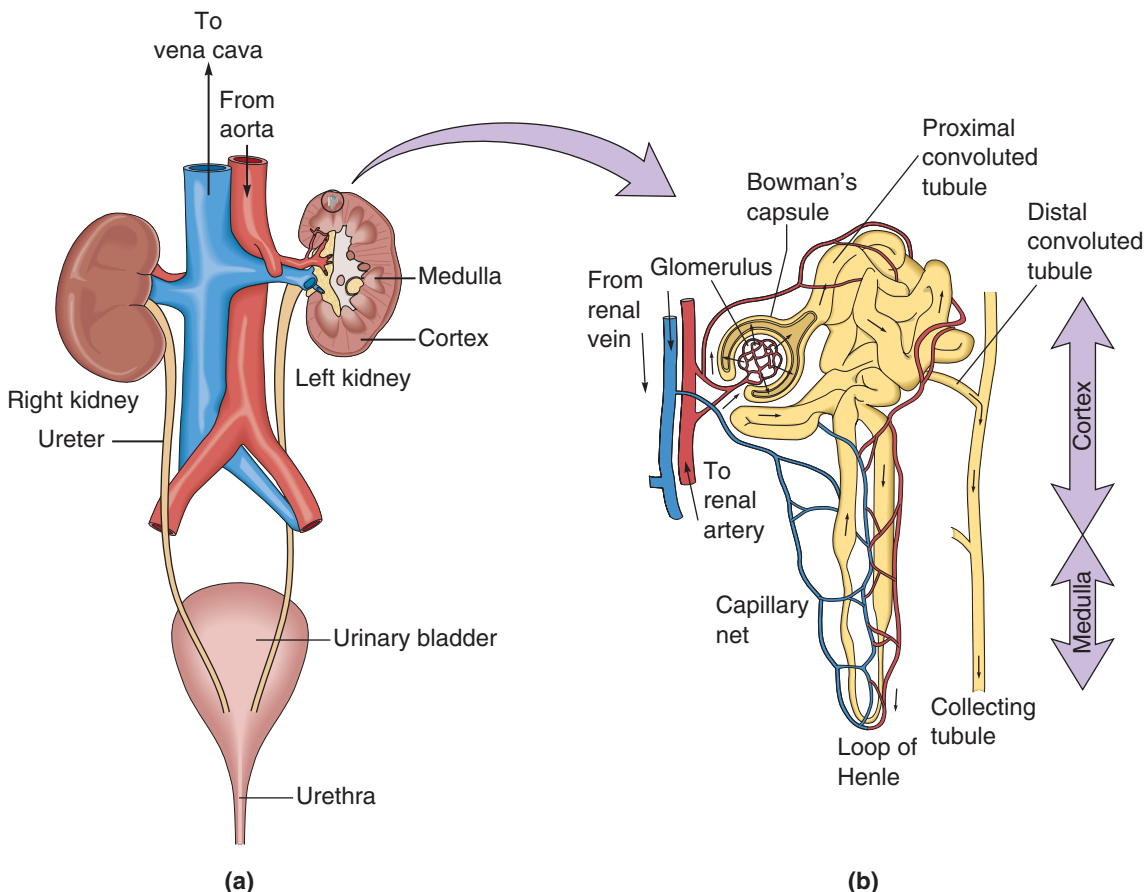
as an adjective, as in *renal pelvis* and *renal disease*. Nephro/o (the Greek term) tends to be used to describe pathologic conditions and surgical procedures, as in *nephritis* and *nephrectomy*.

Blood flows into each kidney through the renal artery and leaves the kidney via the renal vein. Filtration of waste products by the kidney depends on this blood flow; therefore, blood pressure can affect the rate at which filtration takes place.

Each kidney has two layers that surround the renal pelvis. The outer layer of the kidney is known as the **cortex** (kōr-tehckz). **Cortic/o** means outer region and is used to describe the outer region of many organs. The **medulla** (meh-doo-lah) of the kidney is the inner layer. **Medull/o** means middle or inner portion and is used to describe the middle or inner region of many organs. The cortex contains the majority of the nephron, and the medulla contains most of the collecting tubules.

The **nephron** (nehf-rohn) is the functional unit of the kidney. The nephron consists of the glomerulus, Bowman's capsule, a proximal convoluted tubule, a loop of Henle, a distal convoluted tubule, and a collecting duct. The nephrons form urine by the processes of filtration, reabsorption, and secretion. Filtration occurs in the glomerulus; reabsorption occurs in the proximal convoluted tubule, loop of Henle, and collecting tubule; and secretion occurs in the distal convoluted tubule (Table 7-1).

The **glomerulus** (glō-mər-yoo-luhs) is a cluster of capillaries surrounded by Bowman's capsule. The combining form for



**Figure 7-1** (a) Structures of the urinary tract. (b) Structures of a nephron.

**Table 7-1 Parts of the Nephron**

<b>glomerulus</b>	cluster of capillaries that filter blood
<b>Bowman's capsule</b>	cup-shaped structure that contains the glomerulus
<b>proximal convoluted tubules</b>	hollow tubes located between Bowman's capsule and loops of Henle that are involved in reabsorption
<b>loop of Henle</b>	U-shaped turn in the convoluted tubule of the kidney located between the proximal and distal convoluted tubules that is involved in reabsorption; has ascending and descending loop
<b>distal convoluted tubules</b>	hollow tubes located between the loops of Henle and the collecting tubules that are involved in secretion
<b>collecting tubules</b>	hollow tubes that carry urine from the cortex to the renal pelvis

glomerulus is **glomerul/o**, which means to wind into a ball, which is what the glomerulus looks like microscopically. The plural form of glomerulus is **glomeruli** (glō-mər-yoo-li).

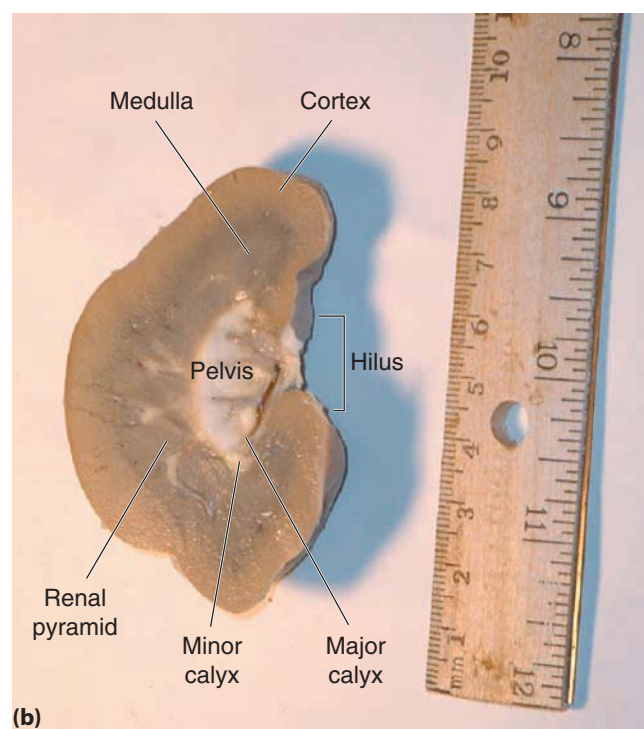
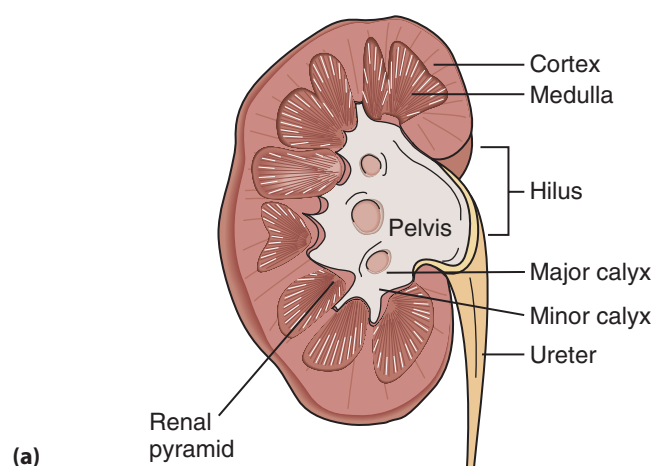
The **renal pelvis** is the area of the kidney where the nephrons collect before entering the ureters. The combining form for renal pelvis is **pyel/o**. The renal pelvis collects urine from the **calyces** (kā-lah-sēz), which are irregular cuplike spaces that collect urine from the kidney. **Calyx** (kā-lihcks) is the singular form of *calyces*.

Each kidney has a concave depression called the **hilus** (hī-luhs) that serves as the point of attachment of the renal blood vessels, nerves, and ureter (Figures 7-2a and b). The hilus is located on the medial surface of the kidney and gives some kidneys their bean shape. Not all species have kidneys that are bean-shaped. Cattle have lobulated kidneys (and no renal pelvis), and the right kidney of horses is heart-shaped (Figure 7-3).



### Descriptive structural terms of the kidney

- **distal** = farthest from midline
- **proximal** = closest to midline
- **convoluted** (kohn-vō-lūt-ehd) = rolled or coiled
- **cortex** = outer
- **medulla** = middle or inner
- **hilus** = point of attachment or depression
- **calyx** or **calix** = cuplike organ
- **ascending** (ā-sehnd-ihng) = moving upward or cranially
- **descending** (dē-sehnd-ihng) = moving downward or caudally



**Figure 7-2** (a) Structures of the kidney. (b) Sectioned sheep kidney.



**Figure 7-3** External appearance of a bovine kidney.

## Ureters

The **ureters** (yoo-rē-tərz) are a pair of narrow tubes that carry urine from the kidneys to the urinary bladder. The combining form for ureter is **ureter/o**. The ureters enter the urinary bladder at the **trigone** (trig-ōn). *Trigone* comes from the Greek term meaning triangle. The trigone of the urinary bladder is a triangular portion at the base of that organ where the three angles are marked by the two ureteral openings and one urethral opening.

## Urinary Bladder

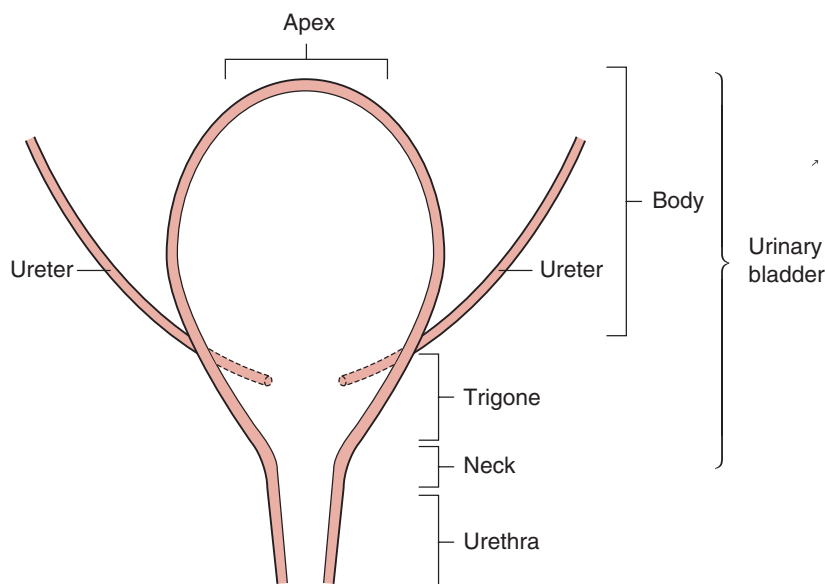
The **urinary bladder** (yoo-rihn-ār-ē blah-dər) is a singular hollow muscular organ that holds urine. **Cyst/o** is the combining form for urinary bladder. The urinary bladder is very elastic, and its shape and size depend on the amount of urine it is holding. The flow of urine into the urinary bladder enters from the ureters at such an angle that it serves as a natural valve to

control backflow. The flow of urine out of the urinary bladder to the urethra is controlled by **sphincters** (sfhngk-tərz). Sphincters are ringlike muscles that close a passageway (Figure 7-4).

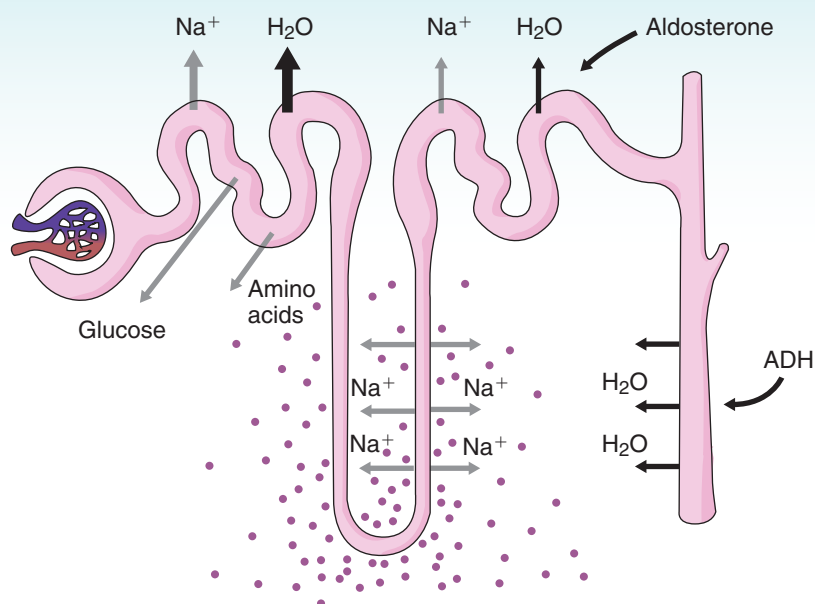


### Five words, one meaning?

The terms **urination** (yoo-rih-nā-shuhn), **excretion** (ehcks-krē-shuhn), **voiding** (voy-dihng), **elimination** (eh-li-mā-nā-shuhn), and **micturition** (mihck-too-rih-shuhn) have been used to describe the act of excreting urine. Actually, the terms *excretion*, *elimination*, and *voiding* mean elimination of a substance and can be used in other body systems. The term *urination* means the elimination of urine from the body. The term *micturition* means the elimination of urine from the body; however, it implies voluntary control of the sphincter muscles of the urinary tract. This voluntary control of voiding urine is learned and implies a more intelligent form of animal life.



**Figure 7-4** Divisions of the urinary bladder. The divisions of the urinary bladder include the apex (cranial free end), the body (central main part), the trigone (triangular portion where ureters enter the urinary bladder), and the neck (constricted portion that joins the urethra).



**Figure 7-5** The effects of the hormones aldosterone and ADH on the nephron.



### Urinary system hormones

Hormones that affect or are produced by the urinary system include the following:

- **erythropoietin** (ē-rihth-rō-poy-ē-tihn) = hormone produced by the kidney that stimulates red blood cell production in the bone marrow. Also pronounced ē-rihth-rō-pō-ih-tihn.
- **antidiuretic** (ahn-tih-dī-yoo-reht-ihck) = hormone released by the posterior pituitary gland that suppresses urine formation by reabsorbing more water; abbreviated as **ADH**.
- **aldosterone** (ahl-dah-stār-own) = hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex that regulates electrolyte balance via the reabsorption of sodium (Figure 7-5).

### Urethra

The **urethra** (yoo-rē-thrah) is a tube extending from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body. **Urethr/o** is the combining form for urethra. The external opening of the urethra is

the **urethral meatus** (yoo-rē-thrahl mē-ā-tuhs), or urinary meatus. The combining form **meat/o** means opening.

In females, the only function of the urethra is to transport urine from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body. In males, the urethra transports urine from the urinary bladder and reproductive fluids from the reproductive organs out of the body.

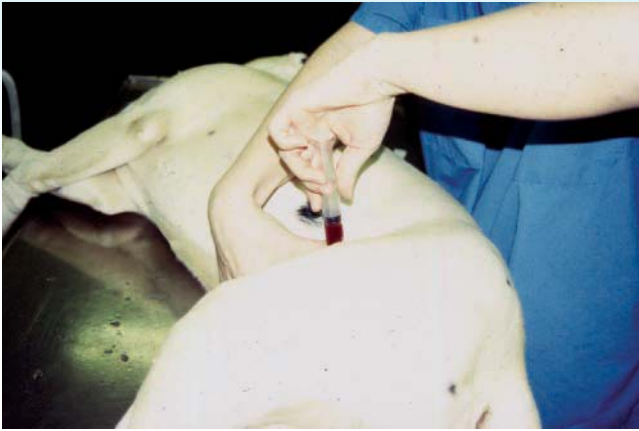
## URINE

The end product of renal filtration of wastes is urine. The process of urine production is **uopoiesis** (yoo-rō-pō-ē-sihs). The suffix **-poiesis** means formation. Normal urine of most species is clear and pale yellow in color. The suffix for color is **-chrome**. However, some species may have normal urine that is **turbid** (tər-bihd), or cloudy, and may be brown, white, or another color. Sometimes the color of urine depends on the diet (as in rabbits) or the reproductive cycle. Urine color also can reflect hydration status. In dehydrated animals, urine is more concentrated and therefore a deeper shade of yellow. Urine also has a pH, which depends on species and diet. Herbivores tend to have basic urine (a higher pH), whereas carnivores tend to have acidic urine (a lower pH). Through dietary management, urine pH can be manipulated to treat or prevent disease.

## TEST ME: URINARY SYSTEM

Diagnostic procedures performed on the urinary system include the following:

- **cystocentesis** (sihs-tō-sehn-tē-sihs) = surgical puncture of the urinary bladder, usually to collect urine. A cystocentesis usually is performed with a needle and syringe (Figure 7-6).

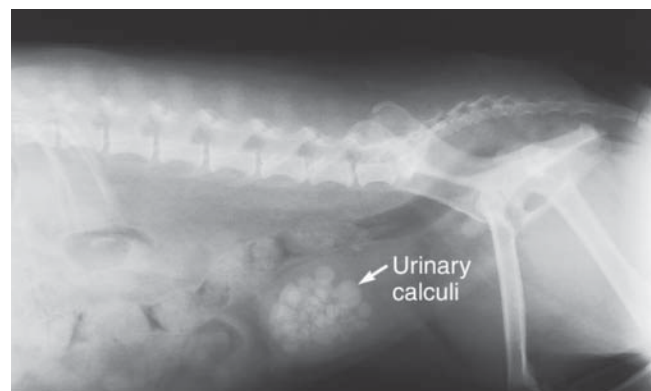


**Figure 7-6** Cystocentesis in a dog. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital.)

- **cystography** (sihs-tohg-rah-fē) = radiographic study of the urinary bladder after contrast material has been placed in the urinary bladder via a urethral catheter. The contrast material used in the urinary bladder is water-soluble. Cystography can be single-contrast, when one contrast material is used, or double-contrast, when more than one contrast material is used. Double-contrast cystography is a radiographic study of the urinary bladder after air and contrast material have been placed in the urinary bladder via a urethral catheter. A **cystogram** (sihs-tō-grahm) is the radiographic film of the urinary bladder after contrast material has been placed in the urinary bladder via a urethral catheter. **Retrograde** (reh-trō-grād) means going backward and can be used to describe the path that contrast material takes. If the contrast material goes in reverse order of how urine normally flows in the body, it is referred to as retrograde.
- **cystoscopy** (sihs-tohs-kō-pē) = visual examination of the urinary bladder using a fiberoptic instrument. A **cystoscope** (sihs-toh-skōp) is the fiberoptic instrument used to access the interior of the urinary bladder.
- **intravenous pyelogram** (ihn-trah-vē-nuhs pī-eh-lō-grahm) = radiographic study of the kidney (especially the renal pelvis) and ureters in which a dye is injected into a vein to define structures more clearly. The urinary bladder also may be visualized better with an intravenous pyelogram. It is abbreviated IVP (Figure 7-7).
- **pneumocystography** (nū-mō-sihs-tohg-rah-fē) = radiographic study of the urinary bladder after air has been placed in the bladder via a urethral catheter.
- **radiography** (rā-dē-ohg-rah-fē) = imaging of internal structures that is created by exposing specialized film to X-rays. A **scout film** is a plain X-ray made without the use of contrast material (Figure 7-8).



**Figure 7-7** IVP in a dog. Contrast material outlines the renal pelvis in this radiograph. Some contrast material also is present in the urinary bladder. (Courtesy of University of Wisconsin Veterinary Teaching Hospital—Radiology.)

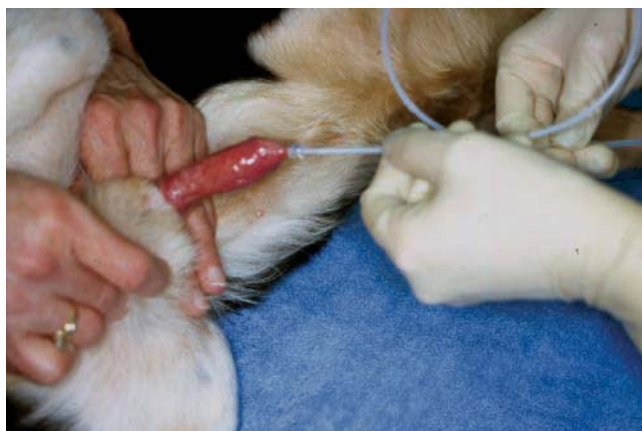


**Figure 7-8** Radiograph of the urinary bladder. Urinary calculi in the canine urinary bladder are seen on this lateral scout radiograph. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital.)

- **retrograde pyelogram** (reh-trō-grād pī-eh-lō-grahm) = radiographic study of the kidney and ureters in which a contrast material is placed directly in the urinary bladder.
- **urinalysis** (yoo-rih-nahl-ih-sihs) = examination of urine components. It is abbreviated UA. Urinalyses can tell us about pH (hydrogen ion concentration that indicates acidity or alkalinity), leukocytes, erythrocytes, protein, glucose, specific gravity (measurement that reflects the amount of wastes, minerals, and solids in urine), and other factors (Table 7–2, Table 7–3, and Figure 7–9).
- **urinary catheterization** (kahth-eh-tār-ih-zā-shuhn) = insertion of a tube through the urethra into the urinary bladder (usually to collect urine). A **catheter** (kahth-eh-tār) is the hollow tube that is inserted into a body cavity to inject or remove fluid (Figure 7–10).



**Figure 7–9** Urinalysis. Chemical properties of urine, such as pH, glucose, ketones, and bilirubin, are tested with a dipstick.



**Figure 7–10** Urinary catheterization in a male dog. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

**Table 7–2 Descriptive Terms for Urine and Urination**

<b>albuminuria</b> (ahl-bū-mihn-yoo-rē-ah)	presence of the major blood protein in urine
<b>anuria</b> (ah-nū-rē-ah)	complete suppression of urine production
<b>bacteriuria</b> (bahck-tē-rē-yoo-rē-ah)	presence of bacteria in urine
<b>crystalluria</b> (krihs-tahl-yoo-rē-ah)	urine with naturally produced angular solid of definitive form (crystals)
<b>dysuria</b> (dihs-yoo-rē-ah)	difficult or painful urination
<b>glucosuria</b> (gloo-kohs-yoo-rē-ah)	glucose (sugar) in urine
<b>glycosuria</b> (gli-kohs-yoo-rē-ah)	glucose (sugar) in urine
<b>hematuria</b> (hēm-ah-toor-ē-ah)	blood in urine
<b>ketonuria</b> (kē-tō-nū-rē-ah)	presence of ketones in urine (ketones are produced during increased fat metabolism)
<b>nocturia</b> (nohck-too-rē-ah)	excessive urination at night
<b>oliguria</b> (ohl-ih-goo-rē-ah)	scanty or little urine
<b>pollakiuria</b> (pōl-lahck-ē-yoo-rē-ah)	frequent urination
<b>polyuria</b> (pohl-ē-yoo-rē-ah)	excessive urination
<b>proteinuria</b> (prō-tēn-yoo-rē-ah)	presence of proteins in urine
<b>pyuria</b> (pī-yoo-rē-ah)	pus in urine
<b>stranguria</b> (strahng-yoo-rē-ah)	slow or painful urination

**Table 7-3 Urine Test Strips: Common Tests and Significance**

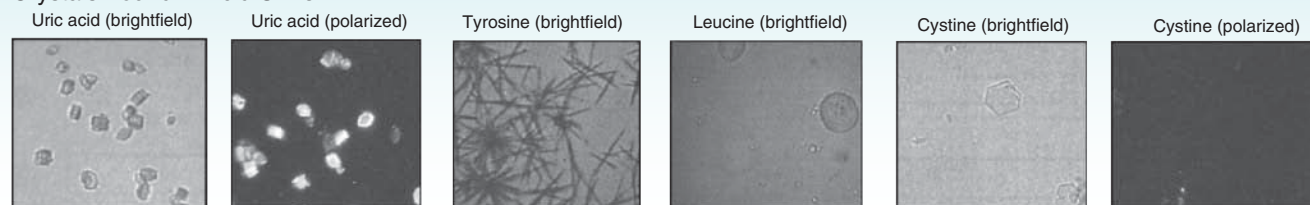
Test	Significance
<b>Urobilinogen</b>	This test is used more commonly in human medicine to evaluate liver disease or the breakdown of red blood cells. This test is less useful in veterinary medicine. (The test strips used are designed for human urinalysis.)
<b>Glucose</b>	This test is used to screen for diabetes mellitus. Diabetics have elevated blood sugar. The kidneys are unable to conserve all the sugar once the level becomes too high. The test is also used to monitor diabetics once treatment has been started.
<b>Ketones</b>	In dogs and cats, the presence of ketones is typical of an animal with uncontrolled diabetes mellitus. Ketones result when metabolism is shifted from carbohydrates to lipids.
<b>Bilirubin</b>	Aged red blood cells are removed from the circulation in organs such as the spleen. Bilirubin is formed in the breakdown process of hemoglobin. (Normally bilirubin is cleared from the blood by the liver and excreted in bile). Bilirubin is found in the urine in liver disease or excessive blood cell breakdown.
<b>Protein</b>	Proteins are large molecules that are not normally filtered into the urine. Protein in the urine can be present with a disease of the glomerulus (making it leaky) or with inflammation of the urinary tract (such as a bladder infection). A small amount of protein may normally be detected in very concentrated urine.
<b>Blood</b>	The test strip detects occult blood (i.e., blood that cannot be visibly seen in the urine). Blood can be present in diseases that cause inflammation of the urinary tract, much like protein. Bladder infections, stones, tumors, and trauma (e.g., hit by car) can all cause blood to be present in the urine. Bleeding disorders may also cause the test to be positive.
<b>pH</b>	Urine pH is influenced by diet and disease states in the body. Acidic pH is typical in animals with a meat diet or with acidosis (the kidney attempting to rid the body of excess acid). Basic or alkaline pH is typical in animals with a cereal grain diet, some urinary tract infections, and alkalosis in the body.

## PATHOLOGY: URINARY SYSTEM

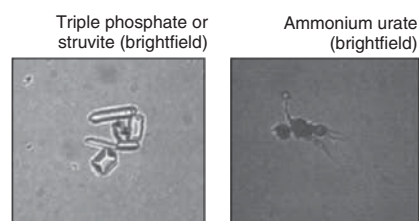
Pathologic conditions of the urinary system include the following:

- **azotemia** (ā-zō-tē-mē-ah) = presence of urea or other nitrogenous elements in the blood.
- **calculus** (kahl-kyoo-luhs) = abnormal mineral deposit. Urine may contain crystals that remain in solution in urine. Stones, calculi, and liths are formed when crystals precipitate and form solids. **Lith/o** is the combining form for stone or calculus, and **-lith** is the suffix for stone or calculus. When used in relationship to the urinary system, *calculus* is modified to *urinary calculus*, *lith* is modified to *urolith*, and *stones* is modified to *urinary stones* or *kidney stones* to clarify which system is involved.
- **casts** (kahstz) = fibrous or protein materials found in the urine with renal disease or another abnormality (Figure 7-11).
- **crystals** (krihs-tahlz) = naturally produced angular solid of definitive form (Figure 7-11).
- **cystalgia** (sihs-tahl-jē-ah) = urinary bladder pain = **cystodynia** (sihs-tō-dihn-ē-ah).
- **cystitis** (sihs-ti-tihs) = inflammation of the urinary bladder.
- **cystocele** (sihs-tō-sēl) = displacement of the urinary bladder through the vaginal wall.
- **epispadias** (ehp-ih-spā-dē-uhs) = abnormal condition in which the urethra opens on the dorsum of the penis.
- **feline lower urinary tract disease** = common disease of cats in which cystitis, urethritis, and crystaluria are found; formerly called feline urologic syndrome (FUS). In male cats, urethral obstruction is commonly associated with this disease, abbreviated FLUTD.
- **glomerulonephritis** (glō-mər-yoo-lō-nehf-rī-tihs) = inflammation of the kidney involving the glomeruli.

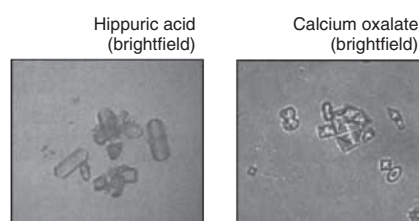
## Crystals Found in Acid Urine



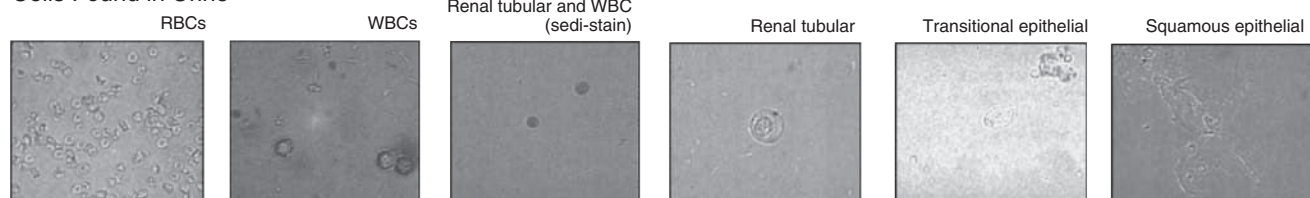
## Crystals Found in Alkaline Urine



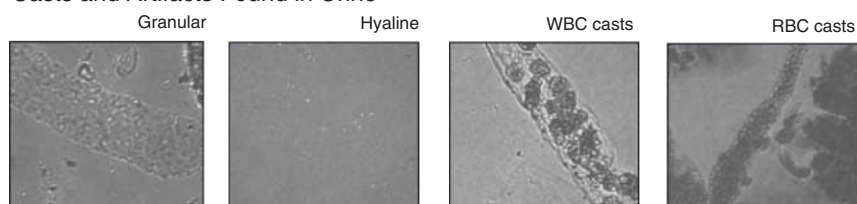
## Crystals Found in Acid, Neutral, and Alkaline Urine



## Cells Found in Urine



## Casts and Artifacts Found in Urine

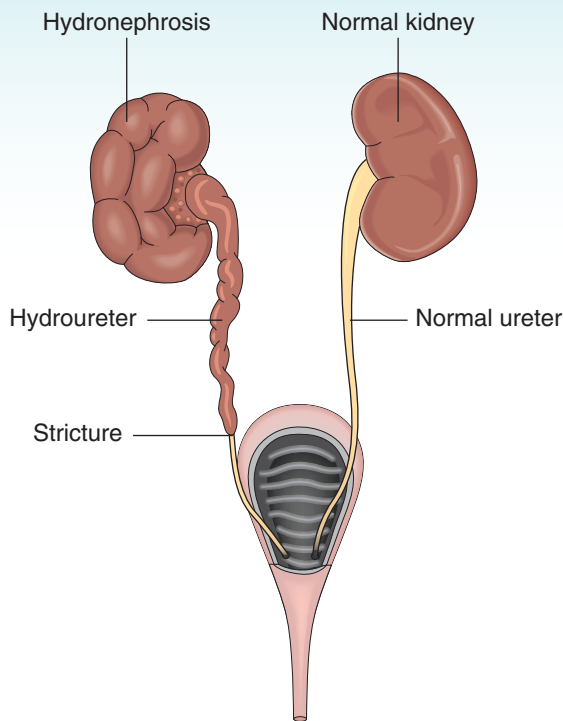


## Bacteria, Fungi, and Parasites Found in Urine



Figure 7-11 Crystals, cells, and casts found in urine.

- **hydronephrosis** (hī-drō-nehf-rō-sihs) = dilation of the renal pelvis as a result of an obstruction to urine flow (Figure 7-12).
- **hydroureter** (hī-drō-yoo-rē-tār) = distention of the ureter with urine caused by any blockage.
- **hypospadias** (hī-pō-spā-dē-uhs) = abnormal condition in which the urethra opens on the ventral surface of the penis.
- **inappropriate urination** (ihn-ah-prō-prē-ət yoo-rihn-ā-shuhn) = eliminating urine at the wrong time or in the wrong place.
- **incontinence** (ihn-kohn-tih-nehns) = inability to control excretory functions. The term *urinary* is applied in front of this term to refer to the inability to control urine.
- **interstitial cystitis** (ihn-tār-stihsh-ahl sihs-tī-tihs) = inflammation within the wall of the urinary bladder.
- **-lithiasis** (lih-thi-ah-sihs) = suffix meaning the presence of stones or calculi, as in nephrolithiasis (disorder characterized by the presence of kidney stones), urolithiasis (disorder characterized by the presence of urinary bladder stones), and ureterolithiasis (disorder characterized by the presence of stones in the ureters).
- **nephrectasis** (neh-frehck-tah-sihs) = distention of the kidneys. **Distention** means enlargement, and the suffix **-ectasis** means distention or stretching.
- **nephritis** (neh-frī-tihs) = inflammation of the kidneys.
- **nephrolith** (nehf-rō-lihth) = kidney stone or renal calculus.



**Figure 7-12** Hydroureter and hydronephrosis caused by urethral stricture.

- **nephromalacia** (nehf-rō-mah-lā-shē-ah) = abnormal softening of the kidney.
- **nephropathy** (neh-frohp-ah-thē) = disease of the kidneys.
- **nephrosclerosis** (nehf-rō-skleh-rō-sihs) = abnormal hardening of the kidney.
- **nephrosis** (neh-frō-sihs) = abnormal condition of the kidney(s).
- **prerenal** (prē-rē-nahl) and **postrenal** (pōst-rē-nahl) = before and after the kidney, respectively. These terms are used to describe other pathologic conditions, such as prerenal azotemia and postrenal obstruction.
- **prolapse** (prō-lahps) = downward displacement of a body organ. The suffix **-ptosis** means drooping or dropping down, and **nephroptosis** (neh-frohp-tō-sihs) may be used to describe a prolapsed kidney.
- **pyelitis** (pī-eh-lī-tihs) = inflammation of the renal pelvis.
- **pyelonephritis** (pī-eh-lō-nehf-rī-tihs) = inflammation of the renal pelvis and kidney.
- **renal failure** (rē-nahl fāl-yər) = inability of the kidneys to function. Renal failure may be **acute** (ā-kūt) or **chronic** (krohn-ihck). Acute means occurring suddenly or over a short period. Acute renal failure (ARF) is the sudden onset of the inability of the kidneys to function. ARF may be caused by a **nephrotoxin** (nehf-rō-tohcks-ihn), which is a poison having destructive effects on the kidneys. Chronic means having a longer onset. Chronic renal failure (CRF) is the progressive onset of the inability of the kidneys to function. Signs



**Figure 7-13** Uroliths.

of renal failure may include **polyuria** and **polydipsia** (pohl-ē-dihp-sē-ah); polyuria/polydipsia is abbreviated PU/PD. Polyuria is elevated urine production, and polydipsia is excessive thirst or drinking. Animals with renal failure may undergo **diuresis** (dī-yoo-rē-sihs). Diuresis is the elevated excretion of urine. Diuresis may be produced by fluid therapy or drug therapy. Drugs that increase urine production are **diuretics**.

- **renal infarction** (rē-nahl ihn-fahrck-shuhn) = obstruction of blood flow to the kidney(s).
- **uremia** (yoo-rē-mē-ah) = waste products in the blood. Uremia is seen with many types of kidney disease.
- **ureterectasis** (yoo-rē-tər-ehck-tah-sihs) = distention of the ureter.
- **ureterolith** (yoo-rē-tər-ō-lihth) = stone in the urethra.
- **urethritis** (yoo-rē-thrī-tihs) = inflammation of the urethra.
- **urethrostenosis** (yoo-rē-thrō-steh-nō-sihs) = stricture of the urethra. A **stricture** (strihck-shər) is an abnormal band of tissue narrowing a passage.
- **urinary retention** (yoo-rih-nār-ē rē-tehn-shuhn) = inability to completely empty the urinary bladder.
- **urinary tract infection** (yoo-rihn-ār-ē trahckt ihn-fehck-shuhn) = invasion of microorganisms in the urinary system, which results in local cellular injury; abbreviated UTI.
- **urolith** (yoo-rō-lihth) = urinary bladder stone; also called **cystolith** (sihs-tō-lihth) (Figure 7-13).

## PROCEDURES: URINARY SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the urinary system include the following:

- **cystectomy** (sihs-tehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of all or part of the urinary bladder.

- **cystopexy** (sihs-tō-pehck-sē) = surgical fixation of the urinary bladder to the abdominal wall.
- **cystoplasty** (sihs-tō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the urinary bladder.
- **cystostomy** (sihs-tohs-tō-mē) = surgical creation of a new opening between the skin and urinary bladder.
- **cystotomy** (sihs-tah-tō-mē) = surgical incision into the urinary bladder.
- **dialysis** (dī-ahl-ih-sihs) = procedure to remove blood waste products when the kidneys are no longer functioning. **Peritoneal dialysis** is the removal of blood waste products by fluid exchange through the peritoneal cavity; **hemodialysis** (hēm-ō-dī-ahl-ih-sihs) is the removal of blood waste products by filtering blood through a machine.
- **lithotripsy** (lihth-ō-trihp-sē) = destruction of stone using ultrasonic waves traveling through water (the suffix **-tripsy** means to crush).
- **nephrectomy** (neh-frehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a kidney.
- **nephropexy** (nehf-rō-pehcks-sē) = surgical fixation of a kidney to the abdominal wall.
- **ureterectomy** (yoo-rē-tər-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the ureter.
- **ureteroplasty** (yoo-rē-tər-ō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the ureter.
- **urethrostomy** (yoo-re-throhs-tō-mē) = surgical creation of a permanent opening between the urethra and the skin. **Perineal urethrostomy** (pər-ih-nē-ahl yoo-rē-throhs-tō-mē) is the surgical creation of a permanent opening between the urethra and the skin between the anus and scrotum.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The combining forms for kidney are
  - a. ren/o and ureter/o
  - b. ren/o and nephr/o
  - c. ren/o and cyst/o
  - d. ren/o and periren/o
2. Inflammation of the kidney is
  - a. nephrosis
  - b. nephroptosis
  - c. nephritis
  - d. nephropathy
3. Insertion of a hollow tube through the urethra into the urinary bladder is called
  - a. cystocentesis
  - b. cystogram
  - c. urinary injection
  - d. urinary catheterization
4. The hormone produced by the kidney that stimulates red blood cell production in the bone marrow is
  - a. ADH
  - b. erythropoietin
  - c. aldosterone
  - d. renerythogenin
5. Retrograde means
  - a. going backward
  - b. going forward
  - c. going sideways
  - d. repeating
6. Examination of the components of urine is a
  - a. urinoscopy
  - b. cystoscopy
  - c. urinalysis
  - d. cystolysis
7. Inflammation of the urinary bladder is
  - a. cystitis
  - b. urolithiasis
  - c. urology
  - d. uritis
8. UTI is the abbreviation for
  - a. urinary treatment for infection
  - b. urinary tract infection
  - c. urinary tract inflammation
  - d. urinary trigone infarct

9. Stable internal environment is
- stricture
  - status
  - homeostasis
  - isostatic
10. Diuretics are chemical substances that
- cause painful urination
  - cause complete cessation of urine
  - cause nighttime urination
  - cause an increase in urine production
11. The triangular part of the urinary bladder is the
- calyx
  - hilus
  - medulla
  - trigone
12. The term for production of urine is
- urinogenesis
  - uropoiesis
  - turbidity
  - renogenesis
13. Inability to control excretory functions is
- inappropriate urination
  - urinary retention
  - incontinence
  - urethritis
14. The medical term for excessive urination is
- pyuria
  - polyuria
  - polydipsia
  - pollakiuria
15. Oliguria means
- scanty or little urine
  - blood in urine
  - frequent urination
  - excessive urination
16. The term for frequent urination is
- scanty or little urine
  - dysuria
  - stranguria
  - pollakiuria
17. A surgical incision into the urinary bladder is known as
- cystectomy
  - cystotomy
  - cystopexy
  - cystostomy
18. The presence of urea or other nitrogenous elements in the blood is called
- uremia
  - diuresis
  - azotemia
  - proteinuria
19. Obstruction of blood flow to the kidney(s) is
- dialysis
  - azotemia
  - prerenal infarction
  - renal infarction
20. The term that means no urine production is
- diuresis
  - anuria
  - nocturia
  - hematuria

## Matching

Match the term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ bacteriuria	a. complete suppression of urine production
2. _____ glycosuria or glucosuria	b. difficult or painful urination
3. _____ nocturia	c. scanty or little urine
4. _____ proteinuria	d. excessive urination at night
5. _____ anuria	e. slow or painful urination
6. _____ oliguria	f. blood in urine
7. _____ albuminuria	g. frequent urination
8. _____ stranguria	h. presence of bacteria in urine
9. _____ polyuria	i. glucose (sugar) in urine
10. _____ pyuria	j. presence of ketones in urine
11. _____ pollakiuria	k. presence of proteins in urine
12. _____ ketonuria	l. presence of the major blood protein in urine
13. _____ crystalluria	m. pus in urine
14. _____ dysuria	n. increased urination
15. _____ hematuria	o. crystals in urine
16. _____ diuresis	p. pertaining to the outer portion of an organ
17. _____ calculus	q. stone
18. _____ cortical	r. inflammation of the urinary bladder
19. _____ erythropoietin	s. elevated urine excretion
20. _____ cystitis	t. hormone produced by the kidney that stimulates red blood cell production

## Fill in the Blanks

1. Urin/o and ur/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Ren/o and nephr/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Glycosuria and glucosuria mean \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Cystolith and urolith mean \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Excretion, elimination, and voiding mean \_\_\_\_\_.

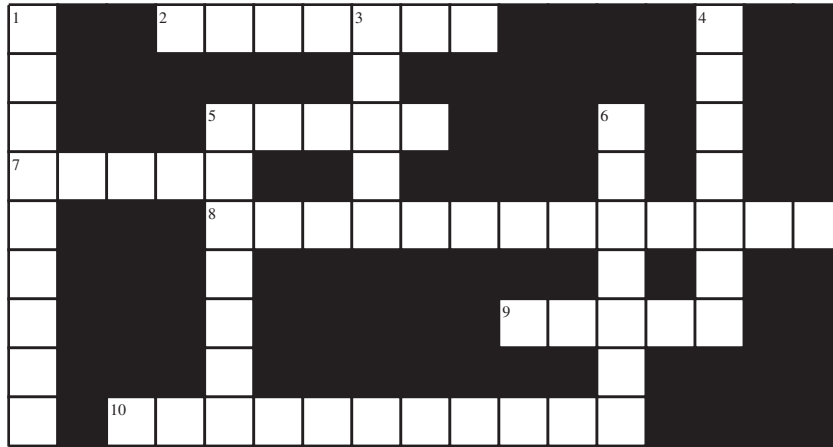
## Spelling

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |                                     |                |             |             |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. examination of urine components: | urinalanalysis | urinalysis  | urinealasis |
| 2. functional unit of the kidney:   | nephron        | nefron      | nephrene    |
| 3. constant internal environment:   | homostasis     | homeostasis | homeostatis |
| 4. excessive thirst:                | polydipsia     | polydypsia  | polydyspsia |
| 5. abnormal mineral deposit:        | calkulus       | kalkulus    | calculus    |

## CROSSWORD PUZZLES

### Urinary System Combining Forms Puzzle



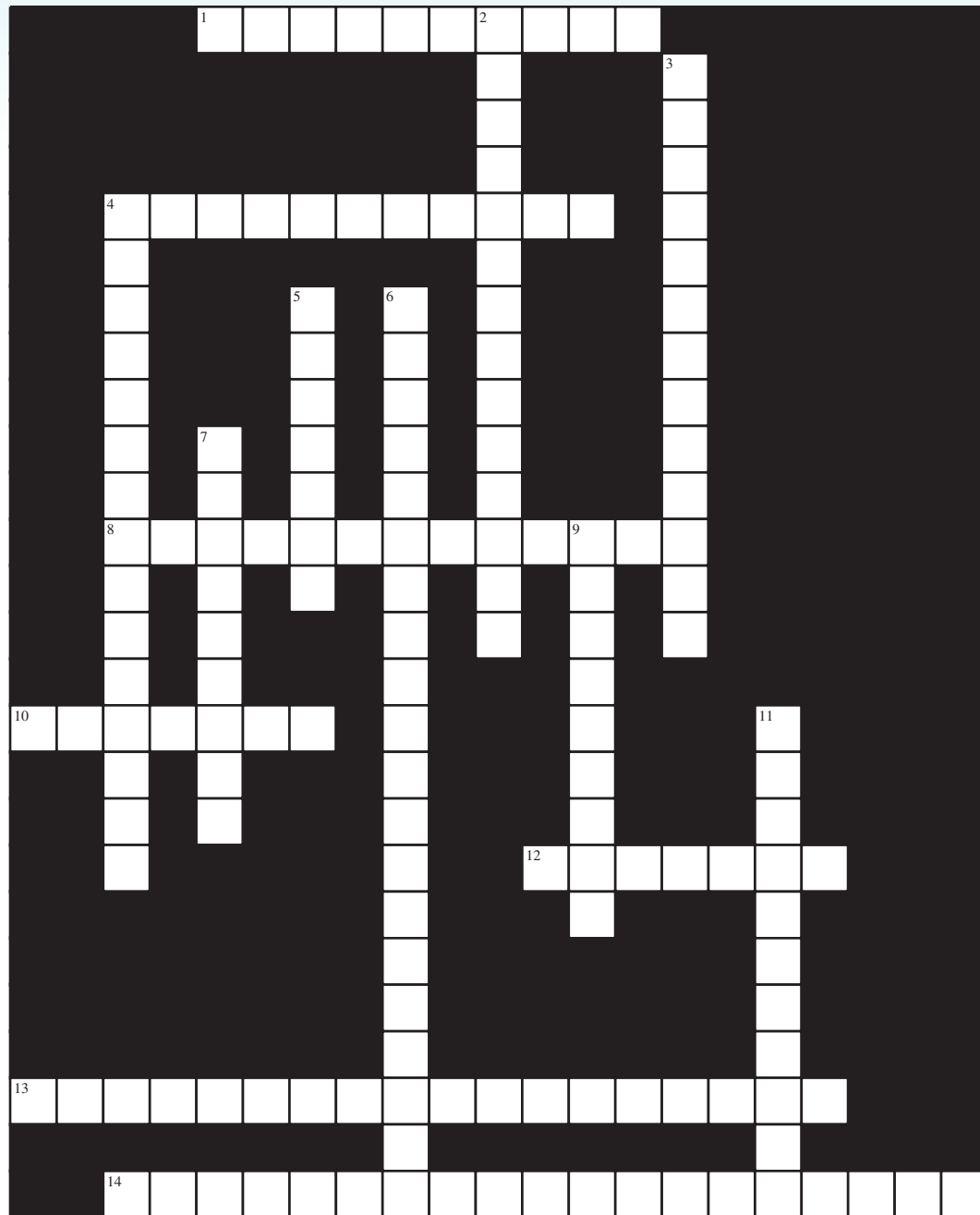
#### Across

- 2 combining form for inner or middle
- 5 combining form for urinary bladder
- 7 combining form for opening
- 8 combining forms for kidney
- 9 combining form for renal pelvis
- 10 combining forms for urine/urinary organs

#### Down

- 1 combining form for cluster of capillaries
- 3 combining form for stone/calculus
- 4 combining form for the tube that takes urine from the urinary bladder to the outside
- 5 combining form for outer
- 6 combining form for paired narrow tubes that are located between the kidneys and urinary bladder

## Disease Terms Puzzle

**Across**

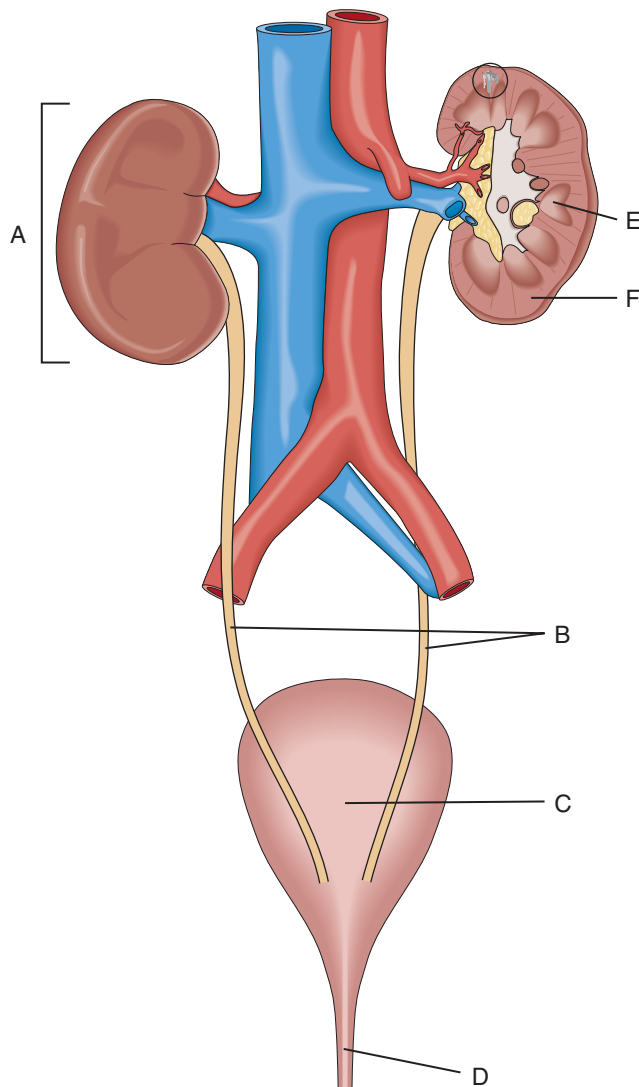
- 1 surgical fixation of the kidney to the abdominal wall
- 4 surgical removal of a kidney
- 8 surgical puncture of the urinary bladder (to remove fluid)
- 10 study of the urinary system
- 12 urinary bladder stone or calculus
- 13 inflammation of the kidney involving the cluster of capillaries
- 14 inability to control the urine

**Down**

- 2 inflammation of the renal pelvis and kidney
- 3 surgical repair of the hollow tube that connects the urinary bladder to the outside of the body
- 4 abnormal hardening of the kidney
- 5 functional unit of the kidney
- 6 surgical creation of a permanent opening between the hollow tube that connects the urinary bladder to the outside of the body and the skin between the anus and scrotum
- 7 surgical incision into the urinary bladder
- 9 abnormal band of tissue narrowing a passage
- 11 voluntary control of urination

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

Label the parts of the urinary system in Figure 7–14. Provide the combining forms for the parts labeled.



**Figure 7–14** Urinary system structures.

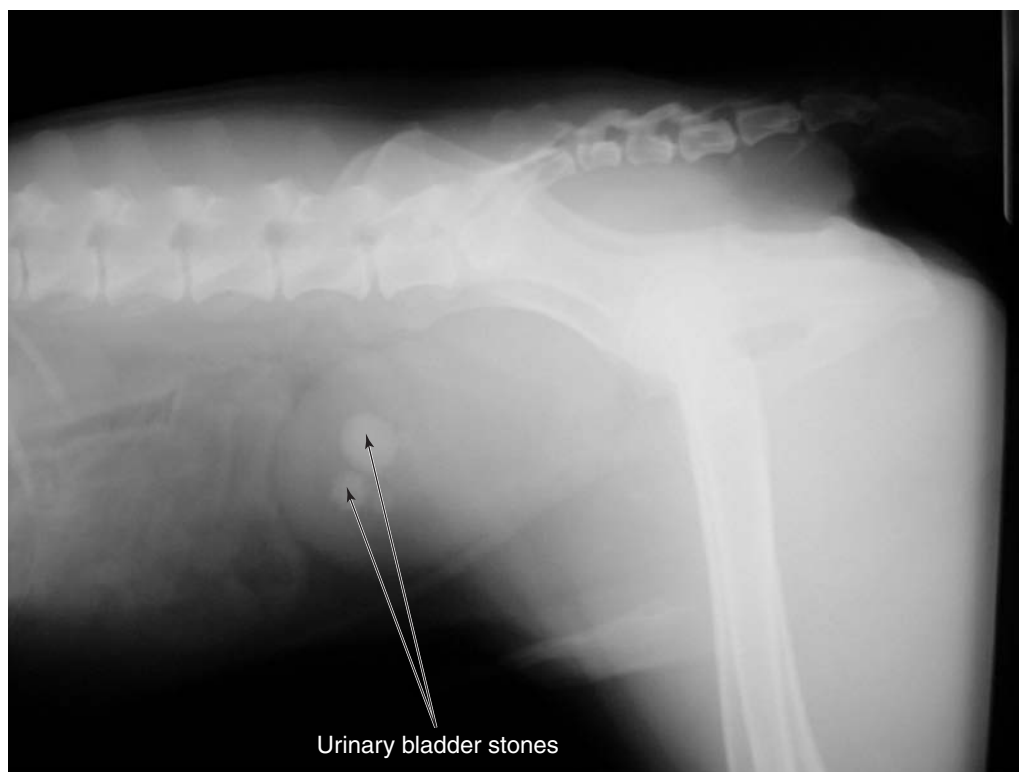
## CASE STUDIES

Supply the proper abbreviation or medical term for the lay terms and definitions underlined.

A 5-year-old male neutered springer spaniel was presented with difficulty urinating and blood in the urine. The veterinarian performed examination of the urine by breaking it into its components by inserting a needle in the urinary bladder and withdrawing urine.

The test revealed large numbers of erythrocytes and struvite crystals. Suspecting more than inflammation of the urinary bladder, the veterinarian took an X-ray of the dog's urinary bladder, and urinary bladder stones were detected (Figure 7–15). An incision into the urinary bladder was performed to remove the urinary stones, and the dog recovered uneventfully.

1. year \_\_\_\_\_
2. male neutered \_\_\_\_\_
3. difficulty urinating \_\_\_\_\_
4. blood in the urine \_\_\_\_\_
5. examination of the urine by breaking it into its components \_\_\_\_\_
6. inserting a needle in the urinary bladder and withdrawing urine \_\_\_\_\_
7. erythrocytes \_\_\_\_\_
8. inflammation of the urinary bladder \_\_\_\_\_
9. X-ray \_\_\_\_\_
10. urinary bladder stones \_\_\_\_\_
11. incision into the urinary bladder \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 7–15** Radiograph showing bladder stones.

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 2-yr-old M/N DLH cat was presented to the clinic for crying when urinating in the litter box. The owner stated that the cat had been inappropriately urinating on the carpet for the past few days but otherwise seemed normal. Upon examination, the cat was about 7% dehydrated, T = 102° F, HR = 180 bpm, and RR = panting. Heart and lungs auscultated normally. Abdominal palpation revealed cystomegaly. The urethra was red and swollen. When the cat was put in a litter box, he was straining but was unable to urinate. The cat was dx'd with urethral obstruction. The owner was informed of the emergency status of relieving the obstruction, and the cat was hospitalized. The cat was anesthetized using inhalant anesthesia via a mask, and a urinary catheter was passed and sutured to the perineum. IV fluids were administered to reverse the cat's dehydration. Urine was collected via the urinary catheter, and a UA was performed. The UA revealed a pH = 7.0, large amounts of blood in the urine, a large number of leukocytes in the urine, a specific gravity of 1.040, and large amounts of struvite crystals and bacteria in the urine. In addition to the urethral obstruction, the cat also had cystitis and was treated with antibiotics and a urinary acidifying diet. The cat was hospitalized until the urinary catheter was removed. The cat was discharged with its medication, and the owner was advised to have a recheck UA when the medication was completed.

12. M/N

---

13. DLH

---

14. inappropriately urinating

---

15. dehydrated

---

16. auscultated

---

17. cystomegaly

---

18. urethra

---

19. urinate

---

20. dx'd

---

21. urethral obstruction

---

22. anesthetized

---

23. inhalant anesthesia

---

24. urinary catheter

---

25. perineum

---

26. IV

---

27. UA

---

28. pH

---

29. leukocytes

---

30. specific gravity

---

31. struvite crystals

---

32. cystitis

---

A 2-yr-old milking cow was showing a decrease in milk production and weight loss over the past few weeks. She was off feed and restless according to the farmer. Upon arrival at the farm, the veterinarian noted that the cow was switching its tail, vital signs were normal, and the cow was polyuric. Hematuria was noted, and urine was collected for analysis. Rectal palpation revealed nephromegaly. A tentative diagnosis of pyelonephritis was made. Antibiotics were given to this cow, the cow's milk was pulled for antibiotic withdrawal times, and the farmer was advised to monitor the other cows for similar abnormalities. The veterinarian returned to the clinic and performed a UA, which showed a large amount of blood in the urine and rod-shaped bacteria on microscopic examination. The sample was sent in for bacterial culture and sensitivity to determine whether the cow had a *Corynebacterium renale* infection. *C. renale* infections may indicate a herd with subclinical infection, which would affect the treatment and hygiene practices on this farm.

33. cow

---

34. off feed

---

35. polyuric

---

36. hematuria

---

37. rectal palpation

---

38. nephromegaly

---

39. diagnosis

---

40. pyelonephritis

---

41. UA

---

42. culture and sensitivity

---



# CHAPTER 8

## HAVE A HEART

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify the structures of the cardiovascular system
- Differentiate between the types of blood vessels and describe their functions
- Describe the functions of the cardiovascular system
- Describe the flow of blood throughout the body
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce the terms related to the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the cardiovascular system

### FUNCTIONS OF THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

The cardiovascular system delivers oxygen, nutrients, and hormones to the various body tissues and transports waste products to the appropriate waste removal systems. Occasionally, the cardiovascular system is called the circulatory system; however, the circulatory system is divided into systemic circulation (blood flow to all parts of the body except the lungs) and pulmonary circulation (blood flow out of the heart through the lungs and back to the heart).



## STRUCTURES OF THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

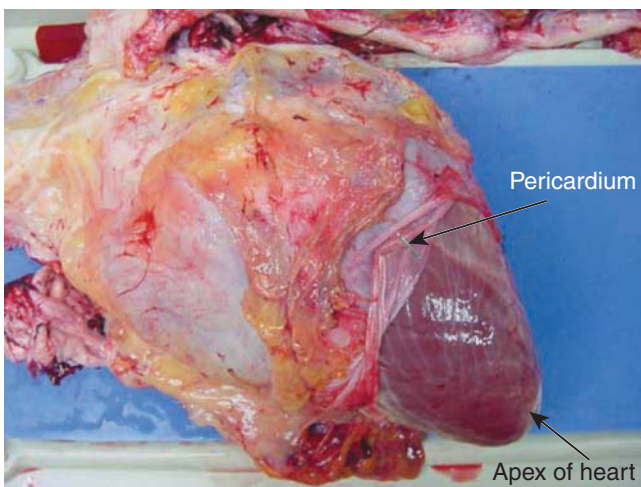
**Cardiovascular** (kahr-dē-ō-vahs-kyoo-lər) means pertaining to the heart and vessels (blood vessels in this context). There are three major parts of this system: the heart, the blood vessels, and the blood. Blood is discussed in Chapter 15.

### The Heart

The heart is a hollow muscular organ that provides the power to move blood through the body. The combining form for heart is **cardi/o**. The heart is located inside the **thoracic** (thō-rahs-ilhck) **cavity**, or **chest cavity**. The heart lies between the lungs in a cavity called the **mediastinum** (mē-dē-ahs-tī-nuhm). The mediastinum also contains the large blood vessels, trachea, esophagus, lymph nodes, and other structures.

### The Pericardium

Surrounding the heart is a double-walled membrane called the **pericardium** (pehr-ih-kahr-dē-uhm) (Figure 8–1). The two layers of the pericardium are the fibrous and serous. The **fibrous pericardium** is the tough external layer. The **serous layer** is the inner layer and is divided into two parts: the **parietal** (pahr-ī-ih-tahl) **layer** and the **visceral** (vihs-ər-ahl) **layer**. The parietal layer (in Latin, *parietal* means belonging to the wall) is the serous layer that lines the fibrous pericardium. The visceral layer (*viscus* is Latin for an organ) is the serous layer that lines the heart. The visceral layer also is called the **epicardium** (ehp-ih-kahr-dē-uhm). Between the two serous layers of the pericardium is a space called the **pericardial space**. **Pericardial fluid** is a liquid in the pericardial space. Pericardial fluid prevents friction between the heart and the pericardium when the heart beats.



**Figure 8–1** The pericardium is a double-walled membrane that surrounds the heart.

### Layers of the Heart Walls

The heart wall is made up of the following three layers (Figure 8–2):

- **epicardium** (ehp-ih-kahr-dē-uhm) = external layer of the heart; also part of the serous layer of the pericardium. The prefix **epi-** means upper.
- **myocardium** (mī-ō-kahr-dē-uhm) = middle and thickest layer of the heart; the actual heart muscle. The combining form **my/o** means muscle.
- **endocardium** (ehn-dō-kahr-dē-uhm) = inner layer of the heart; lines the heart chambers and valves. The prefix **endo-** means within.

### Blood Supply

Heart tissue beats constantly and must have a continuous supply of oxygen and nutrients and the prompt removal of waste. The problem is that it cannot fulfill these needs from the blood it is pumping. These needs are supplied by its own arteries, and its wastes are removed by its own veins. The arteries that serve the heart are known as the **coronary arteries** (kōr-oh-nār-ē ahr-tər-ēz) because they resemble a crown. **Coron/o** is the combining form meaning crown. The **coronary veins** remove waste products from the myocardium.

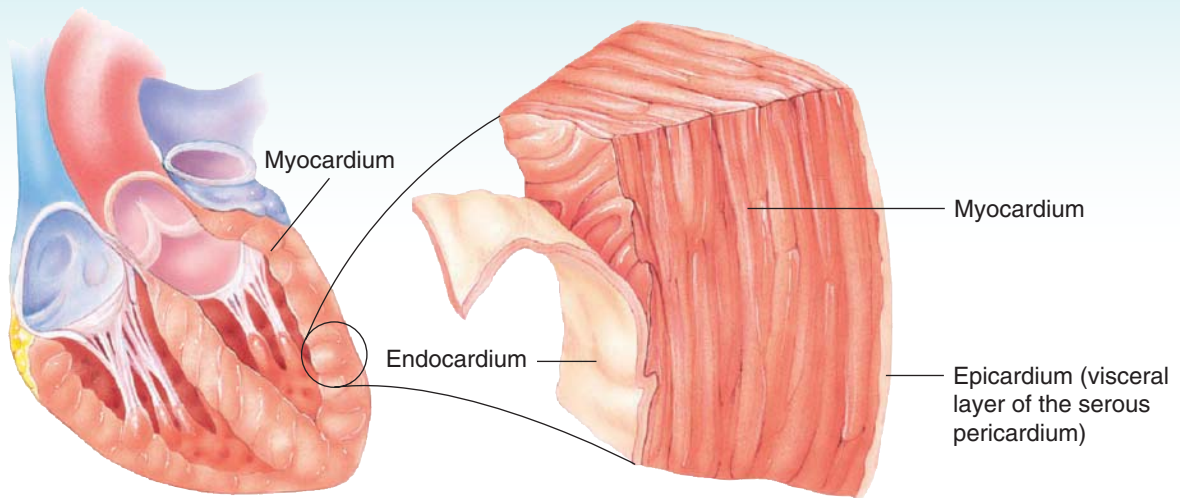
If the blood supply to the heart is disrupted, the myocardium cannot function. Disruption of blood to the myocardium may be caused by **coronary occlusion** (ō-kloo-shuhn). *Occlusion* means blockage. Coronary occlusion may lead to **ischemia** (ihs-kē-mē-ah), which is deficiency in the blood supply to an area. Ischemia can lead to **necrosis** (neh-krō-sihs), which is tissue death. The area of necrosis due to ischemia is called an **infarct** (ihnfahrckt) or **infarction** (ihn-fahrck-shuhn). An infarct is a localized area of necrosis caused by an interrupted blood supply.

### Chambers

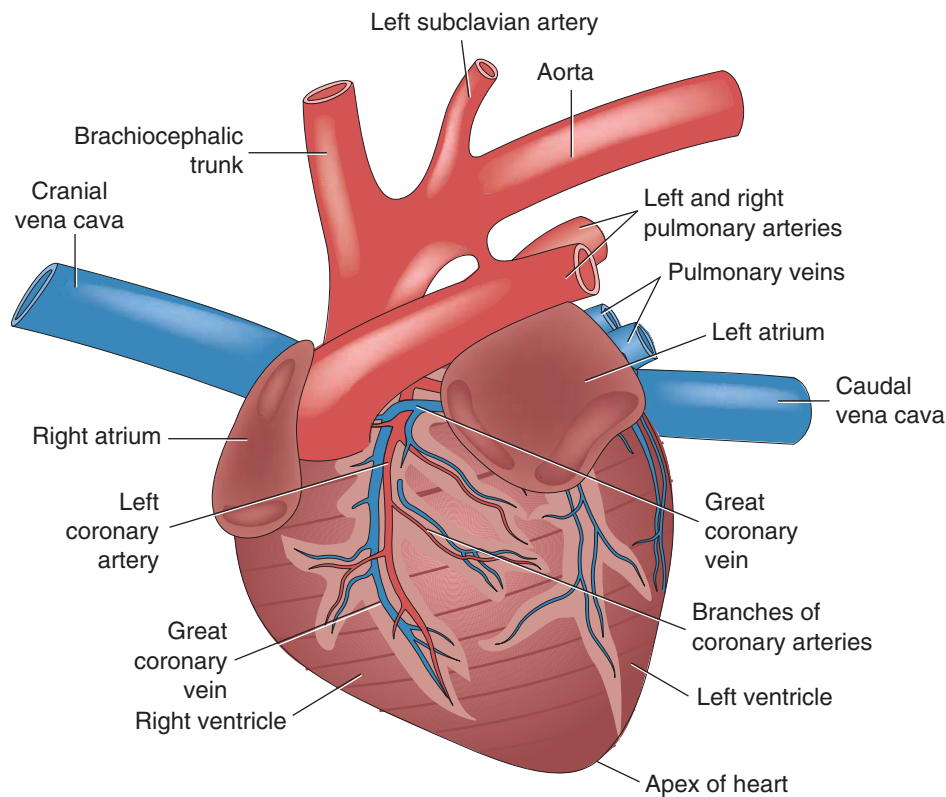
The heart is divided into right and left sides. The right and left sides are further subdivided into chambers. Mammalian and avian hearts are four-chambered; most reptile hearts have three chambers. The craniodorsal chambers of the heart are called the **atria** (ā-trē-ah); the singular form of *atria* is **atrium** (ā-trē-uhm). All vessels coming into the heart enter here. **Atri/o** is the combining form for atria. The left and right atria are separated by the **interatrial septum** (ihn-tər-ā-trē-ahl sehptuhm). A septum is a separating wall or partition.

The caudoventral chambers of the heart are **ventricles** (vehn-trih-kuhlz). **Ventricul/o** is the combining form for ventricle. The ventricles are separated from each other by the **interventricular septum**. The interventricular septum in reptiles is not complete, so the ventricles are open to each other and count as only one heart chamber. The ventricles are the pumping chambers of the heart, and all vessels leave the heart via the ventricles.

The narrow tip of the heart is called the **apex** (ā-pehcks) or cardiac apex (Figure 8–3).



**Figure 8-2** Layers of the heart.



**Figure 8-3** External heart structures of a canine heart (left lateral aspect).

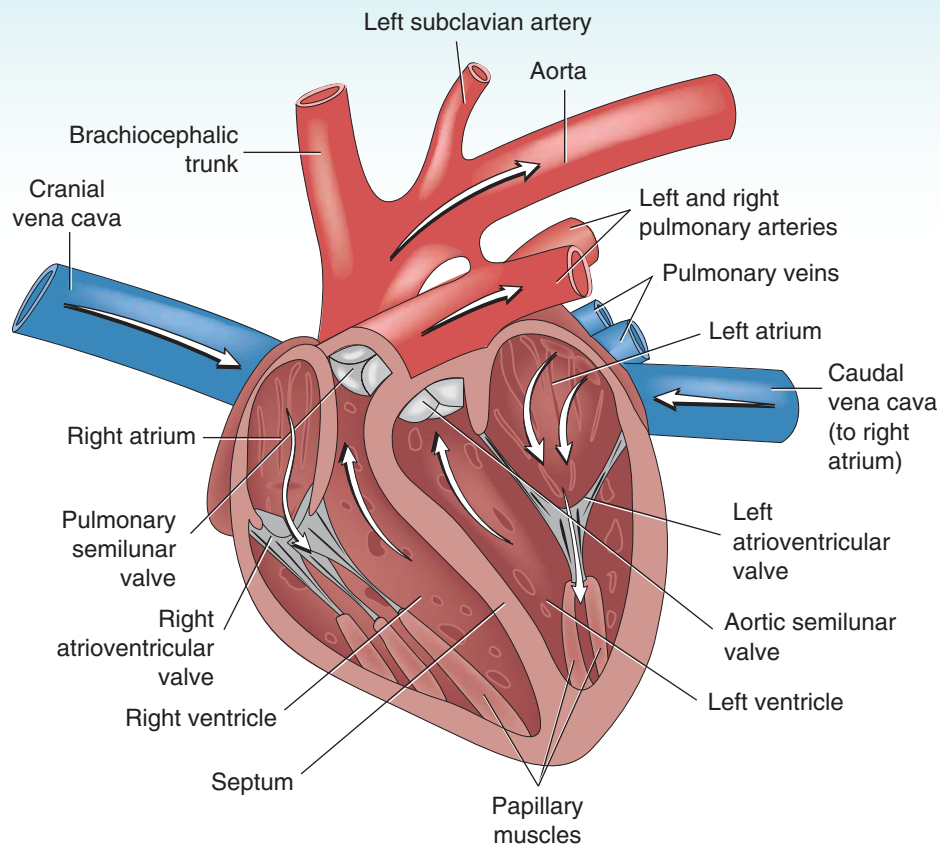
## Valves

Blood flow through the heart is controlled by valves (Figure 8-4 and Table 8-1). A **valve** (vahlv) is a membranous fold. The combining form for valve is **valv/o** or **valvul/o**. The four heart valves are as follows:

- **right atrioventricular valve** (ā-trē-ō-vehn-trihc-kyoo-lahr vahlv), or right AV valve. This valve controls the opening between the right atrium and right ventricle

(Figure 8-5). It also is called the **tricuspid valve** (trī-kuhs-pihd vahlv) because it has three points, or cusps (tri- = three; cusps = points).

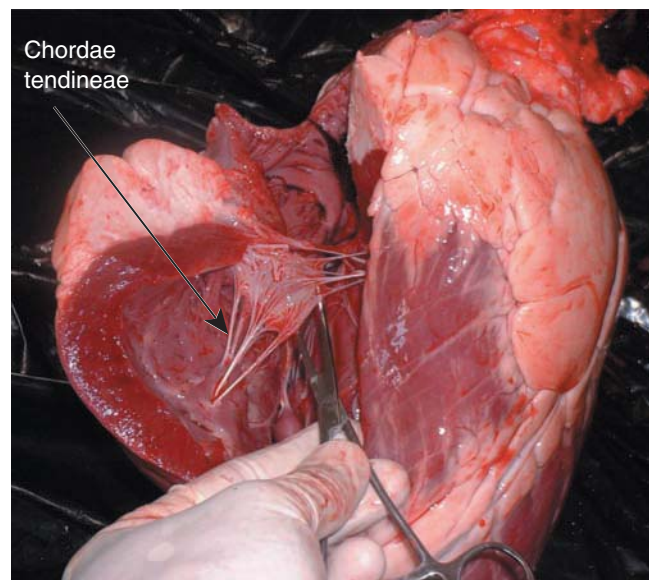
- **pulmonary semilunar valve** (puhl-mah-nār-ē seh-mē-loo-nahr vahlv) or pulmonary valve. This valve is located between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery and controls blood entering the lungs. *Semilunar* means half-moon, and this valve is shaped like a half-moon.



**Figure 8-4** Internal heart structures of a canine heart (left lateral aspect).

### Table 8-1 Blood Flow through the Heart

1. The right atrium receives blood from all tissues, except the lungs, through the cranial and caudal venae cavae. Blood flows from the right atrium through the tricuspid valve into the right ventricle. (This is systemic circulation.)
2. The right ventricle pumps blood through the pulmonary semilunar valve and into the pulmonary artery, which carries it to the lungs. (This is pulmonary circulation.)
3. The left atrium receives oxygenated blood from the lungs through the four pulmonary veins. The blood flows through the mitral valve into the left ventricle. (This is pulmonary circulation.)
4. The left ventricle receives blood from the left atrium. From the left ventricle, blood goes out through the aortic semilunar valve into the aorta and is pumped to all parts of the body except the lungs. (This is systemic circulation.)
5. Blood is returned by the venae cavae to the right atrium, and the cycle continues.



**Figure 8-5** Atrioventricular valve. The hemostat is under the leaf of the valve. AV valves attach to papillary muscles in the ventricles by connective tissue strings called chordae tendineae (kohr-dā tehn-dih-nā).

- **left atrioventricular valve** (ă-trē-ō-vehn-trihck-yoo-lahr vahlv), or left AV valve. This valve controls the opening between the left atrium and left ventricle. It also is called the **mitral valve** (mī-trahl vahlv) or **bicuspid** (bī-kuhs-pihd) because it has two points (bi- = two).
- **aortic semilunar valve** (ă-ōr-tihck sehm-ē-loo-nahr vahlv), or aortic valve. The aortic valve is located between the left ventricle and the aorta and controls blood entering the arterial system. It also is half-moon shaped.

## Rhythm

A rhythm is the recurrence of an action or a function at regular intervals. The heart's contractions are supposed to be rhythmic. The rate and regularity of the heart rhythm, called the **heart-beat**, are modified by electrical impulses from nerves that stimulate the myocardium. The heartbeat or cardiac cycle is an alternating sequence of relaxation and contraction of the heart chambers. **Cardiac output** is the volume of blood pumped by the heart per unit time. To effectively pump blood throughout the body, contraction and relaxation of the heart must be synchronized accurately. These electrical impulses, also called the conduction system, are controlled by the sinoatrial node, atrioventricular node, bundle of His, and Purkinje fibers (Figure 8–6).

The **sinoatrial node** (sī-nō-ă-trē-ahl nōd), or SA node, is located in the wall of the right atrium near the entrance of the superior vena cava. The SA node, along with atypical cardiac

muscle cells called **Purkinje** (pər-kihn-jē) **fibers**, establishes the basic rhythm of the heart and is called the pacemaker of the heart. Purkinje fibers are less developed in the atria and are usually associated with the ventricles.

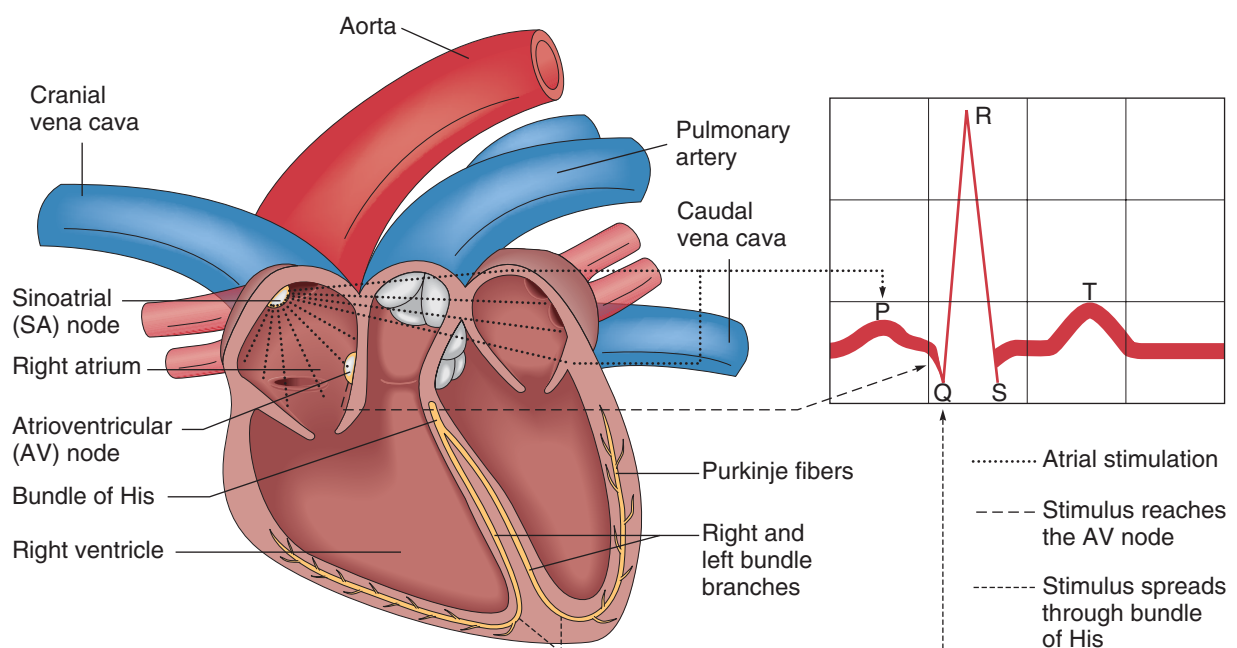
Electrical impulses from the SA node start waves of muscle contractions in the heart. The impulse in the right atrium spreads over the muscles of both atria, causing them to contract simultaneously. This contraction forces blood into the ventricles. Atrial contraction is called **atrial systole** (sihs-stohl-ē). **Inotropy** (ihn-ō-trōp-ē) is the term meaning force of contraction.

The electrical impulses from the SA node continue to travel to the **atrioventricular node** (ă-trē-ō-vehn-trihck-yoo-lahr nōd), or AV node. The AV node is located in the interatrial septum.

The AV node conducts impulses more slowly than the SA node does. This slower conduction of the AV node causes a pause after atrial contraction to allow the ventricles to fill with blood. The AV node transmits the electrical impulses to the bundle of His (also called the AV bundle).

The **bundle of His** (hihs) is located in the interventricular septum. The bundle of His continues on through the ventricle as ventricular Purkinje fibers, which carry the impulse through the ventricular muscle, causing the ventricles to contract. Ventricular contraction is called **ventricular systole**. Ventricular contraction forces blood into the aorta and pulmonary arteries.

The normal heart rhythm is called the **sinus rhythm** because it starts in the sinoatrial node. If the SA node does



**Figure 8–6** Conduction systems of the heart.

not function properly and is unable to send the impulse to the rest of the heart, other areas of the conduction system can take over and initiate a heartbeat. The resulting abnormal rhythm is called an **arrhythmia** (ā-rihth-mē-ah) or **dysrhythmia** (dihs-rihth-mē-ah) (Table 8–2). Anti-arrhythmic drugs are substances that control heartbeat irregularities.

## Electrical Activity

The electrical events in the conduction system can be visualized by wave movement on an **electrocardiogram** (ē-lehck-trō-kahr-dē-ō-grahm). An electrocardiogram, abbreviated ECG or EKG, is the record of the electrical activity of the myocardium. The ECG or EKG is a tracing that shows the changes in voltage and polarity (positive and negative) over time (Figure 8–7). The process of recording the electrical activity of the myocardium is **electrocardiography** (ē-lehck-trō-kahr-dē-ohg-rah-fē).



### What is systole?

**Systole** (sihs-tō-lē) is a term that generally means contraction, derived from the Greek word for drawing together (think systole = squeeze). However, the term *systole* is used to denote ventricular contraction. Remember that the atria and ventricles cannot contract together, although they follow in rapid succession.

**Diastole** (dī-ah-stō-lē) means expansion, derived from the Greek word for drawing apart (think diastole = dilate).

The term *diastole* is used to denote relaxation, or the time when the chambers are expanded. During diastole, the atria fill with blood. Then the atria contract, forcing blood into the ventricles, and the ventricles contract. If someone refers to systole and diastole without the modifiers *atrial* or *ventricular*, it is assumed that the person means ventricular contraction (systole) and ventricular relaxation (diastole).

## Table 8–2 Terms Relating to Rhythm

**palpitation** (pahl-pih-tā-shuhn) = heartbeat sensations that feel like pounding with or without irregularity in rhythm.

**fibrillation** (fih-brih-lā-shuhn) = rapid, random, and ineffective heart contractions.

**flutter** (fluht-tār) = cardiac arrhythmia in which atrial contractions are rapid but regular.

**bradycardia** (brā-dē-kahr-dē-ah) = abnormally slow heartbeat.

**tachycardia** (tahck-ē-kahr-dē-ah) = abnormally rapid heartbeat.

**paroxysm** (pah-ohck-sihzm) = sudden convulsion or spasm.

**normal sinus arrhythmia** = irregular heart rhythm resulting from variation in vagal nerve tone as a result of respiration (a nonpathologic arrhythmia).

**asystole** (ā-sihs-tō-lē) = without contraction or lack of heart activity; flat line on an ECG.

**syncope** (sihn-kō-pē) = temporary suspension of respiration and circulation.

**gallop** (gahl-ohp) = low-frequency vibrations occurring during early diastole and late diastole.



### Loading

The workload of the heart is divided into preload and afterload. **Preload** (prē-lōd) is the ventricular end-diastolic volume, or the volume of blood entering the right side of the heart.

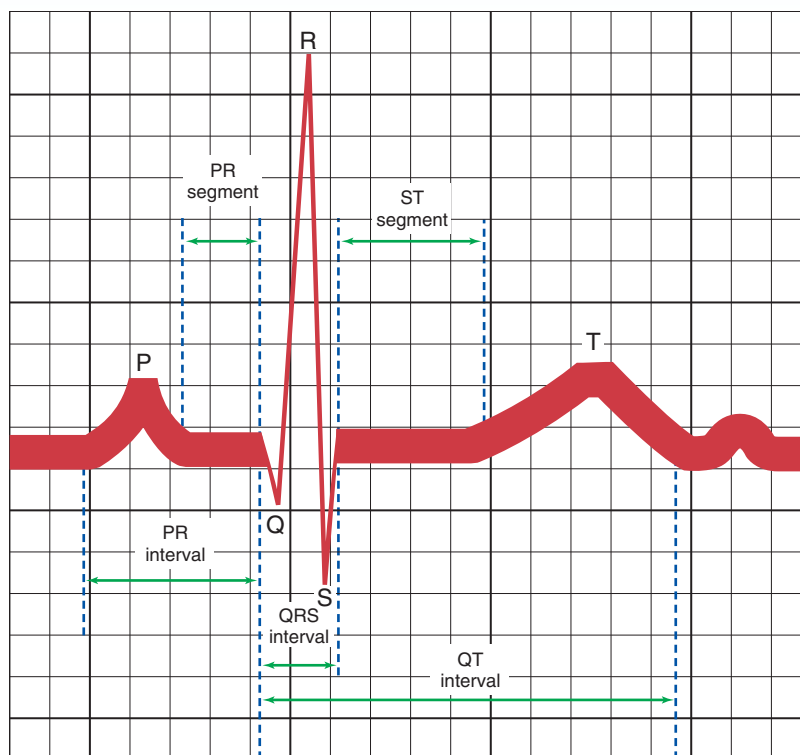
**Afterload** (ahf-tār-lōd) is the impedance to ventricular emptying presented by aortic pressure.

Preload problems usually are associated with right-sided heart disease, whereas afterload usually is associated with left-sided heart disease. Drugs used to treat heart disease may alter preload or afterload.

Electrocardiography produces a tracing that represents the variations in electric potential caused by excitation of heart muscle and is detected at the body surface. These variations in electric potential are detected by conductors called **leads** (lēdz) (Figure 8–8).

## Heart Sounds

**Auscultation** (aws-kuhl-tā-shuhn) is the act of listening to body sounds and usually involves the use of a stethoscope. A **stethoscope** (steth-ō-skōp) is an instrument used to listen; however, when the term is broken down into its basic



**Figure 8–7** Anatomy of an electrocardiogram. The first deflection, the P wave, represents excitation (depolarization) of the atria. The PR interval represents conduction through the atrioventricular valve. The QRS complex results from excitation of the ventricles. The QT interval represents ventricular depolarization and repolarization. The ST segment represents the end of ventricular depolarization to the onset of ventricular repolarization. The T wave results from recovery (repolarization) of the ventricles.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 8–8** (a) Electrocardiography in a dog. (b) ECG monitor displaying the electrical activity of the heart. [(a) Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital. (b) Courtesy Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.]

components, **stetho-** means chest and **-scope** means instrument to visually examine or monitor. Traditionally, the stethoscope is considered to be a monitoring device of the chest area, but it also is used to auscultate other body parts.

When auscultating the heart, one hears a lubb-dubb sound. The lubb is the first sound heard (called the first heart sound) and is caused by closure of the AV valves. The dubb is the second sound heard (called the second heart sound) and is caused by closure of the semilunar valves. Systole, or ventricular contraction, occurs between the first and second heart sounds, whereas diastole, or ventricular relaxation, occurs between the second and first heart sounds.

A **heart murmur** (mər-mər) is an abnormal sound associated with the turbulent flow of blood. A murmur may be caused by a leak in a valve. A leak results in the inability of the valve to perform at the proper level, and this inability to perform at the proper level is called **insufficiency** (ihn-sah-fihsh-ehn-sē). Narrowing of a valve also may result in turbulent blood flow, causing a murmur.

Murmurs are described as systolic (the swooshing noise occurring between the first and second heart sounds) or diastolic (the swooshing noise occurring between the second and first heart sounds). Murmurs may be further described as **holosystolic** (hō-lō-sihs-stohl-ihck) or **pansystolic** (pahn-sihs-stohl-ihck), meaning that they occur during the entire ventricular contraction phase. The prefixes **holo-** and **pan-** mean all. These different phases in which a murmur occurs aid in identification of the cause of the murmur.

For example, murmurs heard during systole may be atrioventricular insufficiency or aortic or pulmonic valve **stenosis** (stehn-ō-sihs), or narrowing. Murmurs heard during diastole may be atrioventricular stenosis or aortic or pulmonic valve insufficiency.

In addition, murmurs can be described as crescendo and decrescendo. **Crescendo** (kreh-shehn-dō) **murmurs** are abnormal swooshing cardiac sounds that progressively increase in loudness, and **decrescendo** (deh-kreh-shehn-dō) **murmurs** progressively decrease in loudness.

The location of the murmur also is helpful in determining its cause. Where the murmur is heard the loudest is the point of maximal intensity (PMI). The PMI usually is located at the auscultation site of the defective valve. Occasionally, murmurs may result in vibrations felt on palpation of the chest. This vibration felt on palpation is called **thrill** (thrihl).

Clicks also may be heard during an examination. Clicks may be a sign of mitral insufficiency or may be of unknown origin. Other sounds that may be heard are split heart sounds (heartbeat sounds that are divided), crackles (which may be associated with movement or respiratory sounds), and rumbles (usually caused by shivering).



### What are we hearing?

When auscultating the heart, there are various things on which to focus. One is heart rate, or the speed at which the heart is beating. Tachycardia and bradycardia can affect how blood is transported through the body. Abnormal sounds such as murmurs, clicks, and splits also should be assessed. Rhythm must be checked as well. Auscultation should be done in conjunction with pulse detection. The pulse is determined by feel and can be categorized as strong, weak, or thready. A pulse deficit occurs when the ventricles contract without enough force to propel blood to the periphery.

## Blood Vessels

There are three major types of blood vessels: arteries, veins, and capillaries. The combining forms for vessel are **angi/o** and **vas/o**. These combining forms generally are used in reference to blood vessels but may be used to describe other types of vessels as well.

The **lumen** (loo-mehn) is the opening in a vessel through which fluid flows. The diameter of the lumen is affected by **constriction** (kohn-strihckt-shuhn), or narrowing of the vessel diameter, and **dilation** (dī-lā-shuhn), or widening of the vessel diameter. **Vasoconstrictors** (vahs-ō-kohn-strihck-tərz or vās-ō-kohn-strihck-tərz) are things that narrow a vessel's diameter; **vasodilators** (vahs-ō-dī-lāt-ərz or vās-ō-dī-lāt-ərz) are things that widen a vessel's diameter.

The **hilus** (hī-luhs) is the depression where vessels and nerves enter an organ.

The pumping action of the heart drives blood into the **arteries** (ahr-tər-ēz). An artery is a blood vessel that carries blood away from the heart. Blood in the arteries usually is oxygenated (the main exception is the pulmonary artery) and is bright red. The combining form for artery is **arteri/o**.

The **aorta** (ā-ōr-tah) is the main trunk of the arterial system that begins from the left ventricle of the heart. The combining form for aorta is **aort/o**. After leaving the left ventricle, the aorta arches dorsally and then progresses caudally. The aorta is

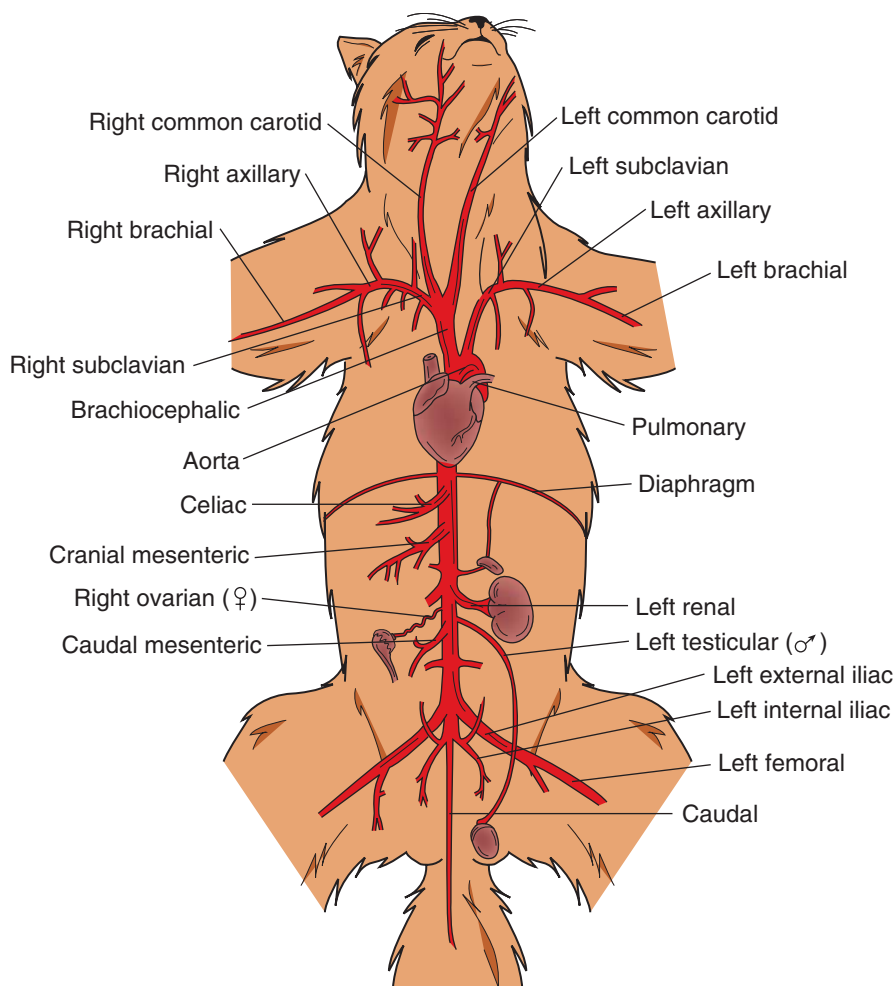
located ventral to the vertebrae. The aorta branches into other arteries that supply many muscles and organs of the body. The branches from the aorta usually are named for the area in which they supply blood. For example, the **celiac** (sē-lē-ahck) **artery** supplies the liver, stomach, and spleen (**celi/o** is derived from the Greek term *koilia*, meaning belly); the **renal arteries** supply the kidneys; and the **ovarian** (or **testicular**) **arteries** supply the ovaries (or testicles). Occasionally, arteries are named for their location, as in the **subclavian** (suhb-klā-vē-ahn) **artery**, which is located under the collarbone (Figure 8–9).

The **arterioles** (ahr-tē-rē-ōlz) are smaller branches of arteries. The combining form **arter/i** means vessel that carries blood away from the heart, and the suffix **-ole** means small. Arterioles are smaller and thinner than arteries and carry blood to the capillaries.

The **capillaries** (kahp-ih-lār-ēz) are single-cell-thick vessels that connect the arterial and venous systems. Blood flows rapidly through arteries and veins; however, blood flow is slower through the capillaries due to their smaller diameter. This slower flow allows time for the diffusion of oxygen, nutrients, and waste

products. Blood in the alveolar capillaries picks up oxygen and gives off carbon dioxide. In the rest of the body, oxygen diffuses (passes through) from the capillaries into tissue and carbon dioxide diffuses from tissue into the capillaries. Blood flow through tissues is called **perfusion** (pər-fū-shuhn). An indicator of perfusion is **capillary refill time**, or CRT. A CRT can be obtained by applying pressure to mucous membranes and timing how long it takes for the pink color to return (Figure 8–10).

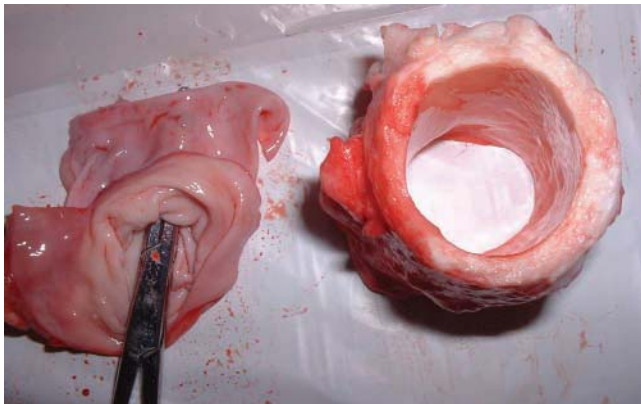
Capillaries connect with **venules** (vehn-yoolz), which are tiny blood vessels that carry blood to the veins. **Veins** (vānz) form a low-pressure collecting system that returns blood to the heart. Veins have thinner walls and are less elastic than arteries, which have muscular walls to allow contraction and expansion to move blood throughout the body (Figure 8–11). Because the veins do not have muscular walls, contractions of the skeletal muscles cause the blood to flow through the veins toward the heart. Veins also have valves that permit blood flow toward the heart and prevent blood from flowing away from the heart (Figure 8–12). The combining forms for vein are **ven/o** and **phleb/o**.



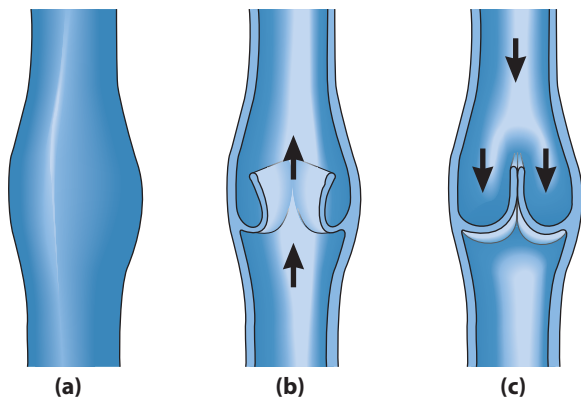
**Figure 8–9** Major arteries in the cat.



**Figure 8-10** The dog's mucous membranes are checked for color and capillary refill time.



**Figure 8-11** Cross section of a large vein (left) and artery (right). Compare the differences between the thin-walled vena cava on the left and the thick-walled aorta on the right.



**Figure 8-12** Veins contain valves to prevent the backward flow of blood. (a) External view of the vein shows wider area of the valve. (b) Internal view with the valve open as blood flows through. (c) Internal view with the valve closed.

Vessels are used to distribute substances throughout the body. Many drugs are injected into vessels and transported to different areas of the body. Examples include the following:

- **intravenous** (ihn-trah-vē-nuhs) = within a vein. **Perivascular** (pehr-ih-vahs-kyoo-lahr), or around the vessels, is an undesired route of administration and usually is an error of intravenous injection.
- **intra-arterial** (ihn-trah-ahr-tēr-ē-ahl) = within an artery.

Similar to arteries, veins usually are named for the area from which they take blood away. The **jugular** (juh-gyoo-lahr) **vein** drains the head and neck area (*jugulum* is Latin for throat), **femoral veins** drain the legs, and **renal veins** drain the kidneys. An exception to this naming structure is the azygous vein. The **azygous** (ahz-ih-gihs) **vein** is a single vein that drains the chest wall and adjacent structures (the prefix **a-** means without, and the combining form **zygon** means yoke or pair) and is named based on the fact that it is not paired in the body (Figure 8-13).

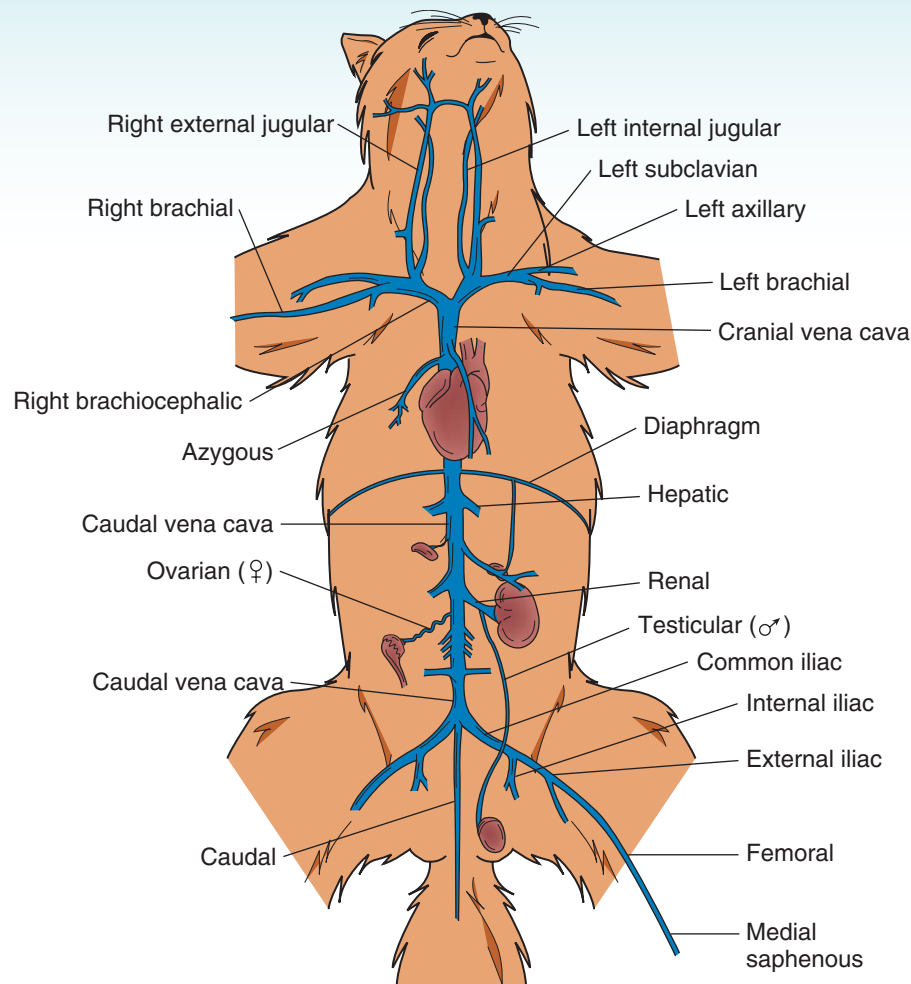
## Pressure

**Blood pressure** is the tension exerted by blood on the arterial walls. It is determined by the energy produced by the heart, the elasticity of the arterial walls, and the volume and **viscosity** (vihs-koh-siht-ē) (resistance to flow) of the blood. The **pulse** (puhlz) is the rhythmic expansion and contraction of an artery produced by pressure.

Blood pressure is measured by a **sphygmomanometer** (sfihg-mō-mah-nohm-eh-tər), which measures the amount of pressure exerted against the walls of the vessels.

**Sphygm/o** is the combining form for pulse, **man/o** is the combining form for pressure, and the suffix **-meter** means device. **Systolic** (sihs-stohl-ihck) **pressure** occurs when the ventricles contract and is highest toward the end of the stroke output of the left ventricle. **Diastolic** (dī-ah-stohl-ihck) **pressure** occurs when the ventricles relax and is lowest late in ventricular dilation.

The combining form **tensi/o** means pressure or tension and is used when describing blood pressure. **Hypertension** is high blood pressure (**hyper-** = excessive or above normal), and **hypotension** is low blood pressure (**hypo-** = deficient or less than normal). Drugs used to lower blood pressure are called **antihypertensives** (ahn-tih-hī-pər-tehns-ihvs).



**Figure 8–13** Major veins in the cat.

## TEST ME: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Diagnostic tests performed on the cardiovascular system include the following:

- **angiocardiology** (ahn-jē-ō-kahr-dē-ohg-rah-fē) = radiographic study of the blood vessels and heart using contrast material. The resulting film is an **angiocardigram** (ahn-jē-ō-kahr-dē-ō-grahm).
- **angiography** (ahn-jē-ohg-rah-fē) = radiographic study of the blood vessels following injection of radiopaque material. An **angiogram** (ahn-jē-ō-grahm) is the film produced from this radiographic procedure (Figure 8–14).
- **cardiac catheterization** (kahr-dē-ahck kahth-eh-tār-ih-zā-shuhn) = radiographic study in which a catheter is passed into a blood vessel and is guided into the heart to detect pressures and patterns of blood flow.
- **echocardiography** (ehck-ō-kahr-dē-ohg-rah-fē) = process of evaluating the heart structures using sound waves. (**Ech/o** is a combining form for sound.) **Doppler** (dohp-lər) **echocardiography** uses the differences in frequency between sound waves and their echoes to measure the velocity of a moving object (Figure 8–15).
- **electrocardiology** (ē-lehck-trō-kahr-dē-ohg-rahf-ē) = process of recording the electrical activity of the heart. An **electrocardiogram** (ē-lehck-trō-kahr-dē-ō-grahm) is the record of the electrical activity of the heart and is abbreviated ECG or EKG (Figure 8–16). The machine that records the electrical activity of the heart is an **electrocardiograph** (ē-lehck-trō-kahr-dē-ō-grahf).
- **Holter monitor** (hōl-tər mohn-ih-tər) = 24-hour ECG that records the heart rates and rhythms onto a specialized tape recorder.
- **radiography** (rā-dē-ohg-rah-fē) = procedure of imaging objects by exposing sensitized film to X-rays. The resulting film is called a **radiograph** (rā-dē-ō-grahf) or X-ray (Figure 8–17a). (This is an exception to the **-gram, -graph, -graphy** organization.)
- **tourniquet** (toor-nih-keht) = constricting band applied to a limb to control bleeding or to assist in drawing blood.

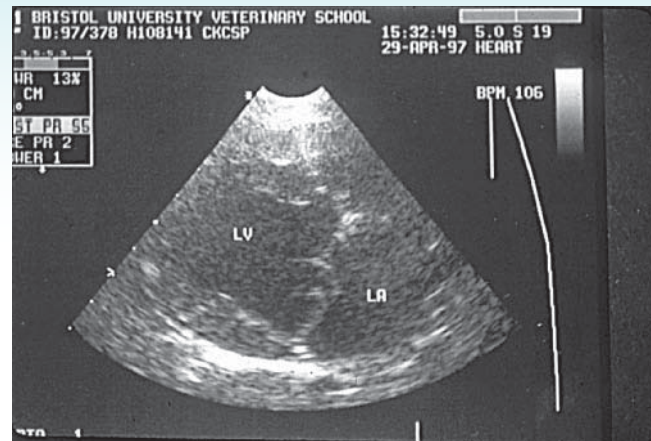


**Figure 8-14** Angiogram of a dog showing the femoral arteries. The use of a contrast medium makes the arteries visible.

## PATHOLOGY: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the cardiovascular system include the following:

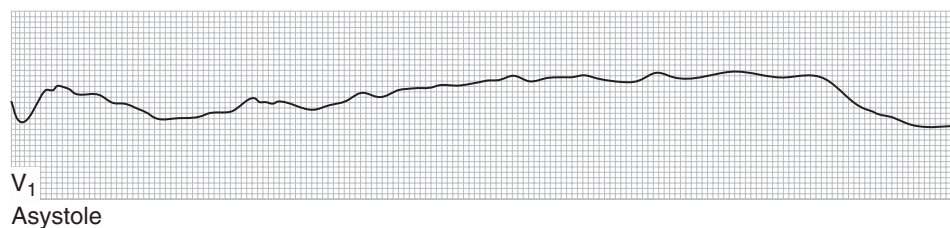
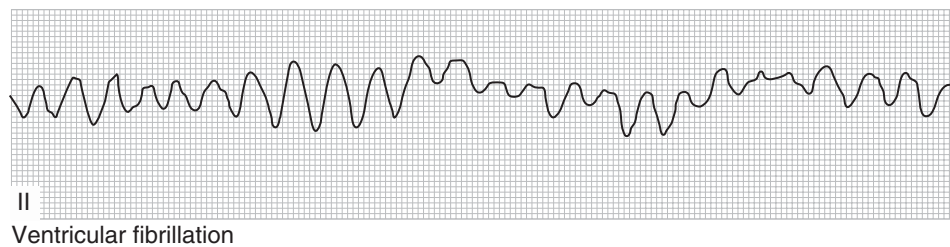
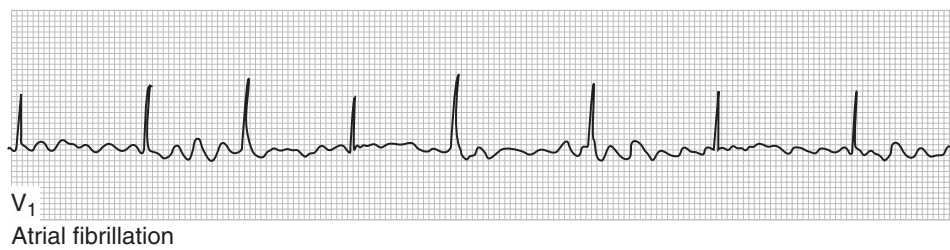
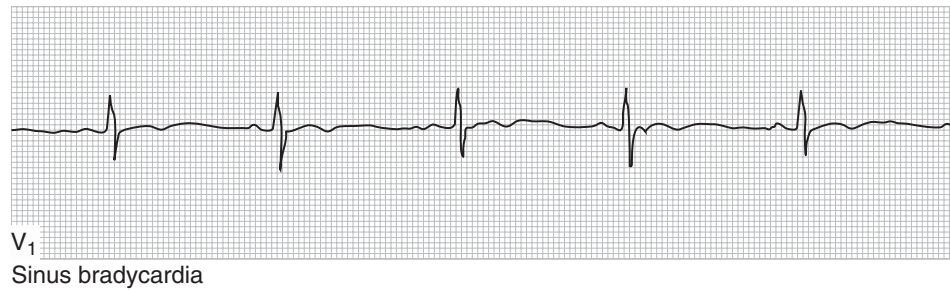
- **aneurysm** (ahn-yoo-rihzm) = localized balloonlike enlargement of an artery.
- **angiopathy** (ahn-jē-ohp-ah-thē) = disease of vessels.
- **aortic insufficiency** (ā-ōr-tihck ihn-sah-fihsh-ehns-ē) = inability of the aortic valve to perform at the proper levels, which results in blood flowing back into the left ventricle from the aorta.



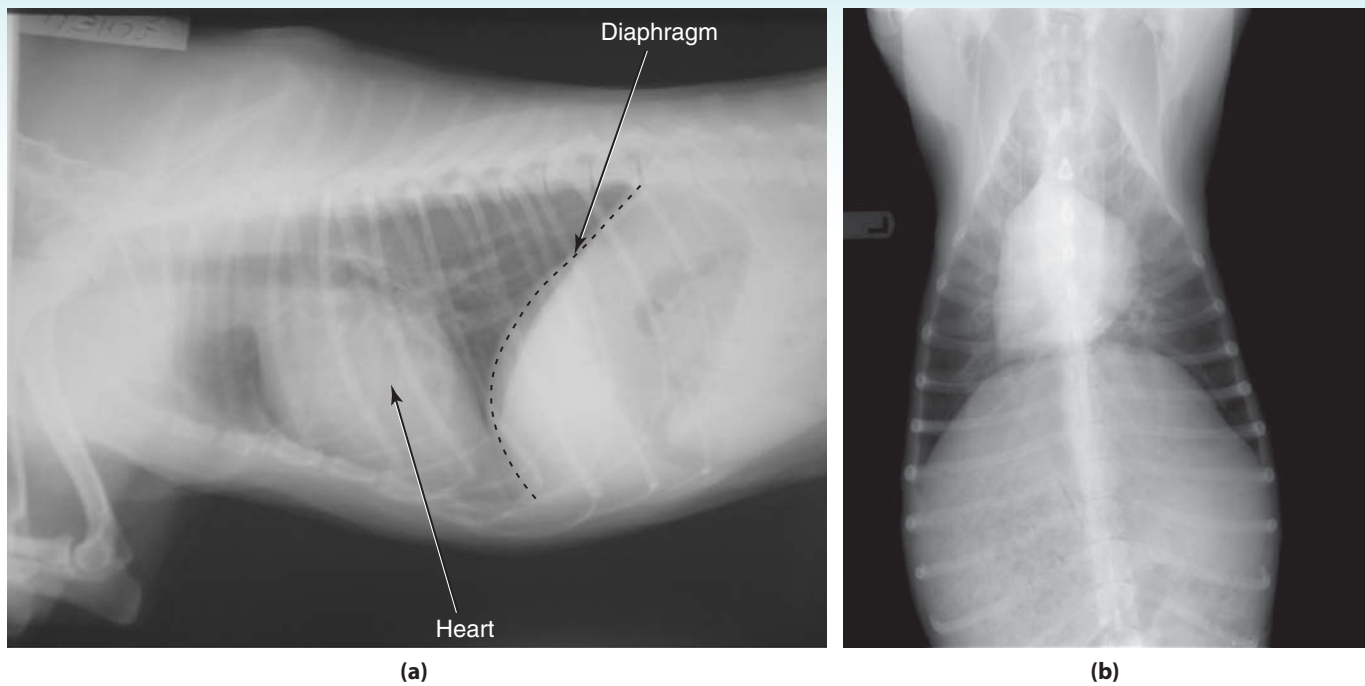
**Figure 8-15** Echocardiogram of a canine heart. (Courtesy of Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD, Glasgow University.)

Doppler echocardiography is based on the Doppler effect. An example of the Doppler effect (differences in frequency between sound waves and their echoes to measure the velocity of a moving object) is a police siren. A police siren seems to have a higher pitch when the police car is approaching than after it passes. Similarly, the pitch of a train whistle is higher when the train is approaching than after it passes. Medical use of the Doppler effect enables detection of blood flow based on various pitches after the blood passes by a transducer. Christian Doppler, an American mathematician, was the first person to describe this effect.

- **atherosclerosis** (ahth-ər-ō-skleh-rō-sihs) = hardening and narrowing of the arteries. This may be caused by **plaque** (plahck), which is a patch or raised area. **Ather/o** is the combining form for plaque or fatty substance.
- **cardiac tamponade** (kahr-dē-ahck tahm-pō-nohd) = compression of the heart due to fluid or blood collection in the pericardial sac.
- **cardiomegaly** (kahr-dē-ō-mehg-ah-lē) = heart enlargement (Figure 8-17b).
- **cardiomyopathy** (kahr-dē-ō-mī-ohp-ah-thē) = disease of heart muscle. May be further classified as **hypertrophic** (hī-pər-trō-fihck), which is excessive growth of the left ventricle, or **dilated** (dī-lāt-ehd), which is characterized by a thin-walled left ventricle.



**Figure 8-16** ECG tracings of common arrhythmias.



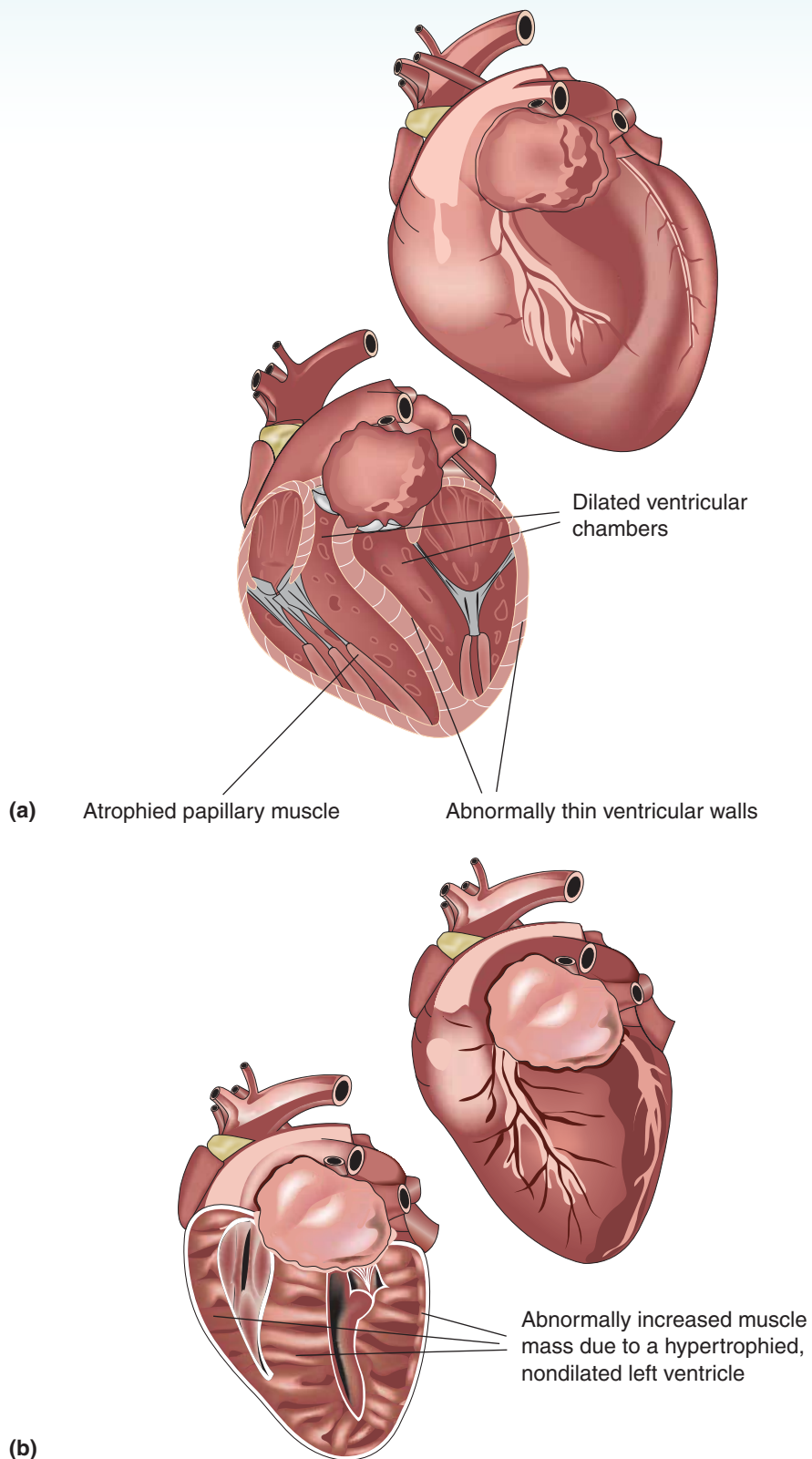
**Figure 8-17** (a) Radiograph of a dog's chest showing the position of the heart in the thoracic cavity. (b) Radiograph of a dog's heart with cardiomegaly. Right-sided heart enlargement in a dog with heartworm disease gives the reverse D appearance of the heart in this radiograph. [(b) Courtesy of Country Hills Pet Hospital.]

Dilated cardiomyopathy also is known as **congestive** (kohn-jēhs-tihv) (Figures 8-18a and b).

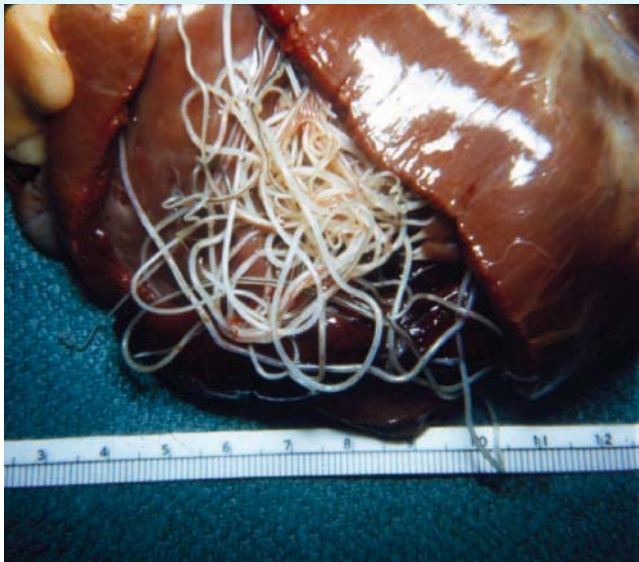
- **carditis** (kahr-dī-tihv) = inflammation of the heart.
- **congestive** (kohn-jēhs-tihv) **heart failure** = syndrome that reflects insufficient cardiac output to meet the body's needs; abbreviated CHF. **Congestion** (kohn-jehs-chuhn), which is accumulation of fluid, and **edema** (eh-dē-mah), which is accumulation of fluid in the intercellular spaces, may be seen with CHF. **Ascites** (ah-sī-tēz) is fluid accumulation in the peritoneal cavity seen in dogs secondary to CHF and other diseases. **Pleural effusion** (ploor-ahl eh-fū-zhuhn) is abnormal fluid accumulation between the layers of the membrane encasing the lungs and is seen in cats secondary to CHF. Fluid accumulation can be relieved with the use of diuretics. **Diuretics** (di-yoo-reht-ihcks) are substances that increase urine excretion.
- **cor pulmonale** (kōr puhl-mah-nahl-ē) = alterations in the structure or function of the right ventricle caused by pulmonary hypertension; also called pulmonary heart disease. **Cor** means heart, and **pulmon/o** is the combining form for lung.
- **dirofilariosis** (di-rō-fihl-ahr-ē-ō-sihv) = heartworm infection; formerly called **dirofilariasis** (di-rō-fihl-ahr-ē-ah-sihv). The scientific name of heartworm is *Dirofilaria immitis* (di-rō-fihl-ahr-ē-ah ihm-ih-tihv), from which dirofilariosis is derived. Heartworm disease is found in dogs, cats, and ferrets (Figure 8-19).

Heartworms mature and breed in the larger blood vessels. Mature heartworms produce tiny larvae called **microfilariae** (mī-krō-fihl-ahr-ē-ah). Mature heartworms may obstruct blood flow through the heart and blood vessels. A dead heartworm can cause pulmonary embolism. Obstruction of blood flow from the vena cava caused by heavy heartworm infestation is called **caval** (kā-vahl) **syndrome**. Heartworm disease can be prevented by the use of **prophylactic** (prō-fih-lahck-tihck) medication. **Prophylaxis** (prō-fih-lahck-sihv) means prevention. If an animal has heartworm disease, treatment includes use of an **adulticide** (ah-duhlt-ih-sid), or substance that kills mature or adult heartworms, and a **microfilaricide** (mī-krō-fihl-ahr-ih-sid), or substance that kills larvae or juvenile heartworms.

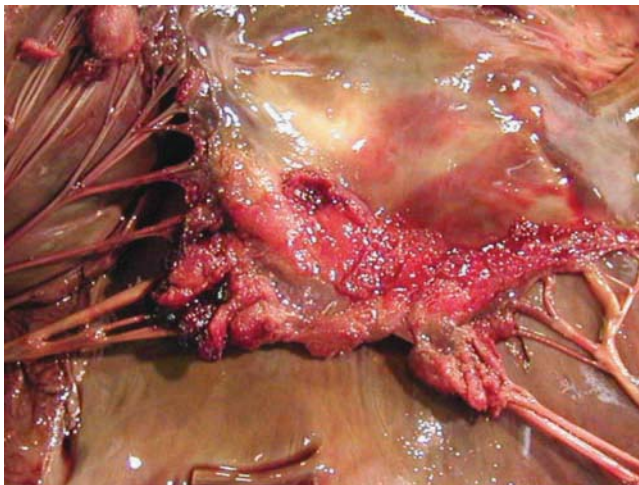
- **embolus** (ehm-bō-luhs) = foreign object (e.g., a clot, air, or tissue) that is circulating in blood. An **embolism** (ehm-bō-lihzm) is blockage of a vessel by a foreign object.
- **endocarditis** (ehn-dō-kahr-dī-tihv) = inflammation of the endocardium and sometimes the heart valves (Figure 8-20). Endocarditis may be further modified, as in bacterial endocarditis.
- **heart block** = interference with the electrical conduction of the heart. Heart block may be partial or complete and is graded in degrees based on the characteristics of the block.



**Figure 8–18** (a) Dilated cardiomyopathy. (b) Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.



**Figure 8-19** Heart with heartworms.



**Figure 8-20** An AV valve with endocarditis. This valve would not create a tight seal, resulting in a murmur. (Courtesy of Dr. Arthur Hattel, Pennsylvania State University.)

- **hypoxia** (hī-pohck-sē-ah) = below-normal levels of oxygen.
  - **infarct** (ihn-fahrckt) = localized area of necrosis caused by an interrupted blood supply.
  - **ischemia** (ihs-kē-mē-ah) = deficiency in blood supply (the combining form **isch/o** means hold back) (Figure 8-21).
  - **mitral valve insufficiency** (mī-trahl vahlv ihn-sah-fihsh-ehn-sē) = inability of the left atrioventricular valve to perform at the proper level; may be caused by fibrosis, endocarditis, or other conditions that occur in the mitral valve area.
  - **mitral valve prolapse** (mī-trahl vahlv prō-lahps) = abnormal protrusion of the left atrioventricular valve that results in incomplete closure of the valve.
  - **myocarditis** (mī-ō-kahr-dī-tihs) = inflammation of the myocardium.
  - **occlusion** (ō-kloo-shuhn) = blockage in a vessel or passageway in the body.
  - **patent ductus arteriosus** (pā-tehnt duhck-tuhs ahr-tē-rē-ō-sihs) = persistence of the fetal communication (ductus arteriosus) between the left pulmonary artery and aorta that should close shortly after birth; abbreviated PDA. (*Patent* means remaining open.) A PDA may cause overloading of the left ventricle, which may lead to left ventricular failure. A continuous heart murmur and enlarged heart are signs of a PDA.
  - **pericarditis** (pehr-ih-kahr-dī-tihs) = inflammation of the pericardium.
  - **pulmonic stenosis** (puhl-mah-nihck stehn-ō-sihs) = narrowing of the opening and valvular area between the pulmonary artery and right ventricle.
  - **regurgitation** (rē-gərj-ih-tā-shuhn) = backflow; used to describe backflow of blood caused by imperfect closure of heart valves.
- 
- **hemangioma** (hē-mahn-jē-ō-mah) = benign tumor comprised of newly formed blood vessels.
  - **hematoma** (hē-mah-tō-mah) = collection of blood.
  - **hypercapnia** (hī-pər-kahp-nē-ah) = above-normal levels of carbon dioxide. Hypercapnia results in reduced levels of oxygen (**hypoxia** = hī-pohck-sē-ah) and may cause a bluish tinge to the skin and mucous membranes. This bluish tinge is called **cyanosis**. (The combining form **cyan/o** means blue.)
  - **hypocapnia** (hī-pō-kahp-nē-ah) = below-normal levels of carbon dioxide.



**Figure 8-21** Ischemia to a section of the small intestine of a horse (dark area on right). (Courtesy of Dr. Arthur Hattel, Pennsylvania State University.)

- **shock** (shohck) = inadequate tissue perfusion. There are different types of shock, but one type occurs after cardiac arrest or cessation of heartbeat. Treatment of shock includes **resuscitation** (reh-suhs-ih-tā-shuhn), or the restoration of life. Resuscitative measures include fluid administration, cardiac massage, and artificial respiration. **Cardiopulmonary resuscitation** (kahr-dē-ō-puhl- mohn-ār-ē), or CPR, addresses only the cardiac and respiratory systems.
- **tetralogy of Fallot** (teht-rah-l-ō-jē ohf fahl-ō) = congenital cyanotic cardiac condition that classically has four anatomical defects in the heart: pulmonary stenosis, ventricular septal defect, overriding aorta, and right ventricular hypertrophy.
- **thrombus** (throhm-buhs) = blood clot attached to the interior wall of a vein or artery. A **thrombosis** (throhm-bō-sihs) is an abnormal condition in which a blood clot develops in a blood vessel. Substances that prevent blood clotting are called **anticoagulants** (ahn-tih-kō-āg-yoo-lahnts).
- **vasculitis** (vahs-kyoo-li-tihs) = inflammation of a blood or lymph vessel.
- **ventricular septal defect** (vehn-trihck-yoo-lahr sehptahl dē-fehckt) = opening in the wall dividing the right and left ventricles that may allow blood to shunt from the right ventricle to the left ventricle without becoming oxygenated. To **shunt** (shuhnt) means to bypass or divert. A shunt resulting from a ventricular septal defect would bypass the lungs. Ventricular septal defect is abbreviated VSD. A harsh holosystolic murmur usually is a sign of a VSD.



#### Terms used to describe disease

**congenital** (kohn-jehn-ih-tahl) present at birth

**hereditary** (hər-eh-dih-tahr-ē) genetically transmitted from parent to offspring

**anomaly** (ah-nohm-ah-lē) deviation from normal

**idiopathic** (ihd-ē-ō-pahth-ihck) of unknown cause

**iatrogenic** (ī-aht-rō-jehn-ihck) produced by treatment

## PROCEDURES: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the cardiovascular system include the following:

- **angioplasty** (ahn-jē-ō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of blood or lymph vessels. Angioplasties may be **transluminal** (trahnz-loo-mehn-ahl), which means the procedure is done through the opening of a vessel, or **percutaneous** (pehr-kyoo-tā-nē-uhs), which means the procedure is done through the skin.
- **angiorrhaphy** (ahn-jē-ōr-ah-fē) = suture of a vessel.
- **arteriectomy** (ahr-tē-rē-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of part of a blood vessel that carries blood away from the heart.
- **arteriotomy** (ahr-tē-rē-oh-tō-mē) = incision of a blood vessel that carries blood away from the heart.
- **central venous pressure** (sehn-trahl vē-nuhs prehshər) = tension exerted by blood in the cranial vena cava; abbreviated CVP. CVP is monitored by catheterization of the cranial vena cava via the jugular vein. The catheter is connected to a fluid-filled column and a syringe or bag that serves as a fluid source.
- **defibrillation** (dē-fihb-rih-lā-shuhn) = use of electrical shock to restore the normal heart rhythm.
- **hemostasis** (hē-mō-stā-sihs) = control or stoppage of bleeding.
- **stent** (stehnt) = small expander implanted in a blood vessel to prevent it from collapsing. (A stent also is a device to hold tissue in place or to provide support for a graft.)
- **transfusion** (trahnz-fū-shuhn) = introduction of whole blood or blood components into the bloodstream of the recipient (Figure 8–22).
- **valvotomy** (vahl-vah-tō-mē) = surgical incision into a valve or membranous flap.



**Figure 8–22** A cat receiving a transfusion. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

---

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The right atrioventricular valve is also known as the
  - a. mitral valve
  - b. semilunar valve
  - c. tricuspid valve
  - d. bicuspid valve
2. The double-walled membranous sac enclosing the heart is the
  - a. peritoneum
  - b. pericardium
  - c. perimyocardium
  - d. pericardosis
3. A partition or wall separating something is called a
  - a. septum
  - b. valve
  - c. lumen
  - d. plaque
4. A localized area of necrosis caused by an interrupted blood supply is
  - a. ischemia
  - b. resuscitation
  - c. pulse
  - d. infarct
5. Introduction of whole blood or blood components into the bloodstream of the recipient is a(n)
  - a. embolism
  - b. thrombus
  - c. transfusion
  - d. stent
6. A bypass or diversion is called a
  - a. preload
  - b. shunt
  - c. stent
  - d. tourniquet
7. *Cor* means
  - a. abnormality
  - b. vessel
  - c. heart
  - d. valve
8. Disease of heart muscle is
  - a. cardiopathy
  - b. cor pulmonale
  - c. cardiovalvopathy
  - d. cardiomyopathy
9. Heart enlargement is
  - a. cardiac swelling
  - b. cardiac augmentation
  - c. cardiac dilation
  - d. cardiomegaly
10. Blood flow through tissue is
  - a. ischemia
  - b. infarct
  - c. auscultation
  - d. perfusion
11. The blood vessels that carry blood from the heart to the lungs are the
  - a. pulmonary veins
  - b. pulmonary arteries
  - c. vena cava
  - d. aorta
12. The contraction phase of the heartbeat is the
  - a. septum
  - b. diastole
  - c. systole
  - d. tachycardia
13. A disease produced by treatment is known as
  - a. idiopathic
  - b. iatrogenic
  - c. congenital
  - d. hereditary
14. The term for the external layer of the heart is the
  - a. myocardium
  - b. endocardium
  - c. pericardium
  - d. epicardium

15. The myocardium receives its blood supply from the
  - a. aorta
  - b. coronary arteries
  - c. vena cava
  - d. subclavian artery
16. Which heart valve is also known as the bicuspid valve?
  - a. aortic semilunar valve
  - b. pulmonary semilunar valve
  - c. mitral valve
  - d. tricuspid valve
17. Which heart chamber pumps blood to the lungs?
  - a. left atrium
  - b. left ventricle
  - c. right atrium
  - d. right ventricle
18. Hemostasis means
  - a. control of bleeding
  - b. formation of new blood
  - c. introduction of whole blood
  - d. present at birth
19. A deficiency in blood supply is called
  - a. infarct
  - b. ischemia
  - c. prophylaxis
  - d. dilation
20. The opening in a vessel through which fluid flows is known as a
  - a. hilum
  - b. perfusion
  - c. murmur
  - d. lumen

## Matching

Match the term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

### Column I

1. \_\_\_\_\_ perfusion
2. \_\_\_\_\_ heart murmur
3. \_\_\_\_\_ constriction
4. \_\_\_\_\_ vasculitis
5. \_\_\_\_\_ dilation
6. \_\_\_\_\_ hematoma
7. \_\_\_\_\_ capillaries
8. \_\_\_\_\_ veins
9. \_\_\_\_\_ arteries
10. \_\_\_\_\_ prophylaxis

### Column II

- a. vessels that return blood to the heart
- b. single-cell-thick vessels that connect the arterial and venous systems
- c. vessels that carry blood away from the heart
- d. blood flow through tissues
- e. prevention
- f. abnormal sound associated with the turbulent flow of blood
- g. narrowing of a vessel diameter
- h. widening of a vessel diameter
- i. inflammation of a blood or lymph vessel
- j. collection of blood

**Fill in the Blanks**

1. Angi/o and vas/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Ven/o and phleb/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Valv/o and valvul/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Cardi/o and cor mean \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Holo- and pan- mean \_\_\_\_\_.

Trace the flow of blood through the heart.

6. Blood enters the heart through two large veins called the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, which empty blood into the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Blood flows from the right atrium to the right ventricle through the \_\_\_\_\_, which also is called the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. After blood enters the right ventricle, it passes through the \_\_\_\_\_ and enters the lungs via the \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Blood becomes oxygenated in the lungs and returns to the heart via the \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Once blood enters the left atrium, it passes through the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ on its way to the \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Blood passes through one last valve, the \_\_\_\_\_, before it enters the aorta and flows to various parts of the body.

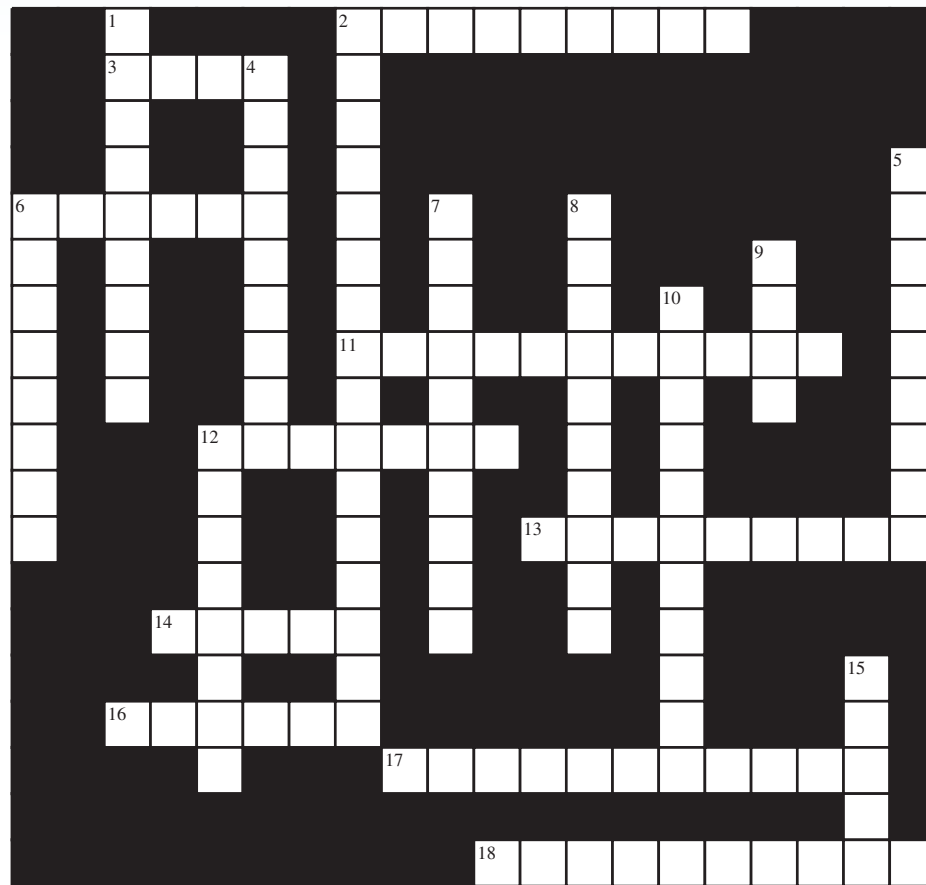
**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |   |               |              |                |
|---|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. bluish tinge to the skin and mucous membranes: | cianosis      | cyianosis    | cyanosis       |
| 2. below-normal levels of carbon dioxide:         | hypokapnea    | hypocapnia   | hypocapnea     |
| 3. widening of a vessel:                          | vasodialation | vasodilation | vasodilatation |
| 4. relaxation of the heart:                       | diastole      | diastoly     | diastooly      |
| 5. contraction of the ventricles:                 | systole       | sistolle     | sistole        |

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Cardiovascular Structure and Disease Terms Puzzle



#### Across

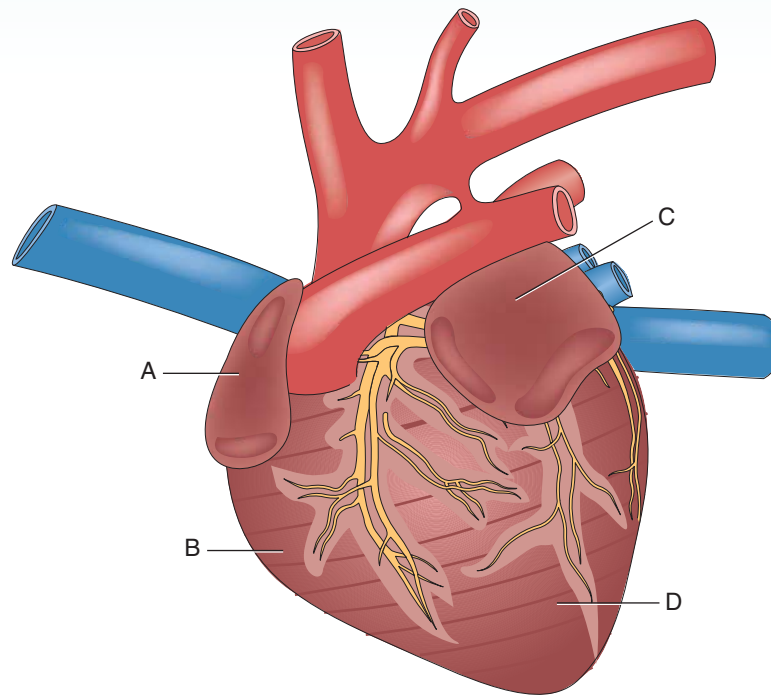
- 2 to narrow
- 3 combining form for sound
- 6 vibration felt on palpation
- 11 abnormally rapid heart rate
- 12 deviation from normal
- 13 resistance to flow
- 14 craniodorsal chambers of the heart
- 16 to widen
- 17 above-normal levels of carbon dioxide
- 18 constricting band applied to limb to control bleeding or to assist in drawing blood

#### Down

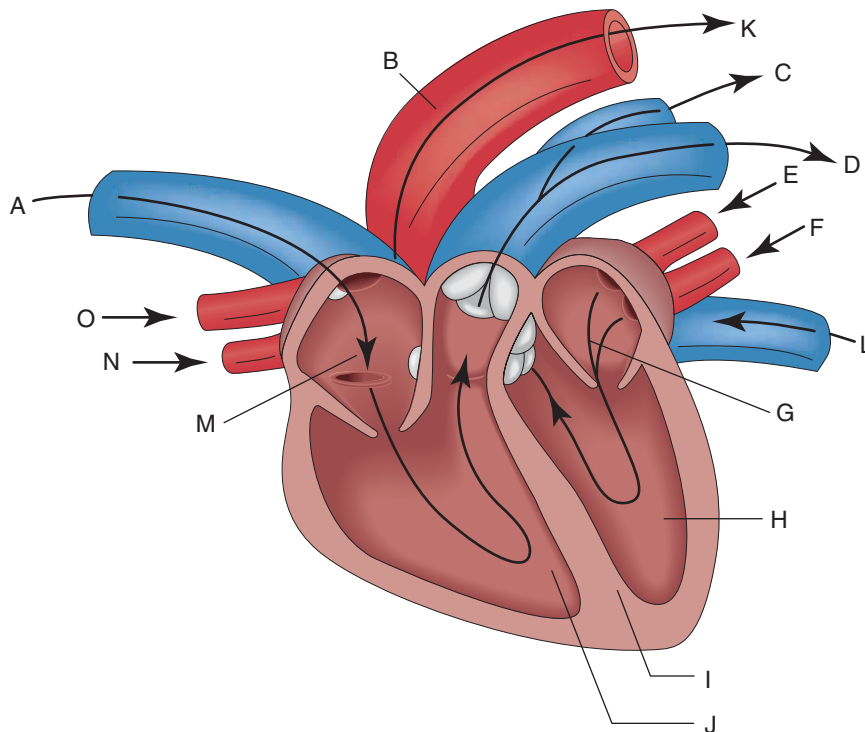
- 1 caudoventral chamber of the heart
- 2 compression of the heart due to fluid or blood collection in the pericardial sac
- 4 blockage in a vessel
- 5 pertaining to the lungs
- 6 blood clot attached to the interior wall of a vessel
- 7 listening
- 8 external layer of the heart
- 9 blood vessel that returns blood to the heart
- 10 abnormally slow heart rate
- 12 without contraction
- 15 portion of the EKG that represents ventricular contraction

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

Label the diagrams in Figures 8–23 and 8–24.



**Figure 8–23** External heart structures. Label the external heart structures to which the lines are pointing.



**Figure 8–24** Internal heart structures. Label the internal heart structures to which the lines are pointing.

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 5-yr-old M/N Doberman was presented with signs of lethargy, syncope, and cyanotic mucous membranes. After auscultating the heart, the veterinarian detected a cardiac arrhythmia and tachycardia. An ECG and radiograph of the heart were ordered. The radiograph revealed cardiomegaly, which helped to support the veterinarian's diagnosis of cardiomyopathy.

1. lethargy \_\_\_\_\_
2. syncope \_\_\_\_\_
3. cyanotic \_\_\_\_\_
4. cardiac arrhythmia \_\_\_\_\_
5. tachycardia \_\_\_\_\_
6. ECG \_\_\_\_\_
7. radiograph \_\_\_\_\_
8. cardiomegaly \_\_\_\_\_
9. diagnosis \_\_\_\_\_
10. cardiomyopathy \_\_\_\_\_

A farmer called the clinic because one of his cows was suddenly off feed and had not been producing as much milk as before. Upon arrival at the farm, the veterinarian noted that the cow was reluctant to move, had an arched back, and appeared tachypnic. PE revealed tachycardia, tachypnea, dyspnea, pyrexia, and abducted elbows. Auscultation of the thorax revealed muffled lung and heart sounds. The farmer was questioned as to his use of magnets to prevent metallic objects from staying in the rumen or reticulum. The owner did not use magnets as a prophylactic measure, so the veterinarian suspected acute traumatic reticuloperitonitis in this cow. Acute traumatic reticuloperitonitis is commonly called hardware disease and is seen when swallowed metallic objects fall into the reticulum of the ruminant stomach, pierce the reticulum wall, and contaminate the peritoneal cavity. Occasionally, the object punctures the diaphragm, enters the thoracic cavity, and punctures the pericardial sac, causing pericarditis. A magnet was placed in this cow via a balling gun (Figure 8–25), and antibiotics were initiated. If the cow does not improve, she may be sent to slaughter because of the high cost of treating this disease.

11. off feed \_\_\_\_\_
12. PE \_\_\_\_\_
13. tachycardia \_\_\_\_\_
14. tachypnea \_\_\_\_\_
15. dyspnea \_\_\_\_\_
16. pyrexia \_\_\_\_\_
17. thorax \_\_\_\_\_
18. rumen \_\_\_\_\_
19. prophylactic \_\_\_\_\_
20. acute \_\_\_\_\_
21. traumatic \_\_\_\_\_

- 22. reticuloperitonitis \_\_\_\_\_
- 23. acute traumatic reticuloperitonitis \_\_\_\_\_
- 24. reticulum \_\_\_\_\_
- 25. ruminant \_\_\_\_\_
- 26. peritoneal cavity \_\_\_\_\_
- 27. diaphragm \_\_\_\_\_
- 28. pericardial sac \_\_\_\_\_
- 29. pericarditis \_\_\_\_\_
- 30. balling gun \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 8–25** Balling gun used to administer oral medication to cattle. The rectangular gray magnet remains in the reticulum, where it can trap ingested metal.

# CHAPTER 9

## A BREATH OF FRESH AIR

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the major structures and functions of the respiratory system
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the respiratory system

### FUNCTIONS OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

The **respiratory** (reh-s-pih-rah-tör-ē) **system** is the body system that brings oxygen from the air into the body for delivery via the blood to the cells. Once the blood has delivered the oxygen to the cells, it picks up carbon dioxide and carries it back to the lungs, where this waste is expelled into the air. Carbon dioxide has acid properties and therefore also is involved in maintaining the body's acid–base status.

The term **respiration** means the diffusion of gases (oxygen and carbon dioxide) between the atmosphere and the cells of the body. The gas exchange between the blood and the cells is called internal or cellular respiration. External respiration is the absorption of atmospheric oxygen by the blood in the lungs and the diffusion of carbon dioxide from the blood in the lungs to atmospheric air.

**Ventilation** (vehn-tih-lā-shuhn) is a term that means the intake of fresh air. Ventilation is used to refer to breathing. Ventilation may be natural, as in normal breathing, or assisted, as in the use of a ventilator. Ventilators are devices that aid in breathing and therefore should not be called respirators.



## STRUCTURES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

The respiratory tract is routinely divided into the upper and lower respiratory tracts. The **upper respiratory tract** (uhp-pər reh-s-pih-rah-tōr-ē trahckt) is the part of the respiratory system that consists of the nose, mouth, pharynx, epiglottis, and larynx. The **lower respiratory tract** (lō-ər reh-s-pih-rah-tōr-ē trahckt) is the part of the respiratory system that consists of the trachea, bronchial tree, and lungs. The trachea sometimes is considered part of the upper respiratory tract (Figure 9–1).

### Upper Respiratory Tract

The conducting passages of the upper respiratory tract consist of the nose, mouth, pharynx, epiglottis, and larynx. These structures open to the outside and are lined with mucous membranes that may or may not have cilia to help filter the air.

### Nose

Air enters and exits the body through the **nose**. **Nas/o** and **rhin/o** are combining forms for nose. In animals, not all noses look alike. The rigidity of the nose in swine has led to its being called the **snout** (snowt) because it is so different from other species' noses. The nose consists of **nostrils**, or **nares** (neh-rēz), which are the paired external openings of the respiratory tract.

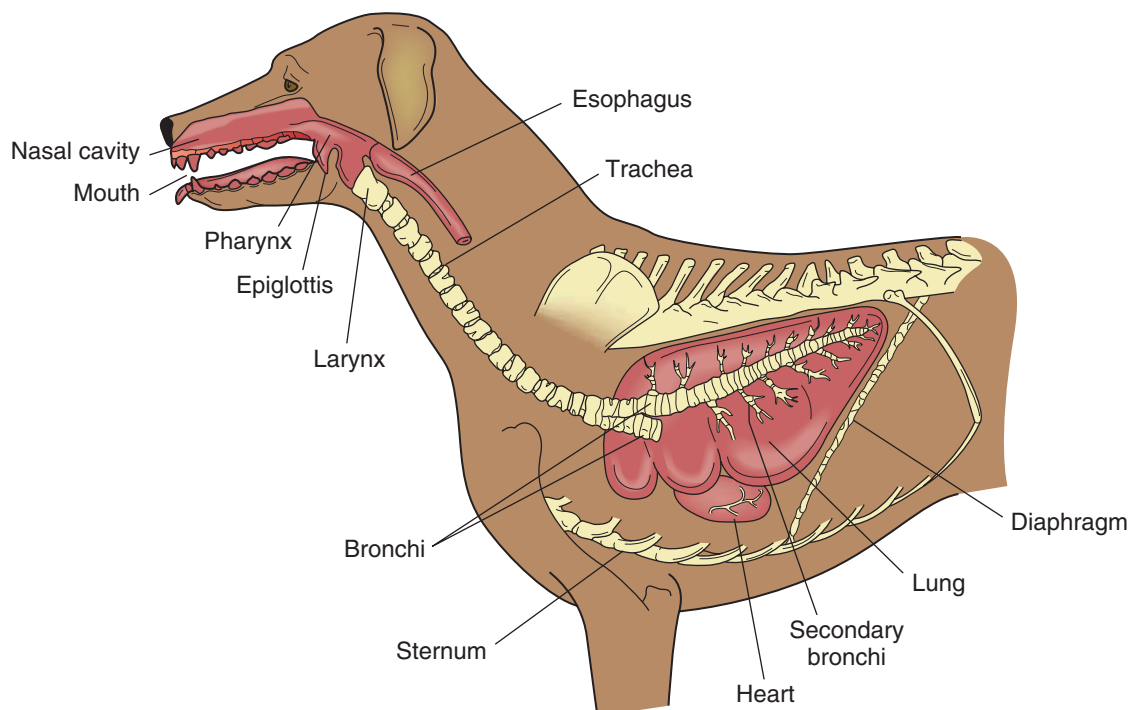
Nares vary from species to species and may have the ability to open widely, as in equine, or may remain the same, as in the canine. In **endotherms** (ehn-dō-thərmz), or warm-blooded animals, the nasal passages contain **nasal turbinates** (tər-bih-nātz)

**Rhin/o** is the Greek root for nose. Consider the term *rhinoceros*. Rhin/o means nose, and **cer/o** means horn; therefore, a rhinoceros is an animal with a horn on its nose. Where do you think a rhinovirus causes disease?

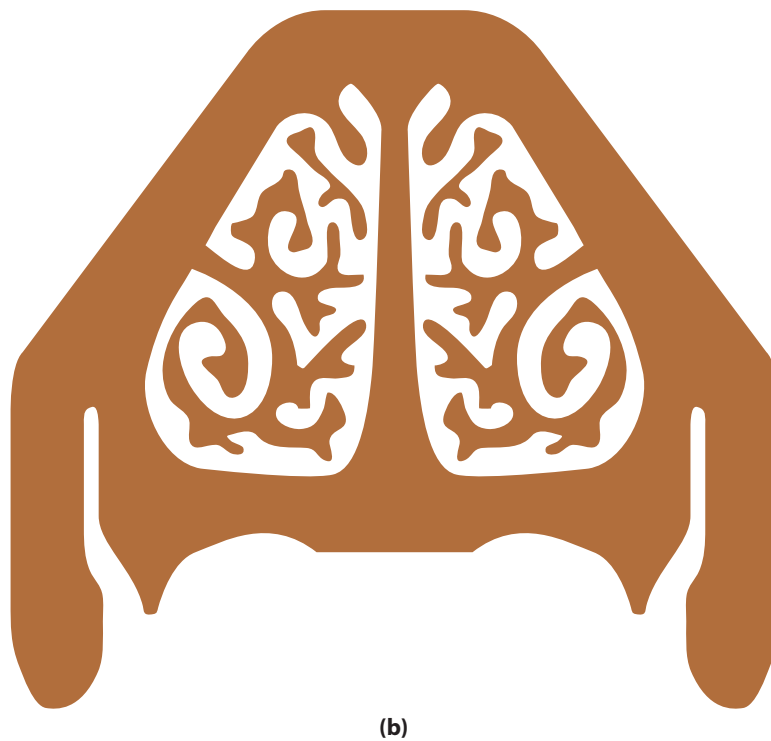
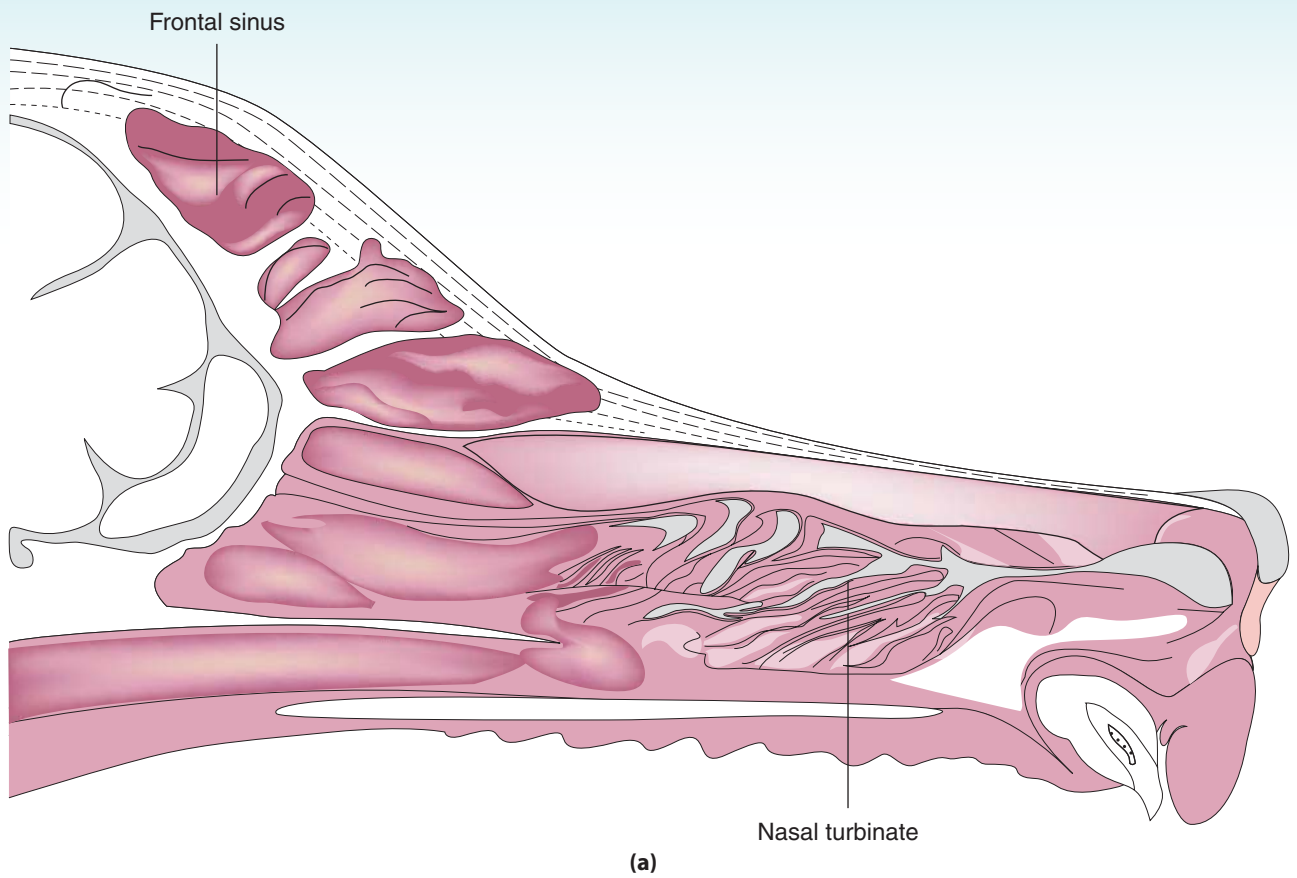
(Figure 9–2). The nasal turbinates, sometimes called conchae (kohn-kā), are scroll-like cartilages covered with highly vascular mucous membranes. The nasal turbinates warm, humidify, and filter inspired air. Two nasal turbinates, the dorsal and ventral, separate the nasal cavity into passages. Each passage is called a **meatus** (mē-ā-tuhs) (**meat/o** is the combining form for opening or passageway), and they are named based on their location: dorsal meatus, middle meatus, ventral meatus, and common meatus. A **nasogastric** (nā-zō-gahs-trihck) **tube** is a tube that passes through the nose down to the stomach. A nasogastric tube is placed through the ventral nasal meatus.

Air passes from the nose through the nasal cavity. The rostral part of the nostrils and nasal cavity are called the **vestibule** (vehs-tih-buhl). The nose is divided by a wall of cartilage called the nasal septum (nā-zahl seh-p-tuhm). The combining form **sept/o** means partition.

The respiratory system is lined with **mucous membrane** (myoo-kuhs mehm-brān), which is a specialized form of



**Figure 9–1** Structures of the respiratory system.



**Figure 9–2** (a) Internal structures of the nasal cavity of a dog. (b) Cross section of the turbinates of a dog.



**Figure 9-3** Respiratory epithelial tissue contains cilia and goblet cells.

epithelial tissue. The mucous membranes secrete **mucus** (myoo-kuhs). Mucus is a slimelike substance that is composed of glandular secretions, salts, cells, and leukocytes. Mucus helps to moisten, warm, and filter the air as it enters the nose. **Cilia** (sihl-ē-ah) are thin hairs located inside the nostrils (Figure 9-3). Cilia filter the air to remove **debris** (deh-brē). Debris is the remains of something destroyed or damaged.

The **olfactory** (ohl-fahck-tōr-ē) **receptors** are responsible for the sense of smell. The combining form **olfact/o** means smell. Olfactory receptors are nerve endings located in the mucous membranes of the nasal cavity.

The **tonsils** (tohn-sihlz) are lymphatic tissue that protects the nasal cavity and proximal (upper) throat. The combining form for tonsil is **tonsill/o**. The tonsils are discussed in Chapter 15.

## Sinuses

A **sinus** (sīn-uhs) is an air-filled or fluid-filled space. A sinus in the respiratory system is an air-filled or fluid-filled space in bone. Sinuses have a mucous membrane lining. The functions of sinuses are to provide mucus, to make bone lighter, and

to help to produce sound. The combining form for sinus is **sinus/o** (Table 9-1).

## Pharynx

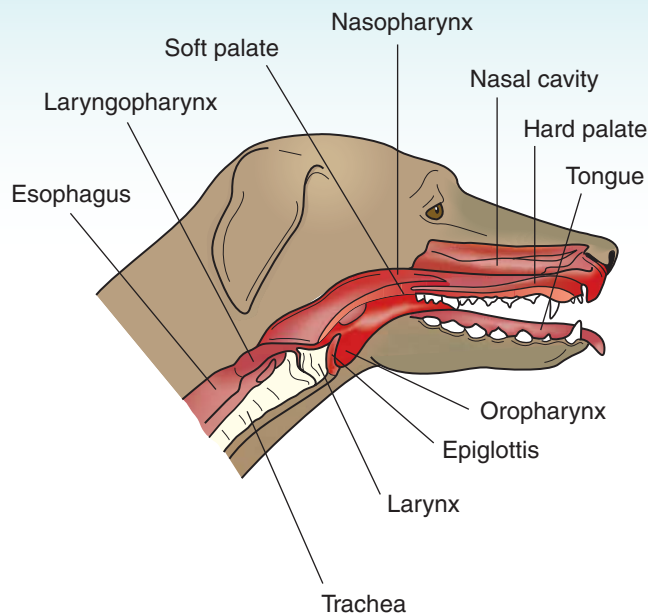
Air passes through the nasal cavity to the **pharynx** (fâr-ihnks). The pharynx is commonly called the throat. The pharynx is the common passageway for the upper respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts. The pharynx extends from the caudal part of the nasal passages and mouth to the larynx and connects the nasal passages to the larynx and the mouth to the esophagus. The combining form for throat is **pharyng/o**.

The pharynx has three divisions:

- **nasopharynx** (nâ-zō-fâr-ihnckz) = portion of the throat posterior to the nasal cavity and above (dorsal to) the soft palate.
- **oropharynx** (ō-rō-fâr-ihnckz) = portion of the throat between the soft palate and epiglottis.
- **laryngopharynx** (lah-rihng-gō-fâr-ihnckz) = portion of the throat below the epiglottis that opens into the voice box and esophagus.

**Table 9-1 Sinuses and Their Locations**

Sinus	Species Found	Location
<b>frontal</b> (frohn-tahl)	all domestic species	dorsal part of skull between nasal cavity and orbit
<b>maxillary</b> (mahx-ihl-âr-ē)	all domestic species	maxilla with nasal cavity on each side (maxillary recess in carnivores)
<b>sphenoid</b> (sfehn-oyd)	feline, bovine, equine, swine	sphenoid bone; opens to nasal cavity
<b>palatine</b> (pahl-eh-tīn)	ruminants, equine	palatine bone; communicates with maxillary sinus
<b>lacrimal</b> (lahck-rih-mahl)	swine, ruminants	lacrimal bone
<b>conchal</b> (kohn-kahl)	swine, ruminants, equine	formed by enclosure of conchae



**Figure 9-4** Structures of the nasal cavity and larynx.

The nasopharynx is the passageway for air entering through the nose, whereas the oropharynx and laryngopharynx are passageways for air entering through the nose and food entering through the mouth, respectively. During swallowing, the **soft palate** (pahl-ah) moves dorsally and caudally to close off the nasopharynx to prevent food from going into the nasal cavity.

*Palate* means roof of the mouth, and the combining form for palate is **palat/o**. The **epiglottis** (ehp-ih-gloht-ihs) acts like a lid and covers the larynx during swallowing. The covering of the larynx by the epiglottis does not allow food to enter the trachea and go into the lungs. The combining form for epiglottis is **epiglott/o** (Figure 9-4).

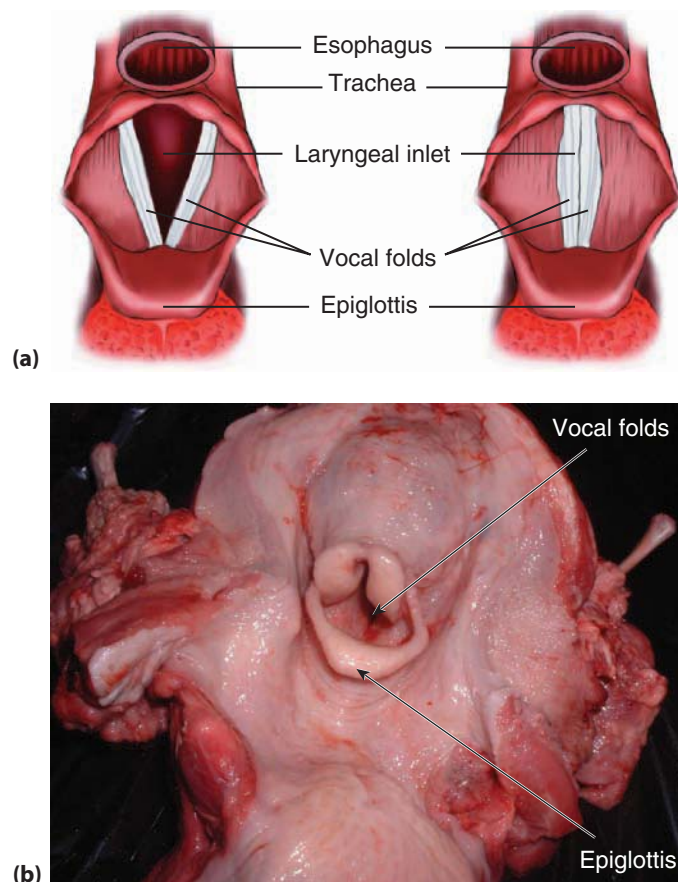
## Larynx

The **larynx** (lār-ih-nckz) is the part of the respiratory tract located between the pharynx and trachea (Figure 9-5). The larynx is commonly called the **voice box**. The larynx contains the **vocal cords** (vō-kahl kōrdz), which are paired membranous bands in the larynx that help produce sound. **Laryng/o** is the combining form for the voice box.

The vocal apparatus is found in the **glottis** (gloh-tihs). The glottis is the space between the vocal cords. Air passing through the glottis causes vibration of the vocal cords that produces sound. The combining form for glottis is **glott/o**. The vocal apparatus of avian species is the **syrix** (sehr-ihns), which is located between the trachea and bronchi.

## Lower Respiratory Tract

The conducting passages of the lower respiratory tract consist of the trachea, bronchi, bronchioles, and alveoli. These structures enter or are found in the thoracic cavity.



**Figure 9-5** (a) Epiglottis and larynx. (b) Epiglottis and larynx of a bovine.

## Trachea

Air passes from the larynx to the **trachea** (trā-kē-ah). The trachea is commonly called the **windpipe** and extends from the neck to the chest. The trachea attaches to the larynx in the neck and passes into the **thorax** (thōr-ahcks), or chest cavity, through the **thoracic** (thoh-rahsh-ihck) **inlet**. The trachea is located ventral to the esophagus and is held open by a series of C-shaped cartilaginous rings. The open part of the Cs typically are along the dorsal aspect, which is adjacent to the esophagus. This allows easier expansion of the esophagus when the animal swallows. The trachea also is lined with cilia, which help filter debris. The combining form for the windpipe is **trache/o**.

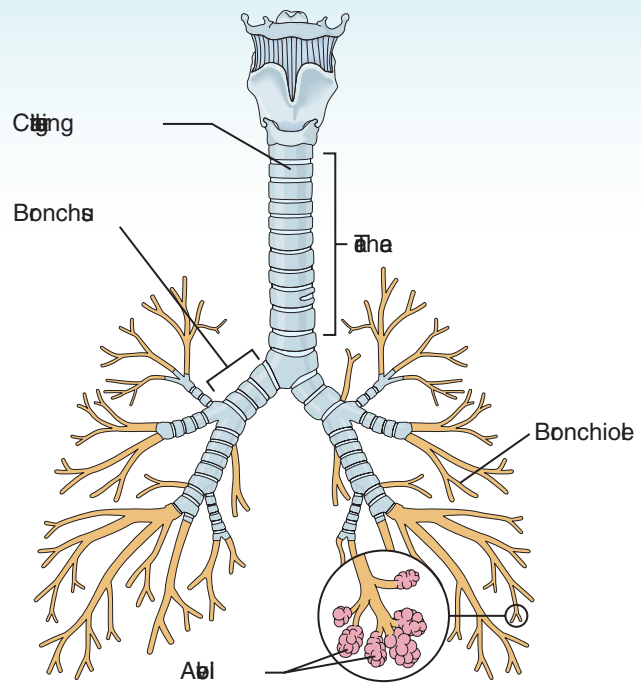
## Bronchi

The distal end of the trachea (bottom of the trachea) divides into two branches at the **tracheal bifurcation** (trāk-ē-ahl bī-fēr-kā-shuhn). The branches from the trachea are called **bronchi** (brohng-kī). The combining form for bronchi is **bronch/o**. Each **bronchus** (brohng-kuhs) leads to a separate lung (right or left) and continues to divide. This continual division appears similar to a tree and its branches; therefore, the bronchi and its branches sometimes are called the **bronchial tree**. Each bronchus that leads to a separate lung is called a **principal** or **primary bronchus** (right principal or left principal bronchus). The principal bronchi divide into smaller branches called **secondary** (sehck-ohnd-ār-ē) or lobar (lō-bahr) **bronchi**. The secondary bronchi divide into **tertiary** (tər-shē-ār-ē) or **segmental** (sehng-mehn-tahl) **bronchi**. The tertiary bronchi are smaller units and are also called **bronchioles** (brohng-kē-ōlz) or **bronchiolus** (brohngk-ē-ō-luhs). The suffix **-ole** means small, indicating that bronchioles are smaller than bronchi. The combining form for bronchiole is **bronchiol/o**. Bronchioles contain no cartilage or glands. The bronchioles continue to divide. The terminal bronchioles are the last portion of a bronchiole that does not contain alveoli. The respiratory bronchioles are the final branches of the bronchioles. The respiratory bronchioles have alveolar outcroppings and branch into alveolar ducts (Figure 9–6).

## Alveoli

**Alveoli** (ahl-vē-ō-lī) are air sacs in which most of the gas exchange occurs. An **alveolus** (ahl-vē-ō-luhs), which is Latin for small hollow thing, is a small grapelike cluster at the end of each bronchiole. The alveolus is connected to the bronchiole via an alveolar duct. The combining form **alveol/o** means small sac.

Alveoli have thin, flexible membrane walls that are surrounded by a network of microscopic capillaries. Gas exchange occurs across the alveolar membrane. Oxygen diffuses into the blood in alveolar capillaries and binds to the hemoglobin in erythrocytes. Carbon dioxide diffuses from the plasma



**Figure 9–6** Lower respiratory tract.

across the alveolar membrane into the alveolus. When an animal exhales, much of this air is pushed out of the alveolus, back up through the respiratory tract, and out the nose or mouth.

Alveoli contain liquid that reduces alveolar surface tension. This liquid is called **surfactant** (sihr-fahck-tehnt). Surfactant prevents collapse of the alveoli during expiration.

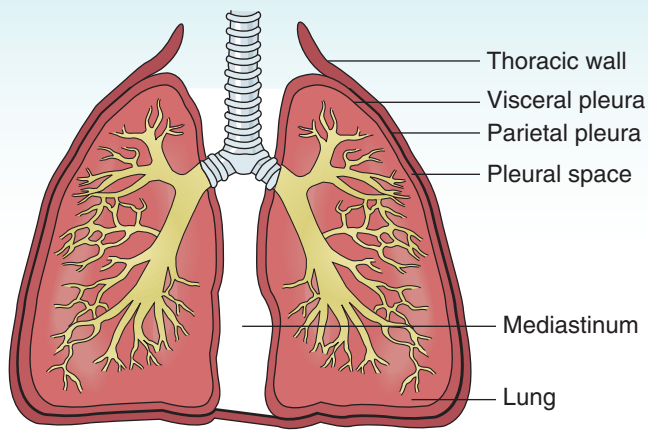
## Thorax

The thoracic cavity is contained within the ribs. The combining form **cost/o** means ribs. *Intercostal* means pertaining to between the ribs. The lungs are located in the thoracic cavity. The thoracic cavity also protects the lungs. The combining form **thorac/o** and the suffix **-thorax** mean chest cavity or chest.

The **lung** (luhng) is the main organ of respiration. There are two lungs (right and left) that are composed of divisions called **lobes** (lōbz). A lobe is a well-defined portion of an organ and is used in describing areas in the lung, liver, and other organs. The combining form **lob/o** means well-defined portion. The number and names of lung lobes vary between species. The combining forms **pneum/o**, **pneumon/o**, and **pneu** mean lung or air; the combining forms **pulm/o** and **pulmon/o** mean lung.

The term **parenchyma** (pah-rehnik-ih-mah) refers to the functional elements of an organ, as opposed to its framework, or **stroma** (strō-mah). The functional elements of the lung are collectively called the lung parenchyma.

The region between the lungs is called the **mediastinum** (mē-dē-ahs-tī-nuhm). The mediastinum is the space between the lungs that houses the heart, aorta, lymph nodes, esophagus,



**Figure 9–7** Respiratory structures of the thoracic cavity.

trachea, part of the bronchial tubes, nerves, thoracic duct, and thymus (Figure 9–7).

## Pleura

Each lung is encased in a membranous sac called the **pleura** (ploor-ah). The combining form **pleur/o** means membrane surrounding the lung; the plural form of pleura is **pleurae**.

- **Parietal pleura** (pah-rī-eh-tahl ploor-ah) is the outer layer of the membrane lining the inner wall of the thoracic cavity (Figure 9–7).
- **Visceral pleura** (vihs-ər-ahl ploor-ah) is the inner layer of the membrane lining the outside of the lung.
- **Pleural (ploor-ahl) space** is the potential space between the parietal pleura and visceral pleura. The pleural space or pleural cavity contains a small amount of lubricating fluid called pleural fluid. Pleural fluid prevents friction when the membranes rub together

during respiration and provides adhesive force to keep the lungs in contact with the chest wall as it expands during inspiration.

## Diaphragm

The thoracic and peritoneal cavities are separated from each other by the **diaphragm** (dī-ah-frahm) (Figure 9–1). The prefix **dia-** means across, and the combining form **phragm/o** means wall. The diaphragm is a muscle, and contraction of the diaphragm causes air pressure in the lungs to drop below atmospheric pressure. This produces a vacuum in the thoracic cavity to draw in air. When the diaphragm relaxes, this negative pressure is no longer generated and air is forced out of the lung. The combining forms **diaphragmat/o** and **phren/o** mean diaphragm. A **diaphragmatic hernia** (dī-ah-frahg-mah-tihck hēr-nē-ah) is an abnormal displacement of organs through the muscle separating the chest and abdomen (Figure 9–8). The phrenic nerve innervates the diaphragm.

The combining form **phren/o** also is used to refer to the mind. The ancient Greeks once thought that the spleen and kidneys were the organs responsible for emotion, and because the diaphragm sits across the cranial portion of these organs, phren/o was used for both the diaphragm and the mind.



**Figure 9–8** Radiograph of a diaphragmatic hernia. Intestinal organs are visible in the chest cavity.

## BREATHING

Breathing is the inhalation and exhalation of air. **Inhalation** (ihn-hah-lā-shuhn) is the drawing in of breath. **Inspiration** is another term for the drawing in of breath. **Exhalation** (ehcks-hah-lā-shuhn) is the release of breath. **Expiration** is another term for the release of breath. *Spirare* in Latin means to breathe. The combining form **spir/o** also means breath or breathing. Most medical terms use the Greek word **-pnea** to refer to breathing.

- **apnea** (ahp-nē-ah) = absence of breathing.
- **dyspnea** (dihsp-nē-ah) = difficult or labored breathing.
- **bradypnea** (brād-ihp-nē-ah) = abnormally slow respiratory rates.
- **tachypnea** (tahck-ihp-nē-ah) = abnormally rapid respiratory rates.
- **hyperpnea** (hī-pərp-nē-ah) = abnormal increase in the rate and depth of respirations.
- **hypopnea** (hī-pōp-nē-ah) = abnormally slow or shallow respirations.
- **hyperventilation** (hī-pər-vehn-tih-lā-shuhn) = abnormally rapid deep breathing, which results in decreased levels of cellular carbon dioxide.
- **agonal** (āg-uh-nuhl) **breathing** = respirations near death or during extreme suffering.

Respiration involves the diffusion of oxygen ( $O_2$ ) and carbon dioxide ( $CO_2$ ). The combining forms **ox/i**, **ox/o**, and **ox/y** refer to  $O_2$ , and **capn/o** refers to  $CO_2$ .

**Hypoxia** (hī-pohck-sē-ah) refers to an inadequate supply of oxygen to tissue despite an adequate blood supply. **Hypercapnia** (hī-pər-kahp-nē-ah) refers to excessive amounts of carbon dioxide in the blood. **Hyperventilation** (hī-pər-vehn-tih-lā-shuhn), an abnormal increase in the rate or depth of breathing, may lead to **hypocapnia** (hī-pō-kahp-nē-ah), which is a decrease in the carbon dioxide levels in the blood.

When carbon dioxide dissolves in water, some of it reacts with the water to form carbonic acid ( $H_2CO_3$ ). Because carbon dioxide breaks down into a weak acid, it affects the blood pH. An excessive amount of carbon dioxide in the blood due to decreased ventilation can lower the pH of blood; this is called **respiratory acidosis** (ah-sih-dō-sihs). If carbon dioxide levels are abnormally low due to increased ventilation, **respiratory alkalosis** (ahl-kah-lō-sihs) may result. Changes in blood pH also can result from metabolic factors (such as vomiting and renal disease) and are then called **metabolic acidosis** or **metabolic alkalosis** (Figure 9–9 and Table 9–2).

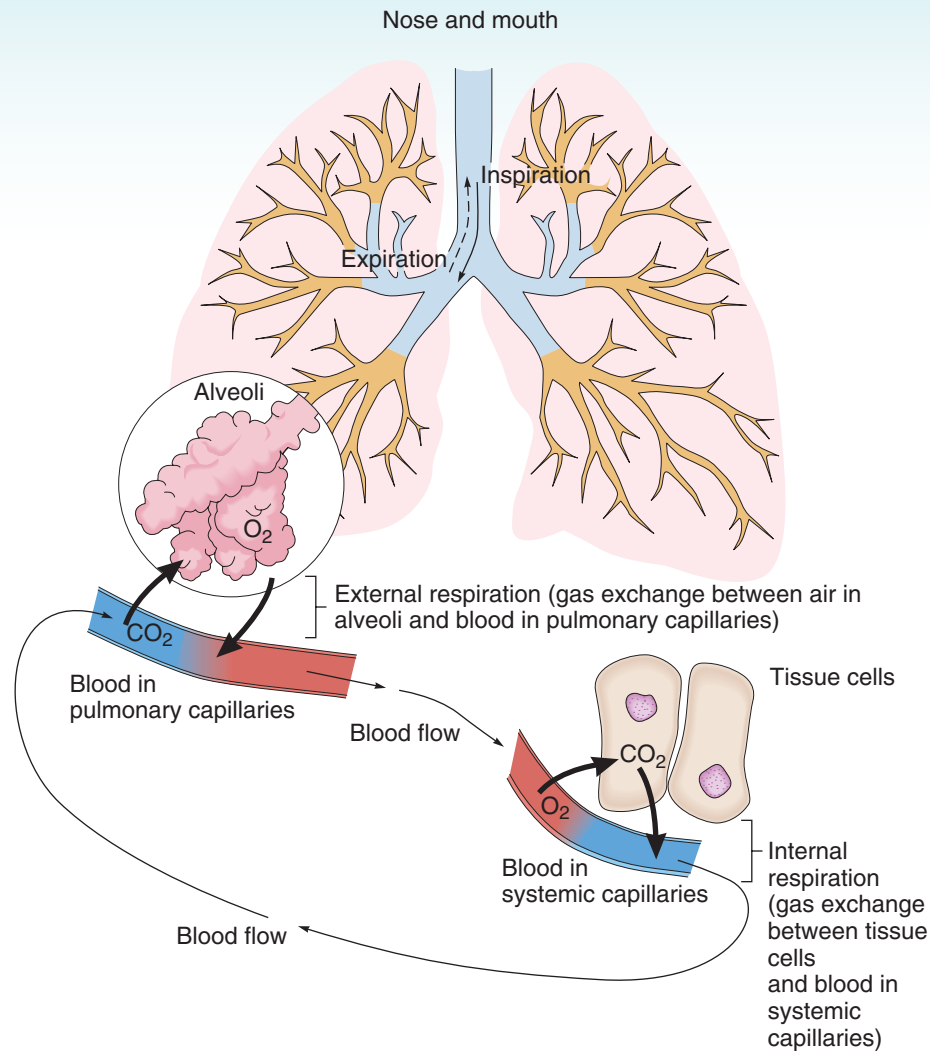
## TEST ME: RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Diagnostic procedures performed on the respiratory system include the following:

- **auscultation** (aws-kuhl-tā-shuhn) = act of listening. The respiratory tract is auscultated with a **stethoscope** (steth-ō-skōp). Respiratory rhythm, rate, and sound are evaluated upon auscultation. Pathologic respiratory sounds are called **adventitious** (ahd-vehn-tish-uhs) **sounds**. Things to listen for include:
  - **bubbling** = sound of popping bubbles that suggests fluid accumulation.
  - **crepitation** (krehp-ih-tā-shuhn) = fine or coarse interrupted crackling noises coming from collapsed or fluid-filled alveoli during inspiration; also called **rales** (rahlz) or crackles.
  - **decreased lung sounds** = less or no sound of air movement, suggesting consolidation of lung tissue.
  - **respiratory rate** (RR) = number of respirations per minute. One inspiration and one expiration form a single respiration. RR varies with species.
  - **rhonchi** (rohn-ki) = abnormal, continuous, musical, high-pitched whistling sounds heard during inspiration; also called **wheezes** (wē-zehz).
  - **stridor** (strī-dōr) = snoring, squeaking, or whistling that suggests airway narrowing.
  - **vesicular** (vehs-ihck-yoo-lahr) **sounds** = sound resulting from air passing through small bronchi and alveoli.

**Table 9–2 Lung Volume Terminology**

<b>tidal volume</b>	amount of air exchanged during normal respiration (air inhaled and exhaled in one breath)
<b>inspiratory reserve volume</b> or <b>complemental air</b>	amount of air inspired over the tidal volume (extra amount that could be inhaled after normal inspiration)
<b>expiratory reserve volume</b> or <b>supplemental air</b>	amount of air expired over the tidal volume (extra amount that could be exhaled after normal expiration)
<b>residual volume</b>	air remaining in the lungs after a forced expiration (amount of air trapped in alveoli)
<b>dead space</b>	air in the pathway of the respiratory system (termed <i>dead</i> because this air is not currently participating in gas exchange)
<b>minimal volume</b>	amount of air left in alveoli after the lung collapses
<b>vital capacity</b>	largest amount of air that can be moved in the lung (tidal volume + inspiratory and expiratory reserve volumes)

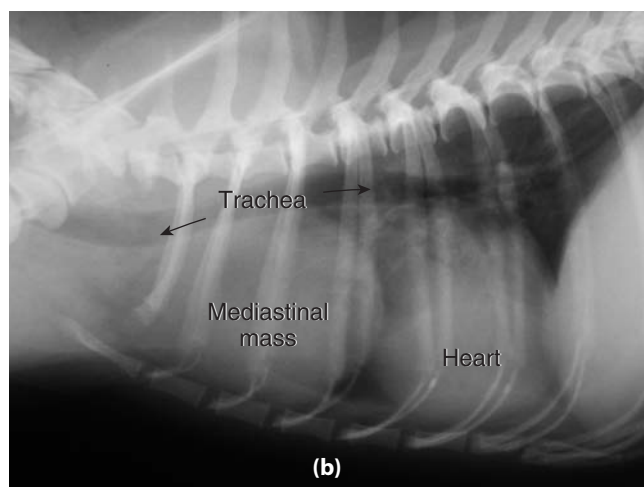
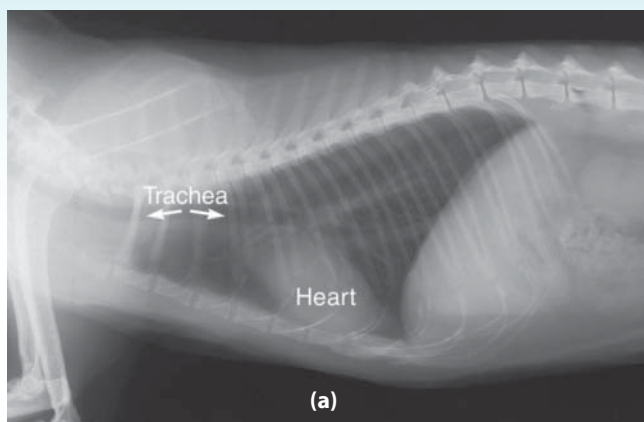


**Figure 9-9** External and internal respiration.

- **bronchoalveolar lavage** (brōhng-kō-ahl-vē-ō-lahr lah-vahj) = collection of fluid or mucus from the bronchi and/or alveoli via an endoscope or through an endotracheal tube inserted as far down the trachea caudally as possible before infusing fluid and aspirating a sample. Fluid may be used for cytologic examination.
- **bronchoscopy** (brōhng-kōhs-kō-pē) = visual examination of the bronchus. Bronchoscopy may be used to examine the bronchi for disease or foreign objects. A **bronchoscope** (brōhng-kō-skōp) is an instrument used to visually examine the bronchus.
- **laryngoscopy** (lahr-ihng-gōhs-kō-pē) = visual examination of the voice box. Laryngoscopy is used to examine the larynx for disease, tissue repair, or foreign objects. A **laryngoscope** (lahr-ihn-gō-skōp) is an instrument used to visually examine the voice box.
- **percussion** (pər-kuhsh-uhn) = diagnostic procedure used to determine density in which sound is produced by tapping various body surfaces with the finger or an

instrument. The sound produced over the chest where air is present differs from that of an area where fluid is present.

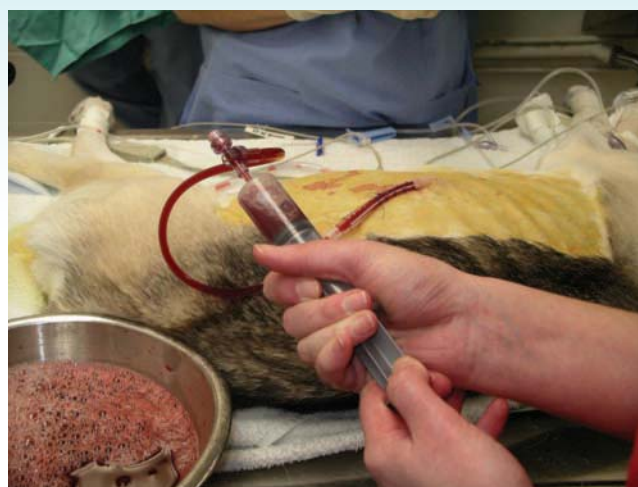
- **phlegm** (fleh-m) = thick mucus secreted by the respiratory lining. Mucus secretion from the lower respiratory tract is called **sputum** (spyoo-tuh-m). Sputum can be used for cytologic examination.
- **radiography** (rā-dē-ohg-rah-fē) = image of internal structures created by exposure of sensitized film to X-rays (Figures 9-10a and b). Ultrasound does not work well for the respiratory system because the ultrasound beam cannot pass through a gas-containing structure to provide information about the internal structures.
- **spirometer** (spār-oh-mē-tər) = instrument used to measure air taken in and out of the lungs.
- **thoracocentesis** (thō-rah-kō-sehn-tē-sihs) = puncture of the chest wall with a needle to obtain fluid from the pleural cavity. This fluid may be used for cytologic



**Figure 9-10** (a) Thoracic radiograph in a cat. This lateral thoracic radiograph reveals normal thoracic structures. (b) Thoracic radiograph of a dog with a mediastinal mass. [(a) Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital.]

and microbiologic examination. Thoracocentesis also may be performed to drain pleural effusions or to reexpand a collapsed lung. Thoracocentesis also is called **thoracocentesis** (thō-rah-sehn-tē-sihs) (Figure 9-11).

- **tracheal** (trā-kē-ahl) **wash** = collection of fluid or mucus from the trachea via an endotracheal tube to assess respiratory disease. Fluid may be used for cytologic and microbiologic examination.
- **transtracheal** (trahnz-trā-kē-ahl) **wash** = sterile collection of fluid or mucus from the trachea via a catheter inserted through the skin into the trachea to assess respiratory disease; abbreviated TTW. Fluid may be used for cytologic and microbiologic examination (Figure 9-12).
- **trephination** (trē-fin-ā-shuhn) = insertion of a hole-boring instrument (trephine) into a sinus to establish fluid drainage or to allow access to the roots of teeth.



**Figure 9-11** Thoracocentesis in a dog. Thoracocentesis is used to collect fluid or gas from the chest cavity. Fluid is collected ventrally, and gas is aspirated dorsally. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 9-12** Transtracheal wash in a dog. A TTW is initiated with insertion of a catheter into the trachea of a dog. A syringe filled with saline is attached to the opposite end of the catheter so that a small volume of saline may be introduced into the trachea and then quickly aspirated along with mucus. This sample is then ready for cytologic and microbiologic assessment. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

## PATHOLOGY: RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

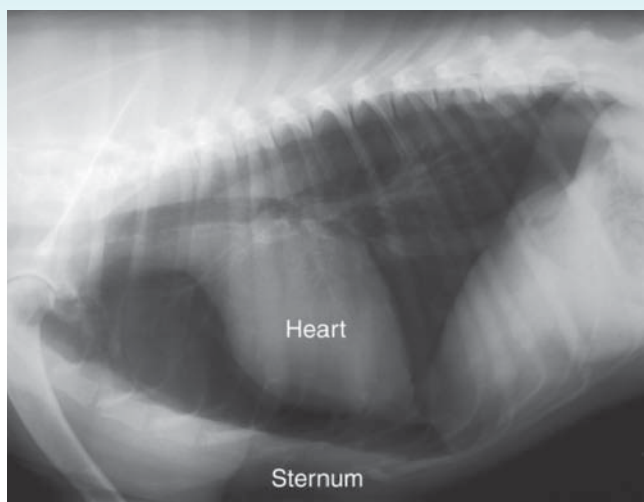
Pathologic conditions of the respiratory tract include the following:

- **anoxia** (ā-nohck-sē-ah) = absence of oxygen (almost complete lack of oxygen).
- **asphyxiation** (ahs-fihck-sē-ā-shuhn) = interruption of breathing resulting in lack of oxygen; also called suffocation.

- **aspiration** (ahs-pih-rā-shuhn) = inhalation of a foreign substance into the upper respiratory tract.
- **asthma** (ahz-mah) = chronic allergic disorder.
- **atelectasis** (aht-eh-lehck-tah-sihs) = incomplete expansion of the alveoli; also may mean collapse of a lung.
- **bronchiectasis** (brohng-kē-ehck-tah-sihs) = dilation of the bronchi. Bronchiectasis may be a **sequela** (sē-kwehl-ah) of inflammation or obstruction. Sequela is a condition following as a consequence of a disease.
- **bronchitis** (brohng-kī-tihs) = inflammation of the bronchi. Bronchitis may be **acute** (ah-küt), which means occurring over a short course with a sudden onset, or **chronic** (krohn-ihck), which means occurring over a long course with a progressive onset.
- **bronchopneumonia** (brohng-kō-nū-mō-nē-ah) = abnormal condition of the bronchi and lung.
- **chronic obstructive pulmonary disease** (krohn-ihck ohb-struhck-tihv puh-mah-nār-ē dih-zēz) = general term for abnormal conditions in equine species in which expiratory flow is slowed; commonly called heaves and abbreviated COPD. Horses with heaves may have a heave line, which is increased abdominal musculature associated with increased expiratory effort in horses with COPD.
- **cyanosis** (sī-ah-nō-sihs) = abnormal condition of blue discoloration. Cyanosis is caused by inadequate oxygen levels.
- **diaphragmatic hernia** (dī-ah-frahg-mah-tihck hār-nē-ah) = abnormal opening in the diaphragm that allows part of the abdominal organs to migrate into the chest cavity (Figure 9–8).
- **emphysema** (ehm-fih-zē-mah) = chronic lung disease caused by enlargement of the alveoli or changes in the alveolar wall.
- **epistaxis** (ehp-ih-stahck-sihs) = nosebleed.
- **equine laryngeal hemiplegia** (ē-kwīn lahr-ihn-jē-ahl hehm-ih-plē-jē-ah) = disorder of horses that is characterized by abnormal inspiratory noise during exercise associated with degeneration of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve and atrophy of the laryngeal muscles; also called **left laryngeal hemiplegia** or **roaring**.
- **hemoptysis** (hē-mohp-tih-sihs) = spitting of blood from the lower respiratory tract.
- **hemothorax** (hē-mō-thō-rahcks) = accumulation of blood in the chest cavity.
- **inflammation** (ihn-flah-mā-shuhn) = localized protective response to destroy, dilute, or wall off injury; classic signs are heat, redness, swelling, pain, and loss of function.
- **laryngitis** (lahr-ihn-jī-tihs) = inflammation of the voice box.
- **laryngoplegia** (lahr-ihng-gō-plē-jē-ah) = paralysis of the voice box.
- **laryngospasm** (lah-rihng-ō-spahzm) = sudden fluttering or closure of the voice box.
- **pharyngitis** (fār-ihn-jī-tihs) = inflammation of the throat.
- **phonation** (fō-nā-shuhn) = act of producing sound. **Aphonation** (ā-foh-nā-shuhn) is the inability to produce sound.
- **pleural effusion** (ploor-ahl eh-fū-shuhn) = abnormal accumulation of fluid in the pleural space. **Effusion** (eh-fū-shuhn) is fluid escaping from blood or lymphatic vessels into tissues or spaces. A small amount of lubricating fluid in the pleural space is normal.
- **pleurisy** (ploor-ih-sē) = inflammation of the pleura; also called **pleuritis** (ploor-ī-tihs).
- **pleuropneumonia** (ploor-ō-nū-mō-nē-ah) = abnormal condition of the pleura and the lung (usually involves inflammation and congestion).
- **pneumonia** (nū-mō-nē-ah) = abnormal condition of the lung that usually involves inflammation and congestion of the lung (Figure 9–13). **Congestion** (kohn-jehs-zhuhn) is the abnormal accumulation of fluid. **Interstitial** (ihn-tər-stih-shahl) pertains to the area between the cells; **interstitial pneumonia** is an abnormal lung condition with increased fluid between the alveoli and a decrease in lung function.
- **pneumothorax** (nū-mō-thōr-ahckz) = abnormal accumulation of air or gas in the chest cavity (Figure 9–14).
- **polyp** (pohl-uhp) = growth or mass protruding from a mucous membrane (usually benign).
- **pulmonary edema** (puhl-mohn-ār-ē eh-dē-mah) = accumulation of fluid in the lung tissue. **Edema** (eh-dē-mah) is abnormally large amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces.
- **pulmonary fibrosis** (puhl-mō-nār-ē fi-brō-sihs) = abnormal formation of fibers in the alveolar walls.
- **pyothorax** (pī-ō-thō-rahcks) = accumulation of pus in the chest cavity. **Pus** is a fluid product of inflammation composed of leukocytes, **exudate** (ehcks-yoo-dāt) (high-protein fluid), and cell debris.



**Figure 9–13** Heifer suffering from pneumonia. This heifer has a thick nasal discharge and labored breathing.



**Figure 9-14** Pneumothorax in a dog. Lateral projection of a pneumothorax demonstrates dorsal displacement of the heart from the sternum. (Courtesy of Wisconsin Veterinary Teaching Hospital—Radiology.)



**Figure 9-15** Young kitten with an upper respiratory tract infection. Note the nasal and ocular discharge.

- **rhinitis** (rī-nī-tihs) = inflammation of the nasal mucous membranes. Nasal discharge can be described by its appearance, such as mucopurulent (myoo-kō-pər-ū-lehnt), which means containing mucus and pus.
- **rhinopneumonitis** (rī-nō-nū-moh-nī-tihs) = inflammation of the nasal mucous membranes and lungs.
- **rhinorrhea** (rī-nō-rē-ah) = nasal discharge.
- **sinusitis** (sī-nuh-sī-tihs) = inflammation of a sinus.
- **snuffles** (snuhf-uhlz) = common term for upper respiratory disease of rabbits caused by *Pasteurella multocida*.
- **stenotic nares** (stehn-ah-tihck nār-ēz) = narrowed nostrils that reduce airway flow.
- **tracheitis** (trā-kē-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the windpipe.
- **tracheobronchitis** (trā-kē-ō-brohng-kī-tihs) = inflammation of the trachea and bronchi.
- **upper respiratory infection** = invasion of the nose, mouth, pharynx, epiglottis, or larynx (or trachea) by pathogenic organisms; abbreviated URI. Signs of URI include cough, nasal and ocular discharge, dyspnea, and respiratory noise (Figure 9-15).

A **cough** (kowf) is a sudden, noisy expulsion of air from the lungs. Coughs may be **paroxysmal** (pah-ohck-sihz-mahl), which means spasmlike and sudden. **Tuss/i** is the combining form for cough.

## PROCEDURES: RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the respiratory system include the following:

- **chest tube placement** = a chest tube is a hollow device inserted into the thoracic cavity to remove fluid or gas.

Drugs used on the respiratory system include **bronchoconstrictors** (brohng-kō-kohn-strihck-tərz), which are substances that narrow the openings into the lung, and **bronchodilators** (brohng-kō-dī-lā-tərz), which are substances that expand the openings into the lung. **Mucolytics** (mū-kō-lih-tihckz) are substances used to break down (**-lysis** means break down or separate) mucus. **Antitussives** (ahn-tih-tuhs-ihvz) are substances used to control or prevent coughing. The prefix **anti-** means against, and the combining form **-tussi** means cough.

Chest tubes are passed when animals are severely dyspneic because of pressure on the lungs (Figure 9-16).

- **endotracheal intubation** (ehn-dō-trā-kē-ahl ihn-too-bā-shuhn) = passage of a tube through the oral cavity, pharynx, and larynx into the windpipe. An endotracheal tube provides a **patent** (pā-tehnt) airway for administration of anesthetics or for critical care patients. *Patent* means open, unobstructed, or not closed.
- **laryngectomy** (lār-ihn-jehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the voice box.
- **laryngoplasty** (lah-rihng-ō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the voice box.



**Figure 9-16** A chest tube is a hollow device inserted into the thoracic cavity to remove fluid or gas. This dog is having blood removed from the thoracic cavity via a chest tube. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 9-17** Tracheostomy tube in a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

- **lobectomy** (lō-behck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a lobe.
- **pharyngoplasty** (fâr-rihng-ō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the throat.
- **pharyngostomy** (fâr-ihng-ohs-tō-mē) = surgical creation of an opening into the throat. A **stoma** (stō-mah) is an opening on a body surface that may occur naturally or may be created surgically.
- **pharyngotomy** (fâr-ihng-oht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the throat.
- **pleurectomy** (ploor-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of all or part of the pleura.
- **pneumonectomy** (nū-mō-nehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of lung tissue.
- **sinusotomy** (sī-nuhs-oht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into a sinus.
- **thoracotomy** (thō-rah-koht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the chest wall.
- **tracheoplasty** (trā-kē-ō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the windpipe.
- **tracheostomy** (trā-kē-ohs-tō-mē) = surgical creation of an opening into the windpipe (usually involves insertion and placement of a tube) (Figure 9-17).
- **tracheotomy** (trā-kē-oht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the windpipe.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The wall that divides the nasal cavity is called the
  - a. nasodivision
  - b. nares
  - c. nasal septum
  - d. nasal meatus
2. Parts of the respiratory tract contain thin hairs called
  - a. flagella
  - b. naris
  - c. surfactant
  - d. cilia
3. An abnormal condition of blue discoloration is called
  - a. bluing
  - b. cyanosis
  - c. xanthochromia
  - d. erythemia
4. Inhaling a foreign substance into the upper respiratory tract is called
  - a. asphyxiation
  - b. effusion
  - c. atelectasis
  - d. aspiration

5. Hypoxia is
  - a. below-normal levels of oxygen
  - b. above-normal levels of oxygen
  - c. below-normal levels of carbon dioxide
  - d. below-normal levels of carbon dioxide and oxygen
6. Liquid that reduces alveolar surface tension is called
  - a. surfactant
  - b. mucus
  - c. rhinorrhea
  - d. mucorrhea
7. A condition following as a consequence of disease is a(n)
  - a. chronic condition
  - b. acute condition
  - c. sequela
  - d. consequensosis
8. A substance that works against, controls, or stops a cough is a(n)
  - a. bronchoconstrictor
  - b. bronchodilator
  - c. mucolytic
  - d. antitussive
9. Abnormal accumulation of blood in the pleural cavity is
  - a. hemothorax
  - b. hemoptysis
  - c. hemopleuritis
  - d. hemopneumonia
10. A growth or mass protruding from a mucous membrane is a
  - a. nasogastric
  - b. polyp
  - c. bifurcation
  - d. stridor
11. Tubes that bifurcate from the trachea are known as
  - a. alveoli
  - b. bronchi
  - c. bronchioles
  - d. nares
12. A nosebleed is known as
  - a. pleurisy
  - b. atelectasis
  - c. aspiration
  - d. epistaxis
13. Snoring, squeaking, or whistling that suggests airway narrowing is known as
  - a. sequela
  - b. polyp
  - c. rhonchi
  - d. stridor
14. Difficult breathing is known as
  - a. dysphonia
  - b. dyspnea
  - c. dysphagia
  - d. dyspepsia
15. Pus in the chest cavity is called
  - a. pyothorax
  - b. polyp
  - c. hemiplegia
  - d. hemoptysis
16. Tapping various body surfaces with the finger or an instrument to determine sound density is known as
  - a. vesicular sounds
  - b. crepitation
  - c. percussion
  - d. rales
17. The potential space between the parietal and visceral pleura is the
  - a. parenchyma
  - b. stroma
  - c. diaphragmatic space
  - d. pleural space
18. The alveoli are
  - a. branches of the bronchial tree
  - b. flexible air sacs where gas exchange occurs
  - c. divisions of the lung
  - d. sacs that surround the lung
19. The epiglottis
  - a. acts as a lid over the entrance to the esophagus
  - b. acts as a lid over the entrance to the trachea
  - c. is commonly known as the Adam's apple
  - d. is also known as the voice box
20. Which term means an abnormally rapid respiration rate?
  - a. apnea
  - b. bradypnea
  - c. dyspnea
  - d. tachypnea

## Matching

Match the common term in Column I with the anatomical term in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ windpipe	a. pharynx
2. _____ throat	b. thorax
3. _____ voice box	c. larynx
4. _____ chest	d. trachea
5. _____ nostril	e. naris
6. _____ cilia	f. abnormally large amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces
7. _____ edema	g. spitting up of blood from the lower respiratory tract
8. _____ atelectasis	h. incomplete expansion of the alveoli
9. _____ sequela	i. tiny hairs
10. _____ anoxia	j. occurring over a short course
11. _____ antitussive	k. occurring over a long course
12. _____ hemoptysis	l. condition following as a consequence of a disease
13. _____ acute	m. act of listening
14. _____ chronic	n. substance that controls or prevents coughing
15. _____ auscultation	o. absence of oxygen

## Fill in the Blanks

1. Ox/i, ox/o, and ox/y refer to \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Nas/o and rhin/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Pulm/o and pulmon/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Pneum/o, pneumon/o, and pneu mean \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Ventilation and breathing mean \_\_\_\_\_.

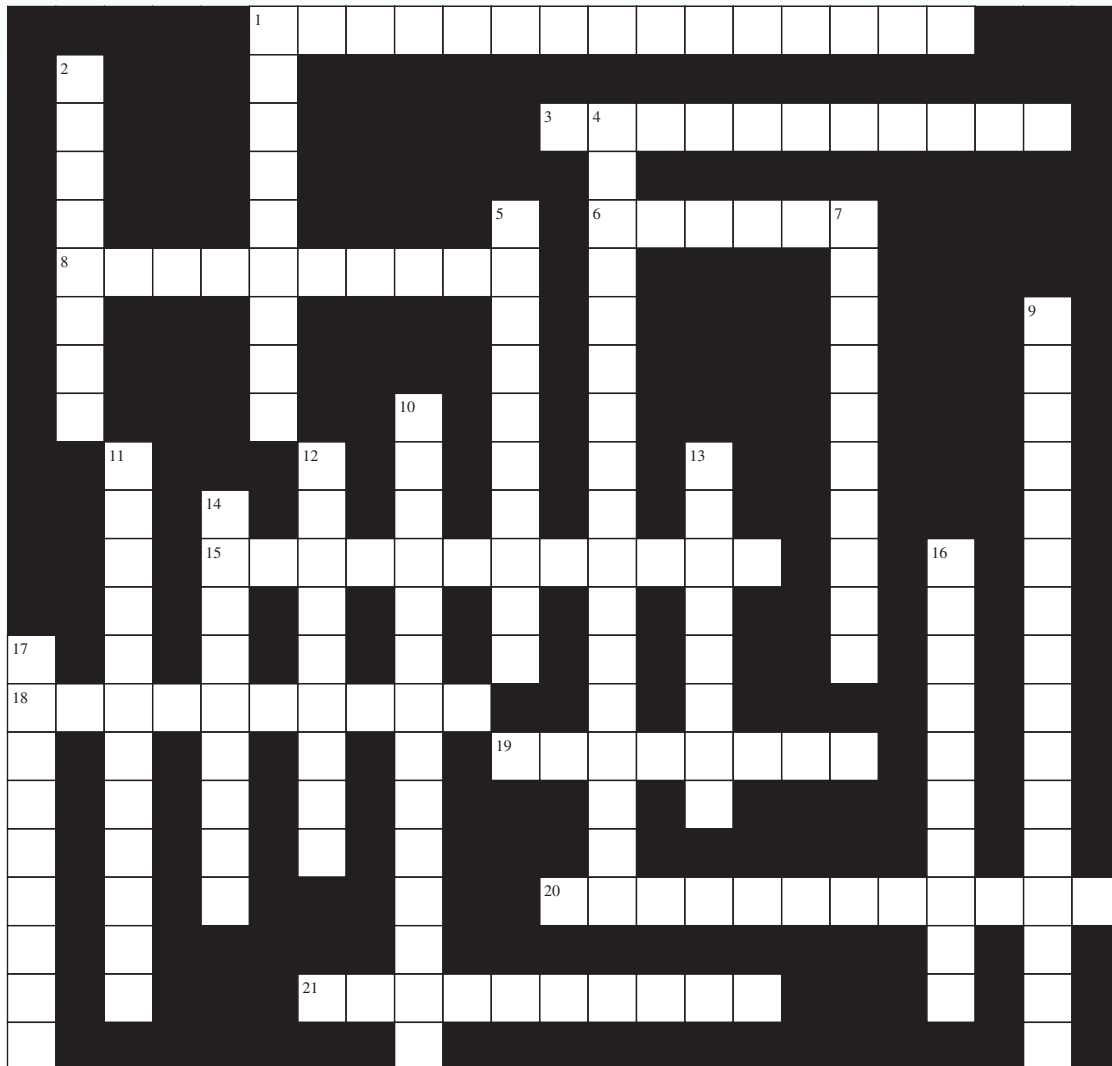
## Spelling

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |  |             |              |              |
|--|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. abnormal condition of the lung that usually involves inflammation and congestion of the lung: | pnuemonia   | pneumonia    | pnuemohnia   |
| 2. interruption of breathing resulting in lack of oxygen:  | asfyxiation | asphixiation | asphyxiation |
| 3. slimelike substance that is composed of glandular secretion, salts, cells, and leukocytes:    | mucous      | mukus        | mucus        |
| 4. chronic allergic disorder:  | astmah      | asthma       | asmah        |
| 5. muscle that separates the thoracic and abdominal cavities:                                    | diafragm    | diaphram     | diaphragm    |

# CROSSWORD PUZZLE

## Disease Terms Puzzle



### Across

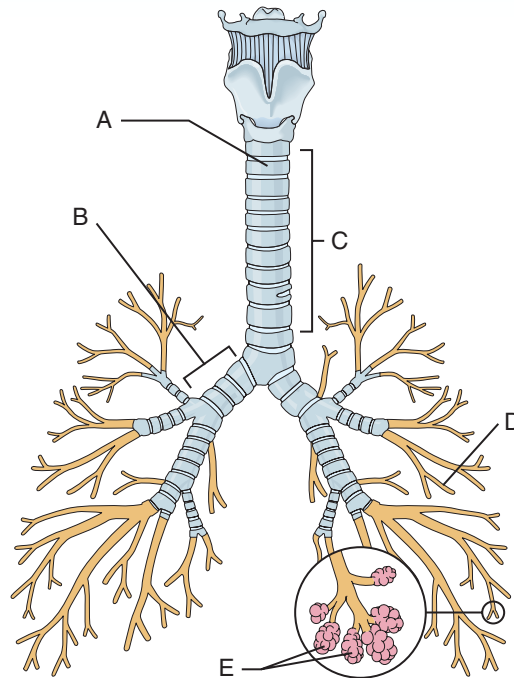
- 1 abnormal condition of the pleura and the lung
- 3 incomplete expansion of the alveoli
- 6 absence of oxygen (almost complete lack of oxygen).
- 8 nasal discharge
- 15 abnormal accumulation of air or gas in the chest cavity
- 18 accumulation of blood in the chest cavity
- 19 inflammation of the nasal mucous membranes
- 20 interruption of breathing resulting in lack of oxygen
- 21 spitting of blood from the lower respiratory tract

### Down

- 1 accumulation of pus in the chest cavity
- 2 inflammation of the pleura
- 4 inflammation of the trachea and bronchi
- 5 inflammation of the voice box
- 7 inhalation of a foreign substance into the upper respiratory tract.
- 9 abnormal condition of the bronchi and lung
- 10 accumulation of fluid in the lung tissue
- 11 localized protective response to destroy, dilute, or wall off injury
- 12 abnormal condition of the lung that usually involves inflammation and congestion of the lung
- 13 abnormal condition of blue discoloration
- 14 nosebleed
- 16 inflammation of the bronchi
- 17 act of producing sound

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

Label the diagram in Figure 9–18.



**Figure 9–18** Respiratory tract. Label the parts of the lower respiratory tract as indicated by arrows. Provide the combining form for each part.

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

An 8-mo-old F DSH was presented to the clinic for routine surgery. The cat was given an IV drug to sedate it so that an endotracheal tube could be placed. The endotracheal tube (ET tube) would serve as a delivery route for inhalant anesthesia. Upon attempts to intubate the cat, the larynx started to swell and spasm because of trauma. The cat had inspiratory dyspnea, a severe cough, cyanotic mucous membranes, and an elevated pulse rate. The diagnosis of laryngeal spasm was made. A drug (lidocaine) was placed in the laryngeal area to control the spasms, and endotracheal intubation was again attempted. After a few attempts, the ET tube was inserted, and the cat's breathing and mucous membrane color improved. If the ET tube could not have been placed, a tracheotomy would have been performed.

1. endotracheal tube \_\_\_\_\_
2. intubate \_\_\_\_\_
3. inspiratory dyspnea \_\_\_\_\_
4. cough \_\_\_\_\_
5. cyanotic \_\_\_\_\_
6. diagnosis \_\_\_\_\_
7. laryngeal spasm \_\_\_\_\_
8. tracheotomy \_\_\_\_\_

A group of beef cattle was moved into a feedlot about 2 wk ago. Some of the cattle are experiencing anorexia, are pyrexia, and have mucopurulent nasal discharge. Some of the cattle have rapid shallow breathing and a cough. Auscultation of the lungs revealed moist rales. Because of the history and respiratory signs, the veterinarian suspected bovine pneumonic pasteurellosis, or shipping fever, a severe respiratory disease seen in younger animals after shipping or stress. The affected cattle were isolated and treated with antibiotics. Management practices such as immunization and stress reduction were discussed with the owner.

9. anorexia \_\_\_\_\_
10. pyrexia \_\_\_\_\_
11. mucopurulent nasal discharge \_\_\_\_\_
12. auscultation \_\_\_\_\_
13. rales \_\_\_\_\_
14. bovine \_\_\_\_\_
15. pneumonic \_\_\_\_\_

# CHAPTER 10

## SKIN DEEP

### Objectives

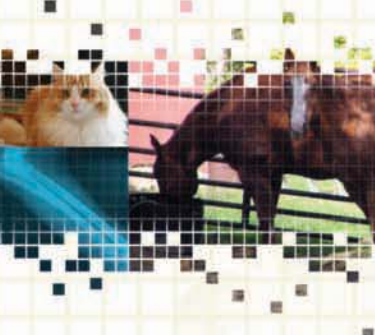
*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify the structures of the integumentary system
- Describe the functions of the integumentary system
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce the terms used to describe the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the integumentary system

### FUNCTIONS OF THE INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

The **integumentary** (ihn-tehg-yoo-mehn-tah-rē) **system** consists of skin and its appendages. (Appendages include glands, hair, fur, wool, feathers, scales, claws, beaks, horns, hooves, and nails.) One of the largest organ systems in the body, the integumentary system is involved in many processes.

Skin plays a role in protecting animals from infection, waterproofing the body, preventing fluid loss, providing species-specific coloration, and providing a site for vitamin D synthesis. Exocrine glands, both sebaceous and sweat, are located in the integumentary system. Sebaceous glands lubricate the skin and discourage bacterial growth on the skin. Sweat glands regulate body temperature and excrete wastes through sweat. Hair and nails are other components of the integumentary system. Hair helps control body heat loss and is a sense receptor. Nails protect the dorsal surface of the distal phalanx.



## STRUCTURES OF THE INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

The integumentary system is on the outside of the body and is resilient and versatile because it is subjected to a variety of insults such as trauma, toxic chemicals, and environmental conditions.

### Skin

Skin covers the external surfaces of the body. The skin is composed of **epithelial** (ehp-ih-thē-lē-ahl) **tissue** and is sometimes called the **epithelium** (ehp-ih-thē-lē-uhm). The combining forms for skin are **cutane/o**, **derm/o**, and **dermat/o**; the suffix **-derma** means skin. **Dermatology** (dər-mah-tohl-ō-jē) is the study of skin.

### Skin Stratification

The skin is made up of three layers: the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous layer (Figure 10–1). The outermost, or most superficial, layer of skin is the **epidermis** (ehp-ih-dər-mihs). The prefix **epi-** means above, and **dermis** means skin. The epidermis is several layers thick and does not contain blood vessels. The epidermis is sometimes called the avascular layer because it lacks blood vessels. The epidermis depends on the deeper layers for nourishment.

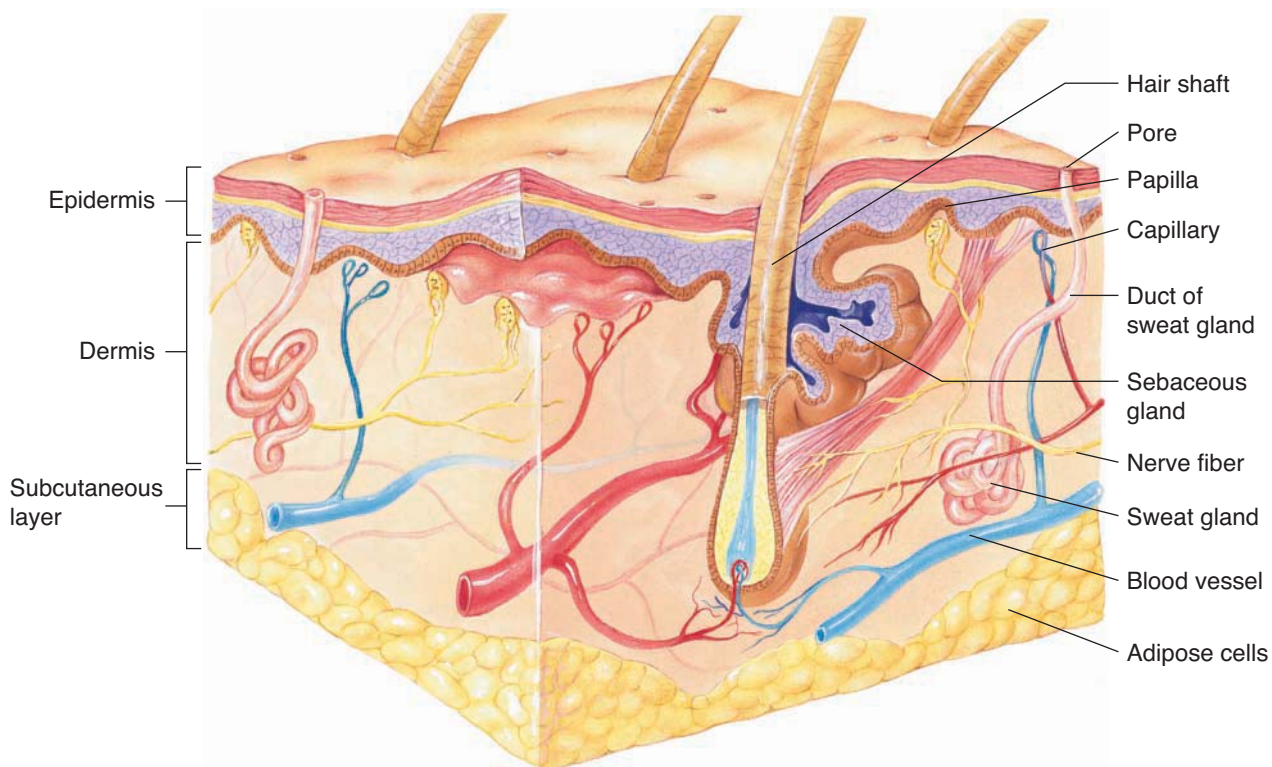
The thickness of the epidermis varies greatly from region to region in all animals. The thickest layers of the epidermis are

found in the areas of greatest exposure, such as the foot pads and teats.

The epidermis is made up of squamous epithelium and the basal layer (Table 10–1). **Squamous epithelium** (skwā-muhs ehp-ih-thē-lē-uhm) is composed of flat, plate-like cells. Because these flat, platelike cells are arranged in many layers, this layer is called stratified squamous epithelium (Figure 10–2).

The basal layer is the deepest layer of the epidermis. Cells layer, multiply, and push upward into the basal layer. As the cells move superficially, they die and become filled with **keratin** (kehr-ah-tihn). Keratin is a protein that provides skin with its waterproofing properties. The combining form for keratin is **kerat/o**. Kerat/o also means horny or cornea. The basal layer also contains **melanocytes** (mehl-ah-nō-sītz), which produce and contain a black pigment. This black pigment is called **melanin** (mehl-ah-nihh). The combining form **melan/o** means black or dark. Melanin protects the skin from some of the harmful rays of the sun and is responsible for skin pigmentation. The absence of normal pigmentation is called **albinism** (ahl-bih-nihz-uhm); true albinism means that the hair, skin, and eyes have no pigmentation.

The **dermis** (dər-mihs) is the layer directly deep to the epidermis. The dermis also is called the **corium** (kō-rē-uhm). The dermis is composed of blood and lymph vessels, nerve fibers, and the accessory organs of the skin. The dermis also contains connective tissue, which is composed of the following cells:



**Figure 10–1** Skin layers.

## Table 10-1 Layers of the Epidermis

The epidermis has five layers (from dermis to most superficial); *stratum* means layer or sheetlike mass.

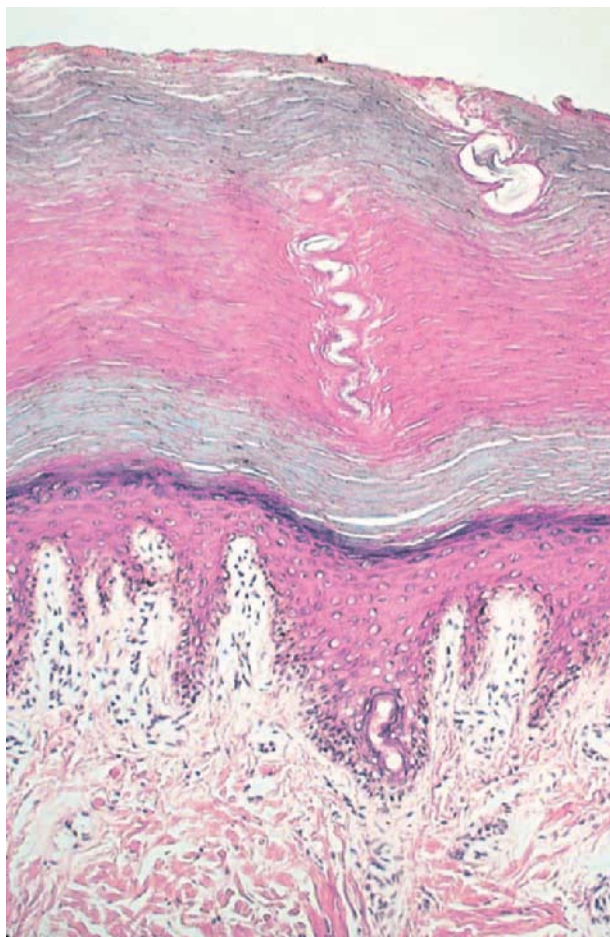
**stratum basale** (strah-tuhm bā-sahl) or **stratum germinativum** (gār-mihn-ā-tihv-uhm) = deepest or basal layer that continually multiplies to replenish cells lost from the epidermal surface. **Cuboidal** (kyoo-boy-dahl) or cubelike cells are arranged in rows.

**stratum spinosum** (strah-tuhm spī-nō-suhm) = layer immediately superficial to the stratum basale, which is thickest in hairless regions and in areas of high wear and tear. **Keratinization** (kehr-ah-tihn-ah-zā-shuhn) and **desquamation** (deh-skwah-mā-shuhn) begin in this layer. Keratinization is the development of the hard, protein constituent of hair, nails, epidermis, horny structures, and tooth enamel. Desquamation is the process in which cell organelles gradually dissolve. The stratum spinosum also is called the **prickle** or **spinous layer**.

**stratum granulosum** (strah-tuhm grahn-yoo-lō-suhm) = layer immediately superficial to the stratum spinosum. Cells contain keratin granules in their cytoplasm.

**stratum lucidum** (strah-tuhm loo-sih-duhm) = layer immediately superficial to the stratum granulosum, which is clear because of the accumulation of keratin fibers in cell cytoplasm. This layer is not present in all species, but when present, it is found in areas of high wear and tear such as the foot pads.

**stratum corneum** (strah-tuhm kohr-nē-uhm) = most superficial layer of the epidermis, which consists of layers of dead, highly keratinized, and flattened cells; also called the **horny layer**.



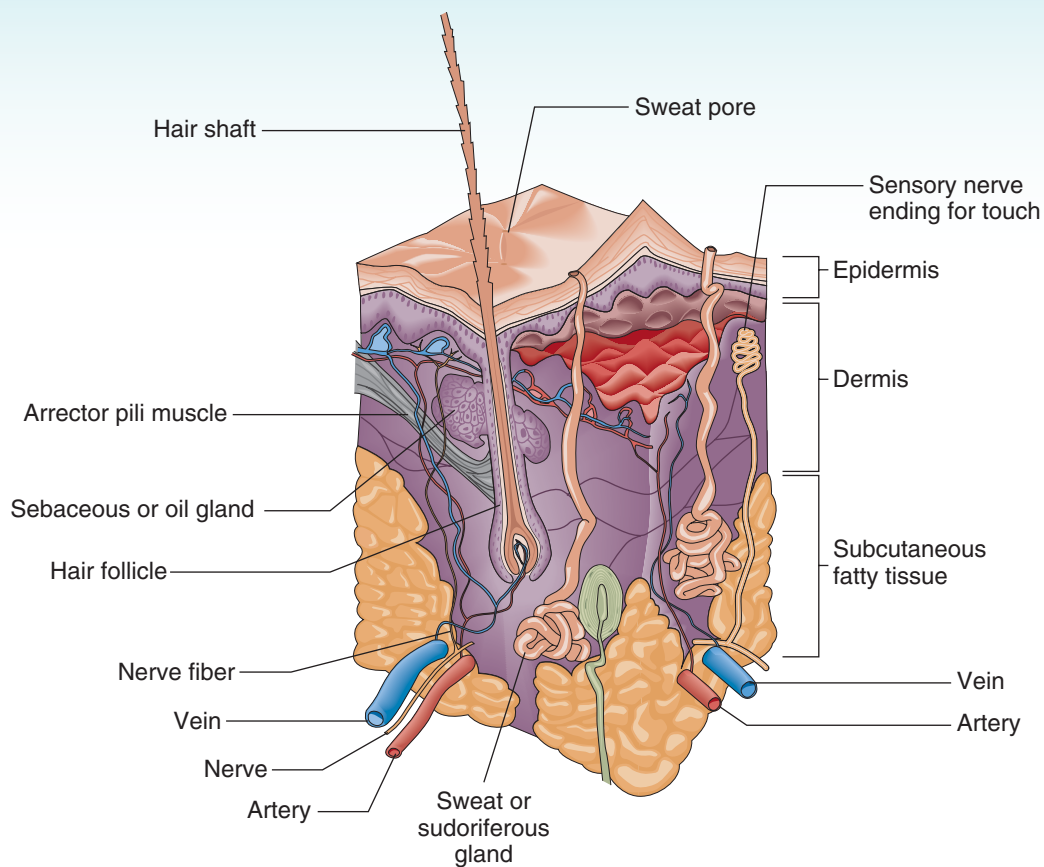
**Figure 10-2** Photomicrograph of the specialized skin found in the foot pad of a cat. (Courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, VMD.)

- **fibroblasts** (fī-brō-blahsts) = fiber-producing cells. Collagen (kohl-ah-jehn) is the major fiber in the dermis.
- **collagen** (kohl-ah-jehn) = tough, flexible, fibrous protein found in skin, bone, cartilage, tendons, and ligaments. *Kolla* in Greek means glue, and **-gen** means to produce.
- **histiocytes** (hihs-tē-ō-sits) = phagocytic cells that engulf foreign substances; also called tissue **macrophages** (mahck-rō-fājs or mahck-rō-fahjs).
- **mast cells** = cells that respond to insult by producing and releasing histamine and heparin.
- **histamine** (hihs-tah-mēn) = chemical released in response to allergens that causes itching.
- **heparin** (hehp-ah-rihn) = anticoagulant chemical released in response to injury.
- **perception** (pār-sehp-shuhn) = ability to recognize sensory stimuli. Perception is received by nerve impulses that recognize temperature, touch, pain, and pressure. **Tactile** (tahck-til) perception is the ability to recognize touch sensation.

The **subcutaneous** (suhb-kyoo-tahn-ē-uhs) **layer**, or **hypodermis** (hī-pō-dər-mihs), is located deep to or under the dermis and is composed of connective tissue. The subcutaneous layer contains a large amount of **fat**, or **lipid** (lih-p-ihd). Adipocytes (ahd-ih-pō-sits) are fat cells that produce lipid. **Adip/o** is the combining form for fat (Figure 10-3).

## Skin Association

Appendages or structures associated with the skin include glands, hair, fur, wool, feathers, scales, claws, beaks, horns, hooves, and nails.



**Figure 10-3** Skin structures.

## Glands

There are two main categories of skin glands: sebaceous and sweat glands. **Sebaceous** (seh-bā-shuhs) **glands**, or **oil glands**, secrete an oily substance called **sebum** (sē-buhm). **Seb/o** is the combining form that means sebum or oily substance. Sebaceous glands are located in the dermis and are closely associated with hair follicles. Sebum is released from its gland through **ducts** (duhckts) that open into the hair follicles. Ducts are tubelike passages; tiny ducts are called **ductules**. Sebum moves from the hair follicle to the skin surface, where it lubricates the skin. Sebum is slightly acidic and retards bacterial growth on the skin. Sebaceous glands are considered **holocrine** (hō-lō-krihn) **glands** because the secreting cells and their secretions make up the discharge produced. Sebaceous glands are found in the anal sacs, glands that produce musk, and circumoral and supracaudal glands, which cats use to mark territory when they groom and rub their tail, respectively.

**Sweat** (sweht), or **sudoriferous** (soo-dohr-ihf-ohr-uhs), **glands** are aggregations of cells that are located in the dermis. Sweat glands are divided into **eccrine** (ē-krihn) **glands** and **apocrine** (ahp-ō-krihn) **glands**. Eccrine sweat glands produce and secrete water, salt, and waste (sweat) and are located in various regions of the body depending on the species. Eccrine sweat glands are tiny, coiled glands that have ducts that open directly onto the skin surface through pores. Apocrine

glands produce and secrete a strong-smelling substance into the hair follicles. Apocrine glands are found throughout the body. Apocrine glands get their name from the fact that the free end or apical end of the cell is cast off along with the secretory products. Sweat glands help regulate body temperature against **hyperthermia** (hī-pər-thər-mē-ah), or high body temperature, and **hypothermia** (hī-pō-thər-mē-ah), or low body temperature.

**Hidrosis** (hī-drō-sihs) is the production and excretion of sweat. The combining form **hidr/o** means sweat. **Anhidrosis** (ahn-hī-drō-sihs) is the abnormal reduction of sweating; **hyperhidrosis** (hī-pər-hī-drō-sihs) is excessive sweating.

**Ceruminous** (seh-roo-mihn-uhs) glands are modified sweat glands that are located in the ear canal. The ceruminous glands secrete **cerumen** (seh-roo-mehn), a waxy substance of varying colors depending on the species; cerumen is commonly called **earwax**.

## Hair

Hair is rodlike fibers made of dead protein cells filled with keratin. The combining forms for hair are **pil/i**, **pil/o**, and **trich/o**. The hair shaft is the portion of hair extending beyond the skin surface and is composed of the **cuticle** (kū-tih-kuhl), **cortex** (kōr-tehckz), and **medulla** (meh-doo-lah). The cuticle is one cell layer thick and appears scaly. The cortex is the main component of the



### What is hair?

Animals have many different types of hair; therefore, many different terms describe the types of hair animals may have.

- **fur** = short, fine, soft hair.
- **pelt** = skin in addition to fur or hair.
- **guard hairs** = long, straight, stiff hairs that form the outer coat; also called **primary hairs** or **topcoat**. Guard hairs include tail and mane hair, bristly hair of swine, and most of the fur hair.
- **secondary hairs** = finer, softer, and wavy hair; also called the **undercoat**. Secondary hairs include wool and wavy hair located near the skin of rabbits.
- **tactile** (tahck-tīl) **hair** = long, brittle, extremely sensitive hairs usually located on the face; also called **vibrissae** (vī-brihs-ā), which are technically longer tactile hairs. An example of vibrissae are cat whiskers.
- **cilia** (sihl-ē-ah) = thin, short hairs. An example of cilia are the eyelashes.
- **simple pattern hair growth** = guard hairs that grow from separate follicular openings, as in cattle.
- **compound pattern hair growth** = multiple guard hairs that grow from single follicles, as in dogs.
- **shedding** = normal hair loss caused by temperature, hormones, photoperiod (light), nutrition, and other nondisease causes.

hair shaft, is several layers thick, and is responsible for coat color. The medulla is the innermost component of the hair shaft.

Hair **follicles** are sacs that hold the hair fibers. The **arrector pili** (ah-rehck-tər pī-lī) is a tiny muscle attached to the hair

Things tend to be named for a reason.

Sometimes bacteria, viruses, and fungi are named for the size, shape, or organism they affect.

One example is the fungal genus *Trichophyton*.

**Trich/o** means hair, and **phyt/o** means plant.

**Fungi** are vegetative organisms (plants) that grow as branched, hairlike filaments (trich/o).

follicle that causes the hair to stand erect in response to cold temperatures or stress. When a dog contracts the arrector pili along the dorsal side of the neck and down the spine, it is called “raising the hackles.” **Piloerection** (pī-lō-ē-rehck-shuhn) is the condition of the hair standing straight up.

Feathers and scales are discussed in Chapters 22 and 23, respectively.

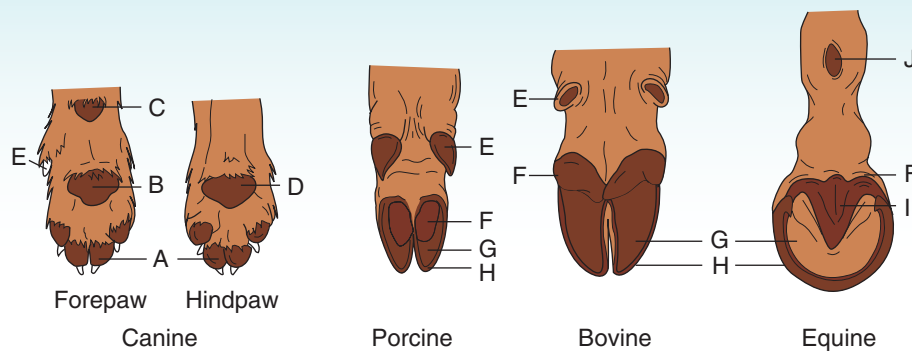
### Nails, Claws, and Hooves

The distal phalanx of animals is covered by nails, claws, or hooves. Nails, claws, and hooves all have a wall, sole, and pad, although they may be called different things. **Walls** usually are located dorsal and lateral to the distal phalanx. The **sole** is located ventral to the distal phalanx and usually is flaky. **Foot pads**, or **tori** (tohr-ē), provide cushioning and protection for the bones of the foot. Pads usually are thick and composed of keratinized epithelium. The pad has a subcutaneous layer that contains a large number of adipose cells and elastic connective tissue. Sweat glands are also found in most mammalian foot pads (Figure 10–4).

Dogs and cats have **digital pads** on the palmar and plantar surfaces of the phalanges. **Metacarpal** and **metatarsal pads** are singular pads located on the palmar and plantar surfaces of the metacarpal and metatarsal areas, respectively.

**Carpal pads** are located on the palmar surface of each carpus. Carpal pads do not bear weight when the animal is standing. Dogs and cats are called **digitigrade** (dihg-ih-tih-grād) animals because they walk on their toes, with only the digital and metacarpal and metatarsal pads making contact with the ground. **Plantigrade** (plahnt-ih-grād) animals have well-developed foot pads, such as those in primates. Plantigrade animals walk with phalanges, metacarpals and metatarsals, and carpal and tarsal bones making contact with the ground.

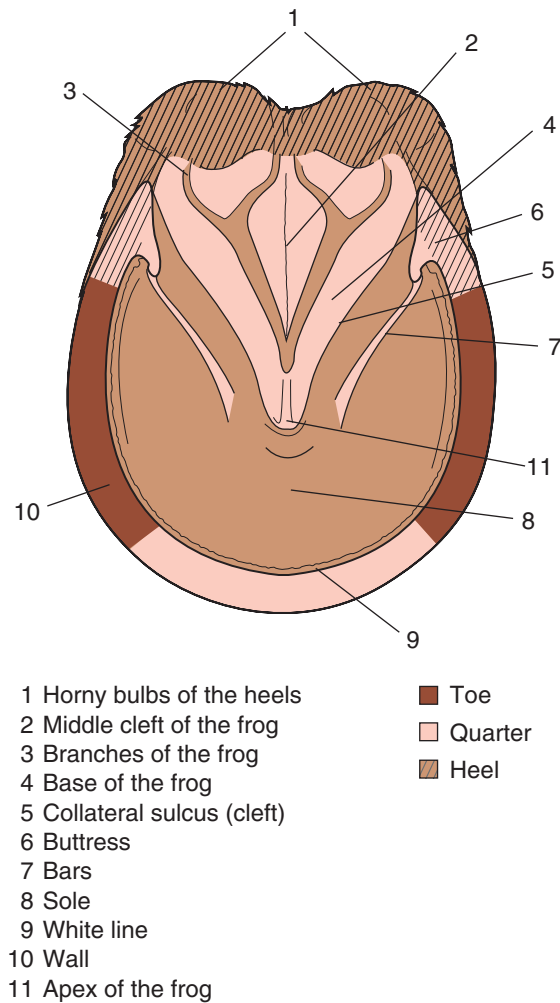
In dogs and cats, **nails** and **claws** are keratin plates covering the dorsal surface of the distal phalanx. The dorsal and lateral surface of the claw is covered by the wall, and the ventral surface is the sole. Beneath the wall and sole is the connective tissue dermis, which contains numerous blood



**Figure 10-4** Comparison of animal feet. A = digital pad, B = metacarpal pad, C = carpal pad, D = metatarsal pad, E = dewclaw, F = bulb or heel, G = sole, H = wall, I = frog, and J = ergot.

The equine hoof is divided into various regions: the coronary band, periople, wall, bars, sole, bulb, and frog (Figure 10-5).

- **coronary** (kohr-ō-nār-ē) **band** = region where hoof meets the skin; analogous to the cuticle of the human nail. The coronary band is the site of hoof wall growth; also called the **coronet**.
- **periople** (pehr-ē-ō-puhl) = flaky tissue band located at the junction of the coronary band and the hoof wall and extends distally. The periople widens at the heel to cover the bulbs of the heels.
- **wall** = epidermal tissue that includes the toe (front), quarters (sides), and heels (back).
- **bars** (bahrz) = raised V-shaped structure on ventral surface of hoof. Bars are located on either side of the frog.
- **sole** (sōl) = softer hoof tissue located on the ventral surface of the hoof (bottom of the hoof).
- **frog** (frohg) = V-shaped pad of soft horn located in the central region of the ventral hoof surface of equine (located between the bars). When weight is put on the frog, blood is forced out of the foot to promote circulation of blood throughout the foot.
- **bulbs** (buhlbz) **of heel** = upward thickening of the frog above the heels of the wall.

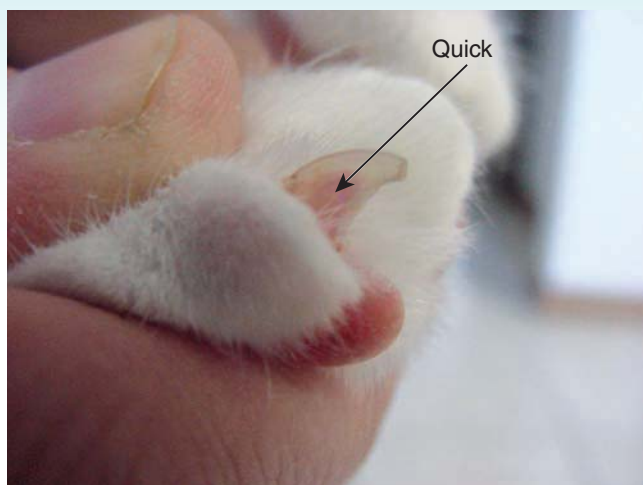


**Figure 10-5** Parts of an equine hoof.

vessels and nerve endings. This sensitive tissue is known as the **quick** (Figure 10-6).

**Quicking** is the term used to describe trimming the nail or claw to the level of the dermis. Quicking results in bleeding and pain. The combining form for claw is **onych/o**.

**Hooves** are the horny covering of the distal phalanx in **ungulates** (uhng-yoo-lätz), or **hooved animals**, such as equine, ruminants, and swine. Some ungulates have a solid hoof, as in equine, and some have cloven or split hooves, as in



**Figure 10-6** Quick of a cat nail.

ruminants and swine. The ventral surface of the hoof is the sole, which is large in equine and smaller in ruminants and swine. The combining form for hoof is **ungul/o**.

The pads of ungulates vary with the species. In ruminants and swine, the foot pad is called the bulb or heel. The pad of equine is called the frog and along with the bulb provides shock absorption. The **corium** (kōr-ē-uhm) is the dermis of the hoof and is located under the epidermal surface of the hoof wall, sole, and frog. The corium corresponds to the quick.

### Vestigial Structures

Vestigial, or rudimentary, structures of the integumentary system include dewclaws, chestnuts, and ergots. **Dewclaws** (doo-klawz) are rudimentary bones. The dewclaw in dogs is the first digit, whereas in cloven-hoofed animals, the dewclaws are digits II and V. Dewclaws in dogs usually are found in the forepaw (although they occasionally are seen in the hindpaw) and may be removed within a few days of birth to avoid trauma.

Chestnuts and ergots are vestigial pads in equine. **Chestnuts** are located on the medial surface of the leg; in the

front leg, they are located above the knee, and in the hind leg, they are located below the hock (Figures 10-7a and b). Chestnuts correspond to carpal pads in the dog. No two chestnuts are alike, and they do not change in size or shape throughout an

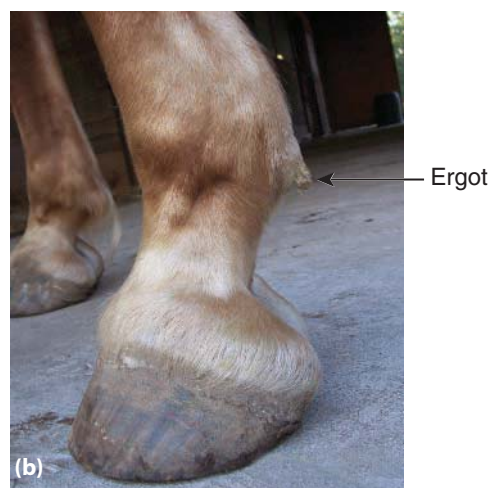


### What is the difference between horns and antlers?

Horns and antlers are protective structures located in the head region of animals. **Horns** are permanent structures that grow continuously after birth. Horns grow from the frontal skull bones and originate from keratinized epithelium.

**Cornification** (kohr-nih-fih-kā-shuhn) is the conversion of epithelium into keratin or horn. Horns may be located in different positions, as can be seen in the different ruminant species. Breeds that are naturally hornless are called **polled** (Figures 10-8a and b).

**Antlers** are not permanent structures and are shed and regrown annually. Antlers grow from the skull, as do horns. Antlers initially are covered with skin called **velvet**, which the animal rubs off after the skin dies. When the animal rubs off the velvet, the bone is exposed, the antlers lose their blood supply, and the antlers are eventually shed.



**Figure 10-7** (a) Chestnut of a horse. (b) Ergot of a horse.



**Figure 10-8** (a) Polled (b) Unpolled Hereford. (Courtesy of iStockphoto.)

equine's life. **Ergots** are located in a tuft of hair on the fetlock joint. Ergots correspond to metacarpal and metatarsal pads in the dog. Digital pads of dogs are replaced by the bulbs of the heel (and the frog in equine) in ungulates.

## TEST ME: INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Diagnostic procedures performed on the integumentary system include the following:

- **biopsy** (bī-ohp-sē) = removal of living tissue for examination of life. The combining form **bi/o** means life; the suffix **-opsy** means view of. An **incisional biopsy** (ihn-sih-shuhn-ahl bī-ohp-sē) is the removal of a piece of a tumor or lesion for examination (Figure 10-9). An **incision** (ihn-sih-shuhn) is a cut into tissue. An **excisional biopsy** (ehcks-sih-shuhn-ahl bī-ohp-sē) is the removal of an entire tumor or lesion in addition to a margin of surrounding tissue for examination. An **excision** (ehcks-sih-shuhn) is a cut out of tissue. A needle biopsy is the insertion of



**Figure 10-9** Punch biopsy of the skin. A punch biopsy is a type of incisional biopsy commonly used to obtain full-thickness skin samples. The punch has a circular opening that comes in different sizes. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 10-10** (a) Intradermal skin testing. Intradermal skin testing is used to assess atopy. (b) Tuberculosis caudal fold skin test in a bovine. [(a) Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT. (b) Courtesy of James Meronek, DVM, MPH.]

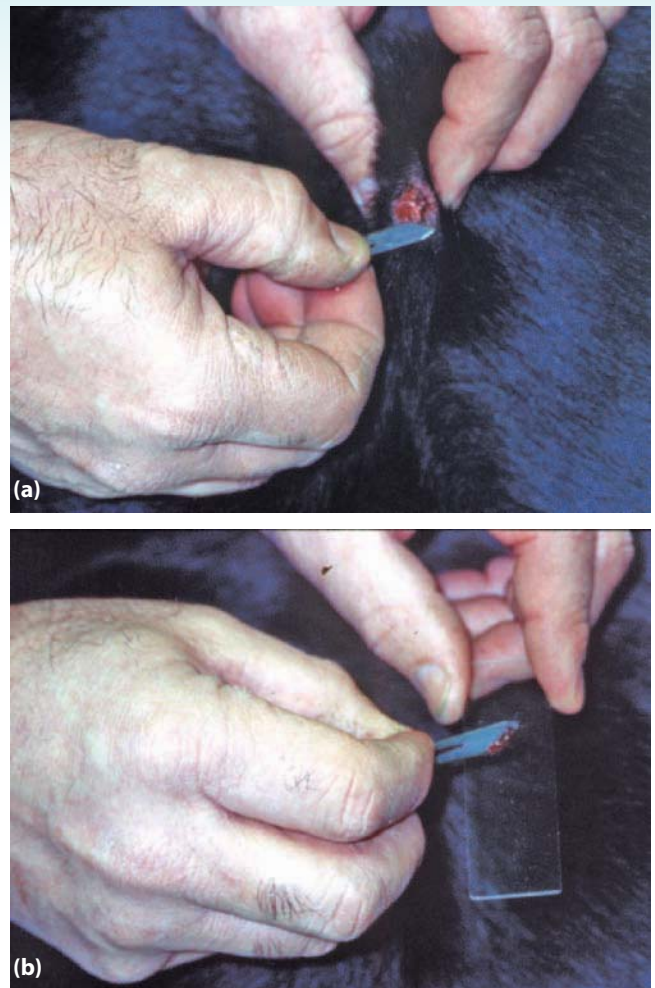
a sharp instrument (needle) into a tissue for examination. Examination of biopsies involves the use of a microscope.

- **culture** = diagnostic or research procedure used to allow microbes to reproduce in predetermined media (nutrient source). Fungal and bacterial cultures are performed using media that contains specific nutrients necessary for optimal growth of these types of microbes. **Tissue culture** takes epithelial cells and grows them in a medium so that intracellular microbes such as viruses can replicate.
- **exfoliative cytology** (ehcks-fōl-ē-ah-tihv sī-tohl-ō-jē) = scraping of cells from tissue and examination under a microscope. **Exfoliative** means falling off.
- **intra**dermal (ihn-trah-dər-mahl) **skin testing** = injection of test substances into the skin layer to observe a reaction (Figure 10–10a); used for diagnosis of **atopy** (ah-tō-pē) with the injection of multiple allergens or for tuberculosis testing by injecting tuberculin into the skin layer and observing the injection site for a 24-, 36-, and 72-hour postinjection reaction. (Tuberculosis testing is called **purified protein derivative**, or PPD, testing [Figure 10–10b].)
- **skin scrape** = microscopic examination of skin for the presence of mites; skin is sampled by scraping a scalpel blade across an area that is squeezed or raised so that the sample contains a deep skin sample (Figure 10–11).

## PATHOLOGY: INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the integumentary system include the following:

- **abrasion** (ah-brā-shuhn) = injury in which superficial layers of skin are scraped.
- **abscess** (ahb-sehsz) = localized collection of pus (Figure 10–12).
- **acne** (ahck-nē) = skin inflammation caused by plugged sebaceous glands and comedone development from papules and pustules. **Chin acne** is a common condition in cats in which acne develops on the chin and lip area.
- **acute moist dermatitis** (ah-kūt moyst dər-mah-tī-tihz) = bacterial skin disease that is worsened by licking and scratching; also called **hot spot**.
- **alopecia** (ahl-ō-pē-shah) = hair loss resulting in hairless patches or complete lack of hair. **Shedding** is normal hair loss due to various causes (Figure 10–13).
- **atopy** (ah-tō-pē) = hypersensitivity reaction in animals involving pruritus with secondary dermatitis; commonly called **allergies** or **allergic dermatitis**. **Hypersensitization** is an increased response to an allergen. **Hyposensitization** is a decreased response to an allergen. Animals with atopy may undergo a series of hyposensitization injections to decrease their response to a specific allergen.



**Figure 10–11** Skin scrape. Skin scrapings are used to detect mites. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 10–12** Draining an abscess on the side of the face of an anesthetized cat.

- **bullae** (buhl-ā) = multiple contained skin elevations filled with fluid that are greater than 0.5 cm in diameter. The singular form is **bull**a (buhl-ah).



**Figure 10-13** Alopecia in a pig with sarcopic mange. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 10-14** Cellulitis in cat paw (right side of image).



**Figure 10-15** (a) Holstein heifer with ringworm. (b) Ringworm lesion on the abdomen of a dog.

- **burn** = tissue injury caused by heat, flame, electricity, chemicals, or radiation.
- **carbuncle** (kahr-buhng-kuhl) = cluster of furuncles.
- **carcinoma** (kahr-sih-nō-mah) = malignant neoplasm of epithelial tissue.
- **cellulitis** (sehl-yoo-li-tihs) = inflammation of connective tissue (Figure 10-14). Inflammation may be **diffuse** (dih-fuhs), meaning widespread, or **localized** (lō-kahl-īzd), meaning within a well-defined area.
- **comedo** (kōm-eh-dō) = blackhead or buildup of sebum and keratin in a pore. Plural is **comedones** (kōm-eh-dō-nehz).
- **contusion** (kohn-too-shuhn) = injury that does not break the skin; characterized by pain, swelling, and discoloration.
- **crust** = collection of dried sebum and cell debris.
- **dermatitis** (dər-mah-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the skin. **Contact dermatitis** is inflammation of the skin caused by touching an irritant.

- **dermatocellulitis** (dər-mah-tō-sehl-yoo-li-tihs) = inflammation of the skin and connective tissue.
- **dermatomycosis** (dər-mah-tō-mī-kō-sihs) = abnormal skin condition caused by superficial fungus; also called **dermatophytosis** (dər-mah-tō-fī-tō-sihs). **Dermatophytes** (dər-mah-tō-fītz) are superficial fungi that are found on the skin. An example of a dermatophyte is the fungus that causes ringworm (Figures 10-15a and b).
- **dermatosis** (dər-mah-tō-sihs) = abnormal skin condition. Plural is **dermatoses** (der-mah-tō-sēz).
- **discoïd lupus erythematosus** (dihs-koyd loo-pihs eh-rih-thehm-ah-tō-sihs) = canine autoimmune disease in which the bridge of the nose (and sometimes the face and lips) exhibit depigmentation, erythema, scaling, and erosions; abbreviated DLE; may have been called collie nose or solar dermatitis in the past.
- **dyskeratosis** (dihs-kehr-ah-tō-sihs) = abnormal alteration in keratinization.

- **ecchymosis** (ehck-ih-mō-sihs) = purplish nonelevated patch of bleeding into the skin; also called a bruise; plural is **ecchymoses** (ehck-ih-mō-sēz).
- **ecthyma** (ehck-thih-mah) = skin infection with shallow eruptions caused by a pox virus (Figure 10–16); also known as soremouth.
- **eczema** (ehcks-zeh-mah) = general term for inflammatory skin disease characterized by erythema, papules, vesicles, crusts, and scabs either alone or in combination.
- **eosinophilic granuloma** (ē-ō-sihn-ō-fihl-ihck grahn-yoo-lō-mah) **complex** = collective name for autoimmune lesion of eosinophilic ulcer, eosinophilic plaque, and linear granuloma found in cats and rarely in dogs. This complex of diseases affects the skin, mucocutaneous junctions, and oral mucosa of cats, involving raised, ulcerated plaques (Figure 10–17). These lesions are named for their location: **eosinophilic ulcer**, or **rodent ulcer**, is located on the lip and oral mucosa



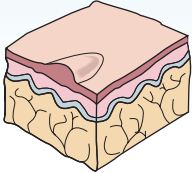
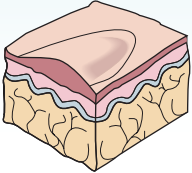
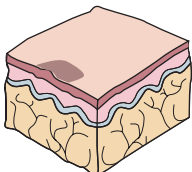
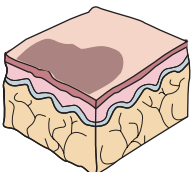
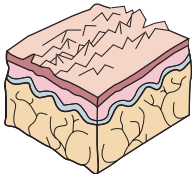
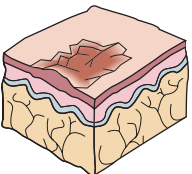
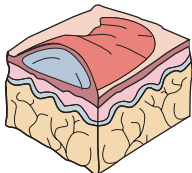
**Figure 10–16** Contagious ecthyma (soremouth) in a sheep. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



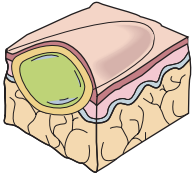
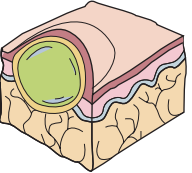
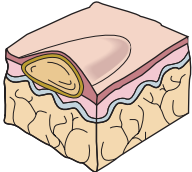
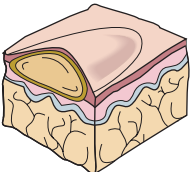
**Figure 10–17** Eosinophilic ulcer in a cat.

of cats; **eosinophilic plaques** are raised pruritic lesions on the ventral abdomen of cats; and **linear granulomas** are located in a line usually on the caudal aspect of the hindlimb of cats.

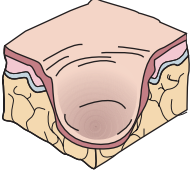
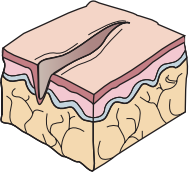
- **erythema** (ehr-ih-thē-mah) = skin redness. **Erythematous** (ehr-ih-thehm-ah-tuhs) means pertaining to redness.
- **erythroderma** (eh-rihth-rō-dār-mah) = abnormal redness of skin occurring over a widespread area. Combining forms for red are **erythr/o**, **erythem/o**, and **erythemat/o**.
- **exanthema** (ehcks-ahn-thē-mah) = cutaneous rash caused by fever or disease. Singular is **exanthem** (ehcks-ahn-thuhm).
- **feline miliary dermatitis** (mihl-ē-ahr-ē dār-mah-ti-tihs) = skin disease of cats in which multiple crusts and bumps are present predominantly on the dorsum; the disease can be associated with many causes.
- **fissure** (fihs-sər) = cracklike sore (Figure 10–18).
- **fistula** (fihs-tyoo-lah) = abnormal passage from an internal organ to the body surface or between two internal organs. Plural is **fistulae** (fihs-tyoo-lā).
- **flea allergy dermatitis** (dār-mah-ti-tihs) = inflammation of the skin caused by an allergic reaction to flea saliva; abbreviated FAD. An **allergen** (ahl-ər-jehn) is a substance that produces an allergic response.
- **footrot** = bacterial (*Fusobacterium* sp.) hoof disease that spreads from the interdigital skin to the deeper foot structures.
- **frostbite** = tissue damage caused by extreme cold or contact with chemicals with extreme temperature (e.g., liquid nitrogen).
- **furuncle** (fyoo-ruhng-kuhl) = localized skin infection in a gland or hair follicle; also called a **boil**. **Furunculosis** (fyoo-ruhng-kuh-lō-sihs) is the abnormal condition of persistent boils over a period of time.
- **gangrene** (gahng-grēn) = necrosis associated with loss of circulation. **Necrosis** (neh-krō-sihs) is condition of dead tissue; **necrotic** (neh-krō-tihck) means pertaining to dead tissue. Decay that produces a foul smell is called **putrefaction** (pyoo-treh-fahck-shuhn).
- **granuloma** (grahn-yoo-lō-mah) = small area of healing tissue.
- **hemangioma** (hē-mahn-jē-ō-mah) = benign tumor composed of newly formed blood vessels.
- **hyperkeratosis** (hī-pər-kehr-ah-tō-sihs) = increased growth of the horny layer of the skin (Figure 10–19); also called **acanthokeratoderma** (ā-kahn-thō-kehr-ah-tō-dār-mah).
- **infestations** (ihn-fehs-tā-shuhns) = occupation and dwelling of a parasite on the external surface of tissue. **Ectoparasites** (ehck-tō-pahr-ah-sits) live on the

 <p>A <b>papule</b> is a small solid raised lesion that is less than 0.5 cm in diameter.</p>	 <p>A <b>plaque</b> is a solid raised lesion that is greater than 0.5 cm in diameter.</p>
 <p>A <b>macule</b> is a flat discolored lesion that is less than 1 cm in diameter.</p>	 <p>A <b>patch</b> is a flat discolored lesion that is greater than 1 cm in diameter.</p>
 <p>A <b>scale</b> is a flaking or dry patch made up of excess dead epidermal cells.</p>	 <p>A <b>crust</b> is a collection of dried serum and cellular debris.</p>
 <p>A <b>wheal</b> is a smooth, slightly elevated swollen area that is redder or paler than the surrounding skin. It is usually accompanied by itching.</p>	

(a) Surface lesions

 <p>A <b>cyst</b> is a closed sac or pouch containing fluid or semisolid material.</p>	 <p>A <b>pustule</b> is a small circumscribed elevation of the skin containing pus.</p>
 <p>A <b>vesicle</b> is a circumscribed elevation of skin containing fluid that is less than 0.5 cm in diameter.</p>	 <p>A <b>bulla</b> is a large vesicle that is more than 0.5 cm in diameter.</p>

(b) Fluid-filled lesions

 <p>An <b>ulcer</b> is an open sore or erosion of the skin or mucous membrane resulting in tissue loss.</p>	 <p>A <b>fissure</b> of the skin is a groove or crack-like sore.</p>
--	---

(c) Erosive lesions

**Figure 10–18** Skin lesions. Skin lesions may be (a) raised and discolored, (b) fluid-filled, or (c) erosive in nature.



**Figure 10-19** Hyperkeratosis of the foot pads of a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

external surface; **ecto-** means outside. A **louse** (lows) is a wingless parasitic insect; plural is **lice** (līs). **Pediculosis** (pehd-ih-koo-lō-sihs) is lice infestation. A **mite** is an insect with a hard exoskeleton and paired, jointed legs. **Mange** (mānj) is a common term for skin disease caused by mites. There are different types of mange, such as **sarcoptic** (sahr-kohp-tihck) and **demodectic** (deh-mō-dehck-tihck), depending on the type of mite involved (Figures 10–20a and b). **Chiggers** (chihg-gərs) is infestation by mite larvae that results in severe pruritus. **Acariasis** (ahck-ah-rī-ah-sihs) is infestation with ticks or mites. **Maggots** (mah-gohts) are insect larvae found especially in dead or decaying tissue. **Myiasis** (mī-ī-ah-sihs) is infestation by fly larvae.

- **keratosis** (kehr-ah-tō-sihs) = abnormal condition of epidermal overgrowth and thickening. Plural is **keratoses** (kehr-ah-tō-sēs).
- **laceration** (lahs-ər-ā-shuhn) = accidental cut into the skin.
- **lesion** (lē-shuhn) = pathologic change of tissue; used to describe abnormalities in many locations.
- **lipoma** (lī-pō-mah) = benign growth of fat cells (Figure 10–21); also called **fatty tumor**; commonly seen in older dogs.
- **macule** (mahck-yool) = flat, discolored lesion less than 1 cm in diameter; also called **macula** (mahck-yoo-lah).
- **melanoma** (mehl-ah-nō-mah) = tumor or growth of pigmented skin cells (Figure 10–22). **Malignant melanoma** is the term used to describe cancer of the pigmented skin cells. One form of melanoma is **amelanotic melanoma**, which is an unpigmented malignant melanoma.
- **nodule** (nohd-yoo-uhl) = small knot protruding above the skin.
- **onychomycosis** (ohn-kē-ō-mī-kō-sihs) = superficial fungal infection of the claw.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 10-20** (a) Demodectic mange in a dog. (b) *Demodex canis*.



**Figure 10-21** Lipoma that has been surgically removed from a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 10-22** Melanoma in a dog.

- **pallor** (pahl-ohr) = skin paleness.
- **papilloma** (pahp-ih-lō-mah) = benign epithelial growth that is lobed.
- **papule** (pahp-yool) = small, raised skin lesion less than 0.5 cm in diameter.
- **parakeratosis** (pah-ah-kehr-ah-tō-sihs) = lesion characterized by thick scales, cracking, and red raw surface caused by the persistence of keratinocyte nuclei in the horny layer of skin.
- **paronychia** (pah-ohn-kē-ah) = bacterial or viral infection of the claw.
- **patch** = localized skin color change greater than 1 cm in diameter.
- **pemphigus** (pehm-fih-guhs) = group of immune mediated skin diseases characterized by vesicles, bullae, and ulcers. The most common form is **pemphigus vulgaris** (pehm-fih-guhs vuhl-gahr-ihs), which consists of shallow ulcerations frequently involving the oral mucosa and mucocutaneous junctions. *Pemphix* is Greek for blister.
- **petechiae** (peh-tē-kē-ā) = small, pinpoint hemorrhages (Figure 10-23). Singular is **petechia** (peh-tē-kē-ah).
- **plaque** (plahck) = solid raised lesion greater than 0.5 cm in diameter.
- **polyp** = growth from mucous membranes.
- **pruritus** (proo-rī-tuhs) = itching.
- **purpura** (pər-pə-rah) = condition characterized by hemorrhage into the skin that causes bruising. The two types of purpura are ecchymosis and petechia.
- **pustule** (puhs-tyool) = small, circumscribed, pus-filled skin elevation. **Circumscribed** (sehr-kuhm-skribd) means contained in a limited area.
- **pyoderma** (pī-ō-dər-mah) = skin disease containing pus (Figure 10-24). **Pus** (puhs) is an inflammatory product made up of leukocytes, cell debris, and fluid. **Purulent** (pər-ū-lehnt) means containing or producing pus. **Puppy pyoderma** is a skin disease in puppies characterized by pus-containing lesions. **Juvenile**



**Figure 10-23** Petechiae in a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 10-24** Pyoderma in a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

**pyoderma** is a skin disease in puppies that progresses to a systemic disease characterized by fever, anorexia, and enlarged and abscessing lymph nodes; juvenile pyoderma also is called **puppy strangles**.

- **sarcoma** (sahr-kō-mah) = malignant neoplasm of soft tissue arising from connective tissue.
- **scale** = flake.
- **scar** (skahr) = mark left by a healing lesion where excess collagen was produced to replace injured tissue; also called **cicatrix** (sihck-ah-trihcks) or **cicatrices** (sihck-ah-trih-sēz), which are multiple scars.
- **sebaceous cyst** (seh-bā-shuhs sihst) = closed sac of yellow fatty material. A **cyst** (sihst) is a closed sac containing fluid or semisolid material.
- **seborrhea** (seh-bō-rē-ah) = skin condition characterized by overproduction of sebum (oil).
- **skin tag** = small growth that hangs from the body by stalks.

- **ulcer** (uhl-sihr) = erosion of skin or mucous membrane.  
**Decubital ulcers** (dē-kyoo-bih-tahl uhl-sihrz) are erosions of skin or mucous membranes as a result of prolonged pressure; also called **bedsores**.
- **urticaria** (ər-tih-kā-rē-ah) = localized areas of swelling that itch; also called **hives**.
- **verrucae** (veh-roo-sē) = warts.
- **vesicle** (vehs-ih-kuhl) = contained skin elevation filled with fluid that is greater than 0.5 cm in diameter; also called a **blister**, **bull** (buhl-ah), or **bleb**.
- **weal** (whēl) = smooth, slightly raised swollen area that itches.

- **lance** (lahnz) to open or pierce with a lancet (scalpel blade) to allow drainage; abscesses are lanced to drain the pus present in an area.
- **laser** (lā-zər) = device that transfers light into an intense beam for various purposes; acronym for *light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation*.

## PROCEDURES: INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the integumentary system include the following:

- **cauterization** (kaw-tər-ī-zā-shuhn) = destruction of tissue using electric current, heat, or chemicals (Figure 10–25).
- **cryosurgery** (krī-ō-sihr-jər-ē) = destruction of tissue using extreme cold.
- **debridement** (dē-brīd-mehnt) = removal of tissue and foreign material to aid healing.



**Figure 10–25** Cauterization destroys tissue through the use of electric current, heat, or chemicals. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. Pruritus is commonly called
  - a. hair loss
  - b. dry skin
  - c. itching
  - d. pus
2. Skin redness is called
  - a. cellulitis
  - b. erythema
  - c. scleroderma
  - d. scarring
3. Hypersensitivity reaction in animals involving pruritus with secondary dermatitis is called
  - a. atrophy
  - b. allergen
  - c. antigen
  - d. atopy
4. Hair loss resulting in hairless patches or complete lack of hair is called
  - a. shedding
  - b. lesion
  - c. alopecia
  - d. plaque
5. Occupation and dwelling of parasites on the external skin surfaces is called
  - a. parasitism
  - b. ectoparasites
  - c. infestation
  - d. myiasis
6. A skin disease containing pus is
  - a. pyometra
  - b. pyoderma
  - c. pyoerythema
  - d. pyosis

7. Producing or containing pus is called
  - a. abscess
  - b. purulent
  - c. mucocutaneous
  - d. polyp
8. Inflammation of connective tissue is
  - a. connectitis
  - b. dermatitis
  - c. cutaneitis
  - d. cellulitis
9. Putrefaction is
  - a. foul-smelling decay
  - b. homogenation
  - c. granulomatous
  - d. cellulitis
10. Large tactile hair is
  - a. sensogenic
  - b. plantigrade
  - c. vibrissa
  - d. cerumen
11. A skin condition characterized by overproduction of sebum (oil) is known as
  - a. alopecia
  - b. seborrhea
  - c. hemangioma
  - d. abscess
12. The term for a skin flake is
  - a. patch
  - b. crust
  - c. scale
  - d. wheal
13. Which term means skin paleness?
  - a. petechiae
  - b. pallor
  - c. pustule
  - d. purpura
14. The protein that provides skin with its waterproofing properties is known as
  - a. dermis
  - b. squamous
  - c. sebum
  - d. keratin
15. Removal of tissue and foreign material to aid healing is
  - a. cauterization
  - b. cryosurgery
  - c. debridement
  - d. laser treatment
16. A localized collection of pus is a(n)
  - a. bleb
  - b. abscess
  - c. nodule
  - d. vesicle
17. A benign growth of fat cells is known as a(n)
  - a. sarcoma
  - b. carcinoma
  - c. lipoma
  - d. adoma
18. Which term means pertaining to dead tissue?
  - a. abrasion
  - b. carbuncle
  - c. purulent
  - d. necrotic
19. Which term means erosion of skin or mucous membrane?
  - a. fistula
  - b. ulcer
  - c. fissure
  - d. urticaria
20. A tumor or growth of pigmented skin is a(n)
  - a. melanoma
  - b. ecthyma
  - c. exanthema
  - d. eczema

**Matching**

Match the common dermatologic term in Column I with the medical term in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ hive	a. polled
2. _____ hot spot	b. cicatrix
3. _____ fatty tumor	c. furuncle
4. _____ pale	d. urticaria
5. _____ blister	e. abrasion
6. _____ scar	f. acute moist dermatitis
7. _____ oil	g. pruritus
8. _____ scrape	h. atopy
9. _____ boil	i. lipoma
10. _____ redness	j. scale
11. _____ itching	k. erythema
12. _____ flake	l. pallor
13. _____ warts	m. sebum
14. _____ allergic dermatitis	n. verrucae
15. _____ hornless	o. fissure
16. _____ crack	p. vesicle
17. _____ adipocytes	q. malignant neoplasm of epithelial tissue
18. _____ dermis	r. most superficial layer of skin
19. _____ epidermis	s. protein material found in skin, hair, and nails
20. _____ subcutaneous	t. sweat glands
21. _____ collagen	u. fat cells
22. _____ pus	v. hives
23. _____ urticaria	w. middle layer of skin
24. _____ carcinoma	x. deepest layer of the skin
25. _____ sudoriferous glands	y. oil glands
26. _____ sebaceous glands	z. inflammatory product made up of leukocytes, cell debris, and fluid

**Fill in the Blanks**

1. Cutane/o, derm/o, dermat/o, and -derma mean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Pil/i, pil/o, and trich/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The dermis and corium are names for \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The subcutaneous and hypodermis are names for \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A cyst, vesicle, pustule, and bulla are all \_\_\_\_\_.

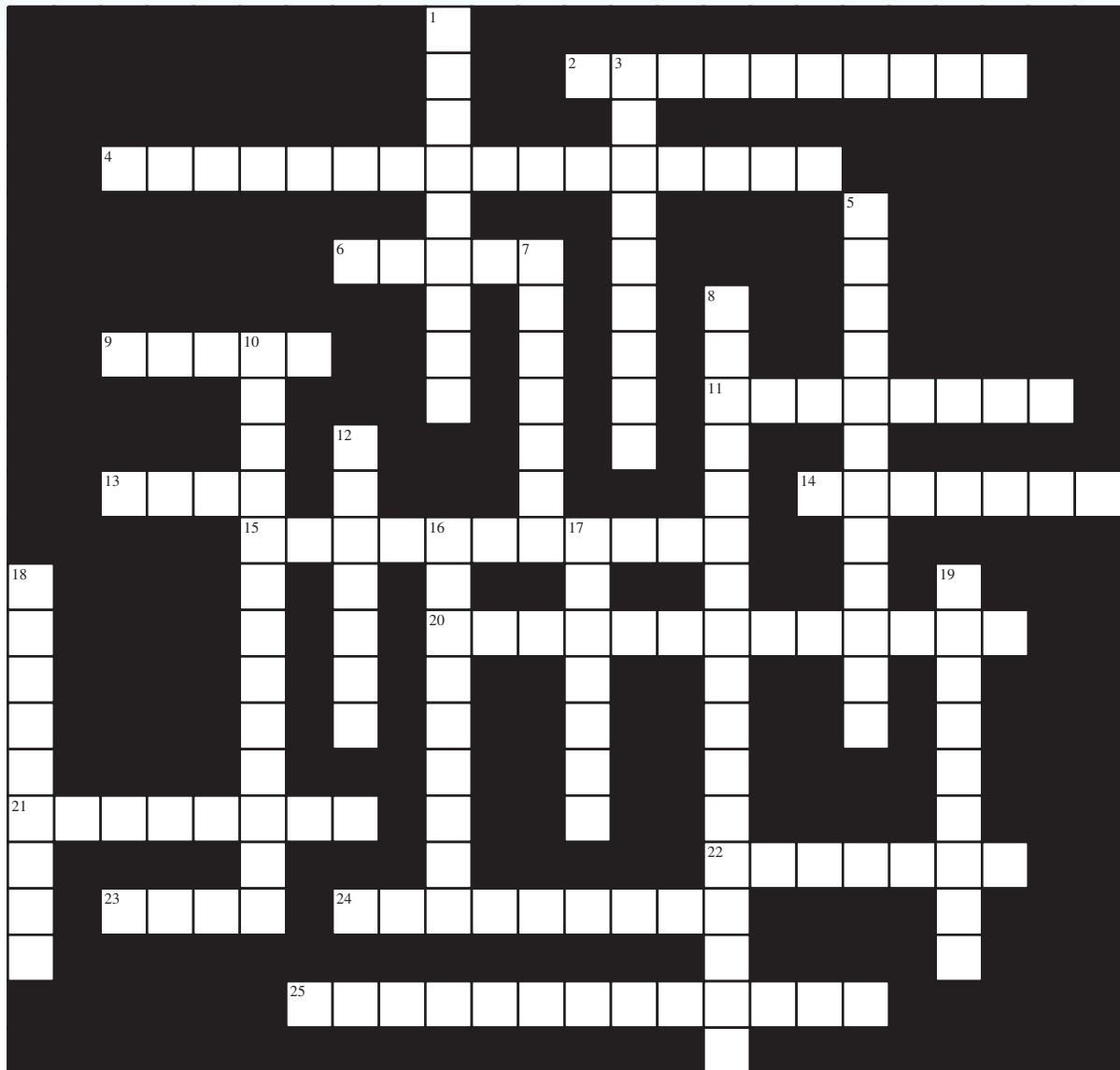
**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |  |          |           |           |
|--|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. itching:                                      | pruritis | pruritus  | puritis   |
| 2. buildup of sebum and keratin in a pore:       | komedo   | comedo    | comedoe   |
| 3. hair loss resulting in hairless areas:        | alopecia | ahlopesia | alopecea  |
| 4. production and secretion of sweat:            | hidrosis | hydrosis  | hihdrosis |
| 5. common term for skin disease caused by mites: | manje    | mainge    | mange     |

# CROSSWORD PUZZLE

## Skin Anatomy and Disease Puzzle



### Across

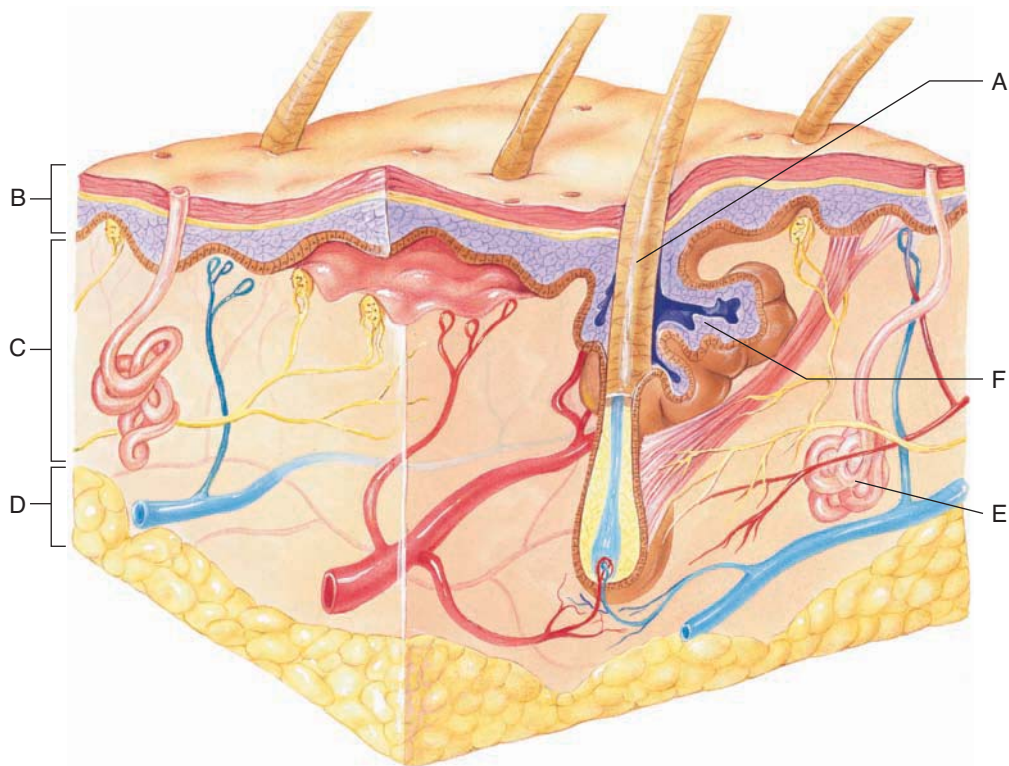
- 2 accidental cut into the skin
- 4 removal of a piece of a tumor or lesion for examination
- 6 growth from mucous membrane
- 9 dermis under the nail or hoof that has a blood supply and is sensitive
- 11 small, pinpoint hemorrhage
- 13 closed sac containing fluid or semisolid material
- 14 earwax
- 15 pertaining to falling off
- 20 contained within a limited area
- 21 normal hair loss
- 22 localized collection of pus
- 23 permanent structure originating from the skull
- 24 secondary hairs that are soft, thin, and wavy
- 25 superficial fungal infection of the claw

### Down

- 1 small area of healing tissue
- 3 fat cell
- 5 act of hair standing upright
- 7 condition characterized by hemorrhage into the skin that causes bruising
- 8 decreased response to an allergen
- 10 destruction of tissue using electric current, heat, or chemicals
- 12 widespread
- 16 within a well-defined area
- 17 pertaining to touch
- 18 injury that does not break the skin
- 19 abnormal condition of epidermal overgrowth and thickening

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

Label the diagram in Figure 10–26.



**Figure 10–26** Skin layers. Label the skin layers and structures as indicated by the arrows.

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 3-yr-old F/S golden retriever was presented with clinical signs of pruritus, abdominal dermatitis, and otitis. Skin scrapes were negative for external parasites. Ear cytology revealed a large number of yeast. The dog was referred to a dermatologist, who diagnosed atopy via intradermal skin testing. The dog was put on a hypoallergenic diet and was given hyposensitization injections. Medications were prescribed to control the pruritus and secondary pyoderma.

1. pruritus \_\_\_\_\_
2. dermatitis \_\_\_\_\_
3. otitis \_\_\_\_\_
4. skin scrapes \_\_\_\_\_
5. dermatologist \_\_\_\_\_
6. atopy \_\_\_\_\_
7. intradermal skin testing \_\_\_\_\_
8. hypoallergenic \_\_\_\_\_
9. hyposensitization \_\_\_\_\_
10. pyoderma \_\_\_\_\_

The veterinarian was on a farm performing a routine herd check when the farmer pointed out a cow to the veterinarian. The cow was a 2-yr-old Holstein cow that was treated 5 days ago with an IM injection of long-acting penicillin for mastitis (inflammation of the mammary gland). The cow's mastitis improved, and she was eating and ruminating normally. However, the cow now had an enlarged swelling on her R hind limb (Figure 10–27). On PE, the cow's HR and RR were normal and the temperature was elevated. The cow was not painful upon palpation of the swelling. The swelling had a soft center that appeared to be fluid-filled. The veterinarian diagnosed an abscess and treated the cow by cleaning the wound area, lancing the abscess, draining the pus from the swelling, and flushing the abscess with antiseptic solution. The farmer was advised to monitor the cow to make sure the swelling does not recur.

11. IM \_\_\_\_\_
12. ruminating \_\_\_\_\_
13. R \_\_\_\_\_
14. PE \_\_\_\_\_
15. HR \_\_\_\_\_
16. RR \_\_\_\_\_
17. palpation \_\_\_\_\_

18. abscess

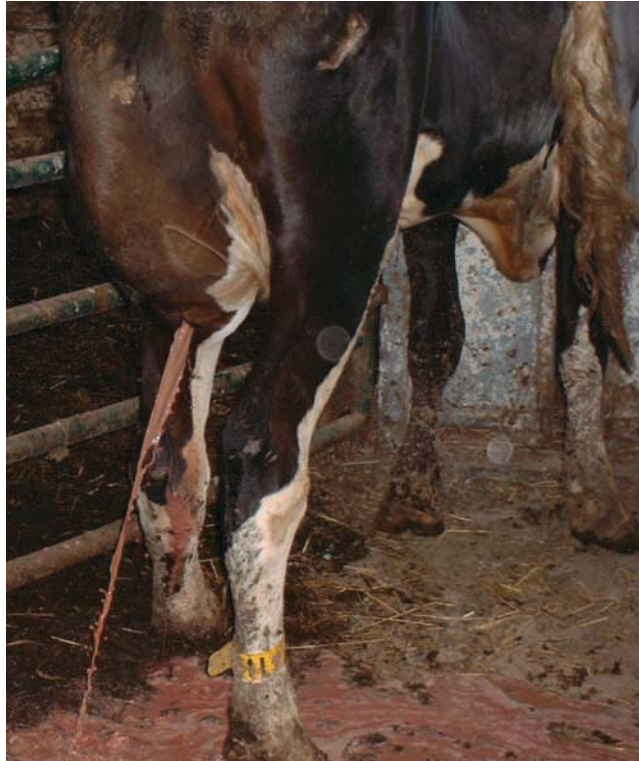
---

19. lancing

---

20. antiseptic

---



**Figure 10–27** Leg abscess in a Holstein.

# CHAPTER 11

## THE GREAT COMMUNICATOR

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the major structures and functions of the endocrine system
- Describe the role of the hypothalamus and pituitary gland in hormone secretion
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the endocrine system

### FUNCTIONS OF THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

The endocrine (ehn-dō-krihn) system is composed of ductless glands that secrete chemical messengers, called hormones, into the bloodstream. The prefix **endo-** means within, and the suffix **-crine** means to secrete or separate. Hormones enter the bloodstream and are carried throughout the body, affecting a variety of tissues and organs. Tissues and organs on which the hormones act are called **target organs**. **Hormone** (hōr-mōn) is a Greek term meaning impulse or to set in motion; hormones may excite or inhibit a motion or an action.



## STRUCTURES OF THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

The glands of the normal endocrine system include the following (Figure 11–1):

- One pituitary gland (with two lobes)
- One thyroid gland (right and left lobes fused ventrally)
- Parathyroid glands (four in most species)
- Two adrenal glands
- One pancreas
- One thymus
- One pineal gland
- Two gonads (ovaries in females, testes in males)

### The Pituitary Gland

The **pituitary** (pih-too-ih-tär-ē) **gland** is located at the base of the brain just below the hypothalamus. The pituitary gland also is called the **hypophysis** (hī-poh-fi-sihs) because it is a growth located beneath or ventral to the hypothalamus (part of the brain). (*Physis* is Greek for growth.) The pituitary gland is known as the master gland because it secretes many hormones that control or master other endocrine glands. The combining form for pituitary gland is **pituit/o**.

The pituitary gland acts in response to stimuli from the **hypothalamus** (hī-pō-thahl-ah-muhs). The hypothalamus is

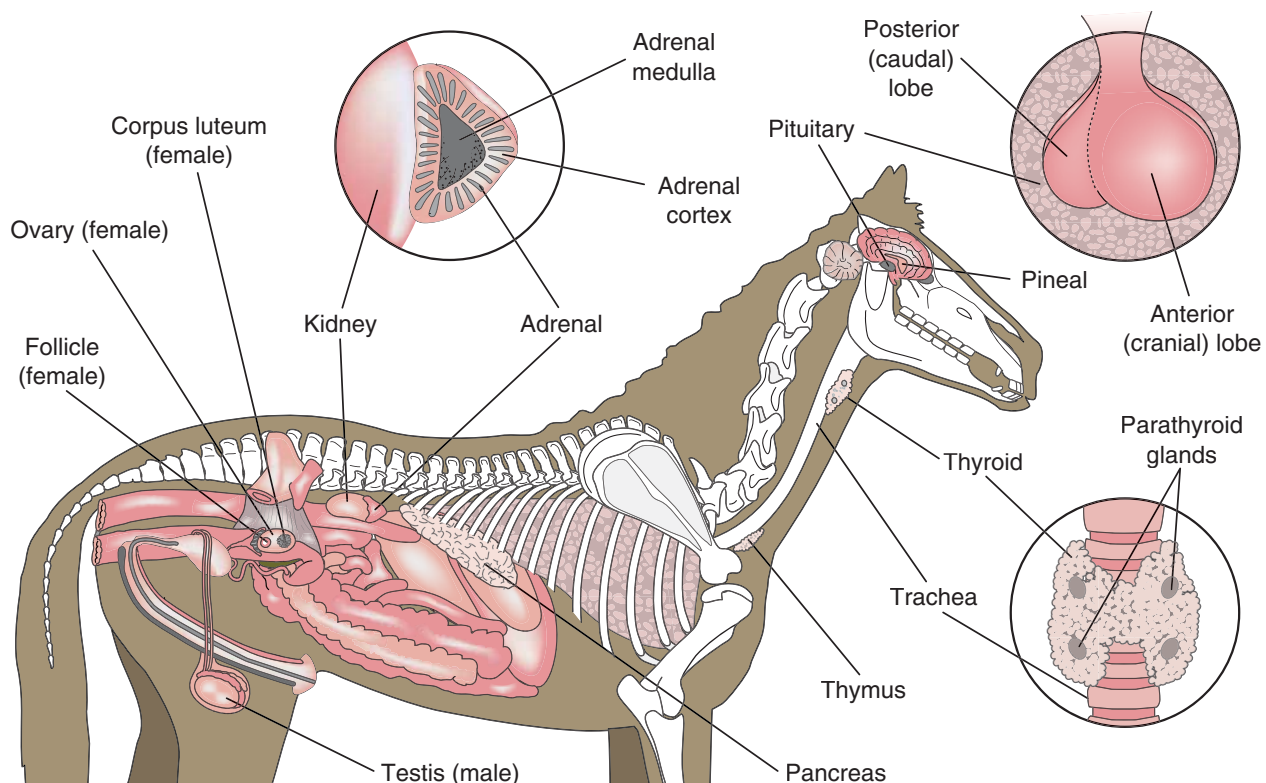
located below the thalamus in the brain and secretes releasing and inhibiting factors that affect the release of substances from the pituitary gland (Figure 11–2). The hypothalamus also produces antidiuretic hormone and oxytocin, which are released from the posterior pituitary gland. The hypothalamus is connected to the pituitary gland via a stalk called the **infundibulum** (ihn-fuhn-dihb-yoo-luhm). *Infundibulum* means funnel-shaped passage or opening.

The pituitary gland is made up of two lobes: the anterior (cranial) and posterior (caudal). The anterior lobe also is known as the **adenohypophysis** (ahd-ehn-ō-hī-pohf-ih-sihs) because it produces hormones (that is, has glandular function; **aden/o** = gland). Hormones released from the anterior pituitary gland sometimes are called **indirect-acting hormones** because they cause their target organ to produce a second hormone.

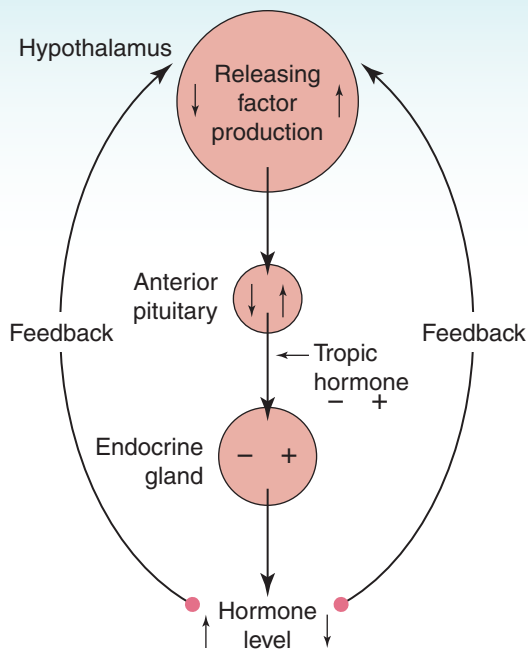
The posterior lobe also is known as the **neurohypophysis** (nū-rō-hī-pohf-ih-sihs) because it responds to a neurologic stimulus and does not produce hormones, but stores and secretes them. Hormones released from the posterior pituitary gland sometimes are called **direct-acting hormones** because they produce the desired effect directly in the target organ (Figure 11–3).

### Secretions of the Anterior Pituitary Gland

- **thyroid** (thī-royd) **-stimulating hormone** = augments growth and secretions of the thyroid gland; abbreviated TSH.

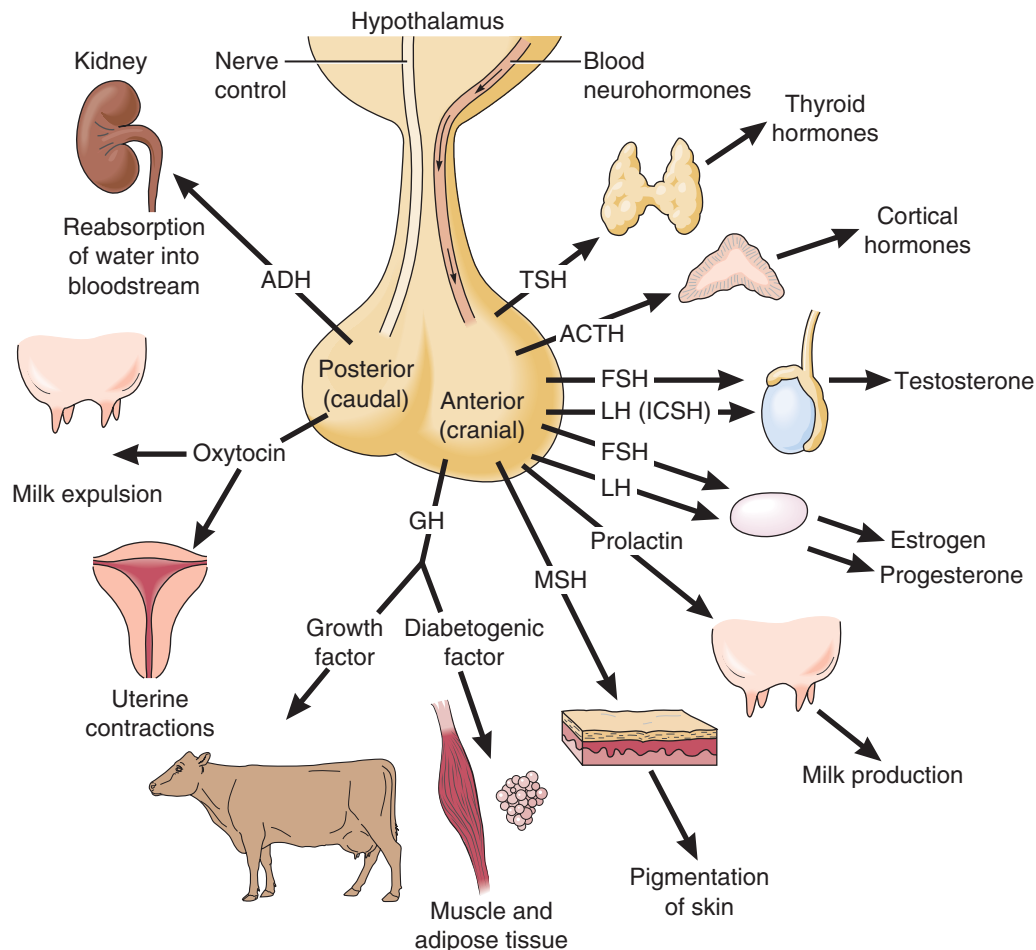


**Figure 11–1** Locations of the endocrine glands. The relative locations of the endocrine glands are shown in this horse.



**Figure 11-2** Feedback control mechanisms. Negative feedback mechanisms control the levels of most hormones in the blood by secreting, releasing, or inhibiting factors that affect hormone release.

- **adrenocorticotrophic** (ahd-rēn-ō-kōr-tih-kō-trō-pihck) **hormone** = augments the growth and secretions of the adrenal cortex; abbreviated ACTH.
- **follicle** (fohl-lihck-kuhl) **-stimulating hormone** = augments the secretion of estrogen and growth of eggs in the ovaries (female) and the production of sperm in the testes (male); abbreviated FSH. FSH is a type of **gonadotropic** (gō-nahd-ō-trō-pihck) **hormone**. Gonadotropic can be divided into **gonad/o**, which means gamete-producing gland (ovary or testes), and **-tropic**, which means having an affinity for.
- **luteinizing** (loo-tehn-iz-ihng) **hormone** = augments ovulation and aids in the maintenance of pregnancy in females; abbreviated LH. **Lute/o** is the combining form for yellow. Luteinizing hormone transforms an ovarian follicle into a corpus luteum, or yellow body. LH is a type of gonadotropic hormone.
- **interstitial** (ihn-tār-stihsh-ahl) **cell-stimulating hormone** = stimulates testosterone secretion in males; abbreviated ICSH. ICSH is now considered to be LH.
- **prolactin** (prō-lahck-tihn) = augments milk secretion and influences maternal behavior; also known as **lactogenic hormone** or **luteotropin** (the



**Figure 11-3** Secretions of the pituitary gland.

combining form **lact/o** means milk); sometimes abbreviated LTH.

- **growth hormone** = accelerates body growth; abbreviated GH; also known as **somatotropin** (the combining form **somat/o** means body); sometimes abbreviated STH.
- **melanocyte** (mehl-ah-nō-sīt) **-stimulating hormone** = augments skin pigmentation; abbreviated MSH.

### Secretions of the Posterior Pituitary Gland

- **antidiuretic** (ahn-tih-dī-yoo-reht-ihck) **hormone** = maintains water balance in the body by augmenting water reabsorption in the kidneys (**anti-** means against; **diuretic** means pertaining to increased urine secretion); abbreviated ADH; also known as **vasopressin** (**vas/o** is the combining form for vessel, and **press/i** is the combining form for tension; vasopressin affects blood pressure).
- **oxytocin** (ohcks-ē-tō-sihn) = stimulates uterine contractions during parturition and milk letdown from the mammary ducts.

### Thyroid Gland

The **thyroid** (thī-royd) **gland** is a butterfly-shaped gland, with the right and left lobes fused ventrally by an isthmus. (The isthmus may be rudimentary in horses and dogs.) The thyroid gland is located on either side of the larynx. The thyroid gland regulates metabolism, iodine uptake, and blood calcium levels. The combining forms for thyroid are **thyr/o** and **thyroid/o**.

### Secretions of the Thyroid Gland

- **triiodothyronine** (trī-ī-ō-dō-thī-rō-nēn) = one of the thyroid hormones that regulates metabolism; abbreviated  $T_3$ .
- **thyroxine** (thī-rohcks-ihn) = one of the thyroid hormones that regulates metabolism; abbreviated  $T_4$ .
- **calcitonin** (kahl-sih-tō-nihn) = thyroid hormone that promotes the absorption of calcium from blood into bones.

### Parathyroid Glands

The **parathyroid** (pah-ah-thī-royd) **glands** are four glands located on the surface of the thyroid gland that secrete parathyroid hormone (or **parathormone** [pah-ah-thōr-mōn] or PTH). The prefix **para-** means near or before. PTH helps regulate blood calcium and phosphorus levels. PTH increases blood calcium levels by reducing bone calcium levels. Calcium is regulated in the body by the antagonistic actions of PTH and calcitonin.

PTH also regulates phosphorus content of blood and bones. The combining form for the parathyroid glands is **parathyroid/o**.

### Adrenal Glands

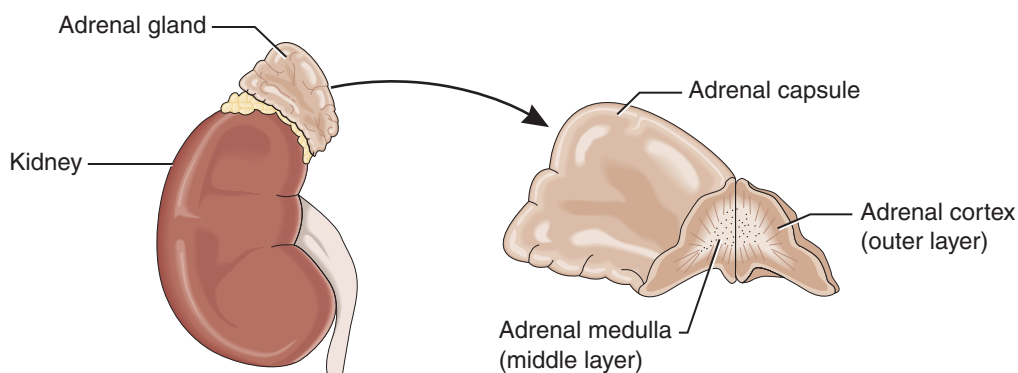
Two small glands, known as the **adrenal** (ahd-rē-nahl) or **suprarenal** (soop-rah-rē-nahl) glands, are located cranial to each kidney. The prefix **ad-** means toward, the combining form **ren/o** means kidney, and the prefix **supra-** means above. The adrenal gland regulates electrolytes, metabolism, sexual functions, and the body's response to injury. The combining forms **adren/o** and **adrenal/o** refer to the adrenal glands.

Each adrenal gland consists of two parts: the **adrenal cortex** (ahd-rē-nahl kōr-tehcks), or outer portion, and the **adrenal medulla** (ahd-rē-nahl meh-doo-lah), or inner portion. The combining form **cortic/o** means outer, and the combining form **medull/o** means inner or middle portion (Figure 11–4).

### Secretions of the Adrenal Cortex

The adrenal cortex hormones are classified as steroids. A **steroid** (stehr-oyd) is a substance that has a specific chemical structure of carbon atoms in four interlocking rings. **Corticosteroids** (kōr-tih-kō-stehr-oydz) are produced by the adrenal cortex.

- **mineralocorticoids** (mihn-ər-ahl-ō-kōr-tih-koydz) = group of corticosteroids that regulates electrolyte and water balance by affecting ion transport in the kidney.



**Figure 11–4** Portions of the adrenal gland.

The principal mineralocorticoid is **aldosterone** (ahl-dohs-tər-ōn), which is a hormone that regulates sodium and potassium.

- **glucocorticoids** (gloo-kō-kōr-tih-koydz) = group of corticosteroids that regulate carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism; resistance to stress; and immunologic functioning. An example of a glucocorticoid is **hydrocortisone** (hī-drō-kōr-tih-zōn), or **cortisol** (kōr-tih-zohl), which regulates carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism.
- **androgens** (ahn-drō-jehnz) = group of corticosteroids that aid in the development and maintenance of male sex characteristics. The combining form **andr/o** means male, and the suffix **-gen** means producing. **Anabolic** (ahn-ah-bohl-ihck) **steroids** are synthetic medications similar in structure to testosterone that are used to increase strength and muscle mass. The prefix **ana-** means up or excessive, and the combining form **bol/o** means throwing. Anabolic means pertaining to building up. The opposite of anabolism is catabolism. The prefix **cata-** means down; therefore, **catabolism** (kaht-ah-bōl-ihz-uhm) means breaking down.

### Secretions of the Adrenal Medulla

- **epinephrine** (ehp-ih-nehf-rihn) = **catecholamine** (kaht-ih-kōl-ih-mēn) that stimulates the sympathetic nervous system (the fight-or-flight system) and increases blood pressure, heart rate, and blood glucose. (Catecholamines are nitrogen-containing compounds that act as hormones or neurotransmitters.) Epinephrine also is known as **adrenaline** (ahd-rehn-ah-lihn). Because epinephrine increases blood pressure, it is known as a vasopressor. A **vasopressor** (vahs-ō-prehs-ōr) is a substance that stimulates blood vessel contraction and increases blood pressure.
- **norepinephrine** (nōr-ehp-ih-nehf-rihn) = catecholamine that stimulates the sympathetic nervous system (the fight-or-flight system) and increases blood pressure, heart rate, and blood glucose. Norepinephrine also is known as **noradrenaline**.

### Pancreas

The **pancreas** (pahnh-kre-ahs) is an aggregation of cells located near the proximal duodenum that has both exocrine and endocrine functions. The exocrine function of the pancreas involves the secretion of digestive enzymes, which is covered in Chapter 6. The endocrine function of the pancreas involves the secretion of blood glucose-regulating hormones. (Blood glucose also is regulated in conjunction with other hormones such as thyroid hormones.) The combining form for pancreas is **pancreat/o**.



#### What is in a name?

It may seem as though medical terminology is a bunch of long words strung together with no relationship to each other. However, consider the names of the hormones released from the adrenal medulla:

- **epinephrine** = the prefix **epi-** means above. The combining form **nephr/o** means kidney. Its name indicates that epinephrine is made in the gland above the kidney, which is known as the adrenal gland.
- **adrenaline** = the prefix **ad-** means toward. The combining form **ren/o** means kidney. Its name indicates that adrenaline is made in the gland toward the kidney, which is known as the adrenal gland.
- **norepinephrine** = the prefix **nor-** means normal and denotes the parent compound in a pair of related substances. Its name indicates that norepinephrine is a substance very similar in chemical structure and function to epinephrine.

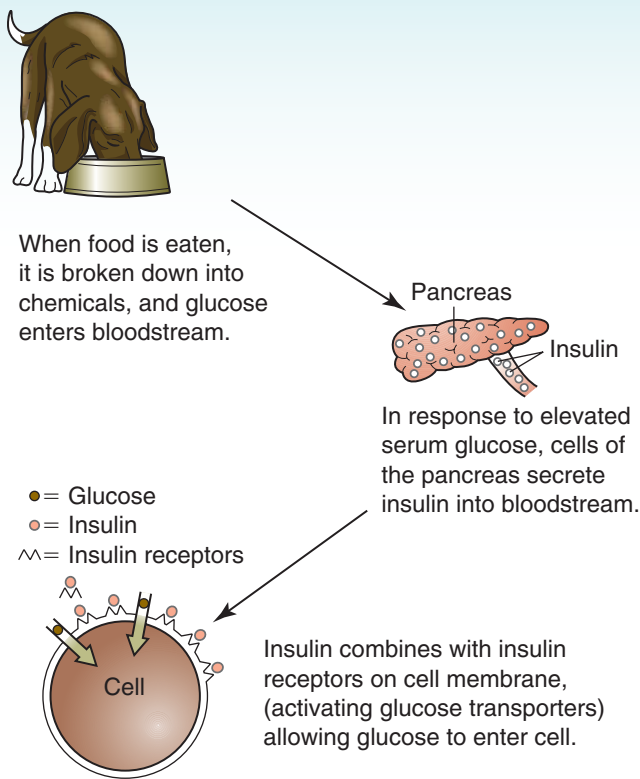
Specialized cells in the pancreas called the **islets of Langerhans** (i-lehts ohf lahng-ər-hahnz) secrete the hormones that help regulate blood glucose (Figure 11–5).

### Endocrine Secretions of the Pancreas

- **insulin** (ihn-suh-lihn) = hormone that decreases blood glucose levels by transporting blood glucose into body cells or into storage as glycogen (gli-kō-jehn). Glycogen is the main carbohydrate storage unit in animals.
- **glucagon** (gloo-kah-gohn) = hormone that increases blood glucose levels by breaking down glycogen.

### Thymus

The **thymus** (thī-muhs) is a gland predominant in young animals located near midline in the cranioventral portion of the thoracic cavity. The thymus gland has an immunologic



**Figure 11-5** How insulin works.

function through its role in the maturation of T-lymphocytes. The combining form for the thymus is **thym/o**. Thym/o also refers to the soul; some people believed that the thymus gland was the seat of the soul because it was so close to the heart.

### Secretion of the Thymus

- **thymosin** (thī-mō-sihn) = augments maturation of T-lymphocytes; therefore, it plays a role in the immune system, which is discussed in Chapter 15.

### Pineal Gland

The **pineal** (pih-nē-ahl or pī-nē-ahl) **gland**, or **pineal body**, is an aggregation of cells located in the central portion of the brain. The pineal gland's functions are not fully understood, but one of its functions is secretion of hormones that affect circadian rhythm. The combining form **pineal/o** refers to the pineal gland.

### Secretion of the Pineal Gland

- **melatonin** (mehl-ah-tōn-ihn) = controls circadian rhythm and reproductive timing. **Circadian** can be divided into **circa** (around) and **diem** (day). *Circadian* refers to the events occurring within a 24-hour period.

### Gonads

The **gonads** (gō-nahdz) are gamete-producing glands. A **gamete** (gahm-ēt) is a sex cell. Gamete-producing glands

are the **ovaries** in females and **testes** in males. **Gonad/o** is the combining form for gonad or gamete-producing gland. **Gonadotropic hormones** stimulate the gonads.

### Secretions of the Ovary

Secretions of the ovary are stimulated by **human chorionic** (kōr-ē-ohn-ihck) **gonadotropin**, or **hCG**. hCG is secreted by the embryo and by the placenta after implantation has occurred. Other gonadotropins also influence ovarian secretion.

- **estrogen** (ehs-trō-jehn) = hormone that aids in the development of secondary sex characteristics (an example is mammary gland development) and regulates ovulation in females.
- **progesterone** (prō-jēhs-tər-own) = hormone that aids in the maintenance of pregnancy. Progesterone also is secreted from the corpus luteum and placenta.

### Secretion of the Testes

- **testosterone** (tehs-tohs-tər-own) = augments the development of secondary sex characteristics. Examples of secondary sex characteristics in animals include horns in rams (not horns in all species), boar tusks, and shoulder girth in cattle and horses. Testosterone also is thought to be secreted from the ovaries and adrenal cortex, although those secretions are in very small amounts.

## TEST ME: ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Diagnostic procedures performed on the endocrine system include the following:

- **ACTH stimulation test** = blood analysis for cortisol levels after administration of synthetic adrenocorticotrophic hormone; used to differentiate pituitary-dependent hyperadrenocorticism from adrenal-dependent hyperadrenocorticism.
- **assays** (ahs-āz) = laboratory technique used to determine the amount of a particular substance in a sample. Assays are discussed in Chapter 16.
- **dexamethasone** (dehcks-ah-mehth-ah-zōn) **suppression test** = blood analysis for cortisol levels after administration of synthetic glucocorticoid (dexamethasone); used to differentiate pituitary-dependent hyperadrenocorticism from adrenal-dependent hyperadrenocorticism. Also called **dex suppression test**. Dex suppression tests may be high-dose or low-dose.
- **radioactive** (rā-dē-ō-ahck-tihv) **iodine uptake test** = analysis of thyroid function after induction of radioactive iodine has been given orally or intravenously. Absorption of the radioactive iodine is measured with a counter for a specific time period.
- **thyroid stimulation test** = blood analysis for thyroid hormone levels after administration of synthetic

thyroid-stimulating hormone; used to differentiate pituitary-dependent from thyroid-dependent dysfunction. **Synthetic** (sihn-theh-tihck) means pertaining to artificial production. TSH levels also can be measured before and after administration of thyrotropin-releasing hormone.

## PATHOLOGY: ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the endocrine system include the following:

- **acromegaly** (ahck-rō-mehg-ah-lē) = enlargement of the extremities caused by excessive secretion of growth hormone after puberty. **Acr/o** means extremities.
- **Addison's disease** (ahd-ih-sohnz) = disorder caused by deficient adrenal cortex function; also called **hypoadrenocorticism** (hī-pō-ahd-rēn-ō-kōr-tih-kih-z-uhm).
- **adrenopathy** (ahd-rēn-ohp-ah-thē) = disease of the adrenal glands.
- **aldosteronism** (ahl-doh-stər-ōn-ihzm) = disorder caused by excessive secretion of aldosterone by the adrenal cortex, resulting in electrolyte imbalance. An **electrolyte** (ē-lehck-trō-lit) is a charged substance found in blood.
- **Cushing's disease** (kuhsh-ihngz) = disorder caused by excessive adrenal cortex production of glucocorticoid, resulting in increased urination, drinking, and redistribution of body fat; also called **hyperadrenocorticism** (hī-pər-ahd-rēn-ō-kōr-tih-kih-z-uhm) (Figure 11-6).
- **diabetes insipidus** (dī-ah-bē-tēz ihn-sihp-ih-duhs) = insufficient antidiuretic hormone production or the inability of the kidneys to respond to ADH stimuli. A **stimulus** (stihm-yoo-luhs) is an agent,

act, or influence that produces a reaction. The plural of *stimulus* is **stimuli**.

- **diabetes mellitus** (dī-ah-bē-tēz mehl-ih-tuhs) = metabolic disorder of inadequate secretion of insulin or recognition of insulin by the body, resulting in increased urination, drinking, and weight loss. Severe insulin deficiency may result in **ketoacidosis** (kē-tō-ah-sih-dō-sihs), which is an abnormal condition of low pH accompanied by ketones (by-products of fat metabolism). **Acidosis** (ah-sih-dō-sihs) is an abnormal condition of low pH.
- **endocrinopathy** (ehn-dō-krih-nohp-ah-thē) = disease of the hormone-producing system.
- **gynecomastia** (gī-neh-kō-mahs-tē-ah) = condition of excessive mammary development in males.
- **hypercrinism** (hī-pər-kri-nihzm) = condition of excessive gland secretion.
- **hyperglycemia** (hī-pər-glī-sē-mē-ah) = abnormally elevated blood glucose.
- **hypergonadism** (hī-pər-gō-nahd-ihzm) = abnormal condition of excessive hormone secretion by the sex glands (ovaries in females; testes in males).
- **hyperinsulinism** (hī-pər-ihh-suh-lin-ihzm) = disorder of excessive hormone that transports blood glucose to body cells.
- **hyperparathyroidism** (hī-pər-pahr-ah-thī-royd-ihzm) = abnormal condition of excessive parathyroid hormone secretion resulting in hypercalcemia.
- **hyperpituitarism** (hī-pər-pih-too-ih-tahr-ihzm) = condition of excessive secretion of the pituitary gland.
- **hyperthyroidism** (hī-pər-thī-royd-ihzm) = condition of excessive thyroid hormone. Signs of hyperthyroidism include increased metabolic rate, weight loss, polyuria, and polydipsia (Figure 11-7).

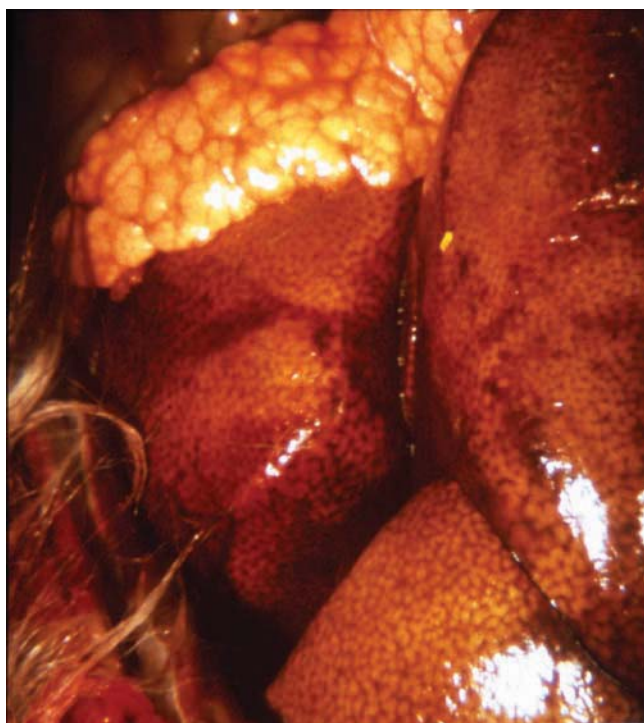


**Figure 11-6** Dog with hyperadrenocorticism. Hyperadrenocorticism or Cushing's disease results in polyuria, polydipsia, and redistribution of body fat. (Courtesy of Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD, Glasgow University.)



**Figure 11-7** Cat with diabetes mellitus. Increased metabolic rate, weight loss, polyuria, and polydipsia may indicate hyperthyroidism or diabetes mellitus in cats. (Courtesy of Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD, Glasgow University.)

- **hypocrinism** (hī-pō-krī-nihzm) = condition of deficient gland secretion.
- **hypoglycemia** (hī-pō-glī-sē-mē-ah) = abnormally low blood glucose.
- **hypogonadism** (hī-pō-gō-nahd-ihzm) = abnormal condition of deficient hormone secretion by the sex glands (ovaries in females; testes in males).
- **hypoparathyroidism** (hī-pō-pahr-ah-thī-royd-ihzm) = abnormal condition of deficient parathyroid hormone secretion resulting in hypocalcemia. **Hypocalcemia** (hī-pō-kahl-sē-mē-ah) is abnormally low levels of blood calcium. **Hypo-** is the prefix for deficient, **calc/i** is the combining form for calcium, and **-emia** is the suffix for blood condition. Hypercalcemia is abnormally high blood calcium levels because **hyper-** is the prefix meaning excessive.
- **hypophysitis** (hī-pō-fī-sī-tihs) = inflammation of the pituitary gland.
- **hypothyroidism** (hī-pō-thī-royd-ihzm) = condition of thyroid hormone deficiency. Signs of hypothyroidism include decreased metabolic rate, poor hair coat, lethargy, and increased sensitivity to cold. **Euthyroidism** (yoo-thī-royd-ihzm) is the condition of normal thyroid function. The prefix **eu-** means good, well, or easily.
- **insulinoma** (ihn-suh-lihn-ō-mah) = tumor of the islet of Langerhans of the pancreas.
- **pancreatitis** (pahn-krē-ah-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the pancreas (Figure 11–8).



**Figure 11–8** Pancreas of a dog with diabetes mellitus. (Courtesy of Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD, Glasgow University.)

- **pheochromocytoma** (fē-ō-krō-mō-sī-tō-mah) = tumor of the adrenal medulla resulting in increased secretion of epinephrine and norepinephrine. **Phe/o** is the combining form for dusky; **chrom/o** is the combining form for color; **cyt/o** is the combining form for cell; **-oma** is the suffix meaning tumor. A pheochromocytoma is a tumor that takes on a dark (dusky) color because it is composed of chromaffin (or colored) cells.
- **pinealopathy** (pīn-ē-ah-lohp-ah-thē) = disorder of the pineal gland.
- **pituitarism** (pīh-too-ih-tār-ihzm) = any disorder of the pituitary gland.
- **thymoma** (thī-mō-mah) = tumor of the thymus.
- **thyroiditis** (thī-roy-dī-tihs) = inflammation of the thyroid gland.
- **thyromegaly** (thī-rō-mehg-ah-lē) = enlargement of the thyroid gland.
- **thyrotoxicosis** (thī-rō-tohck-sih-kō-sihs) = abnormal life-threatening condition of excessive, poisonous quantities of thyroid hormones. The combining form **toxic/o** means poison.

## PROCEDURES: ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the endocrine system include the following:

- **adrenalectomy** (ahd-rē-nahl-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of one or both adrenal glands.
- **chemical thyroidectomy** (thī-royd-ehck-tō-mē) = administration of radioactive iodine to suppress thyroid function; also called radioactive iodine therapy.
- **hypophysectomy** (hī-pohf-ih-sehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the pituitary gland.
- **lobectomy** (lō-behck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a lobe or a well-defined portion of an organ.
- **pancreatectomy** (pahn-krē-ah-tehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the pancreas.
- **pancreatotomy** (pahn-krē-ah-toht-ō-mē) = surgical incision into the pancreas.
- **parathyroidectomy** (pahr-ah-thī-royd-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of one or more parathyroid glands.
- **pinealectomy** (pīn-ē-ahl-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the pineal gland.
- **thymectomy** (thī-mehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the thymus.
- **thyroidectomy** (thī-royd-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of all or part of the thyroid gland.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

- The gland known as the master gland that helps maintain the appropriate levels of hormone in the body is the
  - hypothalamus
  - pituitary gland
  - thyroid gland
  - pancreas
- The chemical substance secreted by the posterior pituitary gland that stimulates uterine contractions during parturition is
  - prolactin
  - luteinizing hormone
  - ACTH
  - oxytocin
- The regulator of the endocrine system is the
  - thyroid gland
  - calcitonin
  - hypothalamus
  - parathyroid gland
- Thyromegaly is
  - enlargement of the thyroid gland
  - augmentation of the thymus
  - dissolution of the parathyroid glands
  - radioactive iodine treatment of the thyroid gland
- Surgical removal of a well-defined portion of an organ is a
  - saccullectomy
  - lumpectomy
  - lobectomy
  - cystectomy
- An aggregation of cells specialized to secrete or excrete materials not related to their function is a
  - hormone
  - gland
  - hypoadenium
  - hyperadenium
- Hypoadrenocorticism, a disorder caused by deficient adrenal cortex production of glucocorticoid, also is known as
  - Cushing's disease
  - Graves' disease
  - Addison's disease
  - Langerhans' disease
- A tumor of the islets of Langerhans of the pancreas is called
  - diabetes mellitus
  - diabetes insipidus
  - ketoacidosis
  - insulinoma
- The chemical substance that helps control circadian rhythm is
  - circadianin
  - pinealin
  - melatonin
  - thymin
- Excessive mammary development in males is called
  - feminum
  - gynecomastia
  - gyneconium
  - feminomastia
- Which of the following is a function of the thyroid gland?
  - secretes thymosin
  - secretes thyroid-stimulating hormone
  - secretes corticosteroids
  - secretes triiodothyronine, thyroxine, and calcitonin
- What is another name for the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland?
  - hypophysis
  - epiphysis
  - adenohypophysis
  - neurohypophysis

13. Which hormone maintains water balance in the body by increasing water reabsorption in the kidney?
  - a. insulin
  - b. epinephrine
  - c. antidiuretic hormone
  - d. FSH
14. What is the name of a laboratory technique used to determine the amount of a particular substance in a sample?
  - a. stimulation test
  - b. synthetic test
  - c. uptake test
  - d. assay
15. An abnormally low blood glucose level is known as
  - a. hyperglycemia
  - b. hypoglycemia
  - c. glucosemia
  - d. diabetes mellitus
16. The condition of normal thyroid function is known as
  - a. thyrotoxicosis
  - b. thyromegaly
  - c. euthyroidism
  - d. thyroiditis
17. Which hormone transports blood glucose to the cells?
  - a. glucagon
  - b. insulin
  - c. vasopressin
  - d. melatonin
18. Glucocorticoids are secreted by the
  - a. adrenal cortex
  - b. adrenal medulla
  - c. parathyroid gland
  - d. pancreas
19. The pituitary gland acts in response to stimuli from the
  - a. hypothalamus
  - b. thymus
  - c. parathyroid glands
  - d. thyroid gland
20. The word part that means to secrete or separate is
  - a. endo
  - b. -crine
  - c. hormon/o
  - d. aden/o

## Matching

Match the endocrine term in column I with the correct description in column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ adrenals	a. butterfly-shaped gland on either side of the larynx
2. _____ thyroid	b. gland located dorsal to the sternum
3. _____ thymus	c. contains specialized cells that secrete hormones that affect sugar and starch metabolism
4. _____ pancreas	d. secretes melatonin
5. _____ pituitary	e. gamete-producing glands
6. _____ parathyroid	f. small gland at the base of the brain
7. _____ pineal	g. secretes hormone that reduces bone calcium levels and regulates phosphorus
8. _____ gonads	h. two small glands located on top of each kidney
9. _____ thyroidectomy	i. tumor of the islet of Langerhans cells of the pancreas
10. _____ hyperthyroidism	j. abnormally low blood calcium levels
11. _____ diabetes mellitus	k. insufficient antidiuretic hormone
12. _____ diabetes insipidus	l. insufficient secretion of insulin or recognition of insulin
13. _____ adrenopathy	m. surgical removal of the thyroid gland
14. _____ acidosis	n. condition of excessive gland secretion
15. _____ glucagon	o. condition of excessive thyroid hormone
16. _____ hypocalcemia	p. disease of the adrenal gland
17. _____ insulinoma	q. abnormal condition of low pH
18. _____ hypercrinism	r. hormone that increases blood glucose

## Fill in the Blanks

1. Thyr/o and thyroid/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Adren/o and adrenal/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. -trophic means \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Lute/o means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Somat/o means \_\_\_\_\_.

## Spelling

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |   |              |             |             |
|---|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. gland that has both exocrine and endocrine function:               | pancrease    | pancreus    | pancreas    |
| 2. substance that increases urine secretion:                          | dyuretic     | diyuretic   | diuretic    |
| 3. gland located at the base of the brain:                            | pitwoitary   | pituitary   | pitootary   |
| 4. part of the brain that controls secretions of the pituitary gland: | hypothalamus | hypothalmus | hypothalmis |
| 5. gamete-producing glands:   | gonids       | gonads      | goknads     |

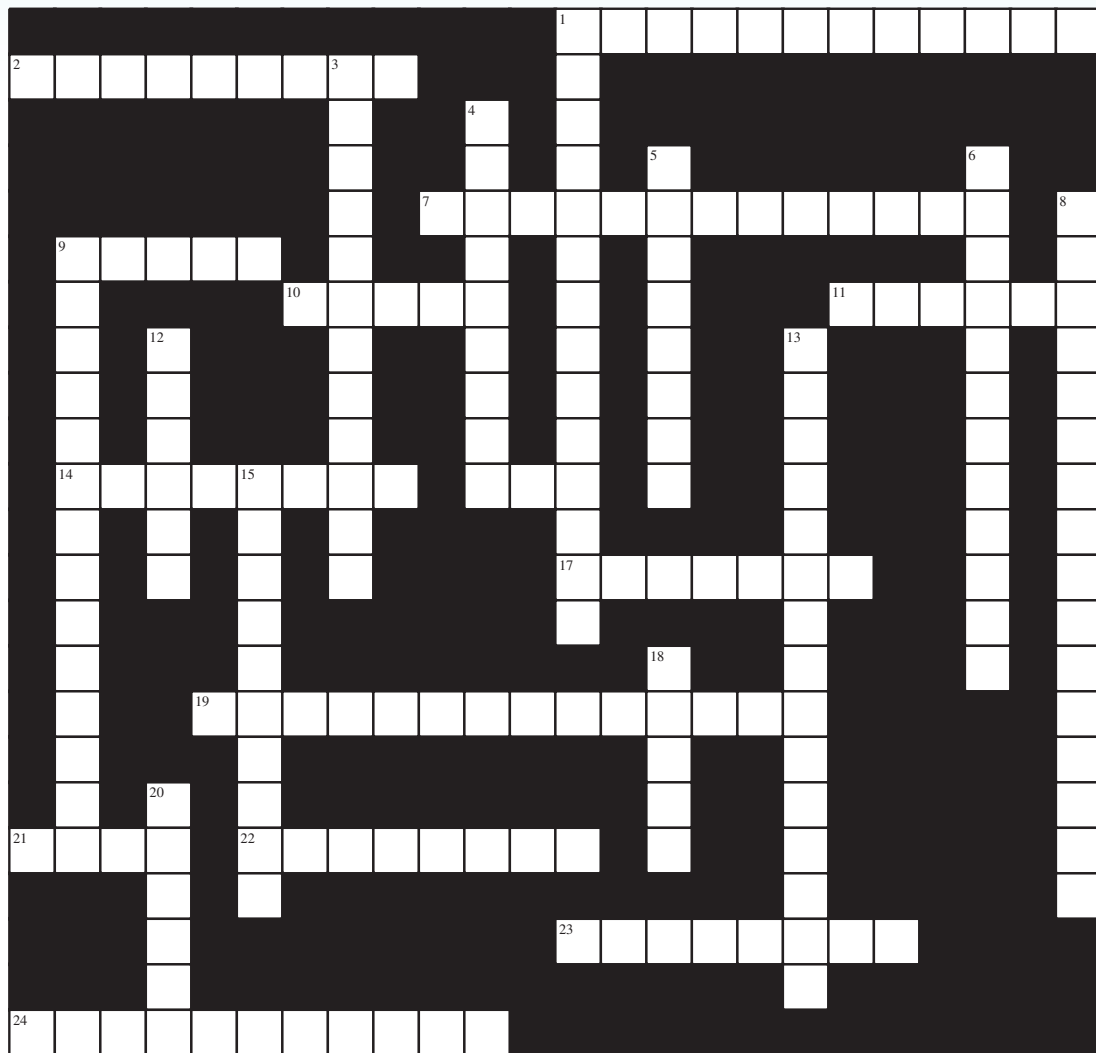
## Word Scramble

Use the definitions to unscramble the terms relating to the endocrine system.

- |   |                |       |
|---|----------------|-------|
| 1. condition of building up                                   | mlsioanb       | _____ |
| 2. condition of breaking down                                 | mlsioactb      | _____ |
| 3. abnormally elevated blood glucose                          | aieyehprglcm   | _____ |
| 4. inflammation of the pancreas                               | iittseaacrn    | _____ |
| 5. gamete-producing   | naodg          | _____ |
| 6. surgical removal of the thyroid gland                      | dyorihetcmoy   | _____ |
| 7. study of the hormonal system                               | glnooyndeocri  | _____ |
| 8. production of new glucose                                  | ssgiluncoegeen | _____ |
| 9. artificially produced                                      | nttheicys      | _____ |
| 10. abnormal condition of deficient thyroid hormone secretion | smidioryhtophy | _____ |

# CROSSWORD PUZZLE

## Endocrine Terms Puzzle



### Across

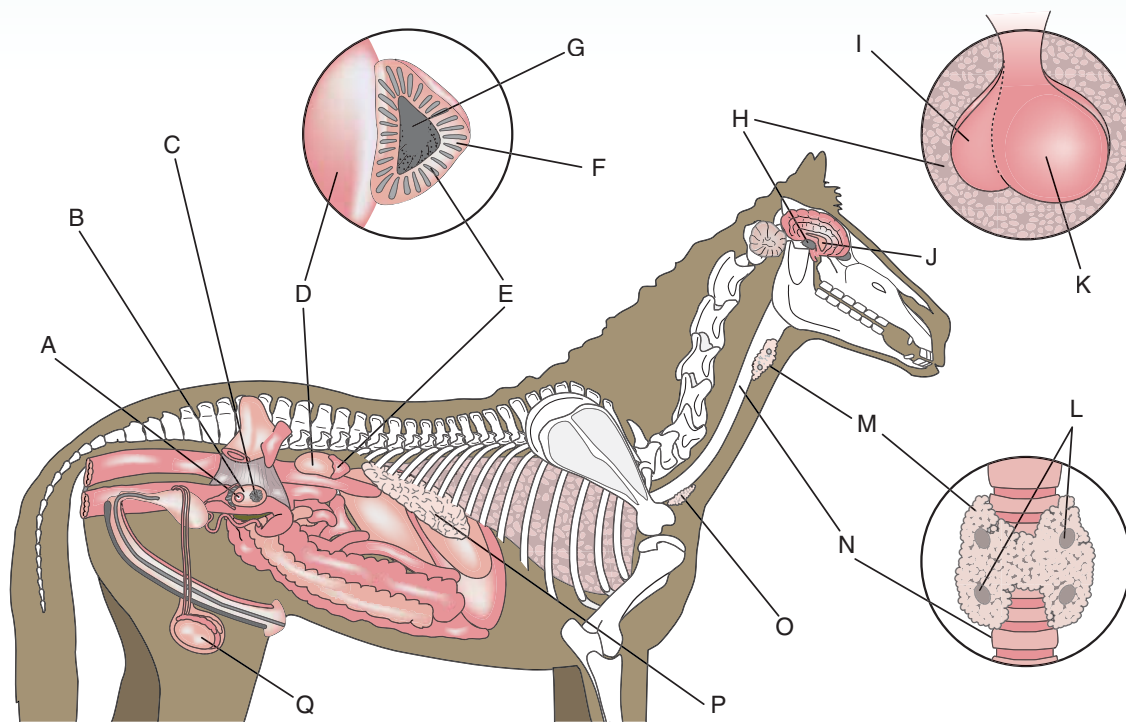
- 1 condition of normal thyroid function
- 2 pertaining to artificial production
- 7 surgical incision into the pancreas
- 9 prefix meaning excessive, above normal, or elevated
- 10 combining form for gland
- 11 sex cell
- 14 abnormally low blood calcium levels
- 17 chemical substance produced by an organ which is transported by the bloodstream to regulate another organ
- 19 hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex used to suppress immunity
- 21 suffix meaning deficient, less than normal, or decreases
- 22 agent, act, or influence that produces a reaction
- 23 abnormal condition of low pH
- 24 substance that stimulates blood vessel contraction and increases blood pressure

### Down

- 1 disease of hormone-producing system
- 3 funnel-shaped passage or opening
- 4 condition of building up
- 5 drowsiness or indifference
- 6 condition of excessive gland secretion
- 8 tumor of the adrenal medulla
- 9 surgical removal of the pituitary gland
- 12 suffix meaning affinity for
- 13 another term for hyperadrenocorticism
- 15 condition of breaking down
- 18 suffix meaning to secrete or separate
- 20 combining form for body

## LABEL THE DIAGRAMS

Label the diagram in Figure 11–9.



**Figure 11–9** Endocrine organs. Label the endocrine organs and related structures. Provide the combining form for each endocrine gland.

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 7-yr-old M/N golden retriever, Goldie, was presented to the clinic for bite wounds from another dog in the household. After the dog's vaccination status was checked, he was examined. The dog's vital signs included T = 103°F, HR = 120 BPM, RR = 42 breaths/min. Upon examination, it was noted that the dog weighed 85#, the haircoat had areas of alopecia, and the dog was lethargic. The wounds from the dog fight consisted of 2 lacerations; 1 laceration was 4 cm long located on the lateral side of the L forelimb proximal to the elbow, and the other laceration was 2 cm long located on the medial surface of the L hock. The owner was questioned as to whether these two dogs usually got along in the house, and the owner stated that they had before Goldie's recent history of lethargy and unwillingness to go out for walks during the past month. The owner thought that Goldie did not want to go out on walks because of the change of seasons and the cold, damp weather. Goldie was admitted to the clinic and anesthetized, and the lacerations were cleaned and sutured. Antibiotics were dispensed 2 T BID for 7 d. Goldie came back for suture removal in 10 days. The lacerations had healed; but hair had not begun to regrow in the areas of the lacerations, and more areas of alopecia were noted. A thyroid panel was recommended to assess Goldie's thyroid function. Blood was drawn, and a thyroid panel was run. The thyroid panel revealed that Goldie was hypothyroid, and thyroid supplementation was begun.

1. yr \_\_\_\_\_
2. M/N \_\_\_\_\_
3. T \_\_\_\_\_
4. HR \_\_\_\_\_
5. BPM \_\_\_\_\_
6. # \_\_\_\_\_
7. alopecia \_\_\_\_\_
8. lethargic \_\_\_\_\_
9. cm \_\_\_\_\_
10. lateral \_\_\_\_\_
11. proximal \_\_\_\_\_
12. elbow \_\_\_\_\_
13. medial \_\_\_\_\_
14. hock \_\_\_\_\_
15. anesthetized \_\_\_\_\_
16. BID \_\_\_\_\_
17. d \_\_\_\_\_
18. hypothyroid \_\_\_\_\_

A 15-yr-old F/S DSH was brought to the clinic for weight loss. Examination revealed that the cat was tachycardic, emaciated, and lethargic. Vital signs were T = 102°F, HR = 260 BPM, RR = 60 breaths/min. Abdominal palpation revealed a moderately full urinary bladder, slightly small kidneys, and gas-filled loops of bowel. Palpation of the neck revealed enlargement of thyroid glands. Blood was collected from the jugular vein for a CBC, chem screen, and T<sub>4</sub>. Blood work revealed a slightly elevated BUN and creatinine, hypercholesterolemia, and elevated T<sub>4</sub> levels. It was recommended that the cat receive radioactive iodine treatments; however, the options of thyroidectomy and pharmaceutical management also were discussed. The cat was scheduled for radiation treatments at a referral center.

19. yr \_\_\_\_\_
20. F/S \_\_\_\_\_
21. DSH \_\_\_\_\_
22. tachycardic \_\_\_\_\_
23. emaciated \_\_\_\_\_
24. lethargic \_\_\_\_\_
25. T \_\_\_\_\_
26. HR \_\_\_\_\_
27. BPM \_\_\_\_\_
28. RR \_\_\_\_\_
29. palpation \_\_\_\_\_
30. vein \_\_\_\_\_
31. CBC \_\_\_\_\_
32. chem screen \_\_\_\_\_
33. T<sub>4</sub> \_\_\_\_\_
34. BUN \_\_\_\_\_
35. creatinine \_\_\_\_\_
36. hypercholesterolemia \_\_\_\_\_
37. radioactive iodine treatments \_\_\_\_\_
38. thyroidectomy \_\_\_\_\_

# CHAPTER 12

1 + 1 = 3  
(OR MORE)

## Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the functions and structures of the male and female reproductive systems
- Use medical terminology to describe the estrous cycle in females
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce the terms related to the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the reproductive systems

## THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

The **reproductive** (rē-prō-duhck-tihv) **system** is responsible for producing offspring. The reproductive system needs both male- and female-specific organs to complete offspring production. The term **theriogenology** (thēr-ē-ō-jehn-ohl-ō-jē) is used to describe animal reproduction or the study of producing beasts. **Theri/o** is the combining form for beast, **gen/o** is the combining form for producing, and **-logy** is the suffix meaning to study.

The reproductive organs, whether male or female, are called the **genitals** (jehn-ih-tahlz), or **genitalia** (jehn-ih-tā-lē-ah). The combining form **genit/o** refers to the organs of reproduction. The genitalia include external and internal organs.

The male reproductive system will be described first, followed by the female reproductive system.



## FUNCTIONS OF THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

The functions of the male reproductive system are to produce and deliver sperm to the egg to create life.

## STRUCTURES OF THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

The structures of the male reproductive system produce sperm, transport sperm out of the body, and produce hormones.

### Scrotum

The **scrotum** (skrō-tuhm), or **scrotal sac**, is the external pouch that encloses and supports the testes. The scrotum encloses the testes outside the body so that the testes are at a temperature lower than body temperature. This lower

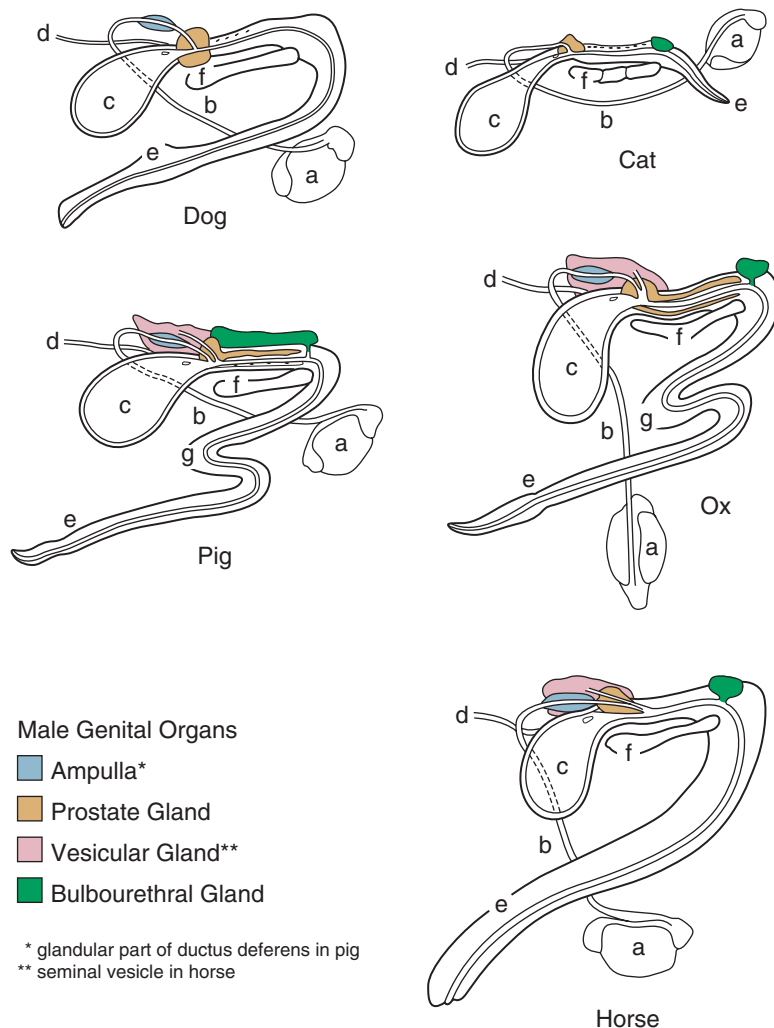
temperature is needed for sperm development. *Scrotum* is the Latin term for bag. The combining form **scrot/o** means scrotum.

The area between the scrotum and the anus in males is the **perineum** (pehr-ih-nē-uhm). **Perine/o** is the combining form for the area between the scrotum (or vulva in females) and anus.

### Testes

The **testes** (tehs-tēz), or **testicles** (tehs-tih-kuhlz), are the male sex glands that produce spermatozoa. Testes refers to glands, and **testis** (tehs-tihz) refers to a single gland.

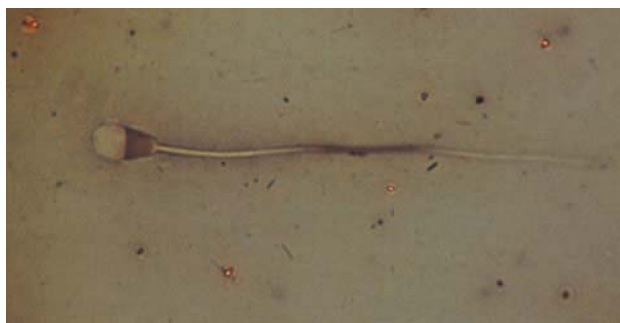
The orientation of the testes in the scrotum varies between species. Some species have open inguinal rings that allow the testes to be withdrawn from the scrotum and into the abdomen. Sex glands are called **gonads** (gō-nahdz). The combining forms for testes are **orch/o**, **orchi/o**, **orchid/o**, **test/o**, and **testicul/o** (Figure 12–1).



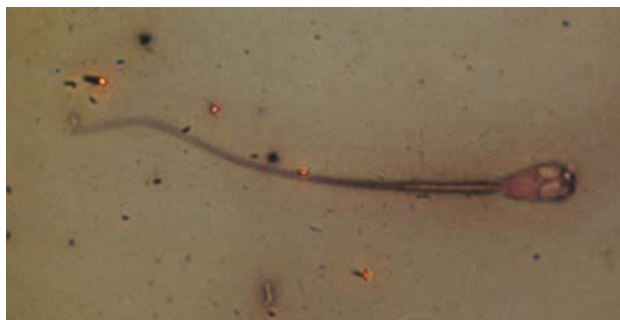
**Figure 12–1** Male genital organs. (a) Right testis and epididymis, (b) ductus deferens, (c) urinary bladder, (d) ureter, (e) penis and extrapelvic urethra, (f) pelvic symphysis, and (g) sigmoid flexure.

The testes develop in the fetal abdomen and descend into the scrotum before birth. The testes are suspended in the scrotum by the spermatic cord. The testicle is divided into compartments that contain coiled tubes called the **seminiferous tubules** (seh-mih-nihf-ər-uhs too-buhlz), and cells between the spaces are called **interstitial** (ihn-tər-stih-shahl) cells. The interstitial cells of the testes are called the **Leydig's** (lih-dihgz) **cells**. Leydig's cells have endocrine function. **Sertoli** (sihr-tō-lē) **cells** are specialized cells in the testes that support and nourish sperm growth. The seminiferous tubules are channels in the testes in which sperm are produced and through which the sperm leave the testes. **Sperm** (spərm), or **spermatozoa** (spər-mah-tō-zō-ah), are the male gametes, or sex cells. **Spermatozoon** (spər-mah-tō-zō-uhn) is one gamete. The combining forms for spermatozoa are **sperm/o** and **spermat/o**.

Ejaculated semen occasionally is evaluated microscopically to determine whether the spermatozoa have normal morphology and motility and whether they are present in adequate numbers (Figures 12–2a and b). A spermatozoon has a head, midpiece, and tail (Figure 12–3). The head contains the nucleus. At the top of the head is a structure called the **acrosome** (ahck-rō-zōm), which contains enzymes that allow the spermatozoon to penetrate the ovum. The midpiece contains mitochondria to provide energy to the sperm. The tail is actually a flagellum, providing movement for the spermatozoon to reach the ovum. **Spermatogenesis** (spər-mah-tō-jehn-eh-sihs) is production of male gametes.

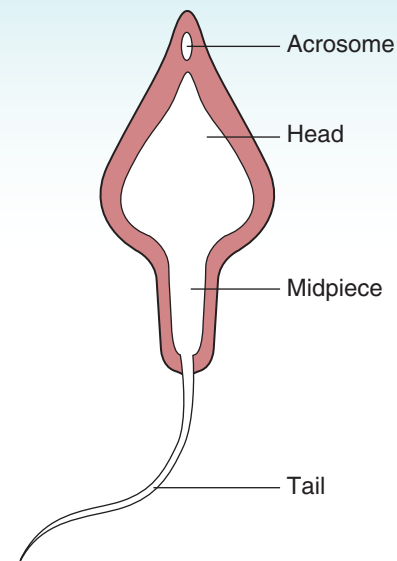


(a)



(b)

**Figure 12–2** Sperm with abnormal shapes are not desirable. (a) Normal. (b) Defective. (Courtesy of Dr. Ben Brackett, Department of Physiology, School of Veterinary Sciences, The University of Georgia.)



**Figure 12–3** Parts of sperm.

*Gamete* comes from the Greek terms *gametes*, which means husband, and *gamete*, which means wife. *Gamein* is Greek for to marry. Johann Gregor Mendel was the first to apply the term *gamete* in biology to mean sex cells. Gametes are the sperm in males and ovum (egg) in females.

## Epididymis

The seminiferous tubules join together to form a cluster. Ducts emerge from this cluster and enter the epididymis. The **epididymis** (ehp-ih-dihd-ih-mihs) is the tube at the upper part of each testis that secretes part of the semen, stores semen before ejaculation, and provides a passageway for sperm. The epididymis is divided into head (or caput), body, and tail portions. The epididymis runs down the length of the testicle, turns upward, and becomes a narrower tube called the ductus deferens (Figure 12–4). Sperm are collected in the epididymis, where they become **motile** (mō-tihl), or capable of spontaneous motion. The combining form for epididymis is **epididym/o**.

## Ductus Deferens

The **ductus deferens** (duhck-tuhs deh-f-ər-ehnz) is a tube connected to the epididymis that carries sperm into the pelvic region toward the urethra. Each ductus deferens is encased by the spermatic cord. (The spermatic cord also encases nerves, blood and lymph vessels, and the cremaster muscle along with the ductus deferens.) The ductus deferens is the excretory duct

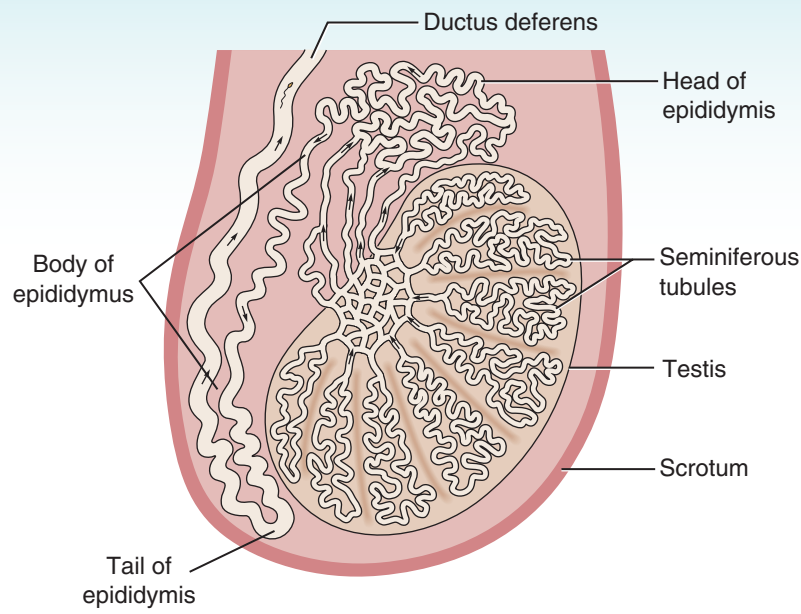


Figure 12-4 Cross section of scrotal structures.

of the testes. The ductus deferens in swine has a glandular portion called the **ampulla** (ahmp-yoo-lah). An ampulla is an enlarged part of a tube or canal.

Accessory Sex Glands

The male accessory sex glands include the seminal vesicles, prostate gland, and bulbourethral glands. Not all glands are present in all species (Table 12-1). The accessory sex glands add secretions to the sperm and flush urine from the urethra before sperm enter it.

The **seminal vesicles** (seh-mih-nahl vehs-ih-kuhls), or **vesicular** (vehs-ih-koo-lahr) **glands**, are two glands that open into the ductus deferens where it joins the urethra. The seminal vesicles secrete a thick, yellow substance that nourishes sperm and adds volume to the ejaculated semen. **Semen** (sē-mehn) is the ejaculatory fluid that contains sperm and the secretions of the accessory sex glands. **Semin/i** is the combining form for semen.

The **ejaculatory** (ē-jahck-yoo-lā-tōr-ē) **duct** is formed by the union of the ductus deferens and the duct from the seminal vesicles. The ejaculatory duct passes through the prostate and enters the urethra.

The **prostate** (proh-stāt) **gland** is a single gland that surrounds or is near the urethra and may be well defined or diffuse

*Seminal vesicles* is the term used in horses; *vesicular gland* is used in the other species when the gland is present.

Table 12-1 Male Accessory Glands of Different Species

	Prostate	Vesicular gland or seminal vesicle	Bulbourethral
dog	+	–	–
cat	+	–	+
pig	+	+	+
ruminants	+	+	+
horse	+	+	+

Note: In some species, the ampulla of the ductus deferens is glandular (as in horses).

depending on the species. The prostate gland secretes a thick fluid that aids in the motility of sperm. The combining form **prostat/o** means prostate gland.

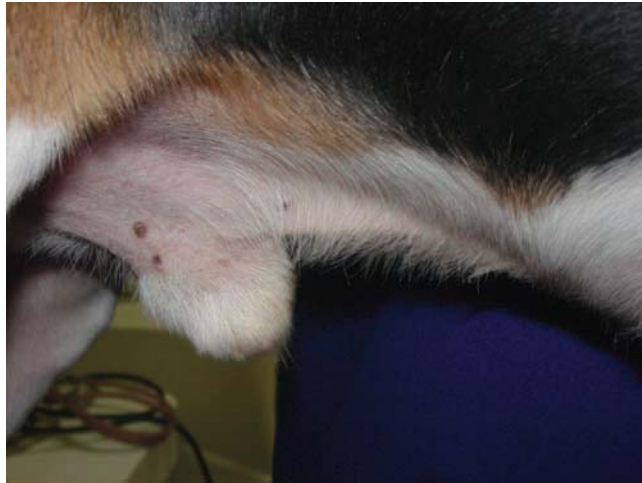
The **bulbourethral** (buhl-bō-yoo-rē-thrah) **glands** are two glands located on either side of the urethra. The bulbourethral glands secrete a thick mucus that acts as a lubricant for sperm. These glands are called **Cowper’s** (cow-pærz) **glands** in humans.

Urethra

The **urethra** (yoo-rē-thrah) is a tube passing through the penis to the outside of the body; it serves both reproductive and urinary systems. The combining form for urethra is **urethr/o**.

## Penis

The **penis** (pē-nihs) is the male sex organ that carries reproductive and urinary products out of the body. The glans penis is the distal part of the penis on which the urethra opens. The **prepuce** (prē-pyoos) is the retractable fold of skin covering the glans penis (Figure 12–5). The prepuce is sometimes called the **foreskin**. Dogs have an **os penis** (ohs pē-nihs), which is



**Figure 12–5** The prepuce is the retractable fold of skin covering the glans penis. (Courtesy of Terri Raffel, CVT.)

a bone encased in the penile tissue. All species except the cat have a cranioventrally directed penis. The combining forms **pen/i** and **priap/o** mean penis.

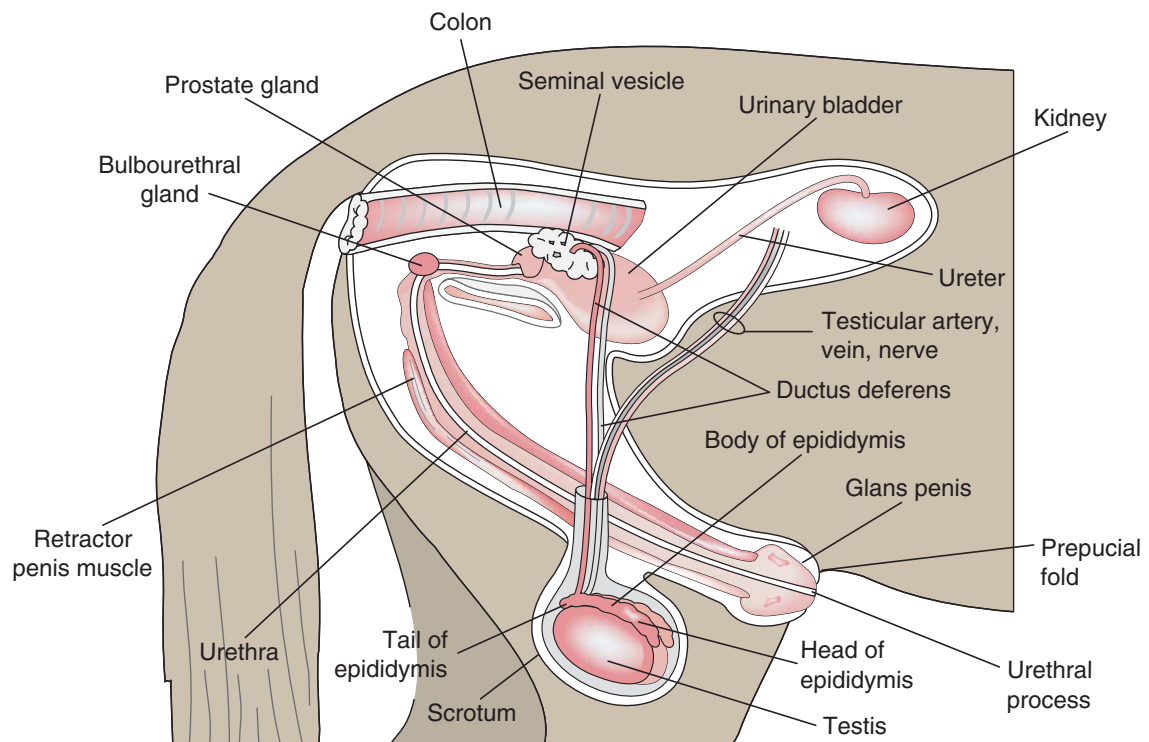
The penis is composed of erectile tissue that upon sexual stimulation fills with blood (under high pressure) and causes an erection. Some species, such as ruminants and swine, achieve an erection by straightening of the **sigmoid flexure** (sihg-moyd flehck-shər), an S-shaped bend in the penis. Other species, such as equine and canine, have a penis with almost all erectile tissue. Erection in these animals is caused by blood engorgement of the erectile tissue (Figure 12–6).

## FUNCTIONS OF THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

The functions of the female reproductive system are to create and support new life.

## STRUCTURES OF THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

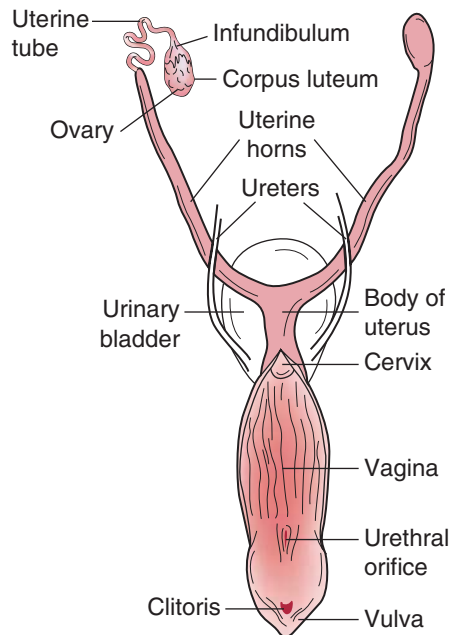
The structures of the female reproductive system produce eggs, transport eggs for fertilization and implantation, house the embryo, deliver the fetus, and produce hormones.



**Figure 12–6** Reproductive tract of a stallion.

## Ovaries

The **ovaries** (ō-vah-rēz) are a small pair of organs located in the caudal abdomen (Figure 12–7). An ovary is the female gonad that produces estrogen; progesterone; and **ova** (ō-vah), or **eggs**. The ovaries contain many small sacs called **graafian follicles** (grahf-ē-ahn fohl-lihck-kuhlz) (Figure 12–8). Each graafian follicle contains an ovum. The ova develop in the ovaries and are expelled (ovulated) when the egg matures. The combining forms **ovari/o** and **oophor/o** mean female gonad. The combining forms **oo/o**, **ov/i**, and **ov/o** mean egg. An egg cell is an **oocyte** (ō-ō-sit).



**Figure 12–7** Reproductive tract of a bitch.



**Figure 12–8** The follicle, which appears as a clear blister on the surface of the ovary, secretes a hormone called estrogen. (Courtesy of iStockphoto.)

## Uterine Tubes

The **uterine** tubes are paired tubes that extend from the cranial portion of the uterus to the ovary (although they are not attached to the ovary). The uterine tubes also are called **oviducts** (ō-vih-duhckts) and **fallopian** (fah-lō-pē-ahn) **tubes**. The combining form for uterine tubes is **salping/o**, which means tube.

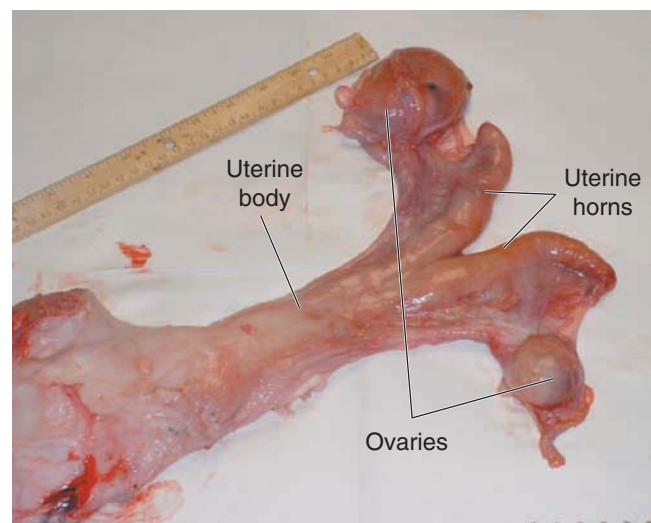
The distal end of each uterine tube is a funnel-shaped opening called the **infundibulum** (ihn-fuhn-dihb-yoo-luhm). The infundibulum contains fringed extensions called **fimbriae** (fihm-brē-ah) that catch ova when they leave the ovary. The fimbriae are not attached to the ovaries.

The proximal end of each uterine tube is connected to the uterine horns. The uterine tubes carry ova from the ovary to the uterus. The uterine tubes also transport sperm traveling up from the vagina and uterus. **Fertilization** (fēr-tihl-ih-zā-shuhn), or egg and sperm union, usually occurs in the uterine tube.

## Uterus

The **uterus** (yoo-tər-uhs) is a thick-walled, hollow organ with muscular walls and a mucous membrane lining that houses the developing embryo in pregnant females (Figure 12–9). The uterus is situated dorsal to the urinary bladder and ventral to the rectum. The combining forms **hyster/o**, **metr/o**, **metri/o**, and **uter/o** mean uterus. The uterus consists of three parts:

- **cornus** (kōr-nuhs) = horn. The cranial end of the uterus has two horns that travel toward the oviducts. **Cornu** means horn. Some animals are **bicornuate** (bi-kōrn-yoo-āt), which means having two large, well-defined uterine horns.
- **corpus** (kōr-puhs) = body. The middle portion of the uterus. **Corpu** means body.
- **cervix** (sihr-vihckz) = neck. The caudal portion of the uterus that extends into the vagina. **Cervic/o** means neck.



**Figure 12–9** Bovine reproductive tract.

The uterus is composed of three major tissue types:

- **perimetrium** (pehr-ih-mē-trē-uhm) = membranous outer layer of the uterus. **Peri-** is the prefix for surrounding.
- **myometrium** (mī-ō-mē-trē-uhm) = muscular middle layer of the uterus. **My/o** is the combining form for muscle.
- **endometrium** (ehn-dō-mē-trē-uhm) = inner layer of the uterus. **Endo-** is the prefix meaning within.

## Cervix

The **cervix** (sīhr-vihckz) is the caudal continuation of the uterus and marks the cranial extent of the vagina. The cervix contains ringlike smooth muscle called **sphincters**. The main function of the cervix is to prevent foreign substances from entering the uterus. The cervix usually is closed tightly except during estrus, when it relaxes to allow entry of sperm. During pregnancy, the cervix is closed with a mucous plug. The mucous plug is released near parturition to allow fetal passage. The combining form **cervic/o** means neck or necklike structure.

## Vagina

The **vagina** (vah-jī-nah) is the muscular tube lined with mucosa that extends from the cervix to the outside of the body. The vagina accepts the penis during copulation and serves as a passage for semen into the body and excretions and offspring out of the body. The combining forms **colp/o** and **vagin/o** mean vagina.

A membranous fold of tissue may partially or completely cover the external vaginal orifice. This fold is called the **hymen** (hī-mehn). An **orifice** (ōr-ih-fihs) is an entrance or outlet from a body cavity.

## Vulva

The **vulva** (vuhl-vah), also known as the female external genitalia, or **puddendum** (pyoo-dehn-duhm), is the external opening to the urogenital tract and consists of the vaginal orifice, vestibular glands, clitoris, hymen, and urethral orifice. The combining forms for the vulva are **vulv/o** and **episi/o**. The **perineum** (pehr-ih-nē-uhm) is the region between the vaginal orifice and anus in females.

The **labia** (lā-bē-ah) are the fleshy borders or edges of the vulva and are occasionally called the **lips**. In animals, the vulva contains simple lips, whereas humans have major and minor labia. The **vaginal orifice** is the entrance from the vagina to the outside of the body. The **vestibular glands** (also known as **Bartholin's glands** in primates) are found in bovine, feline, and occasionally ovine species. The vestibular glands secrete mucus to lubricate the vagina. The **clitoris** (kliht-ə-rihs) is the sensitive erectile tissue of females located in the ventral portion of the vulva. The clitoris is the analog of the glans penis of the male. The **urethral orifice** is found where the vagina and vulva join and is sometimes associated with a vestigial hymen (Figure 12–10).

## Mammary Glands

The **mammary** (mahm-mah-rē) **glands** are milk-producing glands in females. The number of mammary glands varies with the species: the mare, ewe, and doe (goat) have two; cows have four; sows have six or more pairs; and bitches and queens have four or more pairs. In litter-bearing species, the glandular structures usually are paired, located on the ventral surface, and called mammary glands, or **mammae** (mahm-ā). Each singular gland (mamma) is associated with one nipple. In large animals, the mammary gland is called an **udder** (uh-dər), is located in the inguinal area, and has two or four functional teats. The nipple area is called a **teat** (tēt) in large animals. In cows, the four mammae are called **quarters** (kwahr-tarz) (Figure 12–11).

Mammary glands are composed of connective and adipose tissue organized into lobes and lobules that contain milk-secreting sacs called **alveoli** (ahl-vē-ō-li). Each lobe drains toward the teat or papilla via a **lactiferous** (lahck-tihf-ər-uhs) **duct**. **Lact/i** means milk. The lactiferous ducts come together to form the lactiferous, or teat, sinus. The **lactiferous sinus** is composed of the gland cistern (within the gland) and the teat cistern (within the teat). Milk travels from the gland cistern into the teat cistern. From the teat cistern, milk empties into the **papillary duct**, which is commonly called the **streak canal**.

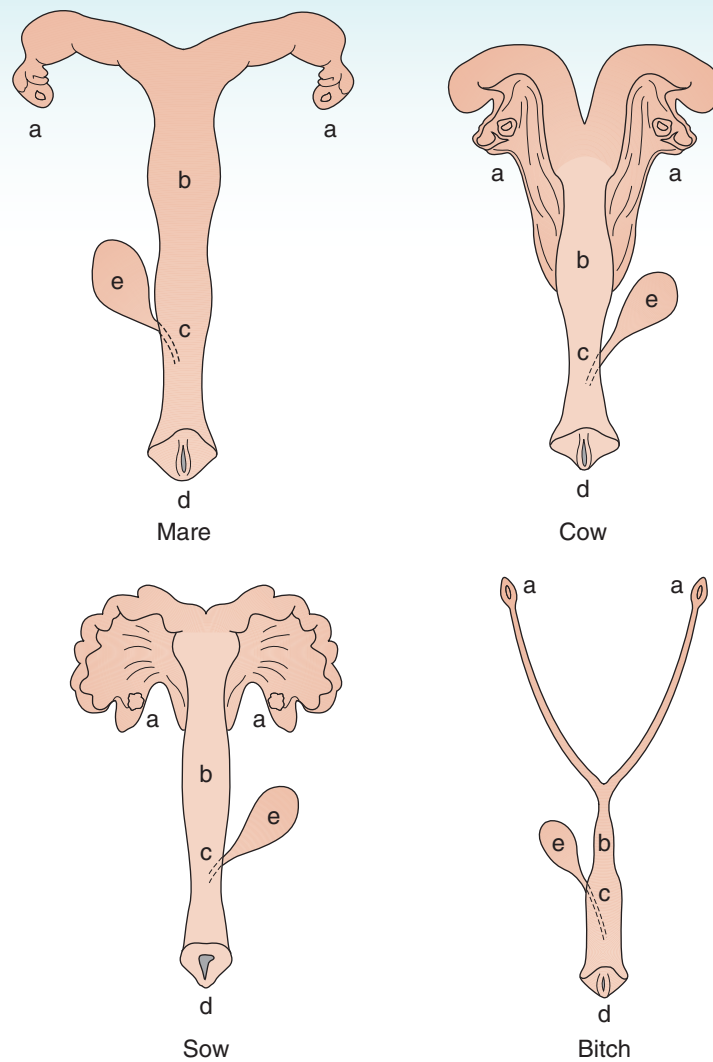
The combining forms for mammary glands are **mamm/o** and **mast/o**.

## THE ESTROUS CYCLE

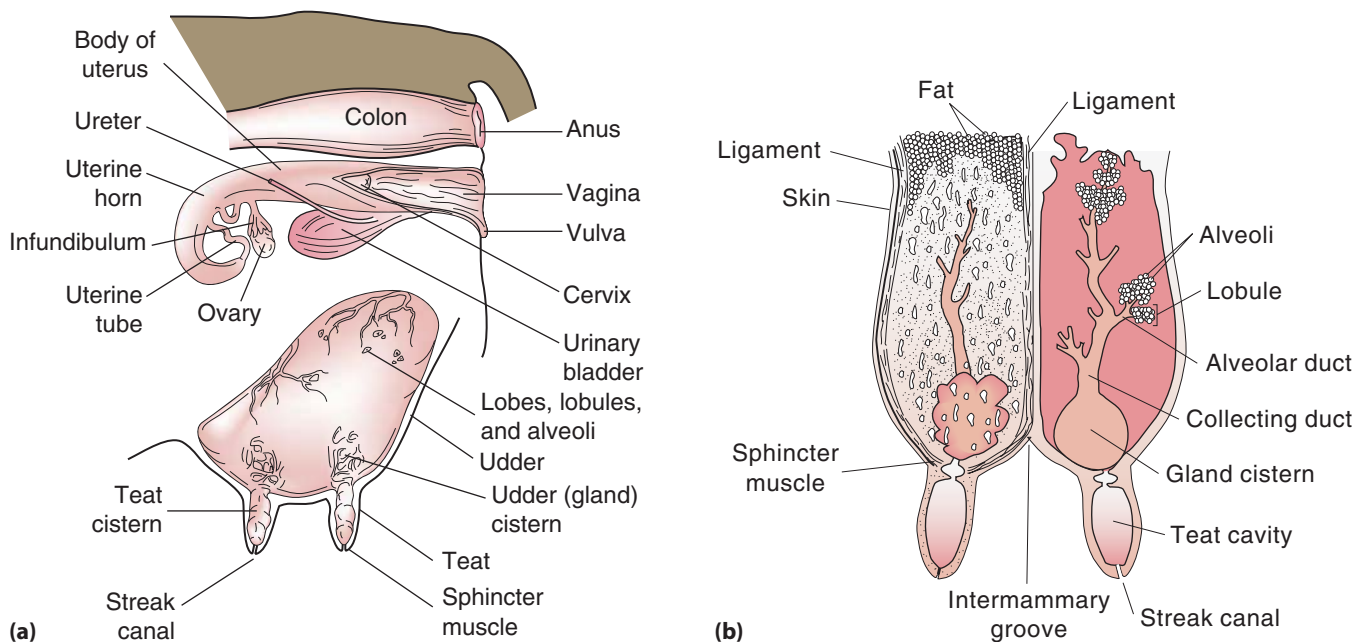
The **estrous** (ehs-truhs) **cycle**, sometimes called the heat cycle, occurs at the onset of puberty and continues throughout an animal's life. The ability to sexually reproduce begins at puberty and varies among species. The estrous cycle prepares the uterus to accept a fertilized ovum.

The female reproductive system functions on cyclic intervals. Hormones secreted from the anterior pituitary gland and ovary control the estrous cycle. Although there is species variation during estrous cycle phases, the basic patterns are the same.

The estrous cycle starts when ova develop in ovarian follicles. One or more follicles continue to develop until they reach the ripened follicle size (called the graafian follicle). The graafian follicle ruptures, a process called **ovulation** (ohv-yoo-lā-shuhn). The ovum is expelled from the ovary into the oviduct. The ruptured follicle continues to grow and becomes filled with a yellow substance. The yellow ruptured follicle is called the **corpus luteum** (kōr-puhs loo-tē-uhm), or yellow body. The corpus luteum is abbreviated CL. The CL secretes progesterone. If the ovum is fertilized, the CL will continue to secrete progesterone to prevent future estrous cycling. If the ovum is not fertilized, the CL will shrink and reduce its progesterone secretion, and a new estrous cycle begins. The stage of the estrous cycle in which the graafian follicle is present is called the **follicular** (fohl-ihck-yoo-lahr) **phase**. Estrogen is the predominant hormone during the follicular phase.



**Figure 12-10** Female genital organs and urinary bladder: (a) ovaries, (b) uterus, (c) vagina, (d) vulva, and (e) urinary bladder.



**Figure 12-11** (a) Cross section of cow reproductive system lateral view. (b) Cross section of an udder cranial view.

The stage of the estrous cycle in which the corpus luteum is present is called the **luteal** (loo-tē-ahl) **phase**. Progesterone is the predominant hormone during the luteal phase.

The estrous cycle is also divided into phases. The phases of the estrous cycle are as follows:

- **proestrus** (prō-ehs-truhs) = period of the estrous cycle before sexual receptivity. The prefix **pro-** means before. Proestrus involves the secretion of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) by the anterior pituitary gland, which causes the follicles to develop in the ovary. FSH stimulates ovarian release of estrogen, which helps prepare the reproductive tract for pregnancy.
- **estrus** (ehs-truhs) = period of the estrous cycle in which the female is receptive to the male. During estrus, FSH levels decrease and luteinizing hormone (LH) levels increase, causing the graafian follicle to rupture and release its egg (ovulation). **Ovulation** (ohv-yoo-lā-shuhn) occurs, and the animal is said to be in **heat**. This also is called **standing heat**.
- **metestrus** (meht-ehs-truhs) = short period of the estrous cycle after sexual receptivity. The CL forms and produces progesterone during this phase. Progesterone ensures proper implantation and maintenance of pregnancy. If an animal is not pregnant, the CL will decrease in size and become a **corpus albicans** (kōr-puhs ahl-bih-kahnz), or white body. Metestrus may be followed by diestrus, estrus, pregnancy, or false pregnancy. Metestrus is more commonly used to describe the estrous cycle of cattle; the term is rarely used in dogs, cats, and horses.
- **diestrus** (dī-ehs-truhs) = period of the estrous cycle after metestrus. This short phase of inactivity and quietness is seen in polyestrous animals before the onset of proestrus.
- **anestrus** (ahn-ehs-truhs) = period of the estrous cycle when the animal is sexually quiet. This long phase of quietness is seen in seasonally polyestrous and seasonally monestrous animals.

## MATING, PREGNANCY, AND BIRTH

### Mating

For reproduction to occur, the male and female of the species must **copulate** (kohp-yoo-lāt) to allow the sperm from the male to be transferred into the female. Copulation and **coitus** (kō-ih-tuhs) are terms that mean sexual intercourse.

**Intromission** (ihn-trō-mihs-shuhn) is insertion of the penis into the vagina. During coitus, the male **ejaculates** (ē-jahck-yoo-lātz) into the female's vagina. Ejaculate is to



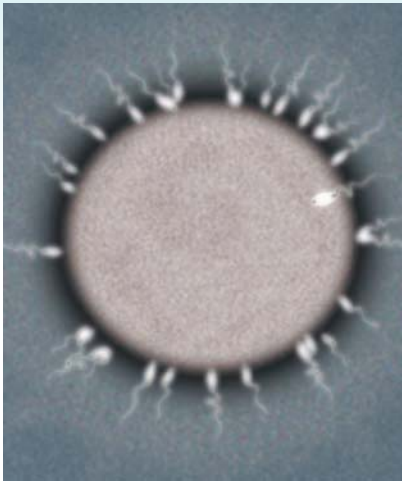
### What do the following terms mean?

- **monestrous** (mohn-ehs-truhs) = having one estrous or heat cycle per year.
- **polyestrous** (pohl-ē-ehs-truhs) = having more than one estrous or heat cycle per year.
- **spontaneous ovulators** (spohn-tā-nē-uhs oh-vū-lā-tōrz) = animals in which ovum release occurs cyclically.
- **induced ovulators** (ihn-doozd oh-vū-lā-tōrz) = animals in which the ovum is released only after copulation; also called **reflex ovulators**. Examples include cats, rabbits, ferrets, llamas, and mink.
- **seasonally** = pertaining to a specific time of year. For example, queens are seasonally polyestrous. The queen will have multiple cycles from January through October (varies depending on photoperiod and geographic location).

release semen during copulation. **Ejaculat/o** means to throw or hurl out. Sperm travel through the vagina, into the uterus, and into the uterine tube. When a sperm penetrates the ovum that is descending down the uterine tube, fertilization occurs. **Fertilization** (fēr-tihl-ih-zā-shuhn) is the union of ovum and sperm (Figure 12–12). If more than one ovum is passing down the oviduct when sperm are present, multiple fertilizations may take place.

### Afterbirth

The **placenta** (plah-sehn-tah) is the female organ of mammals that develops during pregnancy and joins mother and offspring for exchange of nutrients, oxygen, and waste products. The placenta also is called the **afterbirth**. The **umbilical** (uhm-bihl-ih-kuhl) **cord** is the structure that forms where the fetus communicates with the placenta. The **umbilicus** (uhm-bihl-ih-kuhs) is the structure that forms on the abdominal wall where the umbilical cord was connected to the fetus.



**Figure 12-12** The outer membrane of the egg must be dissolved before the sperm can enter the egg. (Courtesy of Getty Images Inc./Chad Baker.)



### Twins

Twins are two offspring born from the same gestational period. Fraternal twins are two offspring born during the same labor resulting from fertilization of separate ova by separate sperm. Maternal twins are two offspring born during the same labor resulting from fertilization of a single ovum by a single sperm. (The fertilized egg separates into two parts.) The term *twin* is not used in litter-bearing species, even if only two offspring are produced.

The umbilicus also is called the **navel** (nā-vuhl). **Umbilic/o** is the combining form for navel.

The placenta and its associated structures are called the fetal membranes. The innermost membrane enveloping the embryo in the uterus is called the **amnion** (ahm-nē-ohn). The amnion forms the amniotic cavity and protects the fetus by engulfing it in amniotic fluid. The amnion may be called the **amniotic sac** or **bag of waters**. The **allantois** (ahl-ahn-tō-ihs) is the innermost layer of the placenta. It forms a sac between itself and the amnion, where fetal waste products accumulate. The **chorion** (kōr-ē-ohn) is the outermost layer of the placenta (Figure 12-14).

**Copulation** and **coitus** are two words used to describe sexual intercourse. The following terms also are used in reference to mating:

- **mount** (mownt) = preparatory step to animal mating that involves one animal climbing on top of another animal or object; used as an indicator of heat (Figure 12-13).
- **tie** (tī) = period of copulation between a male and female canine during which the two animals are locked together by penile erectile tissue.
- **conception** (kohn-sehp-shuhn) = beginning of a new individual resulting from fertilization. The fertilized egg is called a **zygote** (zī-gōt). Division of sex cells in which the cell receives half the chromosomes from each parent is called **meiosis** (mī-ō-sihs).

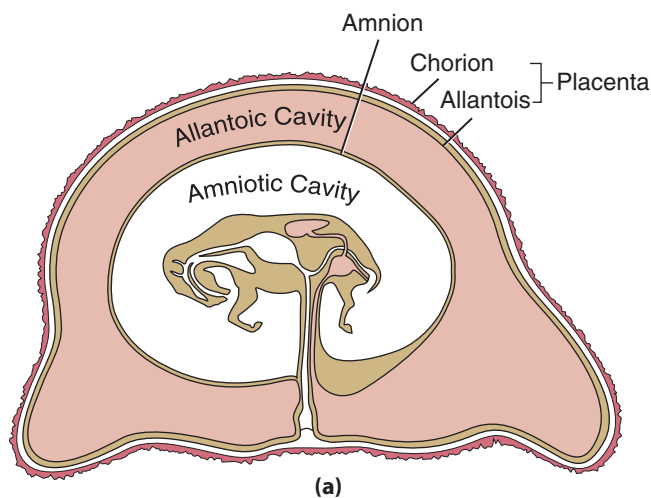
**Implantation** (ihm-plahn-tā-shuhn) is the attachment and embedding of the zygote in the uterus. The developing zygote after implantation is called an **embryo** (ehm-brē-ō). An unborn animal is called a **fetus** (fē-tuhs); this term is used more toward the end of pregnancy. Pregnancy is the time period between conception and parturition.



**Figure 12-13** Cattle mounting. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

The embryo has distinct layers that give rise to various tissue types. Layers of the embryo include the **ectoderm** (ehck-tō-därm), or outer layer of the embryo; the **mesoderm** (meh-sō-därm), the middle layer of the embryo; and the **endoderm** (ehn-dō-därm), the inner layer of the embryo.

The ruminant placenta has elevations on it that are located on the maternal or fetal surface. The **cotyledon** (koht-eh-lē-dohn) is the elevation of the ruminant placenta that is on the fetal surface and adheres to the maternal caruncle. Cotyledons also are called **buttons**. The **caruncle** (kahr-uhnck-uhl) is the fleshy mass on the maternal ruminant placenta that attaches to the fetal cotyledon. (Think **caruncle** = **maternal**; **cotyledon** = **fetus**.)



**Figure 12-14** (a) Equine placenta and fetus. (b) Equine fetus within placenta. (Courtesy of Laura Lien, CVT, BS.)

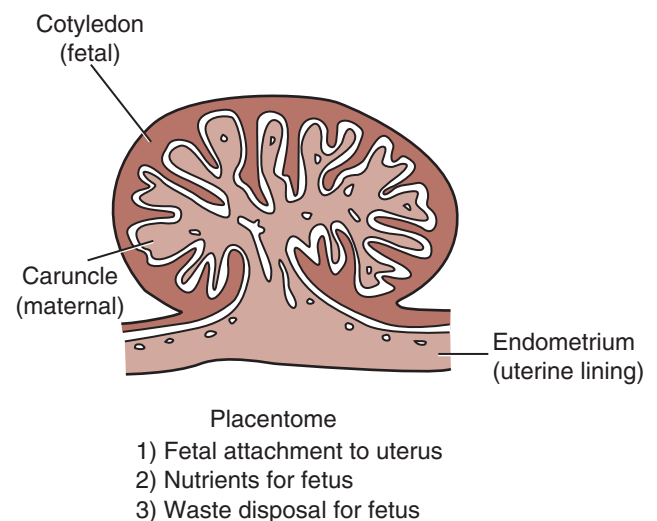
Together the caruncle and cotyledon form the **placentome** (plahs-ehn-tohm) (Figures 12-15 and 12-16).

## Pregnancy

**Pregnancy** (prehg-nahn-sē) is the condition of having a developing fetus in the uterus and is the time period between conception and parturition. The combining form for pregnancy is **pregn/o**. **Cyesis** (sī-eh-sihs) also means pregnancy. **Gestation** (jehs-tā-shuhn) is the period of development of the fetus in the uterus from conception to parturition and is the term more commonly used in reference to animals. The combining forms for gestation are **gest/o** and **gestat/o**. Gestation periods vary in length between animal species. A fetus is said to be **viable** (vī-ah-buhl) when it is capable of living outside the mother. Viability depends on the species and the age and weight of the fetus.



**Figure 12-15** Bovine placenta. Caruncles are present on the maternal aspect of this bovine placenta. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 12-16** A placentome is the site of attachment between the fetal placenta and the maternal uterus in the cow. The blood supply of the two animals does not mix.

## Terms Related to Gestational and Parturitional Status

- **gravid/o** (grahv-ih-dō) = combining form for pregnant.
- **-para** (pah-rah) = suffix meaning bearing a live fetus.
- **nulligravida** (nuhl-ih-grahv-ih-dah) = one who has never been pregnant; **nulli-** means none; **nullipara** (nuhl-ih-pah-rah) = female who has never borne a viable fetus.
- **primigravida** (preh-mih-grahv-ih-dah) = female during first pregnancy; **primi-** means first; **primipara** (pri-mihp-ah-rah) = female who has borne one offspring.
- **multigravida** (muhl-tih-grahv-ih-dah) = one who has had multiple pregnancies; **multi-** means many.
- **multiparous** (muhl-tihp-ah-ruhs) = female who has borne multiple offspring during different gestations. A **litter** (liht-tər) is a group of offspring born during the same labor.
- **viviparous** (vī-vihp-ahr-uhs) = bearing live young. **Vivi-** is the prefix for live.
- **oviparous** (ō-vihp-ahr-uhs) = bearing eggs. **Ovi** means egg.

## Birth

The act of giving birth is called **parturition** (pah-tyoo-rihsh-uhn) (Figure 12–17). Parturition also is called **labor**. **Part/o** is the combining form for giving birth. The period before the



**Figure 12–17** A foal birth normally has the front hooves presented first. (Courtesy of Bob Langrish.)



### Presentation

**Presentation** is the orientation of the fetus before delivery. Presentation varies with species. For example, in cattle and sheep, the fetus adopts a **cranial** (anterior) **presentation** in which the legs and head are directed toward the cervix. In swine, cranial and caudal presentations are considered normal. In a **caudal** (posterior) **presentation**, the pelvis and rear legs are directed toward the cervix. **Transverse presentation** involves the fetus lying across the cervix, and normal parturition is not achieved. In a **breech presentation**, the tail of the fetus is presented first and delivery may or may not be obstructed.

onset of labor is the **antepartum** (ahn-tē-pahr-tuhm) period; the period immediately after labor is the **postpartum** (pōst-pahr-tuhm) period.

Parturition is divided into stages. The first stage of labor involves **dilation** (dī-lā-shuhn) of the cervix. Dilation is the act of stretching. The second stage of labor involves uterine contractions of increasing frequency and strength and expulsion of the fetus. Expulsion of the fetus is called **delivery** (deh-lihv-ər-ē). The third stage of labor involves separation of the placenta from the uterus.

The postpartum period begins after delivery of the fetus. The newborn is called a **neonate** (nē-ō-nāt). The neonatal period varies from species to species but usually is less than 4 weeks. The first stool of a newborn that consists of material collected in the intestine of the fetus is called the **meconium** (meh-kō-nē-uhm).

After delivery of the fetus, the mother's uterus returns to its normal size. The process of the uterus returning to normal size is called **uterine involution** (yoo-tər-ihn ihn-vō-loo-shuhn). The mammary glands of the mother secrete **colostrum** (kuh-lohs-truhm), which is a thick fluid

that contains nutrients and antibodies needed by the neonate. **Lactation** (lahck-tā-shuhn) is the process of forming and secreting milk.

## TEST ME: REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

Diagnostic procedures performed on the reproductive system include the following:

- **amniocentesis** (ahm-nē-ō-sehn-tē-sihs) = surgical puncture with a needle through the abdominal and uterine walls to obtain amniotic fluid to evaluate the fetus.
- **radiography** (rā-dē-ohg-rah-fē) = procedure in which film is exposed as ionizing radiation passes through the patient and shows the internal body structures in profile.
- **ultrasound** (uhl-trah-sownd) = diagnostic test using high-frequency waves to evaluate internal structures. Ultrasonography works well in evaluating the uterus during pregnancy because the fluid present in the uterus helps define structures.

## PATHOLOGY: REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the reproductive system include the following:

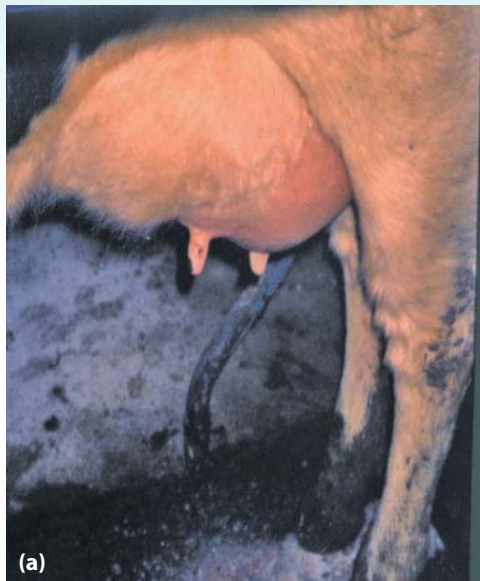
- **abortion** (ah-bōr-shuhn) = termination of pregnancy.
- **azoospermia** (ā-zō-ō-spær-mē-ah) = absence of sperm in the semen.
- **benign prostatic hypertrophy** (beh-nīn prohs-tah-tihck hī-pær-trō-fē) = abnormal noncancerous enlargement of the prostate; also called **prostatomegaly** or **enlarged prostate**.
- **cervicitis** (sihr-vih-sī-tihs) = inflammation of the neck of the uterus.
- **cryptorchidism** (krihp-tōr-kih-dihzm) = developmental defect in which one or both testes fail to descend into the scrotum; also called **undescended testicle(s)**. Animals may be unilaterally or bilaterally cryptorchid. Unilaterally cryptorchid is sometimes called **monorchid** (mohn-ōr-kihd).
- **dystocia** (dihs-tōs-ah) = difficult birth; the female is having difficulty expelling the fetus.
- **ectopic pregnancy** (ehck-tohp-ihck prehg-nahn-sē) = fertilized ovum implanted outside the uterus.
- **epididymitis** (ehp-ih-dihd-ih-mī-tihs) = inflammation of the epididymis.
- **fetal defects** = abnormalities that occur in the development of the fetus (Figure 12–18). **Teratogens** (tær-ah-tō-jehnz) are substances that produce defects in the



**Figure 12–18** A calf born with a fetal defect (a portion of two heads). (Courtesy of John Lynn.)

fetus. **Mutagens** (mū-tah-jehnz) are substances that produce change or that create genetic abnormalities.

- **fibroid** (fi-broyd) = benign tumor arising from the smooth muscle of the uterus; also called **leiomyoma** (lī-ō-mī-ō-mah).
- **hermaphroditism** (hær-mahf-rō-dih-tihzm) = condition of having both ovarian and testicular tissue. **Pseudohermaphroditism** (soo-dō-hær-mahf-rō-dih-tihzm) is the condition of having gonads of one sex but the physical characteristics of both sexes.
- **mastitis** (mahs-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the mammary gland(s) (Figures 12–19a and b).
- **metritis** (meh-trī-tihs) = inflammation of the uterus.
- **oligospermia** (ohl-ih-gō-spær-mē-ah) = deficient amount of sperm in semen; **oligo-** is the prefix for scant or few.
- **orchitis** (ōr-kī-tihs) = inflammation of the gonads of the male; also called **testitis**.
- **ovarian cyst** (ō-vahr-ē-ahn sihst) = collection of fluid or solid material in the female gonad.
- **paraphimosis** (pahrah-fih-mō-sihs) = retraction of the skin of the prepuce causing a painful swelling of the glans penis that prevents the penis from being retracted; the penis is extruded from the prepuce but cannot be returned to its normal position (Figure 12–20).
- **phimosis** (fih-mō-sihs) = narrowing of the skin of the prepuce so that it cannot be retracted to expose the glans penis; the penis cannot be extruded from the prepuce due to the small orifice.
- **pneumovagina** (nū-mō-vah-jī-nah) = conformational defect in the perineum of cows and mares that allows air to enter the vagina; also called **windsuckers**.

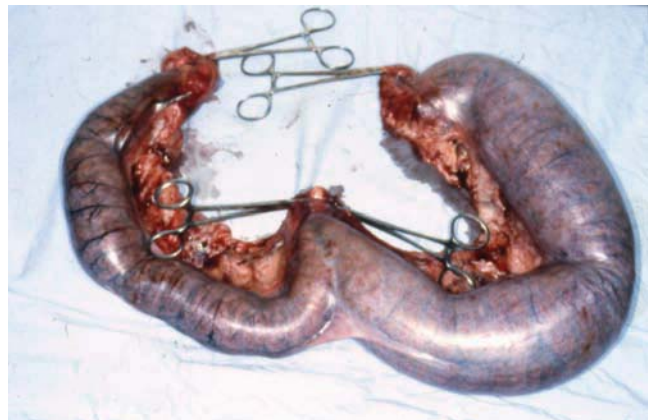


**Figure 12-19** (a) Mastitis in the rear quarter of a cow udder. (b) Normal white milk is shown in the left tube. Abnormal secretion from a cow with mastitis is shown in the right tube. [(a) Courtesy of Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT.]

- **priapism** (prī-ahp-ihzm) = persistent penile erection not associated with sexual excitement.
- **prostatitis** (prohs-tah-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the prostate.
- **pseudocyesis** (soo-dō-sī-ē-sihs) = false pregnancy; also called **pseudopregnancy**. A behavioral and physical syndrome (most commonly seen in bitches 2–3 months after estrus) in which mammary glands develop, lactation occurs, and mothering behaviors occur. **Cyesis** means pregnancy; **pseudo-** is the prefix for false.
- **pyometra** (pī-ō-mē-trah) = pus in the uterus (Figure 12–21).



**Figure 12-20** Paraphimosis in a horse.



**Figure 12-21** Pyometra in a bitch. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

- **retained placenta** (rē-tānd plah-sehn-tah) = non-passage of the placenta after delivery of the fetus. A retained placenta can lead to metritis and infertility in the female.
- **scrotal hydrocele** (skrō-tahl hī-drō-sēl) = hernia of fluid in the testes or along the spermatic cord. **Hydro-** is the prefix for water; **-cele** is the suffix meaning hernia (Figure 12–22).
- **sterility** (stēr-ihl-ih-tē) = inability to reproduce.
- **supernumerary** (soo-pār-nū-mahr-ē) = more than the normal number. Supernumerary teats is a condition in which an animal has more than the normal number of nipples (commonly seen in ruminants).
- **transmissible venereal tumor** (trahnz-mihs-ih-buhl vehn-ēr-ē-ahl too-mər) = naturally occurring, sexually



**Figure 12-22** Scrotal hydrocele in a ram. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

transmitted tumor of dogs that affects the external genitalia and other mucous membranes; abbreviated TVT.

- **uterine prolapse** (yoo-tər-ihn prō-lahps) = protrusion of the uterus through the vaginal orifice (Figure 12-23). Commonly called cast her withers.

- **vaginal prolapse** (vah-jih-nahl prō-lahps) = protrusion of the vagina through the vaginal wall or vaginal orifice (Figure 12-24).
- **vaginitis** (vahj-ih-nī-tihs) = inflammation of the vagina.

## PROCEDURES: REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the reproductive system include the following:

- **assisted delivery** = manual use of hands or equipment to aid in delivery of a fetus. In cattle, obstetric chains may be placed around the calf's legs and then force is applied to help extract the fetus (Figure 12-25).
- **cesarean section** (sē-sā-rē-ahn sehck-shuhn) = delivery of offspring through an incision in the maternal abdominal and uterine walls; also called a **C-section** (Figure 12-26).
- **electroejaculation** (ē-lehck-trō-ē-jahck-yoo-lā-shuhn) = method of collecting semen for artificial insemination or examination in which electrical stimulation is applied to the nerves to promote ejaculation. Electroejaculation is achieved by use of an **electroejaculator** (ē-lehck-trō-ē-jahck-yool-ā-tər), which is a probe and power



**Figure 12-23** (a) Cow with prolapsed uterus.



**Figure 12-23** (b) Close-up view of prolapsed uterus showing placentomes.



**Figure 12-24** Vaginal prolapse in a ewe. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 12-25** Assisted delivery can be accomplished in cows with a fetal extractor (calf jack), which applies pressure to the hind limbs of the cow as traction is applied to the calf.

source used to apply current to the nerves that promote ejaculation.

- **episiotomy** (eh-pihz-ē-oht-ō-mē) = surgical incision of the perineum and vagina to facilitate delivery of the fetus and to prevent damage to maternal structures.
- **fetotomy** (fē-toh-tō-mē) = cutting apart of a fetus to enable removal from the uterus; also called **embryotomy** (ehm-brē-ah-tō-mē).
- **hysterectomy** (hihs-tər-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the uterus.
- **mastectomy** (mahs-tehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the mammary gland or breast.
- **neuter** (nū-tər) = to sexually alter; usually used to describe the sexual altering of males. An animal that is not neutered is **intact** (ihn-tahckt), or has reproductive capability.



**Figure 12-26** C-section in a bitch.

- **oophorectomy** (ō-ohf-ō-rehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the ovary (ovaries).
- **orchidectomy** (ōr-kih-dehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the testis (testes); also known as **orchectomy** (ōr-kehck-tō-mē), **orchiectomy** (ōr-kē-ehck-tō-mē), and **castration** (kahs-trā-shuhn) (Figure 12–27).
- **ovariohysterectomy** (ō-vahr-ē-ō-hihs-tār-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the ovaries, uterine tubes, and uterus; also called a **spay**; abbreviated OHE or OVH.
- **vasectomy** (vah-sehck-tō-mē) = sterilization of a male in which a portion of the ductus deferens is surgically removed, yet the animal may retain its libido. **Libido** (lih-bē-dō) is sexual desire.



**Figure 12–27** Canine castration. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The inner layer of the uterus is called the
  - a. endohysteria
  - b. myometrium
  - c. perimetrium
  - d. endometrium
2. The area between the vaginal orifice or scrotum and the anus is called the
  - a. clitoris
  - b. perineum
  - c. vulva
  - d. inguinal area
3. Copulation also is called
  - a. coitus
  - b. impotence
  - c. sterility
  - d. zygote
4. The act of giving birth is
  - a. freshening
  - b. calving
  - c. gestation
  - d. parturition
5. A difficult birth is known as
  - a. dystocia
  - b. dyshernia
  - c. dyspartia
  - d. dyslaboratum
6. A false pregnancy also is called
  - a. pseudo
  - b. pseudopara
  - c. pseudocyesis
  - d. pseudogestia
7. A condition of an individual having both ovarian and testicular tissue is called
  - a. hemisexual
  - b. hermaphroditism
  - c. supernumerary
  - d. orchioovaris
8. Pyometra is
  - a. pus in the uterus
  - b. increased temperature of the uterus
  - c. tumors in the uterus
  - d. necrosis of the uterus
9. The innermost membrane enveloping the embryo in the uterus is the
  - a. allantois
  - b. umbilicus
  - c. amnion
  - d. chorion
10. Attachment and embedding of the zygote in the uterus is
  - a. zygotion
  - b. conception
  - c. fertilization
  - d. implantation

11. The ovum is the
  - a. female gonad
  - b. male gonad
  - c. female gamete
  - d. male gamete
12. The heat cycle in females is known as the
  - a. estrus cycle
  - b. estrous cycle
  - c. lactogenic cycle
  - d. follicular cycle
13. In large animals, the mammary gland is called the
  - a. teat
  - b. mammae
  - c. lactiferous duct
  - d. udder
14. The female organ of mammals that develops during pregnancy and joins the mother and offspring for exchange of nutrients, oxygen, and waste products is known as the
  - a. umbilicus
  - b. placenta
  - c. mount
  - d. navel
15. Substances that produce change or that create genetic abnormalities are known as
  - a. teratogens
  - b. priapisms
  - c. dystociae
  - d. mutagens
16. Reproductive organs, whether male or female, are called the
  - a. theriogens
  - b. genitals
  - c. gametes
  - d. perineum
17. An enlarged part of a tube or canal is called a(n)
  - a. vesicle
  - b. bulla
  - c. ampulla
  - d. motile
18. The term for surgical incision of the perineum and vagina to facilitate delivery of the fetus and to prevent damage to maternal structures is
  - a. mastectomy
  - b. cesarean section
  - c. episiotomy
  - d. oophorectomy
19. An animal that has not been neutered is referred to as
  - a. sterile
  - b. gravid
  - c. intact
  - d. cyesis
20. Another term for spay is
  - a. orchidectomy
  - b. ovariectomy
  - c. C-section
  - d. hysterectomy

## Matching

Match the term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ gestation	a. act of giving birth
2. _____ sterility	b. termination of pregnancy
3. _____ dystocia	c. thick fluid that contains nutrients and antibodies needed by neonates, which is secreted by the mother's mammary glands
4. _____ viviparous	d. period of pregnancy
5. _____ oviparous	e. outermost layer of the placenta
6. _____ allantois	f. innermost layer of the placenta
7. _____ chorion	g. bearing live young
8. _____ parturition	h. inability to reproduce
9. _____ colostrum	i. bearing eggs
10. _____ abortion	j. difficult birth

## Fill in the Blanks

- Colop/o and vagin/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
- Hyster/o, metr/o, metri/o, and uter/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
- Pen/i and priap/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
- Orch/o, orchi/o, orchid/o, test/o, and testicul/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
- Sperm/o and spermat/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.

## Spelling

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |   |                |                |                 |
|---|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. developmental defect in which one or both testes fail to descend into the scrotum: | cryptorchidism | criptorchidism | cryptorchydisim |
| 2. inflammation of the mammary glands:  | mastis         | mastitis       | masitits        |
| 3. fertilized egg:  | zigoat         | zygoat         | zygote          |
| 4. pregnancy:   | syesis         | cyesis         | ciesis          |
| 5. to sexually alter:   | neuter         | nueter         | newter          |

**Word Building**

Build the following terms using word parts.

1. pus in the uterus:

word part for pus

---

word part for uterus

---

term for pus in the uterus

---

2. near the ovary:

word part for near

---

word part for ovary

---

term for near the ovary

---

3. pertaining to the urinary and reproductive systems:

word part for urinary

---

word part for reproductive system

---

word part for pertaining to

---

term for pertaining to the urinary and reproductive systems

---

4. capable of stimulating milk production:

word part for milk

---

word part for producing

---

word part for pertaining to

---

term for capable of stimulating milk production

---

5. surgical removal of the uterus:

word part for uterus

---

word part for surgical removal

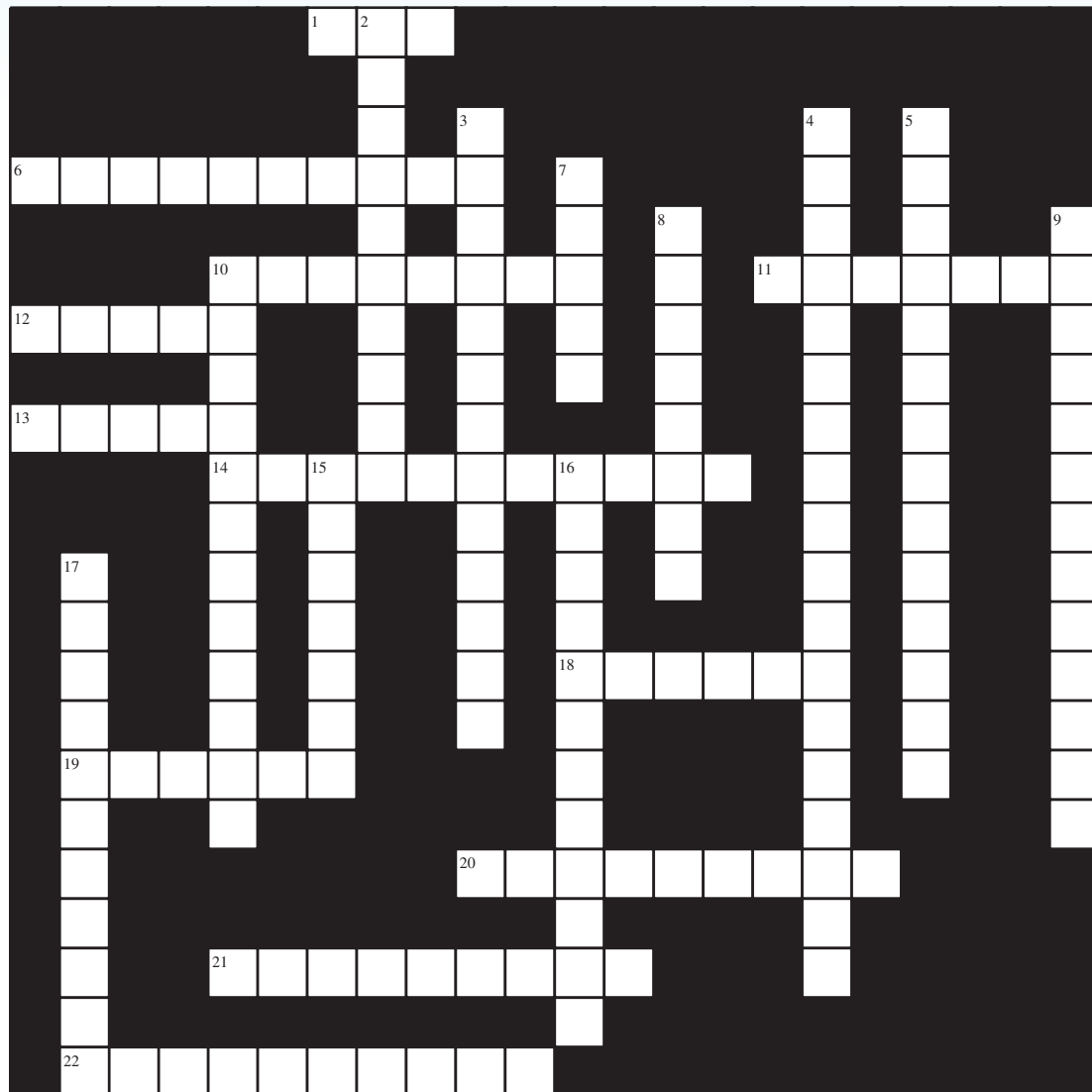
---

term for surgical removal of the uterus

---

# CROSSWORD PUZZLE

## Reproductive System Puzzle



### Across

- 1 eggs
- 6 muscular middle layer of the uterus
- 10 persistent penile erection not associated with sexual excitement
- 11 retractable fold of skin covering the glans penis
- 12 female external genitalia
- 13 fleshy borders or edges
- 14 inflammation of the gland that surrounds the urethra that secretes a thick fluid that aids in motility of sperm
- 18 to sexually alter (either sex)
- 19 capable of spontaneous motion
- 20 process of egg maturation and release
- 21 bearing eggs
- 22 common name for placenta

### Down

- 2 bearing live young
- 3 structure that forms where the fetus communicates with the placenta
- 4 medical term for spay
- 5 condition of undescended testicles
- 7 ejaculatory fluid that contains sperm plus secretions from the secondary sex glands
- 8 preparatory step to animal mating that involves one animal jumping on top of another animal or object
- 9 union of ovum and sperm
- 10 retraction of the skin of the prepuce causing a painful swelling of the glans penis that prevents the penis from being retracted
- 15 entrance or outlet from a body cavity
- 16 funnel-shaped opening
- 17 male sex cells

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 12-yr-old F miniature poodle was presented with lethargy, anorexia, and PU/PD. The bitch had been in proestrus 1 mo before presentation. On PE, the dog was pyrexia and tachypneic. Abdominal palpation yielded an enlarged uterus, and a purulent vaginal discharge was noted. Blood was collected for a CBC and chem panel. The CBC results included leukocytosis with a left shift. (A left shift is an increase in band neutrophils in peripheral blood due to many causes including infection.) The dx of pyometra was made, antibiotics were started, and the dog was scheduled for an emergency OHE.

1. yr \_\_\_\_\_
2. F \_\_\_\_\_
3. lethargy \_\_\_\_\_
4. anorexia \_\_\_\_\_
5. PU/PD \_\_\_\_\_
6. bitch \_\_\_\_\_
7. proestrus \_\_\_\_\_
8. PE \_\_\_\_\_
9. pyrexia \_\_\_\_\_
10. tachypneic \_\_\_\_\_
11. abdominal \_\_\_\_\_
12. palpation \_\_\_\_\_
13. uterus \_\_\_\_\_
14. purulent \_\_\_\_\_
15. vaginal \_\_\_\_\_
16. CBC \_\_\_\_\_
17. chem panel \_\_\_\_\_
18. leukocytosis \_\_\_\_\_
19. dx \_\_\_\_\_
20. pyometra \_\_\_\_\_
21. OHE \_\_\_\_\_

A 10-yr-old intact M German shepherd was presented with stranguria and hematuria. PE revealed pyrexia, anorexia, and a stiff gait. On rectal palpation, the veterinarian discovered that the prostate gland was bilaterally enlarged. Upon review of the record, it was noted that this dog has had a hx of recurrent UTIs. Radiographs were taken, and prostatomegaly was noted. After a dx of prostatitis was made, the dog was scheduled to be neutered the next day.

22. yr \_\_\_\_\_
23. intact \_\_\_\_\_
24. M \_\_\_\_\_
25. stranguria \_\_\_\_\_

26. hematuria \_\_\_\_\_
27. PE \_\_\_\_\_
28. pyrexia \_\_\_\_\_
29. anorexia \_\_\_\_\_
30. gait \_\_\_\_\_
31. rectal palpation \_\_\_\_\_
32. prostate gland \_\_\_\_\_
33. bilaterally \_\_\_\_\_
34. hx \_\_\_\_\_
35. recurrent \_\_\_\_\_
36. UTI \_\_\_\_\_
37. radiographs \_\_\_\_\_
38. prostatomegaly \_\_\_\_\_
39. dx \_\_\_\_\_
40. prostatitis \_\_\_\_\_
41. neutered \_\_\_\_\_
42. another term for neutering in male dogs \_\_\_\_\_

A 2-yr-old Holstein cow was examined because the farmer noticed that she was off feed. PE revealed that the cow had a slightly elevated rectal temperature. The farmer told the veterinarian that this cow had stepped on her teat previously, but it had appeared to be healing. The udder was palpated, and it was not warm to the touch or swollen. Milk was expressed from each quarter, and the milk appeared more watery than normal. A CMT paddle test was performed on the milk, and moderate precipitation was noted (Figure 12–28). The diagnosis of mastitis was made, and milk samples were taken for culture. Antibiotic treatment was started pending culture results, and milking hygiene was discussed with the farmer.

43. cow \_\_\_\_\_
44. off feed \_\_\_\_\_
45. medical term for off feed \_\_\_\_\_
46. teat \_\_\_\_\_
47. udder \_\_\_\_\_
48. quarter \_\_\_\_\_
49. CMT \_\_\_\_\_
50. diagnosis \_\_\_\_\_
51. mastitis \_\_\_\_\_
52. culture \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 12–28** CMT paddle. The CMT (California mastitis test) paddle is a cow side test used to detect mastitis. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

A 5-yr-old quarter horse mare had foaled 10 hours earlier. The foal appeared normal, and the mare was letting the foal suckle. The mare had not moved since foaling, and the owner was concerned because the mare seemed quieter than normal. PE revealed a mildly elevated rectal temperature, vaginal discharge was noted, milk production seemed adequate, and the milk appeared normal. The owner was asked whether the mare had passed its placenta, and the owner did not know whether she had. The stall was examined for remnants of the placenta, and none were found. The veterinarian was concerned that the mare had a retained placenta and that an infection was starting. The equine placenta normally is passed within a few hours of foaling, and because it was at least 10 hours postpartum, an injection of oxytocin was given by slow IV. Blood was drawn for a CBC to assess leukocyte numbers. The owner was advised to watch for the passing of the placenta, and general hygiene was discussed with the client.

53. mare

---

54. foaled

---

55. vaginal discharge

---

56. placenta

---

57. retained placenta

---

58. postpartum

---

59. IV

---

60. CBC

---

61. leukocyte

---

# CHAPTER 13

## NERVES OF STEEL

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the structures and functions of the nervous system
- Identify the divisions of the nervous system and describe the structures and functions of each
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to the functions, disorders, and treatment of the nervous system

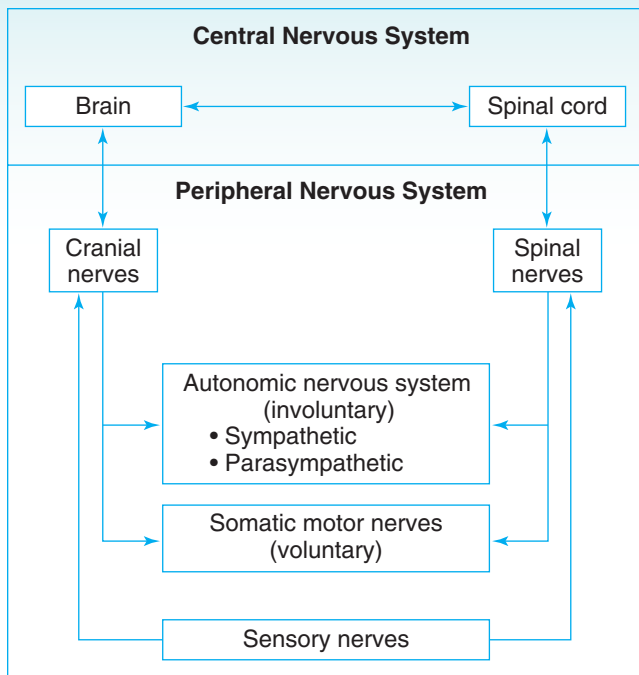
### FUNCTIONS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

The **nervous** (nər-vuhs) **system** coordinates and controls body activity. It detects and processes internal and external information and formulates appropriate responses.

### STRUCTURES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

The major structures of the nervous system are the brain, spinal cord, peripheral nerves, and sensory organs. The two major divisions of the nervous system are as follows:

- **central nervous system** (sehn-trahl nər-vuhs sihs-tehm) = portion of the nervous system that consists of the brain and spinal cord; abbreviated CNS.
- **peripheral nervous system** (pehr-ihf-ər-ahl nər-vuhs sihs-tehm) = portion of the nervous system that consists of the cranial and spinal nerves, autonomic nervous system, and ganglia; abbreviated PNS (Figure 13–1).



**Figure 13-1** Divisions of the nervous system.

## Back to Basics

The basic unit of the nervous system is the **neuron** (nū-rohn) (Figure 13-2). There are three types of neurons, based on their function.

- **sensory neurons** (sehn-sōr-ē nū-rohnz) = nerves that carry sensory impulses toward the CNS; also called **afferent** (ahf-fər-ahnt) or **ascending tracts** because they carry information toward the CNS. Sensory information such as sound and light is converted into electrical impulses so that the nerves can transport it.
- **associative neurons** (ahs-ō-shē-ah-tihv nū-rohnz) = nerves that carry impulses from one neuron to another; also called **connecting neurons**.
- **motor neurons** (mō-tər nū-rohnz) = nerves that carry impulses away from the CNS and toward the muscles and glands; also called **efferent** (ē-fər-ahnt) or **descending tracts** because they carry information away from the CNS.

The parts of a neuron are the cell body, one or more dendrites, one axon, and terminal end fibers. The cell body, or **soma** (sō-mah), has a nucleus and is responsible for maintaining the life of the neuron. The **dendrites** (dehn-drīts) are root-like structures that receive impulses and conduct them toward the cell body. The combining form for dendrite is **dendr/o**. The **axon** (ahcks-ohn) is a single process that extends away from the cell body and conducts impulses away from the cell body. The combining form **ax/o** means axis or main stem. The terminal end fibers are the branching fibers that lead the impulse away from the axon and toward the synapse.

The dendrites and axons also are called **nerve fibers**. Bundles of nerve fibers bound together by specialized tissues



**Figure 13-2** Photomicrograph of multiple motor neurons from the spinal cord of a bovine. (Courtesy of William J. Bacha, PhD, and Linda M. Bacha, MS, VMD.)

are called **nerves** or **nerve trunks**. Nerve fibers are covered with a tubelike membrane called the **neurolemma** (nū-rō-lehm-ah) or neurilemma (nū-rih-lehm-ah). Neuron cell bodies grouped together within the CNS are called **nuclei** (nū-klē-ī), and those outside the CNS are called **ganglia** (gahng-glē-ah) (Figure 13-3).

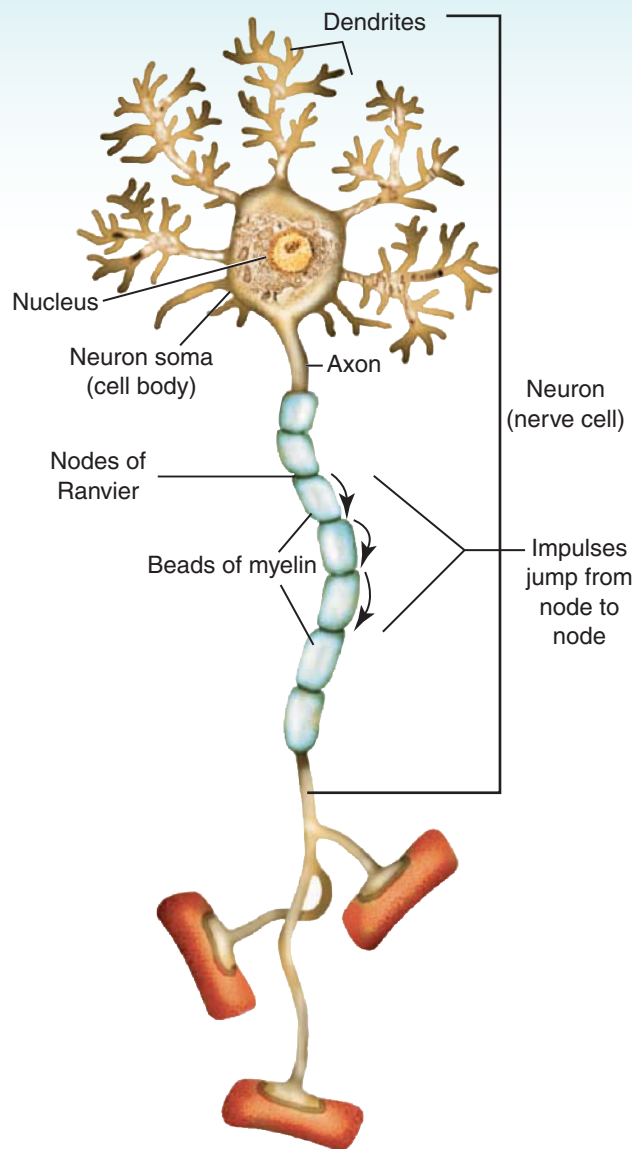
## The Gap

The junction between two neurons or between a neuron and a receptor is the **synapse** (sihn-ahps) (Figure 13-4). The combining forms for this space or point of contact are **synaps/o** and **synapt/o**. A synapse is the junction where neural impulses cause a release of a chemical substance called a **neurotransmitter** (nū-rō-trahnz-miht-ər) that allows the signal to move from one neuron to another. There are different neurotransmitters, each with specific functions.

## Supporting Role

The **neuroglia** (nū-rohg-lē-ah), or **glial** (glē-ahl) **cells**, are the supportive cells of the nervous system. Glial cells consist of **astrocytes** (ahs-trō-sitz), **microglia** (mī-krō-glē-ah), **oligodendrocytes** (ohl-ih-gō-dehnd-rō-sitz), and **Schwann** (shwahn) **cells**. The combining form **gli/o** means glue, which helps explain the function of glial cells.

- **astr/o** means star. Astrocytes are star-shaped, cover the capillary surface of the brain, and help form the blood-brain barrier in the CNS.
- **micro-** means small. Microglia are small phagocytic cells that help fight infection in the CNS.
- **oligo-** means few, **dendr/o** means branching, and **-cyte** means cell. Oligodendrocytes are cells with few branches that hold the nerve fibers together and help form myelin in the CNS.
- Schwann cells (named after a German anatomist) help form myelin in the PNS.

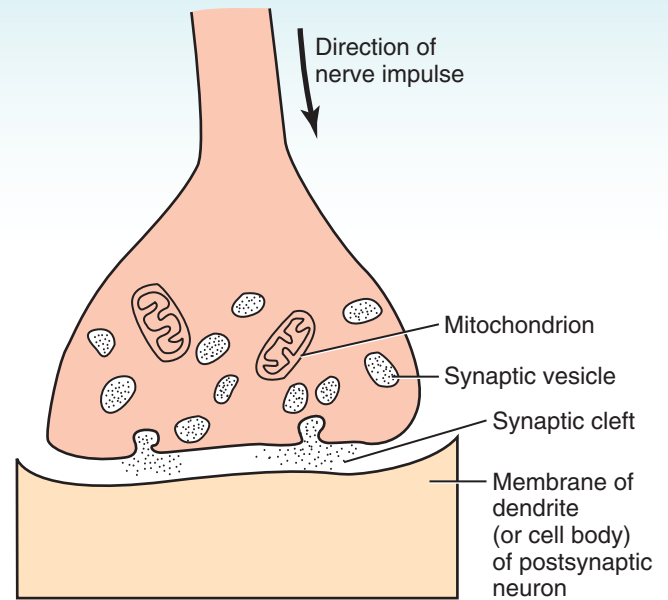


**Figure 13-3** Structures of a neuron. Dendrites conduct impulses toward the neuron cell body, and axons conduct impulses away from the cell body.

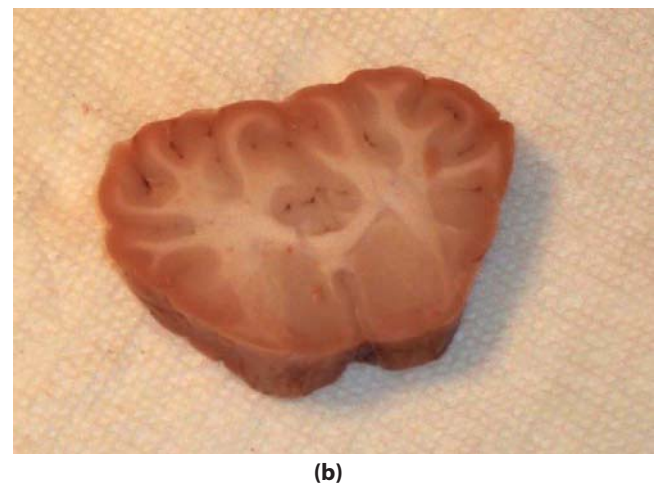
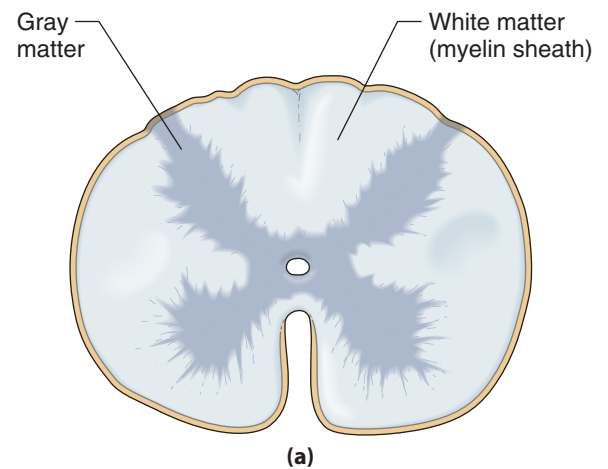
### Surrounding Tissue

**Myelin** (mī-eh-lihn) is a protective covering over some nerve cells, including parts of the spinal cord, white matter of the brain, and most peripheral nerves. Myelin also is called the **myelin sheath**. Myelin serves as an electrical insulator. Nerves that are described as **myelinated** (mī-lihn-āt-ehd) are surrounded by myelin and transport a signal much faster than nonmyelinated nerves. Myelin gives nerve fibers a white color, and myelinated nerves are called **white matter**. The **gray matter** does not contain myelinated fibers, so it is darker in color (Figures 13-5a and b). The gray matter is composed of cell bodies, branching dendrites, and neuroglia.

Myelin is interrupted at regular intervals along the length of a fiber by gaps called **nodes of Ranvier** (nōdz of rohn-vē-ā).



**Figure 13-4** A synapse. Nerve impulse from the axon stimulates the release of a neurotransmitter.



**Figure 13-5** (a) Cross section of the spinal cord shows white matter and gray matter. The orientation of the white and gray matter in the spinal cord is opposite of that in the brain. (b) Cross section of the brain shows the white matter and gray matter.

Ionic exchange takes place at the nodes of Ranvier. Some nerve fibers have a very thin layer of myelin and are referred to as **nonmyelinated**. The autonomic nervous system contains nonmyelinated fibers.

## Carry an Impulse

A **nerve** (nərv) is one or more bundles of impulse-carrying fibers that connect the CNS to the other parts of the body. **Neur/i** and **neur/o** are combining forms for nerve or nerve tissue. Terms used in reference to nerves include the following:

- A **tract** (trahckt) is a group of nerve fibers located in the CNS. Ascending tracts (groups going *up*, or cranially) carry nerve impulses toward the brain, whereas descending tracts (groups going *down*, or caudally) carry nerve impulses away from the brain.
- A **ganglion** (gahng-glē-ohn) is a knotlike mass of neuron cell bodies located *outside* the CNS. More than one ganglion are called **ganglia**, or less often **ganglions**. The combining forms **gangli/o** and **ganglion/o** mean knotlike masses of nerve cell bodies located outside the CNS.
- A **plexus** (plehck-suhs) is a network of intersecting nerves or vessels. **Plexi** (plehck-si) are networks of intersecting nerves or vessels. **Plex/o** is the combining form for a plexus, or network.
- **Innervation** (ihn-nər-vā-shuhn) is the supply or stimulation of a body part through the action of nerves.
- **Receptors** (rē-sehp-tərz) are sensory organs that receive external stimulation and transmit that information to the sensory neurons. There are different types of receptors. For example, **nociceptive** (nō-sih-sehp-tihv) receptors are pain receptors, whereas **proprioceptive** (prō-prē-ō-sehp-tihv) receptors are spatial orientation or perception of movement receptors.
- A **stimulus** (stihm-yoo-luhs) is something that excites or activates. Multiple excitations or activations are called **stimuli** (stihm-yoo-li).
- An **impulse** (ihm-puhlz) is a wave of excitation transmitted through nervous tissue.
- A **reflex** (rē-flehcks) is an automatic, involuntary response to change. Reflex actions include the patellar and ulnar reflexes.

## CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The central nervous system (or cerebrospinal system or CNS) is made up of the brain and the spinal cord. The combining form for brain is **encephal/o**, and the combining form for spinal cord is **myel/o**. (Remember, myel/o also means bone marrow.) The CNS contains both white and gray matter; white

matter contains myelinated fibers, and gray matter consists of nerve cell bodies.

## Membrane

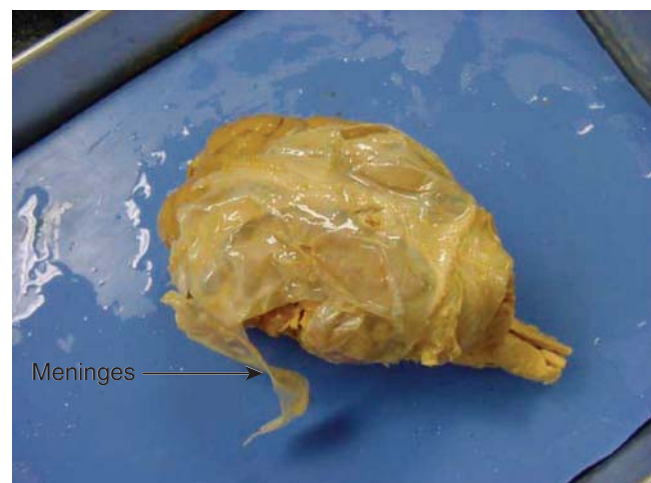
The brain and spinal cord are encased in connective tissue called the **meninx** (meh-nihncks). Because this connective tissue has three layers, it more commonly is referred to by its plural form of **meninges** (meh-nihn-jēz) (Figure 13–6).

**Mening/o** and **meningi/o** are combining forms for the layers of connective tissue enclosing the CNS.

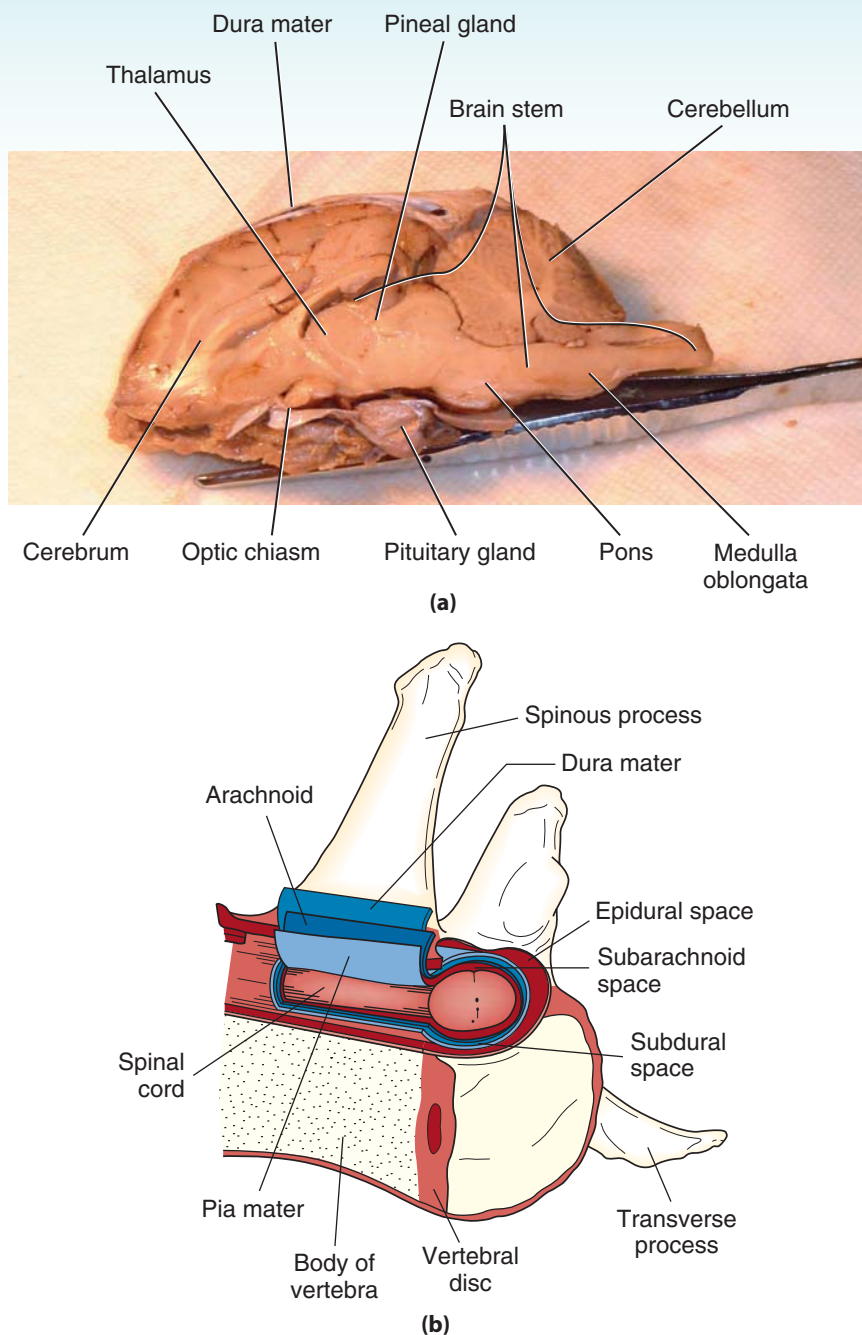
The three layers of the meninges are as follows:

- **dura mater** (doo-rah mah-tər) = thick, tough, outermost layer of the meninges. **Dura** means tough, and this layer of the meninges is tough and strong. **Dur/o** is the combining form for dura mater. The dura mater also is called **pachymeninx** (pahck-ē-meh-nihcks); the prefix **pachy-** means thick.
- **arachnoid** (ah-rahck-noyd) **membrane** = second layer of the meninges. **Arachn/o** means spider, and the arachnoid membrane resembles a spider web. The arachnoid membrane is loosely attached to the other layers of the meninges to allow space between the layers.
- **pia mater** (pē-ah mah-tər) = third and deepest layer of the meninges. **Pia** means soft or tender, and this layer of the meninges is soft with a rich supply of blood vessels. The pia adheres to the CNS. The pia mater and arachnoid membranes collectively are called the **leptomeninges** (lehp-tō-meh-nihn-jēz) (Figure 13–7).

Certain terms are used to describe the location of structures in reference to the meninges. **Epidural** (ehp-ih-doo-rah) means located above or superficial to the dura mater. (**Epi-** is the prefix meaning above or upon.) The **subdural** (suhb-doo-rah) **space** is the area located below (deep to) the dura mater and above (superficial to)



**Figure 13–6** Meninges of the sheep.



**Figure 13-7** (a) Sagittal view of the sheep's brain. (b) Meninges of the spinal cord.

the arachnoid membrane. (The prefix **sub-** means below.) The **subarachnoid** (suhb-ah-rahck-noyd) **space** is the area located below (deep to) the arachnoid membrane and above (superficial to) the pia mater. The subarachnoid space contains cerebrospinal fluid.

## Fluid

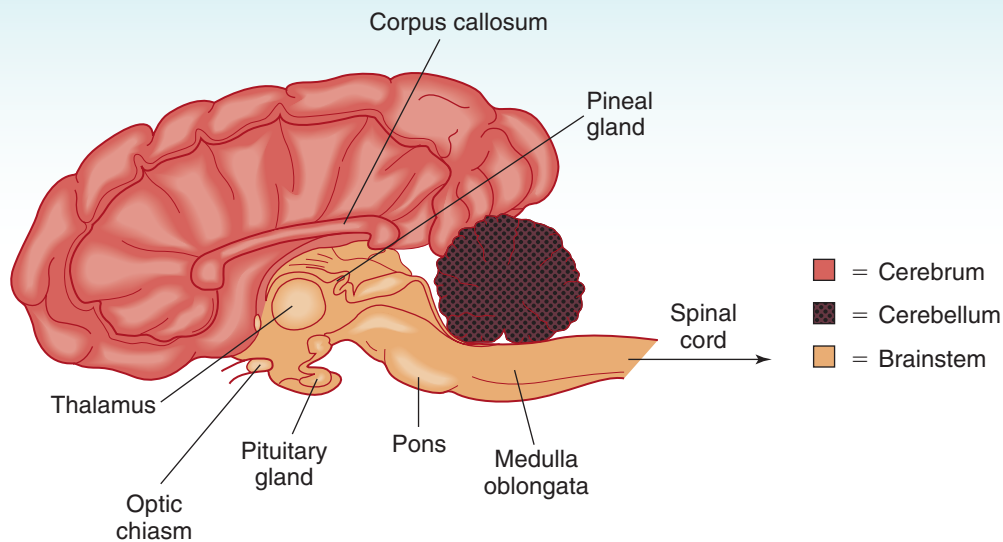
**Cerebrospinal fluid** (sar-ē-brō-spin-ahl flū-ihd) is the clear, colorless ultrafiltrate that nourishes, cools, and cushions the CNS. Cerebrospinal fluid is abbreviated CSF. CSF is produced by special capillaries in the ventricles of the brain. The ventricles of the brain are cavities. Vascular folds of the pia mater in the

ventricles called the **choroid plexus** (kōr-oyd plehck-suhs) secrete CSF.

## Brain

The brain is the enlarged and highly developed portion of the CNS that lies in the skull and is the main site of nervous control. The portion of the skull that encloses and protects the brain is called the **cranium** (krā-nē-uhm). **Crani/o** is the combining form for skull. **Intracranial** (ihn-trah-krā-nē-ahl) means within the cranium.

The brain is commonly divided into parts based on functional group or on location. **Encephal/o** is the combining



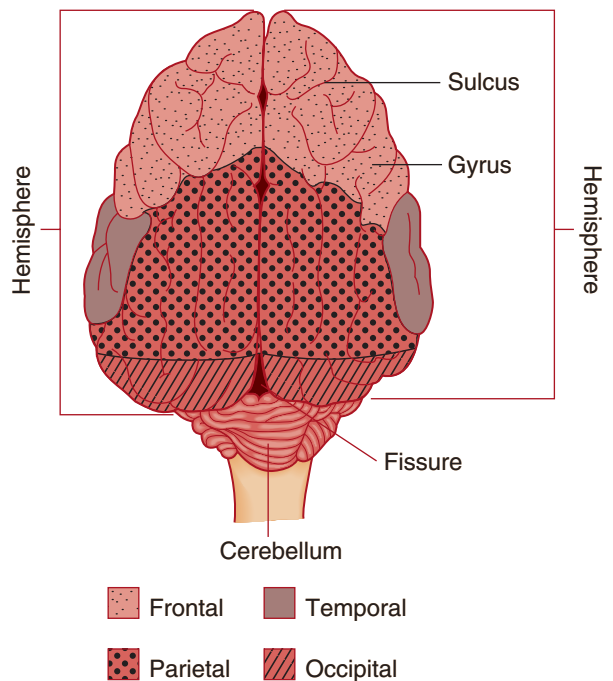
**Figure 13-8** Sagittal section of the brain.

form for brain; however, other combining forms that refer to specific regions of the brain also are used.

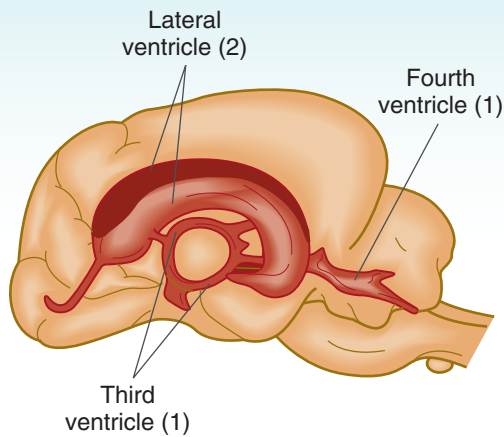
The divisions of the brain (Figure 13-8) based on functional group include the following:

- **cerebrum** (sər-ē-bruhm). The combining form for cerebrum is **cerebr/o**. The cerebrum, the largest part of the brain, is responsible for receiving and processing stimuli, initiating voluntary movement, and storing information. The **cerebral cortex** (outer region) is made up of gray matter and is arranged in folds (Figure 13-9). The elevated portions of the cerebral cortex are known as **gyri** (jī-rī). The combining form **convolut/o** means coiled, and **gyr/o** means folding. The grooves of the cerebral cortex are called fissures or **sulci** (suhl-ki). The combining form **sulc/o** means groove. The medullary substance of the cerebrum is made up of white matter. The brain also has small cavities called **ventricles** (vehn-trih-kuhlz) (Figure 13-10). There are four ventricles of the brain: two lateral ventricles, a third ventricle, and a fourth ventricle. The ventricles of the brain (and central canal of the spinal cord) are lined with a membrane called the **ependyma** (eh-pehn-dih-mah).
- **cerebellum** (sehr-eh-behl-uhm). The combining form for cerebellum is **cerebell/o**. The cerebellum is the second largest part of the brain, and it coordinates muscle activity for smooth movement. The cerebellum has an inner portion, called the **vermis** (vər-mihs) because it is wormlike, and other portions divided into right and left cerebellar hemispheres.
- **brainstem** (brān-stehm). The brainstem is the stalklike portion of the brain that connects the cerebral hemispheres with the spinal cord. The brainstem consists of the pons, medulla oblongata, midbrain, and interbrain. The **interbrain** contains structures such as the pituitary

gland, hypothalamus, and thalamus. These structures are responsible for endocrine activity, regulation of thirst and water balance, and regulation of body temperature. The **midbrain** contains structures responsible for



**Figure 13-9** Dorsal view of the cerebral cortex. The cerebrum is divided into right and left hemispheres. Each hemisphere is further divided into lobes, and each lobe is named for the bone plate covering it: **frontal** (frohn-tahl) lobe = most cranial lobe that controls motor function; **parietal** (pah-rī-ih-tahl) lobe = receives and interprets sensory nerve impulses; **occipital** (ohcks-ihp-ih-tahl) lobe = most caudal lobe that controls vision; **temporal** (tehmp-ruhl) lobe = laterally located lobe that controls hearing and smell.



**Figure 13-10** Lateral view of ventricles.

visual and auditory reflexes, posture, and muscle control. The **pons** (pohnz) is the bridge at the base of the brain that allows nerves to cross over so that one side of the brain controls the opposite side of the body. The **medulla oblongata** (meh-duhl-ah ohb-lohng-gah-tah) is the cranial continuation of the spinal cord that controls basic life functions. Divisions of the brain also are based on location (Figure 13-11 and Table 13-1).

## Spinal Cord

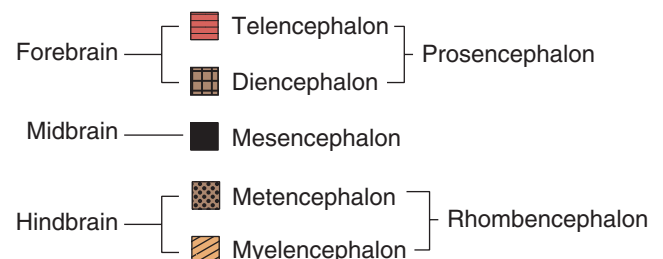
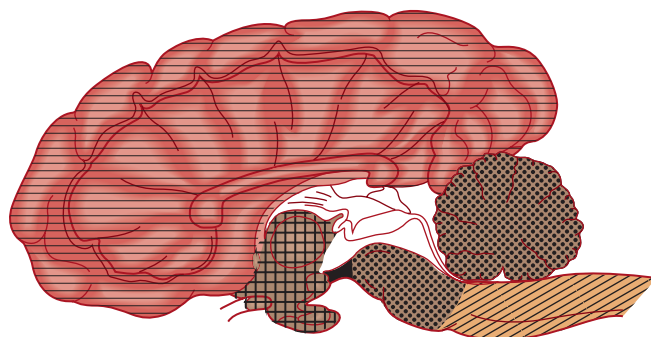
The **spinal cord** is the caudal continuation of the medulla oblongata. The spinal cord passes through an opening in the occipital bone called the **foramen magnum** (fər-ā-mehn mahg-nuhm). **Foramen** means passage or hole, and **magnum** means great. The spinal cord carries all of the tracts that influence the innervation of the limbs and lower part of the body. In addition, the spinal cord is the pathway for impulses going to and from the brain. **Myel/o** is the combining form for spinal cord. (Remember that myel/o also is the combining form for bone marrow.)

The spinal cord is part of the central nervous system, which means that it is surrounded by the meninges and is protected by cerebrospinal fluid. The gray matter of the spinal cord is located in the internal portion and is not protected by myelin.

Some parts of the brain are named not based on location or division, but rather on how they look. The vermis of the cerebellum is one example. Another example is the hippocampus, a portion of the limbic system that involves memory. The **hippocampus** (hihp-ō-kahm-puhs) is shaped like a seahorse, which exists in mythology as a sea monster with the head of a horse and the tail of a fish and as an actual sea creature. The name *hippocampus* comes from the Greek *hippos*, meaning horse, and *kampos*, meaning sea monster. The arbor vitae (tree of life) of the cerebellum are the treelike outlines seen on sagittal views of the cerebellum.

The white matter of the spinal cord is located in the external portion and is myelinated.

The spinal cord contains two areas of swelling. The medical term for swelling (normal or abnormal) is **intumescence** (ihn-too-meh-sehns). The swelling is caused by an increase in white matter and cell bodies that are associated with the innervation of the limbs. One swelling occurs in the area of C6–T2, which is known as the **cervical intumescence**. The other swelling occurs in the area of the L4–caudal segment, which is known as the **lumbosacral intumescence**. The cranial parts of the spinal cord have tracts with fibers from the cranial and caudal portions, but the caudal parts of the spinal cord have only tracts with fibers from the caudal portions. Therefore, as the spinal cord proceeds caudally, its cross-sectional area decreases. At the level of the cranial lumbar vertebrae, the spinal cord becomes cone-shaped. This cone-shaped segment



**Figure 13-11** Brain divisions based on location.

**Table 13-1 Brain Divisions Based on Location**

Brain Part	Division	Some Components
<b>forebrain; prosencephalon</b> (prōs-ehn-sehf-ah-lohn)	<b>telencephalon</b> (tēl-ehn-sehf-ah-lohn)	cerebral cortex and olfactory brain, <b>limbic</b> (lih-m-bihck) system (affects emotion and behavior); limbic means border
	<b>diencephalon</b> (dī-ehn-sehf-ah-lohn)	thalamus, epithalamus, and hypothalamus limbic system optic chiasm (crossing of the vision nerves); <b>chiasm</b> means crossing
<b>midbrain; mesencephalon</b> (mēz-ehn-sehf-ah-lohn)	<b>mesencephalon</b>	vision and hearing bodies, posture, and muscle control; limbic system
<b>hindbrain; rhombencephalon</b> (rohmb-ehn-sehf-ah-lohn)	<b>metencephalon</b> (meht-ehn-sehf-ah-lohn)	cerebellum and pons
	<b>myelencephalon</b> (mī-lehn-sehf-ah-lohn)	medulla oblongata

is called the **conus medullaris** (kō-nuhs mehd-yoo-lahr-ihs). **Conus** means cone. At the caudal end of the spinal cord (caudal lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal nerve segments), the tracts terminate and the spinal nerves fan outward and backward, giving the appearance of a horse's tail. This collection of

spinal roots at the caudal part of the spinal cord is the **cauda equina** (kaw-dah ē-kwī-nah). The cauda equina includes the conus medullaris to the caudal vertebrae. The threadlike tapering section of the cauda equina is known as the **filum terminale** (fī-luhm tər-mih-nahl). **Filum** means threadlike structure. The filum terminale attaches the conus medullaris to the caudal vertebrae.

Cushions

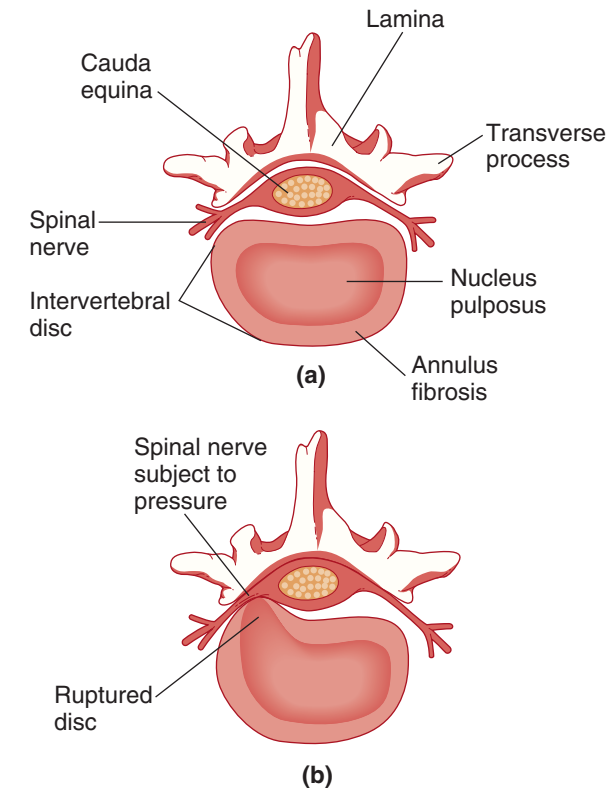
The spinal cord is housed within the vertebrae to protect it from injury. The vertebrae are protected from each other by **intervertebral** (ihn-tər-vər-tə-brahl) discs that are located between vertebra (Figure 13-12). Intervertebral discs are layers of fibrocartilage that form pads separating and cushioning the vertebrae from each other. The center of the intervertebral disc is gelatinous (**nucleus pulposus**) (nū-klē-uhs puhlpō-suhs), and the outer layer is fibrous (**annulus fibrosis**) (ahn-yoo-luhs fī-brō-sihs).

PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

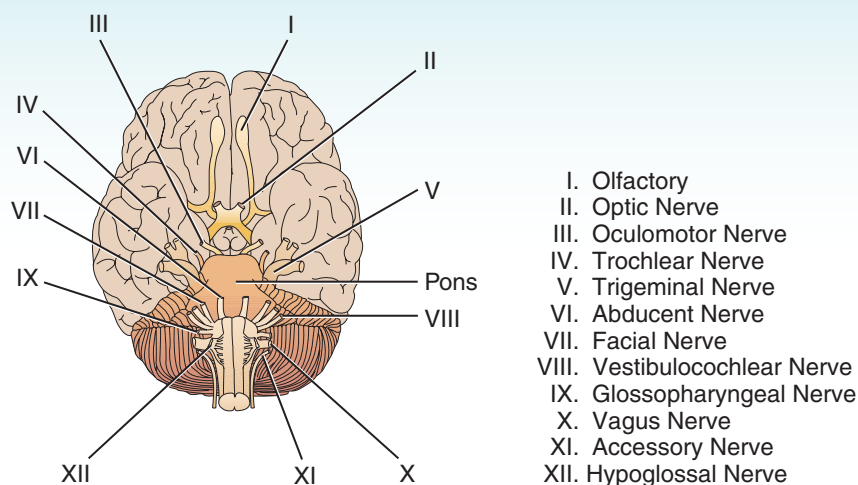
The peripheral nervous system (PNS) consists of the cranial nerves, the autonomic nervous system, the spinal nerves, and ganglia.

Cranial Nerves

Twelve pairs of **cranial nerves** originate from the undersurface of the brain. The cranial nerves generally are named for the area or function they serve and are represented by Roman numerals (Figure 13-13 and Table 13-2).



**Figure 13-12** Intervertebral disc. (a) Normal intervertebral disc. (b) Ruptured disc.



**Figure 13-13** Cranial nerves and ventral surface of the brain.

**Table 13-2 Cranial Nerves**

Cranial Nerve	Name	Function
I	olfactory	conducts sensory impulses from the nose to the brain (smell)
II	optic	conducts sensory impulses from the eyes to the brain (vision)
III	oculomotor	sends motor impulses to the external eye muscles (dorsal, medial, and ventral rectus; ventral oblique; and levator superioris) and to some internal eye muscles
IV	trochlear	sends motor impulses to one external eye muscle (dorsal oblique)
V	trigeminal	three branches: ophthalmic = sensory to cornea; maxillary = motor to upper jaw; mandibular = motor to lower jaw
VI	abducent	motor innervation to two muscles of the eye (retractor bulbi and lateral rectus)
VII	facial	motor to facial muscles, salivary glands, and lacrimal glands and taste sensation to anterior two-thirds of tongue
VIII	acoustic or vestibulocochlear	two branches: cochlear = sense of hearing; vestibular = sense of balance
IX	glossopharyngeal	motor to the parotid glands and pharyngeal muscles, taste sensation to caudal third of tongue, and sensory to the pharyngeal mucosa
X	vagus	sensory to part of the pharynx and larynx and parts of thoracic and abdominal viscera; motor for swallowing and voice production
XI	Accessory	accessory motor to shoulder muscles
XII	hypoglossal	motor to the muscles that control tongue movement

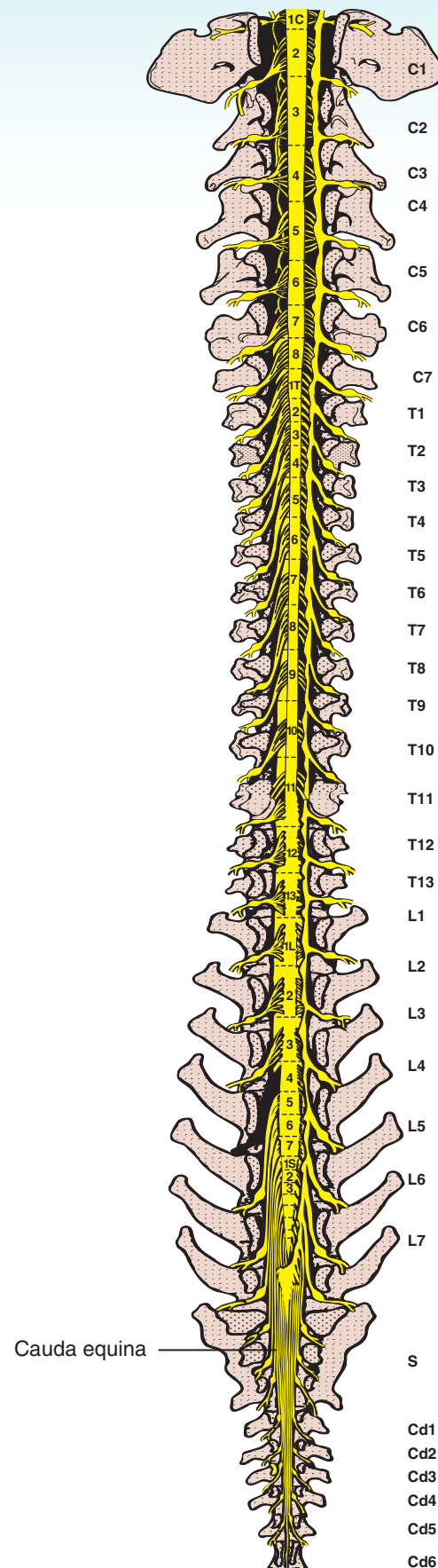
## Spinal Nerves

The **spinal nerves** arise from the spinal cord. With the exception of some cervical and coccygeal nerves, the spinal nerves are paired and emerge caudal to the vertebra of the same number and name. The first cervical vertebra (C1, or the atlas) has a pair of spinal nerves emerging cranially and caudally to it; therefore, there are eight cervical spinal nerves. C1 exits the spinal canal in a foramen in the wing of the atlas, and C2 emerges at the C1–C2 intervertebral foramen. C8 emerges caudal to vertebra C7, and T1 emerges caudal to T1 vertebra. The coccygeal vertebrae usually have fewer pairs of nerves than the number of vertebrae (Figure 13–14).

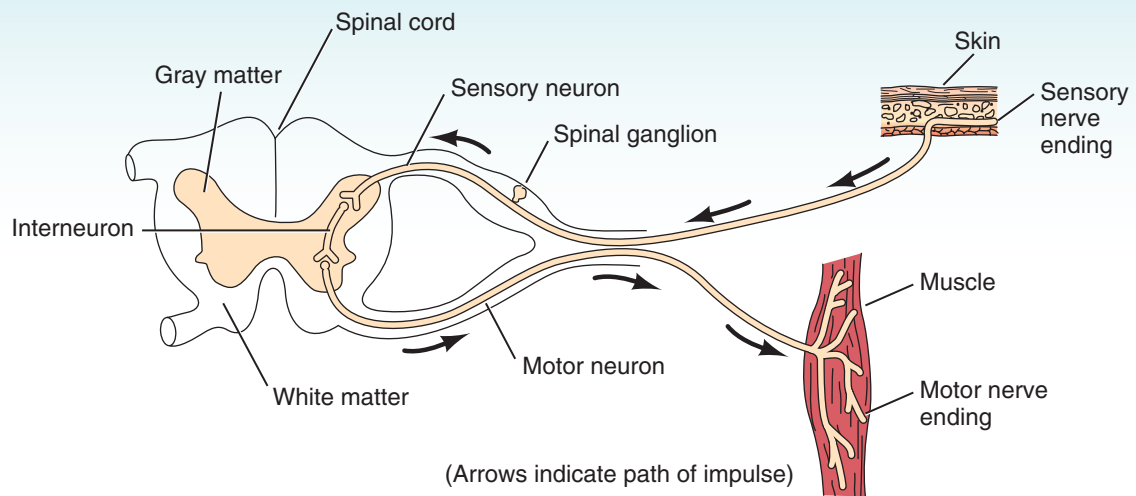
Spinal nerves have dorsal and ventral roots. The **dorsal root** enters the dorsal portion of the spinal cord and carries afferent or sensory impulses from the periphery to the spinal cord. The **ventral root** emerges from the ventral portion of the spinal cord and carries efferent or motor impulses from the spinal cord to muscle fibers or glands (Figure 13–15).

Spinal nerves supply sensory and motor fibers to the body region associated with their emergence from the spinal cord. After spinal nerves exit the spinal cord, they branch to form the peripheral nerves of the trunk and limbs. Several spinal nerves may join together to form a single peripheral nerve. This network of intersecting nerves is called a **plexus**. Each appendage is innervated by a plexus. Each forelimb is supplied from nerves that arise from the **brachial** (brā-kē-ahl) **plexus** (C6–T2), and each hindlimb is supplied from nerves that arise from the **lumbosacral plexus** (L4–S3). Brachial means the arm, and lumbosacral means the loin and sacrum.

Spinal nerves are named for where they arise from the spinal cord. *C* represents cervical, *T* represents thoracic, *L* represents lumbar, *S* represents sacral, and *Co* and *Cy* represent coccygeal (or *Cd* represents caudal). These letter abbreviations are followed by numbers to represent the vertebral area from which the nerve exits the spinal cord. C4 represents cervical spinal nerve 4, T11 represents thoracic spinal nerve 11, and so on.



**Figure 13–14** Naming scheme for spinal nerves.



**Figure 13–15** Spinal nerve.

## Autonomic Nervous System

The **autonomic nervous system** (aw-tō-nah-mihck nər-vuhs sihs-tehm), or ANS, is the part of the peripheral nervous system that innervates smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands. The two divisions of the autonomic nervous system are the sympathetic nervous system (sihm-pah-theh-tihck nər-vuhs sihs-tehm) and the **parasympathetic nervous system** (pah-r-ah-sihm-pah-theh-tihck nər-vuhs sihs-tehm). The two divisions of the autonomic nervous system work together to maintain homeostasis within the body. **Homeostasis** (hō-mē-ō-stā-sihs) is the process of maintaining a stable internal body environment.

<b>sympathetic</b>	provides emergency and stress response; “fight or flight”	↑ heart rate, respiratory rate, and blood flow to muscles; ↓ gastrointestinal function; pupil dilation
<b>parasympathetic</b>	returns body to normal after stressful response; maintains normal body function	returns heart rate, respiratory rate, and blood flow to normal levels; returns normal gastrointestinal function; constricts pupil size to normal

## TEST ME: NERVOUS SYSTEM

Diagnostic procedures performed on the nervous system include the following:

- **cerebrospinal fluid tap** (sər-ē-brō-spī-nahl flū-ihd tahp) = removal of cerebrospinal fluid; also called a CSF tap. CSF is obtained by inserting a needle or catheter into the **cisterna magna** (sihs-tər-nah mahg-nah) or lumbosacral area. The cisterna magna is the subarachnoid space located between the caudal surface of the cerebellum and the dorsal surface of the medulla oblongata. Intracranial pressures also may be measured before removal of CSF (Figure 13–16).



**Figure 13–16** Lumbar CSF tap in a lion. (Courtesy of Anne E. Chauvet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM—Neurology, University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)

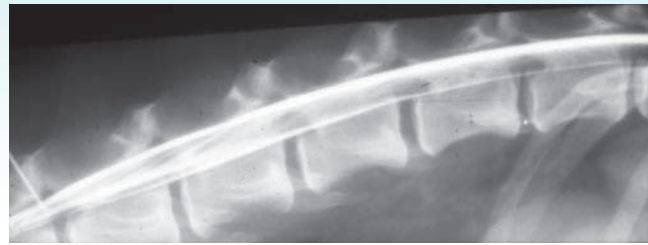


**Figure 13-17** Discogram in a dog. (Courtesy of Anne E. Chauvet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM—Neurology, University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)

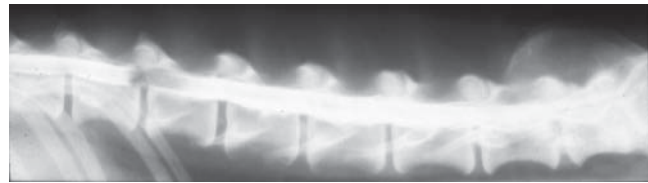
- **discography** (dihs-kō-grah-fē) = radiographic study of an intervertebral disc after injection of contrast material into the disc, also spelled *diskography*. The record of this procedure is called a **discogram** (Figure 13-17).
- **electroencephalography** (ē-lehck-trō-ehn-sehf-ah-lohg-rah-fē) = process of recording electrical activity of the brain; abbreviated EEG. An **electroencephalo-**

**levels of consciousness** = descriptive terms used to describe mentation .

- **BAR** = bright, alert, and responsive.
- **coma** (kō-mah) = deep state of unconsciousness.
- **conscious** (kohn-shuhs) = awake, aware, and responsive; also known as **alert**.
- **disorientation** (dihs-ōr-ē-ehn-tā-shuhn) = condition in which the animal appears mentally confused.
- **lethargy** (lehth-ahr-jē) = drowsiness, indifference, and listlessness.
- **obtunded** (ohb-tuhn-dehd) = depressed.
- **stupor** (stoo-pər) = impaired consciousness with unresponsiveness to stimuli.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 13-18** (a) Normal myelogram in a Labrador retriever. (b) Myelogram demonstrating disc disease. (Note that the dye does not flow continuously.) (Courtesy of Anne E. Chauvet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM—Neurology, University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)

**graph** (ē-lehck-trō-ehn-sehf-ah-lō-grahf) is the instrument used to record the electrical activity of the brain, and an **electroencephalogram** (ē-lehck-trō-ehn-sehf-ah-lō-grahm) is the record of the electrical activity of the brain.

- **magnetic resonance imaging** and **computed axial tomography** are covered in Chapter 16.
- **myelography** (mī-eh-lohg-rah-fē) = diagnostic study of the spinal cord after injection of contrast material. A **myelogram** (mī-eh-lō-grahm) is the record of the spinal cord after injection of contrast material (Figure 13-18).
- **pupillary light reflex** = response of pupil to a bright light source; abbreviated PLR. Light is shone in one eye, and that eye (direct) and the opposite eye (consensual) should constrict. It is used to assess neurologic damage.

## PATHOLOGY: NERVOUS SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the nervous system include the following:

- **amnesia** (ahm-nē-zē-ah) = memory loss.
- **astrocytoma** (ahs-trō-sī-tō-mah) = malignant intracranial tumor composed of astrocytes.
- **ataxia** (ā-tahck-sē-ah) = without coordination; “stumbling” (Figure 13-19).
- **cataplexy** (kaht-ah-lehp-sē) = waxing rigidity of muscles accompanied by a trancelike state.



**Figure 13-19** Ataxia in a cat. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 13-20** CP deficit in a dog.

- **cataplexy** (kaht-ah-plehck-sē) = sudden attacks of muscular weakness and hypotonia triggered by an emotional response.
- **cerebellar hypoplasia** (sehr-eh-behl-ahr hī-pō-plā-zē-ah) = smaller-than-normal cerebellum; seen in cats secondary to feline panleukopenia virus, which leads to incoordination.
- **cervical vertebral malformation** = abnormal formation or instability of the caudal cervical vertebrae that causes ataxia and incoordination; seen more often in horses and dogs; also called **wobbler's syndrome**.
- **chorea** (kōr-ē-ah) = repetitive, rhythmic contraction of limb or facial muscles; also called **myoclonus** (mī-ō-klō-nuhs); usually the result of distemper viral infection in dogs.
- **choriomeningitis** (kōr-ē-ō-meh-nih-n-jī-tihs) = inflammation of the choroid plexus and meninges.
- **concussion** (kohn-kuhsh-uhn) = shaking of the brain caused by injury. The combining form **concuss/o** means shaken together.
- **conscious proprioceptive deficit** (kohn-shuhs prō-prih-ō-sehp-tihv deh-fih-siht) = neurologic defect in which the animal appears not to know where

its limbs are; abbreviated CP deficit, “knuckling” (Figure 13-20).

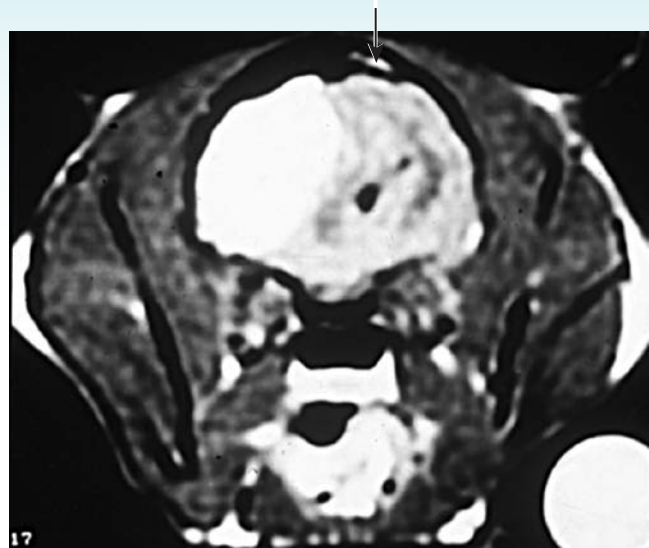
- **contusion** (kohn-too-zhuhn) = bruising. The combining form **contus/o** means bruise.
- **decerebration** (dē-sār-ē-brā-shuhn) = condition of loss of mental functions caused by damage to the mid-brain.
- **demyelination** (dē-mī-eh-lih-nā-shuhn) = destruction or loss of myelin.
- **discospondylitis** (dihs-kō-spohn-dih-li-tihs) = destructive inflammatory disorder that involves the intervertebral discs, vertebral end-plates, and vertebral bodies.
- **encephalitis** (ehn-sehf-ah-li-tihs) = inflammation of the brain.
- **encephalocele** (ehn-sehf-ah-lō-sēl) = herniation of the brain through a gap in the skull.
- **encephalomalacia** (ehn-sehf-ah-lō-mah-lā-shē-ah) abnormal softening of the brain.
- **encephalomyelitis** (ehn-sehf-ah-lō-mī-ih-li-tihs) inflammation of the brain and spinal cord.
- **encephalopathy** (ehn-sehf-ah-lohp-ah-thē) = any disease of the brain.
- **epilepsy** (ehp-ih-lehp-sē) = recurrent seizures of non-systemic origin or of intracranial disease. Epilepsy may be described as **idiopathic** (ihd-ē-ō-paht-hih-ck). *Idiopathic* means unknown cause or disease of an individual. **Idio-** is the prefix meaning individual.
- **hallucination** (hah-loo-sehn-ā-shuhn) = false sensory perception.
- **hematoma** (hē-mah-tō-mah) = mass or collection of blood. In the nervous system, a hematoma usually is

described by the area where it is found. An **epidural hematoma** (ehp-ih-doo-rahł hē-mah-tō-mah) is a collection of blood above or superficial to the dura mater. A **subdural hematoma** (suhb-doo-rahł hē-mah-to-mah) is a collection of blood below (deep to) the dura mater and above (superficial to) the arachnoid membrane.

- **hemiplegia** (hehm-ih-plē-jē-ah) = paralysis of one side of the body.
- **Horner's syndrome** (hōr-nərz sihn-drōm) = collection of signs relating to injury of the cervical sympathetic innervation to the eye; signs include sinking of the eyeball (enophthalmus), ptosis of the upper eyelid, pupil constriction, and prolapse of the third eyelid (Figure 13–21).
- **hydrocephalus** (hī-drō-sehf-ah-luhs) = abnormally elevated amount of cerebrospinal fluid in the ventricles of the brain; “water on the brain.”
- **hyperesthesia** (hī-pər-ehs-thē-zē-ah) = excessive sensitivity.
- **hyperkinesis** (hī-pər-kihn-ē-sihs) = increased motor function or activity.
- **hypnosis** (hihp-nō-sihs) = condition of altered awareness; trance-like state.
- **intervertebral** (ihn-tər-vər-tə-brahl) **disc disease** = condition of pain and neurologic deficits resulting from the displacement of part or all of the material in the disc located between the vertebrae (see Figure 13–12).
- **leukoencephalomalacia** (loo-kō-ehn-sehf-ah-lō-mah-lā-shah) = abnormal softening of the white matter of the brain.
- **macrocephaly** (mahck-rō-sehf-ah-lē) = abnormally large skull.
- **meningioma** (meh-nihn-jē-ō-mah) = benign tumor of the meninges (Figure 13–22).



**Figure 13–21** Horner's syndrome in a cat. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 13–22** Computed tomogram of a cat with a meningioma. (Courtesy of Anne E. Chauvet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM—Neurology, University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)

- **meningitis** (mehn-ihn-jī-tihs) = inflammation of the meninges.
- **meningocele** (meh-nihng-gō-sēł) = protrusion of the meninges through a defect in the skull or vertebrae.
- **meningoencephalitis** (meh-nihn-gō-ehn-sehf-ah-li-tihs) = inflammation of the meninges and brain.
- **meningoencephalomyelitis** (meh-nihn-gō-ehn-sehf-ah-lō-mī-eh-li-tihs) = inflammation of the meninges, brain, and spinal cord.
- **microcephaly** (mī-krō-sehf-ah-lē) = abnormally small skull.
- **monoplegia** (mohn-ō-plē-jē-ah) = paralysis of one limb.
- **myelitis** (mī-eh-li-tihs) = inflammation of the spinal cord (or bone marrow).
- **myelopathy** (mī-eh-lah-pahth-ē) = disease of the spinal cord (or bone marrow).
- **myoparesis** (mī-ō-pahr-ē-sihs) = weakness of muscles. The suffix **-paresis** means weakness. As is the case with **-plegia**, the suffix **-paresis** is modified to describe the area of weakness. **Hemiparesis** (hehm-ih-pahr-ē-sihs) is weakness on one side of the body; **paraparesis** (pah-ah-pahr-ē-sihs) is weakness of the lower body in bipeds or of hindlimbs in quadrupeds.
- **narcolepsy** (nahr-kō-lehp-sē) = syndrome of recurrent uncontrollable sleep episodes. The combining form **narc/o** means stupor, and the suffix **-lepsy** means seizure (episode).
- **neuralgia** (nū-rahł-jē-ah) = nerve pain.
- **neuritis** (nū-rī-tihs) = inflammation of the nerves.
- **opisthotonos** (ohp-ihs-thoht-ō-nohs) = tetanic spasm in which the head and tail are bent dorsally and the back is arched.

- **paralysis** (pah-ahl-ih-sihs) = loss of voluntary movement or immobility. The suffix **-plegia** means paralysis. Paralysis is further described by the areas it involves.
- **paraplegia** (pah-ah-plē-jē-ah) = paralysis of the lower body in bipeds or of hindlimbs in quadrupeds (Figure 13–23). In reference to the nervous system, the prefix **para-** means hind or lower portion.
- **paresthesia** (pah-ehs-thē-zē-ah) = abnormal sensation. The suffix **-esthesia** means sensation or feeling. Abnormal sensations may include tingling, numbness, or burning and may be difficult to assess in animals. The combining forms for burning are **caus/o** and **caust/o**.



**Figure 13–23** Paraplegia in a rabbit.



**Figure 13–24** Polioencephalomalacia in a sheep. Opisthotonos is one sign of PEM. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

- **polioencephalomalacia** (pō-lē-ō-ehn-sehf-ah-lō-mah-lā-shah) = abnormal softening of the gray matter of the brain; abbreviated PEM (Figure 13–24).
- **polioencephalomyelitis** (pō-lē-ō-ehn-sehf-ah-lō-mī-eh-li-tihs) = inflammation of the gray matter of the brain and spinal cord.
- **poliomyelitis** (pō-lē-ō-mī-eh-li-tihs) = inflammation of the gray matter of the spinal cord. The combining form **poli/o** means gray.
- **polyneuritis** (poh-lē-nū-rī-tihs) = inflammation of many nerves.
- **polyradiculoneuritis** (poh-lē-rah-dihck-yoo-lō-nū-rī-tihs) = inflammation of many peripheral nerves and spinal nerve roots that may lead to progressive paralysis; commonly called **coonhound paralysis** in coonhound dogs and **idiopathic polyradiculoneuropathy** in other dogs.
- **ptosis** (tō-sihs) = prolapse or drooping. The suffix **-ptosis** means prolapse, drooping, or falling downward; refers specifically to the upper eyelid.
- **radiculitis** (rah-dihck-yoo-li-tihs) = inflammation of the root of a spinal nerve. **Radicul/o** is the combining form for root.
- **roaring** = noisy respiration caused by air passing through a narrowed larynx in horses; common term for **equine laryngeal hemiplegia** because of nerve fiber degeneration of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve (Figure 13–25).
- **seizure** (sē-zhər) = sudden, involuntary contraction of some muscles caused by a brain disturbance; also called



### What side are you on?

Pathologic conditions of the nervous system may involve lesions that cause abnormal clinical signs on the same side or opposite side that the lesion occurs. In describing lesions of the nervous system, the terms *ipsilateral* and *contralateral* are used. **Ipsi-** is the prefix meaning the same, and **contra-** is the prefix meaning opposite. **Ipsilateral** (ihp-sē-laht-ər-ahl) means on the same side, and **contralateral** (kohn-trah-laht-ər-ahl) means on the opposite side.



**Figure 13-25** Laryngeal area of a horse with equine laryngeal hemiplegia (roaring). (Courtesy of Laura Lien, CVT, BS.)

**convulsions.** The most common type of seizure in animals is **grand mal** (grahnd mahl), in which the animal experiences loss of consciousness and muscle contractions. Other types of seizures include partial, which have a seizure focus that does not spread, and petit mal, which is a mild generalized seizure in which loss of consciousness and generalized loss of muscle tone occur.

- **spasticity** (spahs-tihs-ih-tē) = state of increased muscular tone.
- **spina bifida** (spī-nah bihf-ih-dah) = congenital anomaly in which the spinal canal does not close over the spinal cord. The combining form **bifid/o** means split or cleft.
- **syncope** (sihn-kō-pē) = fainting; sudden fall in blood pressure or cardiac systole resulting in cerebral anemia and loss of consciousness.
- **tetraplegia** (teht-rah-plē-jē-ah) = paralysis of all four limbs; also called **quadriplegia** (kwohd-rih-plē-jē-ah).
- **tremor** (treh-mər) = involuntary trembling.
- **vestibular disease** (vehs-tihb-yoo-lahr dih-zēz) = neurologic disorder characterized by head tilt, nystagmus, rolling, falling, and circling. **Nystagmus** (nī-stahg-muhs) is involuntary, rhythmic movement of the eye and is discussed in Chapter 14.



### Seizure stages

Seizures are divided into stages to aid in determining when they may start or end. These stages are as follows:

**preictal** (prē-ihck-tahl) = period before a seizure; also called the **aura** (aw-rah). An animal may pace, excessively lick, fly bite, or seem anxious during this stage.

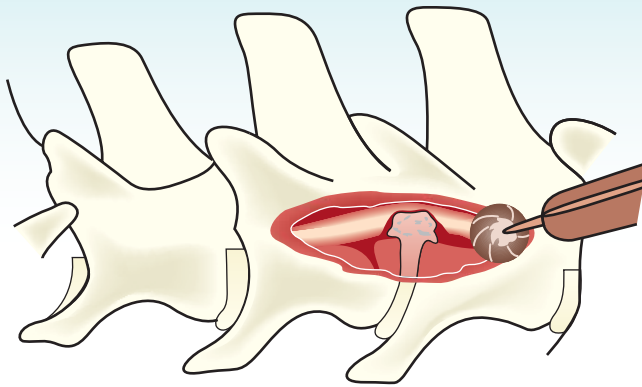
**ictus** (ihck-tuhs) = attack or actual seizure. An animal may convulse, lose control of excretory functions, shake, and appear confused during this stage.

**postictal** (pōst-ihck-tahl) = period after a seizure. An animal may appear obtunded, tired, fearful, or anxious during this stage.

## PROCEDURES: NERVOUS SYSTEM

Procedures performed on the nervous system include the following:

- **analgesia** (ahn-ahl-jēz-ē-ah) = without pain. *Analgesia* is used to describe pain relief, which is different from *anesthesia* (absence of sensation). **Endorphins** (ehn-dōr-fihnz) are natural, opioid-like chemicals that are produced in the brain and that raise the pain threshold.
- **anesthesia** (ahn-ehs-thē-zē-ah) = absence of sensation. An **anesthetic** (ahn-ehs-theht-ihck) is a substance used to induce anesthesia. There are different types of anesthesia. Some types include **topical anesthesia** = absence of sensation after a substance has been applied to the skin or external surface; **local anesthesia** = absence of sensation after chemical injection to an adjacent area; **epidural anesthesia** = absence of sensation to a region after injection of a chemical into the epidural space; **general anesthesia** = absence of sensation and consciousness.
- **disc fenestration** (dihsk fehn-ih-strā-shuhn) = removal of intervertebral disc material by perforating and scraping out its contents (Figure 13-26).



**Figure 13–26** A disc fenestration involves removal of intervertebral disc material.

- **dysesthesia** (dihs-eh-stēsh-ah) = impaired sensation.
- **laminectomy** (lahm-ihn-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the lamina of the vertebra to relieve pressure on the spinal cord.
- **neurectomy** (nū-rehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a nerve.
- **neuroanastomosis** (nū-rō-ahn-ahs-tō-mō-sihs) = connecting nerves together.
- **neuroplasty** (nū-rō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of a nerve.
- **neurorrhaphy** (nū-rōr-ah-fē) = suturing the ends of a severed nerve.
- **neurotomy** (nū-roht-ō-mē) = surgical incision or dissection of a nerve.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The space between two neurons or between a neuron and a receptor is a(n)
  - a. synapse
  - b. ganglion
  - c. axon
  - d. dendrite
2. Maintaining a constant internal environment is called
  - a. osmosis
  - b. homeostasis
  - c. homeostasis
  - d. ipsistasis
3. Inflammation of the root of a spinal nerve is
  - a. myelitis
  - b. radiculitis
  - c. polyneuritis
  - d. poliomyelitis
4. The three-layered membrane lining the CNS is called the
  - a. hippocampus
  - b. pons
  - c. myelin
  - d. meninges
5. The protective sheath that covers some nerve cells of the spinal cord, white matter of the brain, and most peripheral nerves is called
  - a. pia
  - b. dura
  - c. glia
  - d. myelin
6. The division of the autonomic nervous system that is concerned with body functions under emergency or stress is the
  - a. peripheral
  - b. central
  - c. sympathetic
  - d. parasympathetic
7. A network of intersecting nerves is a
  - a. bundle
  - b. trunk
  - c. tract
  - d. plexus
8. What type of neuron carries impulses away from the CNS and toward the muscles?
  - a. afferent (sensory)
  - b. efferent (motor)
  - c. sympathetic
  - d. parasympathetic

9. An automatic, involuntary response to change is called a(n)  
a. impulse  
b. stimulus  
c. reflex  
d. receptor
10. The largest portion of the brain that is involved with thought and memory is the  
a. cerebrum  
b. cerebellum  
c. brainstem  
d. spinal cord
11. Elevated portions of the cerebral cortex are  
a. sulci  
b. plexuses  
c. gyri  
d. hemispheres
12. The term meaning without pain is  
a. analgesia  
b. endorphin  
c. idiopathic  
d. ptosis
13. Inflammation of the gray matter of the spinal cord is known as  
a. myelitis  
b. poliomyelitis  
c. leukomyelitis  
d. neuritis
14. The term for without coordination or “stumbling” is  
a. ataxia  
b. spasticity  
c. seizure  
d. epilepsy
15. A knotlike mass of neuron cell bodies in the peripheral nervous system is known as a  
a. microglia  
b. synapse  
c. receptor  
d. ganglion
16. A “depressed” animal is referred to as  
a. conscious  
b. disoriented  
c. obtunded  
d. depressed
17. Inflammation of the membranes surrounding the brain and spinal cord is known as  
a. meningitis  
b. encephalopathy  
c. encephalitis  
d. chorea
18. Conscious proprioceptive deficit is commonly called  
a. nystagmus  
b. roaring  
c. knuckling  
d. wobbler’s syndrome
19. The medical term for crossing is  
a. intumescence  
b. plexus  
c. chiasm  
d. filum
20. Small cavities in the brain are known as  
a. gyri  
b. sulci  
c. ventricles  
d. ependyma

## Matching

Match the term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ conscious	a. depressed
2. _____ BAR	b. impaired consciousness with unresponsiveness to stimuli
3. _____ coma	c. bright, alert, and responsive
4. _____ lethargy	d. deep state of unconsciousness
5. _____ obtunded	e. awake, aware, and responsive; also known as alert
6. _____ disorientation	f. condition in which the animal appears mentally confused
7. _____ stupor	g. drowsiness, indifference, and listlessness

Match the term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
8. _____ homeostasis	a. supportive cells of the nervous system
9. _____ ganglia	b. protective covering over some nerve cells that serves as an electrical insulator
10. _____ stimulus	c. wave of excitation transmitted through nervous tissue
11. _____ reflex	d. neuron cell bodies grouped together outside the CNS
12. _____ synapse	e. repetitive, rhythmic contraction of limb or facial muscles
13. _____ soma	f. something that excites or activates
14. _____ impulse	g. automatic, involuntary response to change
15. _____ neuroglia	h. space between two neurons or between a neuron and a receptor
16. _____ myelin	i. cell body
17. _____ myoclonus	j. process of maintaining a constant internal body environment

## Fill in the Blanks

1. Neur/i and neur/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Mening/o and meningi/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Pachy- means \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Gangli/o and ganglion/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Gli/o means \_\_\_\_\_.

**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |  |           |            |             |
|--|-----------|------------|-------------|
| 1. fainting:                                     | sincope   | syncopy    | syncope     |
| 2. substance that produces absence of sensation: | anestetic | anesthetic | anesthetick |
| 3. loss of voluntary movement:                   | paralysis | paralasis  | parlysis    |
| 4. convulsions:                                  | seezure   | siezure    | seizure     |
| 5. prolapse or drooping:                         | tosis     | ptosis     | ptoesis     |

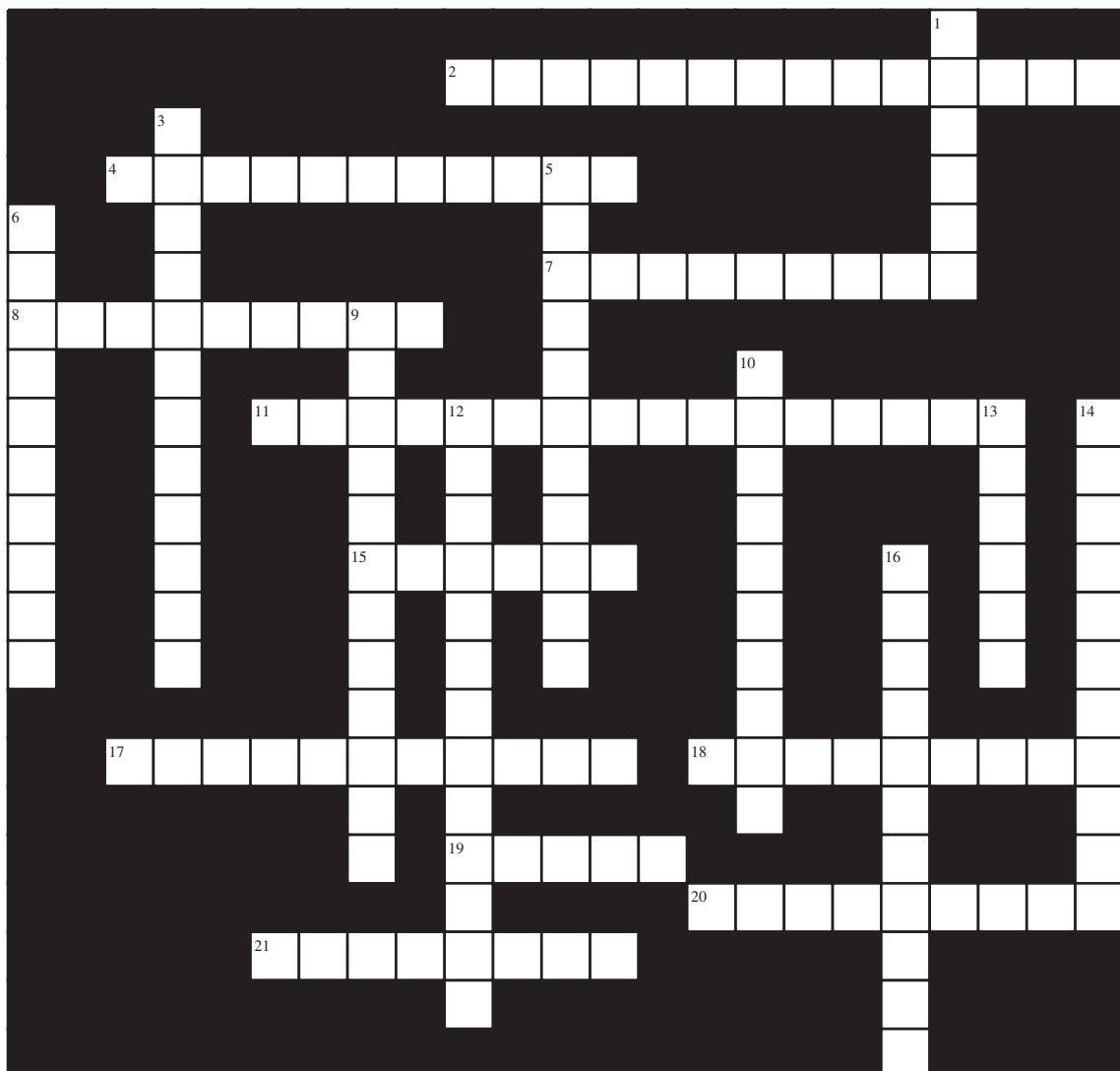
**Word Scramble**

Use the definitions to unscramble the terms relating to the nervous system.

- |   |            |       |
|---|------------|-------|
| 1. incision into a nerve  | tronymoye  | _____ |
| 2. period before a seizure  | uaar       | _____ |
| 3. disease of the spinal cord (or bone marrow)                          | pthayyelom | _____ |
| 4. passage or hole  | fmnraoe    | _____ |
| 5. paralysis of the lower limbs in bipeds or of hindlimbs in quadrupeds | ppaaaliger | _____ |
| 6. opposite   | rcoatn     | _____ |
| 7. recurrent seizures of nonsystemic origin                             | yspelipe   | _____ |

# CROSSWORD PUZZLE

## Nervous System Terms Puzzle



### Across

- 2 spatial orientation or perception of movement
- 4 diagnostic radiographic study of the spinal cord after injection of contrast material into the subarachnoid space
- 7 repetitive, rhythmic contraction of skeletal muscle
- 8 surgical incision or dissection of a nerve
- 11 abnormal softening of the brain
- 15 crossing
- 17 the same side
- 18 star-shaped cell
- 19 period of an actual seizure
- 20 nerve pain
- 21 inflammation of the spinal cord (or bone marrow)

### Down

- 1 prolapse or drooping
- 3 increased motor function or activity
- 5 weakness of one side of the body
- 6 shaking of brain caused by injury
- 9 abnormally small skull
- 10 syndrome of recurrent uncontrollable sleep episodes
- 12 inflammation of the gray matter of the spinal cord
- 13 without coordination or stumbling
- 14 abnormal sensation
- 16 surgical repair of a nerve

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 3-yr-old F mixed breed dog was presented to the clinic for convulsions (Figure 13–27). A thorough history was taken, including a description of the convulsion episodes, possible toxin exposure, and eating history. PE revealed that the animal was obtunded but otherwise in normal health. The neurologic examination was normal. Blood was drawn for CBC and chem panel. The CBC was normal, and the chem panel did not show evidence of renal disease, hepatic disease, or hypoglycemia. Urine was collected for UA via cystocentesis. The results of the UA were normal. The dog's history was examined, and it was noted that the dog's vaccinations were current. The signalment, history, and clinical signs were used to diagnose idiopathic epilepsy. Diagnostic tests, including CSF tap and EEG, were recommended to the owners but were declined at this time. The owners were advised to have the dog spayed (hormone levels may contribute to seizure activity) and to monitor the animal's activity for recurrence of seizures. If the seizures recur and persist, anticonvulsant medication will be used in an attempt to control them.

1. convulsions \_\_\_\_\_
2. obtunded \_\_\_\_\_
3. neurologic \_\_\_\_\_
4. renal \_\_\_\_\_
5. hepatic \_\_\_\_\_
6. hypoglycemia \_\_\_\_\_
7. UA \_\_\_\_\_
8. cystocentesis \_\_\_\_\_
9. signalment \_\_\_\_\_
10. clinical \_\_\_\_\_
11. diagnose \_\_\_\_\_
12. idiopathic \_\_\_\_\_
13. epilepsy \_\_\_\_\_
14. CSF tap \_\_\_\_\_
15. EEG \_\_\_\_\_
16. spayed \_\_\_\_\_
17. seizure \_\_\_\_\_
18. anticonvulsant \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 13–27** A seizing dog. During a grand mal seizure, dogs typically are unresponsive, lying on their sides, and paddling their legs.

A 5-yr-old M/N dachshund was presented to the clinic with a history of not being able to walk up stairs or jump on the bed. The owner stated that the dog had decreased its eating and was more lethargic than usual. PE revealed an obese dog that had normal vital signs. The neurologic examination revealed normal cranial nerves and CP deficit present on both hindlimbs. Patellar reflexes were hyporeflexive, with the right side worse than the left. Anal tone was adequate. Radiographs were recommended to assess whether the dog had calcified or herniated intervertebral discs. Abnormal discs were noted in the lumbar region. The dog was referred for myelography. The myelogram confirmed that the dog had herniated discs in the lumbar region, and surgery was recommended. Disc fenestration surgery was performed the following day. The dog went home with orders for strict cage rest and rechecks by the referring veterinarian.

19. M/N \_\_\_\_\_
20. lethargic \_\_\_\_\_
21. obese \_\_\_\_\_
22. vital signs \_\_\_\_\_
23. cranial nerves \_\_\_\_\_
24. CP deficit \_\_\_\_\_
25. patellar reflexes \_\_\_\_\_
26. hyporeflexive \_\_\_\_\_
27. anal \_\_\_\_\_
28. radiographs \_\_\_\_\_
29. intervertebral discs \_\_\_\_\_
30. lumbar \_\_\_\_\_
31. myelography \_\_\_\_\_
32. myelogram \_\_\_\_\_
33. herniated \_\_\_\_\_
34. disc fenestration \_\_\_\_\_



# CHAPTER 14

## SEEING AND HEARING

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the structures and functions of the eyes and ears
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of eye and ear disorders

### FUNCTIONS OF THE EYE

The **ocular** (ohck-yoo-lahr) **system** is responsible for vision. The **eyes** are the receptor organs for sight. Combining forms for the eye or sight are **opt/i**, **opt/o**, **optic/o**, **ocul/o**, and **ophthalm/o**. **Extraocular** (ehcks-trah-ohck-yoo-lahr) means outside the eyeball, and **intraocular** (ihn-trah-ohck-yoo-lahr) means within the eyeball. **Periocular** (pehr-ē-ohck-yoo-lahr) means around the eyeball.



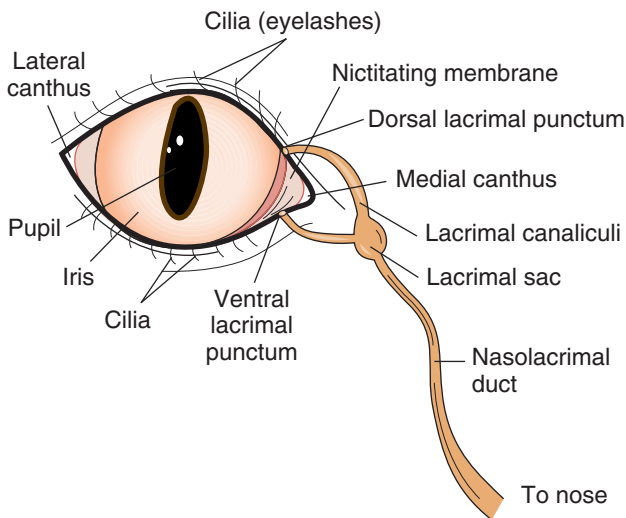
## STRUCTURES OF THE EYE

The structures of the eye include the accessory structures and the eyeball.

### Accessories

The accessory structures of an organ are called **adnexa** (ahd-nehck-sah). **Stroma** (strō-mah) is another term used to describe the supporting tissue of an organ. The adnexa of the eye include the orbit, eye muscles, eyelids, eyelashes, conjunctiva, and lacrimal apparatus (Figure 14–1).

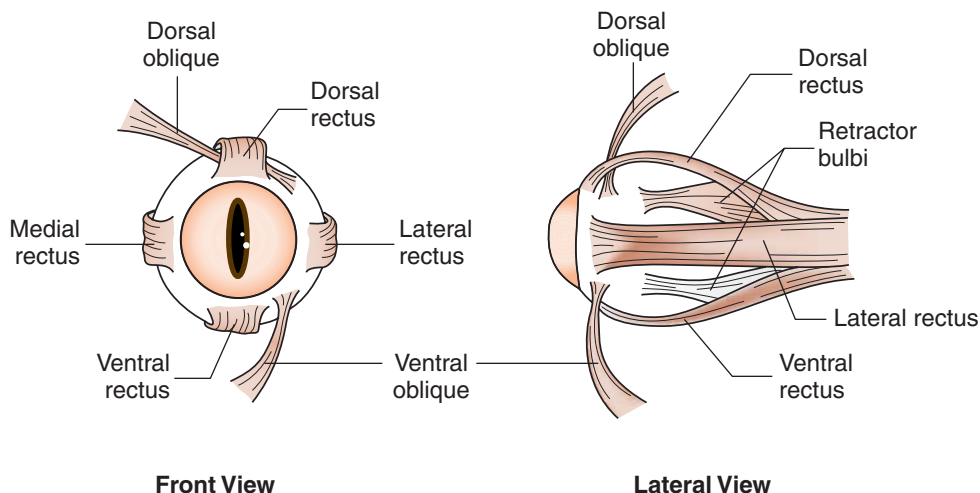
- **orbit** (ohr-biht) = bony cavity of the skull that contains the eyeball. The term **periorbita** (pehr-ih-ōr-bih-tah) means eye socket.
- **eye muscles** = seven major muscles attached to each eye that make a range of movement possible (two oblique muscles, four rectus muscles, and the retractor bulbi)



**Figure 14–1** Adnexa of the eye.

(Figure 14–2). The muscles of both eyes work together in coordinated movements to make normal binocular vision possible. **Binocular** (bī-nohck-yoo-lahr) means both eyes. The **extrinsic muscles** (ehcks-trihn-sihck muhs-uhlz) are six muscles that attach the outside of the eyeball to the bones of the orbit. The **levator palpebrae muscles** (lē-vā-tər pahl-pē-brā muhs-uhlz) are muscles that raise the upper eyelid.

- **eyelids** = each eye has an upper and lower eyelid to protect the eye from injury, foreign material, and excessive light. The combining form **blephar/o** (blehf-ah-rō) means eyelid. **Palpebra** (pahl-pē-brah) is another term used for the eyelid; the plural form is **palpebrae** (pal-pē-brā). **Palpebral** (pahl-pē-brah) means pertaining to the eyelid.
- The angle where the upper and lower eyelids meet is called the **canthus** (kahn-thuhs). The combining form **canth/o** means corner of the eye. The medial canthus is the corner of the eye nearer to the nose (also called the inner canthus). The lateral canthus is the corner of the eye farther away from the nose (also called the outer canthus).
- The **tarsal** (tahr-sahl) **plate** (or tarsus) is the platelike framework within the upper and lower eyelids that provides stiffness and shape. The combining form **tars/o** means edge of the eyelid or “ankle” joint.
- **Meibomian** (mī-bō-mē-ahn) **glands** are the sebaceous glands on the margins of each eyelid; also called tarsal glands.
- **eyelashes** = the edge of each eyelid has hairlike structures called **cilia** (sihl-ē-ah). The cilia, or eyelashes, protect the eye from foreign material.
- **conjunctiva** (kohn-juhnck-ti-vah) = mucous membrane that lines the underside of each eyelid. The conjunctiva forms a protective covering of the exposed surface of the eyeball when the eyelids are closed.



**Figure 14–2** Extrinsic eye muscle of a dog.



**Figure 14-3** Third eyelid, or nictitans, in a cat.

The combining form **conjunctiv/o** means conjunctiva. The **nictitating membrane** (nihck-tih-tāt-ihng mehm-brān) is the conjunctival fold attached at the medial canthus that moves across the cornea when the eyelids close; it also is called the **third eyelid** or **nictitans** (nihck-tih-tahnz) or **haws** (hawz) (Figure 14-3).

- **lacrimal apparatus** (lahck-rih-mahl ahp-ah-raht-tuhs) = structures that produce, store, and remove tears. **Lacrimation** (lahck-rih-mā-shuhn) is the condition of normal tear secretion. The combining forms **lacrim/o** and **dacry/o** mean teardrop, tear duct, or lacrimal duct. The lacrimal glands are glands that secrete tears. The **lacrimal canaliculi** (kahn-ah-lihck-yoo-li) are the ducts at the medial canthus that collect tears and drain them into the lacrimal sac. The **lacrimal sac**, or **dacryocyst** (dahck-rē-ō-sihst), is the enlargement that collects tears at the upper portion of the tear duct.

The **nasolacrimal** (nā-sō-lahck-rih-mahl) **duct** is the passageway that drains tears into the nose. The **dorsal punctum** (dōr-sahl puhnck-tuhm) is the small spot near the upper medial canthus where the nasolacrimal duct begins; the **ventral punctum** (vehn-trahl puhnck-tuhm) is the small spot near the lower medial canthus where the nasolacrimal duct begins. A **punctum** (puhnck-tuhm) is a point or small spot.

## Eyeball

The **eyeball**, or **globe**, is a sphere with multilayered walls. These walls are the sclera, choroid, and retina. Another term for the eyeball is **orb** (ōrb) (Figure 14-4).

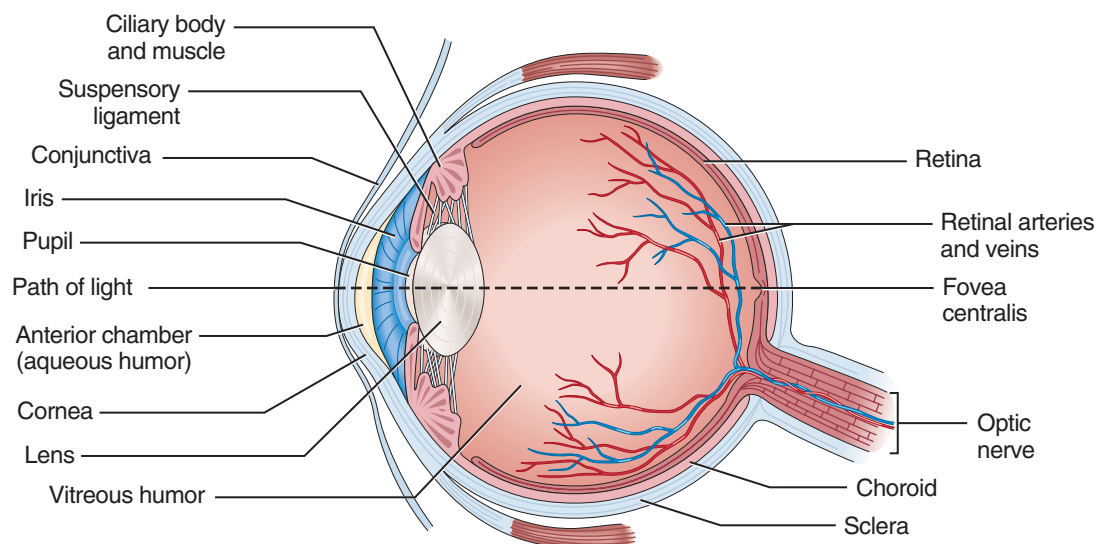
## Sclera

The **sclera** (sklehr-ah) is the fibrous outer layer of the eye that maintains the shape of the eye. It is sometimes called the **white of the eye**. The combining form **scler/o** means sclera, or hard.

The anterior portion of the sclera is transparent and is called the **cornea** (kōr-nē-ah). The cornea provides most of the focusing power of the eye. The combining forms **corne/o** and **kerat/o** mean cornea. **Descemet's membrane** (dehs-eh-māz mehm-brān) is the innermost or deepest layer of the cornea.

## Choroid

The **choroid** (kō-royd) is the opaque middle layer of the eyeball that contains blood vessels and supplies blood for the entire eye. **Opaque** (ō-pāk) means that light cannot pass through. The **tapetum lucidum** (tah-pē-duhm loo-sehd-uhm) is the brightly colored iridescent reflecting tissue layer of the choroid of most species. The tapetum lucidum also is called **choroid tapetum**. The **tapetum nigrum** (tah-pē-duhm nī-gruhm) is the black pigmented tissue layer of the choroid in some species. *Tapetum* is the medical term for a layer of cells. The combining



**Figure 14-4** Cross section of the eyeball.

form **choroid/o** means choroid. Associated with the choroid are the iris, pupil, lens, and ciliary muscles. The **iris** (i-rihs) is the pigmented muscular diaphragm of the choroid that surrounds the pupil. The iris is composed of muscle fiber rings that contract or relax to change the size of the pupil and thus regulate the amount of light entering the lens. The **corpora nigra** (kōr-pōr-ah nī-grah) is the black pigmentation at the edge of the iris in equine and ruminants. The combining forms **ir/i**, **ir/o**, **irid/o**, and **irit/o** refer to the iris of the eye.

The **pupil** (pū-pihl) is the circular opening in the center of the iris. The combining forms **pupill/o** and **core/o** mean pupil. Muscles in the iris control the amount of light entering the pupil. To decrease the amount of light entering the eye, the iris muscles contract and make the opening smaller. Making the opening smaller is called **constriction**; when used in reference to pupillary constriction, it is called **miosis** (mī-ō-sihs). To increase the amount of light entering the eye, the iris muscles relax and make the opening larger. Making the opening larger is called **dilation**; when used in reference to pupillary dilation, it is called **mydriasis** (mih-drī-ah-sihs).

The **lens** is the clear, flexible, curved capsule located behind the iris and pupil. The shape of the lens is altered by the ciliary muscles. Adjusting the shape of the lens to improve near or far vision is known as accommodation. The varying shape of the lens affects the angle at which light rays enter the retina. The combining form **phac/o** means lens of the eye.

The **ciliary** (sihl-ē-ər-ē) **body** is the thickened extension of the choroid that assists in accommodation or adjustment of the lens. The **ciliary muscles**, located in the ciliary body, are muscles that adjust the shape and thickness of the lens. These adjustments make it possible for the lens to refine the focus of light rays on the retina.



### Working together

Parts of the sclera and choroid sometimes are referred to together. Examples of these terms are as follows:

- **iridocorneal** (ihr-ihd-ō-kōr-nē-ahl) = pertaining to the iris and cornea.
- **uvea** (yoo-vē-ah) = term used to describe the iris, ciliary body, and choroid.
- **limbus** (lihm-buhs) = term used for the corneoscleral junction.

## Retina

The **retina** (reht-ih-nah) is the nervous tissue layer of the eye that receives images. The retina is located in the posterior chamber of the eye. The combining form **retin/o** means retina.

The retina contains specialized cells called rods and cones that convert visual images to nerve impulses that travel from the eye to the brain via the optic nerve. **Rods** are specialized cells of the retina that react to light, and **cones** are specialized cells of the retina that react to color and fine detail.

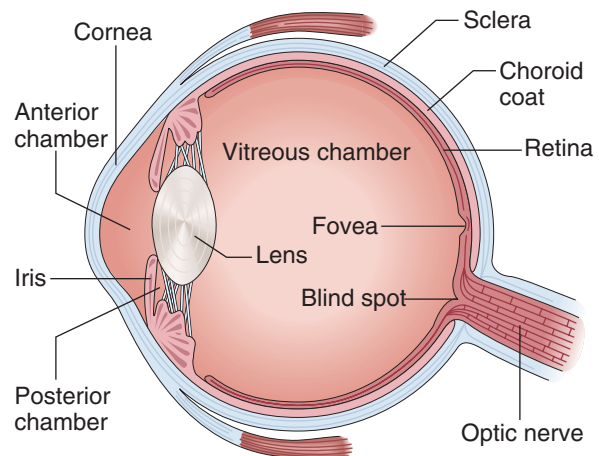
The **optic** (ohp-tihck) **disk** is the region of the eye where nerve endings of the retina gather to form the optic nerve. It also is called the **blind spot** because it does not contain any rods or cones.

The **macula lutea** (mahck-yoo-lah lū-tē-ah) is a centrally depressed, clearly defined yellow area in the center of the retina. The macula lutea surrounds a small depression called the fovea centralis. The **fovea centralis** (fō-vē-ah sehn-trah-lihs) contains the greatest concentration of cones in the retina. The combining form **macul/o** means spot; **lute/o** is the combining form for yellow; the combining form for pit is **fove/o**. The term *macula* is used in other parts of the body, such as the ear and kidney.

## Eye Chambers

The eye is divided into parts to make identification and location of structures easier. The **anterior segment** (also known as the aqueous chamber) is the cranial one-third of the eyeball and is divided into anterior and posterior chambers. The **anterior chamber** is the eye cavity located between the caudal surface of the cornea and the cranial surface of the iris. The **posterior chamber** is the eye cavity located between the caudal surface of the iris and the cranial surface of the lens.

The anterior and posterior chambers of the eye are filled with a watery fluid called **aqueous humor** (ah-kwē-uhs hū-mər).



**Figure 14-5** Chambers of the eye. The anterior and posterior chambers of the eye contain aqueous humor. The vitreous chamber of the eye contains vitreous humor.

Aqueous humor is the anterior segment fluid that nourishes the intraocular structures. The combining form **aque/o** means water. Humor is any clear body fluid.

The caudal two-thirds of the eyeball is called the **vitreous chamber**. **Vitreous humor** (viht-rē-uhs hū-mər), or vitreous, is the soft, clear, jellylike mass that fills the vitreous chamber. The combining form **vitre/o** means glassy (Figure 14–5).

## VISION

Vision occurs when light rays enter the eye through the cornea, pass through the lens, and travel to the retina. The image is focused on the retina and is then transmitted to the optic nerve. Stimulations are transmitted from the optic nerve, to the optic chiasm, to the midbrain, and to the visual cortex of the occipital lobe of the cerebrum.

**Accommodation** (ah-kohm-ō-dā-shuhn) is the process of eye adjustments for seeing objects at various distances. These adjustments are accomplished through changes in lens shape.

**Refraction** (rē-frahck-shuhn) is the process of the lens bending the light rays to help them focus on the retina. Refraction also is called **focusing**.

**Convergence** (kohn-vər-jehns) is simultaneous inward movement of both eyes. Convergence usually occurs in an effort to maintain single binocular vision as an object approaches.

**Acuity** (ah-kū-ih-tē) means sharpness or acuteness, usually used in reference to vision.

## TEST ME: EYES

Diagnostic tests performed on the eyes include the following:

- **conjunctival** (kohn-juhnick-tī-vahl) **scrape** = diagnostic test using an instrument to peel cells from the conjunctiva so that they can be viewed microscopically.
- **electroretinography** (ē-lehck-trō-reh-tihn-ohg-rah-fē) = procedure of recording the electrical activity of the retina. An **electroretinogram** (ē-lehck-trō-reh-tihn-ō-grahm) is the record of electrical activity of the retina; abbreviated ERG.
- **fluorescein** (fluhr-ō-sēn) **dye stain** = diagnostic test to detect corneal injury by placing dye on the surface of the cornea (Figure 14–6).
- **goniometry** (gō-nē-ah-meh-trē) = procedure to measure the drainage angle of the eye. **Gon/i** is the combining form for angle or seed.
- **menace response** (mehn-ahs rē-spohns) = diagnostic test to detect vision in which movement is made toward the animal to test whether it will see movement and try to close its eyelids.



**Figure 14–6** Fluorescein dye stain is used to detect whether corneal defects are present in this dog. (Courtesy of Terri Raffel, CVT.)



**Figure 14–7** An ophthalmoscope is used to examine the internal structures of the eye.

- **ophthalmoscope** (ohp-thahl-mō-skōp) = instrument used for ophthalmoscopy (Figure 14–7).
- **ophthalmoscopy** (ohp-thahl-mohs-kō-pē) = procedure used to examine the interior eye structures; may be direct or indirect (Figure 14–8).
- **palpebral** (pahl-pē-brahl) **reflex** = diagnostic test in which the eye should blink in response to touch to the medial canthus of the eye. This test is used to make neurologic assessment of cranial nerves V and VII and to assess depth of anesthesia.
- **pupillary light reflex** (pū-puhl-ār-ē lit rē-flehcks) = response of pupil to light; abbreviated PLR. When light is shown in the pupil, constriction should take place.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 14-8** Ophthalmoscopy. Two methods of ophthalmoscopy are (a) direct and (b) indirect. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC.)

- **Schirmer** (shər-mər) **tear test** = diagnostic test using a graded paper strip to measure tear production (Figure 14-9).
- **slit lamp examination** = visual testing of the cornea, lens, fluids, and membranes of the interior of the eye using a narrow beam of light.
- **tonometry** (tō-nohm-eh-trē) = procedure using an instrument to measure intraocular pressure indirectly.



**Figure 14-9** The Schirmer tear test is used to measure tear production in this dog. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC.)

In a description of the eyes, the abbreviations *OD*, *OS*, and *OU* are used. *OD* means right eye (oculus dexter), *OS* means left eye (oculus sinister), and *OU* means both eyes (oculus uterque). Similarly *AD*, *AS*, and *AU* are used to describe the right, left, and both ears, respectively. *A* stands for auris.

Examination of the eyes may entail treatment with chemicals. Anesthetics may be used so that tonometers can be placed on the cornea and intraocular pressure can be measured. Retinal examination may be aided with the use of cycloplegics or mydriatics. **Cycloplegics** (sī-klō-plē-jihcks) cause paralysis of the ciliary muscle that may aid in dilation of the pupil and ease the pain of ciliary muscle spasms. **Mydriatics** (mihd-rē-ah-tihcks) are agents that dilate the pupil.

**Intraocular pressure** is determined by the resistance of the eyeball to indentation by an applied force. Tonometry can be applanation, in which the instrument and weights are placed on the cornea to measure resistance, or pneumatic, in which a puff of air is blown against the cornea to flatten it slightly to measure resistance. A **Schiotz** (shē-ohtz) **tonometer** is an example of an applanation tonometer (Figure 14-10).



(a)



(b)

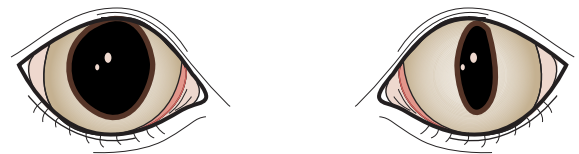
**Figure 14-10** Detection of intraocular pressure by tonometry. (a) A Schiotz tonometer, an example of an applanation tonometer, measures corneal resistance to an applied force. (b) A pneumatic tonometer detects intraocular pressure by measuring corneal resistance to a puff of air. (Courtesy of Kelly Gilligan, DVM.)

## PATHOLOGY: EYES

Pathologic conditions of the eyes include the following:

- **amblyopia** (ahm-blē-ō-pē-ah) = dimness or loss of sight without detectable eye disease. The combining form **ambly/o** means dim.
- **anisocoria** (ahn-ih-sō-kō-rē-ah) = condition of unequal pupil size. **Anis/o** is the combining form meaning unequal (**an-** is not; **iso-** is equal) (Figure 14-11).
- **anophthalmos** (ahn-ohp-thahl-mōs) = without development of one or both eyes.
- **aphakia** (ah-fahk-ē-ah) = absence of the lens.
- **blepharitis** (blehf-ah-rī-tihs) = inflammation of the eyelid.
- **blepharoptosis** (blehf-ah-rō-tō-sihs) = drooping of the upper eyelid.

- **blepharospasm** (blehf-rō-spahzm) = rapid, involuntary contractions of the eyelid.
- **blindness** (blind-nehs) = inability to see.
- **buphthalmos** (boof-thahl-muhs) = abnormal enlargement of the eye.
- **cataract** (kaht-ah-rahckt) = cloudiness or opacity of the lens (Figure 14-12).
- **chalazion** (kah-lā-zē-ohn) = localized swelling of the eyelid resulting from the obstruction of a sebaceous gland of the eyelid.
- **conjunctivitis** (kohn-juhnck-tih-vī-tihs) = inflammation of the conjunctiva.
- **corneal ulceration** (kōr-nē-ahl uhl-sihr-ah-shuhn) = surface depression on the cornea (Figure 14-13).
- **cyclopia** (sī-klō-pē-ah) = congenital anomaly characterized by a single orbit.
- **dacryoadenitis** (dahck-rē-ō-ahd-ehn-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the lacrimal gland.
- **dacryocystitis** (dahck-rē-ō-sihs-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the lacrimal sac and abnormal tear drainage.
- **diplopia** (dih-plō-pē-ah) = double vision. **Dipl/o** is the combining form for double; **-opia** is the suffix meaning vision.
- **distichiasis** (dihs-tē-kē-ī-ah-sihs) = abnormal condition of a double row of eyelashes that usually result in conjunctival injury. **Distichia** (dihs-tēck-ē-ah) is a double row of eyelashes.



**Figure 14-11** Anisocoria.



**Figure 14-12** Cataract in a dog. (Courtesy of Mark Jackson, DVM, PhD.)



**Figure 14-13** Corneal ulceration in a cat.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 14-14** (a) Entropion in a lamb. (b) Note the severe conjunctivitis associated with entropion. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

- **ectropion** (ehck-trō-pē-ohn) = eversion, or turning outward, of the eyelid.
- **entropion** (ehn-trō-pē-ohn) = inversion, or turning inward, of the eyelid (Figure 14–14).
- **epiphora** (ē-pihf-ōr-ah) = excessive tear production.
- **episcleritis** (ehp-ih-sklehr-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the tissue of the cornea.
- **exophthalmos** (ehcks-ohp-thahl-mōs) = abnormal protrusion of the eyeball.
- **floaters** (flō-tərz) = particles that cast shadows on the retina suspended in the vitreous fluid; also called **vitreous floaters**.
- **glaucoma** (glaw-kō-mah) = group of disorders resulting from elevated intraocular pressure (Figure 14–15).
- **hordeolum** (hōr-dē-ō-luhm) = infection of one or more glands of the eyelid; also called a **stye** (sti).
- **hypertropia** (hī-pər-trō-pē-ah) = deviation of one eye upward.
- **hypopyon** (hī-pō-pē-ohn) = pus in the anterior chamber of the eye.
- **hypotropia** (hī-pō-trō-pē-ah) = deviation of one eye downward.
- **iritis** (ī-rī-tihs) = inflammation of the iris.
- **keratitis** (kehr-ah-tī-tihs) = inflammation of the cornea (Figure 14–16).
- **keratoconjunctivitis** (kehr-ah-tō-kohn-juhntsih-vī-tihs) = inflammation of the cornea and conjunctiva.
- **macular degeneration** (mahck-yoo-lahr dē-jehn-ər-ā-shuhn) = condition of central vision loss.
- **microphthalmia** (mī-kroh-thahl-mē-ah) = abnormally small eyes; also called **microphthalmos** (mī-kroh-thahl-mōs).
- **monochromatism** (mohn-ō-krō-mah-tihzm) = lack of ability to distinguish colors; also called **color blindness**.



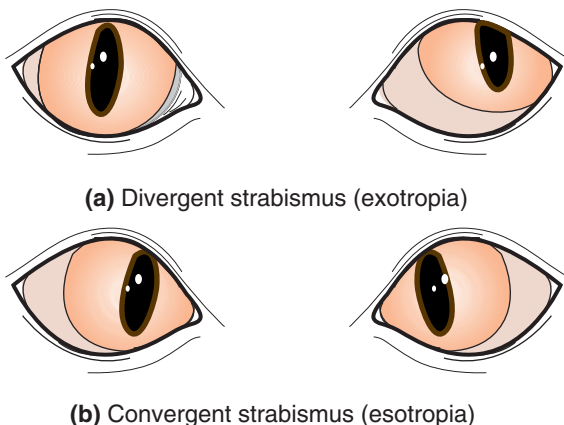
**Figure 14-15** Glaucoma in a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 14-16** Ulcerative keratitis in a cat.

**Mono-** is the prefix meaning one; **chrom/o** is the combining form for color.

- **nuclear sclerosis** (nū-klē-ahr sklehr-ō-sihs) = drying out of the lens with age.
- **nyctalopia** (nihck-tah-lō-pē-ah) = condition of inability or difficulty seeing at night; also called **night blindness**.
- **nystagmus** (nī-stahg-muhs) = involuntary, constant, rhythmic movement of the eye.
- **ophthalmoplegia** (ohp-thahl-mō-plē-jē-ah) = paralysis of eye muscles.
- **panophthalmitis** (pahp-ohp-thahl-mih-tī-tihs) = inflammation of all eye structures.
- **papilledema** (pahp-ehl-eh-dē-mah) = swelling of the optic disk.
- **photophobia** (fō-tō-fō-bē-ah) = fear or intolerance of light.
- **proptosis** (prohp-tō-sihs) = displacement of the eye from the orbit.
- **retinal detachment** (reht-ih-nahl dē-tahch-mehnt) = separation of the nervous layer of the eye from the choroid; also called **detached retina**.
- **retinopathy** (reht-ih-nohp-ah-thē) = any disorder of the retina.
- **scleral injection** (skleh-rah l ihh-jehck-shuhn) = dilation of blood vessels into the sclera.



**Figure 14-17** Strabismus. (a) Divergent strabismus (exotropia). (b) Convergent strabismus (esotropia).

- **scleritis** (skleh-rī-tihs) = inflammation of the sclera.
- **strabismus** (strah-bihz-muhs) = disorder in which the eyes are not directed in a parallel manner; deviation of one or both eyes (Figure 14-17). **Convergent strabismus** (kohn-vər-jehnt strah-bihz-muhs) is deviation of the eyes toward each other; also known as **crossed eyes** and **esotropia** (ehs-ō-trō-pē-ah). The suffix **-tropia** means turning; the prefix **eso-** means inward. **Divergent strabismus** (dī-vər-jehnt strah-bihz-muhs) is deviation of the eyes away from each other; also called **exotropia** (ehck-sō-trō-pē-ah). The prefix **exo-** means outward.
- **synechia** (sī-nēk-ē-ah) = adhesion that binds the iris to an adjacent structure; plural is **synechiae** (sī-nēk-ē-ā).
- **uveitis** (yoo-vē-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the uvea.

## PROCEDURES: EYES

Procedures performed on the eyes include the following:

- **blepharectomy** (blehf-ār-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of all or part of the eyelid.
- **blepharoplasty** (blehf-ār-rō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the eyelid.
- **blepharorrhaphy** (blehf-ār-ōr-rah-fē) = suturing together of the eyelids; also called **tarsorrhaphy** (tahr-soh-rah-fē).
- **blepharotomy** (blehf-ār-ah-tō-mē) = incision of the eyelid; also called **tarsotomy** (tahr-soh-tō-mē).
- **canthectomy** (kahn-thehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the corner of the eyelid.
- **canthoplasty** (kahn-thō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the palpebral fissure.
- **canthotomy** (kahn-thoh-tō-mē) = incision into the corner of the eyelid.
- **conjunctivoplasty** (kohn-juhnc-tī-vō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the conjunctiva.
- **dacryocystectomy** (dahck-rē-ō-sihs-tehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the lacrimal sac.
- **dacryocystotomy** (dahck-rē-ō-sihs-tah-tō-mē) = incision into the lacrimal sac.
- **enucleation** (ē-nū-klē-ā-shuhn) = removal of the eyeball (Figure 14-18).
- **extracapsular extraction** (ehcks-trah-kahp-soo-lahr ehcks-trahck-shuhn) = removal of a cataract that leaves the posterior lens capsule intact.
- **goniotomy** (gō-nē-ah-tō-mē) = incision into the anterior chamber angle for treatment of glaucoma.
- **intracapsular extraction** (ihh-trah-kahp-soo-lahr ehcks-trahck-shuhn) = cataract removal that includes the surrounding capsule.
- **iridectomy** (ihh-ih-dehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a portion of the iris.
- **keratectomy** (kehr-ah-tehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of part of the cornea.



**Figure 14–18** Enucleation. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

- **keratocentesis** (kehr-ah-tō-sehn-tē-sihs) = puncture of the cornea to allow aspiration of aqueous humor.
- **keratoplasty** (kehr-ah-tō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the cornea (may include corneal transplant).
- **keratotomy** (kehr-ah-toh-tō-mē) = incision into the cornea.
- **lacromotomy** (lahck-rō-moh-tō-mē) = incision into the lacrimal gland or duct.
- **lensectomy** (lehn-sehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a lens (usually performed on cataracts).
- **tarsectomy** (tahr-sehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of all or part of the tarsal plate of the third eyelid.
- **tarsorrhaphy** (tahr-sōr-ah-fē) = suturing together of the eyelids.

## FUNCTIONS OF THE EAR

The **ear** is the sensory organ that enables hearing and helps to maintain balance. The combining forms **audit/o**, **aud/i**, and **ot/o** mean ear. **Acoust/o** and **acous/o** are combining forms for sound or hearing. Therefore, the term **auditory** pertains to the ear, and **acoustic** pertains to sound.

## STRUCTURES OF THE EAR

The ear is divided into the outer, middle, and inner portions. Each part has its own unique structures (Figure 14–19).

### Outer or External Ear

The **pinna** (pihn-ah) is the external portion of the ear that catches sound waves and transmits them to the external auditory canal. The pinna also is known as the **auricle** (awr-ihck-kuhl). The combining form **pinn/i** means external ear. The combining forms **aur/i** and **aur/o** mean external ear but are commonly used simply to mean ear.

The **external auditory canal** is the tube that transmits sound from the pinna to the tympanic membrane. The external auditory canal also is known as the **external auditory meatus**. Glands that line the external auditory canal secrete **cerumen** (seh-roo-mehn), which is commonly known as **earwax**.

### Middle Ear

The middle ear begins with the **eardrum**. The medical term for eardrum is **tympanic membrane** (tihm-pahn-ihck mehm-brān). The tympanic membrane is the tissue that separates the external ear from the middle ear. When sound waves reach the tympanic membrane, it transmits sounds to the ossicles. The combining forms **tympan/o** and **myring/o** mean eardrum.

The **auditory ossicles** (aw-dih-tōr-ē ohs-ih-kulz) are three little bones of the middle ear that transmit sound vibrations. The three bones are as follows:

- **malleus** (mahl-ē-uhs) = auditory ossicle known as the hammer.
- **incus** (ihng-kuhs) = auditory ossicle known as the anvil.
- **stapes** (stā-pēz) = auditory ossicle known as the stirrup.

The **eustachian tube** (yoo-stā-shuhn toob) follows the auditory ossicles. The eustachian tube, or **auditory tube**, is the narrow duct that leads from the middle ear to the nasopharynx. It helps equalize air pressure in the middle ear with that of the atmosphere.

The **oval window** (ō-vahl wihn-dō), located at the base of the stapes, is the membrane that separates the middle and inner ear.

The **round window** (rownd wihn-dō) is the membrane that receives sound waves through fluid after they have passed through the cochlea.

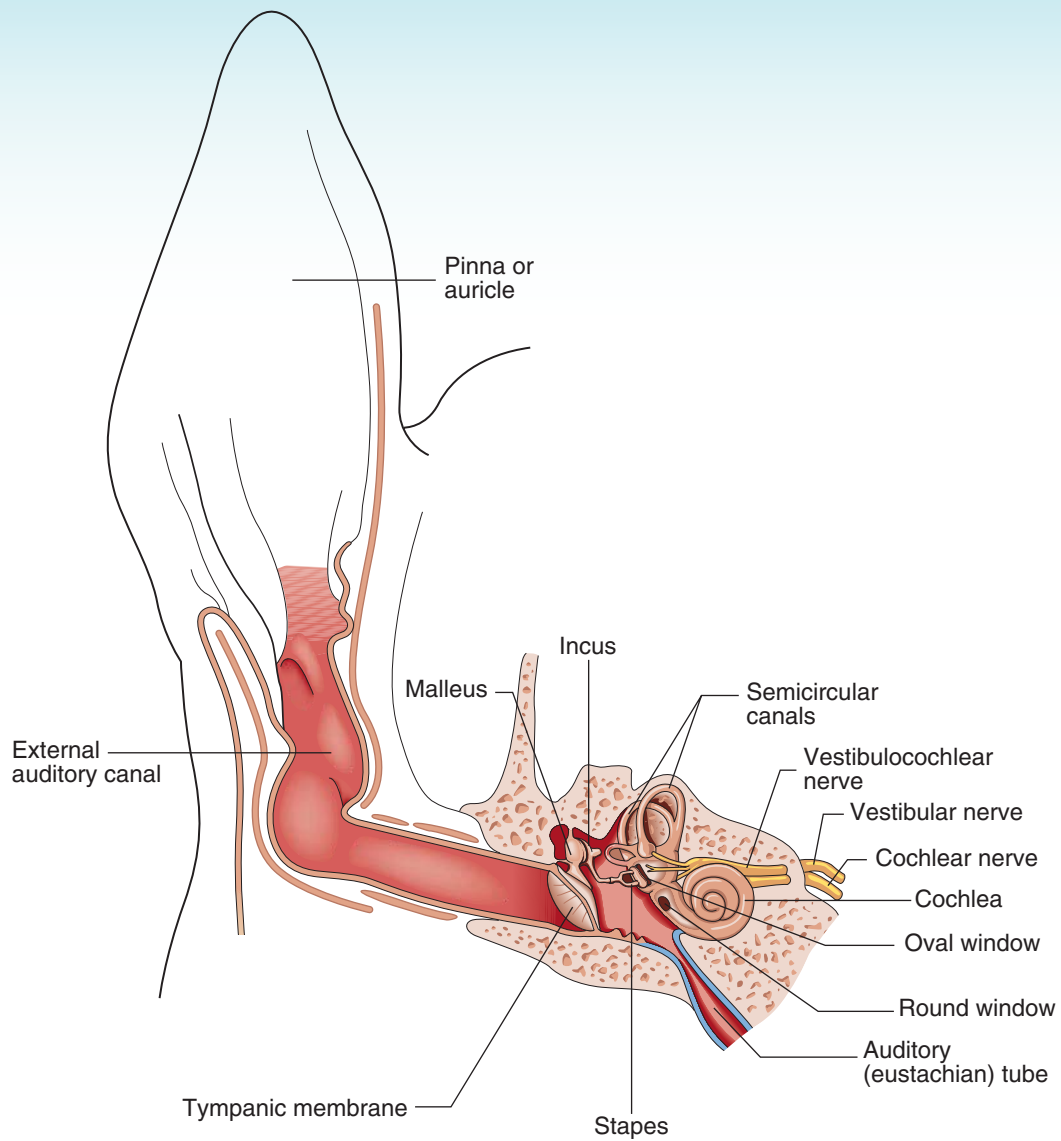
The **tympanic bulla** (tihm-pahn-ihck buhl-ah) is the osseous chamber at the base of the skull. **Bulla** (buhl-ah) is the medical term for large vesicle.

### Inner Ear

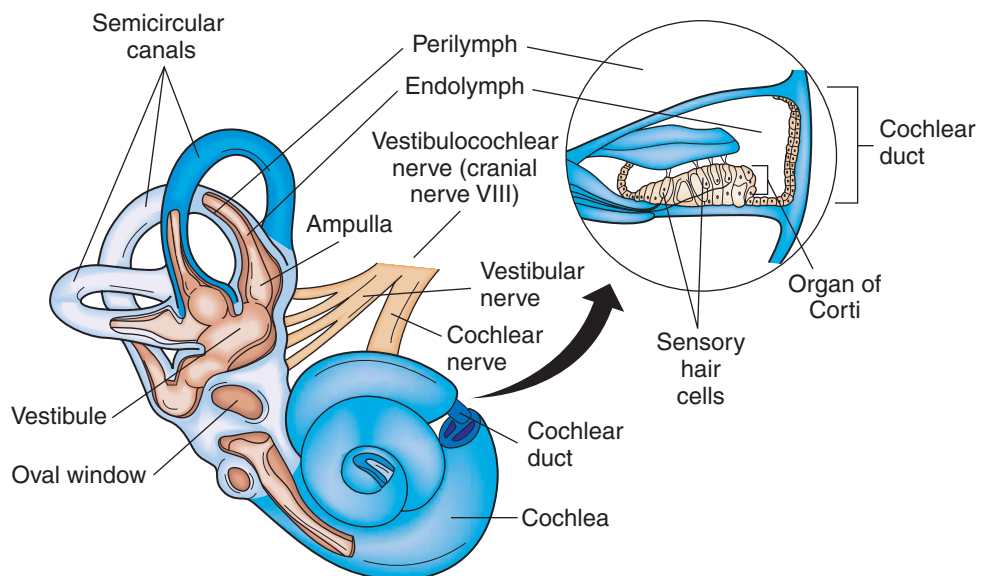
The inner ear contains sensory receptors for hearing and balance (Figure 14–20). The inner ear consists of three spaces in the temporal bone assembled in the **bony labyrinth** (lahb-ih-rihnh). The combining form **labyrinth/o** means maze, labyrinth, and inner ear. The bony labyrinth is filled with a waterlike fluid called **perilymph** (pehr-eh-lihmf). A membranous sac is suspended in the perilymph and follows the shape of the bony labyrinth. This membranous labyrinth is filled with a thicker fluid called **endolymph** (ehn-dō-lihmf).

The bony labyrinth is divided into three parts:

- **vestibule** = located adjacent to the oval window and between the semicircular canals and cochlea. The vestibule (and semicircular canals) contain specialized mechanoreceptors for balance and position.



**Figure 14-19** Cross section of ear structures.



**Figure 14-20** The inner ear. The bony labyrinth (semicircular canals, vestibule, and cochlea) is the hard outer wall of the entire inner ear. The membranous labyrinth is located in the bony labyrinth. The membranous labyrinth is surrounded by perilymph and is filled with endolymph.

- **semicircular canals** = located adjacent to the vestibule. The semicircular canals are oriented at right angles to each other. The three canals are the **vestibular**, **tympanic**, and **cochlear**. Each canal has a dilated area called the **ampulla** that contains sensory cells with hairlike extensions. These sensory cells are suspended in endolymph, and when the head moves, the hairlike extensions bend. This bending generates nerve impulses for the regulation of position.
- **cochlea** (kōck-lē-ah) = spiral-shaped passage that leads from the oval window to the inner ear. The combining form **cochle/o** means snail or spiral. The following tube and organ are located in the cochlea:
  - **cochlear duct** (kōck-lē-ahr duhckt) = membranous tube in the bony cochlea that is filled with endolymph. Endolymph vibrates when sound waves strike it.
  - **organ of Corti** (ōr-gahn ohf kōr-tē) = spiral organ of hearing located in the cochlea that receives and relays vibrations. Specialized cells in the organ of Corti generate nerve impulses when they are bent by the movement

of endolymph. Nerve impulses are relayed to the auditory nerve fibers that transmit them to the cerebral cortex.

## MECHANISM OF HEARING

Sound waves enter the ear through the pinna, travel through the external auditory canal, and strike the tympanic membrane. This is called **air conduction**. As the tympanic membrane vibrates, it moves the ossicles. The ossicles conduct the sound waves through the middle ear. This is called **bone conduction**. Sound vibrations reach the inner ear via the round window. The structures of the inner ear respond to sound waves that displace fluid in the inner ear. Stimulation of hair cells in the organ of Corti initiates a nerve impulse that is transmitted to the vestibulocochlear nerve. This nerve impulse is then relayed to the brain. This is called **sensorineural conduction** (Figure 14–21).

## MECHANISM OF EQUILIBRIUM

In addition to the structures listed previously, the ear also has structures that maintain equilibrium. **Equilibrium** (ē-kwihl-ih-brē-uhm) is the state of balance. The sense of equilibrium is a combination of static equilibrium (maintaining the position of the head relative to gravity) and dynamic equilibrium (maintaining balance in response to rotational or angular movement).

Static equilibrium is controlled by organs in the vestibule of the inner ear. The membranous labyrinth inside the vestibule has a **saccul** (sahck-yoo-uhl) and **utricle** (yoo-trih-kuhl), which are small, hairlike sacs. The saccul and utricle contain a **macula** (mahck-yoo-lah), an organ consisting of hair cells covered by a gelatinous mass containing **otoliths** (ō-tō-lithz), which are small stones. When the head is in an upright position, the hairs are straight. When the head tilts or bends, the otoliths and gelatinous mass move in response to gravity (Figure 14–22). As the gelatinous mass moves, it bends some of the hairs on the receptor cells which in turn initiates an impulse that stimulates the vestibular branch of cranial nerve VIII. The impulse travels from the vestibular branch of cranial nerve VIII to the brain, which interprets the information and sends motor impulses to the appropriate muscles to maintain balance.

Dynamic equilibrium is controlled by the semicircular canals. Three semicircular canals in the inner ear lie in planes at right angles to each other. At the base of each canal is a swelling called the **ampulla**, which contains sensory organs called **cristae** (krihs-tā). Each crista contains sensory hair cells and a gelatinous mass. When the head turns rapidly, the semicircular canals move with the head but the endolymph within the membrane of the semicircular canals remains stationary. The fluid in the semicircular canals pushes against the gelatinous

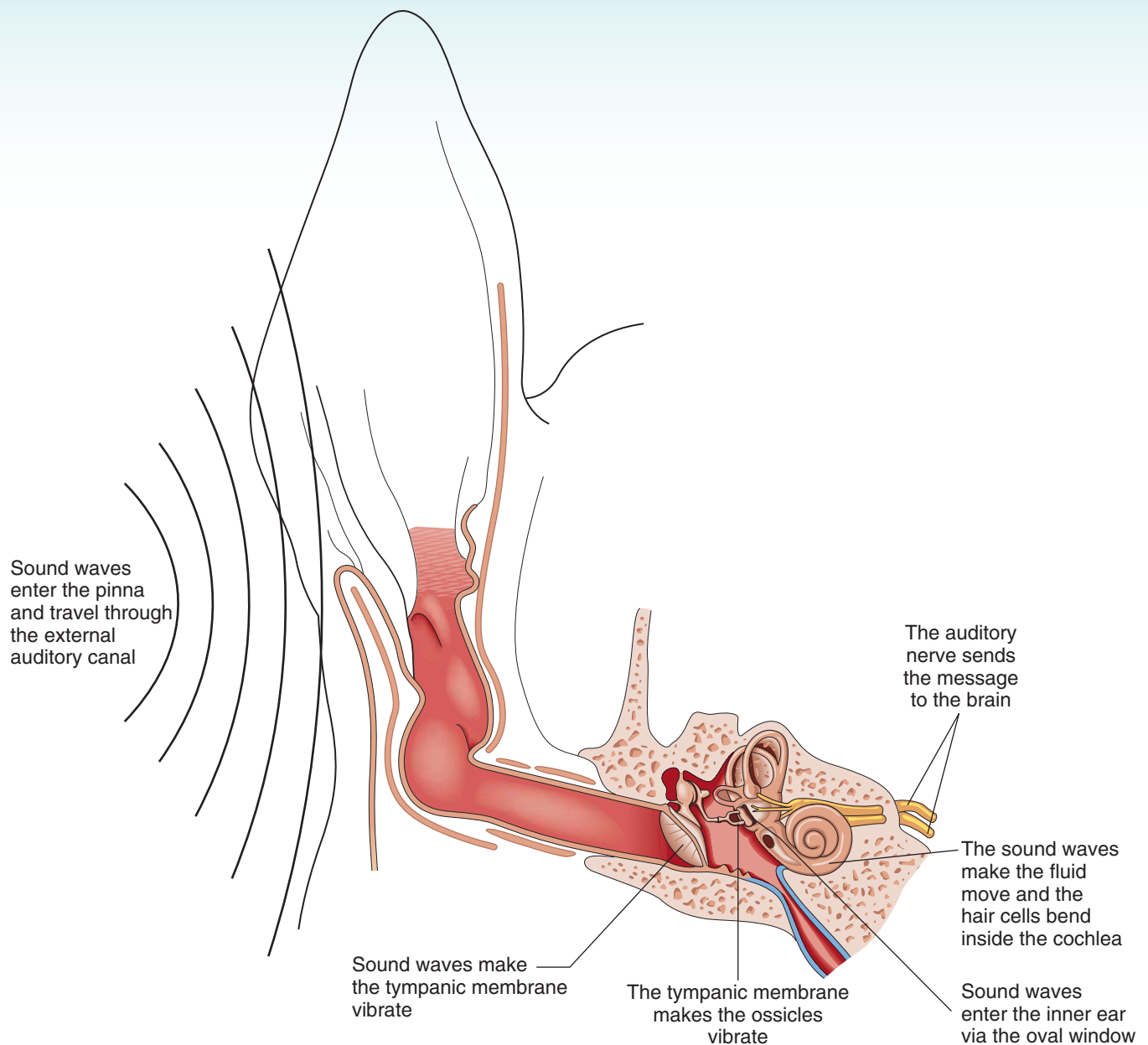


### Do You Hear What I Hear?

Sound waves enter the pinna, travel through the external auditory canal, and strike the tympanic membrane. } **air conduction**

The tympanic membrane vibrates.  
Ossicles conduct sound waves through the middle ear. } **bone conduction**

Sound vibrations enter the inner ear via the oval window.  
Structures of the inner ear respond to sound waves.  
Sound waves initiate nerve impulses that are relayed to the brain. } **sensorineural conduction**



**Figure 14-21** Mechanism of hearing.

mass which bends some of the hairs on the hair cells. This triggers a sensory impulse to the vestibular branch of cranial nerve VIII. The impulse travels from the vestibular branch of cranial nerve VIII to the brain, which interprets the information and sends appropriate responses to maintain balance.

## TEST ME: EARS

Diagnostic procedures performed on the ear include the following:

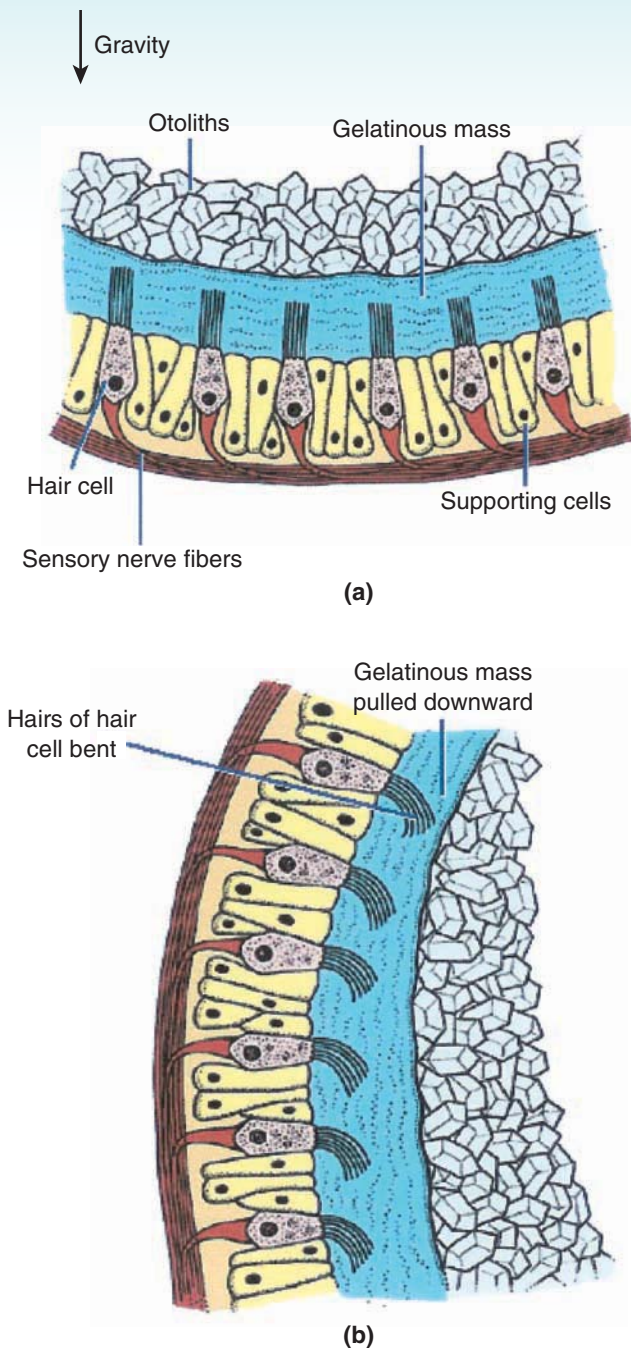
- **otoscopy** (ō-tohs-kō-pē) = procedure used to examine the ear for parasites, irritation to the ear lining, discharge, and the integrity of the tympanic membrane.

**Otoscope** (ō-tō-skōp) is the instrument used for otoscopy (Figure 14-23).

## PATHOLOGY: EARS

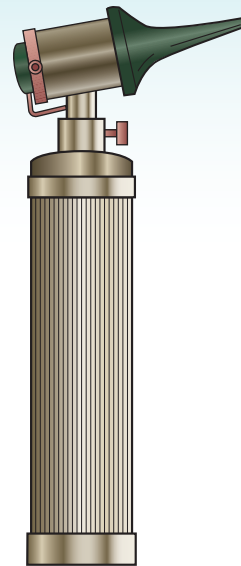
Pathologic conditions of the ears include the following:

- **aural hematoma** (awr-ahl hē-mah-tō-mah) = collection or mass of blood on the outer ear. **Aural** means pertaining to the ear (external ear) (Figure 14-24).
- **deafness** (dehf-nehs) = complete or partial hearing loss.
- **myringitis** (mih-r-ih-n-jī-tihs) = inflammation of the eardrum.
- **otalgia** (ō-tahl-jē-ah) = ear pain.



**Figure 14-22** The role of the macula in maintaining static equilibrium. (a) When an animal's head is upright, gravity causes otoliths to press on hair cells, which initiate impulses to the brain. (b) When an animal's head is bent the gelatinous mass in the macula moves and bends the hair cells. This sends an impulse to the vestibular branch of cranial nerve VIII which in turn signals the brain to send motor impulses to the appropriate muscles to maintain balance.

- **otitis** (ō-tī-tihz) = inflammation of the ear; usually has a second term that describes the location: **otitis externa** (ō-tī-tihz ehkks-tər-nah) = inflammation of the outer ear; **otitis media** (ō-tī-tihz mē-dē-ah) = inflammation of



**Figure 14-23** Otoscope.



**Figure 14-24** Aural hematoma in a cat.



**Figure 14-25** Otodectes mite.



### What is in a name?

The names of parasites may seem long and cumbersome at first glance. However, many times the name of something can tell a great deal about what it does or where it lives. The scientific name of the common ear mite of dogs and cats is *Otodectes cynotis*. From the combining form **ot/o** in the name, it can be concluded that *Otodectes* are parasites that infiltrate the ear. **Dectes** means biter; therefore, *Otodectes* are biting parasites found in the ear (Figure 14–25).

the middle ear; **otitis interna** (ō-tī-tihz ihn-tər-nah) = inflammation of the inner ear.

- **otomycosis** (ō-tō-mī-kō-sihz) = fungal infection of the ear.
- **otopathy** (ō-tohp-ah-thē) = disease of the ear.
- **otopyorrhea** (ō-tō-pī-ō-rē-ah) = pus discharge from the ear.
- **otorrhea** (ō-tō-rē-ah) = ear discharge.

- **panotitis** (pah-n-ō-tī-tihz) = inflammation of all ear parts.
- **vertigo** (vər-tih-gō) = sense of dizziness.

## PROCEDURES: EARS

Procedures performed on the ears include the following:

- **ablation** (ah-blā-shuhn) = removal of a part (Figure 14–26).
- **myringectomy** (mihr-ihh-jehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of all or part of the eardrum; also called tympanectomy (tihm-pahn-ehck-tō-mē).
- **otoplasty** (ō-tō-plahs-tē) = surgical repair of the ear.



**Figure 14–26** Ear ablation surgery in a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The state of balance is
  - a. vertigo
  - b. hemostasis
  - c. vestibular
  - d. equilibrium
2. The outer or external ear is separated from the middle ear by the
  - a. oval window
  - b. round window
  - c. tympanic membrane
  - d. pinna
3. Another term for earwax is
  - a. pinna
  - b. auricle
  - c. cerumen
  - d. corti
4. The fibrous tissue that maintains the shape of the eye is the
  - a. choroid
  - b. sclera
  - c. white of the eye
  - d. b and c

5. The term for corner of the eye is
  - a. canthus
  - b. cilia
  - c. cerumen
  - d. cornus
6. The colored muscular layer of the eye that surrounds the pupil is the
  - a. cornea
  - b. choroid
  - c. lens
  - d. iris
7. Involuntary, constant, rhythmic movement of the eyeball is called
  - a. ectropion
  - b. nystagmus
  - c. strabismus
  - d. entropion
8. A group of eye disorders resulting from increased intra-ocular pressure is
  - a. ophthalmopathy
  - b. glaucoma
  - c. floaters
  - d. hypertension
9. Opacity of the lens is called
  - a. opaque
  - b. turgid
  - c. cataract
  - d. diplopia
10. The process of the lens bending the light ray to help focus the rays on the retina is called
  - a. convergence
  - b. refraction
  - c. humo
  - d. fovea
11. The fibrous layer of clear tissue that extends over the anterior portion of the eye and is continuous with the white of the eye is the
  - a. ciliary body
  - b. pupil
  - c. cornea
  - d. iris
12. The region of the eye where nerve endings of the retina gather to form the optic nerve is called the
  - a. optic disk
  - b. posterior chamber
  - c. sclera
  - d. choroid
13. What eye structure is transparent and focuses light on the retina?
  - a. conjunctiva
  - b. lens
  - c. vitreous humor
  - d. aqueous humor
14. The meaning of palpebr/o is
  - a. eyelid
  - b. cornea
  - c. conjunctiva
  - d. eyelashes
15. Glaucoma usually is diagnosed by
  - a. ophthalmoscopy
  - b. slit lamp examination
  - c. Schirmer tear test
  - d. tonometry
16. The term for removal of a part is
  - a. otalgia
  - b. vertigo
  - c. ablation
  - d. acoustic
17. The term for pupillary dilation is
  - a. miosis
  - b. meiosis
  - c. macula
  - d. mydriasis
18. The condition of normal tear production is
  - a. lacrimation
  - b. nictitans
  - c. vitreous
  - d. acuity

19. The instrument used to visually examine the ear (the ear lining, presence or absence of discharge, and integrity of the tympanic membrane) is known as a(n)
- myringoscope
  - mycoscope
  - otoscope
  - dectoscope
20. What is the name of the spiral-shaped passage that leads from the oval window to the inner ear?
- organ of Corti
  - semicircular canals
  - ampulla
  - cochlea

## Matching

Match the ocular term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ palpebra	a. iris, ciliary body, and choroid
2. _____ orbit	b. platelike frame within the upper and lower eyelids
3. _____ cilia	c. eyelid
4. _____ cornea	d. eyelashes
5. _____ conjunctiva	e. bony cavity of the skull that contains the eyeball
6. _____ tarsus	f. transparent anterior portion of the sclera
7. _____ uvea	g. mucous membrane that lines the underside of each eyelid

Match the auditory term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
8. _____ pinna	a. narrow duct that leads from the middle ear to the nasopharynx
9. _____ cerumen	b. auditory ossicle known as the hammer
10. _____ ampulla	c. auditory ossicle known as the anvil
11. _____ otoliths	d. auditory ossicle known as the stirrup
12. _____ tympanic bulla	e. earwax
13. _____ incus	f. external portion of the ear
14. _____ stapes	g. osseous chamber at the base of the skull
15. _____ malleus	h. tube that transmits sound from the pinna to the eardrum
16. _____ eustachian tube	i. dilated area in the semicircular canals
17. _____ external auditory canal	j. small stones in the saccule and utricle

**Fill in the Blanks**

1. Lacrim/o and dacry/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tympan/o and myring/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Pinn/i, aur/i, and aur/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Opt/i, opt/o, optic/o, ocul/o, and ophthalm/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Acoust/o and acous/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.

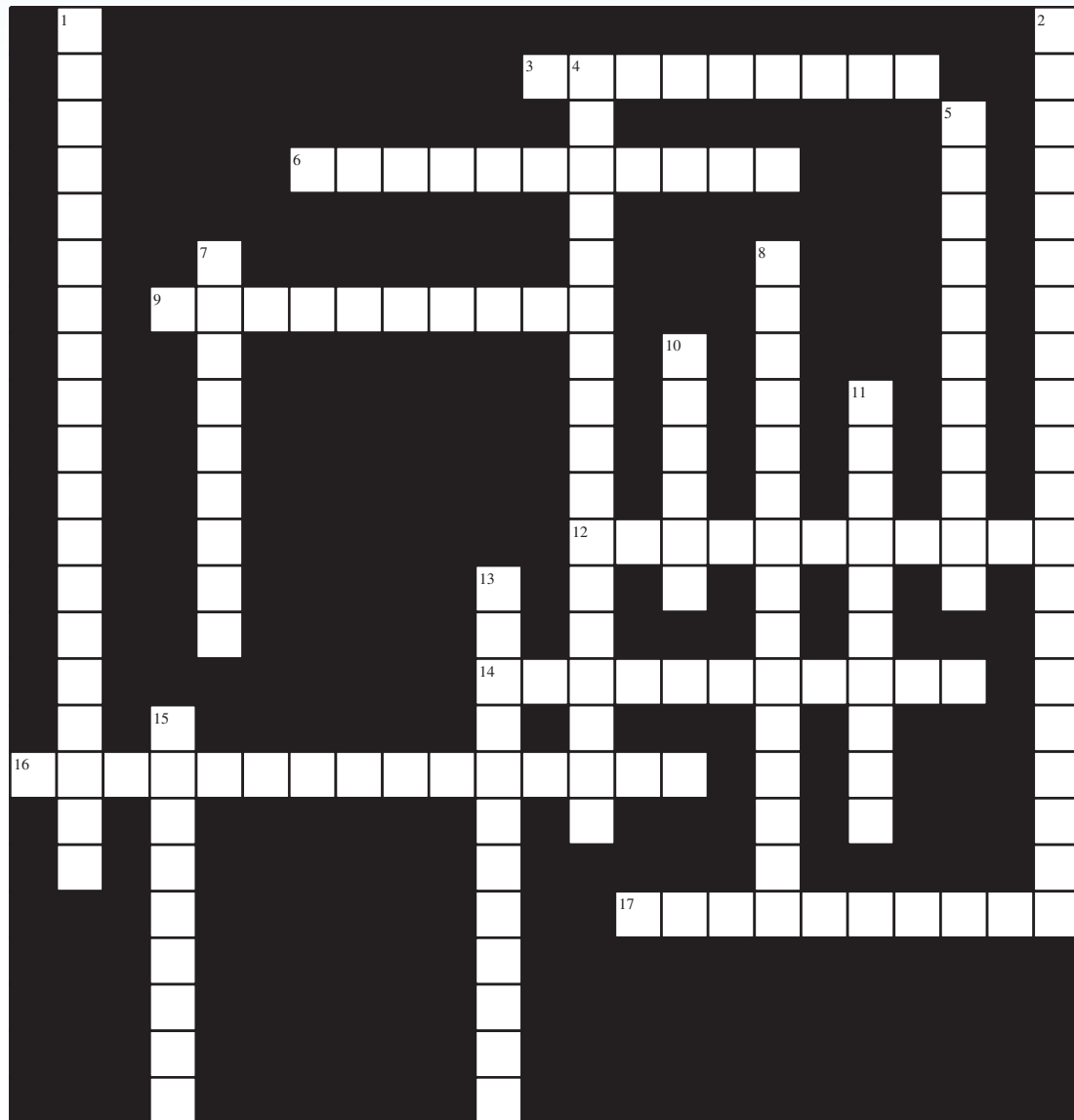
**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |  |                  |                  |                 |
|--|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. double row of eyelashes:  | dystichiasys     | distechiasis     | distichiasis    |
| 2. groups of disorders resulting from elevated intraocular pressure: | glaukoma         | glawcoma         | glaucoma        |
| 3. inflammation of the iris, ciliary body, and choroid:              | uveitis          | uveititis        | uveytis         |
| 4. blocking the passage of light:                                    | opaque           | opaque           | opaiue          |
| 5. narrow duct that leads from the middle ear to the nasopharynx:    | eustayshian tube | eustaichian tube | eustachian tube |

## CROSSWORD PUZZLES

### Eye Terms Puzzle

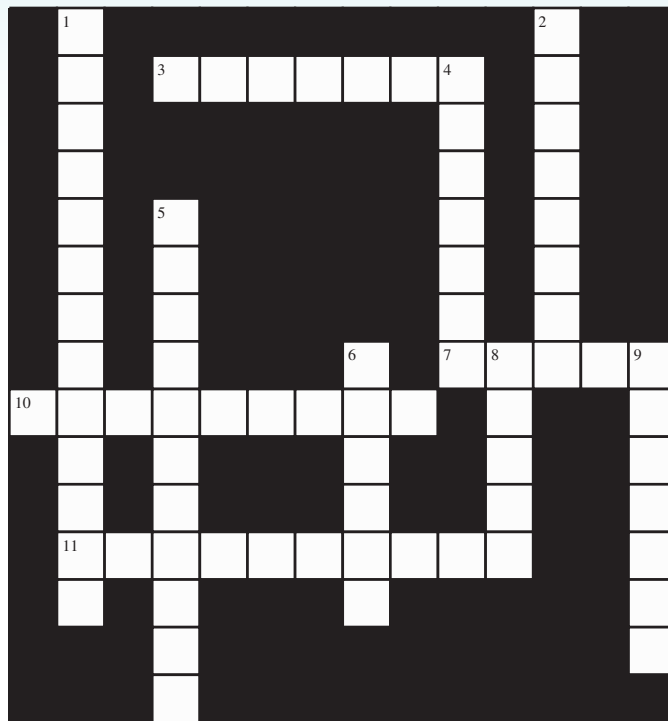


#### Across

- 3 eversion of the eyelid
- 6 inflammation of the eyelid
- 9 condition of unequal pupil size
- 12 removal of the eyeball
- 14 any disorder of the retina
- 16 incision into the lacrimal sac
- 17 disorder in which the eyes are not directed in a parallel manner

#### Down

- 1 another term for third eyelid
- 2 inflammation of the cornea and mucous membranes that line the eyelid
- 4 surface depression on the cornea
- 5 intolerance of light
- 7 inversion of the eyelid
- 8 paralysis of the eye muscles
- 10 corneoscleral junction
- 11 incision into the cornea
- 13 suturing together of the eyelids
- 15 displacement of the eye from the orbit

**Ear Terms Puzzle****Across**

- 3 another term for hammer
- 7 external portion of the ear
- 10 another term for inner ear
- 11 inflammation of the eardrum

**Down**

- 1 collection of blood on the outer ear
- 2 removal of a part by cutting
- 4 another term for stapes
- 5 pus discharge from the ear
- 6 inflammation of the ear
- 8 another term for anvil
- 9 another term for pinna

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 6-yr-old DSH M/N cat was presented for inappetence and blepharospasm. PE revealed T = 103.4°F, HR = 200 bpm, RR = 40 breaths/min, mm = pink and dry, CRT = 1.5 sec. The conjunctiva was reddened, and the sclera was infected. Heart and lungs auscultated normally. Abdominal palpation was normal. Oral examination was normal. Ocular exam: Anterior chamber was cloudy. Iris appeared normal. Tonometer readings were OS 7 mm Hg, OD 10 mm Hg. Dx was uveitis—anterior chamber. Possible causes include infections (FIP, FeLV, toxoplasmosis), immune mediated, systemic disease, and trauma. Further diagnostic tests are being pursued by the veterinarian.

1. blepharospasm \_\_\_\_\_
2. conjunctiva \_\_\_\_\_
3. sclera \_\_\_\_\_
4. ocular \_\_\_\_\_
5. anterior chamber \_\_\_\_\_
6. iris \_\_\_\_\_
7. tonometer \_\_\_\_\_
8. OS \_\_\_\_\_
9. mm Hg \_\_\_\_\_
10. OD \_\_\_\_\_
11. uveitis \_\_\_\_\_

An 8-mo-old M black Labrador retriever was presented to the clinic for ocular discharge and rubbing at the eyes. Upon the animal's presentation to the clinic, the vital signs were normal, attitude was normal for a puppy, and bilateral mucopurulent ocular discharge was noted. Ophthalmic examination revealed normal Schirmer tear test values, a normal-looking retina, and no stain retention via fluorescence staining. Upon examination of the eyelids, it was noted that the dog had blepharospasm and entropion was noted. The entropion probably was the cause of the eye infection because the eyelashes were brushing against the cornea. Blepharoplasty was recommended to this owner. Topical antibiotics were dispensed pending surgery.

12. ocular \_\_\_\_\_
13. bilateral mucopurulent ocular discharge \_\_\_\_\_
14. ophthalmic \_\_\_\_\_
15. Schirmer tear test \_\_\_\_\_
16. retina \_\_\_\_\_
17. fluorescence staining \_\_\_\_\_
18. blepharospasm \_\_\_\_\_
19. entropion \_\_\_\_\_
20. cornea \_\_\_\_\_
21. blepharoplasty \_\_\_\_\_
22. topical \_\_\_\_\_

Buddy, a 3-yr-old M/N springer spaniel, was presented to the clinic with recurrent ear problems. Previously diagnosed bilateral ear problems responded well to treatment. Buddy had been seen 2 wk earlier for ear problems, and otitis externa was diagnosed. Ear cytology revealed that Buddy had a severe yeast infection of both ears, and an antifungal drug was prescribed. On today's examination, mucopurulent discharge was noted AU. Otoscopic examination revealed that AD was hyperemic and hyperkeratotic, and the ear was so swollen that the tympanic membrane could not be visualized. AS was hyperemic and hyperkeratotic, and the tympanic membrane was intact. Ear cytology revealed yeast, and the dog was getting worse. Oral antifungal drugs and anti-inflammatory drugs were prescribed. The owner was advised that if the problem did not resolve, ear ablation surgery may be warranted.

23. recurrent

---

24. bilateral

---

25. otitis externa

---

26. cytology

---

27. mucopurulent

---

28. AU

---

29. otoscopic

---

30. AD

---

31. hyperemic

---

32. hyperkeratotic

---

33. tympanic membrane

---

34. AS

---

35. ear ablation

---

# CHAPTER 15

## FEED AND PROTECT ME

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Identify and describe the major structures and functions of the hematologic, lymphatic, and immune systems
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce the major terms related to diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the hematologic, immune, and lymphatic systems
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to oncology

### HEMATOLOGIC SYSTEM

The hematologic system encompasses the production of blood and the transport of blood throughout the body.



## Functions of Blood

**Blood** supplies body tissues with oxygen, nutrients, and various chemicals. Blood transports waste products to various organs for removal from the body. Blood cells also play important roles in the immune and endocrine systems.

## Structures of Blood

Blood is composed of 55 percent liquid plasma and 45 percent formed elements. Formed elements include red blood cells, white blood cells, and clotting cells. The combining forms for blood are **hem/o** and **hemat/o**.

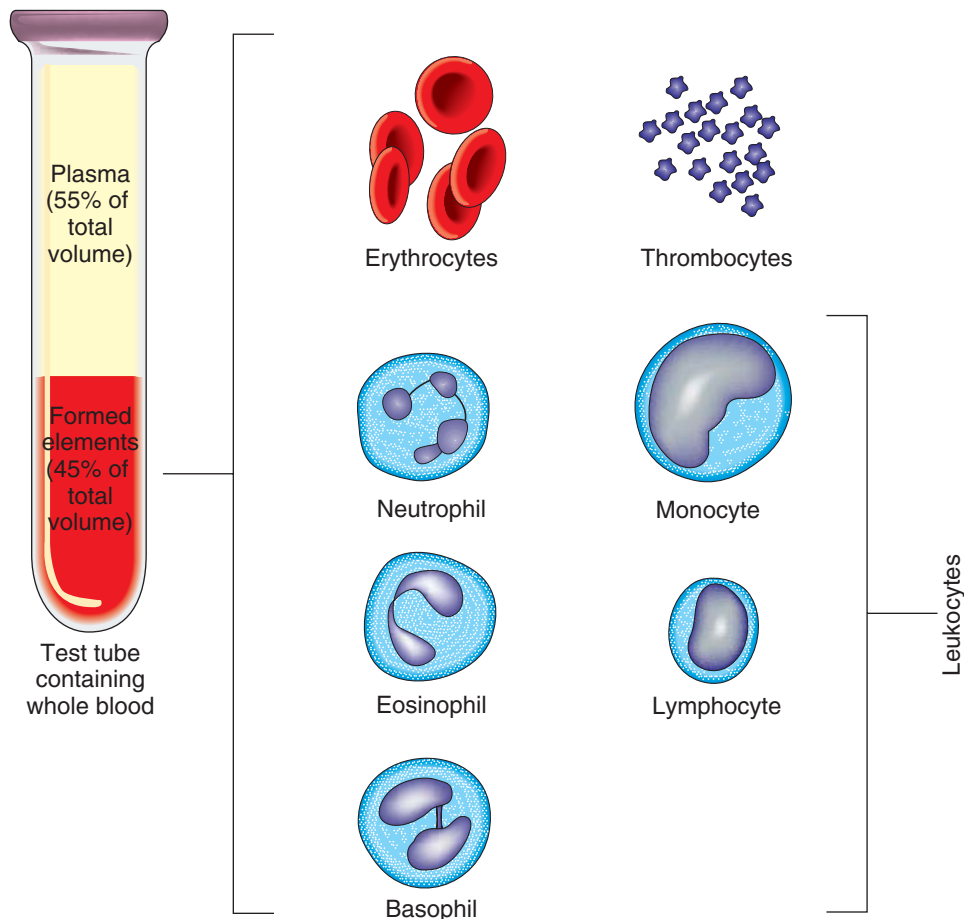
Blood is formed in the bone marrow. **Hematopoiesis** (hē-mah-tō-poy-ē-sihs) is the medical term for formation of blood. The suffix **-poiesis** means formation. The components of blood can be separated clinically and examined microscopically. A blood sample is collected with a needle and syringe. **Drawing blood** is a common term for collecting a blood sample. Blood can be collected in a tube that has an **anticoagulant** (ahn-tih-kō-ahg-yoo-lahnt). An anticoagulant is a substance that prevents clotting of blood. **EDTA** (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid) and **heparin** (hehp-ahr-ihn) are types of anticoagulants found in blood tubes and

are used clinically as drugs. **Coagulation** (kō-ahg-yoo-lā-shuhn) is the process of clotting. Sometimes coagulation of blood is desired after blood is placed in a collection tube. When blood coagulates, a layer of leukocytes and thrombocytes forms, which appears at the interface of the erythrocytes and plasma after blood is centrifuged. This layer that appears at the interface of the erythrocytes and plasma is called the **buffy coat** (buhf-ē kōt) (Figure 15–1).



### What is normal?

Blood is about 55 percent liquid and 45 percent cellular material, but what is the normal blood volume of an animal? Approximately 9 percent of an animal's body weight is blood.



**Figure 15–1** Blood components.

## Liquid

The liquid portion of blood consists of the following:

- **Serum** (sē-ruhm) is the liquid portion of blood with clotting proteins removed (Figure 15–2).
- **Plasma** (plahz-mah) is the straw-colored fluid portion of blood that transports nutrients, hormones, and waste products. Plasma contains clotting proteins.
- Clotting proteins found in plasma include **fibrinogen** (fih-brihn-ō-jehn) and **prothrombin** (prō-throhmbihn). The combining form **fibrin/o** means fibrin or threads of a clot, the prefix **pro-** means before, and the combining form **thromb/o** means clot. **Albumin** (ahl-byoo-mihn) is another example of a plasma protein.
- Fats also circulate in plasma. **Cholesterol** (kō-lehs-tər-ohl) and **triglyceride** (trī-glihs-ər-īd) are types of lipids that circulate in blood.

## Formed Elements

### ERYTHROCYTES

An **erythrocyte** (eh-rihth-rō-sit) is a mature red blood cell (oxygen-carrying cell) and is abbreviated RBC. The combining form **erythr/o** means red, and the suffix **-cyte** means cell. Erythrocytes have a biconcave disc shape and contain

**hemoglobin** (hē-mō-glō-bihn), a blood protein that transports oxygen. **Heme** (hēm) is the nonprotein, iron-containing portion of hemoglobin. The central pale area of an RBC that represents the thinnest part of the biconcave disc is the area of **central pallor** (sehn-trahl pahl-ohr). RBCs that have more central pallor than normal have decreased hemoglobin concentration in their cells. These RBCs are described as hypochromic and appear pale. It would seem logical then that RBCs that have less central pallor than normal would have increased hemoglobin concentration in their cells and would be described as hyperchromic; however, that term is misleading. RBCs can hold only so much hemoglobin before their cell membrane is altered. This alteration of the RBC cell membrane makes the membrane shrink so that the amount of hemoglobin is contained in a smaller space, making the cells appear darker (bluer) in color. These cells are more commonly called polychromatic. Polychromatic RBCs also may be young erythrocytes that have been released early from the bone marrow. They are typically larger and bluer in color than mature erythrocytes due to the presence of organelles such as ribosomes and mitochondria that are still present in immature cells.

Erythrocytes are produced in the bone marrow. The combining form for bone marrow (and spinal cord) is **myel/o**. Erythrocytes vary in appearance from species to species.

A **reticulocyte** (reh-tihck-yoo-lō-sit) is an immature, non-nucleated erythrocyte characterized by polychromasia (Wright's stain) or a meshlike pattern of threads (new methylene blue stain).

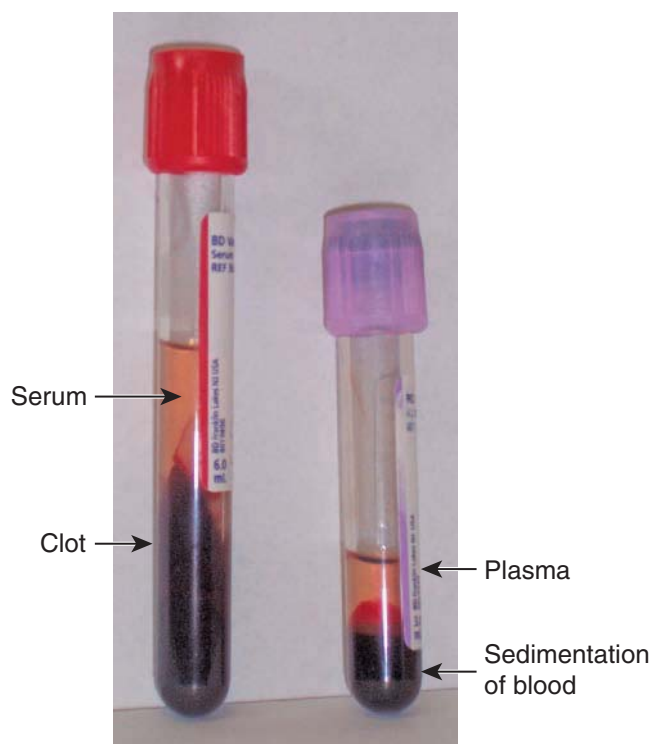
When RBCs are no longer useful, they are destroyed by macrophages. A **macrophage** (mahck-rō-fahj or mahck-rō-fāj) is a large cell that destroys by eating (engulfing). The combining form **macr/o** means large, and the suffix **-phage** means eating. A **phagocyte** (fā-gō-sit) is "a cell that eats." The formal definition of a phagocyte is a leukocyte that ingests foreign material.

**Hematology** (hē-mah-tah-lō-jē) is the study of blood. When blood cells are studied, it is important to note the cell's morphology. **Morphology** (mōr-fah-lō-jē) is the study of form (Table 15–1 and Figure 15–3).

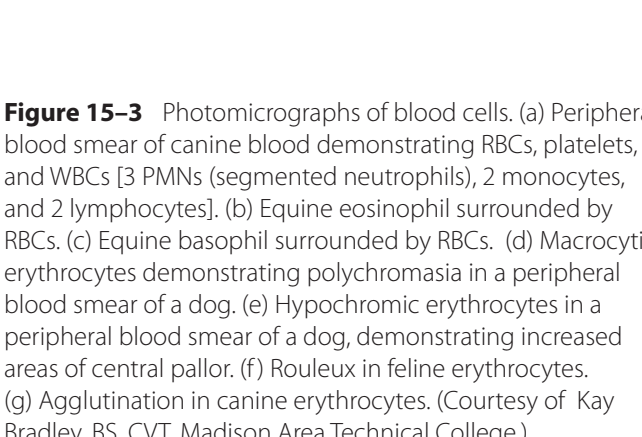
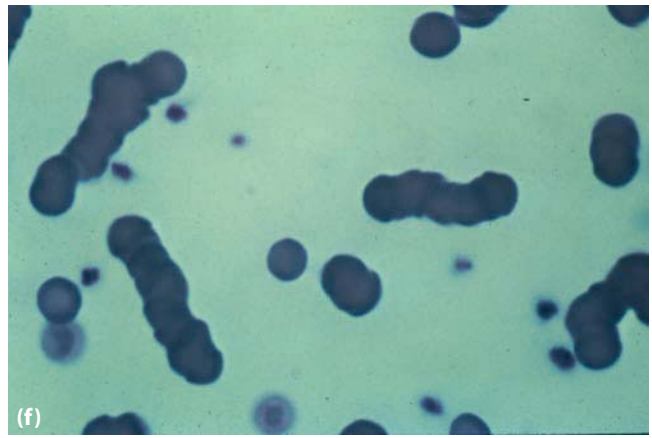
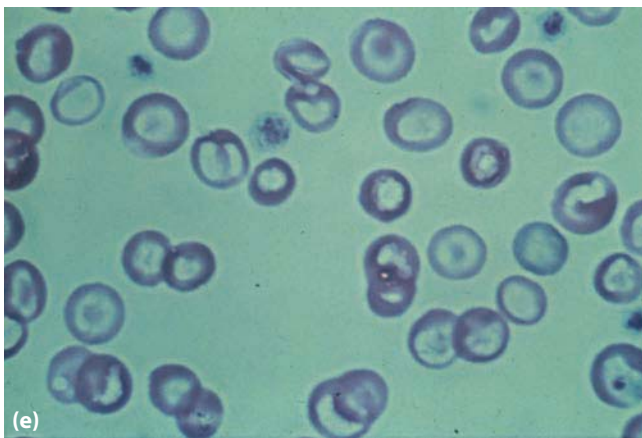
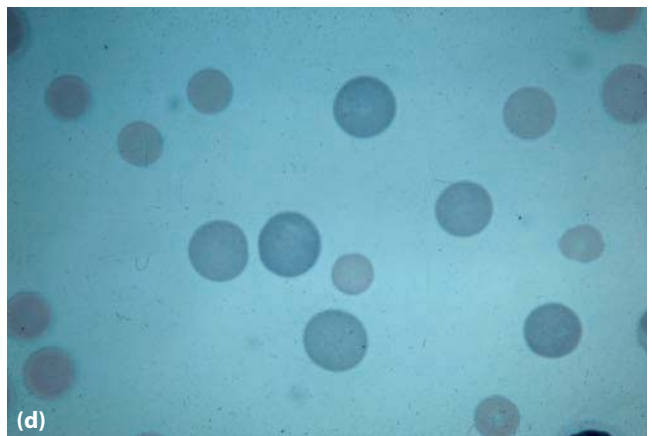
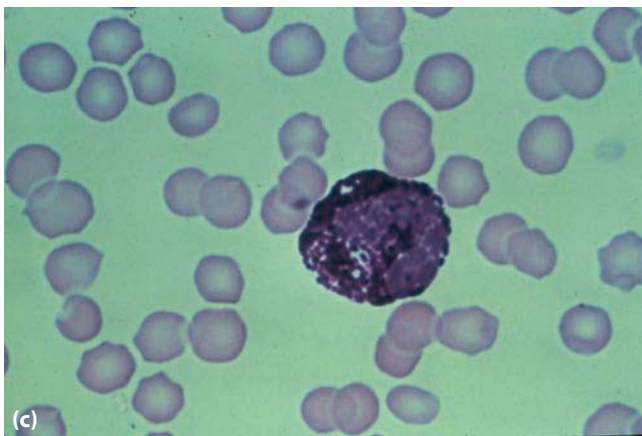
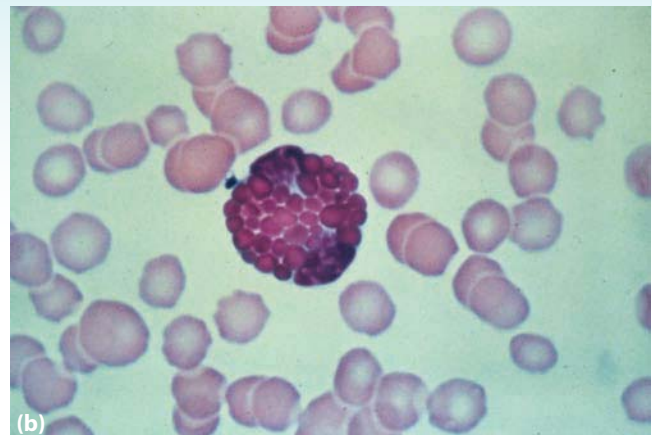
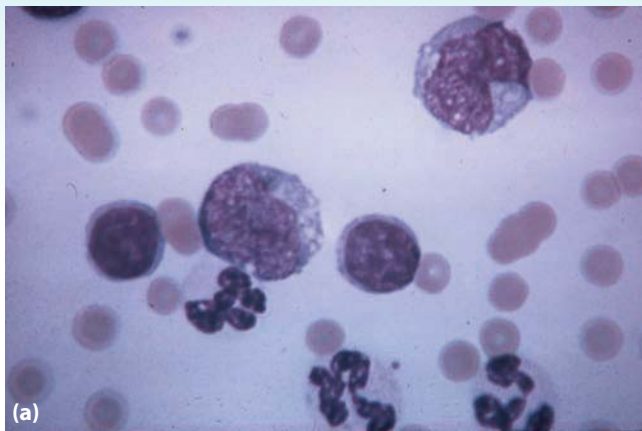
### LEUKOCYTES

A **leukocyte** (loo-kō-sit) is a white blood cell and is abbreviated WBC. The combining form **leuk/o** means white. Leukocytes are produced in the bone marrow (and other places) and function primarily in fighting disease in the body. **Leukocytopoiesis** (loo-kō-sit-ō-poy-ē-sihs) is the production of white blood cells. The production of leukocytes is also called **leucopoiesis** (loo-kō-poy-ē-sihs).

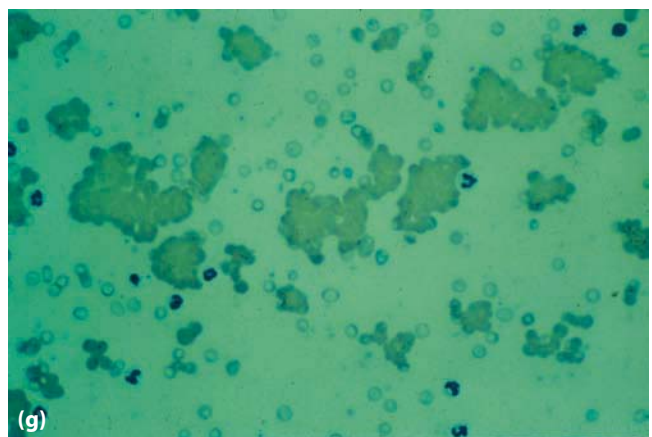
A **granulocyte** (grahn-yoo-lō-sit) is a cell that contains prominent grainlike structures in its cytoplasm; an **agranulocyte** (ā-grahn-yoo-lō-sit) is a cell that does not contain prominent grainlike structures in its cytoplasm. Agranulocytes often are referred to as other leukocytes due to the fact that they have less prominent cytoplasmic granules and are not truly agranulocytic. Types of WBCs are summarized in Table 15–2 and Figure 15–3.



**Figure 15–2** Serum versus plasma. Serum is the liquid portion of blood seen in the sample collected in the red-topped tube without anticoagulant (left), and plasma is the liquid portion of blood seen in the sample collected in the purple-topped tube containing anticoagulant (right). Although serum and plasma look similar, plasma contains clotting proteins while serum does not.



**Figure 15-3** Photomicrographs of blood cells. (a) Peripheral blood smear of canine blood demonstrating RBCs, platelets, and WBCs [3 PMNs (segmented neutrophils), 2 monocytes, and 2 lymphocytes]. (b) Equine eosinophil surrounded by RBCs. (c) Equine basophil surrounded by RBCs. (d) Macrocytic erythrocytes demonstrating polychromasia in a peripheral blood smear of a dog. (e) Hypochromic erythrocytes in a peripheral blood smear of a dog, demonstrating increased areas of central pallor. (f) Rouleux in feline erythrocytes. (g) Agglutination in canine erythrocytes. (Courtesy of Kay Bradley, BS, CVT, Madison Area Technical College.)



**Table 15–1 Terms Used to Describe Erythrocytes**

Term	Pronunciation	Description
<b>normocytic</b>	(nohr-mō-siht-ihck)	normal cell size
<b>macrocytic</b>	(mahck-rō-siht-ihck)	larger-than-normal cell size
<b>microcytic</b>	(mī-krō-siht-ihck)	smaller-than-normal cell size
<b>poikilocytosis</b>	(poy-kē-loh-sī-tō-sihs)	condition of irregular cells; clinically means varied shapes of erythrocytes
<b>anisocytosis</b>	(ahn-eh-sō-sī-tō-sihs)	condition of unequal cell size; excessive variation in RBC size
<b>normochromic</b>	(nohr-mō-krō-mihck)	normal RBC color (has area of central pallor of normal size)
<b>hypochromic</b>	(hī-pō-krō-mihck)	less-than-normal color (has enlarged area of central pallor)
<b>hyperchromic</b>	(hī-pər-krō-mihck)	more-than-normal color (term is not commonly used)
<b>polychromasia</b>	(poh-lē-krō-mah-zē-ah)	“condition of many colors” that appears as an overall blue tint of Wright-stained RBCs due to shrinking of the cell membrane; indicates slight immaturity of the erythrocyte
<b>rouleaux</b>	(roo-low)	RBCs that are arranged like stacks of coins on the peripheral blood smear; may be artifact or may be normal in species such as cats and horses
<b>agglutination</b>	(ah-gloo-tih-nā-shuhn)	clumping of RBCs due to the presence of an antibody directed against RBC surface antigens that forms a latticework that links them together

**Table 15–2 Major Groups of Leukocytes**

Type of Leukocyte	Pronunciation	Description
<b>lymphocyte</b>	(lihm-fō-sīt)	class of “agranulocytic” leukocyte that contains a diverse set of cells including those that can directly attack specific pathogens or produce antibodies
<b>monocyte</b>	(mohn-ō-sīt)	class of “agranulocytic” leukocyte that has a phagocytic function and participates in the inflammatory response
<b>neutrophil</b>	(nū-trō-fihl)	class of granulocytic leukocyte that has a phagocytic function (mainly against bacteria); also called <b>polymorphonuclear leukocyte</b> , or PMN; <i>polymorphonuclear</i> means multishaped nucleus
<b>eosinophil</b>	(ē-ō-sihn-ō-fihl)	class of granulocytic leukocyte that detoxifies allergens and controls parasitic infections by damaging parasite membranes
<b>basophil</b>	(bā-sō-fihl)	class of granulocytic leukocyte that promotes the inflammatory response and contains histamine in its cytoplasmic granules

A **band cell** (bahnd sehl) or banded neutrophil is an immature polymorphonuclear leukocyte. A mature neutrophil is a segmented neutrophil.

Some cells are described as basophilic or eosinophilic. **Basophilic** (bā-sō-fihl-ihck) means stained readily with basic, or blue, dyes in many commonly used stains such as hematoxylin and eosin (H&E), Giemsa, and Wright's. **Eosinophilic** (ē-ō-sihn-ō-fihl-ihck) means stained readily with acidic, or pink, dyes in many commonly used stains such as H&E, Giemsa, and Wright's.

### CLOTTING CELLS

Clotting cells also are produced in the bone marrow and play a part in the clotting of blood. A **thrombocyte** (throhm-bō-sīt) is a nucleated clotting cell, and a **platelet** (plāt-leht) is an anucleated clotting cell. Occasionally, those terms are used interchangeably; however, they have different meanings.

A **megakaryocyte** (mehg-ah-kahr-ē-ō-sīt) is a large, nucleated cell found in the bone marrow from which platelets are formed.

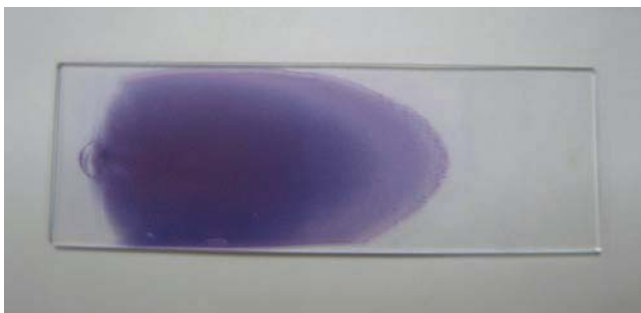
## TEST ME: HEMATOLOGIC SYSTEM

Diagnostic tests performed on the hematologic system include the following:

- **blood smear** (smēr) = blood specimen for microscopic examination in which blood is spread thinly across a microscope slide and typically stained (Figure 15–4).
- **bone marrow biopsy** (bōn mahr-ō bī-ohp-sē) = sample of bone marrow obtained by needle aspiration for examination of cells. Bone marrow samples are taken from long bones, ribs, or the sternum.
- **laboratory tests**, which are covered in Chapter 16.

## PATHOLOGY: HEMATOLOGIC SYSTEM

Pathologic conditions of the hematologic system include the following:

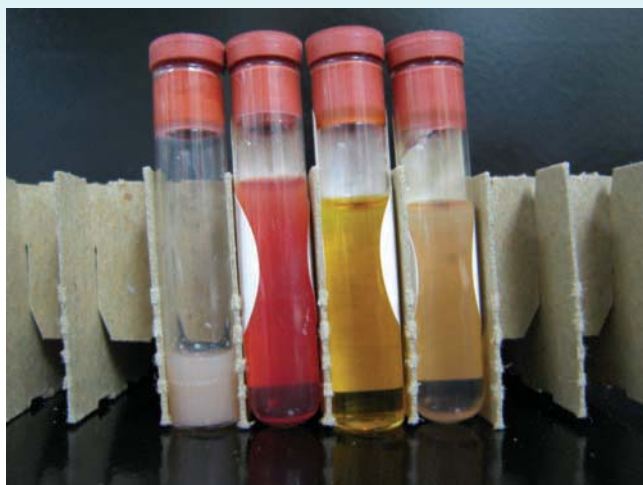


**Figure 15–4** A blood smear is used to examine blood cells under a microscope.

- **anemia** (ah-nē-mē-ah) = blood condition of less-than-normal levels of red blood cells and/or hemoglobin.
- **basopenia** (bā-sō-pē-nē-ah) = deficiency in the number of basophils in the blood; **-penia** is a suffix that indicates a decrease in a particular type of cell.
- **basophilia** (bā-sō-fihl-ē-ah) = elevation in the number of basophils in the blood; **-philia** is a suffix that indicates an increase in a particular type of cell.
- **dyscrasia** (dihs-krā-zē-ah) = any abnormal condition of the blood.
- **edema** (eh-dē-mah) = accumulation of fluid in the intercellular space (Figure 15–5). **Edemateous** (eh-deh-mah-tuhs) is the adjective form of edema.
- **eosinopenia** (ē-ō-sihn-ō-pē-nē-ah) = deficiency in the number of eosinophils in the blood.
- **eosinophilia** (ē-ō-sihn-ō-fihl-ē-ah) = elevation in the number of eosinophils in the blood.
- **erythrocytosis** (eh-rihth-rō-sī-tō-sihs) = abnormal increase in red blood cells. The suffix **-cytosis** means condition of cell but implies elevated cell numbers.
- **exudate** (ehcks-yoo-dāt) = material that has escaped from blood vessels and is high in protein, cells, or solid materials derived from cells.
- **hemolytic** (hē-mō-liht-ihck) = removing and destroying red blood cells. Hemolytic anemia is excessive RBC destruction, resulting in lower-than-normal levels of RBCs. Hemolytic serum contains red blood cell components that are released when erythrocytes are damaged due to a variety of causes (such as improper specimen processing, collection, or transport) and appears pink or blood-tinged (Figure 15–6). **Hemolysis** (hē-mohl-eh-sihs) is the breaking down of blood cells. **Lysis** (lī-sihs) is the medical term for destruction or breakdown.



**Figure 15–5** Edema in the hind legs of a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 15-6** Lipemic serum contains an excessive amount of fat and appears white (tube on the left), while hemolytic serum contains red blood cell components that are released when erythrocytes are damaged due to a variety of causes (such as improper specimen processing, collection, or transport) and appears pink or blood-tinged (second tube from the left). Icteric serum is yellow-tinged due to increased bilirubin levels (third tube from the left), while normal serum is clear (tube on the right).

- **hemophilia** (hē-mō-fihl-ē-ah) = hereditary condition of deficient blood coagulation.
- **hemorrhage** (hehm-ōr-ihdj) = loss of blood (usually in a short period of time). **Hemostasis** (hē-mō-stā-sihs) is the act of controlling blood or bleeding. A **hemostat** (hē-mō-staht) is an instrument used to control bleeding.
- **hyperalbuminemia** (hī-pər-ahl-byoo-mih-nē-mē-ah) = blood condition of abnormally high albumin levels.
- **hyperemia** (hī-pər-ē-mē-ah) = excess blood in a part; engorgement.
- **hyperlipidemia** (hī-pər-lihp-ih-dē-mē-ah) = blood condition of abnormally high fat levels; more accurately means abnormally high fat levels caused by fat metabolism. **Lip/o** is the combining form for fat.
- **icteric** (ihck-tər-ihck) **serum** = serum that has yellow pigmentation that is suggestive of hyperbilirubinemia (Figure 15-6). Hyperbilirubinemia may be caused by increased erythrocyte damage, liver disease, and disruption of bile flow.
- **left shift** (lehft shihft) = common term for an alteration in the distribution of leukocytes in which there are increases in band forms, usually in response to bacterial infection.
- **leukemia** (loo-kē-mē-ah) = elevation in the number of malignant white blood cells. Leukemias may be classified according to the concentration of neoplastic cells that are circulating in blood (such as granulocytic leukemia and lymphocytic leukemia). Leukemias are further classified as either acute or chronic based on the majority or degree of neoplastic cell differentiation and clinical course.
- **leukocytosis** (loo-kō-sī-tō-sihs) = elevation in the number of white blood cells.
- **leukopenia** (loo-kō-pē-nē-ah) = deficiency of white blood cells; sometimes called leukocytopenia (loo-kō-sīt-ō-pē-nē-ah).
- **lipemia** (li-pē-mē-ah) = excessive amount of fats in the blood.
- **lipemic serum** (li-pē-mihck sē-ruhm) = fats from blood that have settled in the serum. Clinically the serum appears cloudy and white (Figure 15-6).
- **lymphocytosis** (lihm-fō-sī-tō-sihs) = elevated numbers of lymphocytes in the blood.
- **lymphopenia** (lihm-fō-pē-nē-ah) = deficiency of lymphocytes in the blood.
- **monocytopenia** (moh-nō-sīt-ō-pē-nē-ah) = deficiency of monocytes in the blood.
- **monocytosis** (moh-nō-sī-tō-sihs) = elevated numbers of monocytes in the blood.
- **myelodysplasia** (mī-ehl-ō-dihs-plā-zē-ah) = hematologic disorder characterized clinically and morphologically by ineffective hematopoiesis that results in some form of cytopenia such as anemia, neutropenia, and/or thrombocytopenia.
- **neutropenia** (nū-trō-pē-nē-ah) = deficiency in the number of neutrophils in the blood.
- **neutrophilia** (nū-trō-fihl-ē-ah) = elevation in the number of neutrophils in the blood.
- **pancytopenia** (pahn-sīt-ō-pē-nē-ah) = deficiency of all types of blood cells.
- **phagocytosis** (fahg-ō-sī-tō-sihs) = condition of engulfing or eating cells.
- **polycythemia** (poh-lē-sī-thē-mē-ah) = condition of many cells; clinically means excessive erythrocytes.
- **septicemia** (sehp-tih-sē-mē-ah) = blood condition in which pathogenic microorganisms (bacteria) and their toxins are present. The suffix **-emia** means blood condition. **Pathogenic** (pahth-ō-jehn-ihck) means producing disease. **Bacteremia** (bahck-tər-ē-mē-ah) is the blood condition in which bacteria are present.
- **thrombocytopenia** (throhm-bō-sīt-ō-pē-nē-ah) = abnormal decrease in the number of clotting cells. The suffix **-penia** means less than normal or deficiency.
- **thrombocytosis** (throhm-bō-sī-tō-sihs) = elevation in the number of clotting cells.
- **transudate** (trahnz-yoo-dāt) = material that has passed through a membrane and is high in fluidity and low in protein, cells, or solid materials derived from cells.

## LYMPHATIC SYSTEM

### Functions of the Lymphatic System

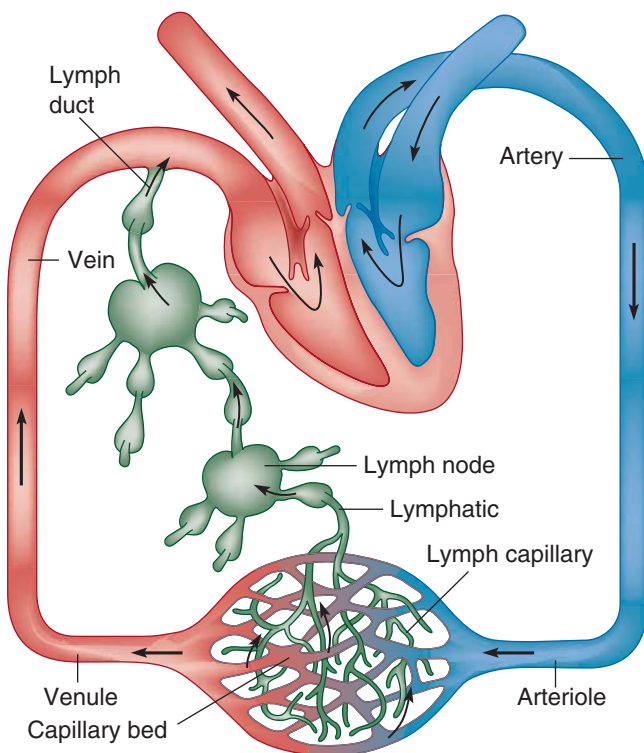
The lymphatic system functions as part of the immune system, returns excess lymph to the blood, and absorbs fats and fat-soluble vitamins from the digestive system and transports them to cells. The combining form **lymph/o** means lymph fluid, lymph vessels, and lymph nodes. **Lymphoid** (lihmf-oyd) pertains to lymph or tissue of the lymphatic system.

### Structures of the Lymphatic System

The major structures of the lymphatic system include lymph vessels, lymph nodes, lymph fluid, tonsils, spleen, thymus, and lymphocytes.

### Lymph Fluid

**Interstitial fluid** (ihn-tər-stihsh-ahl flū-ihd) is the clear, colorless tissue fluid that leaves the capillaries and flows in the spaces between the cells of a tissue or an organ. Interstitial fluid functions to bathe and nourish the cells. *Interstitial* pertains to the spaces in a tissue or an organ. **Lymph** (lihmf) is formed when interstitial fluid moves into the capillaries of the lymphatic system. Lymph brings nutrients and hormones to cells and carries waste products from tissue back to the bloodstream (Figure 15–7).



**Figure 15–7** Fluids that leave circulation through the capillaries are returned to venous circulation by the lymphatic system.

### Lymph Vessels

Lymph is carried from the tissue space via thin-walled tubes called **lymph capillaries**. **Lymphatic vessels** (lihmf-fah-tihck vehs-uhlz) are similar to veins in that they have valves to prevent the backflow of lymph. Lymph always travels toward the thoracic cavity. In the thoracic cavity, the right lymphatic duct and thoracic duct empty lymph into veins. Lymph ducts release lymph (and whatever is in lymph) into venous blood, where it is quickly passed to the lungs and then throughout the body. This mechanism can spread infection, cancers, and other diseases. The **cisterna chyli** (sihs-tər-nah kī-lē) is the origin of the thoracic duct and saclike structure for the lymph collection.

**Lacteals** (lahck-tē-ahls), located in the small intestine, are specialized lymph vessels that transport fats and fat-soluble vitamins (Figure 15–8).

### Lymph Nodes

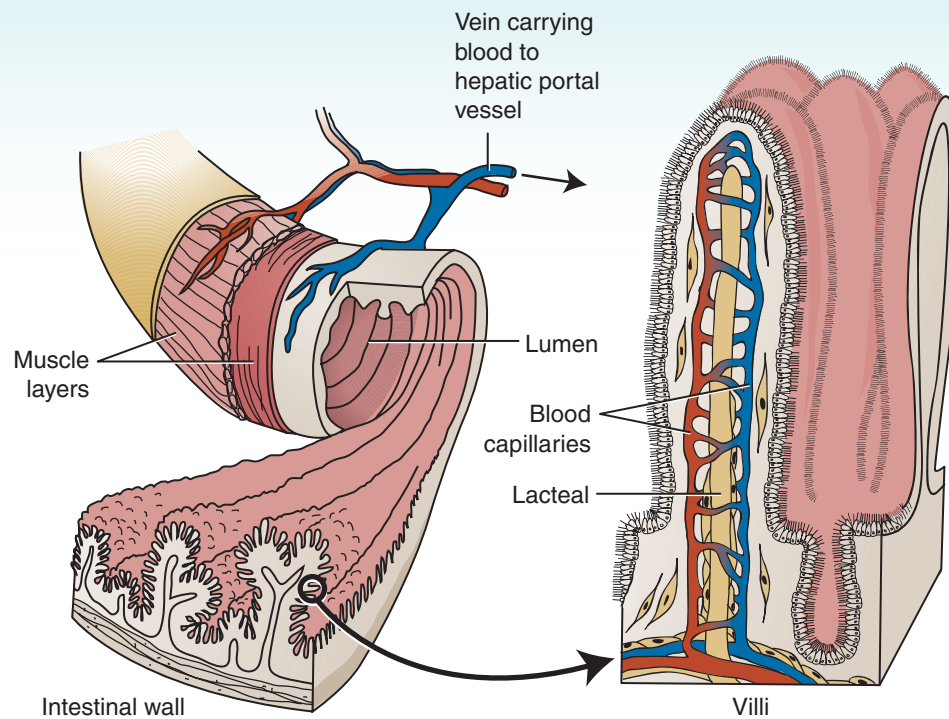
**Lymph nodes** (lihmf nōdz) are small bean-shaped structures that filter lymph and store B and T lymphocytes (Figure 15–9a). The primary function of lymph nodes is to filter lymph to remove harmful substances such as bacteria and viruses. Because cells are destroyed in lymph nodes, swollen lymph nodes often are an indication of disease. Lymph nodes are described according to their location: Mandibular lymph nodes are located near the mandible, parotid lymph nodes are located near the ear (**para-** means near, and **otos** is Greek for ear), mesenteric lymph nodes are located in the mesentery (Figure 15–9b), etc.

### Tonsils

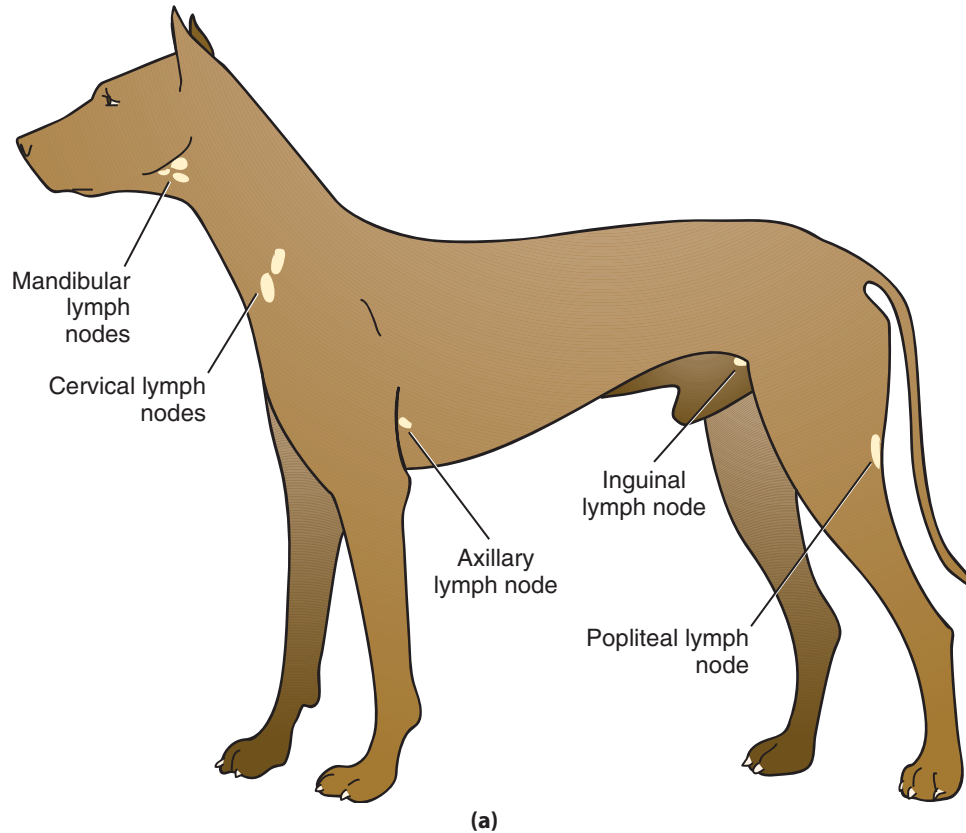
The **tonsils** (tohn-sahlz) are masses of lymphatic tissue that protect the nose and cranial (upper) throat. Tonsils are described according to their location: Lingual tonsils are located near the tongue, palatine tonsils are located near the palate or roof of the mouth, and pharyngeal tonsils are located near the throat. **Tonsill/o** is the combining form for tonsil.

### Spleen

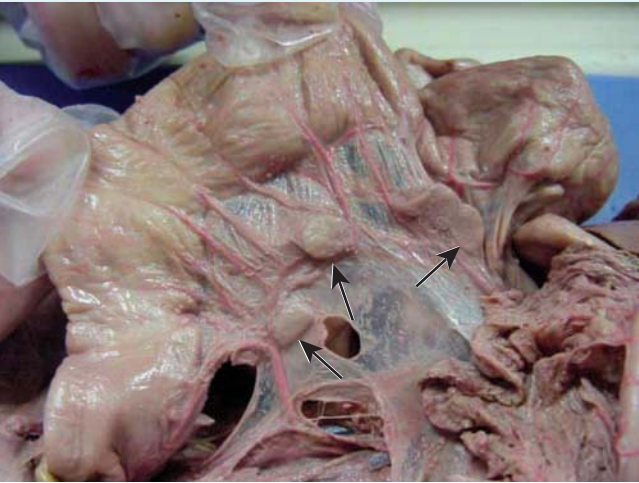
The **spleen** (splēn) is an organ located in the cranial abdomen that filters foreign material from the blood, stores red blood cells, and maintains an appropriate balance of cells and plasma in the blood (Figure 15–10). The spleen also is a secondary lymphoid tissue (as opposed to the primary lymphoid tissues which are the thymus and bone marrow) where mature, differentiated B and T lymphocytes reside and wait for antigenic stimulation. Upon antigenic stimulation, these lymphocytes proliferate. In addition to lymphocytes, macrophages also are found in the spleen. Macrophages line the sinusoids of the spleen (called sinusoidal lining cells) where



**Figure 15-8** Lacteals are specialized lymph vessels in the small intestine that transport fats and fat-soluble vitamins.



**Figure 15-9** (a) Location of lymph nodes that can be palpated on a dog.



**Figure 15-9** (b) Mesenteric lymph nodes are located in the mesentery.



**Figure 15-10** The spleen is a mass of lymphatic tissue located in the cranial abdomen.

they will phagocytize foreign material, break it down, and present antigenic parts on their surface for the helper T lymphocytes to recognize and initiate an immune response. The combining form **splen/o** means spleen.

## Thymus

The **thymus** (thī-muhs) is a gland that has an immunologic function and is found predominantly in young animals. The thymus is located near midline in the cranioventral portion of the thoracic cavity. The immunologic role of the thymus is development of T cells.

Some of the lymphocytes formed in the bone marrow migrate to the thymus, where they multiply and mature into T cells. T cells play an important role in the immune response. The thymus also has an endocrine function. The combining form for thymus is **thym/o**.

## IMMUNE SYSTEM

The immune system functions to protect the body from harmful substances. The term **immunity** comes from the Latin term *immunitas*, which means exemption. Immunity was used to imply that an animal was exempt from or protected against foreign substances. The combining form **immun/o** means protected. **Immunology** (ihm-yoo-nohl-ō-jē) is the study of the immune system.

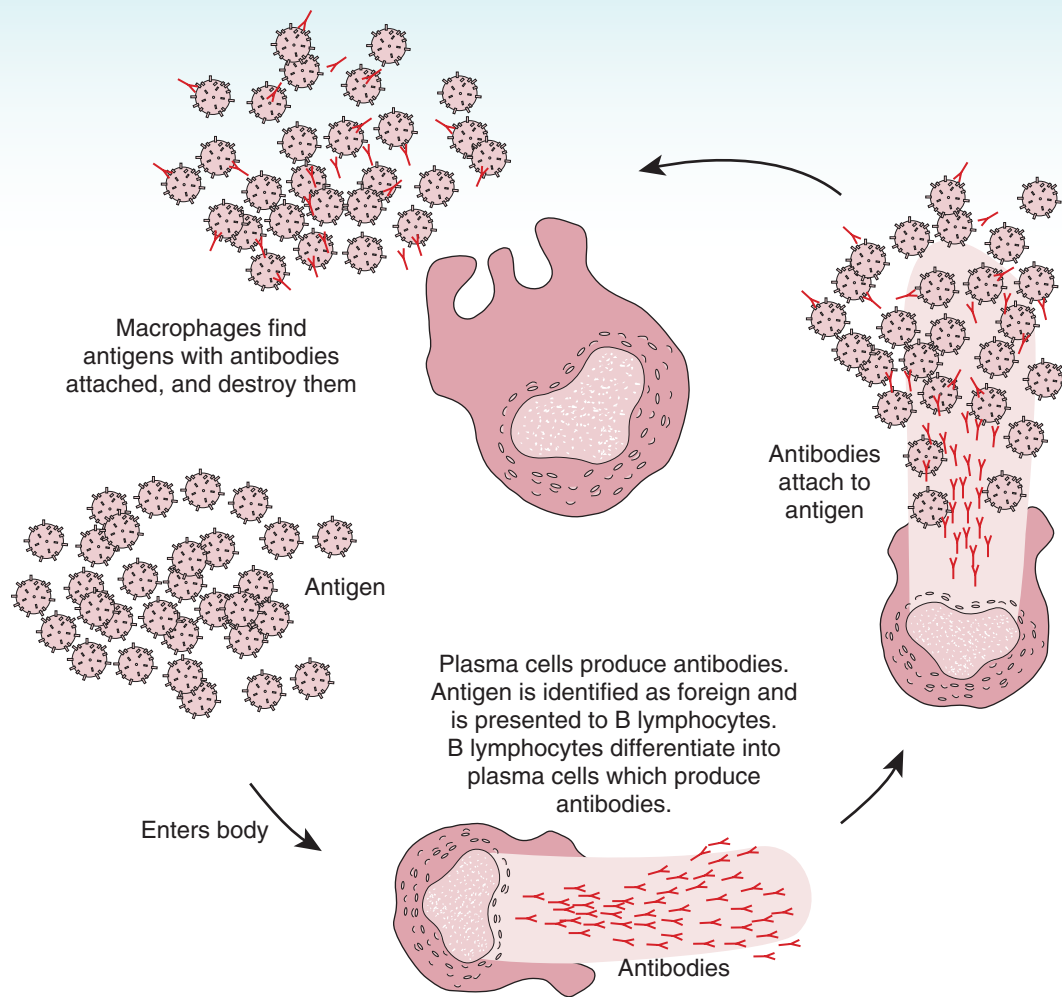
The immune system is not contained in one set of organs or in one area. Many structures from different body systems aid in protecting the body. The lymphatic system, respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, integumentary system, and others work together to prevent the body from being harmed from foreign invaders.

### Specialized Cells

Some cells are specialized for immune reactions. The **lymphocyte** is a type of white blood cell that is involved in the immune response and works against specific antigens. Lymphocytes are formed in the bone marrow and mature in lymphatic tissue throughout the body, such as the spleen, thymus, and bone marrow. There are two subpopulations of lymphocytes—the T lymphocytes, which are responsible for cell-mediated immunity, and the B lymphocytes, which are responsible for humoral immunity (Figure 15-11). **B lymphocytes** are produced and mature in the bone marrow and are responsible for antibody-mediated or humoral immunity.

Cell-Mediated and Humoral (Antibody-Mediated) Immunity	
Cell-Mediated Immunity	Humoral (Antibody-Mediated) Immunity
<b>T cells</b> are responsible for cell-mediated immunity.	<b>B cells</b> are responsible for humoral immunity.
T cells directly attack the invading antigen.	Differentiated B cells produce antibodies that react with the antigen or substances produced by the antigen.
Cell-mediated immunity is most effective against viruses that infect body cells, cancer cells, and foreign tissue cells.	Humoral immunity is most effective against bacteria, viruses that are outside body cells, and toxins. It is also involved in allergic reactions.

**Figure 15-11** Comparison of cell-mediated and antibody-mediated immunity.



**Figure 15–12** Antibody formation.

In the presence of a specific antigen, B lymphocytes differentiate into plasma cells and memory B cells. Memory B cells remember a specific antigen and stimulate a faster and more intense response when that same antigen is presented to the body. A **plasma cell** (plahz-mah sehl) is an immune cell that produces and secretes a specific antibody for a specific antigen. Plasma cells also are called **plasmocytes** (plahz-mō-sitz). The antibodies made by plasma cells are called **immunoglobulins** (ihm-yoo-nō-gloh-b-yoo-lihnz). Immunoglobulin is abbreviated Ig. There are five distinct immunoglobulins (Table 15–3 and Figure 15–12).

**T lymphocytes** are small, circulating lymphocytes produced in the bone marrow. These cells mature in the thymus, so they are called **T cells**. The primary function of T lymphocytes is to coordinate immune defenses and kill organisms on contact. T cells are involved in cell-mediated immunity. Cell-mediated immunity involves T cell activation and cellular secretions. Although cell-mediated immunity does not involve antibody production, the antibodies produced during humoral immunity may play a role in some cell-mediated responses.

There are different types of T lymphocytes. **Helper T cells** secrete substances such as lymphokines that stimulate the

**Table 15–3** Types of Immunoglobulin and Their Functions

<b>IgA</b>	found in the mucous membrane lining of intestines, bronchi, saliva, and tears; protects those areas
<b>IgD</b>	found in large amounts on the surface of B cells; unknown function
<b>IgE</b>	found in lungs, skin, and cells of mucous membranes; provides defense against the environment and is involved with allergies
<b>IgG</b>	synthesized in response to invading germs such as bacteria, fungi, and viruses; most abundant antibody and only class that can cross the placenta
<b>IgM</b>	found in circulating fluids; first immunoglobulin produced when antigens invade and provides protection in the earliest stages of infection

**Anti- Means Against:** The terms *antigen* and *antibody* must be distinguished. **Antigen** (ahn-tih-jehn) is a substance that the body regards as foreign (such as a virus, bacterium, or toxin).

**Antibody** (ahn-tih-boh-dē) is a disease-fighting protein produced by the body in response to the presence of a specific antigen.

production of B lymphocytes and cytotoxic T cells. **Cytotoxic T cells** destroy intracellular pathogens. **Suppressor T cells** stop B and T lymphocyte activity when this activity is no longer needed. **Memory T cells** remember a specific antigen and stimulate a faster and more intense response when that same antigen is presented to the body.

**Monocytes** are another type of leukocyte formed in the bone marrow and transported to other parts of the body. Monocytes migrate to tissues such as the spleen to become macrophages. A **macrophage** is a phagocytic cell that protects the body by eating invading cells and by interacting with other cells of the immune system. **Histiocytes** (hihs-tē-ō-sitz) are large macrophages found in loose connective tissue.

### How Does the Immune System Work?

The body has many ways to protect itself from invading organisms and substances. The initial defenses against pathogen invasion are nonspecific. The first line of defense limits access to internal tissues and organs of the body. Anatomical barriers such as intact skin help protect the animal's body from infection.

**Intact** (ihn-tahckt) means having no cuts, scrapes, openings, or alterations. Intact skin makes it more difficult for invading organisms and substances to obtain access to an animal. Oil secreted by sebaceous glands discourages bacterial growth on the skin.

The respiratory system has its own line of defense. Foreign material breathed in is trapped in the cilia of the nares and the moist mucous membrane that lines the respiratory tract. Mucus continually flushes away trapped debris. Coughing and sneezing also remove foreign material.

The digestive system destroys invading organisms that are swallowed by the acidic nature of the stomach.

An animal's health, age, and heredity also play roles in protecting the body. Some animals may be immunodeficient or hypersensitive.

Infectious agents that penetrate the first line of defense are usually destroyed by other nonspecific responses such as fever,

inflammation, chemicals, and complement. The complement system is a nonspecific defense mechanism, and its activation can result in initiation of inflammation, activation of leukocytes, lysis of pathogens, and increased phagocytosis. **Complement** is a series of enzymatic proteins that occur in normal plasma. Complement is thus named because it is complementary to the immune system and it aids phagocytes in destroying antigens and causes cell lysis.

The immune system is activated when the previously listed defenses fail. Activation of the immune system is outlined here:

Organisms invade the body. Macrophages ingest the invading organisms and present antigen fragments to its surface. Helper T cells are activated.



Helper T cells multiply and produce lymphokines that stimulate cytotoxic T cell production. Complement goes to the affected area. B cells sensitive to the organism multiply. B cells transform into plasma cells that produce antibody.



Complement proteins lyse affected cells. Antibodies bind to organisms.



If infection is contained, suppressor T cells stop the immune response. Memory B and T cells remain ready if this particular antigen enters the body again.

**Immunity** (ihm-yoo-nih-tē) is the state of being resistant to a specific disease. Different forms of immunity are obtained during life. The types of immunity are as follows:

- **naturally acquired passive immunity** = resistance to a specific disease by the passing of protection from mother to offspring before birth or through colostrum.
- **naturally acquired active immunity** = resistance to a specific disease after the development of antibodies during the actual disease.
- **artificially acquired passive immunity** = resistance to a specific disease by receiving antiserum-containing antibodies from another host.
- **artificially acquired active immunity** = resistance to a specific disease through vaccination.

## TEST ME: IMMUNE AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEMS

Diagnostic tests performed on the immune and lymphatic systems are described in Chapter 16.



### Words used when discussing the immune system

**resistant** (rē-zih-s-tahnt) = not susceptible.

**heredity** (hər-eh-dih-tē) = genetic transmission of characteristics from parent to offspring.

**vaccination** (vahck-sihn-ā-shuhn) = administration of antigen (vaccine) to stimulate a protective immune response against a specific infectious agent; also called **immunization** (ihm-yoo-nih-zā-shuhn).

**vaccine** (vahck-sēn) = preparation of pathogen (live, weakened, or killed) or a portion of pathogen that is administered to stimulate a protective immune response against the pathogen.

**multiplication** (muhl-tih-plih-kā-shuhn) = reproduction.

**inhibit** (ihn-hihb-ih-t) = to slow or stop.

**opportunistic** (ohp-ər-too-nih-s-tihck) = able to cause disease due to debilitation when disease normally would not be produced.

**debilitated** (dē-bihl-ih-tāt-ehd) = weakened.

## PATHOLOGY: IMMUNE AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEMS

Pathologic conditions of the immune and lymphatic systems include the following:

- **allergy** (ahl-ər-jē) = overreaction by the body to a particular antigen; also called **hypersensitivity** (hī-pər-sehn-sih-tihv-ih-tē). An **allergen** (ahl-ər-jehn) is a substance capable of inducing an allergic reaction.
- **anaphylaxis** (ahn-ah-fih-lahck-sihs) = severe response to a foreign substance. Signs develop acutely and may include swelling, blockage of airways, tachycardia, and ptylism.

- **autoimmune disease** (aw-tō-ihm-yoon dih-zēz) = disorder in which the body makes antibodies directed against itself.
- **immunosuppression** (ihm-yoo-nō-suhp-prehsh-uhn) = reduction or decrease in the state of resistance to disease. An **immunosuppressant** (ihm-yoo-nō-suh-prehs-ahnt) is a chemical that prevents or reduces the body's normal reaction to disease.
- **lymphadenitis** (lihm-fahd-eh-nī-tihs) = inflammation of the lymph nodes; also called **swollen glands**.
- **lymphadenopathy** (lihm-fahd-eh-nohp-ah-thē) = disease of the lymph nodes; an example of incorrect use of *aden/o* because nodes are not glands.
- **lymphangioma** (lihm-fahn-jē-ō-mah) = abnormal collection of lymphatic vessels forming a mass (usually benign).
- **splenomegaly** (splēhn-ō-mehg-ah-lē) = enlargement of the spleen.
- **tonsillitis** (tohn-sih-lī-tihs) = inflammation of the tonsils.

## PROCEDURES: IMMUNE AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEMS

Procedures performed on the immune and lymphatic systems include the following:

- **splenectomy** (splēhn-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the spleen.
- **thymectomy** (thī-mehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the thymus.
- **tonsillectomy** (tohn-sih-lehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of the tonsils.

## ONCOLOGY

**Oncology** (ohng-kohl-ō-jē) is the study of tumors. The combining form **onc/o** means tumor. The term **tumor** does not mean cancerous. When a tumor is cancerous, the term **malignant** is used to describe it. Nonmalignant tumors are called **benign**. The term *neoplasm* is another word used to describe abnormal growths. A **neoplasm** (nē-ō-plahz-uhm) is any abnormal new growth of tissue in which the multiplication of cells is uncontrolled, more rapid than normal, and progressive.

Tumors often are described by their appearance. **Pedunculated** (peh-duhnc-k-yoo-lā-tehd) means having a peduncle, or stalk. **Well-circumscribed** means that the mass has well-defined borders. **Invasive** means that the mass does not have well-defined borders and is spreading.

Malignant growths tend to spread to distant body sites. **Metastasis** (meh-tahs-tah-sihs) is a pathogenic growth distant from the primary disease site. Metastasis literally means beyond control. The plural form of metastasis is **metastases** (meh-tahs-tah-sēz). The term **metastasize** (meh-tahs-tah-siz) is used to describe invasion by the pathogenic growth to a point distant from the primary disease site.

Malignant growths also may be described by their tissue of origin. A **carcinoma** (kahr-sih-nō-mah) is a malignant growth of epithelial cells, whereas a **sarcoma** (sahr-kō-mah) is a malignant neoplasm arising from any type of connective tissue. The combining form **carcin/o** means cancer, and the combining form **sarc/o** means flesh. Connective tissue sometimes is referred to as fleshy. The combining form *carcin/o* is used to form the term *carcinogen*. A **carcinogen** is a substance that produces cancer. The suffix **-gen** means producing.

## TEST ME: ONCOLOGY

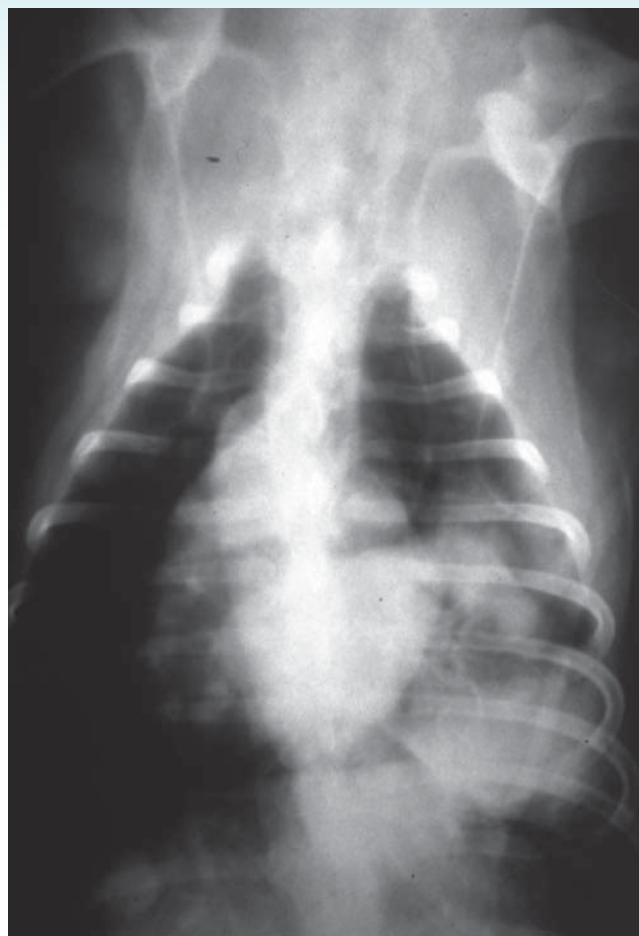
Diagnostic tests performed on tumors include the following:

- **biopsies** = described in Chapter 10.
- **radiographs** = records of ionizing radiation used to visualize internal body structures. Radiographs are taken in oncology patients to assess the extent of some tumors or to check for metastases (Figure 15–13).
- **touch preps** = collections of cells on a glass slide pressed against a part of the mass. The slide is then examined under a microscope.

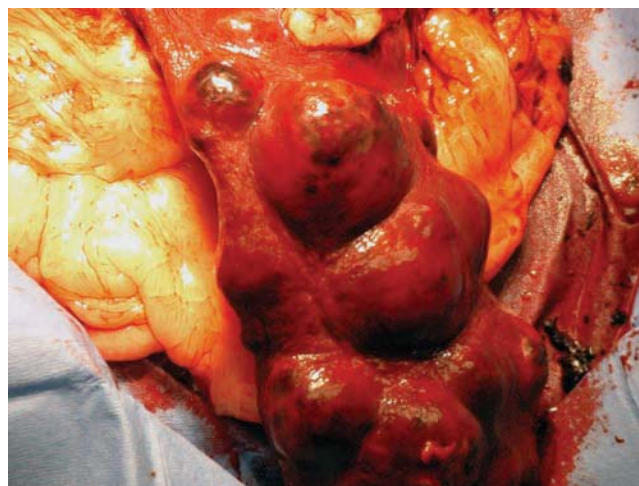
## PATHOLOGY: ONCOLOGY

Tumors are named for the tissues involved. Some examples include the following:

- **adenocarcinoma** (ahd-eh-nō-kahr-sih-nō-mah) = malignant growth of epithelial glandular tissue.
- **blastoma** (blahs-tō-mah) = neoplasm composed of immature undifferentiated cells.
- **hemangioma** (hē-mahn-jē-ō-mah) = benign neoplasm composed of newly formed blood vessels.
- **hemangiosarcoma** (hē-mahn-jē-ō-sahr-kō-mah) = malignant tumor of vascular tissue (Figure 15–14).
- **lymphoma** (lihm-fō-mah) = general term for neoplasm composed of lymphoid tissue (usually malignant); also called **lymphosarcoma**; abbreviated LSA.
- **mast cell tumor** = malignant growth of tissue mast cells (cells that release histamine); abbreviated MCT. Mast cell tumors are associated with vomiting, anorexia, and various signs depending on the tissue involved (Figure 15–15).
- **melanoma** (mehl-ah-nō-mah) = neoplasm composed of melanin-pigmented cells (see Figure 10–22).
- **myeloma** (mī-eh-lō-mah) = malignant neoplasm composed of bone marrow.



**Figure 15–13** Ventrodorsal radiograph of pulmonary metastases. (Courtesy of Anne E. Chauvet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM—Neurology Department, University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)

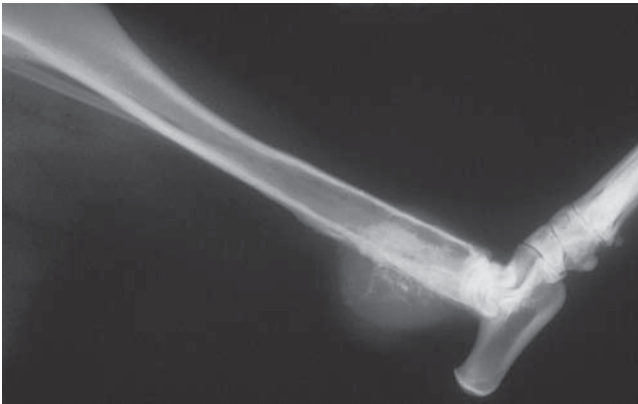


**Figure 15–14** Intraoperative photograph of a spleen with hemangiosarcoma.

- **myosarcoma** (mī-ō-sahr-kō-mah) = malignant neoplasm composed of muscle.
- **myxoma** (mihcks-ō-mah) = tumor of connective tissue.
- **neuroblastoma** (nū-rō-blahs-tō-mah) = malignant neoplasm of nervous tissue origin.



**Figure 15–15** A mast cell tumor on a dog's leg.



**Figure 15–16** Osteosarcoma in a dog. Lateral radiograph of a dog with osteosarcoma of the distal tibia.

- **osteosarcoma** (ohs-tē-ō-sahr-kō-mah) = malignant neoplasm composed of bone (Figure 15–16).
- **squamous cell carcinoma** (skwā-mohs sehl kahr-sih-nō-mah) = malignant tumor developed from squamous epithelial tissue; abbreviated SCC (Figure 15–17).

## PROCEDURES: ONCOLOGY

Procedures performed on tumors include the following:

- **chemotherapy** (kē-mō-thehr-ah-pē) = treatment of neoplasm through the use of chemicals.
- **lymphadenectomy** (lihm-fahd-ehn-ehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a lymph node. The name for removal of any tissue that may have a mass or tumor can be derived by adding the combining form for the area being removed.
- **radiation therapy** (rā-dē-ah-shuhn thehr-ah-pē) = treatment of neoplasm through the use of X-rays.
- **surgical excision** = removal of the entire mass in addition to some normal tissue to ensure that the entire mass is removed.



**Figure 15–17** SCC of a bovine eye. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

---

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. Red blood cells are called
  - a. erythrocytes
  - b. leukocytes
  - c. thrombocytes
  - d. platelets
2. White blood cells are called
  - a. erythrocytes
  - b. leukocytes
  - c. thrombocytes
  - d. platelets
3. An elevation in white blood cells is called
  - a. leukopenia
  - b. leukocytosis
  - c. leukemia
  - d. leukosis
4. An immature, non-nucleated erythrocyte that is characterized by polychromasia (Wright's stain) or a meshlike pattern of threads (new methylene blue stain) is called a
  - a. macrophage
  - b. prothrombocyte
  - c. reticulocyte
  - d. phagocyte
5. An immature polymorphonuclear leukocyte is called a
  - a. baby PMN
  - b. band cell
  - c. left shift
  - d. micro PMN
6. Lacteals are located in the
  - a. groin
  - b. loin
  - c. small intestine
  - d. stomach
7. Lymph also is known as
  - a. serum
  - b. plasma
  - c. interstitial fluid
  - d. a and b
8. T cells are responsible for
  - a. allergies
  - b. humoral immunity
  - c. cell-mediated immunity
  - d. thymus production
9. B cells are responsible for
  - a. allergies
  - b. humoral immunity
  - c. cell-mediated immunity
  - d. thymus production
10. The spleen is
  - a. hemolytic
  - b. an organ where lymphocytes are differentiated
  - c. a storage area for RBCs
  - d. all of the above
11. A malignant tumor that developed from epithelial tissue is known as a(n)
  - a. squamous cell carcinoma
  - b. myxoma
  - c. osteosarcoma
  - d. blastoma
12. What is the term for a malignant tumor of vascular tissue?
  - a. hemangioma
  - b. hemangiosarcoma
  - c. neuroblastoma
  - d. lymphoma
13. Malignant neoplasms arising from connective tissue are known as
  - a. carcinomas
  - b. sarcomas
  - c. melomas
  - d. myxomas
14. When a growth does not have well-defined borders, it is described as being
  - a. circumscribed
  - b. pedunculated
  - c. invasive
  - d. metastasized

15. A deficiency in white blood cells is called
  - a. leukopenia
  - b. leukocytosis
  - c. erythrocytosis
  - d. anemia
16. Hemolysis is
  - a. increasing the RBC count
  - b. decreasing the RBC count
  - c. breaking down blood cells
  - d. excess amounts of fat in the blood
17. A substance that prevents clotting is known as a(n)
  - a. hematopoietic agent
  - b. anticoagulant
  - c. anisocytosis
  - d. poikilocytosis
18. Larger-than-normal RBCs are described as being
  - a. hyperchromic
  - b. hypochromic
  - c. microcytic
  - d. macrocytic
19. What term is used to describe the condition in which microorganisms and their toxins are present in the blood?
  - a. septicemia
  - b. bacteremia
  - c. anemia
  - d. edema
20. The name for a disease-fighting protein produced by the body in response to a particular foreign substance is
  - a. antigen
  - b. antibody
  - c. antipathogen
  - d. dysrasia

## Matching

Match the immunologic term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

### Column I

1. \_\_\_\_\_ resistant
2. \_\_\_\_\_ heredity
3. \_\_\_\_\_ vaccination
4. \_\_\_\_\_ immunization
5. \_\_\_\_\_ vaccine
6. \_\_\_\_\_ multiplication
7. \_\_\_\_\_ inhibit
8. \_\_\_\_\_ opportunistic
9. \_\_\_\_\_ debilitated

### Column II

- a. weakened
- b. able to cause disease due to debilitation when disease would not be produced normally
- c. administration of antigen to stimulate a protective immune response against a specific infectious agent
- d. reproduction
- e. not susceptible
- f. genetic transmission of characteristics from parent to offspring
- g. to slow or stop
- h. preparation of pathogen (live, weakened, or killed) or a portion of pathogen that is administered to stimulate a protective immune response against the pathogen

Match the term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

Column I	Column II
10. _____ benign	a. abnormal new growth of tissue
11. _____ malignant	b. cancerous
12. _____ neoplasm	c. enlarged spleen
13. _____ metastasis	d. condition of eating cells
14. _____ splenomegaly	e. breakdown
15. _____ edema	f. noncancerous
16. _____ phagocytosis	g. accumulation of fluid in the intercellular space
17. _____ lysis	h. pathogenic growth distant from its primary disease site
18. _____ leukocytosis	i. abnormal increase in WBCs
19. _____ leukopenia	j. abnormal decrease in WBCs

### Fill in the Blanks

- \_\_\_\_\_ means no cuts, scrapes, openings, or alterations.
- The state of being resistant to a specific disease is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A substance that the body regards as foreign is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- A deficiency of red blood cells or hemoglobin is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- Excessive blood in a part is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a severe response to a foreign substance.
- A substance capable of inducing an allergic reaction is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- The study of tumors is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A general term for a malignant neoplastic disorder of lymphoid tissue is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A blood condition in which pathogenic microorganisms or their toxins are present is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- poiesis means \_\_\_\_\_.
- Hem/o and hemat/o mean \_\_\_\_\_.
- Immun/o means \_\_\_\_\_.
- emia means \_\_\_\_\_.
- Lip/o means \_\_\_\_\_.

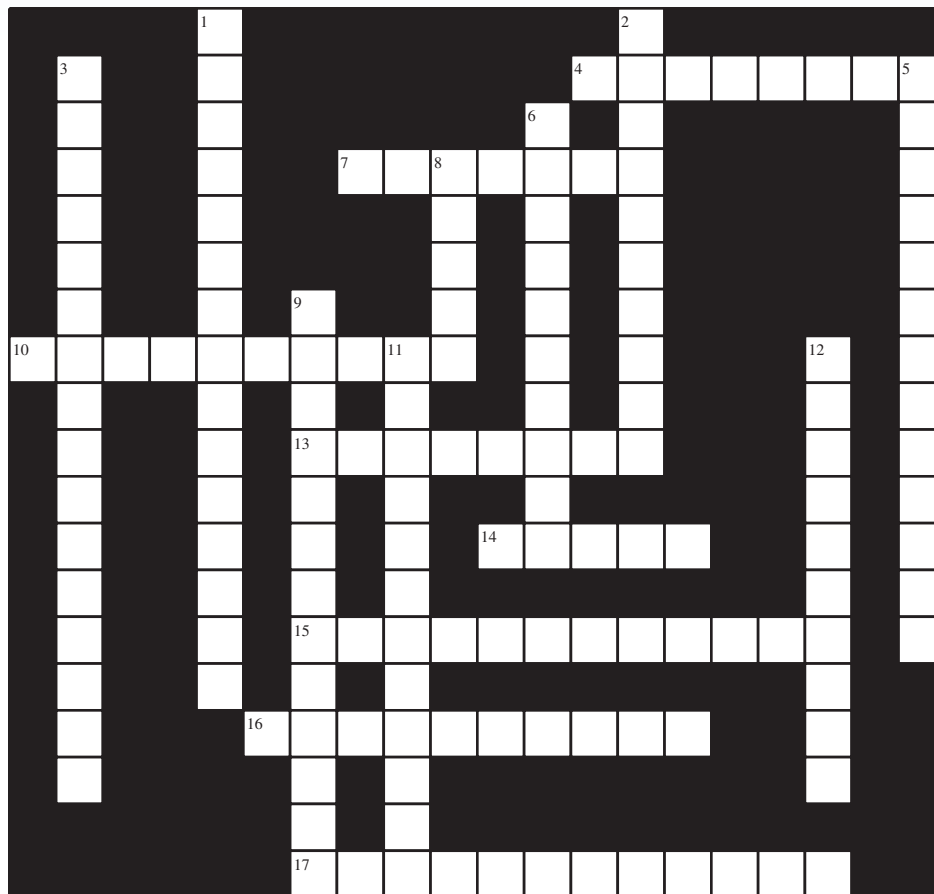
**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |   |               |              |               |
|---|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. mature red blood cell:               | erithrocyte   | erythrocyte  | erythrosite   |
| 2. study of form:                       | morfology     | morphology   | morphlogy     |
| 3. condition of unequal cell size:      | anistocytosis | anisocytosis | anystocytosis |
| 4. tumor of connective tissue:          | mixoma        | myxtoma      | myxoma        |
| 5. malignant neoplasm composed of bone: | ostesarcoma   | osteosarkoma | osteosarcoma  |

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Hematologic, Lymphatic, and Immune System Terms Puzzle



#### Across

- 4 abnormal increase in the number of malignant WBCs
- 7 malignant neoplasm of bone marrow
- 10 abnormal decrease in the number of WBCs
- 13 disease-fighting protein produced by the body in response to the presence of a foreign substance
- 14 destruction or break down
- 15 malignant neoplasm of bone
- 16 another name for polymorphonuclear leukocyte
- 17 enlargement of the spleen

#### Down

- 1 malignant neoplasm of vascular tissue
- 2 study of blood
- 3 another term for allergy
- 5 substance that prevents clotting
- 6 study of form
- 8 accumulation of fluid in the intercellular space
- 9 formation of blood
- 11 pertaining to the spaces within a tissue or organ
- 12 pathogenic growth distant from the primary disease site

# CHAPTER 16

## TESTING TESTING

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Describe terms and equipment for the basic physical examination
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms associated with physical examinations
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms associated with laboratory analysis
- Describe positioning for radiographic and imaging procedures
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms associated with radiographic and imaging procedures

### BASIC PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Physical examinations are performed to assess a patient's condition. **Assessment** is the term used to describe the evaluation of a condition. After a patient is assessed, the information is written in a medical record. The animal's signalment should always be included. A **signalment** is a description of the animal with information about the animal, including the species, breed, age, and sexual status (intact or neutered).

#### Vital Signs

**Vital signs** are parameters taken from the animal to assess its health.

Temperature is the vital sign that tells about the degree of heat or cold. An animal's temperature is recorded in degrees Fahrenheit or Celsius. Different species have different normal temperature ranges. An elevated body temperature is called a **fever**. **Febrile** (fē -brīl or feh -brīl) is the medical term for fever; **afebrile** (ā-fē-brīl or ā-feh-brīl) means without a fever. **Pyrexia** (pī-rehck-sē-ah) is another medical term for fever. **Pyr/o** means fire. A decrease in body temperature is known as **hypothermia**.



**Figure 16–1** Parts of a stethoscope. (a) Diaphragm. The diaphragm is the flat, circular portion of the chestpiece covered with a thin membrane. The diaphragm transmits high-pitched sounds, such as those produced by the bowel, lungs, and heart. (b) Bell. The bell is not covered by a membrane. The bell facilitates auscultation of lower-frequency sounds, such as the third and fourth sounds of the heart.

**Pulse**, another vital sign, tells the number of times the heart beats per minute. The pulse also is called the **pulse rate**. Pulse is taken by palpating an artery. Heart rate also may be considered a vital sign and is taken by auscultating the heart with a stethoscope (Figures 16–1 and 16–2). **Heart rate** is the number of times the heart contracts and relaxes per minute. Heart rate is abbreviated HR.



**Figure 16–2** A stethoscope is used to listen to body sounds. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

**Respiration** is the number of respirations per minute. Respiration is one total inhale and one total exhale. Respiration also is called the **respiration rate** and is abbreviated RR (Figure 16–3).

**Blood pressure** is another vital sign that may be taken on veterinary patients. A **sphygmomanometer** (sfihg-mō-mah-nohm-eh-tər) is an instrument used to measure blood pressure (Figure 16–4). A Doppler is used to listen to blood sounds during the measurement of blood pressure in animals.

Listening

**Auscultation** (aws-kuhl-tā-shuhn) is the act of listening, which usually involves the use of a stethoscope to listen to body sounds. Auscultation can be used to assess the condition of the heart, lungs, pleura, and abdomen.

	Heart rate (beats/min)	Respiratory rate (breaths/min)	Rectal temperature (°C)	Rectal temperature (°F)
Dogs	70–160	8–20	38–39	100.5–102.5
Cats	150–210	8–30	38–39	100.5–102.5
Hamsters	250–500	35–135	37–38	99–100.5
Guinea pigs	230–280	42–104	37–39.5	99–103
Rabbits	130–325	30–60	38.5–40	101.5–104
Horses	28–50	8–16	37.5–38.5	99.5–101.5
Cattle	40–80	12–36	38–39	100.5–102.5
Sheep	60–120	12–50	39–40	102.5–104
Goats	70–135	12–50	38.5–40.5	101.5–105
Pigs	58–100	8–18	39–40	102.5–104
Llamas	60–90	10–30	37–39	99–102.5
Ferrets	230–250	33–36	38–40	100.5–104

**Figure 16–3** Normal vital sign ranges.



**Figure 16-4** Sphygmomanometer. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

## Touching

**Palpation** (pahl-pā-shuhn) is examination by feeling. During palpation, one can feel the texture, size, consistency, and location of body parts or masses.

**Percussion** (pər-kuhsh-uhn) is examination by tapping the surface to determine density of a body area. Sound may be produced when the surface is tapped with a finger or an instrument. The sound produced by percussion varies depending on the amount of fluid, solid, or air present in the area being examined.

## Looking

Various instruments can be used during the physical examination to obtain a better view of a body system. Examples include an ophthalmoscope and otoscope. A **speculum** (spehck-yoo-luhm) is an instrument used to enlarge the opening of a canal or cavity. A speculum is attached to an otoscope (or another scope) to provide a better view of a canal or cavity. A mouth speculum is used to better visualize the oral cavity (Figures 16-5a and b).

## LABORATORY TERMINOLOGY

Specialized terminology has been developed to describe tests and results of laboratory tests. Blood for laboratory tests usually is collected via venipuncture. **Venipuncture** (vehn-ih-



(a)



(b)

**Figure 16-5** Specula. (a) A speculum is attached to an otoscope to allow better visualization of a canal or cavity. (b) A mouth speculum is used to enhance visualization of the oral cavity. [(a) Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT; (b) Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.]

puhnk-tər) is withdrawing blood from a vein (usually with a needle and syringe).

Terminology of laboratory tests is given in Table 16-1.

Records are kept under many different methods. One method is the SOAP method. **SOAP** is an acronym for subjective, objective, assessment, and plan analysis (Figure 16–6). An acronym is a word formed by the

initial letters of the major parts of the name. Some diseases, structures, and procedures are derived from a person's name, and the name is known as an **eponym**.

**Table 16–1 Blood Test Terminology**

Term	Pronunciation	Definition
<b>agglutination</b>	(ah-gloo-tih-nā-shuhn)	clumping together of cells or particles
<b>assay</b>	(ahs-ā)	assessment or test to determine the number of organisms, cells, or amount of a chemical substance found in a sample
<b>complete blood count</b>		diagnostic evaluation of blood to determine the number of erythrocytes, leukocytes, and thrombocytes per cubic millimeter of blood; abbreviated CBC
<b>differential</b>	(dihf-ər-ehn-shahl)	diagnostic evaluation of the number of white blood cell types per cubic millimeter of blood
<b>diluent</b>	(dihl-yoo-ehnt)	liquid used to make a dilution
<b>hematocrit</b>	(hē-maht-ō-kriht)	percentage of erythrocytes in blood; “to separate blood”; also called <b>crit</b> , <b>PCV</b> , or <b>packed cell volume</b> (Figure 16–7)
<b>hemogram</b>	(hē-mō-grahm)	record of the findings in examination of blood especially with reference to the numbers, proportions, and morphology of the blood cells
<b>immunofluorescence</b>	(ihm-yoo-nō-floo-rehs-ehns)	method of tagging antibodies with a luminating dye to detect antigen–antibody complexes
<b>leukogram</b>	(loo-kō-grahm)	numeric and descriptive data in the WBC distribution used to identify a pathologic process
<b>profile</b>	(prō-fil)	group of laboratory tests performed on serum; also called <b>screen</b> or <b>panel</b> ; includes tests that measure levels of glucose, liver enzymes, and kidney enzymes
<b>prothrombin time</b>	(prō-throhm-bihn)	diagnostic evaluation of the number of seconds needed for thromboplastin to coagulate plasma
<b>radioimmunoassay</b>	(rā-dē-ō-ihm-yoo-nō-ahs-ā)	laboratory technique in which a radioactively labeled substance is mixed with a blood specimen to determine the amount of a particular substance in the mixture; also called <b>radioassay</b>
<b>red cell count</b>		number of erythrocytes per cubic millimeter of blood
<b>serology</b>	(sē-rohl-ō-jē)	laboratory study of serum and the reactions of antigens and antibodies
<b>white cell count</b>		number of leukocytes per cubic millimeter of blood

Animal Medical Hospital	
⑤	Dog presented BAR c hx of persistent cough, anorexia, and wt loss.
②	T = 103.4 °F HR = 120 bpm RR = 30 breaths/min CRT = 1 sec mm = pink. Lungs auscultated harshly. Heart sounds appear (N). Rest of PE - WNL.
(A)	Respiratory disease — R/o Kennel cough, pneumonia.
(P)	Radiograph chest CBC Medication pending results.

**Figure 16-6** SOAP method of record keeping.

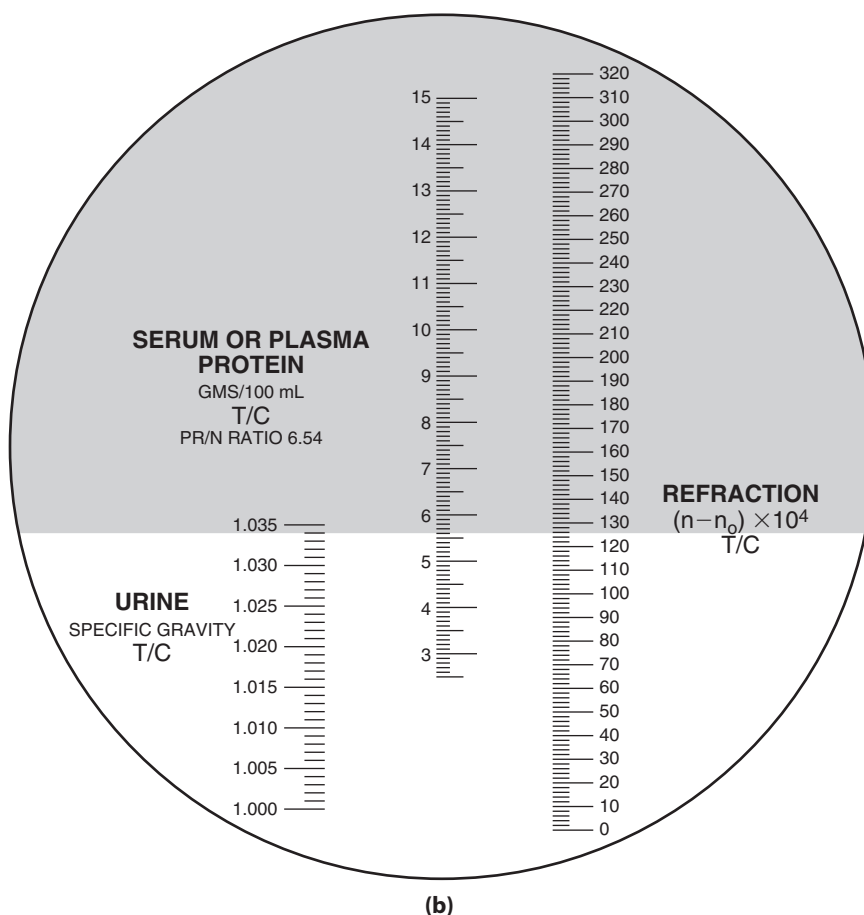


**Figure 16-7** Microhematocrit tubes are used to determine a patient's hematocrit.



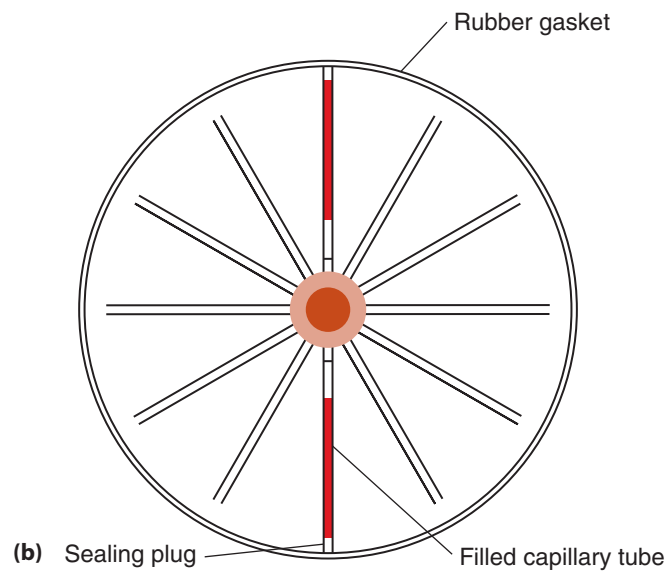
(a)

Special equipment is needed to prepare the samples for many laboratory tests. A **refractometer** (rē-frahck-tah-mē-tar) is an instrument used to determine the deviation of light through objects. Refractometers are used to measure solute (particle) concentration of serum, urine, and other body fluids (Figure 16-8).



(b)

**Figure 16-8** Refractometer. (a) A refractometer measures specific gravity optically. (b) This refractometer scale shows a urine specific gravity of 1.034 (lower left scale) and serum or plasma protein of 5.6 (middle scale).



**Figure 16–9** Centrifuge. (a) Microhematocrit centrifuge. (b) Proper placement of sealed capillary tubes in a microhematocrit centrifuge.



**Figure 16–10** Reagent strips (dipsticks) for chemical testing of urine.

**Table 16-2 Basic Medical Terms**

<b>Diagnosis</b> (dī-ahg-nō-sihs) is the determination of the cause of disease; to “know completely”; plural is <b>diagnoses</b> (dī-ahg-nō-sēz). To <b>diagnose</b> (dī-ahg-nōs) is to determine the cause of disease.	<b>Differential diagnosis</b> (dihf-ər-ehn-shahl dī-ahg-nō-sihs) is the determination of possible causes of diseases; a list of possible causes of disease.	<b>Prognosis</b> (prohg-nō-sihs) is the prediction of the outcome of disease; to “know before.”
<b>Sign</b> (sīn) is a characteristic of disease that can be observed by others.	<b>Symptom</b> (sihmp-tuhm) is a characteristic of disease that can be sensed only by the patient; incorrect term in veterinary medicine.	A <b>syndrome</b> (sihn-drōm) is a set of signs that occur together.
<b>Acute</b> (ah-kūt) means having a short course with a sudden onset; implies severe. <b>Peracute</b> (pər-ah-kyūt) means having an excessively acute onset.	<b>Chronic</b> (krohn-ihck) means having a long course with a progressive onset; persisting for a long time.	<b>Remission</b> (rē-mih-shuhn) is partial or complete disappearance of disease signs.
<b>Endemic</b> (ehn-dehm-ihck) is the ongoing presence of disease in a group; also called <b>enzootic</b> (ehn-zō-oh-tihck) if the disease is always present in an animal community.	<b>Epidemic</b> (ehp-ih-dehm-ihck) is the sudden and widespread outbreak of disease in a group; also called <b>epizootic</b> (ehp-ih-zō-oh-tihck) if the outbreak attacks many animals in a group.	<b>Pandemic</b> (pahm-dehm-ihck) is disease outbreak occurring over a large geographic area; also called <b>panzootic</b> (pahm-zō-oh-tihck) if the widespread outbreak affects many animals.

A **centrifuge** (sehn-trih-fūj) is a machine that spins samples very rapidly to separate elements based on weight. A centrifuge is used to separate the formed elements of blood from the liquid portion of blood. A centrifuge also separates the liquid portion of urine from the heavier solids (Figures 16–9a and b).

The pH of a sample also may provide information about a patient's status. The terms *acid* and *alkaline* are used to describe a patient's pH status. **Acid** (ah-sihd) is the property of low pH, or high number of hydrogen ions. **Alkaline** (ahl-kah-lihn) is the property of high pH, or low number of hydrogen ions. Alkaline also is called **basic** (Figure 16–10).

Urinalysis terms are discussed in Chapter 7.

## BASIC MEDICAL TERMS

Basic medical terms are listed in Table 16–2.

## PATHOGENIC ORGANISMS

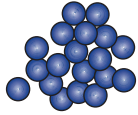
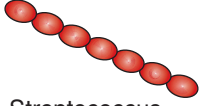








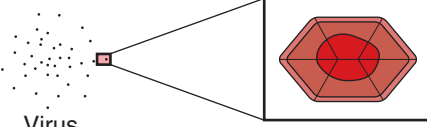
A **pathogen** (pahth-ō-jehn) is a microorganism that produces disease. A **microorganism** (mī-krō-ōr-gahn-ihzm) is a living organism of microscopic dimensions (Table 16–3). Not all microorganisms are pathogens. The term **virulence** (vihr-yoo-lehns) is used to describe the ability of an organism to cause disease.

## TYPES OF DISEASES

**Disease** is deviation from normal. There are different types of diseases, depending on how they are spread and what causes them. Types of diseases include the following:

- **contagious** (kohn-tā-juhs) **disease** = disease that can be spread from one animal to another by direct or indirect contact. Direct contact is spread from animal to animal, whereas indirect contact is spread through contact with contaminated objects. Contagious disease also may be referred to as **communicable** (kuh-mū-nih-kuh-buhl).
- **iatrogenic** (i-ah-t-rō-jehn-ihck) **disease** = disorder caused by physicians or veterinarians (and the treatment ordered).
- **idiopathic** (ihd-ē-ō-pahth-ihck) **disease** = disorder of unknown cause. Idiopathic disease is a disease peculiar to an individual and not likely to be seen in others.
- **infectious disease** (ihn-fehck-shuhs dih-zēz) = disorder caused by pathogenic organisms.
- **noncontagious** (nohn-kohn-tā-juhs) = disease that cannot be spread to another animal by contact or contact with a contaminated object.
- **noninfectious disease** (nohn-ihn-fehck-shuhs dih-zēz) = disorder not caused by organisms (examples include genetic, traumatic, and iatrogenic).
- **nosocomial infection** (nōs-ō-kō-mē-ahl ihn-fehck-shuhn) = disorder caused by pathogenic organisms contracted in a facility or clinic.

**Table 16-3 Types of Organisms**

Organism	Examples
<b>bacterium</b> (bahck-tê-rê-uhm) is a microscopic, microscopic, prokaryotic unicellular organism; plural is <b>bacteria</b> (bahck-tê-rê-ah). A prokaryote (prô-kahr-ê-ôt) is an organism without a membrane-bound nucleus.	<b>staphylococci</b> (stahf-ih-lô-kohck-sî) are grapelike clusters of spherical bacteria; <b>coccus</b> (kohck-uhs) means sphere. (cocci is plural)  Staphylococcus
	<b>streptococci</b> (strehp-tô-kohck-sî) are spherical bacteria that form chains.  Streptococcus
	<b>bacilli</b> (bah-sihl-î) are rod-shaped bacteria. (bacillus is singular)  Bacillus
	<b>spirochetes</b> (spî-rô-kêtz) are spiral-shaped bacteria that are tightly coiled.  Spirochete
	<b>endospore</b> (ehn-dô-spôr) is a resistant, oval body formed in some bacteria.  Endospore in bacterium  Free endospore
	<b>rickettsia</b> (rih-keht-sê-ah) is a small rod-shaped bacterium transmitted by lice, fleas, ticks, or mites. 
<b>fungus</b> (fuhng-guhs) is a eukaryotic organism without chlorophyll; plural is <b>fungi</b> (fuh-jî). A eukaryote (yoo-kahr-ê-ôt) is an organism with a membrane-bound nucleus.	<b>yeast</b> (yêst) is a budding form of fungus.  Yeast
	<b>mold</b> (mohld) is a filamentous form of fungi.  Mold
<b>parasite</b> (pahrah-sît) is an organism that lives on or in another living organism.	 Parasite
<b>virus</b> (vî-ruhs) is a small organism that is not visualized via microscopy; viruses live only by invading cells.	 Virus

## DISEASE TERMINOLOGY

- **asymptomatic** (ā-sihmp-tō-mah-tihck) = without signs of disease.
- **atraumatic** (ā-traw-mah-tihck) = pertaining to, resulting from, or caused by a noninjurious route.
- **carrier** (kahr-ē-ər) = animal that harbors an infectious agent without displaying clinical signs and who may transmit the infectious agent to others.
- **clinical** (klihn-ih-kahl) = visible, readily observed, pertaining to treatment.
- **contract** (kohn-trahtck) = to catch a disease.
- **disease** (dih-zēz) = deviation from normal health.
- **epidemiology** (ehp-ih-dē-mē-ohl-ō-jē) = study of relationships determining frequency and distribution of diseases.
- **etiology** (ē-tē-ohl-ō-jē) = study of disease causes.
- **excessive** (ehck-sehs-ihv) = more than normal.
- **focus** (fō-kuhs) = localized region.
- **germ** (jərm) = common term for any pathogenic microorganism, but especially bacterial and viral organisms.
- **incidence** (ihn-sih-dehns) = number of new cases of disease occurring during a given time.
- **labile** (lā-bil) = unstable.
- **lethal** (lē-thahl) = causing death.
- **morbid** (mōr-bihd) = afflicted with disease.
- **morbidity** (mōr-bihd-ih-tē) = ratio of diseased animals to well animals in a population.
- **moribund** (mōr-ih-buhnd) = near death.
- **mortality** (mōr-tahl-ih-tē) = ratio of diseased animals that die to diseased animals.
- **palliative** (pah-lē-ah-tihv) = able to relieve but not cure a condition.
- **phobia** (fō-bē-ah) = extreme fear.
- **prevalence** (preh-vah-lehns) = number of cases of disease in a population at a certain time.
- **prophylaxis** (prō-fihl-ahcks-sihs) = prevention.
- **sequela** (sē-kwehl-ah) = condition occurring as a consequence of another condition.
- **subclinical** (suhb-klihn-ih-kahl) = without showing signs of disease.
- **susceptible** (sah-sehp-tih-buhl) = lacking resistance.
- **swollen** (swohl-ehn) = enlarged by fluid retention.
- **transmissible** (trahnz-mihs-ih-buhl) = ability to transfer from one animal to the next.
- **transmission** (trahnz-mih-shuhn) = transfer from one animal to the next. There are different types of disease transmission, including **bloodborne transmission** (spread of disease via blood or body fluids), **sexual transmission** (spread of disease via contact with reproductive areas or through copulation), **airborne transmission** (spread of disease via respiratory droplets),

and **fecal–oral transmission** (spread of disease via eating, drinking, or licking contaminated food, water, or objects).

- **traumatic** (traw-mah-tihck) = pertaining to, resulting from, or causing injury.
- **zoonosis** (zō-ō-nō-sihs) = disease that can be transmitted between animals and humans.

## ENDOSCOPY

**Endoscopy** is the visual examination of the interior of any cavity of the body by means of an endoscope. The procedures and instruments are named for the body parts involved.

Specific endoscopic procedures are covered in the chapter of the body system on which they are used.

**Endoscopic surgery** is a procedure using an endoscope to aid in surgical procedures so that only very small incisions are made. Some instruments used in endoscopic surgery include a trocar and cannula. A **trocar** (trō-kahr) is a sharp, needlelike instrument that has a cannula (tube) that is used to puncture the wall of a body cavity to withdraw fluid or gas (Figure 16–11). A **cannula** (kahn-yoo-lah) is a hollow tube.

## CENTESIS

**Centesis** is the surgical puncture to remove fluid or gas for diagnostic purposes or for treatment. Specific centesis procedures are covered in the chapter of the body system in which they are used.



**Figure 16–11** Metal and indwelling plastic trocar. Both trocars have a solid pointed spike in the center that is removed once the trocar is in place. With the spike removed, the tube portion of the trocar allows gas to escape.

## IMAGING TECHNIQUES

Imaging techniques are used to visualize and examine internal structures of the body.

### Radiology

The first imaging technique developed involves the use of ionizing radiation, or X-rays, to produce an image. **Radiography** (rā-dē-ohg-rah-fē) is the procedure in which film is exposed as ionizing radiation passes through the patient and shows the internal body structures in profile. A **radiograph** (rā-dē-ō-grahf), or X-ray, is the record of ionizing radiation used to visualize internal body structures. Note that **graph** (as opposed to gram) is used to mean *record* in this case.

Radiographs are composed of shades of gray. Hard tissues such as bone are called radiopaque. **Radiopaque** (rā-dē-ō-pāk) means appearing white or light gray on a radiograph. Air and soft tissues are called radiolucent. **Radiolucent** (rā-dē-ō-loo-sehnt) means appearing black or dark gray on a radiograph.

**Radiology** (rā-dē-ohl-ō-jē) is the study of internal body structures after exposure to ionizing radiation. A radiologist

X-rays were discovered in 1895 by Wilhelm Konrad Roentgen, a German physicist.

**Radiology** comes from the Latin word **radius**, meaning a rod, and the suffix **-logy**, meaning the science of or the study of. Radiology also is known as roentgenology as a tribute to its discoverer. A **roentgen** (rehnt-gehn) is the international unit of radiation. Another term, **rad** (an acronym for *radiation absorbed dose*), is a unit by which absorption of ionizing radiation is measured.

Two abbreviations commonly used in radiography are kVp and MAS. **kVp** stands for kilovoltage peak and represents the strength of the X-ray beam. **MAS** stands for milliamperes per second and represents the number of X-ray beams (because it is based on time).



**Figure 16-12** Radiographic machine. (a) Radiographic table and X-ray tube. (b) Radiographic control panel. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

(rā-dē-ohl-ō-jihst) is a specialist who studies internal body structures after their exposure to ionizing radiation (Figure 16-12).

There are different types of radiographs depending on how they are taken and whether any additional diagnostic tool is used. A **scout film** is a plain radiograph made without the use of a contrast medium. A scout radiograph indicates whether abnormalities exist in the patient or whether there is need for further testing or for more specialized radiographic studies.

Some body structures, such as the intestinal lumen, are difficult to assess using X-rays alone. In those cases, a radiographic contrast medium may be used. **Radiographic contrast** (rā-dē-ō-grahf-ihck kohn-trahst) **medium** or material is a substance used to show structures on X-ray that are otherwise difficult to see. **Barium sulfate** (bār-ē-uhm suhl-fāt), or **barium**, is one example of contrast material.

The type of contrast radiograph taken depends on which structures are to be visualized (Figure 6–32). The route of administration of a contrast medium also varies depending on which structures are to be visualized.

A **lower GI** is a type of contrast radiograph used to visualize the structures of the lower gastrointestinal tract. In a lower GI, an enema is used to introduce contrast material into the colon; therefore, it also is called a **barium enema** (bār-ē-uhm ehn-ah-mah). An **upper GI** is a type of contrast radiograph used to visualize the structures of the upper gastrointestinal tract. In an upper GI, contrast material is swallowed; therefore, it also is called a **barium swallow** (bār-ē-uhm swahl-ō) (see Figure 6–19).

Contrast material also can be injected intravenously. An intravenous contrast medium is injected into the vein to

make visible the flow of blood through the blood vessels and organs.

Radiographic techniques also are named for the vessels or organs involved. An example is a **lymphangiography** (limh-fahn-jē-ohg-rah-fē), which is a radiographic examination of the lymphatic vessels after injection of contrast material.

## Projection and Positioning

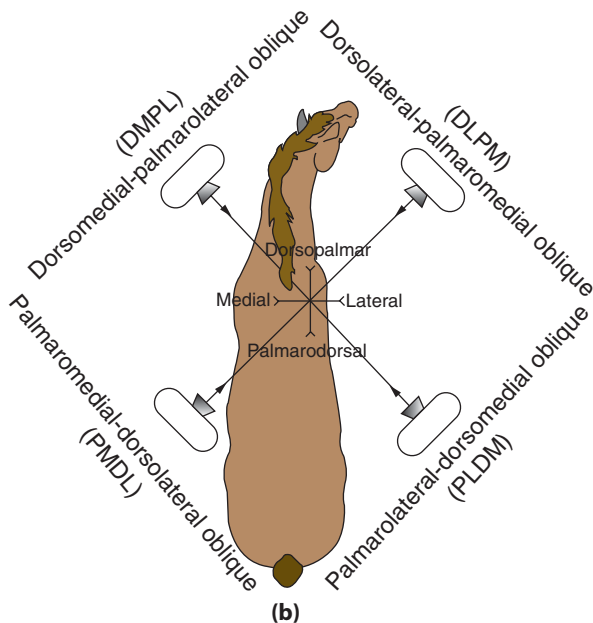
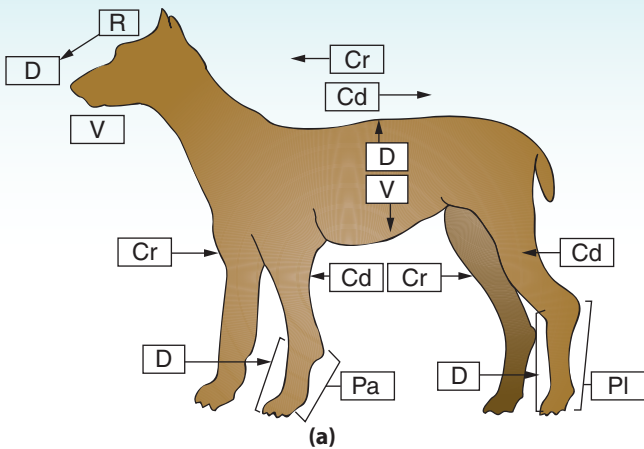
Two terms frequently used in radiography are *projection* and *positioning*. **Projection** (prō-jehck-shuhn) is the path of the X-ray beam (Table 16–4). **Positioning** (pō-sih-shuhn-ihng) is the specified body position and the part of the body closest to the film (Figures 16–13a and b). **Recumbency** is used in reference to positioning. (Refer to Chapter 2 for positional terms.) **Anatomical position** (ahn-ah-tohm-ihck-ahl pō-sih-shuhn) refers to the animal in its normal standing position.

## Computed Tomography

**Computed tomography** (kohm-puh-tehd tō-moh-grah-fē) is the procedure in which ionizing radiation with computer assistance passes through the patient and shows the internal body structures in cross-sectional views. It also

**Table 16–4 Types of Projection**

Projection	Pronunciation	Definition
<b>craniocaudal projection</b>	(krā-nē-ō-kaw-dahl prō-jehck-shuhn)	X-ray beam passes from cranial to caudal; formerly called <b>anteroposterior projection</b> (ahn-tēr-ō-pohs- tēr-ē-ər prō-jehck-shuhn), or A/P projection.
<b>caudocranial projection</b>	(kaw-dō-krā-nē-ahl prō-jehck-shuhn)	X-ray beam passes from caudal to cranial; formerly called <b>posteroanterior projection</b> (pohs-tēr-ō-ahn- tēr-ih-ər prō-jehck-shuhn), or P/A projection.
<b>dorsoventral projection</b>	(dōr-sō-vehn-trahl prō-jehck-shuhn)	X-ray beam passes dorsally to ventrally; abbreviated D/V.
<b>ventrodorsal projection</b>	(vehn-trō-dōr-sahl prō-jehck-shuhn)	X-ray beam passes ventrally to dorsally; abbreviated V/D.
<b>lateral projection</b>	(laht-ər-ahl prō-jehck-shuhn)	X-ray beam passes from side to side, with the patient at right angles to the film; when used for the skull, cervical spine, thorax, and abdomen, they are described as right or left lateral projections; when used for extremities, they are described as lateromedial or mediolateral projections.
<b>oblique projection</b>	(ō-blēk prō-jehck-shuhn)	X-ray beam passes through the body on an angle. May be further described by the direction of the beam and the degree of the angle (i.e., 60 degrees DP oblique of the hoof) or simply the direction (i.e., dorsomedial-palmarolateral oblique [DMPaLO] of the carpus).

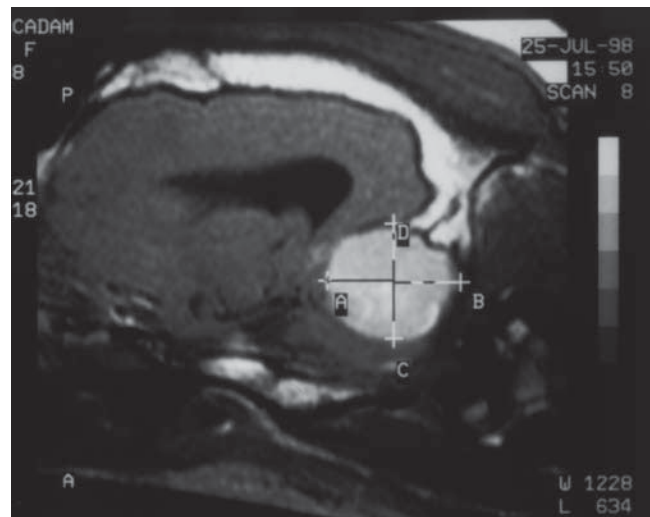


**Figure 16-13** Directional terms used for veterinary radiography with their standard abbreviations (based on American College of Veterinary Radiologists) are shown in these figures. Cr = cranial, D = dorsal, V = ventral, R = rostral, Pa = palmar, Pl = plantar, L = lateral, and M = medial. (a) When radiographic views of given structures are written, medial and lateral should be subservient when used in combination with other terms (e.g., dorsomedial); (b) on the limbs, dorsal, palmar, plantar, cranial, and caudal should take precedence when used in combination with other terms (e.g., dorsoproximal).

is called **CT scan** or **CAT** (computed axial tomography) **scan. Tomography** (tō-moh-grah-fē) is a recording of the internal body structures at predetermined planes. Information obtained by radiation detectors is downloaded to a computer, analyzed, and converted to grayscale images corresponding to anatomical body slices. Those images are viewed on a monitor or as a printed hard copy (Figure 16-14).



**Figure 16-14** CT scan. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 16-15** MRI with contrast material in a dog with a cerebellar tumor. (Courtesy of Anne E. Chauvet, DVM, Diplomate ACVIM—Neurology, University of Wisconsin School of Veterinary Medicine.)

## Magnetic Resonance Imaging

**Magnetic resonance imaging** (mahg-neh-tihck reh-sohn-ahns ih-mah-jihng) is the procedure in which radio waves and a strong magnetic field pass through the patient and show the internal body structures in three-dimensional views. Magnetic resonance imaging is abbreviated MRI. MRI is used for imaging the brain, spine, and joints (Figure 16-15).

## Fluoroscopy

**Fluoroscopy** (floor-ohs-kō-pē) is the procedure used to visually examine internal body structures in motion using radiation



**Figure 16-16** Ultrasound of a canine abdomen. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC.)

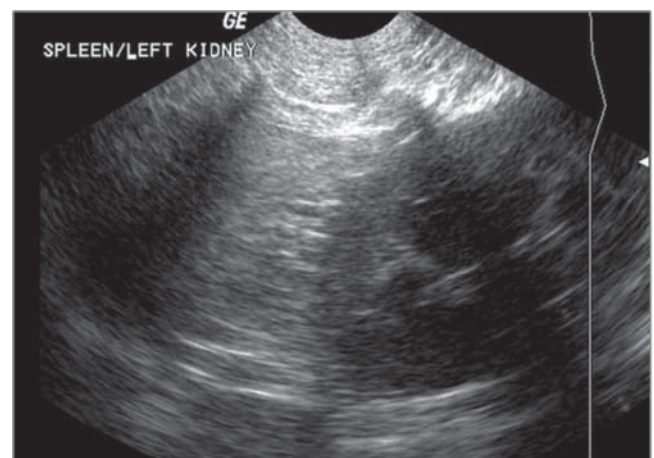
to project images on a fluorescent screen. The combining form **fluor/o** means luminous. **Luminous** (loo-mih-nuhs) means giving off a soft light.

## Ultrasound

**Ultrasound** (uhl-trah-sownd), or **ultrasonography** (uhl-trah-soh-noh-grah-fê), is the imaging of internal body structures by recording echoes of high-frequency waves. Ultrasound is most effective for viewing solid organs or soft tissues not blocked by bone or air. Ultrasound also is effective for viewing body parts through fluid, as in an ultrasound of a gravid uterus. A **sonogram** (soh-nô-grahm) shows the internal body structures by recording echoes of pulses of sound waves above the range of human hearing (Figure 16-16).

The following terms are related to ultrasound techniques:

- **amplitude** (ahm-plih-tood) = intensity of an ultrasound wave.
- **anechoic** (ahn-eh-kô-ihck) = ultrasonic term for when waves are transmitted to deeper tissue and none are reflected back.
- **attenuation** (ah-tehn-yoo-â-shuhn) = loss of intensity of the ultrasound beam as it travels through tissue.
- **echoic** (eh-kô-ihck) = ultrasound property of producing adequate levels of reflections (echoes) when sound waves are returned to the transducer and displayed.
- **frequency** (frê-kwehn-sê) = number of cycles per unit of time.
- **hyperechoic** (hî-pêr-eh-kô-ihck) = tissue that reflects more sound back to the transducer than the surrounding tissues; appears bright (Figure 16-17).
- **hypoechoic** (hî-pô-eh-kô-ihck) = tissue that reflects less sound back to the transducer than the surrounding tissues; appears dark.
- **isoechoic** (i-sô-eh-kô-ihck) = tissue that has the same ultrasonic appearance as that of the surrounding tissue.
- **resolution** (reh-sô-loo-shuhn) = ability to separately identify different structures on radiograph or ultrasound.
- **velocity** (vehl-oh-sih-tê) = speed at which something travels through an object.
- **wavelength** (wāv-lehngth) = length that a wave must travel in one cycle.



**Figure 16-17** Ultrasound image of spleen and kidney showing hyperechoic and hypoechoic areas. The kidney is hypoechoic to the spleen. (Courtesy of Fern Delany, RDMS, VMTH University of Wisconsin-Madison.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

---

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. Examination by tapping the surface to determine density of a body area is called
  - a. palpation
  - b. auscultation
  - c. percussion
  - d. tapping
2. The percentage of RBCs in blood is called a
  - a. hematocrit
  - b. PCV
  - c. crit
  - d. all of the above
3. A machine that spins samples very rapidly to separate elements based on weight is a
  - a. counter
  - b. centrifuge
  - c. refractometer
  - d. cannula
4. The quality of appearing white or light gray on a radiograph is called
  - a. radiopaque
  - b. radiolucent
  - c. radiodense
  - d. radiopale
5. The determination of the cause of disease is the
  - a. prognosis
  - b. diagnosis
  - c. symptom
  - d. sign
6. A set of signs that occur together is called a(n)
  - a. sign
  - b. symptom
  - c. endemic
  - d. syndrome
7. The medical term for sphere is
  - a. bacilli
  - b. spirochete
  - c. coccus
  - d. strept/o
8. The term for relief of condition but not a cure is
  - a. prognosis
  - b. diagnosis
  - c. prevalence
  - d. palliative
9. Pertaining to fever is
  - a. febrile
  - b. friable
  - c. lethal
  - d. morbid
10. A disease that can be transmitted between animals and humans is said to be
  - a. animalistic
  - b. zoonotic
  - c. humanistic
  - d. sequela
11. What is the term for the ultrasound property of producing adequate levels of reflections (echoes) when sound waves are returned to the transducer and displayed?
  - a. echoic
  - b. anechoic
  - c. hyperechoic
  - d. hypoechoic
12. The acronym used to describe a unit by which absorption of ionizing radiation is measured is
  - a. MAS
  - b. kVp
  - c. CT
  - d. rad
13. Surgical puncture to remove fluid or gas for diagnostic purposes or for treatment is known as
  - a. cannula
  - b. centesis
  - c. contagious
  - d. communicable
14. Examination by feeling is
  - a. percussion
  - b. auscultation
  - c. assessment
  - d. palpation

15. Clumping of cells is known as
- a. an assay
  - b. agglutination
  - c. serology
  - d. a profile
16. The medical term for prevention is
- a. prevalence
  - b. palliative
  - c. prophylaxis
  - d. phobia
17. The description of an animal with information about the animal, including the species, breed, age, and sexual status, is called the animal's
- a. symptoms
  - b. signalment
  - c. assessment
  - d. auscultation
18. A decrease in body temperature is known as
- a. afebrile
  - b. febrile
  - c. hypothermia
  - d. prognosis
19. The term for having a short course is
- a. remission
  - b. acute
  - c. chronic
  - d. endemia
20. The study of disease causes is
- a. etiology
  - b. toxicology
  - c. biology
  - d. pathology

**Matching**

Match the testing term in Column I with the definition in Column II.

**Column I**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ infectious disease
2. \_\_\_\_\_ contagious disease
3. \_\_\_\_\_ noncontagious disease
4. \_\_\_\_\_ noninfectious disease
5. \_\_\_\_\_ communicable disease
6. \_\_\_\_\_ iatrogenic disease
7. \_\_\_\_\_ nosocomial infection
8. \_\_\_\_\_ zoonotic disease
9. \_\_\_\_\_ diagnosis
10. \_\_\_\_\_ susceptible
11. \_\_\_\_\_ trocar
12. \_\_\_\_\_ projection
13. \_\_\_\_\_ roentgen
14. \_\_\_\_\_ bacillus
15. \_\_\_\_\_ coccus
16. \_\_\_\_\_ chronic

**Column II**

- a. disorder caused by physicians or veterinarians and the treatment ordered
- b. disorder caused by pathogenic organisms contracted in a facility or clinic
- c. disease spread from one animal to another by direct or indirect contact
- d. disorder caused by pathogenic organisms
- e. disease that can be transmitted between animals and humans
- f. disorder transmitted from animal to animal or through contact with contaminated objects
- g. disorder not caused by organisms (examples include genetic, traumatic, and iatrogenic)
- h. disease that cannot be spread to another animal by contact or contact with an infected object
- i. international unit of radiation
- j. path of the X-ray beam
- k. spherical bacterium
- l. determination of the cause of disease
- m. having a long course
- n. sharp, needlelike instrument that has a tube that is used to puncture the wall of a body cavity to withdraw fluid or gas
- o. rod-shaped bacterium
- p. lacking resistance

**Fill in the Blanks**

1. Pyr/o means \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Fluor/o means \_\_\_\_\_.
3. a- means \_\_\_\_\_.
4. HR is the abbreviation for \_\_\_\_\_.
5. RR is the abbreviation for \_\_\_\_\_.
6. V/D is the abbreviation for \_\_\_\_\_.
7. MLO is the abbreviation for \_\_\_\_\_.
8. DLPM is the abbreviation for \_\_\_\_\_.
9. DMPL is the abbreviation for \_\_\_\_\_.
10. DP is the abbreviation for \_\_\_\_\_.

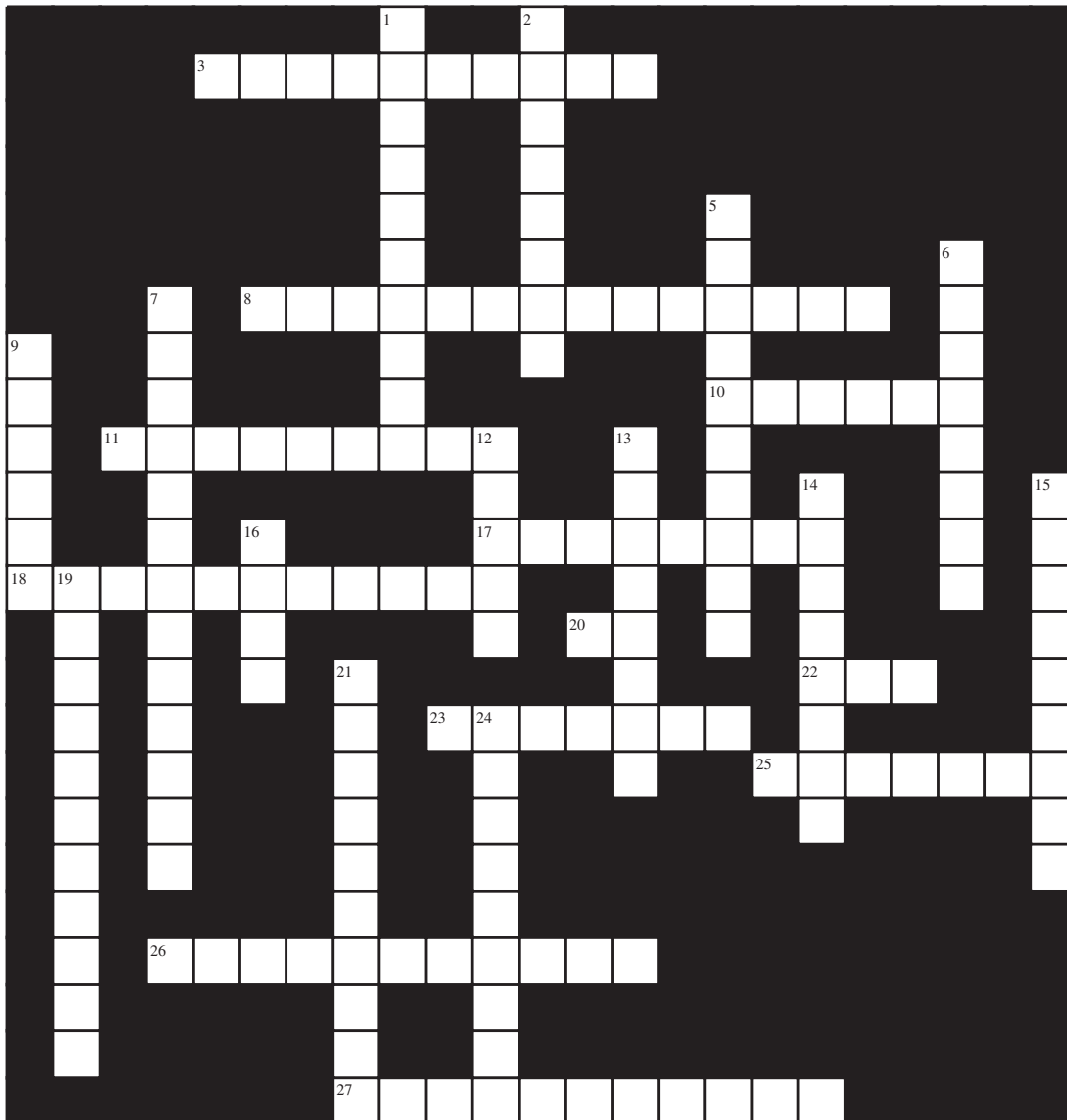
**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |   |            |            |           |
|---|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. ability of an organism to cause disease:                                       | virilence  | virulence  | virulense |
| 2. able to be spread from one animal to another<br>by direct or indirect contact: | contagious | kontagious | contagous |
| 3. laboratory study of serum:   | sirology   | sarology   | serology  |
| 4. fever:   | pyrexia    | pyrexa     | pirexa    |
| 5. instrument used to enlarge the opening of a canal or cavity:                   | spekulum   | speculum   | speckulum |

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Testing Terminology Puzzle



**Across**

- 3 tissue that reflects less sound back to the transducer than the surrounding tissues; appears dark
- 8 number of leukocytes per cubic milliliter of blood
- 10 ultrasound property of producing adequate levels of reflections (echoes) when sound waves are returned to the transducer and displayed
- 11 number of cycles per unit of time
- 17 high pH property
- 18 spiral-shaped bacteria
- 20 concentration of hydrogen ions
- 22 diagnostic evaluation of blood to determine the number of rbc, wbc, and thrombocytes per cubic milliliter of blood
- 23 rod-shaped bacteria
- 25 combining form for chain
- 26 loss of intensity of the ultrasound beam as it travels through tissue
- 27 tissue that reflects more sound back to the transducer than the surrounding tissues; appears bright

**Down**

- 1 ability to separately identify different structures on radiograph or ultrasound
- 2 international unit of radiation
- 5 path of the X-ray beam
- 6 ultrasonic term for when waves are transmitted to deeper tissue and none are reflected back
- 7 microscopic living organism
- 9 plant-like eukaryotic organism without chlorophyll
- 12 budding form of fungus
- 13 combining form for grapelike clusters
- 14 speed at which something travels through an object
- 15 tissue that has the same ultrasonic appearance as that of the surrounding tissue
- 16 low pH property
- 19 specified body position and the part of the body closest to the film
- 21 length that a wave must travel in one cycle
- 24 intensity of an ultrasound wave



# CHAPTER 17

## DRUGS, DISEASES, AND DISSECTION

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce the terms associated with pharmacology and drugs used in various treatments
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce the terms associated with pathological procedures and processes
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce the terms associated with different types of surgery and the instruments used in surgery

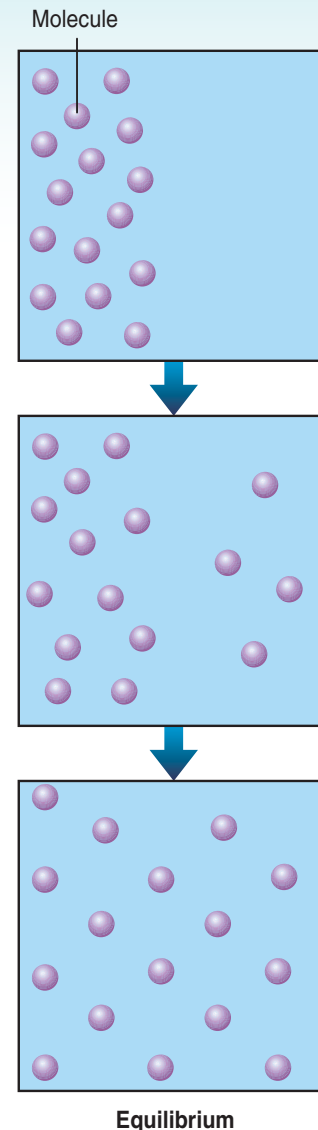
### PHARMACOLOGIC TERMS

**Pharmacology** (fahrm-ah-kohl-lō-jē) is the study of the nature, uses, and effects of drugs. Some drugs are dispensed only by a licensed professional, and other drugs are not. A **prescription** (prē-skrihp-shuhn) **drug** is a medication that may be purchased by prescription or from a licensed professional. An **over-the-counter** (ō-vər teh kount-ər) **drug** is a medication that may be purchased without a prescription. A **generic** (jehn-ār-ihck) **drug** is a medication not protected by a brand name or trademark. (It also is called a **nonproprietary drug**.)



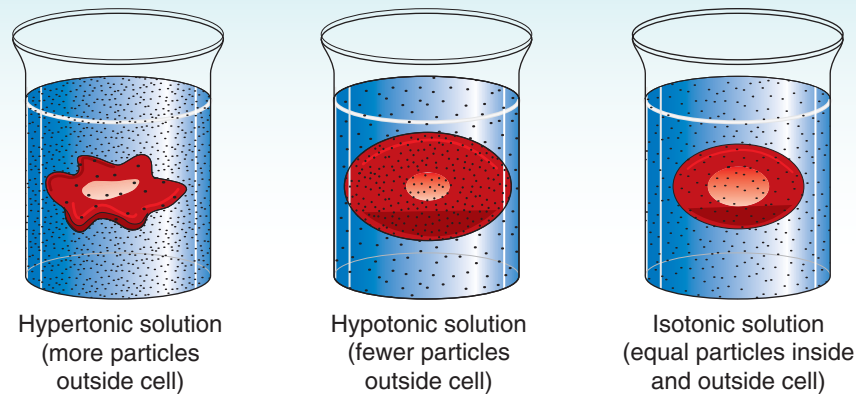
## Pharmacology

- **agonist** (ā-gohn-ihst) = substance that produces effect by binding to an appropriate receptor.
- **antagonist** (ahn-tā-gohn-ihst) = substance that inhibits a specific action by binding with a particular receptor instead of allowing the agonist to bind to the receptor.
- **antiserum** (ahn-tih-sēr-uhm) = serum containing specific antibodies extracted from a hyperimmunized animal, or an animal that has been infected with the microorganisms containing antigen.
- **antitoxin** (ahn-tih-tohcks-sihn) = specific antiserum aimed at a poison that contains a concentration of antibodies extracted from the serum or plasma of a healthy animal.
- **bacterin** (bahck-tār-ihn) = bacterial vaccine.
- **chelated** (kē-lā-tehd) = bound to and precipitated out of solution.
- **contraindication** (kohn-trah-ihn-dih-kā-shuhn) = recommendation not to use.
- **diffusion** (dih-fū-shuhn) = movement of solutes from an area of high concentration of particles to one of low concentration of particles (Figure 17-1).
- **dosage** (dō-sahj) = amount of medication based on units per weight of animal (such as 10 mg/lb and 2 mg/kg).
- **dosage interval** (dō-sahj ihn-tār-vahl) = time between administrations of a drug (such as bid or q12h).
- **dose** (dōs) = amount of medication measured (such as milligrams, milliliters, units, and grams).
- **drug** (druhɡ) = agent used to diagnose, prevent, or treat a disease.
- **efficacy** (ehf-ih-kah-sē) = extent to which a drug causes the intended effects; effectiveness.
- **endogenous** (ehn-dah-jehn-uhs) = originating within the body.
- **exogenous** (ehcks-ah-jehn-uhs) = originating outside the body.
- **hydrophilic** (hī-drō-fihl-ihck) = water-loving; ionized form.
- **hyperkalemia** (hī-pār-kā-lē-mē-ah) = excessive level of blood potassium.
- **hypernatremia** (hī-pār-nā-trē-mē-ah) = excessive level of blood sodium.
- **hypertonic** (hī-pār-tohn-ihck) **solution** = solution that has more particles than the solution or cell to which it is being compared. The tonicity of solutions usually is compared to blood cells (Figure 17-2).
- **hypokalemia** (hī-pō-kā-lē-mē-ah) = deficiency of blood potassium.
- **hyponatremia** (hī-pō-nā-trē-mē-ah) = deficiency of blood sodium.
- **hypotonic** (hī-pō-tohn-ihck) **solution** = solution that has fewer particles than the solution or cell to which it is being compared (Figure 17-2).

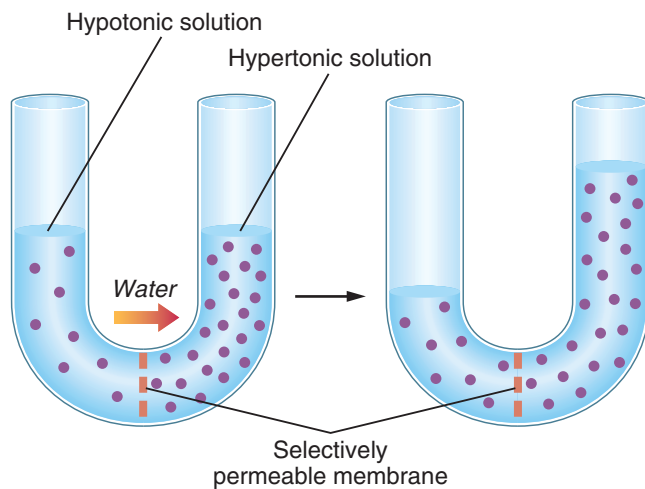


**Figure 17-1** Diffusion is the random movement of molecules from an area of high concentration of particles to an area of low concentration of particles. Diffusion can occur in the presence or absence of a membrane.

- **hypovolemia** (hī-pō-vō-lē-mē-ah) = low circulating blood volume.
- **ionized** (ī-ohn-īzd) = electrically charged.
- **isotonic** (ī-sō-tohn-ihck) **solution** = solution that has equal particles to the solution or cell to which it is being compared (Figure 17-2).
- **lipophilic** (lih-pō-fihl-ihck) = fat-loving; nonionized form.
- **monovalent** (mohn-ō-vā-lehnt) = vaccine, antiserum, or antitoxin developed specifically for a single antigen or organism.
- **nonionized** (nohn-ī-ohn-īzd) = not charged electrically.
- **osmosis** (ohz-mō-sihs) = movement of water across a selectively permeable membrane along its concentration gradient (Figure 17-3).



**Figure 17-2** Solution tonicity.



**Figure 17-3** Osmosis is the movement of water across a selectively permeable membrane along its concentration gradient. In this example, water moves across the membrane to equalize the concentration of particles.

- **pharmacodynamics** (fahrm-ah-kō-dī-nahm-ihcks) = physiological effects of drugs and their mechanisms of action.
- **pharmacokinetics** (fahrm-ah-kō-kihn-eht-ihcks) = movement of drugs or chemicals; consists of absorption, distribution, biotransformation, and elimination.
- **placebo** (plah-sē-bō) = inactive substance that is given for its suggestive effects or substance used as a control in experimental setting.
- **polyvalent** (poh-lē-vā-lehnt) = vaccine, antiserum, or antitoxin that is active against multiple antigens or organisms; mixed vaccine.
- **prevention** (prē-vehn-shuhn) = avoidance; also called **prophylaxis** (prō-fih-lahck-sihs).
- **regimen** (reh-jeh-mehn) = course of treatment.
- **turgor** (tər-gər) = degree of fullness or rigidity caused by fluid content.

## Routes of Administration

- **inhalation** (ihn-hah-lā-shuhn) = vapors and gases taken in through the nose and mouth and absorbed into the bloodstream through the lungs (Figure 17-4).
- **intra-arterial** (ihn-trah-ahr-tehr-ē-ahl) = within the artery; abbreviated IA.
- **intra-dermal** (ihn-trah-dər-mahl) = within the skin; abbreviated ID.

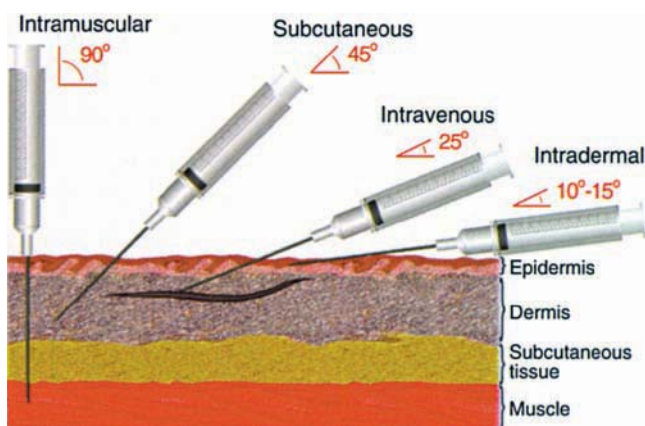


**Figure 17-4** Inhalation anesthesia is given to the patient via an anesthetic machine.

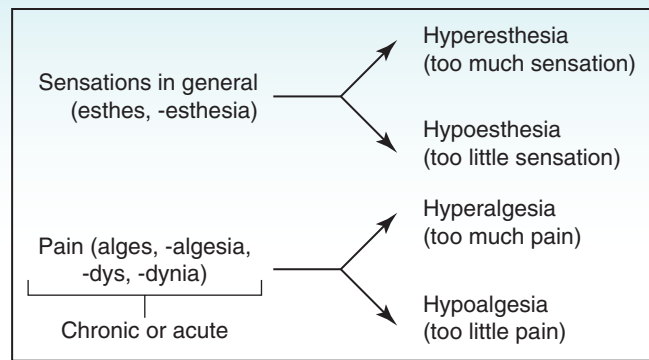
- **intramuscular** (ihn-trah-muhs-kyū-lahr) = within the muscle; abbreviated IM.
- **intraocular** (ihn-trah-ohck-yoo-lahr) = within the eye.
- **intraosseous** (ihn-trah-ohs-ē-uhs) = within the bone (medullary cavity of a long bone).
- **intraperitoneal** (ihn-trah-pehr-ih-tohn-ē-ahl) = within the peritoneal cavity; abbreviated IP.
- **intrathecal** (ihn-trah-thē-kahl) = within a sheath; injection of a substance through the spinal cord and into the subarachnoid space.
- **intratracheal** (ihn-trah-trā-kē-ahl) = within the trachea, or windpipe.
- **intravenous** (ihn-trah-vehn-uhs) = within the vein; abbreviated IV.
- **nebulization** (nehb-yoo-lih-zā-shuhn) = process of making a fine mist; a method of drug administration.
- **nonparenteral** (nohn-pah-rehn-tər-ahl) = administration via the gastrointestinal tract.
- **oral** (ōr-ahl) = by mouth; abbreviated PO or p.o. *Nothing orally* is abbreviated NPO or n.p.o.
- **parenteral** (pah-rehn-tər-ahl) = through routes other than the gastrointestinal tract (Figure 17–5).
- **percutaneous** (pehr-kyoo-tā-nē-uhs) = through the skin.
- **rectal** (rehck-tahl) = by rectum.
- **subcutaneous** (suhb-kyoo-tā-nē-uhs) = under the skin, or dermal layer; abbreviated SQ, SC, or subq.
- **sublingual** (suhb-lihng-wahl) = under the tongue.
- **transdermal** (trahnz-dər-mahl) = across the skin. Medication is stored in a patch placed on the skin, and the medication is absorbed through the skin.

## Drug Categories

- **analgesic** (ahn-ahl-jē-zihck) = substance that relieves pain without affecting consciousness.
- **anesthetic** (ahn-ehs-theht-ihck) = substance that produces a lack of sensation (Figure 17–6).



**Figure 17–5** Examples of parenteral routes of drug administration.



**Figure 17–6** Word parts for sensation and pain.

- **anthelmintic** (ahn-thehl-mihn-tihck) = substance that works against intestinal worms.
- **antibiotic** (ahn-tih-bi-ah-tihck) = substance that inhibits the growth of or kills bacteria. Antibiotics can be **bacteriostatic** (bahck-tē-rē-ō-stah-tihck), which means controlling bacterial growth (inhibiting bacterial replication), or **bactericidal** (bahck-tē-rē-si-dahl), which means killing bacteria.
- **anticoagulant** (ahn-tih-kō-ahg-yoo-lahnt) = substance that inhibits clot formation.
- **anticonvulsant** (ahn-tih-kohn-vuhl-sahnt) = substance that prevents seizures.
- **antidiarrheal** (ahn-tih-dī-ər-rē-ahl) = substance that prevents watery, frequent bowel movements.
- **antiemetic** (ahn-tih-ē-meh-tihck) = substance that prevents vomiting.
- **antineoplastic agent** (ahn-tih-nē-ō-plah-stihck ā-jehnt) = substance that treats neoplasms; usually used against malignancies.
- **antipruritic agent** (ahn-tih-prər-ih-tihck ā-jehnt) = substance that controls itching.
- **antipyretic** (ahn-tih-pī-reh-tihck) = substance that reduces fever.
- **antiseptic** (ahn-tih-sehp-tihck) = chemical agent that kills or prevents the growth of microorganisms on living tissue.
- **antitussive** (ahn-tih-tuhs-ihv) = substance that reduces coughing.
- **asepsis** (ā-sehp-sihs) = state without infection.
- **chronotrope** (krohn-ō-trōp) = substance that changes heart rate. Positive chronotropes increase heart rate, while negative chronotropes decrease heart rate.
- **cytotoxic agent** (sī-tō-tohcks-ihck ā-jehnt) = substance that kills or damages cells.
- **disinfectant** (dihs-ehn-fehck-tahnt) = chemical agent that kills or prevents the growth of microorganisms on inanimate objects.
- **emetic** (ē-meh-tihck) = substance that induces vomiting.
- **endectocide** (ehnd-ehck-tō-sid) = agent that kills both internal and external parasites.

- **immunosuppressant** (ihm-yoo-nō-suhp-prehsahnt) = substance that prevents or decreases the body's reaction to invasion by disease or foreign material.
- **inotrope** (ihn-ō-trōp) = substance affecting muscle contraction. Positive inotropes increase myocardial contractility, while negative inotropes decrease myocardial contractility.
- **miotic agent** (mī-ah-tihck ā-jehnt) = substance used to constrict the pupils.
- **mucolytic** (mū-kō-lih-tihck) = substance that breaks up mucus and reduces its viscosity.
- **mydriatic agent** (mihd-rē-ah-tihck ā-jehnt) = substance used to dilate the pupils.
- **sterilize** (stehr-ih-līz) = to destroy all organisms including bacterial endospores.

## Weights and Measures

- **centimeter** (sehn-tih-mē-tār) = metric unit of length equal to one one-hundredth of a meter; abbreviated cm.
- **dram** (drahm) = apothecary unit of measure used for prescription vials. One dram equals 1.8 ounce (by weight), and 1 fluid dram equals 4 mL.
- **gram** (gramm) = metric base unit of weight equal to 0.035 ounce; abbreviated g.
- **kilogram** (kihl-ō-grahm) = metric unit of weight that is 1000 grams; 1 kilogram is approximately 2.2 pounds; abbreviated kg.
- **liter** (lē-tār) = metric base unit of volume equal to 0.2642 gallons; abbreviated L.
- **meter** (mē-tār) = metric base unit of length equal to 1.09 yards; abbreviated m.
- **milligram** (mihl-ih-grahm) = metric unit of weight equal to one one-thousandth of a gram; abbreviated mg.
- **milliliter** (mihl-ih-lē-tār) = metric unit of volume equal to 0.034 of an ounce or one one-thousandth of a liter; abbreviated mL; equivalent to 1 cubic centimeter (cc) (Table 17-1).
- **millimeter** (mihl-ih-mē-tār) = metric unit of length equal to one one-thousandth of a meter; abbreviated mm.
- **percent** (pər-sehnt) = part per 100 parts; represented by %.

## SURGICAL TERMS

**Surgery** is the branch of science that treats diseases, injuries, and deformities by manual or operative methods. Surgical terms were developed to describe concisely many surgical procedures. Some surgical terms include the following:

- **appositional** (ahp-ō-sih-shuhn-ahl) = placed side to side.
- **aseptic technique** (ā-sehp-tihck tehck-nēk) = precautions taken to prevent contamination of a surgical wound.
- **avulsion** (ə-vuhl-shuhn) = tearing away of a part.

**Table 17-1 Frequently Used Drug Abbreviations**

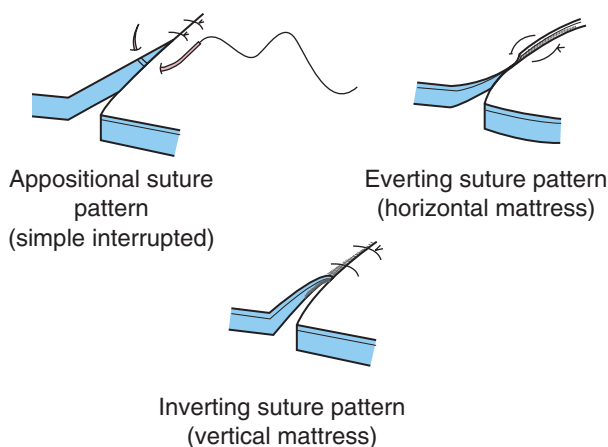
Abbreviation	Definition
bid	twice daily (bis in die)
$\bar{c}$	with
cc	cubic centimeter (same as mL)
gt	drop (gutta); drops is gtt (guttae)
mL	milliliter
NPO/n.p.o	nothing orally (non per os)
$\bar{p}$	after
PO/p.o.	orally (per os)
prn	as needed
q	every
q4h	every 4 hours
q6h	every 6 hours
q8h	every 8 hours
q12h	every 12 hours
q24h	every 24 hours
qd	every day (same as sid)
qh	every hour
qid	four times daily
qn	every night
qod or eod	every other day
$\bar{s}$	without
sid	once daily (qd or q24h is the preferred abbreviation)
T	tablespoon or tablet
tab	tablet (also abbreviated T)
tid	three times daily (ter in die)

- **coaptation** (kō-ahp-tā-shuhn) = act of approximating.
- **curettage** (kyoo-reh-tahj) = removal of material or growths from the surface of a cavity.

- **debridement** (deh-brēd-mehnt) = removal of foreign material and devitalized or contaminated tissue.
- **dehiscence** (dē-hihs-ehns) = disruption or opening of the surgical wound (Figure 17-7).
- **dissect** (dī-sehckt) = separation or cutting apart; **dissectare** is Latin for “to cut up.”
- **enucleation** (ē-nā-klē-ā-shuhn) = removal of an organ in whole; usually used for removal of the eyeball (Figure 14-18).
- **epithelialization** (ehp-ih-thē-lē-ahl-ih-zā-shuhn) = healing by growth of epithelium over an incomplete surface.
- **eversion** (ē-vər-shuhn) = turning outward (Figure 17-8).
- **eviscerate** (ē-vihs-ər-āt) = removal or exposure of internal organs.
- **excise** (ehck-sīz) = to surgically remove.
- **exteriorize** (ehcks-tēr-ē-ōr-īz) = to move an internal organ to the outside of the body (Figure 12-26 which shows exteriorization of the female reproductive tract).



**Figure 17-7** Wound dehiscence in a cat. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



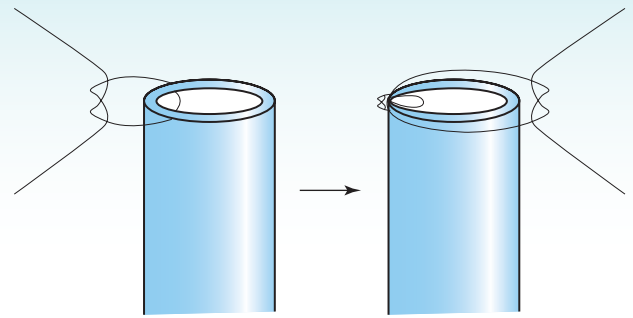
**Figure 17-8** Appositional versus everting versus inverting suture patterns.



**Figure 17-9** Skin graft in a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

- **fenestration** (fehn-ih-strā-shuhn) = perforation.
- **flap** (flahp) = mass of tissue for grafting in which part of the tissue still adheres to the body; used to repair defects adjacent to the mass site.
- **fracture** (frahck-shər) = breaking of a part, especially a bone.
- **friable** (frī-ah-buhl) = easily crumbled.
- **fulguration** (fuhl-gər-ā-shuhn) = destruction of living tissue by electric sparks generated by a high-frequency current.
- **graft** (grahft) = tissue or organ for transplantation or implantation (Figure 17-9). There are different types of grafts. An **allograft** (ah-lō-grahft) is a graft from another individual of the same species. An **autograft** (awt-ō-grahft) is a graft from the same individual. An **isograft** (ī-sō-grahft) is a graft from genetically identical animals, such as twins or inbred strains.
- **imbrication** (ihm-brih-kā-shuhn) = overlapping of apposing surfaces to realign organs and provide extra support.
- **implant** (ihm-plahnt) = material inserted or grafted into the body.
- **incise** (ihn-sīz) = to surgically cut into.
- **intraop** (ihn-trah-ohp) = common term for *during surgery*; intraoperatively.
- **inversion** (ihn-vər-shuhn) = turning inward.
- **involucrum** (ihn-voh-loo-kruhm) = covering or sheath that contains a sequestrum of bone.
- **laceration** (lah-sihr-ā-shuhn) = act of tearing.
- **lavage** (lah-vahj) = irrigation of tissue with fluid.
- **ligate** (li-gāt) = to tie or strangulate. A **ligature** (lih-ah-chūr) is any substance used to tie or strangulate. Ligatures usually are made of suture material.
- **lumpectomy** (luhmp-ehck-tō-mē) = general term for surgical removal of a mass.
- **pinning** (pihn-ihng) = insertion of a metal rod into the medullary cavity of a long bone.

- **postop** (pōst-ohp) = common term for after surgery; postoperatively.
- **preop** (prē-ohp) = common term for before surgery; preoperatively.
- **resect** (rē-sehckt) = to remove an organ or tissue. Resect is used in reference to holding tissue or an organ out of the surgical field.
- **rupture** (ruh-p-chuhr) = forcible tearing.
- **sacculotomy** (sahk-yoo-lehck-tō-mē) = surgical removal of a saclike part; usually refers to surgical removal of the anal sacs.
- **seroma** (sehr-ō-mah) = accumulation of serum beneath the surgical incision.
- **suction** (suhck-shuhn) = aspiration of gas or fluid by mechanical means (Figures 17–10a and b).
- **suture** (soo-chuhr) = to stitch or close an area; also refers to the material used in closing a surgical or traumatic



Transfixion suture

**Figure 17–11** Transfixion suture. Transfixion sutures are used for large, isolated vessels and organs to prevent slippage of the ligature.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 17–10** (a) Suction is used to remove fluid (or gas) during surgery. (b) Suction unit showing the collection chamber. [(a) Courtesy of Dr. David Sweet and Ann Zackim; (b) Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.]

wound with stitches. Suture material may be absorbable or nonabsorbable. (Suture also is a type of joint.)

- **transect** (trahn-sehckt) = to cut across; a cross section or section made across a long axis. **Sect** means to cut.
- **transfix** (trahnz-fihcks) = pierce through and through. A transfixion suture pierces through an organ before ligation (Figure 17–11).
- **transplant** (trahnz-plahnt) = to transfer tissue from one part to another part.
- **wicking** (wihck-ihng) = applying material to move liquid from one area to another.

## Surgical Equipment

- **autoclave** (aw-tō-klāv) = apparatus for sterilizing by steam under pressure (Figure 17–12).
- **bandage** (bahn-dahj) = to cover by wrapping or the material used to cover by wrapping (Figure 17–13).
- **belly band** (behl-ē bahnd) = common term for abdominal wrap; circumferentially wrapping the abdomen with bandages to apply pressure to the area.
- **bone plate** = flat metal bar with screw holes that is used in bone fracture repair (Figures 17–14a and b).
- **bone screw** = screw that holds bone fragments together to repair bone fractures.
- **boxlock** (bohcks-lohck) = movable joint of any ringed instrument (Figure 17–15).
- **cast** (kahst) = stiff dressing used to immobilize various body parts.
- **cautery** (caw-tər-ē) = application of a burning substance, a hot instrument, an electric current, or another agent to destroy tissue.
- **cerclage** (sihr-klahj) **wire** = band of metal that completely (cerclage) or partially (hemicerclage) goes around the circumference of bone that is used in conjunction with other stabilization techniques to repair bone fractures (Figure 17–16).



(a)

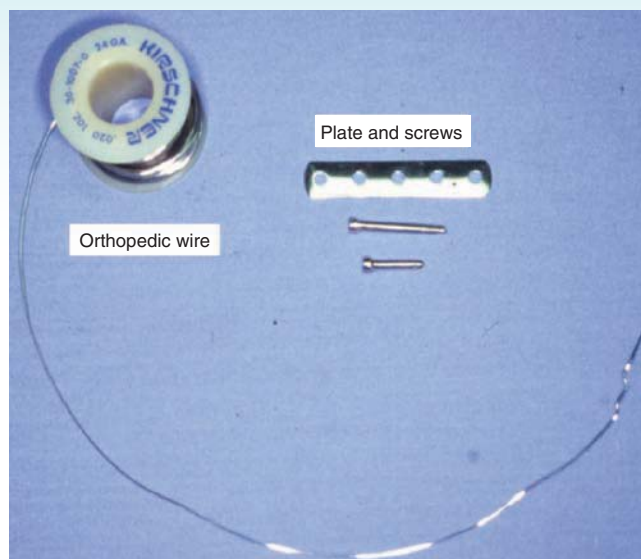


(b)

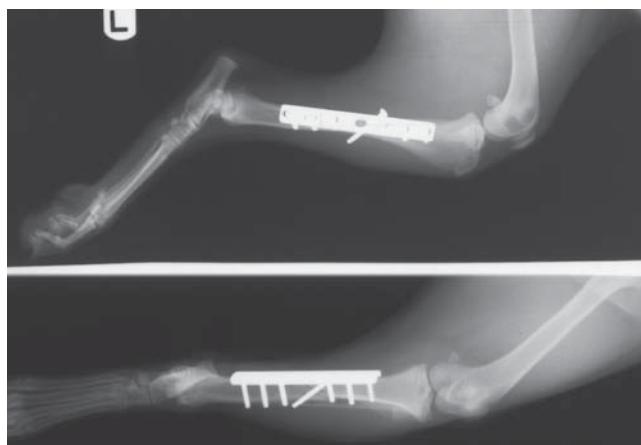
**Figure 17-12** (a) An autoclave provides high-pressure steam heat to sterilize surgical instruments. (b) In a surgery pack (a collection of instruments used for one procedure) that has been properly autoclaved, the indicator tape will change from light-colored lines (roll on right) to dark-colored lines (tape on pack).



**Figure 17-13** Puppy with a Robert Jones bandage. (Courtesy of Lodi Veterinary Hospital, SC.)



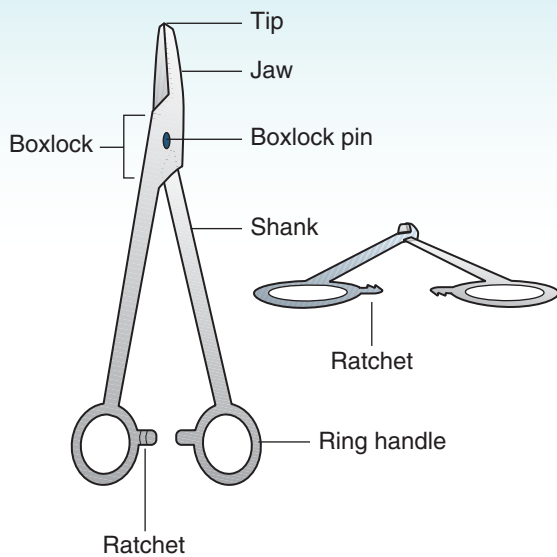
(a)



(b)

**Figure 17-14** (a) Examples of orthopedic equipment (b) Radiograph showing the repair of a tibial fracture using a bone plate and screws. [(a)Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.]

- **chuck** (chuhck) = clamping device for holding a drill bit.
- **clamp** (klahmp) = instrument used to secure or occlude things.
- **curette** (kyoor-reht) = instrument with cupped head to scrape material from cavity walls.
- **drain** (drän) = device by which a channel may be established for the exit of fluids from a wound (Figures 17-17a and b).
- **drape** (dräp) = cloth arranged over a patient's body to provide a sterile field around the area to be examined, treated, or incised.
- **dressing** (drehs-sihng) = various materials used to cover and protect a wound.
- **elastrator** (ē-lahs-trā-tər) = bloodless castration device using small elastic bands.

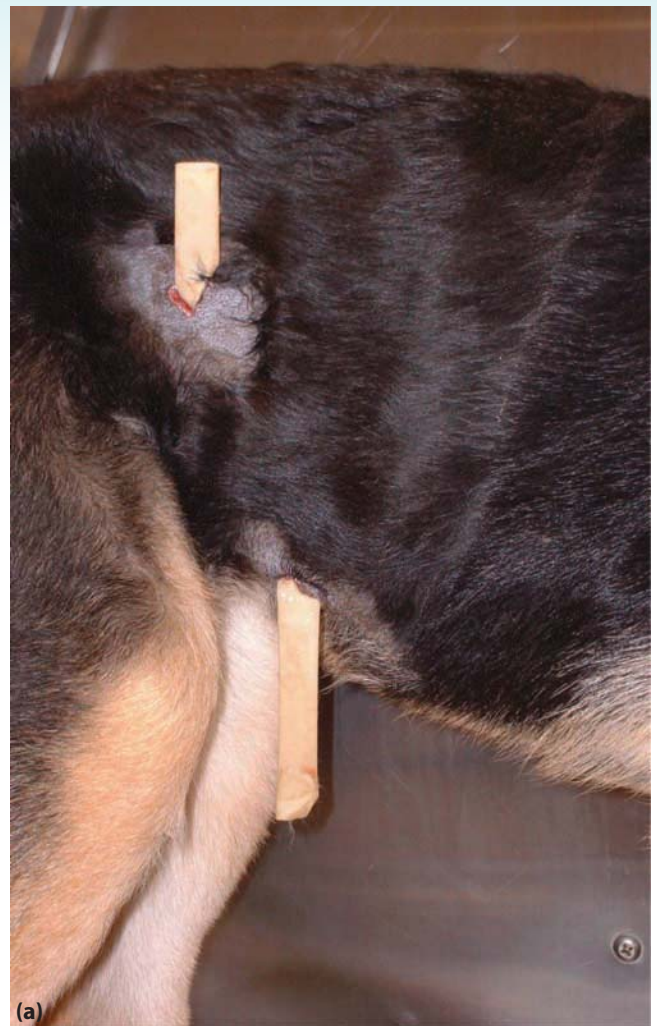


**Figure 17-15** Parts of surgical instruments.



**Figure 17-16** Radiograph showing the repair of a fractured tibia. The bone was repaired with an intramedullary pin and six cerclage wires.

- **elevator** (ehl-eh-vā-tār) = instrument used to reflect tissue from bone.
- **emasculator** (ē-mahs-kyoo-lah-tōm) = instrument used to crush and sever the spermatic cord through intact skin.
- **emasculator** (ē-mahs-kyoo-lā-tār) = instrument used in closed castrations to crush and sever the spermatic cord.



**Figure 17-17** Surgical drain. (a) A Penrose drain was placed in the flank area of this dog to maintain an opening in the skin that allows accumulating fluid to drain to the exterior. The fluid does not drain through the center of the tubing, but is allowed to leak from the skin openings. (b) Dog with an active drain and reservoir unit which allows measurement of drainage volume and description of the fluid appearance. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

- **hemostatic forcep** (hē-mō-stah-tihck fôr-sehp) = locking instrument used to grasp and ligate vessels and tissues to control bleeding; also called **hemostat** (hē-mō-stahst).
- **intramedullary pins** (ihn-trah-mehd-yoo-lahr-ē pihnz) = metal rods that are inserted into the medullary cavity of long bones to repair stable fractures (Figure 17–16).
- **prosthesis** (prohs-thē-sihs) = artificial substitute for a diseased or missing part of the body.
- **ratchet** (rah-cheht) = graded locking portion of an instrument located near the finger rings.
- **retractor** (rē-trahck-tər) = instrument used to hold back tissue (Figure 17–18).
- **rongeurs** (rohn-jūrz) = forceps with cupped jaws used to break large bone pieces into smaller ones.
- **scalpel** (skahl-puhl) = small, straight knife with a thin, sharp blade used for surgery and dissection.
- **serration** (sihr-ā-shuhn) = sawlike edge or border.
- **sling** (slihng) = bandage for supporting part of the body.
- **splint** (splihnt) = rigid or flexible appliance for fixation of movable or displaced parts (Figure 17–19).
- **tissue forceps** (tihs-yoo fôr-sehps) = tweezerlike, non-locking instruments used to grasp tissue.

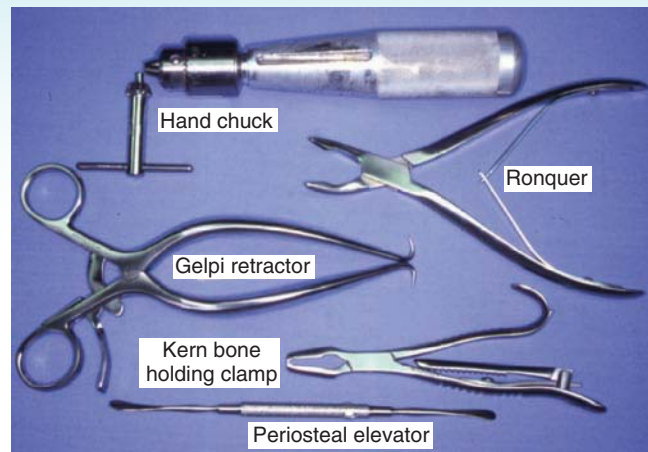
## Surgical Approaches

In surgery, the specific procedure by which an organ or a part is exposed is called the **approach** (ah-prōch). Different approaches allow the best exposure to different parts of the body. Following are examples of different surgical approaches (Figure 17–20):

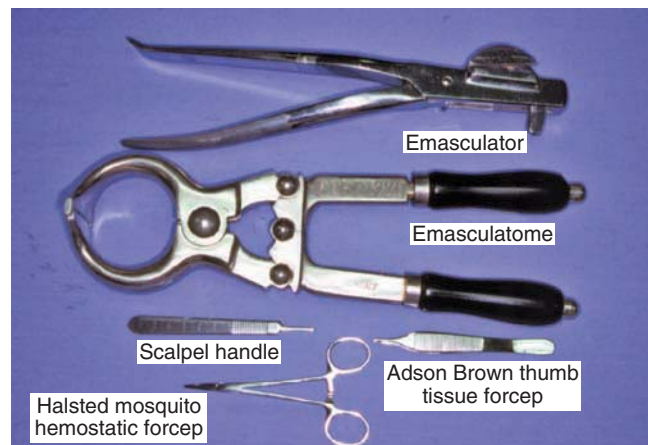
- **flank incision** (flahnk ihn-sihz-shuhn) = surgical cut perpendicular to the long axis of the body, caudal to the last rib.
- **paracostal incision** (pahrah-kah-stahl ihn-sihz-shuhn) = surgical cut oriented parallel to the last rib.
- **paramedian incision** (pahrah-mē-dē-ahn ihn-sihz-shuhn) = surgical cut lateral and parallel to the ventral midline but not on the midline.
- **ventral midline incision** (vehn-trahl mihd-lin ihn-sihz-shuhn) = surgical cut along the midsagittal plane of the abdomen along the linea alba.

## Biopsies

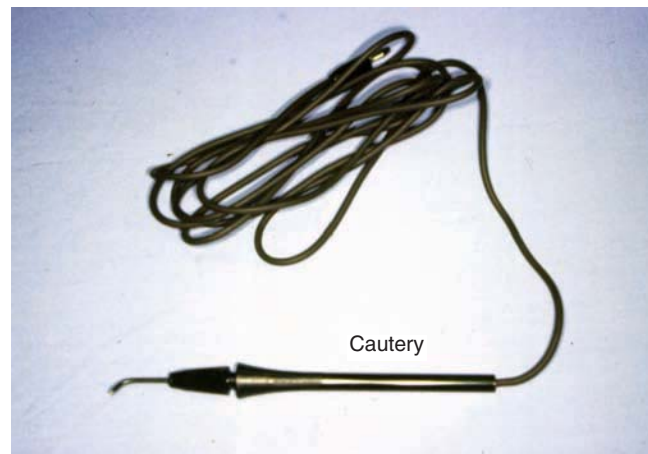
The term **biopsy** (bī-ohp-sē) means removing living tissue to examine. Biopsy also is used for the specimen removed during the procedure. The first definition is more correct; however, the term *biopsy* is commonly used both ways.



(a)



(b)



(c)

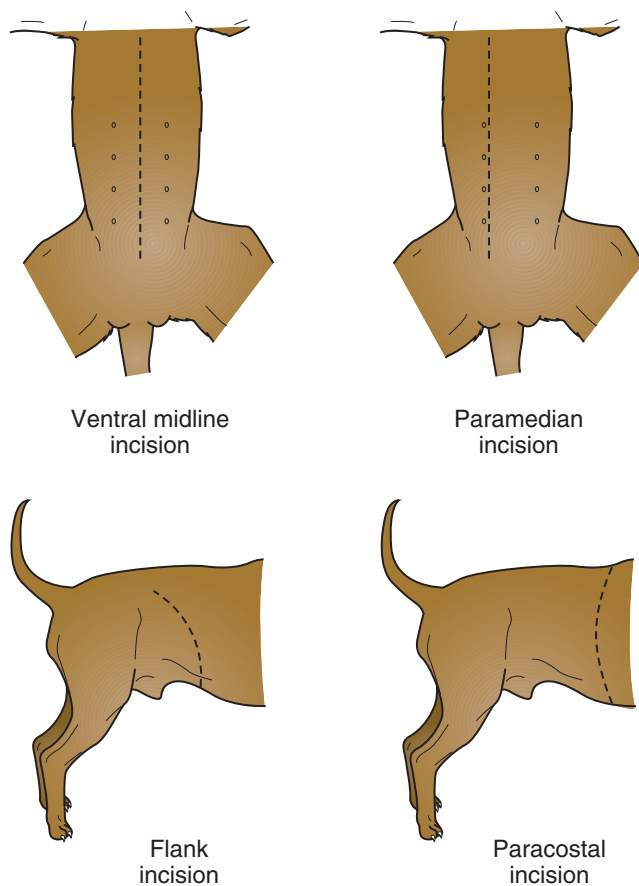
**Figure 17–18** (a) and (b) Examples of surgical instruments. (c) Cautery unit for hemostasis. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

Types of biopsies include the following:

- **excisional biopsy** (ehcks-sih-shuhn-ahl bī-ohp-sē) = removing entire mass, tissue, or organ to examine.
- **incisional biopsy** (ihn-sih-shuhn-ahl bī-ohp-sē) = cutting into and removing part of a mass, a tissue, or an organ to examine.



**Figure 17-19** Selection of bandage materials and splints.



**Figure 17-20** Incision types.

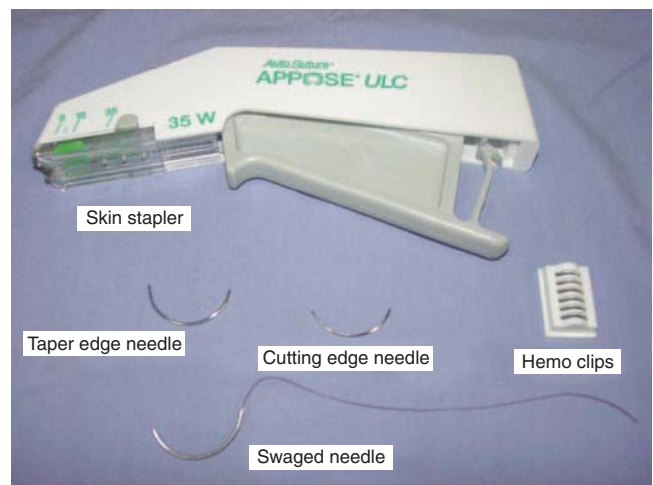
- **needle biopsy** (nē-dahl bī-ohp-sē) = insertion of a sharp instrument (needle) into a tissue for extraction of tissue to be examined.

A **necropsy** (nē-krohps-sē) is a postmortem examination that consists of a thorough examination of a dead animal to determine the cause and manner of death and to evaluate any disease or injury that may be present.

## Needles and Sutures

Suture material and needles are used by surgeons to close wounds or to tie things (Figure 17-21). Terms used in reference to suture material and needles include the following:

- **blunt** (bluhnt) = dull, not sharp; used to describe needles or instrument ends.
- **cutting** (kuht-ihng) **needle** = needle that has two or three opposing cutting edges.
- **ligation** (lī-gā-shuhn) = act of tying.
- **ligature** (lih-gah-chūr) = substance used to tie a vessel or strangulate a part.
- **monofilament** (mohn-ō-fihl-ah-mehnt) = single strand of material; used to describe suture.
- **multifilament** (muhl-tī-fihl-ah-mehnt) = several strands that are twisted together; used to describe suture.
- **stapling** (stā-plihng) = method of suturing that involves the use of stainless steel staples to close a wound.
- **surgical clip** (sihr-jih-kahl klihp) = metal staplelike device used for vessel ligation.
- **swaged** (swehgd) **needle** = needle joined with suture material in a continuous unit; eyeless needle.
- **taper** (tā-pər) **needle** = needle with a rounded tip that is sharp to allow piercing but not cutting of tissue.



**Figure 17-21** Needles and staples. (Courtesy of Teri Raffel, CVT.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

---

### Multiple Choice

Choose the correct answer.

1. A monovalent vaccine, antiserum, or antitoxin is one that is developed for
  - a. many organisms
  - b. one organism
  - c. monocyte activation
  - d. subcutaneous injection
2. Hydrophilic substances are
  - a. solid substances
  - b. liquid substances
  - c. water-loving substances
  - d. fat-loving substances
3. Movement of water across a selectively permeable membrane along its concentration gradient is
  - a. diffusion
  - b. efficacy
  - c. chelation
  - d. osmosis
4. Substances that control itching are called
  - a. antipruritic
  - b. antimiotic
  - c. antitussive
  - d. antiseptic
5. To surgically cut out is to
  - a. incise
  - b. excise
  - c. ligate
  - d. evert
6. The abbreviation for nothing orally is
  - a. PO
  - b. qid
  - c. prn
  - d. NPO
7. The surgical term for side-by-side placement is
  - a. inversion
  - b. eversion
  - c. fulguration
  - d. apposition
8. A device by which a channel may be established for the exit of fluids from a wound is a
  - a. sling
  - b. cast
  - c. drain
  - d. dressing
9. A sawlike edge or border is a
  - a. serration
  - b. cautery
  - c. chuck
  - d. cerclage
10. Another name for an eyeless needle is
  - a. monofilament
  - b. multifilament
  - c. swaged
  - d. taper
11. The term for an excessive level of sodium in the blood is
  - a. hyperkalemia
  - b. hypercalcemia
  - c. hyponatremia
  - d. hypersodemia
12. A solution that is less concentrated than what it is being compared with is known as
  - a. hypotonic
  - b. isotonic
  - c. hypertonic
  - d. equivalent
13. The route of drug administration via the gastrointestinal tract is
  - a. parenteral
  - b. nonparenteral
  - c. rectal
  - d. transdermal
14. An emetic is a substance that
  - a. induces vomiting
  - b. controls vomiting
  - c. eases constipation
  - d. controls diarrhea

15. The term meaning to tie or strangle is
  - a. lavage
  - b. gavage
  - c. ligate
  - d. excise
16. The graded locking portion of an instrument located near the finger rings is the
  - a. boxlock
  - b. ratchet
  - c. chuck
  - d. clamp
17. A needle that has a rounded tip is called a
  - a. swaged needle
  - b. cutting needle
  - c. stapling needle
  - d. taper needle
18. An instrument that controls bleeding is a
  - a. cerclage
  - b. sling
  - c. hemostat
  - d. prosthesis
19. Irrigation of tissue with fluid is called
  - a. lavage
  - b. gavage
  - c. ligate
  - d. excise
20. The abbreviation *bid* stands for
  - a. once daily
  - b. twice daily
  - c. three times daily
  - d. four times daily

### Matching

Match the abbreviation in Column I with its meaning in Column II.

Column I	Column II
1. _____ tid	a. drop
2. _____ gt	b. as needed
3. _____ ¯	c. nothing orally
4. _____ IV	d. subcutaneously
5. _____ IM	e. three times daily
6. _____ SQ	f. every
7. _____ prn	g. intravenously
8. _____ NPO	h. cubic centimeter (same as milliliter)
9. _____ cc	i. intramuscularly
10. _____ q	j. with

### Fill in the Blanks

1. A term meaning to remove an organ or tissue is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. An accumulation of serum beneath the surgical incision is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The removal or exposure of internal organs is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Another word for perforation is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The degree of fullness or rigidity caused by fluid content is \_\_\_\_\_.

**Spelling**

Circle the term that is spelled correctly.

- |   |              |                |              |
|---|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. metric unit of volume equivalent to 1 cc:                                    | mililiter    | milliliter     | mililitir    |
| 2. excessive levels of potassium in the blood:                                  | hypercalemia | hyperkalleemia | hyperkalemia |
| 3. administration of drug through routes other than the gastrointestinal tract: | parental     | parentral      | parenteral   |
| 4. amount of medication based on units per weight of animal:                    | doseage      | doesage        | dosage       |
| 5. water-loving:  | hydrofillic  | hydrophillic   | hydrophilic  |

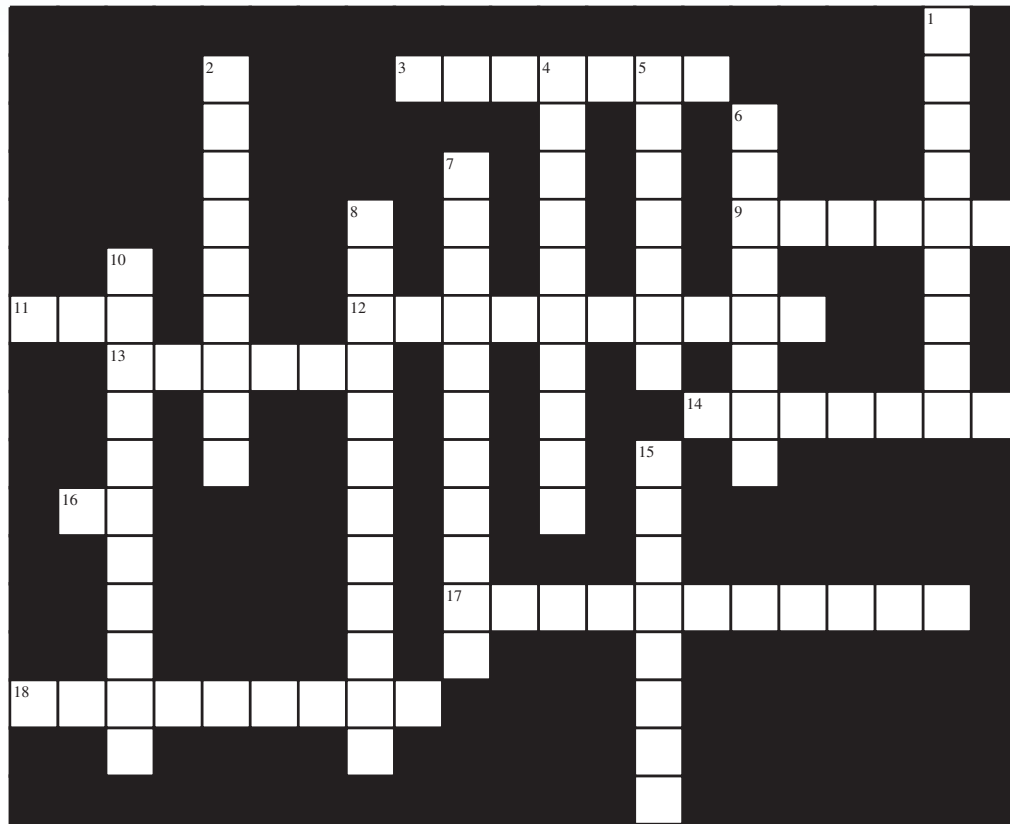
**Word Scramble**

Use the definitions to unscramble the terms.

- |  |             |       |
|--|-------------|-------|
| 1. act of tying                            | ntoiaigl    | _____ |
| 2. blunt point                             | rtpae       | _____ |
| 3. cut into                                | eiincs      | _____ |
| 4. stiff dressing                          | satc        | _____ |
| 5. bandage for supporting a body part      | nligs       | _____ |
| 6. graded locking portion of an instrument | tthecar     | _____ |
| 7. movable joint of any ringed instrument  | ooxkclb     | _____ |
| 8. forcible tearing                        | uutprer     | _____ |
| 9. removal of an organ in whole            | eeucnlaiont | _____ |
| 10. act of approximating                   | aattoinpc   | _____ |
| 11. exposure of internal organs            | eevtiarsce  | _____ |
| 12. pierce through and through             | xtriansf    | _____ |

# CROSSWORD PUZZLE

## Pharmacology Terms Puzzle



### Across

- 3 without infection
- 9 substance that induces vomiting
- 11 as needed
- 12 non-GI route of administration
- 13 amount of medication based on units/weight
- 14 course of treatment
- 16 drop
- 17 substance that reduces coughing
- 18 substance that dilates pupils

### Down

- 1 to destroy all organisms
- 2 substance that relieves pain
- 4 to avoid
- 5 electrically charged
- 6 bound to and precipitated out of solution
- 7 within the skin
- 8 excessive blood potassium levels
- 10 agent that kills internal and external parasites
- 15 killed bacterial vaccine



# CHAPTER 18

## DOGS AND CATS

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to dogs and cats
- Analyze case studies and apply medical terminology in a practical setting

### DOGS AND CATS

For many years, people have used dogs and cats for different purposes. Originally, dogs and cats were domesticated for work such as herding and controlling rodents. Although dogs and cats still may be used for work, they are more commonly kept as pets.

Many of the anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to dogs and cats have been covered in previous chapters. The lists in this chapter apply more specifically to the care and treatment of dogs and cats.

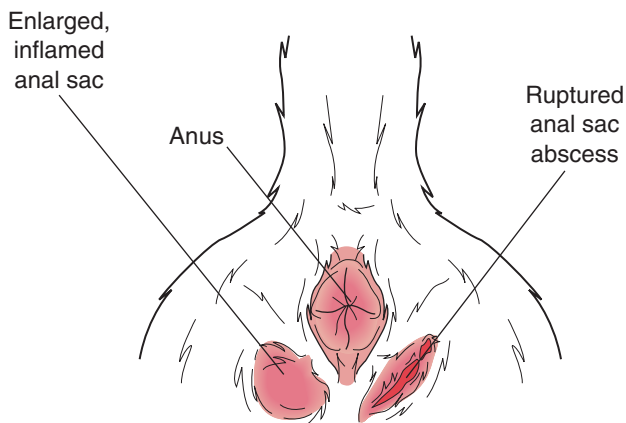


## ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY TERMS

- **anal** (ă-nahl) **glands** = secretory tissues composed of apocrine and sebaceous glands located in the anal sac; secretion of the anal glands is stored in the anal sacs and may play a role in territorial marking, as a defense mechanism, or as a pheromone for sexual behavior.
- **anal sacs** (ă-nahl sahcks) = pair of pouches that store an oily, foul-smelling fluid secreted by the anal glands located in the skin between the internal and external anal sphincters (located at the five o'clock and seven o'clock positions); each sac has a duct that opens to the skin at the anal orifice, and fluid is expressed during defecation, excitement, and social interaction (Figures 18–1 and 18–2).
- **carnassial** (kahr-nā-zē-ahl) **tooth** = large, shearing cheek tooth; the upper fourth premolar and lower first molar in

dogs (Figure 18–3a) and the upper third premolar and lower first molar in cats; carnassial teeth may develop abscesses secondary to trauma or disease (Figure 18–3b).

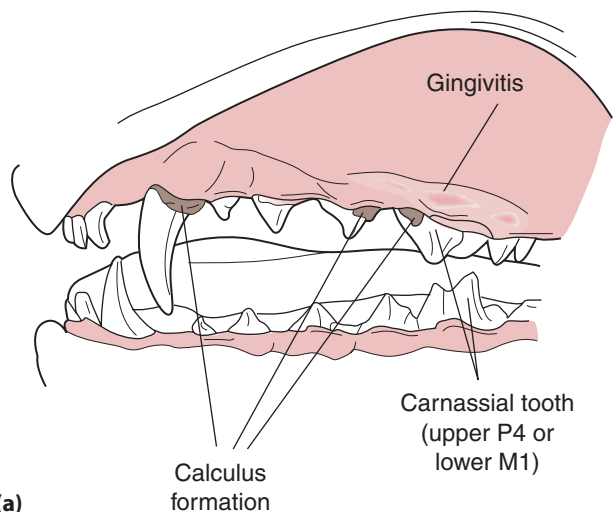
- **constitution** (kohn-stih-too-shuhn) = physical makeup of an animal.
- **coprophagy** (kohp-rohf-ah-jē) = ingestion of feces.
- **debarking** (dē-bahrk-ihng) = surgical procedure that cuts vocal folds to soften a dog's bark; also called **devocalization** (dē-vō-kahl-ih-zā-shuhn).
- **Elizabethan** (ē-lihz-ah-bēth-ahn) **collar** = device placed around the neck and head of dogs or cats to prevent them from traumatizing an area; commonly called an E-collar (Figure 18–4).
- **hepatic lipidosis** (heh-pah-tihck lih-pih-dō-sihs) = syndrome characterized by excess fat accumulation in the liver of cats that typically occurs after a period of anorexia (Figure 18–5).
- **induced ovulator** (ihn-doozd ohv-yoo-lā-tər) = species that ovulates only as a result of sexual activity (cats, rabbits, ferrets, llamas, camels, and mink).



**Figure 18–1** Line drawing of anal sac location.



**Figure 18–2** Digital expression of fluid from anal sac.



(a)

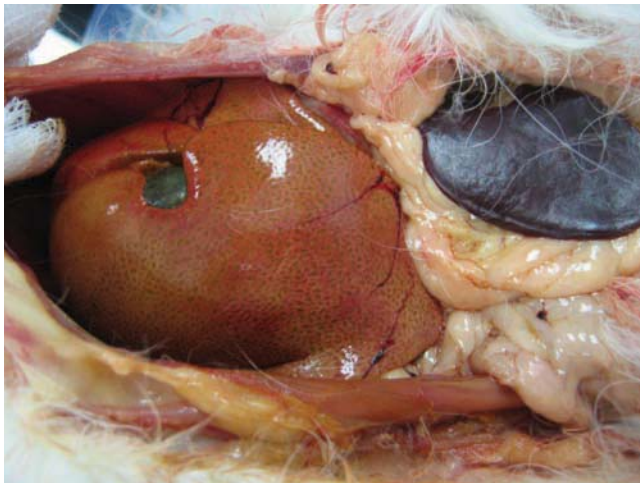


(b)

**Figure 18–3** (a) Carnassial teeth of dogs. (b) Carnassial tooth abscess in a dog.



**Figure 18-4** Elizabethan collar on a dog. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)



**Figure 18-5** Liver of a cat with hepatic lipidosis.

- **polydactyly** (poh-lē-dahck-tih-lē) = more than the normal number of digits (Figures 18-6a and b).
- **spraying** (sprā-ihng) = urination on objects to mark territory.
- **steatitis** (stē-aht-ī-tihs) = inflammation of fat, usually caused by feeding cats too much oily fish; also called yellow fat disease.

## BREED-RELATED TERMS

- **angora** (ahn-gōr-ah) = type of long fur on cats (and other species).
- **calico** (kahl-ih-kō) = cat with three colors of fur (black, orange, and white); usually female; if male, they have a genotype of XXY (Figure 18-7a).
- **domestic** (dō-mehs-tihck) **longhair** = cat breed that has long guard hairs; abbreviated DLH.
- **domestic** (dō-mehs-tihck) **shorthair** = cat breed that has short guard hairs; abbreviated DSH.
- **mackerel tabby** (mahck-ər-ehl tah-bē) = two-toned feline fur with stripes.
- **mongrel** (mohn-grehl) = mixed breed of any animal.
- **purebred** (pər-brehd) = member of a recognized breed.
- **ruddy** (ruhd-dē) = orange-brown color with ticking of dark brown or black.
- **self** (sehlf) = one-color fur.
- **tabby** (tah-bē) = feline fur with two colors that may be in stripes or spots (Figure 18-7b).
- **ticked coat** (tihckd kōt) = fur in which darker colors are found on the tips of each guard hair.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 18-6** Polydactyly in a cat. (a) Paw of a polydactyl cat. (b) Radiograph of a polydactyl cat. [(a) Courtesy of Linda L. Kratochwill, DVM; (b) Courtesy of University of Wisconsin Veterinary Hospital–Radiology.]



(a)



(b)



(c)

**Figure 18–7** (a) Calico cat, (b) Tabby cat, (c) Tortoiseshell cat. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)

- **ticking** (tihck-ihng) = fur coat that has guard hairs with darker tips mixed in.
- **tortoiseshell** (tör-tihs-shehl) = feline fur with two colors (orange and black) producing a spotted or blotched pattern (Figure 18–7c).

## DESCRIPTIVE TERMS

- **docile** (doh-sil) = tame and easygoing.
- **dull** (duhl) = lacking shine to haircoat; also used to describe behavior more lethargic than normal.
- **euthanasia** (yoo-thehn-ā-zhah) = inducing death of an animal quickly and painlessly; “putting an animal to sleep.”
- **feral** (fehr-ahl) = wild; not domesticated.
- **gait** (gāt) = way an animal moves.
- **gloves** (gluhvz) = white paws.
- **luster** (luhs-tər) = shine.
- **obesity** (ō-bē-siht-ē) = excessive fat accumulation in the body.
- **points** (poyntz) = color of nose (mask), ears, tail, and feet of an animal (Figure 18–8).
- **quarantine** (kwahr-ehn-tēn) = isolation of animals to determine whether they have or carry a disease.
- **retractile** (rē-trahck-tīl) = ability to draw back; feline claws can be drawn back.
- **sheen** (shēn) = shininess or luster.
- **staunch** (stawnch) = strong and steady while on point.
- **stud** (stuhd) = male animal used for breeding purposes.
- **temperament** (tehm-pər-ah-mehnt) = emotional and mental qualities of an individual.
- **thorough** (thər-ō) = working every bit of ground and cover.
- **throwback** (thrō-bahck) = offspring that shows an ancestor’s characteristic that has not appeared in previous generations.



**Figure 18–8** Points in a colorpoint shorthair cat. (Photo by Isabelle Francais.)

- **timid** (tihm-ihd) = showing lack of confidence or shy.
- **underfur** (uhn-dər-fər) = very dense, soft, short hair that is found beneath the longer, coarser guard hairs.
- **unthrifty** (uhn-thrihf-tē) = not thriving.
- **vigor** (vihg-ər) = healthy growth; also means high energy.

## VACCINATIONS OF DOGS AND CATS

- **canine adenovirus** (ahd-nō-vī-ruhs) **2** = adenovirus infection in canines that causes signs of upper respiratory disease; abbreviated CAV-2.
- **canine distemper** (dihs-tehm-pər) **virus** = highly contagious paramyxovirus infection in canines that is associated with respiratory, digestive, muscular, and neurologic signs; abbreviated CDV.
- **canine hepatitis** (hehp-ah-ti-tihs) **virus** = highly contagious adenovirus 1 infection in canines that is associated with ocular ("blue eye"), abdominal, and liver signs; abbreviated ICH or CAV-1.
- **canine herpesvirus** (hər-pēz-vī-ruhs) = herpesvirus infection in canines that primarily affects newborn puppies and is associated with listlessness, nasal discharge, rash, neurologic signs, and death; abbreviated CHV.
- **canine parainfluenza** (pah-ah-ihn-flū-ehn-zah) **virus** = paramyxovirus infection of canines that contributes to upper respiratory infections and causes subclinical bronchitis.
- **canine parvovirus** (pah-vō-vī-ruhs) = highly contagious parvovirus infection in canines that is associated with severe diarrhea, vomiting, dehydration, and leukopenia.
- **coronavirus** (kō-rō-nah-vī-ruhs) = coronavirus that causes gastrointestinal disease in dogs and gastrointestinal and systemic disease in cats that is usually spread through contaminated feces; known as feline infectious peritonitis (FIP) in cats; abbreviated CCV in dogs.
- **Crotalus atrox toxoid** (krō-tah-luhs ah-trohcks tohcks-oyd) = inactivated toxin from the Western diamondback rattlesnake used in dogs to reduce morbidity and mortality due to envenomation by this snake.
- **feline calicivirus** (kah-lē-sē-vī-ruhs) = picornavirus infection in felines that is associated with upper respiratory and ocular infections.
- **feline chlamydia** (klah-mihd-dē-ah) = bacterial infection in felines caused by the bacterium *Chlamydia psittaci* (formerly known as *Chlamydia psittaci*) that is associated with upper respiratory and ocular infections.
- **feline immunodeficiency virus** = lentivirus infection in felines that initially presents with fever and lymphadenopathy that over a long period of time progresses to a wide range of clinical signs such as anemia, lethargy, weight loss, and secondary infections; abbreviated FIV.
- **feline infectious peritonitis** = coronavirus infection in felines that is characterized by an insidious onset, fever, and weight loss. The wet form has peritoneal or pleural effusions (or both), whereas the dry form has pyogranulomas in any location; abbreviated FIP.
- **feline leukemia** (loo-kē-mē-ah) **virus** = feline retrovirus that may produce elevated numbers of abnormal leukocytes, immune suppression, cancer, and illness associated with immune suppression; abbreviated FeLV.
- **feline panleukopenia** (pahn-loo-kō-pē-nē-ah) **virus** = parvovirus infection of felines that is associated with fever, vomiting, diarrhea, and a decrease in all types of white blood cells; abbreviated FPV; commonly called feline distemper.
- **feline rhinotracheitis** (rī-nō-trā-kē-ī-tihs) **virus** = herpesvirus infection in felines that is associated with upper respiratory and ocular infections.
- **Giardia lamblia** (gē-ahr-dē-ah lahmb-lē-ah) = protozoan that may cause asymptomatic disease or cause diarrhea in dogs and cats.
- **infectious tracheobronchitis** (ihn-fehck-shuhs trā-kē-ō-brohng-kī-tihs) = upper respiratory infection caused by the bacterium *Bordetella bronchiseptica* (bör-dih-tehl-ah brohng-ō-sehp-tih-kā) that produces a severe hacking cough; also called kennel cough.
- **leptospirosis** (lehp-tō-spī-rō-sihs) = bacterial disease caused by various serotypes of *Leptospira*; signs include renal failure, jaundice, fever, and abortion.
- **Lyme** (līm) **disease** = bacterial disease caused by the bacterium *Borrelia burgdorferi* transported by a tick vector; associated with fever, anorexia, joint disorders, and occasionally neurologic signs; also called Lyme borreliosis.
- **rabies** (rā-bēz) **virus** = fatal zoonotic rhabdovirus infection of all warm-blooded animals that causes neurologic signs; transmitted by a bite or infected body fluid; abbreviated RV. RV is required by public health agencies for licensure of dogs; RV is recommended as a public health measure for cats.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

---

### Multiple Choice

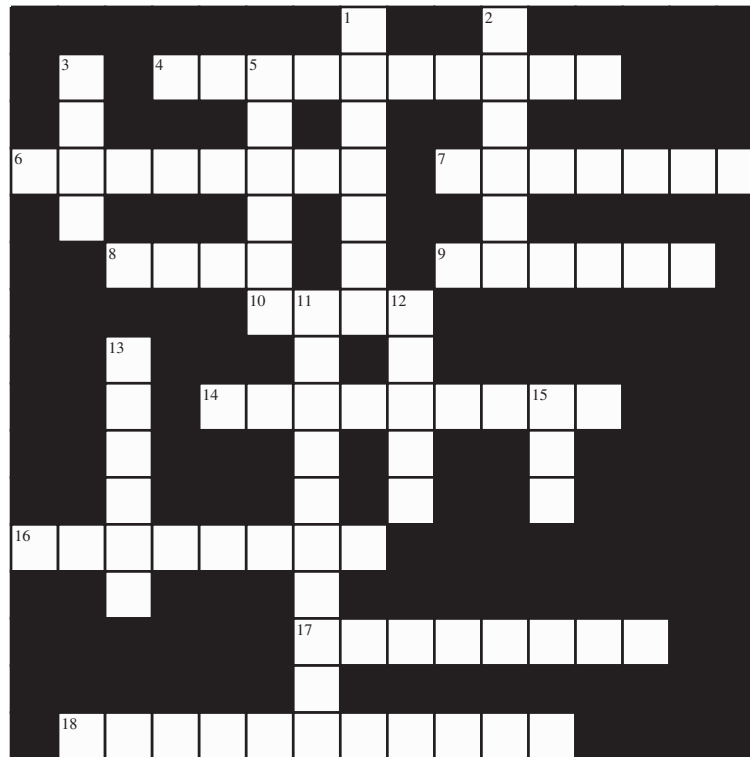
Choose the correct answer.

1. The term meaning ingestion of feces is
  - a. stoolophagia
  - b. fecophagia
  - c. coprophagy
  - d. bowelophagy
2. The term for more than the normal number of digits is
  - a. timid
  - b. throwback
  - c. polydactyly
  - d. mackerel
3. Cats that have white paws are said to have
  - a. points
  - b. luster
  - c. staunch
  - d. gloves
4. A cat with three colors of fur is called a(n)
  - a. angora
  - b. calico
  - c. tortoiseshell
  - d. ticked coat
5. A male animal used for breeding purposes is known as a
  - a. sheen
  - b. vigor
  - c. stud
  - d. feral
6. Urinating on objects to mark territory is called
  - a. urination
  - b. voiding
  - c. micturition
  - d. spraying
7. Inflammation of fat is
  - a. liposis
  - b. lipoma
  - c. steatitis
  - d. adiposis
8. Devocalization in dogs is commonly called
  - a. vocalectomy
  - b. corpectomy
  - c. silencing
  - d. debarking
9. The pouches that store an oily, foul-smelling fluid in dogs and cats are called
  - a. anal glands
  - b. anal sacs
  - c. anal bullae
  - d. anal goblets
10. The large, shearing cheek tooth in dogs is commonly called a
  - a. premolar tooth
  - b. carnassial tooth
  - c. polyrooted tooth
  - d. deciduous tooth
11. What is the device placed around the neck and head of dogs and cats to prevent them from traumatizing an area?
  - a. throwback collar
  - b. Elizabethan collar
  - c. point collar
  - d. gaited collar
12. Inducing death of an animal quickly and painlessly is
  - a. quarantine
  - b. staunch
  - c. euthanasia
  - d. unthrifty
13. Feline claws can be drawn back because they are
  - a. distal
  - b. covered with underfur
  - c. unthrifty
  - d. retractile
14. A fur coat that has guard hairs with darker tips is a
  - a. tortoiseshell
  - b. mackerel tabby
  - c. ticked coat
  - d. calico

15. A mixed breed of any animal is called a
- a. mongrel
  - b. purebred
  - c. self
  - d. domestic
16. A wild animal is called
- a. docile
  - b. unthrifty
  - c. throwback
  - d. feral
17. Cats ovulate as a result of sexual activity and are called
- a. seasonal
  - b. polyestrus
  - c. induced ovulators
  - d. polydactyl
18. Vigor is to timid as
- a. stud is to staunch
  - b. luster is to dull
  - c. thorough is to bred
  - d. tabby is to ruddy
19. The way an animal moves is its
- a. ticking
  - b. self
  - c. gait
  - d. staunch
20. Isolation of animals to determine whether they have or carry a disease is
- a. quarantine
  - b. euthanasia
  - c. domestic
  - d. temperament

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Dog and Cat Terms Puzzle



#### Across

- 4 ingestion of feces
- 6 giving birth to cats
- 7 fur coat that has guard hairs with darker tips mixed in
- 8 the way an animal moves
- 9 tame
- 10 one color fur
- 14 not thriving
- 16 giving birth to dogs
- 17 urination on objects to mark territory
- 18 more than the normal number of digits

#### Down

- 1 mixed breed of any animal
- 2 cat having three colors of fur
- 3 male animal used for breeding
- 5 color of nose, ears, tail, and feet
- 11 inducing death of an animal quickly and painlessly
- 12 wild
- 13 white paws
- 15 intact male cat

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 3-yr-old F/S black Labrador retriever was presented to the clinic for removal of a round bone from the mandible. Hx: The dog had been chewing on the bone during the day and had gotten the bone stuck on its mandible. The dog had been pawing at the bone for the past 45 min. On PE, the dog was tachycardic, anxious, and tachypnic. The rostral end of the mandible was swollen. The dog was sedated with an IV sedative so that the bone could be removed. The bone was situated caudal to the lower canine teeth. Gigli wire was threaded through the hole in the center of the bone, and the bone was cut in two places to allow its removal. While the bone was being sawed, tissue trauma occurred to the skin of the mandible. The dog was sent home on antibiotics 1 T bid PO 7d.

1. yr \_\_\_\_\_
2. F/S \_\_\_\_\_
3. mandible \_\_\_\_\_
4. Hx \_\_\_\_\_
5. PE \_\_\_\_\_
6. tachycardic \_\_\_\_\_
7. tachypnic \_\_\_\_\_
8. rostral \_\_\_\_\_
9. IV \_\_\_\_\_
10. caudal \_\_\_\_\_
11. canine teeth \_\_\_\_\_
12. antibiotics \_\_\_\_\_
13. T \_\_\_\_\_
14. bid \_\_\_\_\_
15. PO \_\_\_\_\_
16. d \_\_\_\_\_

A 9-wk-old ♀ DSH kitten was presented to the clinic for inappetence. On PE, it was noted that the kitten had bilateral yellow-green mucopurulent ocular and nasal discharge. T = 103.8°F, HR = 170 BPM, RR = 40 breaths/min, MMs = pink, CRT = 2 sec. The kitten was alert. An audible wheeze was heard on thoracic auscultation; lungs had increased bronchial sounds and referred URT sounds. The conjunctiva was reddened and edematous. The abdomen palpated normally. Dx: URI; DDx: (1) rhinotracheitis virus, (2) calicivirus, (3) chlamydia.

17. wk \_\_\_\_\_
18. ♀ \_\_\_\_\_
19. DSH \_\_\_\_\_
20. inappetence \_\_\_\_\_
21. PE \_\_\_\_\_
22. bilateral \_\_\_\_\_
23. mucopurulent \_\_\_\_\_

- 24. ocular \_\_\_\_\_
- 25. nasal \_\_\_\_\_
- 26. T \_\_\_\_\_
- 27. °F \_\_\_\_\_
- 28. HR \_\_\_\_\_
- 29. BPM \_\_\_\_\_
- 30. RR \_\_\_\_\_
- 31. min \_\_\_\_\_
- 32. MMs \_\_\_\_\_
- 33. CRT \_\_\_\_\_
- 34. sec \_\_\_\_\_
- 35. wheeze \_\_\_\_\_
- 36. thoracic \_\_\_\_\_
- 37. auscultation \_\_\_\_\_
- 38. bronchial \_\_\_\_\_
- 39. URT \_\_\_\_\_
- 40. conjunctiva \_\_\_\_\_
- 41. edematous \_\_\_\_\_
- 42. abdomen \_\_\_\_\_
- 43. palpated \_\_\_\_\_
- 44. Dx \_\_\_\_\_
- 45. URI \_\_\_\_\_
- 46. DDx \_\_\_\_\_
- 47. rhinotracheitis \_\_\_\_\_

A 5-yr-old F/S DSH cat was presented to the clinic with stranguria and hematuria. T = 102.4°F, HR = 180 BPM, RR = 35 breaths/min, MMs = pink and moist, CRT = 1 sec. Heart and lungs auscultated normally. Oral exam revealed mild tartar with grade II gingivitis. Abdominal palpation yielded normal kidneys, normal intestinal loops, a tense and painful caudal abdomen, and a turgid urinary bladder. Dx: cystitis; DDx: (1) FUS, (2) crystalluria.

- 48. yr \_\_\_\_\_
- 49. F/S \_\_\_\_\_
- 50. DSH \_\_\_\_\_
- 51. stranguria \_\_\_\_\_
- 52. hematuria \_\_\_\_\_
- 53. auscultated \_\_\_\_\_

- 54. oral \_\_\_\_\_
- 55. tartar \_\_\_\_\_
- 56. gingivitis \_\_\_\_\_
- 57. abdominal \_\_\_\_\_
- 58. palpation \_\_\_\_\_
- 59. caudal \_\_\_\_\_
- 60. turgid \_\_\_\_\_
- 61. Dx \_\_\_\_\_
- 62. cystitis \_\_\_\_\_
- 63. DDx \_\_\_\_\_
- 64. FUS \_\_\_\_\_
- 65. crystalluria \_\_\_\_\_

A 2-yr-old intact male golden retriever was presented with a 4" laceration with extensive hemorrhage on his right carpus. Pressure bandages were immediately applied for hemostasis. When the bleeding was under control, the dog was anesthetized so that the blood vessels could be ligated and the wound sutured.

- 66. intact \_\_\_\_\_
- 67. 4" \_\_\_\_\_
- 68. laceration \_\_\_\_\_
- 69. hemorrhage \_\_\_\_\_
- 70. carpus \_\_\_\_\_
- 71. hemostasis \_\_\_\_\_
- 72. anesthetized \_\_\_\_\_
- 73. ligated \_\_\_\_\_
- 74. sutured \_\_\_\_\_

A 6-mo-old F black Labrador retriever was presented to the clinic for OHE. A preanesthetic blood screen (PCV, ALT, BUN, GLU) and IV fluid line were done before surgery. The animal was anesthetized, clipped, and prepped for surgery. A ventral midline incision was made, and the reproductive tract was identified. The ovaries, uterine horns, and uterus were removed after proper ligation. When the abdominal incision was being closed, the veterinarian noted pooling of blood in the abdomen. The ligatures were rechecked and still in place. A large amount of blood was coming from the abdominal incision, and the veterinarian had the technician reassess the animal. The CRT was prolonged, the MMs were pale, and the animal was tachycardic and hypothermic. Blood was taken for another PCV, and the fluid rate was increased. The PCV was low normal. The owner was called to see whether the dog had been sick recently, and the owner stated that the dog was seen eating rat bait about 3 days earlier. Additional blood was collected in a heparin tube for assessment of clotting times, and the dog was given vitamin K1. The incision was closed, and the dog was closely monitored during recovery. The dog made a slow recovery and was hospitalized an additional night for observation. Clotting times from the lab demonstrated prolonged clotting times.

- 75. OHE \_\_\_\_\_
- 76. preanesthetic \_\_\_\_\_

- 77. blood screen \_\_\_\_\_
- 78. PCV \_\_\_\_\_
- 79. ALT \_\_\_\_\_
- 80. BUN \_\_\_\_\_
- 81. GLU \_\_\_\_\_
- 82. IV \_\_\_\_\_
- 83. anesthetized \_\_\_\_\_
- 84. ventral midline incision \_\_\_\_\_
- 85. ligation \_\_\_\_\_
- 86. CRT \_\_\_\_\_
- 87. MMs \_\_\_\_\_
- 88. tachycardic \_\_\_\_\_
- 89. hypothermic \_\_\_\_\_
- 90. heparin \_\_\_\_\_

A 10-yr-old M/N cockapoo was presented to the clinic for scooting (dog assumes a sitting position and drags the anal region along the ground) and licking the perianal region. On PE, it was noted that the dog was obese and had dermatitis of the tail head region and oily skin. The TPR were normal. The dog had an hx of tenesmus and reluctance to stand. Rectal palpation of the anal sacs revealed moderately enlarged sacs. Both anal sacs were expressed, and inspissated material was expressed. Both anal glands were flushed with an antiseptic. The dog was discharged with antibiotics, and an appointment was made to reassess the anal sacs in 7 days.

- 91. perianal \_\_\_\_\_
- 92. dermatitis \_\_\_\_\_
- 93. TPR \_\_\_\_\_
- 94. hx \_\_\_\_\_
- 95. tenesmus \_\_\_\_\_
- 96. rectal palpation \_\_\_\_\_
- 97. anal sacs \_\_\_\_\_
- 98. inspissated \_\_\_\_\_
- 99. antiseptic \_\_\_\_\_

# CHAPTER 19

## HORSES, ETC.

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to horses, donkeys, mules, and ponies
- Analyze case studies and apply medical terminology in a practical setting

### HORSES, DONKEYS, MULES, AND PONIES

Equine animals have been used for transportation, field work, pack work, and recreation. Horses, donkeys, mules, and ponies have been used as companion animals as well.

Many of the anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to equine species have been covered in previous chapters. The lists in this chapter apply more specifically to the care and treatment of equine species.



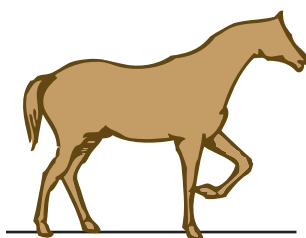
## MODE OF MOVEMENT

See Figure 19–1.

- **amble** (ahm-buhl) = lateral gait that is different from the pace by being slower and more broken in cadence.
- **back** = slowly trotting in reverse.
- **beat** (bēt) = time when the foot (or feet if simultaneous) touches the ground.
- **canter** (kahn-tār) = slow, restrained three-beat gait in which the two diagonal legs are paired.
- **dressage** (druh-sahzh) = method of riding in which a rider guides (rather than uses hands, feet, or legs) a trained horse through natural maneuvers.

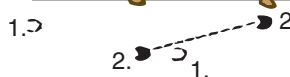
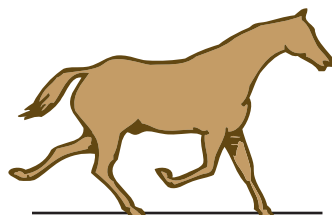
- **equitation** (ehk-wih-tā-shuhn) = act and practice of riding a horse.
- **fox trot** (fohcks troht) = slow, short, broken type of gait in which the head usually nods.
- **gallop** (gahl-ohp) = fast four-beat gait in which the feet strike the ground separately (first = one hind foot, second = other hind foot, third = front foot on the same side as first step, and fourth = other front foot on the same side as second step); also called **run**.
- **jog** (johg) = slow trot.
- **pace** (pās) = fast two-beat gait in which the front and hind feet on the same side start and stop at the same time.
- **pointing** (poyn-tihng) = stride in which extension is more pronounced than flexion.

### Walk



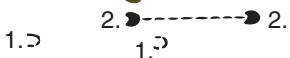
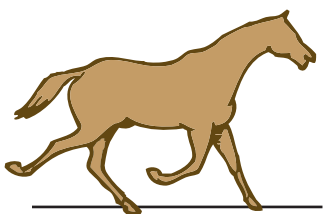
Triangle support

### Trot



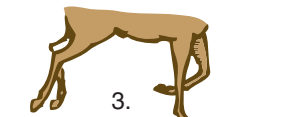
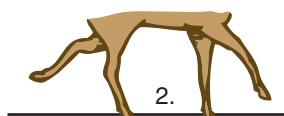
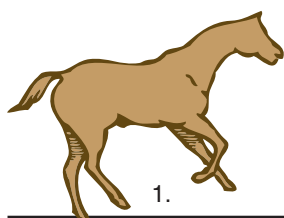
Diagonal linear support

### Pace

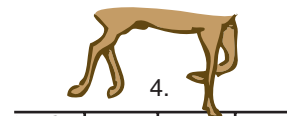
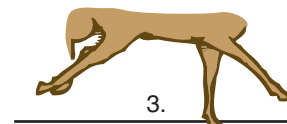
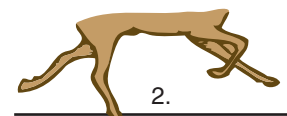
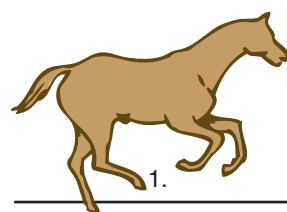


Lateral linear support

### Canter



### Gallop

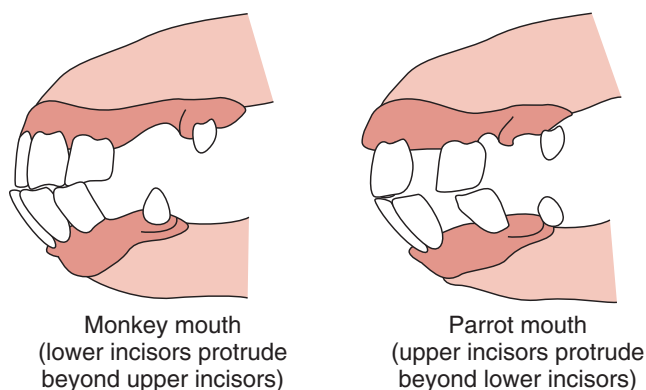


**Figure 19–1** Basic gaits of equine.

- **rack** (rahck) = fast, flashy unnatural four-beat gait in which each foot meets the ground separately at equal intervals; also called **single-foot**.
- **rolling** (rō-lihng) = excessive side-to-side shoulder motion.
- **running walk** (ruhn-ihng) = slow four-beat gait intermediate in speed between a walk and rack.
- **stride** (strīd) = distance between successive imprints of the same foot.
- **suspension** (suh-spehn-shuhn) = time in which none of the feet are in contact with the ground.
- **swing** (swihng) = non-weight-bearing phase of a stride.
- **trappy** (trahp-pē) = short, quick, choppy stride.
- **trot** (troht) = natural, rapid two-beat diagonal gait in which the front foot and the opposite hind foot take off and hit the ground at the same time.
- **walk** = natural, slow flat-footed four-beat gait in which each foot takes off and strikes the ground at separate intervals.
- **Western** (wehs-tərn) = method of riding in which the stirrup length is long, the rider rides in an upright posture, and the rider has a one-handed hold on the reins.

## ANATOMY, PHYSIOLOGY, AND DISEASE TERMS

- **bad mouth** = malocclusion in which the top and bottom teeth do not meet (Figure 19–2).
- **bag up** = development of mammary glands or udder near parturition; also called **bagging up**.
- **bars** (bahrz) = support structure that angles forward from the hoof wall to keep it from overexpanding; also the gap between a horse's incisors and molars; also the side points on the tree of a saddle.
- **bishoping** (bihsh-ohp-ihng) = artificial altering of teeth of an older horse to sell it as a younger horse.
- **check ligament** (chehck lih-ah-mehnt) = one of two ligaments to the digital flexors of equine; maintains the limbs in extended position during standing.

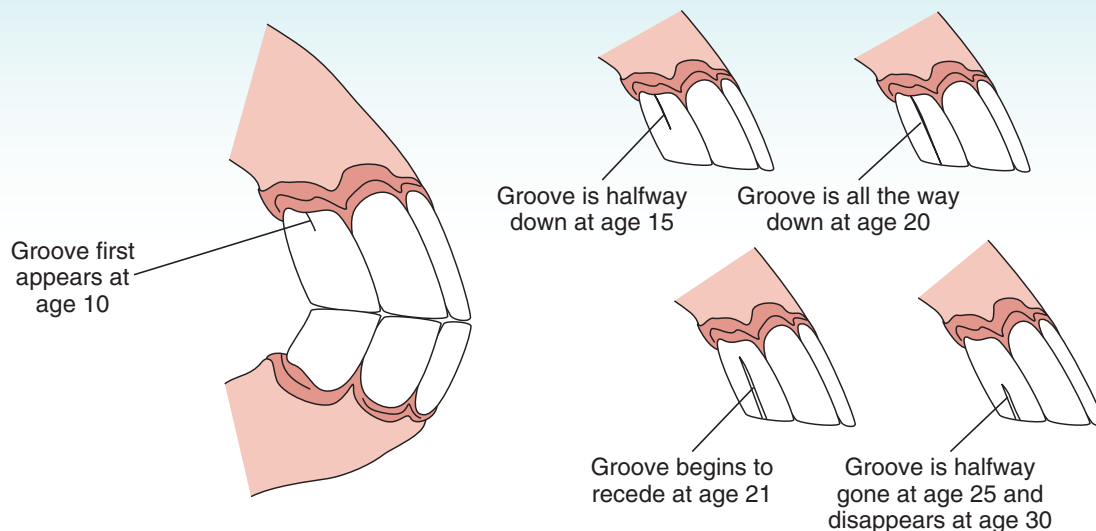


**Figure 19–2** Types of bad mouth (malocclusions).



**Figure 19–3** Flehmen reaction in a stallion. (Courtesy of Dreamstime.)

- **chestnut** (chehst-nuht) = horny growths on the medial surface of the equine leg either above the knee in the front limb or toward the caudal area of the hock in the rear limb; also a coat color of horses.
- **cracks** (krahkz) = hoof wall defects that form because the hoof is too long and not trimmed frequently enough.
- **croup** (krūp) = top part of equine rump.
- **cups** (kuhpz) = deep indentations of the incisors in the center of the occlusal surface in young permanent teeth.
- **curb** (kərb) = enlargement on the caudal aspect of the hind leg below the hock.
- **dental stars** (dehn-tahl stahrz) = marks on the occlusal surface of the incisor teeth appearing first as narrow, yellow lines, then as dark circles near the center of the tooth.
- **flehmen** (fleh-mehn) **reaction** = response of a stallion to the scent of a female horse's urine in which he extends his head and curls his upper lip (Figure 19–3).
- **flexor tendon** (flehck-sər tehndohn) = tendon that causes the fetlock joint to flex.
- **foal heat** (fōl hēt) = first estrus that occurs shortly after parturition (usually not fertile).
- **full-mouthed** (fuhl mouthd) = having all of the permanent teeth and cups present.
- **Galvayne's groove** (gahl-vānz groov) = mark on labial surface of the equine tooth; used to determine age; usually appears around 10 years of age (Figure 19–4).
- **guttural pouch** (guht-ər-ahl powch) = large, air-filled ventral outpouching of the eustachian tube in equine (Figure 19–5).
- **hindgut** (hihnd-guht) = collective term for the cecum, small colon, and large colon.
- **in wear** = condition in which a tooth has risen to the masticatory level; when opposing teeth have reached sufficient height above the gum line to grind against one another.



**Figure 19-4** Galvayne's groove.



**Figure 19-5** Endoscopic view of the guttural pouch.  
(Courtesy of Laura Lien, CVT, BS.)

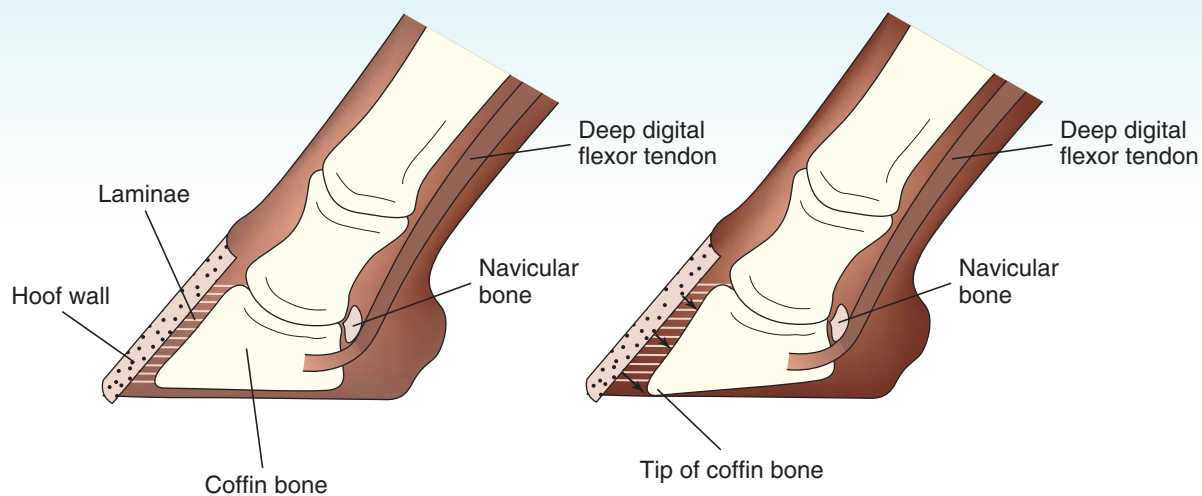
- **periople** (pehr-ē-ō-puhl) = varnishlike coating that holds moisture in the hoof and protects the hoof wall.
- **quidding** (kwihd-ihng) = condition in which a horse drops food from the mouth while chewing.
- **quittor** (kwihd-ər) = festering of the foot anywhere along the border of the coronet.
- **scratches** (skrahch-ehz) = low-grade infection or scab in the skin follicles around the fetlock; also called **grease heel**.
- **smooth mouth** = condition in which no cups are present in the permanent teeth.
- **stay apparatus** (stā ahp-ahr-ah-tuhs) = anatomical mechanism of the equine limb that allows the animal to stand with little muscular effort; includes many muscles, ligaments, and tendons.
- **tush** (tuhsh) = canine tooth in a horse (usually found only in males).
- **waxed teats** (wahcksd tētz) = accumulation of sticky, clear to yellow-colored dried milk at the nipple openings that may occur before parturition.
- **winking** (wihnk-ihng) = opening of the labia to expose the clitoris while the female assumes a mating position.
- **wolf teeth** = rudimentary first upper premolars in equine that are usually shed in maturity.

## MARKINGS

See Figure 19-7.

- **lamina** (lah-mih-nah) = tissue that attaches hoof to the underlying foot structures.
- **laminitis** (lahm-ih-n-ī-tihs) = inflammation of the sensitive laminae under the horny wall of the hoof; a sequela of laminitis is **founder** (fownd-ər) (Figure 19-6).
- **milk teeth** = first teeth that the animal develops.
- **monkey mouth** = condition in which the mandible is longer than the maxilla, causing the lower incisors to protrude beyond the upper incisors.
- **nippers** (nihp-pərz) = central incisors of equine; also a tool to remove excess hoof wall.
- **parrot mouth** = condition in which the maxilla is longer than the mandible, causing the upper incisors to protrude beyond the lower incisors.

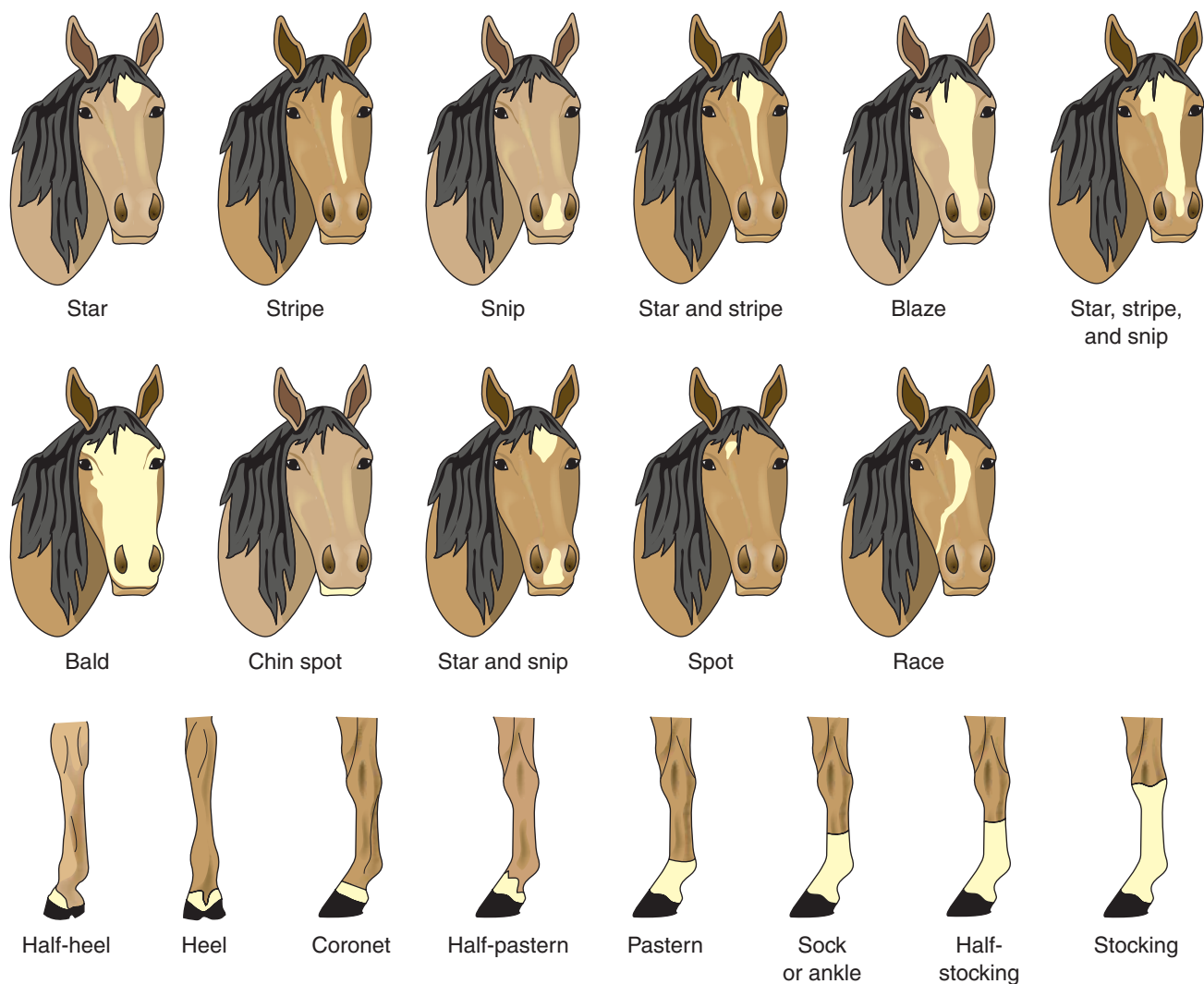
- **ankle** = white marking from the coronet to the fetlock on a horse's leg; also called **sock**.
- **bald face** = wide white marking that extends beyond both eyes and nostrils; also called **apron**.
- **banding** (bahn-dihng) = style of mane that is sectioned and fastened with rubber bands; seen in Western show horses.



The normal relationship of the coffin bone to the laminae and hoof wall.

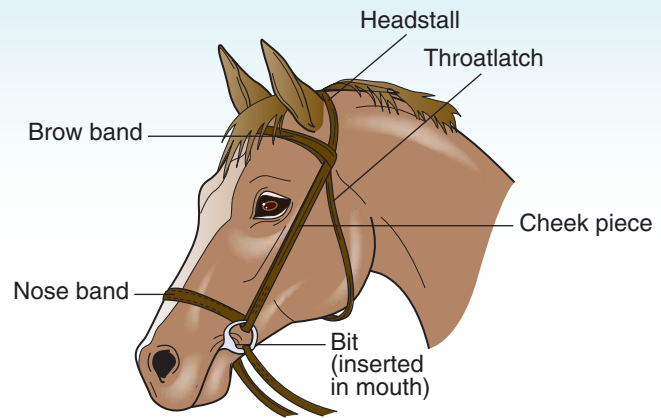
In chronic founder, the coffin bone is detached and rotated toward the sole.

**Figure 19-6** Laminitis.



**Figure 19-7** Natural face and leg markings.

- **blaze** (blāz) = broad white stripe on the face of a horse.
- **blemish** (blehm-ihsh) = unattractive defect that does not interfere with performance.
- **bloom** (bloom) = shiny coat for show horses.
- **chin spot** (chihn spoht) = white marking on the chin of a horse's face.
- **coronet** (kohr-ō-neht) = white marking covering the coronary band on a horse's leg.
- **distal** (dihs-tahl) **spots** = dark circles on a white coronet band.
- **half heel** (hahf hēl) = white marking on the medial or lateral aspect of the caudal region of the hoof.
- **half pastern** (hahf pahs-tərn) = white marking from the coronet to the middle of the pastern on a horse's leg.
- **half stocking** (hahlf stohk-ihng) = white marking from the coronet to the middle of the cannon.
- **heel** (hēl) = white marking across the entire heel.
- **pastern** (pahs-tərn) = white marking from the coronet to the pastern on the horse's leg.
- **points** (poyntz) = black coloration from the knees and hocks down in bays and browns (may include the ear tips).
- **race** (rās) = long wave or irregular stripe down a horse's face.
- **snip** (snihp) = small white marking on a horse's muzzle.
- **spot** (spoht) = small white marking on a horse's face.
- **star** (stahr) = white mark, often in a diamond shape, found between the eyes on the face of the horse.
- **stocking** (stohk-ihng) or **full stocking** = white marking from the coronet to the knee.
- **stripe** (strip) = long, straight marking down a horse's nose; sometimes called **strip**.



**Figure 19-8** Parts of a bridle.

- **hobble** (hohb-uhl) type of restraint in which the front feet or hind feet are placed in straps to keep them from moving.
- **hoof pick** (huhf pihck) = instrument used to clean the sole, frog, and hoof wall.
- **hoof testers** (huhf tehs-tərs) = instrument used to test sensitivity in the equine foot.
- **pincher** (pihn-shər) = tool used to remove horseshoes; pincers are central incisors.
- **puller** (puhl-ər) = tool used to remove worn horseshoes.
- **rasp** (rahsp) = tool used for leveling a horse's foot (Figure 19-9).
- **Scotch hobble** (skohtch hohb-uhl) = type of restraint in which all four feet are tied in an X pattern to keep them from moving or kicking.
- **shoe** (shū) = plate or rim of metal nailed to the palmar or plantar surface of an equine hoof to protect the hoof from injury or to aid in hoof disease management.
- **tack** (tahck) = equipment used in riding and driving horses.
- **throatlatch** (thrōt-lahtch) = bridle part that connects the bridle to the head located under the horse's throat; also area under throat where the head and neck are joined and where the harness throatlatch fits (Figure 4-1).

## EQUIPMENT

- **aids** (ādz) = means by which a rider communicates with a horse (e.g., voice, hands, legs, seat).
- **bit** (biht) = part of the bridle that is put in the horse's mouth to control the animal.
- **breeching** (brē-chihng) = part of a harness that passes around the rump of a harnessed horse.
- **bridle** (brī-duhl) = part of a harness that includes the bit, reins, and headstall (Figure 19-8).
- **calks** (kawkz) = grips on the heels and the outside of the front shoes of horses.
- **cinch** (sihnch) = part of a saddle used to hold it onto the horse; placed around the girth area.
- **clinch cutter** (klihnch kuht-tər) = tool used to remove horseshoes.
- **cradle** (krā-duhl) = device used to prevent an animal from licking or biting an injured area.
- **halter** (hahl-tər) = device used to lead and tie a horse; also called a **head collar**.

## MANAGEMENT TERMS

- **as-fed basis** (ahs-fehd bā-sihs) = amount of nutrients in a diet expressed in the form in which it is fed.
- **bedding** (behd-ihng) = material used to cushion the animal's shelter.
- **birth date** (bərth dāt) = for racing or showing, a foal's birthday is considered January 1 regardless of the actual month it was born.
- **blistering** (blihs-tər-ihng) = application of an irritating substance to treat a blemish.
- **board** (bōrd) = to house.
- **bolt** (bōlt) = to eat rapidly or to startle.



(a)



(b)



(c)

**Figure 19-9** Trimming a horse's hoof. (a) Use of nippers to cut the horny wall to a proper length and angle. (b) Use of hoof knife to pare dead and flaky tissue from the sole. (c) Use of rasp to eliminate jagged edges and sharp corners.

- **bots** (bohtz) = larvae of the bot fly, *Gastrophilus*; occur in the stomach.
- **bowline knot** (bō-lin noht) = type of nonslippable knot.
- **box stall** (bohcks stahl) = enclosure where a horse can move freely.
- **cast** (kahst) = to be caught in a recumbent position and unable to rise.
- **casting** (kahs-tihng) = restraint method using ropes to place animals in lateral recumbency.
- **cribbing** (krihb-ihng) = vice in which an equine grasps an object between the teeth, applies pressure, and swallows air (Figure 19-10).
- **cross-tying** (krohs-ti-ihng) = method of using two ropes to secure a horse so that the head is level.
- **diluter** (di-loo-tər) = type of fluid that is used to increase the volume of semen (thus diluting the sample).
- **driving** (drī-vihng) = harnessing and controlling horses from behind.
- **dry matter basis** (drī mah-tər bā-sihs) = method of expressing concentration of a nutrient based on absence of water in the feed.
- **extender** (ehcks-tehn-dər) = additive used to extend the lifespan of sperm cells.
- **farrier** (fār-ē-ər) = person who cares for equine feet, including trimming and shoeing.
- **feathering** (feh-thər-ihng) = fringe of hair around an equine foot just above the hoof; also used to describe the fringe of hair on caudal aspects of canine limbs.
- **firing** (fīhr-ihng) = making a series of skin blisters with a hot needle over an area of lameness.
- **flighty** (flī-tē) = nervous.



**Figure 19-10** Cribbing.

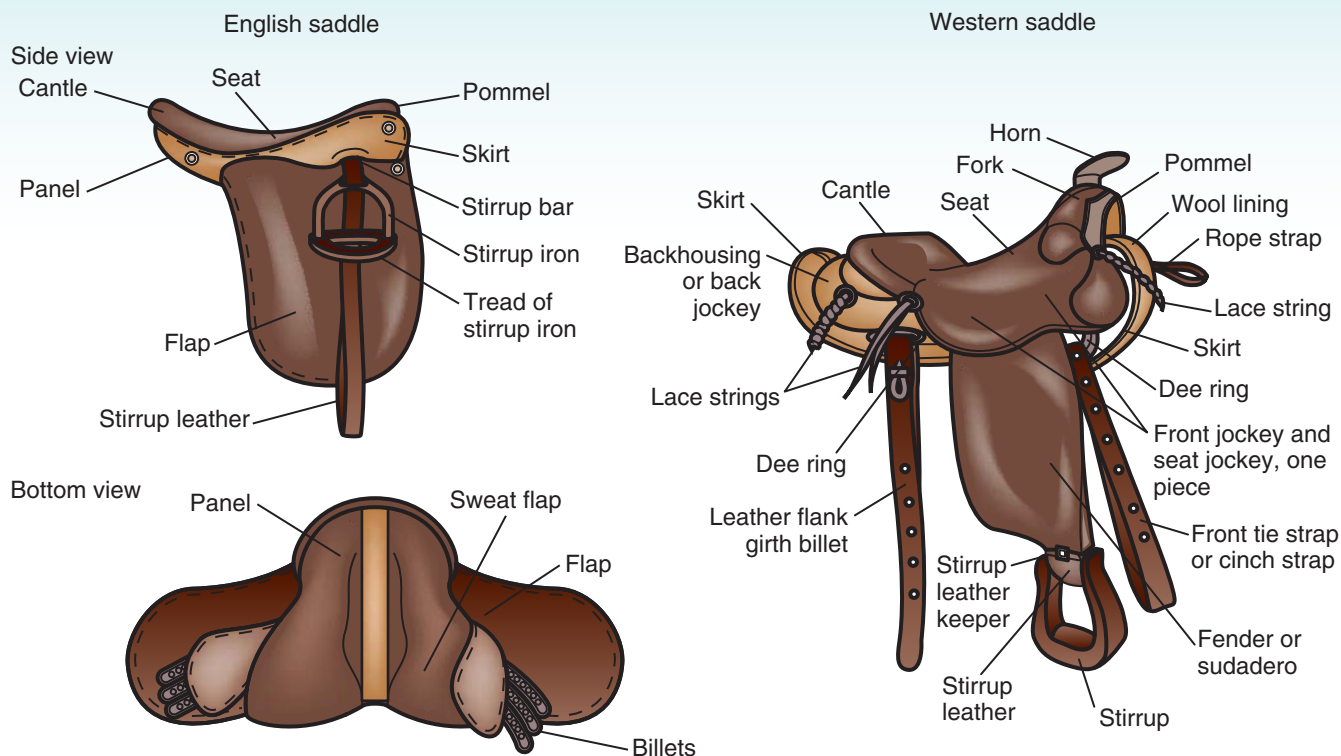
- **floating** (flō-tihng) = filing off the sharp edges of equine teeth (Figure 19-11).
- **get** (geht) = sire's offspring.
- **grade** (grād) = animal that is not registered with a specific breed registry.
- **hand** = unit used to measure height of an equine at the withers; equal to 4 inches.
- **heaving** (hē-vihng) = extra contraction of the flank muscles during respiration; caused by loss of lung elasticity.
- **hunters** (huhn-tərz) = horses that are judged while jumping fences or chasing fox.
- **jumpers** (juh-m-pərz) = horses that compete at shows by jumping and are judged on height, time, and faults.
- **lather** (lah-thər) = accumulation of sweat on a horse's body.
- **leg cues** (lehg kūz) = signals given to the horse through movement of the rider's legs.
- **longe** (luhng) = act of exercising a horse on the end of a long rope, usually in a circle (Figure 19-12); also spelled *lunge*.



**Figure 19-11** Twitch applied to a horse's upper lip to allow teeth to be floated. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 19-12** Longeing a horse. In longeing, a horse on a long strap or line travels in a large circle around the handler. Longeing helps train young horses, exercises horses, and improves balance and development of stride. Longeing also is spelled *lungeing*. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)



**Figure 19-13** Parts of the English saddle and Western saddle.

- **near side** = left side of horse.
- **off side** = right side of horse; also called **far side**.
- **paddock** (pah-dohck) = small fenced-in area; also called **corral**.
- **pasture** (pahs-chər) = area for grazing animals; also means grass or other forage that grazing animals eat.
- **pasture mating** (pahs-chər mā-tihng) = natural breeding; also called **natural cover**.
- **plumb** (pluhm) **line** = line formed when a weight is placed on the end of a string to measure the perpendicularity of something (used to detect straightness of a horse leg).
- **quick-release knot** = knot that breaks loose easily.
- **saddle** (sahd-uhl) = piece of tack placed over the back of an equine for riding, draft, or pack (Figure 19-13).
- **settle** (seht-uhl) = to breed successfully; said of a mare when she becomes pregnant.
- **shod** (shohd) = equine with horseshoes.
- **strike** (striik) = defensive or aggressive movement of a horse in which the front leg is moved quickly and cranially.
- **tease** (tēz) = act of determining whether a mare is in heat (estrus) by presenting a stallion to her.
- **teaser** (tē-zər) = stallion used to determine which mares are in heat (estrus).
- **twitch** (twihtch) = mode of restraint in which a device is twisted on the upper lip or muzzle (see Figure 19-11).
- **waxing** (wahcks-ihng) = accumulation of colostrum on the nipples of mares usually before foaling; also called **waxed teats**.

## TYPES OF HORSES

- **draft** (drahft) **horse** = large breed of working horse (usually over 17 hands) (Figure 19-14).



**Figure 19-14** Belgian horses are examples of draft horses. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)



**Figure 19–15** Standardbred horses are examples of light horses. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)

- **light horse** = breed of horse that is intermediate in size and stature (usually greater than 14.2 hands) (Figure 19–15).
- **miniature horse** = small breed of horse (usually less than 8.2 hands).
- **pony** (pō-nē) = small breed of equine (usually about 14 hands).
- **pony of Americas** = breed of pony (usually between 11.5 and 14 hands) that originated from a cross between a Shetland pony stallion and an Arab/Appaloosa mare.

## TERMS FOR UNSOUNDNESS IN HORSES

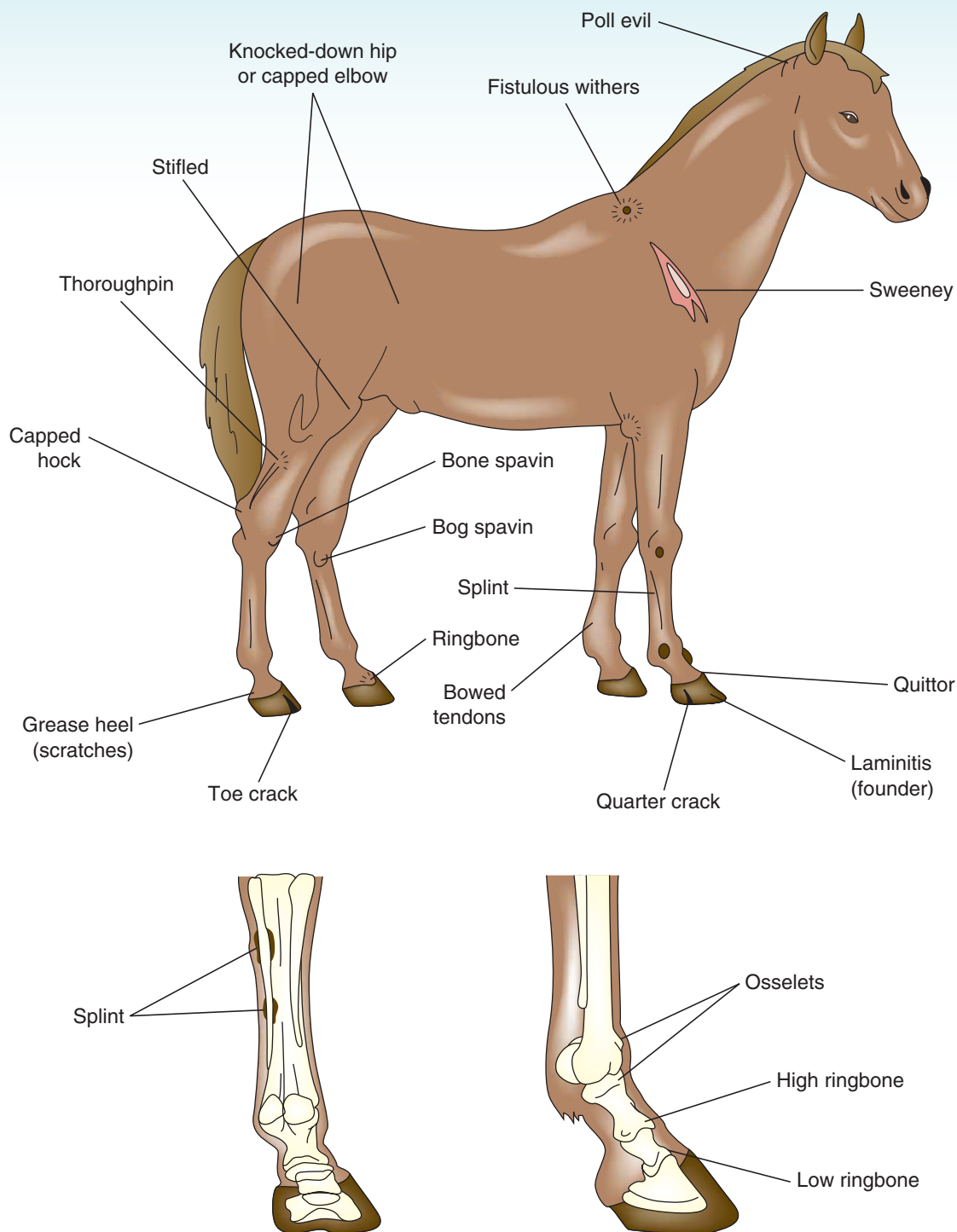
See Figure 19–16.

- **bog spavin** (bohɡ spah-vihn) = enlargement of proximal hock caused by distention of the joint capsule; **spavin** means swelling.
- **bone spavin** (bōn spah-vihn) = bony enlargement at the base and medial surface of the hock.
- **bowed tendons** (bōd teh-n-dohnz) = thickening of the caudal surface of the leg proximal to the fetlock.
- **capped hock** (kahpd hohck) = thickening of the skin or large callus at the point of the hock.
- **fistulous withers** (fihs-tyoo-luhs wih-thərz) = inflammation of the withers.
- **grease heel** (grēs hēl) = infection or scab in the skin around the fetlock; also called **scratches** (skrahch-ehz).
- **osselets** (ohs-eh-lehts) = soft swellings on the cranial (and sometimes sides) of the fetlock joint.
- **poll evil** (pōl ē-vihl) = fistula on the poll that does not heal easily.
- **quarter crack** (kwahr-tər krahck), **toe crack** (tō krahck), or **heel crack** (hēl krahck) = cracks in quarters, toe, or heel, respectively, of hoof wall caused by poor management.

- **quittor** (kwihd-ər) = festering of the foot along the border of the coronet.
- **ringbone** (rihng-bōn) = bony enlargement on the pastern bones; high ringbone occurs at the pastern joint; low ringbone occurs at the coffin joint.
- **splints** (splihntz) = inflammation of the interosseous ligament that holds the splint bones to the cannon bone.
- **stifled** (stī-flehd) = displaced patella.
- **sweeney** (swē-nē) = atrophy of the shoulder muscles.
- **thoroughpin** (thər-ə-pihn) = fluctuating enlargement located in the hollows proximal to the hock; thoroughpins can be pressed from side to side, hence the name (inflammation of deep digital flexor tendon sheath as it crosses the planter surface of the hock).

## EQUINE VACCINATIONS

- **equine encephalomyelitis** (ehn-sehf-ah-lō-mī-ih-lī-tihs) = mosquito-transmitted infectious alphaviral disease of horses that is associated with motor irritation, paralysis, and altered consciousness; there are three types: Eastern, Western, and Venezuelan; also known as sleeping sickness.
- **equine influenza** (ihn-flū-ehn-zah) = myxovirus infection of horses that is associated with mild fever, watery eyes, and persistent cough; commonly called **flu**.
- **equine protozoal myelitis** (mī-eh-li-tihs) = protozoal infection caused by *Sarcocystis neurona* (and perhaps other protozoa) that causes weakness, ataxia (especially in the hindquarters), weight loss, seizures, and other CNS signs; abbreviated EPM.
- **equine viral arteritis** (ahr-tər-i-tihs) = togavirus infection of horses that is associated with upper respiratory disease signs, abortion, and lesions in small arteries; abbreviated EVA.
- **equine viral rhinopneumonitis** (rī-nō-nū-mohn-i-tihs) = herpesvirus infection of horses that is associated with signs of upper respiratory disease and with abortion; abbreviated EVR; also called equine herpesvirus.
- **Potomac** (pō-tō-mihck) **horse fever** = rickettsial bacterial disease of horses that is associated with fever, anorexia, incoordination, diarrhea, and edema of the extremities; also called **equine ehrlichiosis** (ehrlīhck-ē-ō-sihs).
- **rabies** (rā-bēz) **virus** = fatal zoonotic rhabdovirus infection of all warm-blooded animals that causes neurologic signs; transmitted by a bite or infected body fluid; abbreviated RV.
- **strangles** (strān-guhlz) = contagious bacterial disease of horses caused by the bacteria *Streptococcus equi*; signs include high fever, nasal discharge, anorexia, and swollen and abscessed mandibular lymph nodes.



**Figure 19-16** Terms for unsoundness in horses.

- **tetanus** (teht-ah-nuhs) = highly fatal bacterial disease caused by the toxin of *Clostridium tetani* that is associated with hyperesthesia, tetany, and convulsions; also called **lockjaw**.

- **West Nile virus** = mosquito-borne viral encephalitis that entered the United States (probably from the Middle East) in 1999. Affected horses may exhibit ataxia, paralysis, depression, head pressing, head tilt, seizures, and death; abbreviated WNV.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

---

### Multiple Choice

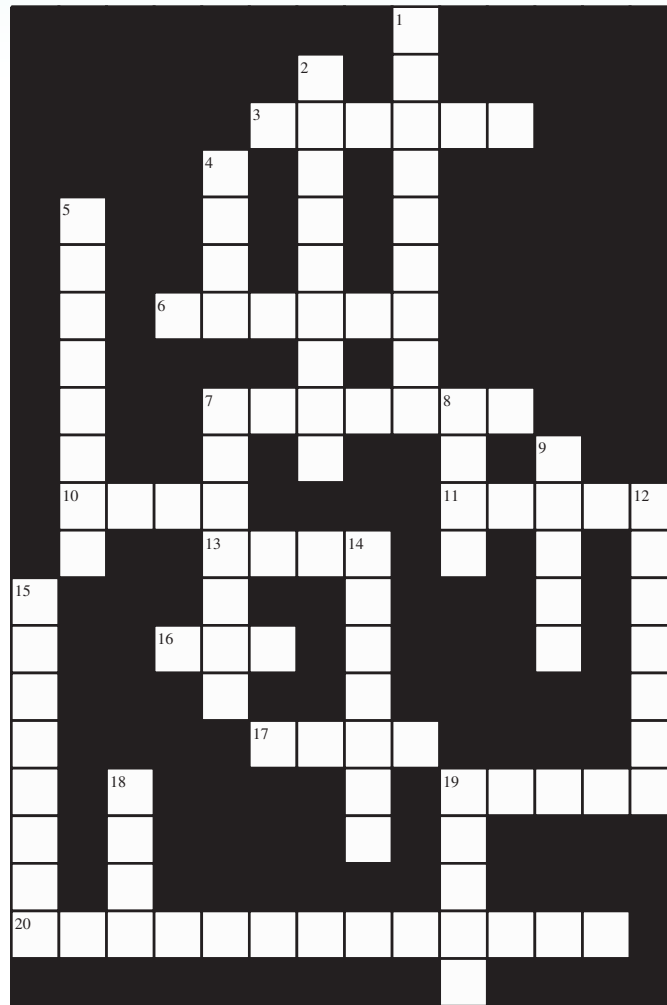
Choose the correct answer.

1. A person who cares for equine feet, including trimming and shoeing, is called a(n)
  - a. equestrian
  - b. farrier
  - c. hobble
  - d. quittor
2. A natural, rapid two-beat diagonal gait of horses is called the
  - a. pace
  - b. trot
  - c. canter
  - d. gallop
3. In horses, a rapid two-beat gait in which the front and hind feet on the same side start and stop at the same time is called the
  - a. pace
  - b. trot
  - c. canter
  - d. gallop
4. What is the term for the large, air-filled outpouching of the eustachian tube in equine?
  - a. Galvayne's groove
  - b. guttural pouch
  - c. nippers
  - d. periople
5. A common sequela of laminitis is
  - a. scratches
  - b. stay apparatus
  - c. breeching
  - d. founder
6. The term given to the broad white stripe on the face of a horse is its
  - a. star
  - b. stripe
  - c. race
  - d. blaze
7. For racing or showing, a foal's birthday is considered to be
  - a. January 1
  - b. April 1
  - c. June 1
  - d. December 1
8. To house a horse is called
  - a. blistering
  - b. bolting
  - c. boarding
  - d. bedding
9. The part of the bridle that is located under the horse's throat is called the
  - a. tack
  - b. throatlatch
  - c. chinstrap
  - d. halter
10. The tool used for leveling the foot of an equine is the
  - a. pincher
  - b. hoof pick
  - c. rasp
  - d. nippers
11. The act of exercising a horse on the end of a long rope is
  - a. longeing
  - b. driving
  - c. handing
  - d. plumbing
12. The term for the white marking from the coronet to the knee of a horse is
  - a. pastern
  - b. stocking
  - c. sock
  - d. coronet

13. The vice in horses in which they grasp an object between the teeth, apply pressure, and swallow air is
  - a. flighting
  - b. lathering
  - c. cribbing
  - d. cross-typing
14. The unit used to measure the height of an equine at the withers is
  - a. grade
  - b. get
  - c. cast
  - d. hand
15. The part of the bridle that is put in the horse's mouth is the
  - a. bit
  - b. cinch
  - c. cradle
  - d. rasp
16. The canine tooth in a horse that is usually found only in males also is called the
  - a. wolf tooth
  - b. tush
  - c. Galvayne's groove
  - d. nipper
17. The act and practice of riding a horse is
  - a. equitation
  - b. Western
  - c. dressage
  - d. ambling
18. Teeth that have risen to the masticatory (chewing) level are said to be
  - a. cracked
  - b. curbed
  - c. in swing
  - d. in wear
19. The development of the mammary glands or udder near parturition is called
  - a. bishoping
  - b. cupping
  - c. bagging up
  - d. curbing
20. The first teeth that an animal develops are its
  - a. nippers
  - b. milk teeth
  - c. wolf teeth
  - d. cups

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Horse Terms Puzzle



#### Across

- 3 fast, four-beat gait
- 6 distance between successive imprints of the same foot
- 7 nervous
- 10 left side of horse
- 11 top part of the equine rump
- 13 tool used for leveling the foot
- 16 offspring
- 17 equine with horseshoes
- 19 broad white stripe on the face of a horse
- 20 large, air-filled ventral outpouching of the eustachian tube in equine

#### Down

- 1 first teeth that an animal develops
- 2 founder is a sequela of this condition
- 4 time when the foot touches the ground
- 5 condition in which a horse drops food from the mouth while chewing
- 7 person who cares for equine feet
- 8 equipment used in riding and driving horses
- 9 to house
- 12 natural breeding
- 14 small fenced-in area
- 15 white marking from the coronet to the knee
- 18 to eat rapidly or startle
- 19 shiny coat

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 6-yr-old quarter horse mare was presented for signs of pawing at the abdomen, flank-watching, anorexia, and lack of stool production. On PE, she was tachycardic and hyperpnic, MMs were tacky and discolored, and the CRT was 2 seconds. Her ears and limbs were cold to the touch. The gut was auscultated, and borborygmus was noted. The veterinarian did a rectal palpation of the horse and noted gas-filled segments of bowel that felt proximal (oral) to an impaction. Ventral midline abdominocentesis was performed, and blood was collected for a CBC. Laboratory results revealed few peritoneal fluid changes on the abdominocentesis sample, and the CBC was unremarkable. The veterinarian thought the impaction was mild and opted for medical treatment. A nasogastric tube was passed to relieve the gas distention, and mineral oil was given via the NG tube (Figure 19–17). An analgesic was given IV for pain relief. The horse recovered uneventfully.

1. mare \_\_\_\_\_
2. flank \_\_\_\_\_
3. anorexia \_\_\_\_\_
4. stool \_\_\_\_\_
5. tachycardic \_\_\_\_\_
6. hyperpnic \_\_\_\_\_
7. MMs \_\_\_\_\_
8. CRT \_\_\_\_\_
9. auscultated \_\_\_\_\_
10. borborygmus \_\_\_\_\_
11. rectal palpation \_\_\_\_\_
12. proximal (oral) \_\_\_\_\_
13. impaction \_\_\_\_\_
14. ventral midline abdominocentesis \_\_\_\_\_
15. CBC \_\_\_\_\_
16. peritoneal \_\_\_\_\_
17. nasogastric tube \_\_\_\_\_
18. NG tube \_\_\_\_\_
19. analgesic \_\_\_\_\_
20. IV \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 19-17** Nasogastric tube placement in a horse. (Courtesy of Laura Lien, CVT, BS.)

A 2-yr-old Arabian colt was anorectic and reluctant to stand. The owner called the veterinarian for an examination. The veterinarian walked the horse, and it showed a short-striding gait. The horse was febrile and tachycardic. Upon palpation of the hoof, the area near the coronary band was warm and a pulse could be palpated. The veterinarian suspected laminitis and recommended radiographs of the hoof. Radiographs revealed rotation of the coffin bone from the hoof wall. The Dx of laminitis (founder) was made. Treatment consisted of NSAIDs and hoof trimming and reshoeing by a farrier.

21. colt \_\_\_\_\_
22. febrile \_\_\_\_\_
23. tachycardic \_\_\_\_\_
24. palpation \_\_\_\_\_
25. coronary band \_\_\_\_\_
26. pulse \_\_\_\_\_
27. laminitis \_\_\_\_\_
28. radiographs \_\_\_\_\_
29. coffin bone \_\_\_\_\_
30. Dx \_\_\_\_\_
31. founder \_\_\_\_\_
32. NSAIDs \_\_\_\_\_
33. farrier \_\_\_\_\_

# CHAPTER 20

## MAKE ROOM FOR THE RUMINANTS

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to cattle, sheep, goats, and llamas
- Analyze case studies and apply medical terminology in a practical setting

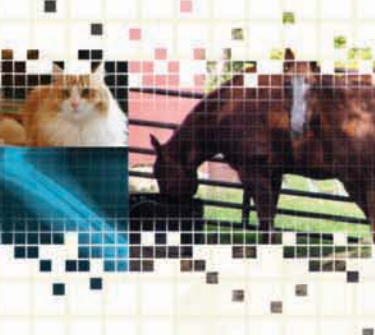
### RUMINANTS

A **ruminant** (roo-mihn-ehnt) is a cud-chewing animal that has a forestomach that allows fermentation of ingesta. Cattle, sheep, and goats have four stomach compartments. The first three—the rumen, reticulum, and omasum—are actually outpouchings of the esophagus. The abomasum is considered the true, or glandular, stomach. Llamas have three stomach compartments and are called pseudoruminants.

### CATTLE

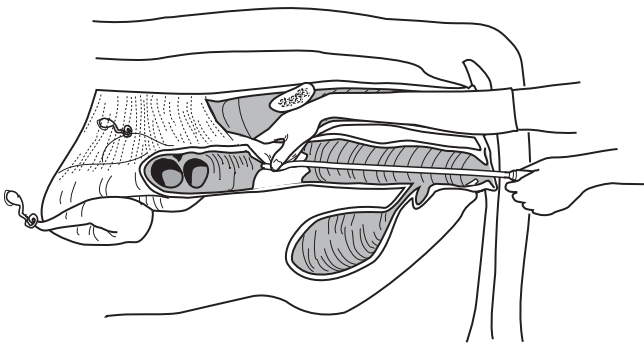
Cattle provide humans with meat, milk, hides, and other by-products. There are basically two types of cattle: dairy and beef. Dairy cattle are bred for their milk-producing qualities, whereas beef cattle are bred for meat. Some breeds are considered dual purpose, which means they have both dairy and beef traits.

Many of the anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to cattle have been covered in previous chapters. The lists in this chapter apply more specifically to the care and treatment of cattle.



## Industry Terms

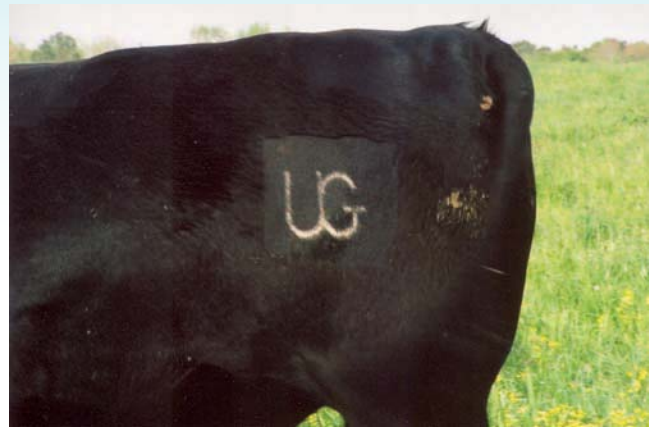
- **artificial insemination** (ahr-tih-fih-shahl ihn-sehm-ihñ-ā-shuhn) = breeding method in which semen is collected, stored, and deposited in the uterus or vagina without copulation taking place (Figure 20–1); abbreviated AI.
- **balling** (bahl-ihng) **gun** = tool used to administer pills, boluses, or magnets to livestock (Figure 20–2); also called **bolus gun**.
- **barren** (bār-ehn) = animal that was not bred or did not conceive.
- **body capacity** (boh-dē kah-pah-siht-ē) = heart girth and barrel.
- **brand** (brahnd) = method of permanently identifying animal by scarring the skin with heat, extreme cold, or chemicals (Figure 20–3).
- **bred** (brehd) = said of an animal that has mated and is pregnant.



**Figure 20–1** During artificial insemination, semen is placed in the female reproductive tract, allowing the process of fertilization to take place just as in natural mating.

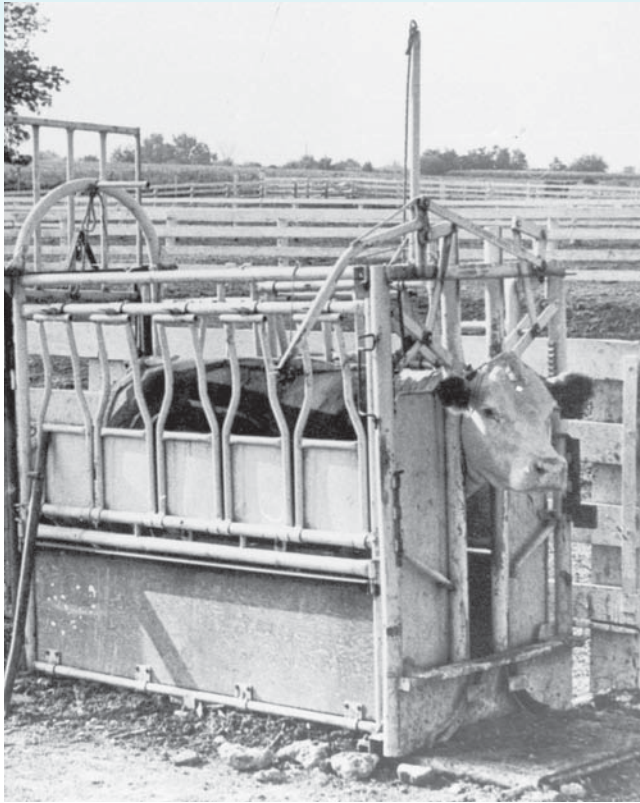


**Figure 20–2** Balling gun used to administer a magnet to a Holstein cow. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 20–3** Freeze branding kills the hair pigment, thus marking the animal. (Courtesy of Gary Farmer.)

- **breed** (brēd) = group of animals that are genetically similar in color and conformation so that when mated to each other, they produce young identical to themselves; also the act of breeding.
- **calving interval** (kahv-ihng ihñ-tər-vahl) = amount of time between the birth of a calf and birth of the next calf from the same cow.
- **carcass** (kahr-kuhs) = body of animal after it has been slaughtered; usually has head, hide, blood, and offal removed.
- **casting** (kabs-tihng) = restraint method using ropes to place an animal in lateral recumbency.
- **cattle** (kah-tuhl) = more than one member of the genus *Bos*.
- **chute** (shoot) = mechanical device that is used to restrain cattle (Figure 20–4).
- **cleaning a cow** = common term for removal of a retained placenta; also called **cleansing a cow**.
- **cod** (kohd) = remnants of steer scrotum.
- **colostrum** (kō-lah-struhm) = first milklike substance produced by the female after parturition; it is thick, yellow, and high in protein and antibodies.
- **conformation** (kohn-för-mā-shuhn) = shape and body type of an animal.
- **corium** (kōr-ē-uhm) = specialized, highly vascular cells that nourish the hoof and horn.
- **crossbred** (krohs-brehd) = having resulted from the mating of two different breeds within the same species.
- **cull** (kuhl) = to remove an animal from the rest because it does not meet a specific standard or is unproductive.
- **dehorn** (dē-hörn) = to remove horns or horn buds by mechanical, thermal, or chemical means.
- **dual purpose** (dool pār-puhs) = bred and used for both meat and milk production.
- **ear tagging** (ēr tahg-ihng) = placement of identification device in the ear.



**Figure 20-4** Headgate chute.

- **embryo transfer** (ehm-brē-ō trahnz-fər) = removal of an embryo from a female of superior genetics and placing it in the reproductive tract of another female.
- **F<sub>1</sub> generation** (F-1 jehn-ər-ā-shuhn) = first offspring from purebred parents of different breeds or varieties; F1 stands for first filial.
- **feeders** (fē-dərz) = beef cattle that are placed in a feedlot based on age and weight.
- **feedlot** (fēd-loht) = confined area where an animal is fed until it is slaughtered (Figure 20-5a).
- **flushing** (fluhsh-ihng) = act of increasing feed before breeding or embryo transfer to increase the number of ova released.
- **fly strike** (fli strik) = infestation with maggots.
- **free stall** (frē stahl) = stall for cattle in which each animal is free to lie down, feed, move, or seek out other animals.
- **gomer** (gō-mər) **bull** = bull used to detect female bovines in heat; bull may have penis surgically deviated to the side, may be treated with androgens, or may be vasectomized so as not to impregnate females; also called **teaser bull**.
- **halter** (hahl-tər) = head harness worn by animals for restraint that extends behind the head and over the nose.



(a)



(b)



(c)

**Figure 20-5** Cattle housing. (a) Feedlot; (b) stanchion; (c) hutch.

- **heart girth** (hahrt garth) = circumference around the thoracic cavity used to estimate an animal's weight and capacity of the heart and lung.
- **hutch** (huhch) = individual housing pen for calves (and other small animals such as rabbits) (Figure 20–5c).
- **hybrid** (hi-brihd) = offspring resulting from mating of two different species.
- **hybrid vigor** (hi-brihd vihg-ohr) = mating of dissimilar breeds to increase productivity and performance in the F1 generation of crossbred animals over that shown by either parent; also called **heterosis** (heh-tər-ō-sihs).
- **inbred** (ihn-brehd) = resulting from the mating of two closely related animals (e.g., son to dam, sire to daughter); also called **close breeding**.
- **lead rope** (lēd rōp) = piece of rope, leather, or nylon that is attached via a clasp to a halter.
- **magnet** (māg-neht) = charged metal device that is used to prevent hardware disease (traumatic reticuloperitonitis); it is given orally and placed in the reticulum.
- **malpresentation** (mahl-prē-sehn-tā-shuhn) = abnormal position of a fetus just before parturition.
- **marbling** (mahr-blihng) = streaks of fat interdispersed throughout meat that increase its tenderness.
- **offal** (aw-fuhl) = inedible visceral organs and unusable tissues removed from the carcass of a slaughtered animal.
- **parturient paresis** (pahr-too-rē-ahnt pahr-ē-sihs) = hypocalcemic metabolic disorder of ruminants seen in late pregnancy or early lactation; also called **milk fever**.
- **pinch** (pihnch) = common term for a bloodless castration using an emasculator.
- **proven** (proov-ehn) = said of an animal whose ability to pass on specific traits is known and predictable.
- **rectal palpation** (rehck-tahl pahl-pā-shuhn) = method of determining pregnancy, phase of the estrous cycle, or disease process by inserting a gloved arm into the rectum of the animal and feeling for a specific structure (Figure 20–6).
- **render** (rehn-dər) = to melt down fat by heat.
- **replacement** (rē-plās-mehnt) = animal that is raised for addition to the herd (one that replaces a less desirable animal).
- **ruminating** (roo-mihn-ā-tihng) = cud-chewing process (see page 117).
- **scurs** (skərz) = underdeveloped horns that are not attached to the skull.
- **somatic** (sō-mah-tihck) **cell count** = determination of number of cells (e.g., leukocytes and epithelial cells) in milk to test for mastitis; abbreviated SCC.
- **spotter** (spoh-tər) **bull** = vasectomized male bovine used to find and mark female bovines in estrus.
- **springing** (sprihng-ihng) = anatomic changes in a ruminant that indicate parturition is near.



**Figure 20–6** Rectal palpation in a cow. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

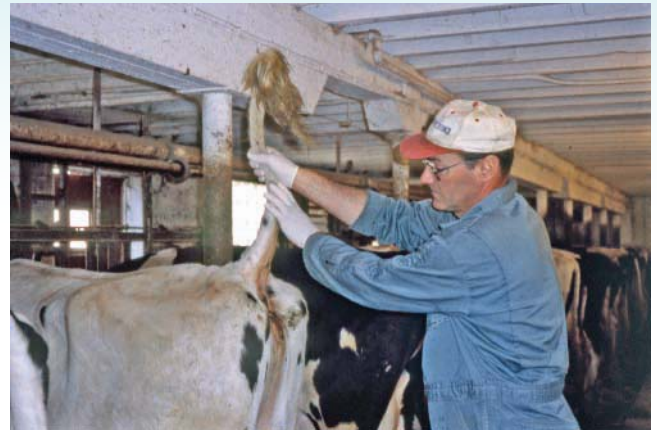
- **stall** (stahl) = small compartment to house an animal.
- **stanchion** (stahn-chuhn) = restraint device that secures cattle around the neck to allow accessibility for milking, feeding, and examining (Figure 20–5b).
- **standing heat** = phase of estrus in which a female bovine will stand to be mounted.
- **switch** (swihtch) = distal part of a bovine tail that consists of long, coarse hairs (Figure 20–7).
- **tailing** (tā-lihng) = restraint technique used in cattle in which the tailhead is grasped and raised vertically; also called a **tail jack** (Figure 20–8).
- **tankage** (tahnk-ahj) = animal residues left after fat is rendered in a slaughterhouse; used for feed or fertilizer.
- **tattoo** (taht-too) = permanent identification of an animal using indelible ink that is injected under the skin.
- **tie stall** (tī stahl) = stall large enough for only one animal, which is usually tied by a neck chain (cattle) or halter (horse).
- **traumatic reticuloperitonitis** (traw-mah-tihck reh-tihck-yoo-loh-pehr-ih-tō-nī-tihs) = relatively common disease in adult cattle caused by ingestion and migration of a foreign body into the reticulum; occasionally the foreign body penetrates the diaphragm and pericardium causing pericarditis; abbreviated TRP; commonly called hardware disease.
- **veal** (vēl) = confined young dairy calf that is fed only milk or milk replacer to produce pale, soft, and tender meat.
- **wean** (wēn) = to remove young from their mother so they can no longer nurse.
- **windbreak** (wihnd-brāk) = shelter in which an animal can stand and be protected from the wind.

## Milk-Related Terms

- **alveoli** (ahl-vē-ō-li) = milk-secreting sacs of mammary gland; also used to describe gas exchange sac of respiratory system.
- **dry** (dri) = not lactating.

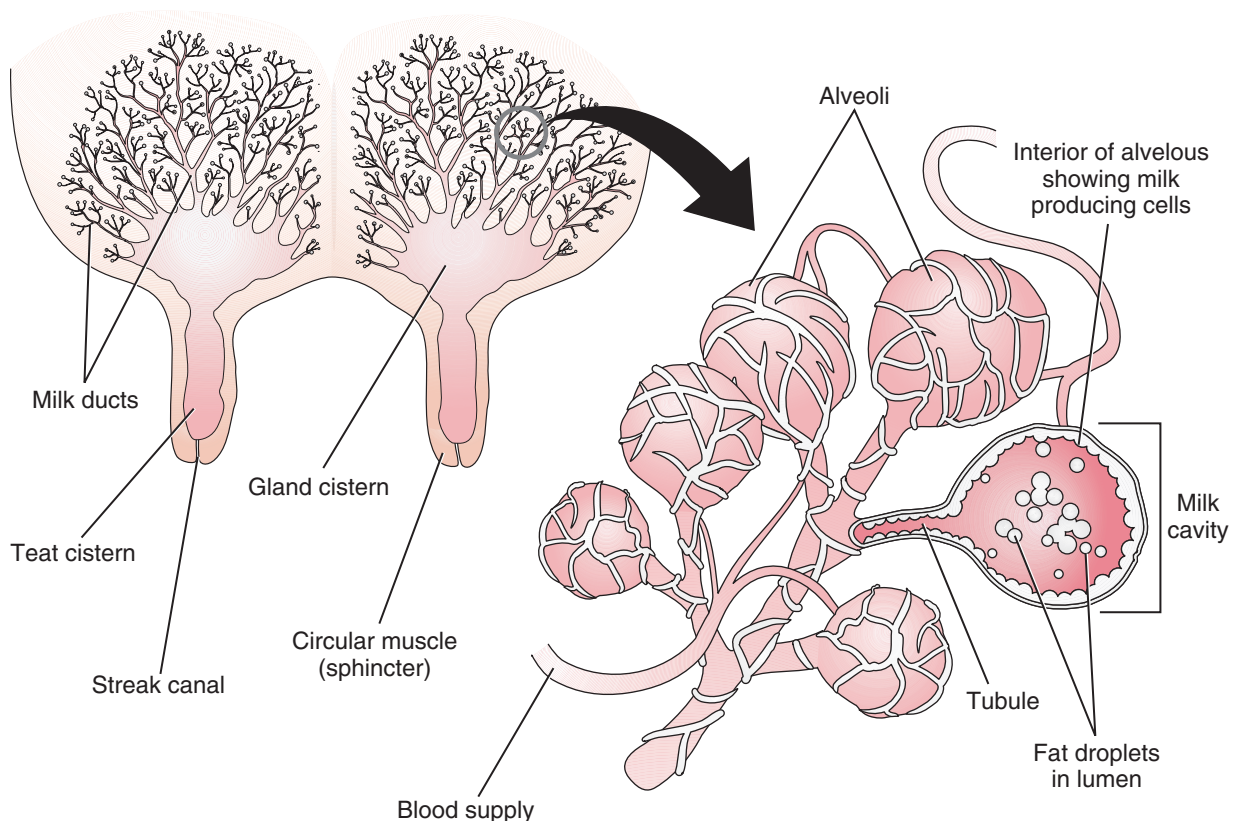


**Figure 20-7** The distal part of a bovine tail is the switch.



**Figure 20-8** Tail jack or tailing a cow. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)

- **drying off** = ending the production of milk when milk yield is low or before freshening.
- **gland cistern** (sihs-tərn) = area of udder where milk collects before entering the teat cistern (Figure 20-9).
- **milk solids** = portion of milk that is left after water is removed; includes protein and fat.
- **milk veins** = veins found near the ventral midline of a cow (Figure 20-10); also called **mammary veins**.
- **milk well** = depression in the cow's ventral underline where milk veins enter the body.
- **milk yield** = amount of milk produced in a given period.
- **milking** = process of drawing milk from the mammary glands (Figures 20-11a and b).
- **streak canal** (strēk kah-nahl) = passageway that takes milk from the teat cistern to the outside of the body; also called the **papillary duct** or **teat canal**.



**Figure 20-9** Parts of the udder.

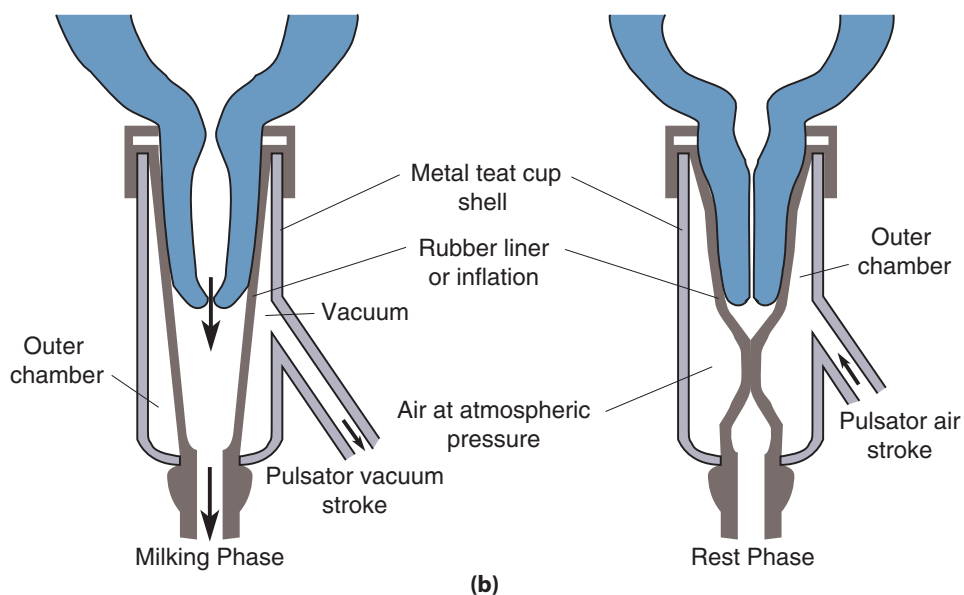


**Figure 20-10** The veins found on a cow's ventral midline are the milk veins. (Courtesy of Jim Meronek, DVM, MPH.)

- **strip cup** = metal cup with a lid that is used for detecting mastitis.
- **supernumerary teats** (soo-pər-nū-mahr-ehr-ē têtz) = more than the normal number of teats.
- **teat** (têt) = nipple, especially the large nipples of ruminants and equine.
- **teat cannula** (têt kahn-yoo-lah) = short and narrow, round-pointed metal or plastic tube used to pass from the exterior through the teat canal and into the teat cistern to relieve teat obstructions (Figure 20-12).
- **teat cistern** (sihs-tərn) = cavity in the udder where milk is secreted before leaving the teat.
- **teat dipping** = submerging or spraying the nipple with antiseptic to prevent the development of mastitis.

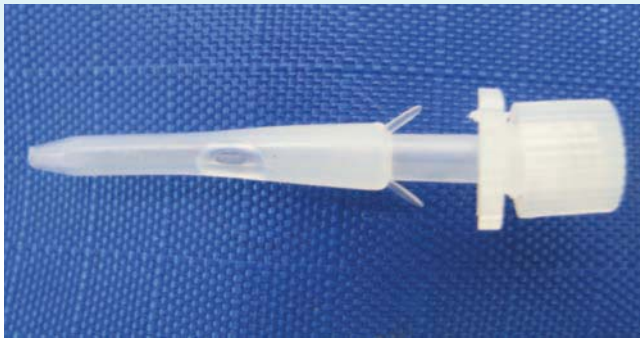


(a)



(b)

**Figure 20-11** (a) Teat cups are placed on the cow's teats to collect milk. (b) Milking is accomplished using a vacuum system that pulsates on the teats. [(a) Courtesy of Gary Farmer; (b) Courtesy of the Cooperative Extension Service, The University of Georgia.]



**Figure 20–12** Teat cannula.

- **teat stripping** = removing milk from the teat before or after milking by occluding the teat at the top between the thumb and forefinger and then pulling downward to express all of the milk; also called **stripping**.
- **three quartered** (thrē kwar-tərd) = condition in cows in which one quarter is no longer used due to previous damage or infection.
- **udder** (uh-dər) = milk production organ in ruminants and equine species.

### Feeding-Related Terms

- **bypass protein** (bī-pahs prō-tēn) = protein that is heat or chemically treated so that it is not altered in the ruminant stomach.
- **concentrate** (kohn-sehn-trāt) = type of feed that is high in total digestible nutrients and low in fiber.
- **creep feed** (krēp fēd) = high-energy feed that is fed to young animals in special feed devices so that adult animals cannot gain access to the feed.
- **cudding** (kuhd-ihng) = act of chewing cud; **cud** (kuhd) is regurgitated food particles, fiber, rumen fluid, and rumen microorganisms.
- **dental pad** (dehn-tahl pahd) = hard surface of the upper mouth of cattle that serves in place of upper teeth (Figure 20–13).
- **ensiling** (ehn-sī-lihng) = process in which a forage is chopped, placed in a storage unit that excludes oxygen, and fermented to allow longer preservation of feed.
- **feedstuff** (fēd-stuhf) = any dietary component that provides a nutrient; also called **feed**.
- **finishing** (fihn-ihsh-ihng) = act of feeding beef cattle high-quality feed before slaughter to increase carcass quality and yield.
- **graze** (grāz) = to eat grasses and plants that grow close to the ground.



**Figure 20–13** Sheep and cattle have a dental pad instead of upper teeth. (Courtesy of Dreamstime.)

- **legumes** (lehg-yooms) = roughage plants that have nitrogen-fixing nodules on their roots; examples include alfalfa and clover.
- **premix** (prē-mihx) = ration mixed with various feedstuffs at the feedmill.
- **ration** (rah-shuhn) = amount of food consumed by animal in a 24-hour period.
- **roughage** (ruh-f-ahj) = type of feed that is high in fiber and low in total digestible nutrients; examples include pasture and hay; also called **forage**.
- **silage** (sī-lahj) = type of roughage feed that is produced by fermenting chopped corn, grasses, or plant parts under specific moisture conditions to ensure preservation of feed without spoilage (Figures 20–14a and b).
- **supplement** (suhp-lah-mehnt) = additional feed product that improves and balances a poorer ration; also called **additive**.
- **sweetfeed** (swēt-fēd) = food that consists of grains and pellets mixed with molasses to increase palatability.

## SHEEP

Sheep are raised for wool, meat, and research models. As in cattle, some breeds are better known for their wool production and others are better known for their meat quality. Sheep usually give birth to twins rather than single lambs (Figure 20–15).

Many of the anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to sheep have been covered in previous chapters. The following list of words is used more specifically for sheep and sheep production.

- **band** (bahnd) = large group of range sheep.
- **carding** (kahr-dihng) = process of separating, straightening, and aligning wool fibers.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 20-14** Silage is a type of roughage feed produced by fermenting chopped plant material to ensure preservation of feed without spoilage. (a) Corn silage is fermented chopped corn. (b) Haylage is fermented chopped hay. (Courtesy of Jim Meronek, DVM, MPH.)

- **clip** (klihp) = one season's wool yield.
- **combing** (kō-mihng) = separating long fibers from short fibers and then arranging and laying fibers parallel by length prior to further treatment (Figure 20-16).
- **crimp** (krihmp) = amount of wave in wool.
- **crutching** (kruhtch-ihng) = process of clipping wool from dock, udder, and vulva of sheep before lambing; also called **tagging**.
- **docking** (dohck-ihng) = removal of the distal portion of the tail; also means reducing in value (Figure 20-17).



**Figure 20-15** Twins are common in sheep. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 20-16** In the combing process, the fibers are untangled and smoothed. (Courtesy of American Sheep Industry Association.)

- **felting** (fehl-tihng) = property of wool fibers interlocking when rubbed together under heat, moisture, or pressure.
- **fleece** (flēs) = another term for wool.
- **grease wool** = wool that has been shorn from a sheep and has not been cleaned.
- **lamb** (lahm) = young sheep meat.
- **lanolin** (lahn-ō-lihn) = fatlike substance secreted by the sebaceous glands of sheep.
- **mutton** (muh-tihn) = adult sheep meat.
- **rumping** (ruhm-pihng) = method of restraining sheep by placing them in a sitting position with the front legs elevated; also called **tipping**.
- **scouring** (skow-ər-ihng) = cleaning wool (Figure 20-18); also diarrhea in livestock.
- **shear** (shēr) = to shave off wool, hair, or fur.
- **singleton** (sihn-guhl-tohn) = one offspring born.



**Figure 20-17** Docking. Tail docking of a lamb with an elastrator.

## GOATS

Goats are raised for milk, meat, wool, and research models and as pets.

Many of the anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to goats have been covered in previous chapters. The following list applies more specifically to the care and treatment of goats. Additional terms pertaining to goats are listed under the cattle section because they apply to both animals.

- **cabrito** (kah-brē-tō) = meat of young goats under 50 pounds.
- **cashmere** (kahzh-mər) = fine undercoat of goats (can be harvested from any goat).
- **chevon** (shehv-ehn) = adult goat meat.
- **clip** (klihp) = hair harvested from one animal in one shearing.
- **disbud** (dihs-buhd) = to remove horn growth in kids or calves by use of a hot iron or caustic substance; also called **debudding**.
- **wattle** (waht-tuhl) = appendage suspended from the head (usually the chin) in chickens, turkeys, and goats (Figure 20-19).

## CAMELIDS

Camelids are large, herbivorous animals that have slender necks and long legs. Camelids do not have horns or antlers. Camelids are considered pseudoruminants because they



**Figure 20-18** Scouring removes material from the wool. (Courtesy of American Sheep Industry Association.)



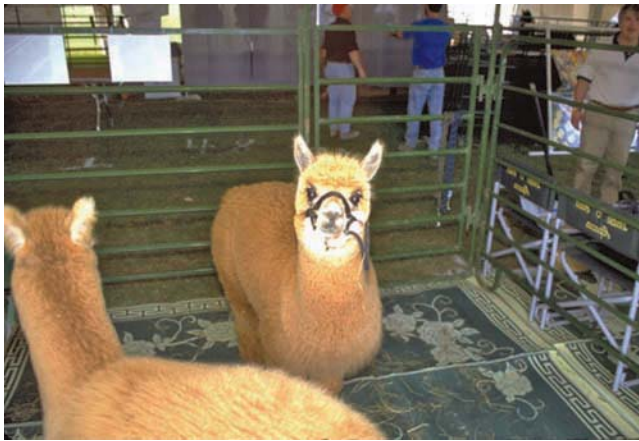
**Figure 20-19** Wattle in a goat. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)

have three stomach compartments (reticulum, omasum, and abomasum) instead of four. There are three genera of camelids; the true camels of Asia (genus *Camelus*); the wild guanaco and the domesticated alpaca and llama of South America (genus *Lama*); and the vicuña of South America (genus *Vicugna*). Llamas are the larger species with less desirable wool; alpacas are smaller than llamas and have high-quality wool; vicuñas are undomesticated and are the smallest and rarest with fine, high-quality wool; and guanacos are slightly smaller than llamas and are undomesticated. Llamas are becoming popular pets and are used as pack animals and for fiber production (Figure 20-20).

Many of the anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to llamas have been covered in previous chapters.



(a)



(b)

**Figure 20–20** (a) Llama. (b) Alpaca. (Courtesy of USDA.)

The following list applies more specifically to the care and treatment of llamas.

- **Berserk Male Syndrome** (bər-sərk māl sihn-drōm) = undesirable behaviors sometimes seen in male llamas, especially those that are hand-raised; these animals may be overly aggressive and frequently need to be euthanized because they are unsafe; abbreviated BMS.
- **cushing** (kuhsh-ihng) = common term for copulation of llamas; also the position camelids take when lying down.
- **fighting teeth** = set of six teeth in llamas that include an upper vestigial incisor and an upper and lower canine on each side (Figure 20–21).
- **fleece** (flēs) = hair of llama or alpaca; also known as fiber.
- **guard llama** = animal that lives with livestock (mainly sheep) to protect them from predatory animals.
- **harem breeding** (hār-uhm brē-dihng) = style of breeding where a male is left with females most of the year.
- **orgle** (ohr-gehl) = call of a male llama or alpaca.



**Figure 20–21** Fighting teeth of a llama.

- **spitting** (spiht-ihng) = behavior in which an animal spits saliva at an animal or a person who is perceived to be a threat or an annoyance; spitting also may be used to establish hierarchy.

## VACCINATIONS OF RUMINANTS

- **bovine respiratory syncytial** (sihn-sihsh-ahl) **virus** = paramyxovirus infection of bovine that is associated with fatal pneumonia; abbreviated BRSV or RSV.
- **bovine viral diarrhea** = togavirus infection of bovine that is associated with acute stomatitis, gastroenteritis, and diarrhea; abbreviated BVD.
- **brucellosis** (broo-sehl-ō-sihs) = bacterial infection caused by *Brucella abortus* that causes abortion in cattle.
- **clostridial** (klohs-trihd-ē-ahl) **disease** = group of bacterial infectious conditions of ruminants caused by various species of *Clostridium*, which includes blackleg, malignant edema, pulpy kidney, enterotoxemia, and overeating disease.
- **coronavirus** (kō-rohn-ah-vī-ruhs) = corona virus infection that causes diarrhea in calves.
- ***E. coli*** (ē kō-lī) = bacterial infection that typically causes scours in calves; also known as colisepticemia and septicemic colibacillosis.
- **enzootic abortion** = bacterial infection caused by *Chlamydophila abortus* (formerly known as *Chlamydia psittaci*) that causes abortion in sheep.
- ***Hemophilus somnus*** (hē-moh-fihl-uhs sohm-nuhs) = bacterial infection that causes reproductive, urinary, respiratory, and septicemic disease in cattle.
- **infectious bovine rhinotracheitis** (rī-nō-trā-kē-ī-tihs) = herpesvirus infection of bovine that is associated with fever, anorexia, tachypnea, and cough; abbreviated IBR.

- **leptospirosis** (lehp-tō-spī-rō-sihs) = bacterial disease caused by various serotypes of *Leptospira*; signs include renal failure, jaundice, fever, and abortion.
- **parainfluenza** (pār-ah-ihn-flū-ehn-zah) = paramyxovirus infection of ruminants that is associated with fever, cough, and diarrhea; one part of the shipping fever complex; abbreviated PI-3.
- **pasteurellosis** (pahs-tər-ehl-ō-sihs) = bacterial infection caused by *Pasteurella multocida* and *Mannheimia hemolytica* (formerly known as *Pasteurella hemolytica*) that causes respiratory disease in cattle, sheep, and goats.
- **rotovirus** (rō-tō-vī-ruhs) = reovirus that causes scours in calves.
- **soremouth** (sōr-mowth) = poxvirus infection of sheep, goats, and camelids that causes mouth lesions; also called contagious ecthyma and orf.
- **tetanus** (teht-ah-nuhs) = highly fatal bacterial disease caused by the toxin of *Clostridium tetani* that is associated with hyperesthesia, tetany, and convulsions; also called lockjaw.
- **vibriosis** (vihb-rē-ō-sihs) = *Campylobacter fetus* bacterial infection that is associated with infertility and irregular estrous cycles; bulls are vaccinated; also called campylobacteriosis.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

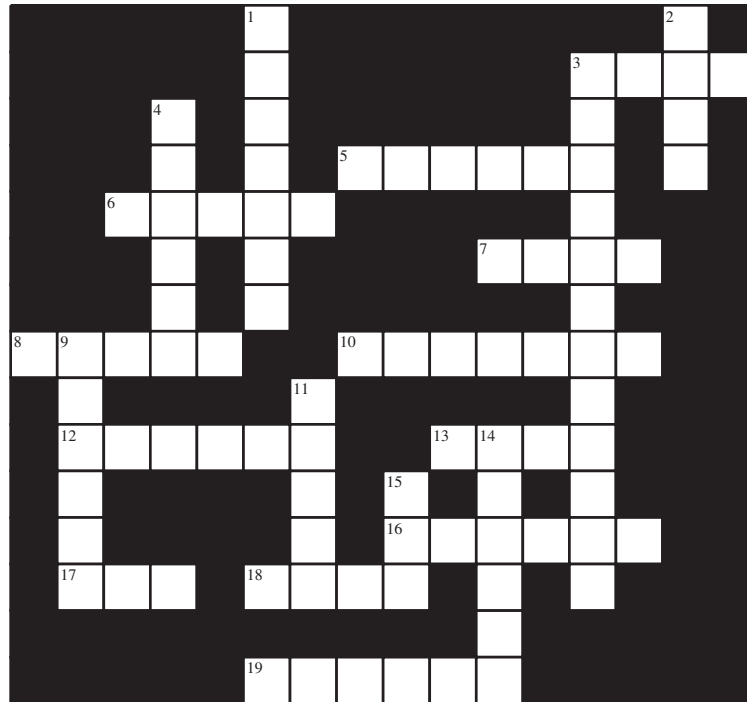
Choose the correct answer.

1. The common term for removing a retained placenta in a cow is
  - a. coding
  - b. culling
  - c. cleaning a cow
  - d. chuting a cow
2. The inedible visceral organs and unusable tissues removed from the carcass of a slaughtered animal are the
  - a. marbling
  - b. scurs
  - c. render
  - d. offal
3. What is the name of the passageway that takes milk from the teat cistern to the outside of the udder?
  - a. milk duct
  - b. gland cistern
  - c. alveoli
  - d. streak canal
4. What is the term for the restraint device that secures cattle around the neck to allow accessibility for milking, feeding, and examining?
  - a. switch
  - b. stanchion
  - c. corium
  - d. lead rope
5. An individual housing pen for calves is called a
  - a. halter
  - b. stanchion
  - c. hutch
  - d. barren
6. The term for shaving off wool, hair, or fur is
  - a. cutting
  - b. scouring
  - c. carding
  - d. shearing
7. Another term for wool is
  - a. fur
  - b. curl
  - c. fleece
  - d. crimp
8. The common term for llama copulation is
  - a. tugging
  - b. cushioning
  - c. felting
  - d. finishing

9. The amount of food consumed by livestock in a 24-hour period is its
  - a. graze
  - b. ration
  - c. roughage
  - d. silage
10. The appendage suspended from the head of goats is the
  - a. wattle
  - b. comb
  - c. crimp
  - d. clip
11. The behavior in which a camelid propels saliva at an animal or a person who is perceived to be a threat is called
  - a. regurgitation
  - b. vomiting
  - c. spitting
  - d. drooling
12. The term for adult goat meat is
  - a. mutton
  - b. veal
  - c. lamb
  - d. chevon
13. The milk production organ in ruminants is called the
  - a. nipple
  - b. udder
  - c. milk well
  - d. gland cistern
14. The type of roughage feed produced by fermenting chopped plant parts is
  - a. concentrate
  - b. sweetfeed
  - c. silage
  - d. hay
15. The hypocalcemic metabolic disorder of ruminants that is seen in late pregnancy or early lactation is
  - a. parturient paresis
  - b. malpresentation
  - c. rendering
  - d. brucellosis
16. The mechanical device that is used to restrain cattle is a
  - a. cast
  - b. chute
  - c. cod
  - d. cull
17. Removing an animal from the rest because it does not meet a specific standard is known as
  - a. coding
  - b. culling
  - c. cleaning
  - d. cross-breeding
18. The mating of dissimilar breeds to increase productivity and performance in the next generation is known as
  - a. heart girth
  - b. inbred
  - c. casting
  - d. hybrid vigor
19. A large group of range sheep is a
  - a. band
  - b. card
  - c. clip
  - d. crimp
20. Roughage plants that have nitrogen-fixing nodules on their roots are
  - a. feedstuff
  - b. legumes
  - c. roughages
  - d. sweetfeeds

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Ruminant Terms Puzzle



#### Across

- 3 remove an animal from the rest
- 5 another term for wool
- 6 metal cup with a lid that is used for detecting mastitis
- 7 large group of range sheep
- 8 milk production organ in ruminants and equine
- 10 chewing cud
- 12 distal part of the bovine tail with long, coarse hairs
- 13 young llama
- 16 adult sheep meat
- 17 animal that is not lactating
- 18 nipples of ruminants and equine
- 19 not able to reproduce

#### Down

- 1 copulation in llamas
- 2 one season's wool yield
- 3 common name for removal of a retained placenta
- 4 appendages suspended from the chin of goats
- 9 removal of horn growth in kids
- 11 mechanical device used to restrain cattle
- 14 amount of food consumed in 24-hour period
- 15 California mastitis test

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 2-yr-old French alpine doe was presented with recurrent abdominal distention, decreased milk production, and dyspnea. On PE, the MMs were pink, CRT was normal, TPR was normal, breathing was labored but no abnormal respiratory sounds were auscultated, and the mammary glands were normal. The herd that this doe is in is closed, and the rest of the animals were normal. Urine was tested and revealed a trace amount of glucose and negative ketones. Rumen fluid had a pH of 6.9 and a healthy population of small and medium protozoal organisms. The majority of the large protozoal population was dead. A rumenostomy was performed, and administration of 0.5 L warm water was initiated.

1. doe \_\_\_\_\_
2. dyspnea \_\_\_\_\_
3. MMs \_\_\_\_\_
4. CRT \_\_\_\_\_
5. TPR \_\_\_\_\_
6. auscultated \_\_\_\_\_
7. pH \_\_\_\_\_
8. protozoal \_\_\_\_\_
9. rumenostomy \_\_\_\_\_
10. L \_\_\_\_\_

A 2-yr-old Suffolk ram was examined for lethargy, anorexia, and weight loss. The PE was WNL except for pale mucous membranes and a distended abdominal area. The owner was questioned about grazing, nutritional, and deworming practices on the farm. The veterinarian took a blood sample for a hematocrit and a stool sample for parasite testing. The hematocrit revealed that the ram was mildly anemic, and the fecal exam revealed *Haemonchus* eggs. The owner was advised to administer a broad-spectrum anthelmintic, to rotate pastures, and to monitor animals for signs of anemia.

11. ram \_\_\_\_\_
12. lethargy \_\_\_\_\_
13. anorexia \_\_\_\_\_
14. PE \_\_\_\_\_
15. WNL \_\_\_\_\_
16. mucous membranes \_\_\_\_\_
17. hematocrit \_\_\_\_\_
18. anemic \_\_\_\_\_
19. anthelmintic \_\_\_\_\_

A herd of Hereford cattle were showing signs of alopecia and crusty skin lesions on the head and neck. Some of the more severely affected cattle had lesions over most of their bodies. The PE was unremarkable except for the skin lesions. The veterinarian took several skin scrapings to identify possible mite infestation. Microscopic examination revealed *Psoroptes* mites. The veterinarian diagnosed scabies (Figure 20–22), recommended pour-on medication, and advised the owner to observe withdrawal times. The cattle recovered uneventfully.

- 20. herd \_\_\_\_\_
- 21. alopecia \_\_\_\_\_
- 22. lesions \_\_\_\_\_
- 23. PE \_\_\_\_\_
- 24. skin scrapings \_\_\_\_\_
- 25. microscopic examination \_\_\_\_\_
- 26. mites \_\_\_\_\_
- 27. scabies \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 20–22** Scabies in a Hereford cow. (Courtesy of USDA.)

A 3-year-old bull llama presented with signs of neurologic disease including hindlimb paralysis and a head tilt. The owner stated that initially the llama walked with a slight limp and had weakness in his hind limbs. Since the animal was not anorexic, the owner decided to monitor the animal with the suspicion that the llama had injured its leg. In a few days, the condition progressed to ataxia. Routine laboratory tests were performed on the llama, including a CBC, chem panel, and fecal examination. The CBC showed eosinophilia; however, the other tests were WNL. Since the llama is pastured with other llamas in an area of the Midwest that has white-tailed deer and had eosinophilia, the veterinarian suspected that the llama had meningeal worm (*Parelaphostrongylus tenuis*) and treated him with an antiparasitic drug. The owner was given a poor prognosis due to the fact that the llama had already progressed to the paralytic stage.

- 28. bull \_\_\_\_\_
- 29. paralysis \_\_\_\_\_
- 30. anorexic \_\_\_\_\_
- 31. ataxia \_\_\_\_\_
- 32. CBC \_\_\_\_\_
- 33. chem panel \_\_\_\_\_
- 34. fecal examination \_\_\_\_\_
- 35. eosinophilia \_\_\_\_\_
- 36. meningeal \_\_\_\_\_
- 37. antiparasitic \_\_\_\_\_
- 38. prognosis \_\_\_\_\_

# CHAPTER 21

## HOG HEAVEN

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to swine
- Analyze case studies and apply medical terminology in a practical setting

### PIGS

Pigs have been domesticated since 6,500 BC and have been used as livestock both as a forager in developing countries and as confinement-raised animals in commercial operations in industrialized nations. Today pigs are used for their meat and hides, as research models, and for pharmaceutical production. Some pigs, such as potbellied pigs, have more recently been housed as pets.

Many of the anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to pigs have been covered in previous chapters. The lists in this chapter and in Figure 21–1 apply more specifically to the care and treatment of pigs.



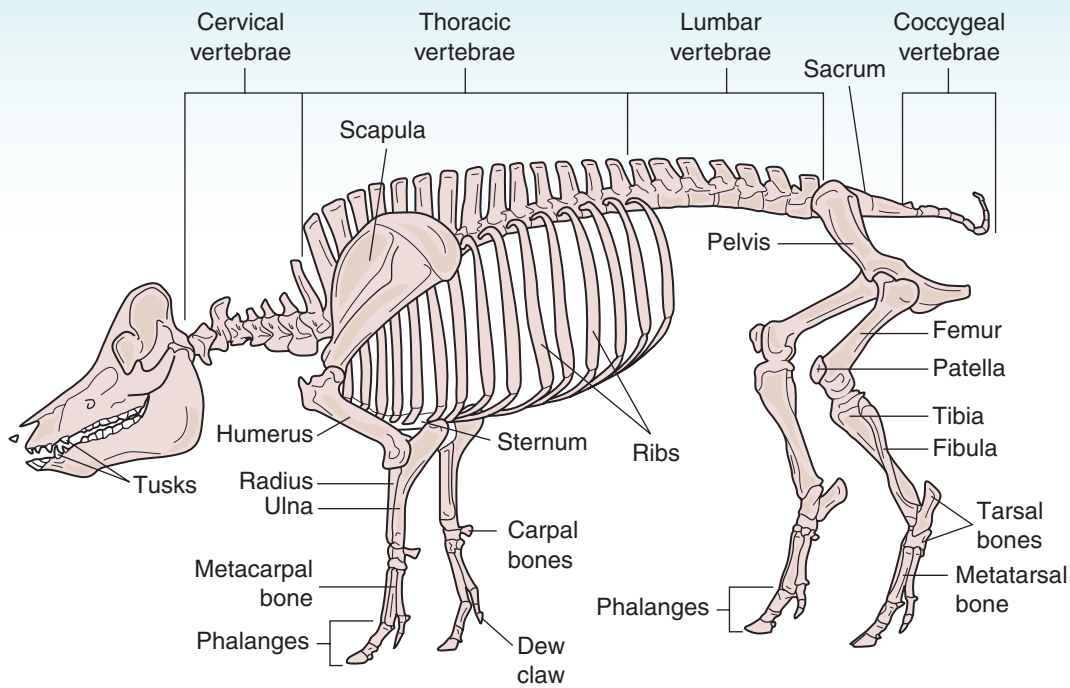
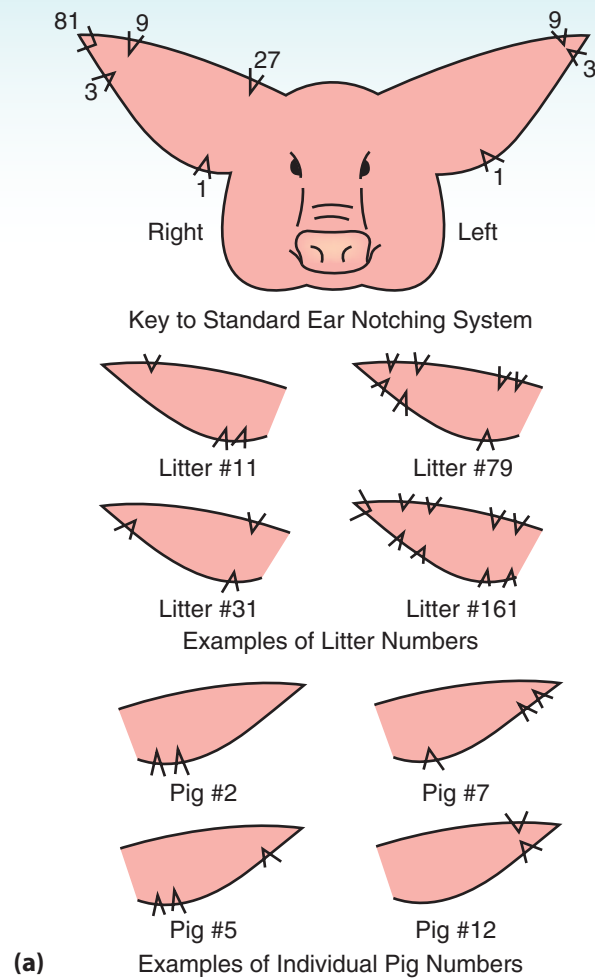


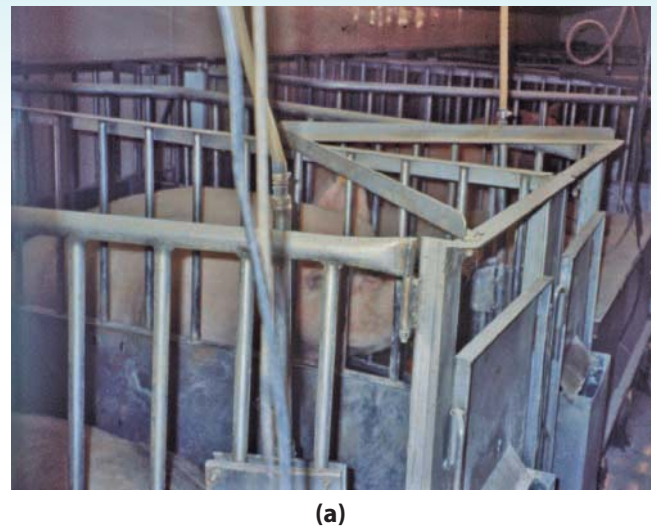
Figure 21-1 Pig skeleton.

## EQUIPMENT AND INDUSTRY TERMS

- **backfat** (bahk-faht) = thickness of fat along the dorsum of the pig.
- **bacon** (bā-kohn) = meat product from the sides of the pig.
- **boar taint** (bōr tānt) = odor of pork that is harvested from an adult boar; as boar ages, boar taint becomes more pronounced and results in an unpalatable product.
- **casting** (kahs-tihng) = restraint method using ropes to place animal in lateral recumbency.
- **checkoff** (chehck-ohf) = system where a portion of the sale price of every pig goes to the National Pork Board to promote and improve the pork industry.
- **cross-fostering** (krohs-fohs-tər-ihng) = moving piglets from one litter to another to balance litter size (done in the first day or two of life).
- **dunging pattern** (duhn-gihng pah-tərn) = tendency for animals to eliminate wastes in a particular location.
- **ear notching** (ēr nohtch-ihng) = identification method used in swine in which notches of various patterns are cut in the ear (Figures 21-2a and b).
- **farrowing crate** (fār-ō-ihng krāt) = holding pen that limits sow movement before and during parturition (Figure 21-3a).
- **farrowing house** (fār-ō-ihng hows) = building dedicated to the delivery and raising of piglets to weaning.
- **farrowing pen** (fār-ō-ihng pehn) = sow holding area that has guardrails and floor junctures that allow young pigs to escape; used before and during parturition; pen is larger than a crate (Figure 21-3b).
- **finish** (fihn-ihsh) = degree of fat on an animal that is ready for slaughter.
- **hide** (hīd) = pig skin.
- **hog hurdle** (hohg hər-duhl) = portable partition used to move swine by blocking the area in which the pig should not go (Figure 21-4a).
- **hog snare** (hohg snār) = restraint method in which the pig's snout is secured by a loop tie that is attached to a long handle; also called **snare** (Figure 21-4b).
- **hog-tight** (hohg-tīt) = fencing that prevents animal escape.
- **lard** (lahrd) = soft, white fat that is the product of rendering pig fat.
- **needle teeth** = eight temporary incisors and canine teeth of young swine (Figure 21-5).
- **piles** (pilz) = common term for a prolapsed rectum in swine.
- **ringing** = act of implanting a wire ring through a pig's nose to discourage rooting.
- **sling** (slihng) = swine restraint device with four leg holes and an additional hole under the neck for blood collection; device looks like a hammock.
- **snout** (snowt) = upper lip and apex of nose of swine.
- **specific pathogen free** (speh-sihf-ihck pahth-ō-jehn frē) = national system of accrediting free of specific diseases; animals are obtained by cesarean section and raised in isolation to prevent certain infectious diseases; abbreviated SPF; not disease-free.
- **tusk** (tuhsk) = overgrown canine tooth of boar.
- **wallow** (wahl-ō) = natural or artificial wading area to cool swine.



**Figure 21-2** (a) Ear notching identification in swine. (b) Pig with notched ears. (Courtesy of iStock Photo/Kathryn Bell.)



(a)



(b)



(c)

**Figure 21-3** Housing of swine. (a) Farrowing or gestation crate restrains sows during farrowing. (b) Farrowing pen allows baby pigs to move away from the sow to prevent being crushed. (c) Larger pigs are housed away from the sow. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizius, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



(a)



(b)

**Figure 21-4** Restraint of pigs. (a) Hog hurdle. (b) Hog snare. (Courtesy of Ron Fabrizio, DVM, Diplomate ACT.)



**Figure 21-5** Needle teeth. Needle teeth of baby pigs are clipped to prevent injury to the sow during nursing and to minimize wounds from sibling pigs.

## SWINE MANAGEMENT TERMS

- **closed herd** = group of animals that restricts entrance of new animals.
- **farrow-to-finish** (fâr-ô too fih-n-ihsh) = full-service swine operation that houses breeders, newborns, weanlings, and feeder stock.
- **farrow-to-wean** (fâr-ô too wên) = swine operation that houses breeding sows and offspring until they reach weaning age or weight.
- **feeder-to-finish** (fê-dâr too fih-n-ihsh) = swine operation that raises weanling pigs to market weight.

- **finisher pig** (fih-n-ihsh-ər pihg) = swine over 100 pounds to slaughter.
- **grower pig** (grô-ər pihg) = swine from about 40 to 100 pounds.
- **open herd** = group of animals in which animals from other groups are allowed to join the existing group.
- **starter pig** (stahr-tər pihg) = swine from about 10 to 40 pounds; also called feeder pig.

## SWINE VACCINATIONS

- **Bordetella** (bôr-dih-tehl-ah) = bacteria causing respiratory disease; atrophic rhinitis pathogen.
- **Clostridium perfringens type C** (klohs-trih-dē-uhm pər-frihn-jehns tīp C) = bacteria causing enterotoxemia that results in diarrhea and high mortality.
- **E. coli** (ē-kō-lī) = bacteria causing colibacillosis that causes edema, ataxia, and death.
- **Erysipelas** (ehr-ih-sihp-eh-lahs) = bacteria causing acute septicemia, skin lesions, chronic arthritis, and endocarditis.
- **Haemophilus** (hē-mohf-ih-luhs) = bacteria causing respiratory disease associated with acute onset, pyrexia, and reluctance to move.
- **leptospirosis** (lehp-tō-spī-rō-sihs) = bacterial (*Leptospira*) disease of swine associated with pyrexia, anorexia, neurologic signs, and abortion.
- **Mycoplasma** (mī-kō-plahz-mah) = bacteria causing respiratory disease seen largely in young pigs with a severe cough.
- **parvovirus** (pah-rvō-vī-ruhs) = parvovirus infection affecting mainly gilts and associated with abortion.

- **Pasteurella** (pahs-too-rehl-ah) = bacteria causing respiratory disease that sometimes leads to pericarditis and pleuritis.
- **porcine proliferative enteropathy** (por-sin prō-lihf-ər-ah-tihv ehn-tər-oh-pah-thē) = bacterial disease (caused by *Lawsonia intracellularis*) that causes ileitis.
- **porcine** (por-sin) **respiratory and reproductive syndrome** = arteriviral disease of swine characterized by reproductive failure in sows and respiratory disease in young and growing pigs; abbreviated PRRS.
- **pseudorabies** (soo-dō-rā-bēz) = herpesvirus infection associated with pyrexia and neurologic signs.
- **rotavirus** (rō-tə-vī-ruhs) = rotavirus associated with villous destruction in the intestine, malabsorption, and diarrhea.
- **Streptococcus suis** (strehp-tō-kohk-kuhs sū-his) = bacterial infection that causes meningitis.
- **swine influenza** (swin ihn-flū-ehn-zah) = orthomyxoviral infection that causes respiratory disease.
- **transmissible gastroenteritis** (trahnz-mihs-ih-buhl gahs-trō-ehn-tehr-ī-tihs) = coronaviral disease of swine characterized by villous destruction of jejunum and ileum, malabsorption, diarrhea, and dehydration; abbreviated TGE.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

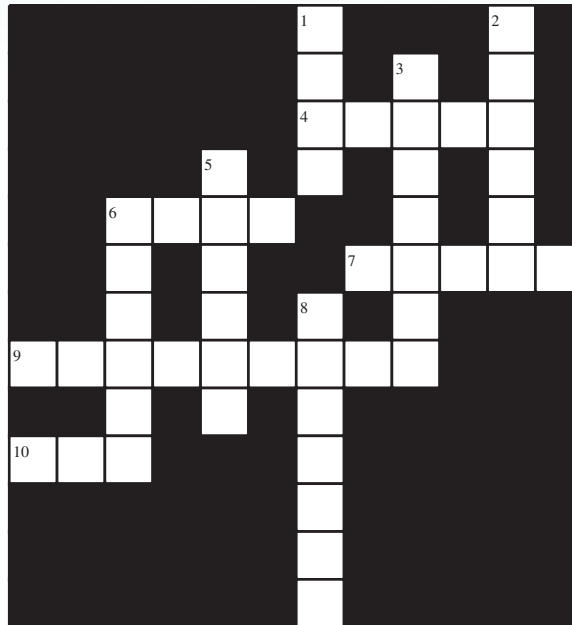
Choose the correct answer.

1. The eight temporary incisors and canine teeth of young swine are known as
  - a. piles
  - b. needle teeth
  - c. finishing teeth
  - d. tusks
2. A swine over 100 pounds to slaughter is known as a(n)
  - a. finisher pig
  - b. grower pig
  - c. starter pig
  - d. open pig
3. Swine weighing 10 to 40 pounds are called
  - a. finisher pigs
  - b. grower pigs
  - c. starter pigs
  - d. open pigs
4. What identification method is used for swine?
  - a. tattooing
  - b. branding
  - c. ear notching
  - d. tail notching
5. What is the name of the restraint method that uses ropes to place swine in lateral recumbency?
  - a. hog-tighting
  - b. hog-tying
  - c. slinging
  - d. casting
6. The overgrown canine tooth of the boar is its
  - a. needle tooth
  - b. molar
  - c. tusk
  - d. snout
7. A swine operation that raises weanling pigs to market weight is what type of management system?
  - a. farrow-to-finish
  - b. farrow-to-wean
  - c. feeder-to-finish
  - d. feeder-to-farrow
8. The upper lip and apex of the nose of swine is its
  - a. tusk
  - b. wallow
  - c. snout
  - d. lard
9. What type of restraint method has the pig's snout secured via a loop tie that is attached to a long handle?
  - a. hog hurdle
  - b. snare
  - c. sling
  - d. crate
10. A holding pen that limits sow movement before and during parturition is known as a
  - a. farrowing crate
  - b. farrowing pen
  - c. finishing pen
  - d. starter pen

11. The common term for a prolapsed rectum in swine is
  - a. ringing
  - b. sling
  - c. piles
  - d. backfat
12. A group of animals that restricts entrance of new animals is a(n)
  - a. open herd
  - b. closed herd
  - c. farrowing herd
  - d. finisher herd
13. Moving piglets from one litter to another to balance litter size is
  - a. checkoff
  - b. boar taint
  - c. piglet transfer
  - d. cross-fostering
14. A portable partition to move swine by blocking the area is a
  - a. hog snare
  - b. hog hurdle
  - c. hog ring
  - d. hog sling
15. Pig skin also is called
  - a. hide
  - b. dung
  - c. piles
  - d. lard
16. The tendency for animals to eliminate wastes in a particular location is known as a
  - a. notching pattern
  - b. farrowing pattern
  - c. slinging pattern
  - d. dunging pattern
17. The odor of pork that is harvested from an adult boar is called
  - a. pork taste
  - b. boar taint
  - c. boar odor
  - d. pork taint
18. White fat that is the product of rendering pig fat is
  - a. wallow
  - b. piles
  - c. lard
  - d. bacon
19. Swine from about 40 to 100 pounds in weight are
  - a. finisher pigs
  - b. grower pigs
  - c. starter pigs
  - d. farrowing pigs
20. SPF pigs are
  - a. completely disease-free
  - b. obtained by cesarean section
  - c. raised in large intermingling groups
  - d. part of a nonaccredited system

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Swine Terms Puzzle



#### Across

- 4 restraint method in which the pig's snout is secured via a loop tie
- 6 intact male pig
- 7 common term for prolapsed rectum in swine
- 9 giving birth to swine
- 10 female pig

#### Down

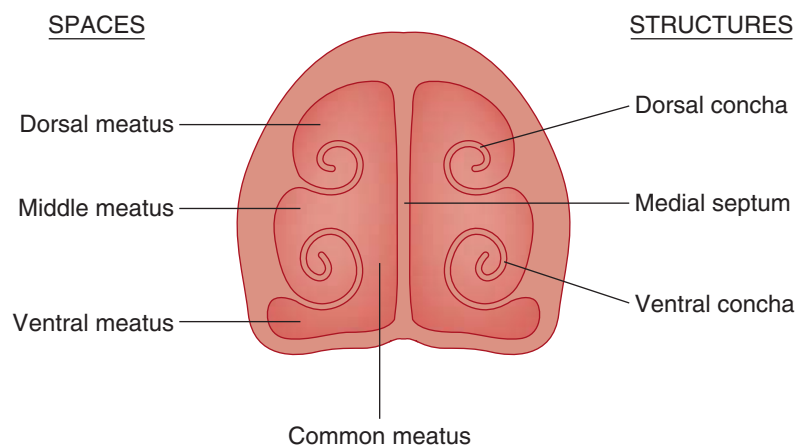
- 1 overgrown canine tooth of boar
- 2 eight temporary incisors and canine teeth of young swine
- 3 restraint method using ropes to place animal in lateral recumbancy
- 5 wading area to cool swine
- 6 castrated male pig
- 8 implanting a wire ring through a pig's nose

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A group of 4-mo-old barrows was presented with clinical signs of sneezing, purulent nasal discharge, and decreased weight gain. Most of the barrows had a mild to moderate deviation of the snout. The farmer sacrificed one pig for necropsy and found that the nasal turbinates were atrophied and asymmetrical. Dx was atrophic rhinitis, which is a common disease of pigs caused by two types of bacteria. Control measures such as better ventilation and improved hygiene were discussed with the farmer (Figure 21–6).

1. mo \_\_\_\_\_
2. barrows \_\_\_\_\_
3. clinical \_\_\_\_\_
4. signs \_\_\_\_\_
5. purulent \_\_\_\_\_
6. nasal \_\_\_\_\_
7. deviation \_\_\_\_\_
8. snout \_\_\_\_\_
9. necropsy \_\_\_\_\_
10. turbinates \_\_\_\_\_
11. atrophied \_\_\_\_\_
12. asymmetrical \_\_\_\_\_
13. Dx \_\_\_\_\_
14. rhinitis \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 21–6** Atrophic rhinitis. Atrophic rhinitis causes atrophy of the turbinates and distortion of the nasal septum. The turbinates soften and erode due to infection by bacteria.

A 3-yr-old sow was seen by the area veterinarian for dystocia. She had farrowed two litters normally before this but had problems with mastitis and agalactia. Because the pig had uterine inertia, the veterinarian had to perform an emergency C-section to retrieve the remaining pigs.

15. yr \_\_\_\_\_
16. sow \_\_\_\_\_
17. dystocia \_\_\_\_\_
18. farrowed \_\_\_\_\_
19. mastitis \_\_\_\_\_
20. agalactia \_\_\_\_\_
21. uterine inertia \_\_\_\_\_
22. C-section \_\_\_\_\_

Provide the medical term for the underlined definitions.

A litter of 2-wk-old pigs was presented with vomiting, abnormal frequency and liquidity of fecal material, incoordination, and elevated body temperature. A blood sample was taken, and the pigs tested positive for pseudorabies, also called Aujeszky's disease, which is a herpesvirus infection. In adult pigs, pseudorabies can cause respiratory disease and termination of pregnancy. All positive animals were isolated and kept under observation. Pseudorabies control measures, such as adding only serologically negative animals to the herd, avoiding visiting infected premises, keeping wild animals away from swine, and providing separate equipment for each group of animals, were discussed with the owner.

23. vomiting \_\_\_\_\_
24. abnormal frequency and liquidity of fecal material \_\_\_\_\_
25. incoordination \_\_\_\_\_
26. elevated body temperature \_\_\_\_\_
27. termination of pregnancy \_\_\_\_\_
28. wild \_\_\_\_\_



# CHAPTER 22

## BIRDS OF A FEATHER

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

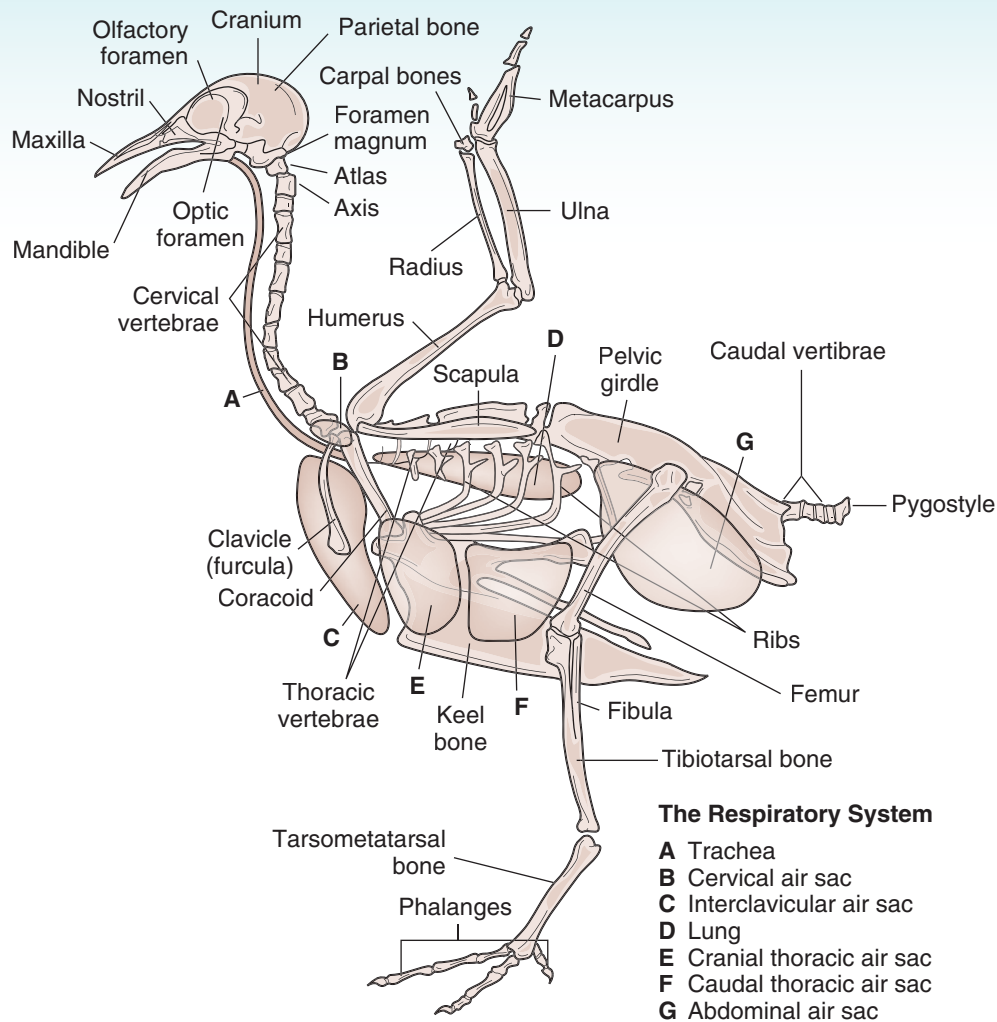
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to birds
- Analyze case studies and apply medical terminology in a practical setting

### BIRDS

Birds are two-legged, egg-laying, warm-blooded animals that have a unique anatomy because of their ability to fly. To allow flight, their respiratory and skeletal systems differ greatly from those of other vertebrates (Figure 22–1). Birds have thin skin that consists of two layers: the epidermis (superficial layer) and dermis (deep layer). From the dermis emerge feathers that may be a variety of different types. Birds have beaks that are varied in shape to accommodate their various dietary preferences. Birds that are seed eaters have short, strong bills that can crack open a hard-shelled seed easily, while birds that eat flying insects have flat bills with a wide base so that they can catch a small moving target. Raptors such as hawks and eagles have hooked bills that are sharp, making it easy to rip apart their prey. The skeletal system of birds is modified to enable the bird to fly. These modifications include fusion of bones (provides a rigid structure) and the development of wing bones that are hollow, lack bone marrow, and contain air (reduce weight to enhance flight).

Birds and the terms associated with them vary depending on the types of birds people keep. Some birds, such as psittacines, are popular as pets. Other birds, such as poultry and ratites, are used as livestock. The terms related to birds typically refer to one or the other of these uses for birds.

Some anatomy and physiology concepts and medical terms related to avian species have been covered in previous chapters. Additional anatomy and physiology concepts are covered in this chapter.



**Figure 22-1** Skeletal and respiratory system of birds. Air flow through the lungs and air sacs. (1) First inspiration: Air flows into the trachea and through the primary bronchi and goes to the caudal and abdominal air sacs. Air already in the caudal air sacs moves to the cranial air sacs. (2) First expiration: Air travels back to the parabronchi and gas exchange occurs. (3) Second inspiration: Air moves from the parabronchi to the cranial air sacs. (4) Second expiration: Air moves out of the cranial air sacs, into the parabronchi, and out of the trachea.

## ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY TERMS

### Respiratory System

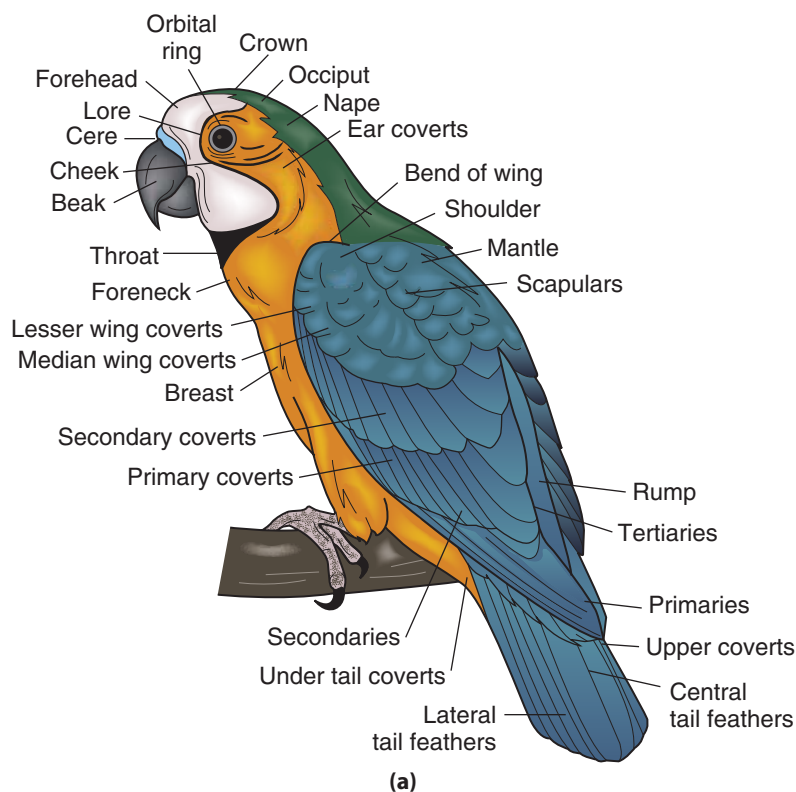
- **air sacs** = thin-walled sacs in the respiratory tract of birds that store air and provide buoyancy for flight.
- **choana** (kō-ā-nah) (or **choanal space**) = caudal naris; the cleft in the hard palate of birds (Figure 22-2).
- **nasal gland** = gland that allows sea birds to drink salt-water; found in the rostral portion of the beak.
- **parabronchi** (pah-ah-broh-nck-i) = tiny passages in bird lungs that are the primary sites of gas exchange between air and blood; birds do not have alveoli.
- **syrinx** (sehr-ih-ncks) = voice organ of birds located at the tracheal bifurcation (where the trachea splits into bronchi).



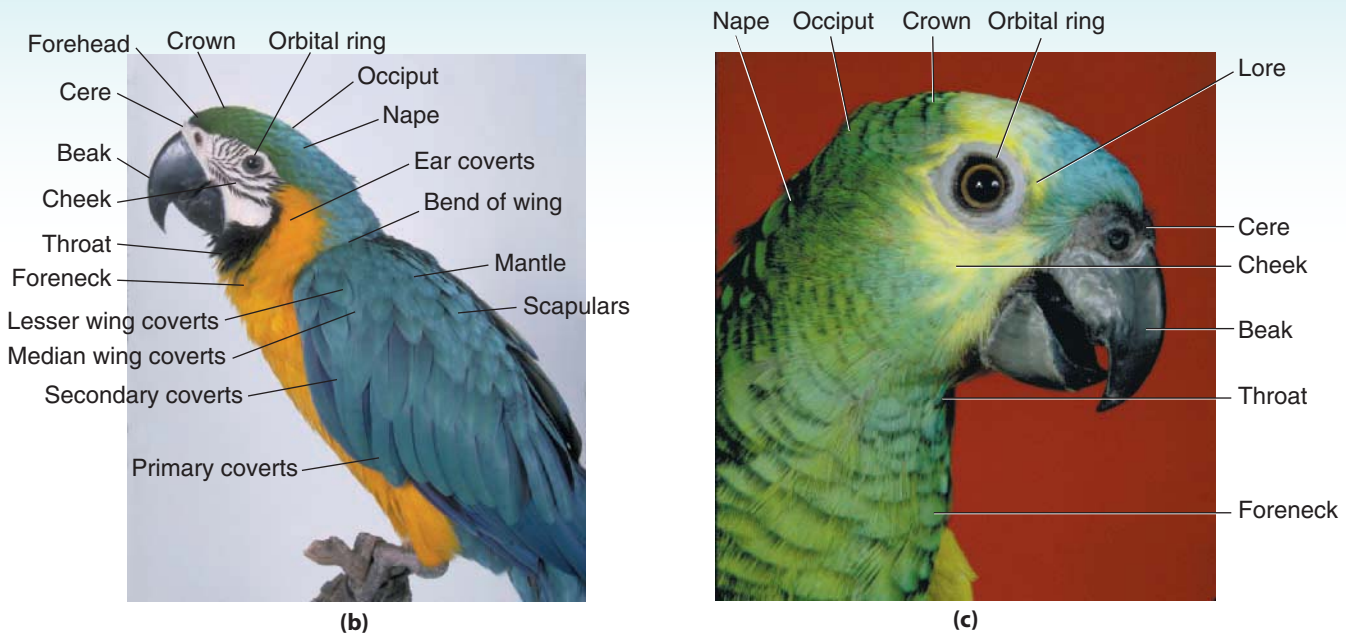
**Figure 22-2** Choana of a parrot.

## Integumentary System

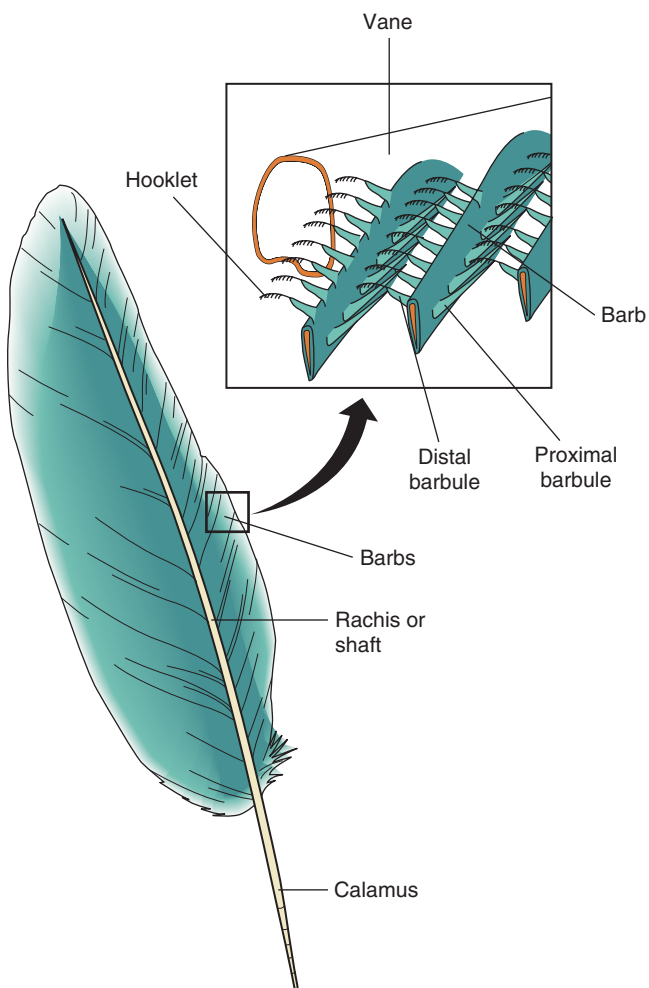
- **apterium** (ahp-tehr-ē-uhm) = area or tract of skin without feathers or down; plural is **apteria** (ahp-tehr-ē-ah).
- **barb** (bahrb) = one of the parallel filaments projecting from the main feather shaft (rachis); forms the feather vane.
- **barbule** (bahr-byool) = one of the small projections fringing the edges of the barbs of feathers; attach to adjacent barbules to give the vane rigidity.
- **beak** (bēk) = hard mouth part of bird that is a modified epidermal structure that covers the rostral part of the maxilla and mandible.
- **calamus** (kahl-ah-muhs) = hollow shaft at the proximal end of the feather shaft; “quill.”
- **central tail feathers** = primary feathers at the center of the tail.
- **cere** (sēr) = thickened skin at base of external nares of birds; may be different colors in some birds to denote sex (Figure 22–3).
- **cheek** (chēk) = area of the face below the eye of a bird.
- **contour feathers** (kohn-tər fehth-ərz) = body or flight feathers arranged in rows.
- **coverts** (kuh-vərhtz or kō-vehrtz) = small feathers that cover the bases of large feathers on the body; named based on their location.
- **feather** (fehth-ər) = epidermal structure analogous to hair; used for insulation and thermoregulation, in courtship displays, and for flight (Figure 22–4).
- **filoplume** (fihl-ō-ploom) = type of feather that resembles a bristle feather topped by a down feather.
- **lateral tail feathers** = large tail feathers to each side of the central tail feathers.
- **mantle** (mahn-tuhl) = feathers across the dorsum (back) (Figure 22–3).
- **molt** (mōlt) = process of casting off feathers before replacement feathers appear.
- **orbital ring** (ohr-bih-tahl rihng) = ring of unfeathered skin around the eye.
- **pin feathers** = developing feathers that have blood flowing through them and can grow as new feathers or to replace molted feathers; also called blood feathers.
- **plume** (ploom) = down feathers.
- **primary feathers** = longer, thinner remiges connected to the carpometacarpus and phalanges that project along the outer edge of a bird's wing; also called primaries and primary quills.
- **pteryla** (tehr-ih-lah) = feather tract of birds; plural is **pterylae** (tehr-ih-lā).
- **rachis** (rā-kuhs) = distal end of the feather shaft.
- **rectrices** (rehck-trih-sehz) = tail flight feathers.



**Figure 22–3** (a) External parts of a bird.



**Figure 22-3** (b) External parts of a bird on a blue and gold macaw. (c) External parts of a bird's head on a blue-fronted Amazon parrot. [(b) and (c) Courtesy of Isabelle Francais.]



**Figure 22-4** Feather parts.

- **remiges** (rehm-ih-jehz) = primary wing feathers; singular is **remix**.
- **secondary feathers** = smaller, lighter remiges than the primary feathers that are connected to the ulna; also called secondaries.
- **setae** (sē-tā) = sensitive bristles that grow on the heads of many birds; also called **bristles**.
- **shaft** (shahft) = quill or central part of a contour feather; also called **scapus** (skā-puhs).
- **snood** (snood) = long, fleshy extension at the base of a turkey's beak.
- **spurs** (spərz) = projecting body (as from a bone) or a sharp, horn-covered, bony projection from the shank of male birds of some species.
- **tertiary feathers** = shorter remiges that are connected to the humerus in some bird species; also called tertaries and tertials.
- **uropygial** (yoor-ō-pihj-ē-ahl) **gland** = gland located laterally to the tail feather attachment that secretes oil used to waterproof or preen feathers; also called the **preen** (prēn) **gland**.
- **wattle** (waht-tuhl) = appendage suspended from the head (usually the chin) in chickens, turkeys, and goats.

### External Anatomy Terms

- **breast** (brehst) = chest area of birds.
- **crown** (krown) = area caudal to the forehead to the cranial portion of the neck; the top of the head.
- **forehead** (fōr-hehd) = part of the head rostral to the eyes.

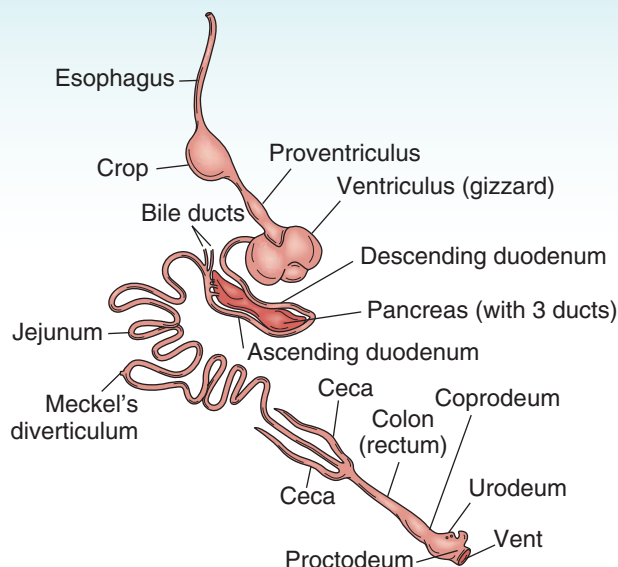
- **foreneck** (fōr-nehck) = area cranial to the breast where the clavicle (wishbone) is located.
- **lore** (lōr) = lateral area between the cranial portion of the eyes and bill of birds.
- **nape** (nāp) = caudodorsal portion of the neck of birds.
- **occiput** (ohck-sihp-uht) = sloping caudal part of the head of birds.
- **rump** (ruhmp) = area that overlies the pelvis cranial to the tail.
- **throat** (thrōt) = area caudal to the head and cranial to the chest.

## Gastrointestinal System

- **cloaca** (klō-ā-kah) = common passage for fecal, urinary, and reproductive systems in birds and lower vertebrates (Figure 22–5).
- **coprodeum** (kōp-rō-dē-uhm) = rectal opening into the cloaca.
- **crop** (krohp) = esophageal enlargement that stores, moistens, and softens food in some birds (Figure 22–6).
- **droppings** = composite of feces and urine in birds.
- **Meckel's diverticulum** (mehck-ehlz dī-vər-tihck-yoo-luhm) = structure at the terminal end of the jejunum that functions as a lymphatic organ.
- **proventriculus** (prō-vehn-trihck-yoo-luhs) = elongated, spindle-shaped glandular stomach of birds.



**Figure 22–5** Cloacal swab.



**Figure 22–6** Gastrointestinal tract of the bird.

- **vent** (vehnt) = external opening of the cloaca of birds.
- **ventriculus** (vehn-trihck-yoo-luhs) = muscular stomach of birds; also called the gizzard.

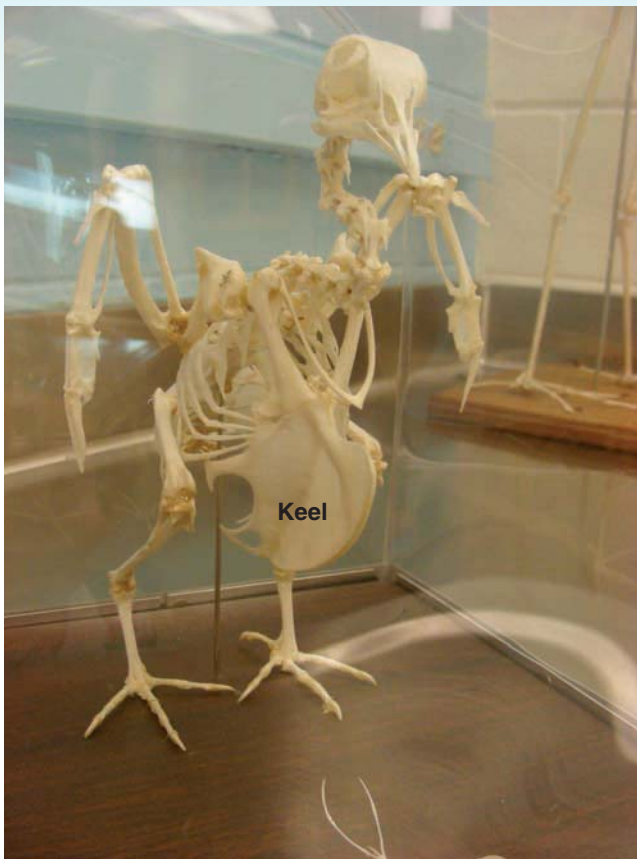
## Musculoskeletal System

- **columella** (kohl-uhm-eh-lah) = bony structure that replaces the malleus, incus, and stapes in the middle ear.
- **furcula** (fuhr-kuh-lah) = fused clavicle in birds; the wishbone.
- **keel** (kēl) = sternum, or breastbone, of birds (excluding ratites) (Figure 22–7).
- **pygostyle** (pihg-ō-stil) = bony termination of the vertebral column in birds where tail feathers attach; also called **rump post.**
- **scleral** (skleh-rah) **ring** = overlapping bony plate encircling the eye at the corneal–scleral junction.

## Urogenital System

See Figure 22–8.

- **infundibulum** (ihn-fuhn-dihb-yoo-luhm) = portion of the oviduct located closest to the ovary that captures ovulated eggs.
- **isthmus** (ihs-muhs) = portion of the oviduct located farthest from the ovary that adds the shell membranes.
- **magnum** (mahg-nuhm) = middle portion of the oviduct that separates the albumin and chalaza over the egg yolk and sperm.
- **sperm nests** = clusters of spermatozoa held in readiness in the infundibulum to fertilize the egg as it comes from the ovary.
- **urodeum** (yoo-rō-dē-uhm) = area of the cloaca in which the ureters and vagina open.

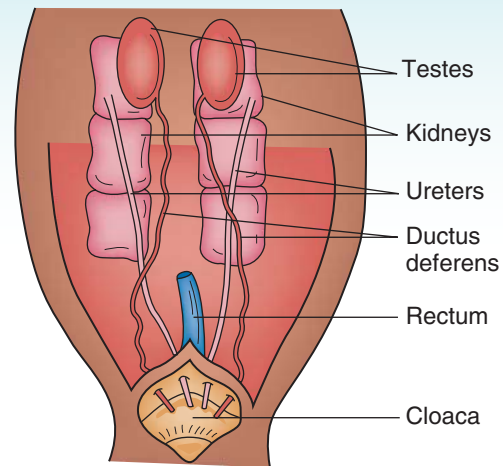


**Figure 22-7** Keel bone of a bird.

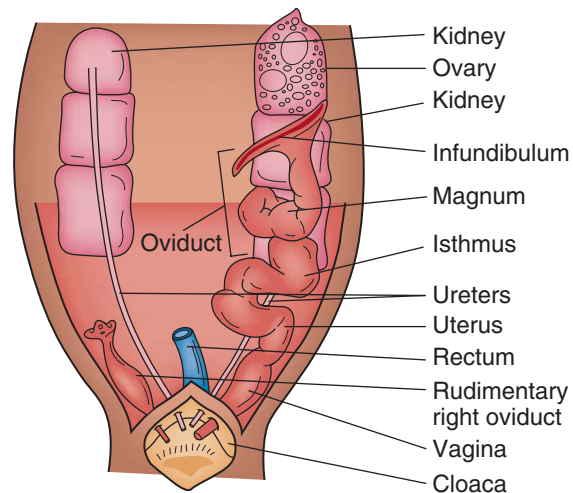
- **uterus** (yoo-tər-uhs) = portion of the female reproductive tract in birds that produces the shell and shell pigments; also the area in which the egg turns around so that it is laid blunt end first.
- **vagina** (vah-jī-nah) = portion of the female reproductive tract in birds that directs the egg to the cloaca.

## POULTRY TERMS

- **broiler** (broy-lər) = young chicken approximately 8 weeks old weighing 1.5 kg or more; also called fryer or young chicken.
- **brood** (brūd) = young that are hatched or cared for at the same time.
- **brooder** (brū-dər) = housing unit for rearing birds after hatching.
- **cage operation** = method of raising chickens in which the hens are kept in confinement as they produce eggs.
- **candling** (kahn-dlihng) = process of shining a light through an egg to check embryo development (Figure 22-9).
- **chalaza** (kahl-ā-zah) = ropelike structure that holds the yolk to the center of the egg (Figure 22-10).



(a)

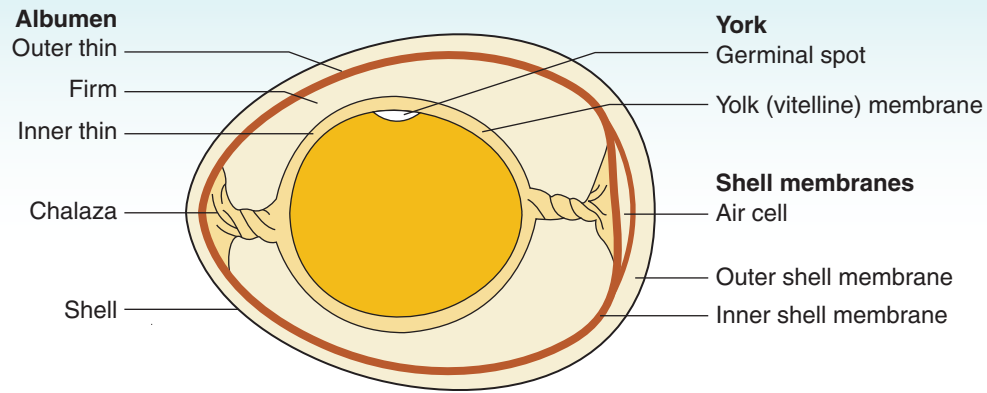


(b)

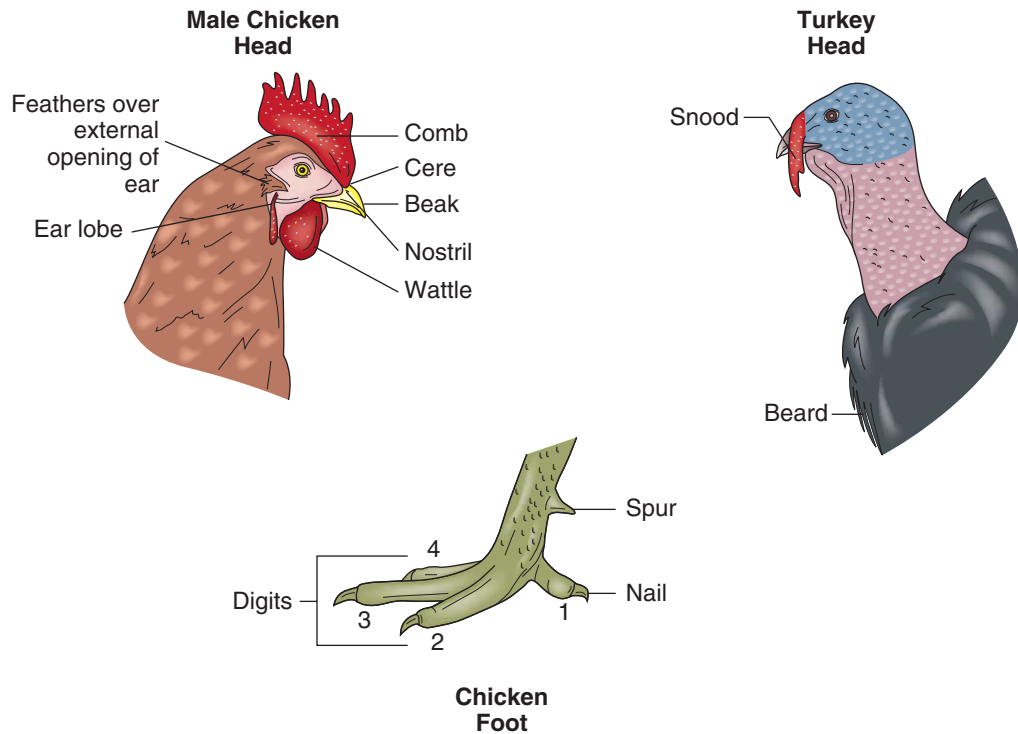
**Figure 22-8** Urogenital system of the bird. (a) Male bird; (b) female bird. Only the left ovary and oviduct are functional in female birds.



**Figure 22-9** Candling is a process by which eggs pass over an intense light to reveal cracks in the shell or to check on embryo development. (Courtesy of USDA.)

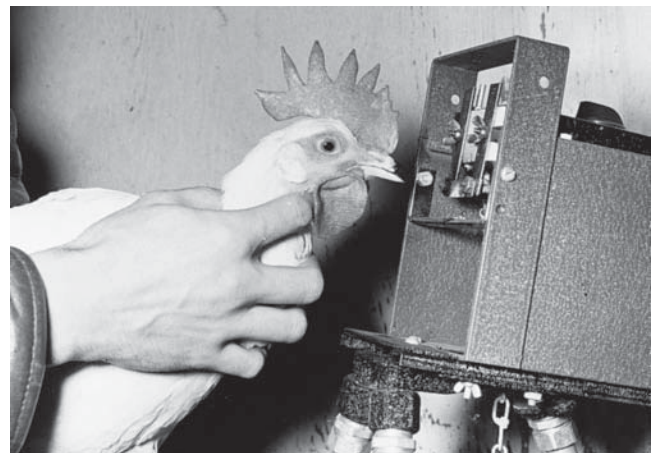


**Figure 22–10** Parts of an egg.



**Figure 22–11** Head and feet of poultry.

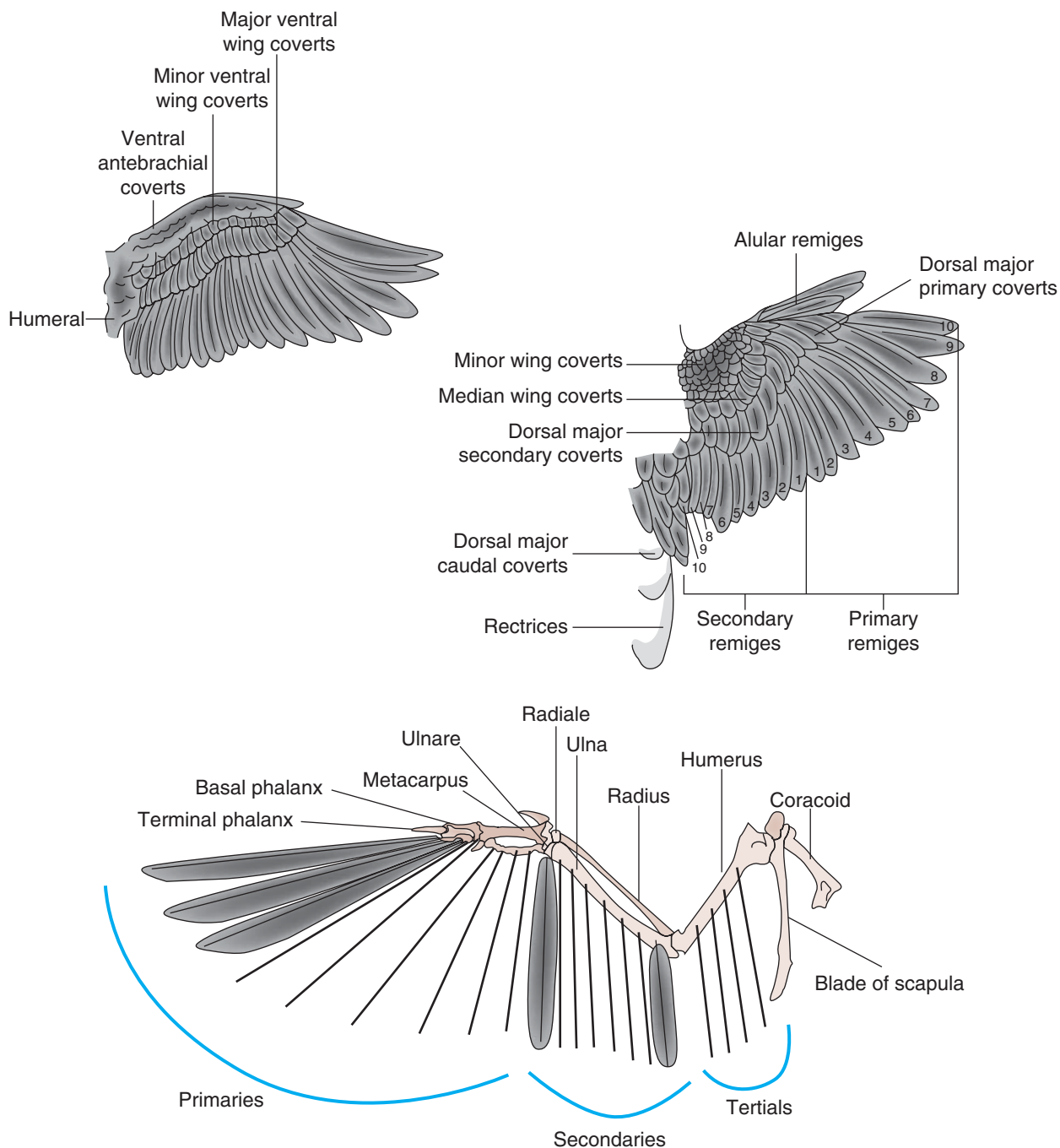
- **comb** (kōm) = in domestic fowl, the vascular, red cutaneous structure attached in a sagittal plane to the dorsum of the skull (Figure 22–11).
- **debeaking** (dē-bēk-ihng) = removing about one-half of the upper beak and a small portion of the lower beak in poultry to prevent feather picking, cannibalism, and fighting; also called **beak trimming** in poultry (Figure 22–12).
- **hatch** (hahtch) = emergence of a baby bird from the shell.
- **incubation** (ihn-kyoo-bā-shuhn) = process of a fertilized poultry egg developing into a newly hatched bird.
- **layer** (lā-ər) = chicken raised for egg production.
- **poultry** (pōl-trē) = any domesticated fowl raised for meat, eggs, or feathers.
- **yolk** (yōk) = yellow part of the egg that contains the germinal cells.



**Figure 22–12** Debeaking a chicken.

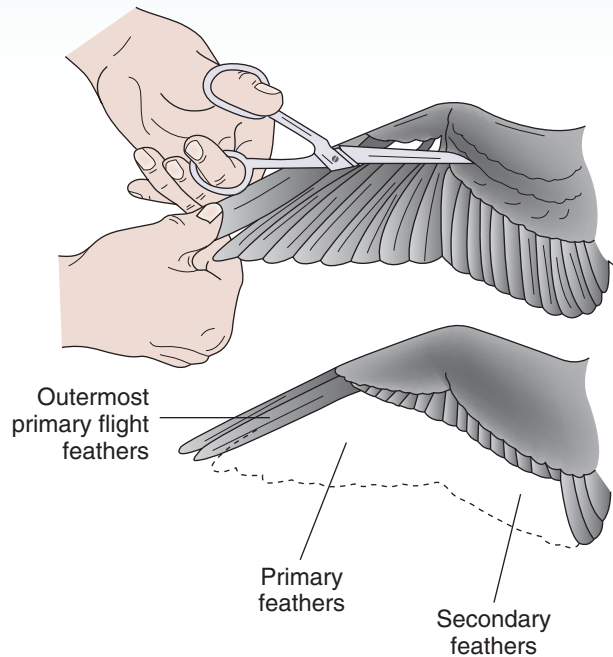
## PET BIRD TERMS

- **beak trimming** = trimming the tip of the beak to keep the beak properly aligned.
- **clipping** (klihp-ihng) = trimming wings of birds to alter their flight; also called **pinioning** (pihn-yehn-ihng) (Figures 22–13 and 22–14).
- **columbiformes** (kō-luhm-bih-fōrmz) = group of dove-like birds that includes doves and partridges that have short beaks and two forward-facing toes and two rear-facing toes.
- **cuttlebone** (kuht-uhl-bōn) = shell of a cuttlefish that is typically provided in the cage for the bird to use in wearing down its beak.
- **feather picking** = undesired behavior in which birds remove their own feathers mainly due to stress or disease; also called feather plucking.
- **fledgling** (flehjdj-lihng) = young bird that has recently acquired its flight feathers and typically is out of the nest but not eating on its own (Figure 22–15).
- **hand-raised** = refers to a bird that has been raised by humans.



**Figure 22–13** Parts and types of feathers of a wing.

- **passeriformes** (pahs-ər-ih-fōrmz) = group of perching birds that includes most songbirds (such as finches, sparrows, mynahs, and canaries) that have three forward-facing toes and one rear-facing toe (see Figure 22–16b).

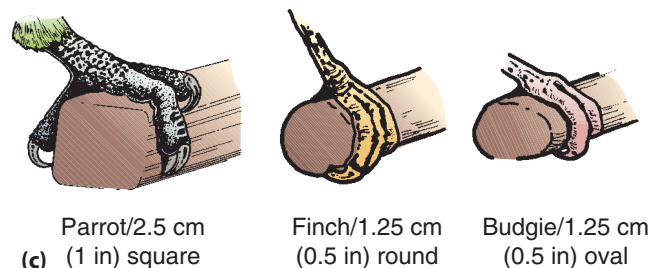


**Figure 22–14** Wing clipping in a pet bird.

- **perch** (pərch) = stick or dowel provided for the bird to sit on; some perches have rough surfaces that assist the bird in wearing down its toenails (Figures 22–16a, b, and c).
- **psittacine** (siht-ah-sēn) = group of parrotlike birds that includes parrots, macaws, budgerigars, cockatiels, cockatoos, conures, lovebirds, and parakeets that have a strong curved beak and two forward-facing toes and two rear-facing toes (Figure 22–16a).



**Figure 22–15** Fledgling budgerigar. (Courtesy of Isabelle Francais.)



**Figure 22–16** (a) African gray parrots on a wooden perch. (b) Gouldian finch (red-headed) on a wooden perch. (c) Ideal perch size and shape for a variety of birds. [(a) and (b) Courtesy of Isabelle Francais.]

## RATITE TERMS

- **breeding animals** = animals purchased, often as pairs, to produce offspring.
- **emu** (ē-mū) = large, fast flightless bird native to Australia that has been imported to zoos and used in animal agriculture; males are slightly smaller than females and have gray, black, and brown feathers (Figure 22–17).
- **emu oil** = oil produced from emu fat that is used in pharmaceuticals and cosmetics.
- **meat** = ratite muscle that is a red meat yet is lower in fat and cholesterol than beef.
- **ostrich** (ow-strihch) = large, flightless bird native to Africa that is the largest ratite (can weigh over 400 pounds) and may be black, blue, or red (Figure 22–18).
- **ostrich feathers** = feathers of ostriches that are used commercially for feather dusters and decoration.
- **ostrich skin** = skin from ostriches that is tanned into leather and used to make boots and other leather products.
- **ratite** (rah-tit) = class of large, flightless birds that are raised for their meat and hides.
- **rhea** (rē-ah) = large, flightless bird native to South America that may be pale gray to brown in color and lack tail feathers; females lay their eggs in the same nest, and the male incubates the eggs (Figure 22–19).
- **rhea skin** = skin of rhea that is tanned into leather and typically used to make boots.



**Figure 22–17** Emu. (Courtesy of USDA.)



**Figure 22–18** Ostrich. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)



**Figure 22–19** Rhea. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Multiple Choice

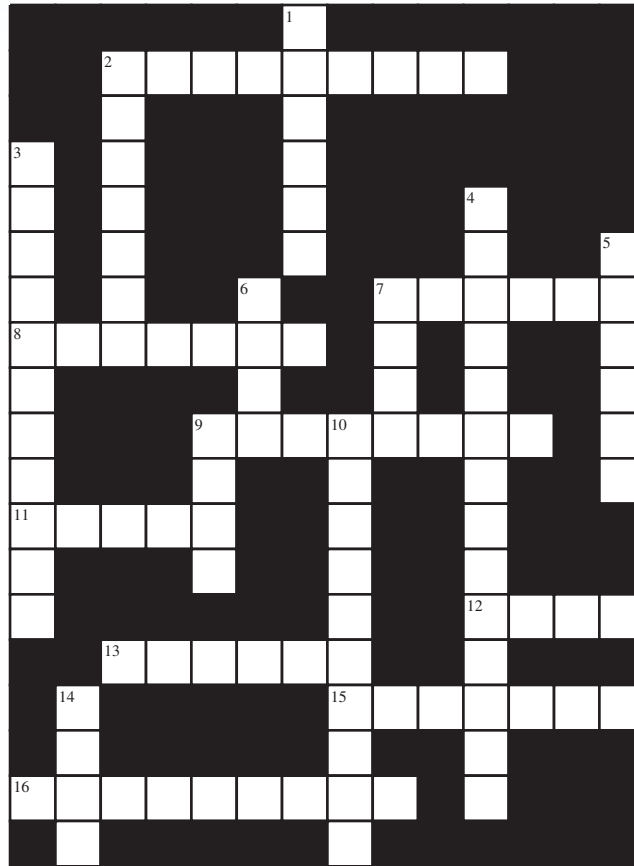
Choose the correct answer.

1. What is the term for the spaces in the bird respiratory tract that store air and provide buoyancy for flight?
  - a. nasal sacs
  - b. air sacs
  - c. apteria
  - d. ceres
2. The caudal nares (also called the cleft in the hard palate of birds) are called the
  - a. choana
  - b. cloaca
  - c. calamus
  - d. crop
3. The sternum, or breastbone, of some birds is the
  - a. pygostyle
  - b. crop
  - c. spur
  - d. keel
4. The esophageal enlargement that stores, moistens, and softens food in some birds is the
  - a. coprodeum
  - b. cloaca
  - c. crop
  - d. choana
5. A young bird that has recently acquired its flight feathers is known as a
  - a. clutch
  - b. fledgling
  - c. brooder
  - d. snood
6. The glandular stomach of birds is the
  - a. vent
  - b. Meckel's diverticulum
  - c. ventriculus
  - d. proventriculus
7. A body or flight feather is known as a
  - a. down feather
  - b. contour feather
  - c. lume
  - d. filoplume feather
8. The voice organ of birds is the
  - a. syrinx
  - b. cere
  - c. choana
  - d. setae
9. The primary wing feathers are known as
  - a. rectrices
  - b. rachis
  - c. pteryla
  - d. remiges
10. The process of casting off feathers before replacement feathers appear is known as
  - a. pluming
  - b. molting
  - c. shafting
  - d. feathering
11. Large, flightless birds used for their meat and hides are
  - a. columbiformes
  - b. passeriformes
  - c. ratites
  - d. psittacines
12. Finches are examples of which type of bird?
  - a. columbiformes
  - b. passeriformes
  - c. ratites
  - d. psittacines

13. Cockatiels and cockatoos are examples of which type of bird?
  - a. columbiformes
  - b. passeriformes
  - c. ratites
  - d. psittacines
14. Doves are examples of which type of bird?
  - a. columbiformes
  - b. passeriformes
  - c. ratites
  - d. psittacines
15. A stick or dowel on which a caged bird sits is called a
  - a. scleral ring
  - b. barbule
  - c. barb
  - d. perch
16. Which type of feather has a blood supply running through it that if broken can lead to heavy bleeding?
  - a. covert
  - b. plume
  - c. pin
  - d. bristle
17. The common passage for fecal, urinary, and reproductive systems in birds is the
  - a. crop
  - b. cloaca
  - c. choana
  - d. coprodeum
18. The ropelike structure that holds the yolk to the center of the egg is the
  - a. chalaza
  - b. yolk tendon
  - c. isthmus
  - d. snood
19. The wishbone in birds is the
  - a. keel bone
  - b. pygostyle
  - c. carpus
  - d. furcula
20. The external opening of the cloaca in birds is the
  - a. ventriculus
  - b. vent
  - c. diverticulum
  - d. infundibulum

# CROSSWORD PUZZLE

## Avian Terms Puzzle



### Across

- 2 preen gland
- 7 common passage for fecal, urinary, and reproductive systems in birds and lower vertebrates
- 8 primary wing feathers
- 9 trimming wings of birds to alter flight
- 11 chicken raised for egg production
- 12 red cutaneous structure attached in a sagittal plane to the dorsum of the skull in domestic fowl
- 13 posterior naris of birds
- 15 ropelike structure that holds the yolk to the center of the egg
- 16 young bird that has recently acquired its flight feathers

### Down

- 1 voice organ of birds
- 2 area of the cloaca in which the ureters and vagina open
- 3 muscular stomach of birds (gizzard)
- 4 elongated, glandular stomach of birds
- 5 distal end of the feather shaft
- 6 sternum of birds
- 7 esophageal enlargement in some birds
- 9 thickened skin at base of external nares of birds
- 10 group of parrot-like birds
- 14 process of casting off feathers

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A neonatal greater sulfur-crested cockatoo was presented with a history of being tube-fed with a red rubber tube. The tube became dislodged from the feeding syringe and was swallowed by the chick. A radiograph was taken that confirmed that the tube was swallowed and was located extending from the crop to the proventriculus. An ingluviotomy was considered. Because it would be a less traumatic procedure, it was decided to retrieve the feeding tube with an endoscope. With the cockatoo under general anesthesia with isoflurane, the tube was successfully removed. The bird recovered uneventfully, and the owner was counseled on hand-feeding with a spoon instead of a feeding tube.

1. neonatal \_\_\_\_\_
2. radiograph \_\_\_\_\_
3. crop \_\_\_\_\_
4. proventriculus \_\_\_\_\_
5. ingluviotomy (also known as cropotomy) \_\_\_\_\_
6. endoscope \_\_\_\_\_
7. anesthesia \_\_\_\_\_

A 3-yr-old male budgerigar (parakeet) was presented for a growth on its thorax near the thoracic inlet. The bird had been kept singly and was fed a predominantly seed diet. On physical examination, the bird was noted to have a 2.5 cm diameter mass located subcutaneously on the rostral portion of the thorax. Differential diagnoses included neoplasia resulting in lipoma or a xanthoma. A fine needle aspirate (FNA) was performed, which confirmed the mass to be a lipoma. The owner declined surgical removal. The owner did elect to administer Lugol's iodine in the drinking water because this condition may be related to hypothyroidism (caused by iodine deficiency relating to an all-seed diet).

8. thorax \_\_\_\_\_
9. thoracic inlet \_\_\_\_\_
10. cm \_\_\_\_\_
11. subcutaneously \_\_\_\_\_
12. rostral \_\_\_\_\_
13. diagnoses \_\_\_\_\_
14. neoplasia \_\_\_\_\_
15. lipoma \_\_\_\_\_
16. xanthoma \_\_\_\_\_
17. fine needle aspirate (FNA) \_\_\_\_\_
18. hypothyroidism \_\_\_\_\_

A commercial flock of chickens developed disease in cockerels and pullets that included birds that were pale, were anorexic, were emaciated, had bloody droppings, and were dehydrated. Chicks were asymptomatic. The layers had a reduction in the rate of egg production. A diagnosis of coccidiosis was made from identification of coccidia protozoa by fecal examination. The flock was treated with a coccidiostat added to the feed, and facility management issues such as instituting brooder sanitation and switching to a cage operation were discussed with the owners.

19. flock \_\_\_\_\_
20. cockerels \_\_\_\_\_
21. pullets \_\_\_\_\_
22. anorexic \_\_\_\_\_
23. emaciated \_\_\_\_\_
24. droppings \_\_\_\_\_
25. asymptomatic \_\_\_\_\_
26. layers \_\_\_\_\_
27. brooder \_\_\_\_\_
28. cage operation \_\_\_\_\_

An ostrich flock had chicks developing neurologic signs including limb paralysis, torticollis, ataxia, and opisthotonus. In five days after initial signs appeared, many of the chicks had died. The outbreak occurred during the summer, producing a high mortality rate. Histological examination of tissues was inconclusive; however, equine encephalitis virus and Newcastle disease virus infection were suspected. Serology was performed on these birds, and the results are pending.

29. ostrich \_\_\_\_\_
30. flock \_\_\_\_\_
31. chicks \_\_\_\_\_
32. paralysis \_\_\_\_\_
33. torticollis \_\_\_\_\_
34. ataxia \_\_\_\_\_
35. opisthotonus \_\_\_\_\_
36. mortality \_\_\_\_\_
37. histological \_\_\_\_\_
38. serology \_\_\_\_\_



# CHAPTER 23

## ALL THE REST

### Objectives

*Upon completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to*

- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to laboratory animals
- Recognize, define, spell, and pronounce terms related to exotic animals or pocket pets
- Analyze case studies and apply medical terminology in a practical setting

### LABORATORY ANIMALS, POCKET PETS, AND REPTILES

Laboratory animals include a wide range of species, even species some people consider to be pets and livestock. Pocket pets are small, nontraditional pets that were once thought of solely as laboratory animals or that are exotic to many areas of the country. Reptiles are cold-blooded vertebrates that are gaining popularity as nontraditional pets. Many terms used in the laboratory animal field have already been covered in other chapters. New terms pertaining to laboratory animals are related to scientific studies and the facilities in which they occur and are used in the care of pocket pets (Table 23–1).



**Table 23-1 Common Laboratory and Pocket Pet Terms**

Term	Pronunciation	Definition
<b>acclimatization</b>	ahck-lih-mah-tih-zā-shuhn	adjustment of an animal to a new environment
<b>agouti</b>	ah-goo-tē	naturally occurring coat color pattern that consists of dark-colored hair bands at the base of the hair and lighter increments of hair color toward the tip
<b>albino</b>	ahl-bī-nō	animal with a white coat and pink eyes; devoid of melanin (Figure 23–1)
<b>ambient</b>	ahm-bē-ahnt	surrounding
<b>analogous</b>	ahn-ahl-oh-guhs	refers to structures that differ anatomically but have similar functions
<b>anogenital distance</b>	ā-nō-jehn-ih-tahl	area between the anus and genitalia; females have a shorter anogenital distance than males, which is used to determine the sex of animals (Figures 23–2a through d)
<b>antivivisectionist</b>	ahnt-ih-vihv-ih-sehck-shuhn-ihst	person who opposes surgery on live animals for research or educational purposes
<b>autosome</b>	aw-tō-zōm	non–sex-determining chromosome
<b>axenic</b>	ā-zehn-ihck	germ-free
<b>barbering</b>	bahr-bār-ihng	behavioral disorder in which dominant animals bite or chew the fur of subordinate animals
<b>barrier sustained</b>	bār-ē-ər suh-stānd	gnotobiotic animals that are maintained under sterile conditions in a barrier unit
<b>biohazard</b>	bī-ō-hahz-ahrd	substance that is dangerous to life
<b>calvarium</b>	kahl-vahr-ē-uhm	top of the skull
<b>cannibalism</b>	kahn-ih-bahl-ihz-uhm	devouring one’s own species
<b>cesarean derived</b>	sē-sā-rē-ahn	animal is delivered via cesarean section into a sterile environment to avoid possible contamination
<b>cheek pouch</b>		space in oral cavity of hamsters that carries food and bedding
<b>chromodachryorrhea</b>	krō-mō-dahck-rē-ō-rē-ah	shedding of colored (blood-colored) tears
<b>contact bedding</b>		substrate with which animal comes into direct contact; also called <b>direct bedding</b>
<b>control</b>		standard normal against which experimental results are compared; also called <b>experimental control</b>
<b>crepuscular</b>	krē-puhs-kuh-lahr	becoming active at twilight or before sunrise
<b>data</b>	dah-tah	mass of accumulated information or results of an experiment
<b>dusting</b>	duhs-tihng	cleaning method in which chinchillas roll in dust
<b>emission</b>	ē-mihsh-uhn	discharge

**Table 23–1 Common Laboratory and Pocket Pet Terms (continued)**

Term	Pronunciation	Definition
<b>estivate</b>	ehs-tih-vāt	to reduce body temperature, heart and respiration rates, and metabolism to dormancy in summer
<b>exsanguination</b>	ehcks-sahn-gwih-nā-shuhn	removal of blood or blood loss from the body
<b>fomite</b>	fō-mīt	inanimate carrier of disease
<b>fur-slip</b>	fər-slihþ	shedding of hair patches from rough handling of chinchillas
<b>genotype</b>	jē-nō-tīp	genetic makeup of an individual for a particular trait
<b>gnotobiotic</b>	nōt-ō-bī-ah-tihck	said of germ-free animals that have been introduced to one or two known nonpathogenic microorganisms
<b>heterozygous</b>	heht-ər-ō-zī-guhs	having two different genes for a given genetic trait; usually one gene is dominant over the other
<b>hibernate</b>	hī-bər-nāt	to reduce body temperature, heart, and respiration rates and metabolism to dormancy in winter
<b>homologous</b>	hō-mohl-ō-guhs	having a common origin but different functions in different species
<b>homozygous</b>	hō-mō-zī-guhs	having two identical genes for a given genetic trait
<b>hooded</b>	huhd-ehd	refers to a rat having a white coat with a black “hood” over the head and shoulders and pigmented eyes (Figure 23–3)
<b>horizontal transmission</b>	hōr-ih-zohn-tahl trahnz-mihs-shuhn	disease transfer from one animal to the other
<b>hybrid</b>	hī-brihd	strain resulting from mating two inbred strains
<b>hypothesis</b>	hī-poth-eh-sihs	statement of research supposition
<b>hystricomorph</b>	hihs-trihck-ō-mōrf	type of rodent that includes guinea pigs, chinchillas, and porcupines
<b>inbred</b>	ihn-brehd	resulting from at least 20 brother–sister or parent–offspring matings
<b>in situ</b>	ihn sih-too	at the normal site
<b>in vitro</b>	ihn vē-trō	outside living organisms; in test tubes or other laboratory glassware
<b>in vivo</b>	ihn vē-vō	inside living organisms
<b>latent infection</b>	lā-tehnt ihn-fehck-shuhn	condition that may not be clinically noticed but under stress or poor health will develop into a recognizable disease state
<b>macroenvironment</b>	mahck-rō-ehn-vī-rān-mehnt	surroundings above the cellular level
<b>metanephric</b>	meht-ah-nehf-rihck	embryonic-like kidney
<b>microenvironment</b>	mīk-rō-ehn-vī-rān-mehnt	surroundings at the cellular level
<b>monogamous</b>	moh-noh-goh-muhs	pairing with one mate
<b>murine</b>	moo-rēn	of mice and rats

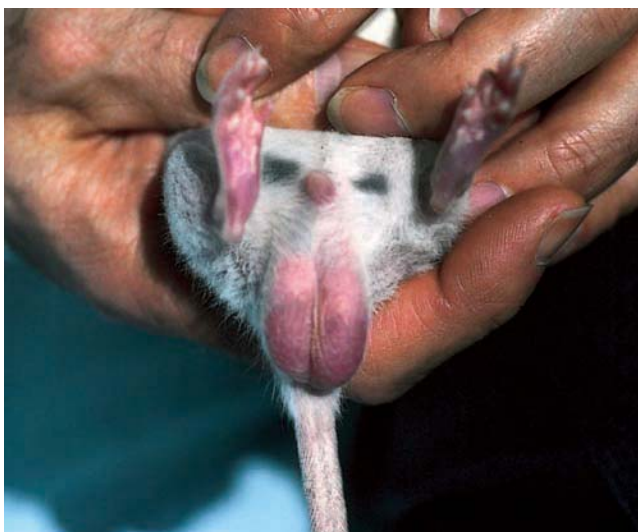
(continued)

**Table 23-1 Common Laboratory and Pocket Pet Terms (continued)**

Term	Pronunciation	Definition
<b>outbred</b>	owt-brehd	from unrelated parents; also called <b>random bred</b>
<b>phenotype</b>	fē-nō-tīp	physical characteristics of an individual
<b>phylogeny</b>	fī-lohj-eh-nē	developmental history of a species
<b>pithing</b>	pihth-ihng	destroying the brain and spinal cord by thrusting a blunt needle into the cranium or vertebral column
<b>polygamous</b>	poh-lihg-ah-muhs	having multiple mates
<b>polytocus</b>	poh-liht-ō-kuhs	giving birth to multiple offspring
<b>prehensile</b>	prē-hehn-sihl	adapted for grasping and seizing
<b>progenitor</b>	prō-jehn-ih-tōr	parent or ancestor
<b>progeny</b>	proh-jehn-ē	offspring or descendants
<b>propagate</b>	proh-pah-gāt	to reproduce
<b>protocol</b>	prō-tō-kawl	written procedure for carrying out experiments
<b>rack</b>	rahck	metal device that supports caging units
<b>reduction</b>	rē-duhck-shuhn	theory of using the minimal number of animals for a project that will yield valid results; one of the three <i>R</i> 's principles of Russell and Burch
<b>refinement</b>	rē-fin-mehnt	theory of inflicting minimal stress and pain to animals in research; one of the three <i>R</i> 's principle of Russell and Burch
<b>replacement</b>	rē-plās-mehnt	theory of using cell or tissue culture or mathematical models instead of animals in research if possible; one of the three <i>R</i> 's principle of Russell and Burch
<b>ringtail</b>	rihng-tāl	abnormal condition in which annular lesions form on the tails of rats housed in low-humidity environments
<b>rodent</b>	rō-dehnt	class of animal that has chisel-shaped incisor teeth
<b>rosette</b>	rō-seht	swirl hair growth pattern in Abyssinian guinea pig
<b>rudimentary</b>	roo-dih-mehn-tār-ē	incompletely developed
<b>sable</b>	sā-buhl	color pattern that has cream-colored undercoat and black guard hairs on feet, tail, and mask
<b>scurvy</b>	skər-vē	common term for vitamin C deficiency
<b>sexual dimorphism</b>	sehcks-yoo-ahl dī-mōrf-ihzm	physical or behavioral differences between females and males of a given species
<b>shoebox</b>	shoo-bohcks	caging that has solid-bottom flooring
<b>suspended cage</b>	suh-spehnd-ehd	caging that hangs from a metal rack and has wire flooring
<b>teratology</b>	tehr-aht-ohl-ō-jē	study of embryo development

**Table 23-1 Common Laboratory and Pocket Pet Terms (continued)**

Term	Pronunciation	Definition
<b>test group</b>		collection of animals used for experimental manipulation
<b>transgenic</b>	trahnz-jehn-ihck	refers to removing or synthesizing specific genes from one strain and injecting them into the cells of another strain
<b>vector</b>	vehck-tər	something that carries disease from one animal to another
<b>vertical transmission</b>	vər-tih-kahl trahnz-mihs-shuhn	disease transfer from mother to fetus
<b>vestigial</b>	vehs-tih-jē-ahl	said of a structure that has lost a function it previously had

**Figure 23-1** Albino mouse. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)**(a)****(b)****Figure 23-2** Anogenital distance. (a) Genital area of a male rat. (b) Genital area of a female rat.



(c)



(d)

**Figure 23-2** (c) Genital area of a male mouse. (d) Genital area of a female mouse. (Courtesy of Dean Warren.)



**Figure 23-3** Rat with hooded markings. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)

## RODENTS

Rodents are gnawing animals that have continuously growing upper and lower incisors. The most common examples of rodents are hamsters, gerbils, mice, rats, guinea pigs, and chinchillas. The order Rodentia is divided into three suborders based on the musculature of the jaw and other skull structures (Figure 23-4). These suborders are the Sciuromorpha (squirrel-like rodents), the Myomorpha (ratlike rodents), and the Hystricomorpha (porcupine-like rodents). The two suborders

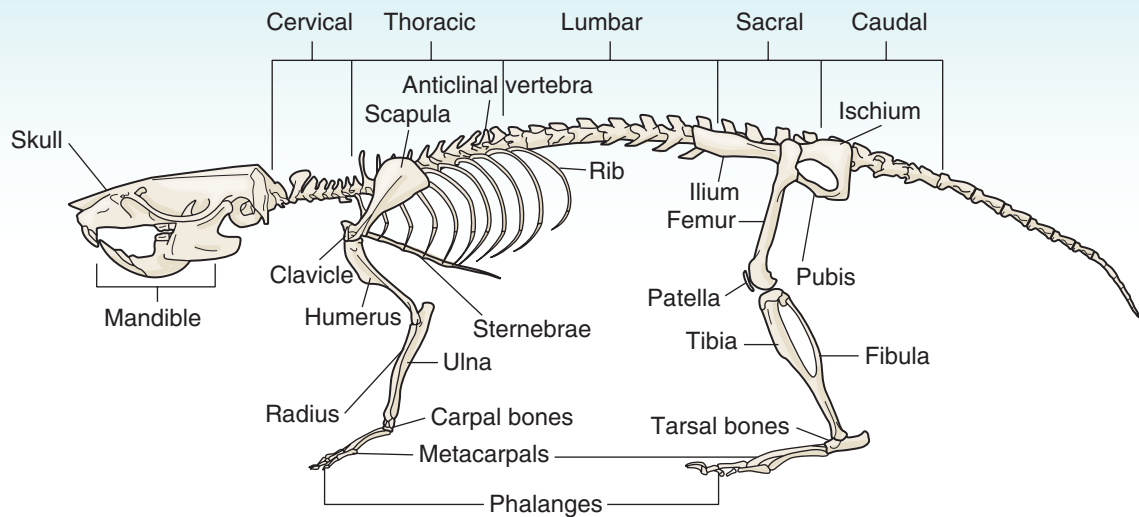
of primary importance to the veterinary field are the Hystricomorpha, which includes chinchillas and guinea pigs, and the Myomorpha, which includes rats, mice, hamsters, and gerbils (Figure 23-5).

### Mice and Rats

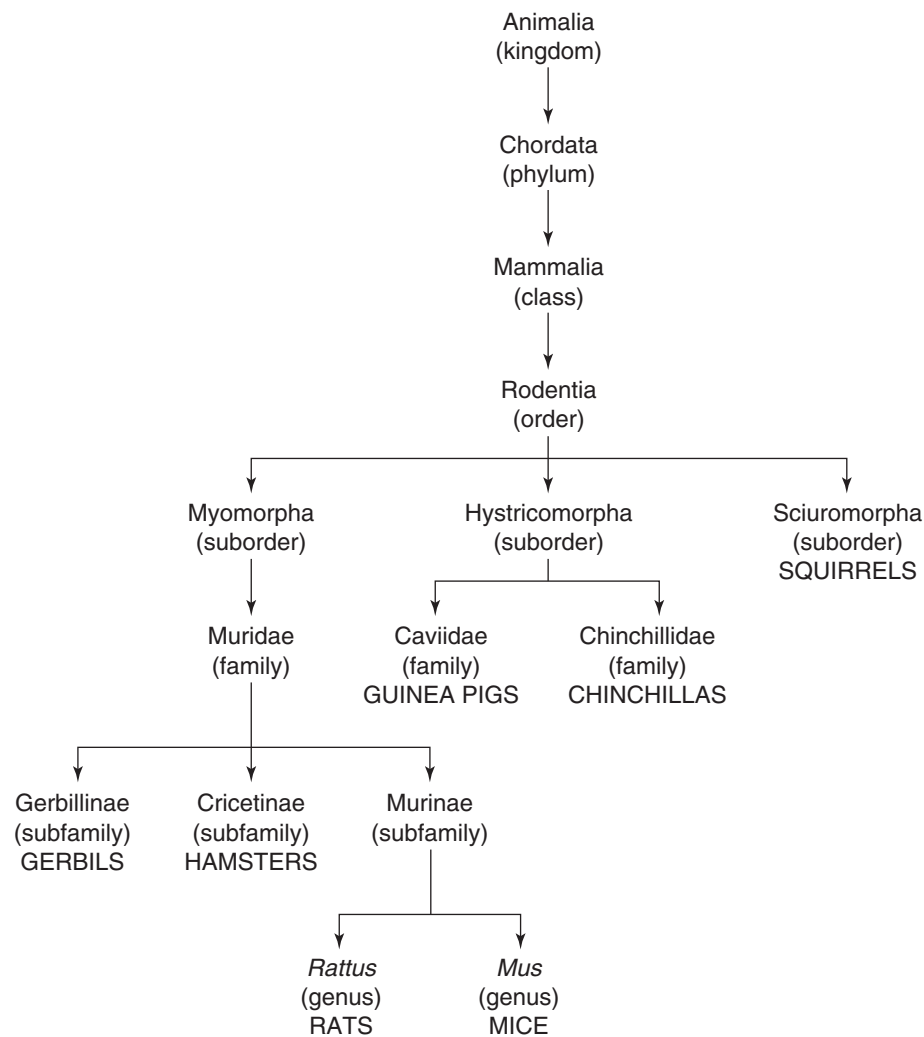
Mice and rats are rodents that are classified in the subfamily Murinae. Rats and mice were once used mainly as research animals but are also popular pets. Both are clean and quiet animals to keep and like to be housed with others of their species. Rats are larger than mice and have more rows of scales on their tails.

There are many rat species; however, only some species, such as the black rat (*Rattus rattus*) and the brown rat (*Rattus norvegicus*), have been domesticated and used for research and as pets. The black rat (sometimes called the roof rat) is believed to have originated in Southern Asia and was the major reservoir of the Black Plague in Europe in the 1200s. The brown rat (sometimes called the Norway rat) is believed to have originated in Eastern Asia and is well established in the United States. Rats have the ability to adapt to many different habitats, environments, and food sources, which explains why rats are found in all parts of the world. Rats are agile climbers and excellent swimmers and are very curious.

They do best when kept with other rats and are primarily nocturnal. Rats lack a gallbladder or tonsils (Figure 23-6). Rats have 16 teeth, and the dental formula is  $2(I \ 1/1, C \ 0/0, P \ 0/0, M \ 3/3)$ .



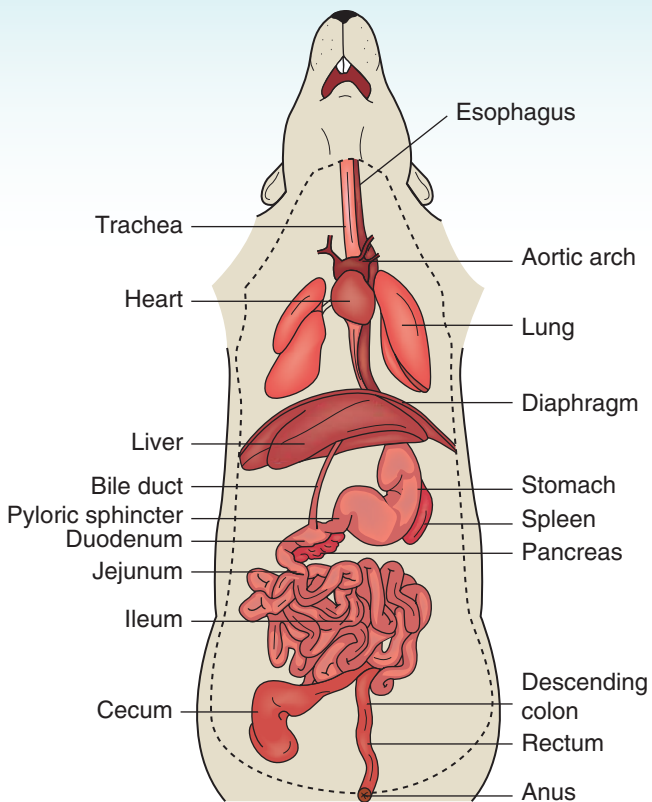
**Figure 23-4** Rodent skeleton.



**Figure 23-5** Classification scheme of rodents.

Mice are believed to have originated from Asia and have spread throughout the world. The best-known species of mouse is the common house mouse (*Mus musculus*), which dwells wherever humans live. Mice have a pointed nose and

slit upper lip. Mice have 16 teeth, and the dental formula of the mouse is  $2(I\ 1/1, C\ 0/0, P\ 0/0, M\ 3/3)$ . Mice have a perfect visual field because of the placement and shape of their eyes; however, their detailed vision is poor. To compensate, mice



**Figure 23–6** Internal structures of a rat.

have large ears and a highly developed sense of hearing. Mice have a highly developed sense of smell as well.

Mice do best when kept with other mice and are primarily nocturnal. A mouse colony is led by one head male. The head male is the only one allowed to mate with the females. Fighting between males for the head male status is common in mouse colonies.

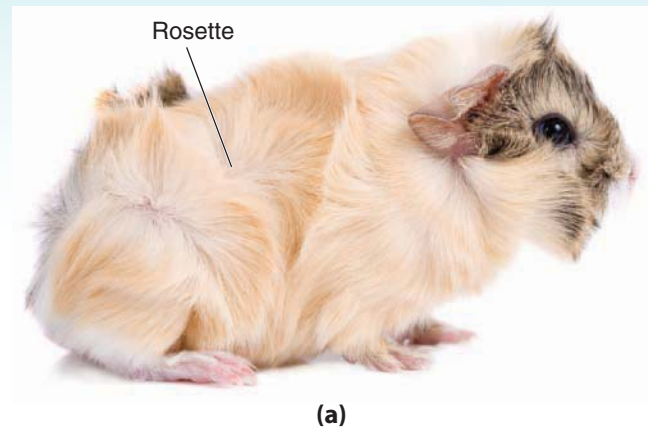
## Guinea Pigs

Guinea pigs, also called cavies, are rodents that are believed to have originated in South America. Guinea pigs have short bodies; stocky legs; and short, sharp claws. Guinea pigs tend to be gentle, easy-to-handle rodents. There are several common varieties of guinea pigs (Figure 23–7a through c). The male guinea pig is larger than the female guinea pig (Figures 23–8a and b). Guinea pigs have very sensitive senses of hearing and smell.

Guinea pigs cannot synthesize vitamin C as most other mammals can; therefore, vitamin C must be supplied in their diet. Feeding fresh pellets with supplemental fresh produce can provide the guinea pig with enough vitamin C. Guinea pigs have 20 teeth, and their dental formula is  $2(I\ 1/1, C\ 0/0, P\ 1/1, M\ 3/3)$ . The guinea pig has a large cecum with numerous pouches; therefore, feeding adequate roughage is important.

## Hamsters

Hamsters are rodents that are small (about 5 to 6 inches long), have short stump tails, and originated from the desert areas of Syria. The Syrian Golden, or Golden, hamster (Figures 23–9a and b) was bred from wild hamsters in the 1930s, and all domes-



(a)



(b)



(c)

**Figure 23–7** Examples of guinea pig varieties. (a) Abyssinian; (b) American short-haired; (c) Peruvian. [(a) and (b) Courtesy of Isabelle Francais; (c) Courtesy of Dean Warren.]

ticated hamsters sold are descendants of this original breeding. Hamsters are used as pets and research animals. Hamsters are rodents that are nocturnal and solitary. A few hamster species exist; however, the Golden hamster is most common. Hamsters have almost no tails. Hamster skin is abundant, loose, and pliable (Figures 23–10a and b).



(a)



(b)

**Figure 23-8** (a) Genital area of a male guinea pig. (b) Genital area of a female guinea pig. (Courtesy of Dean Warren.)



(a)



(b)

**Figure 23-9** Hamsters. (a) Short-haired hamster. (b) Long-haired hamster. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)

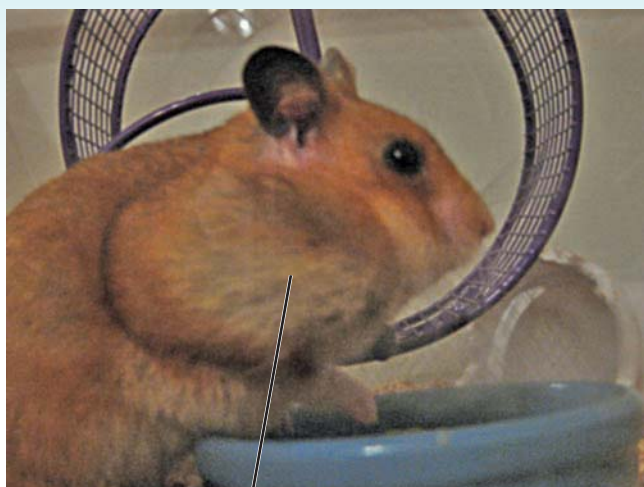


(a)



(b)

**Figure 23-10** (a) Genital area of a male hamster. (b) Genital area of a female hamster.



Cheek pouch

**Figure 23–11** Cheek pouch of a hamster.**Figure 23–12** Gerbil. (Courtesy of Isabelle Francais.)

Hamsters prefer a temperature around 70°F and will go into a deep estivation if the temperature rises above 80°F. Hamsters have prominent scent glands on their flanks. They use the secretions from these glands to mark territory. Hamsters also have cheek pouches to store and transport food (Figure 23–11). Hamsters have 16 teeth, and the dental formula is  $2(I\ 1/1, C\ 0/0, P\ 0/0, M\ 3/3)$ .

## Gerbils

Gerbils, also known as jirds, are burrowing rodents with bodies that are short and have a hunched appearance (Figure 23–12). The tail is covered with fur, has a bushy tip, and is used for support while standing. The male gerbil has a scent gland on its abdomen. This scent gland allows the adult male to leave his scent by sliding his abdomen across an object (Figures 23–13a and b).

The Mongolian gerbil is the most common type of gerbil and is found in parts of China, in the former Soviet Union, and



(a)



(b)

**Figure 23–13** (a) Genital area of a male gerbil. (b) Genital area of a female gerbil.

throughout most of Mongolia. Gerbils are kept as pets and are used as research animals. The Mongolian gerbil is the most common type of gerbil kept as pets.

Gerbils are quiet animals; however, they are quite active. Gerbils are hardy and resistant to disease. Gerbils have 16 teeth, and the dental formula is  $2(I\ 1/1, C\ 0/0, P\ 0/0, M\ 3/3)$ . The adrenal gland of the gerbil is large and contributes to the gerbil's ability to conserve water.



**Figure 23–14** Standard chinchilla. (Courtesy of iStock Photo.)



**Figure 23–15** Dusting in a chinchilla. (Courtesy of Michael Gilroy.)

## Chinchillas

Chinchillas are rodents that were originally used for their fur but are becoming increasingly popular as pets and research animals. Chinchillas are believed to have originated in South America and were used by the Incas as a source of fur. The native habitat of the chinchilla is the barren areas of the Andes Mountains at elevations up to 20,000 feet. Chinchillas resemble small rabbits, but have shorter ears and bushy tails. Their fur is thick and soft because they have fewer guard hairs than some of the other pocket pets (Figure 23–14).

Chinchillas are nocturnal, shelter in crevices and holes along rocks, and live in groups. Chinchillas clean their fur by rolling in dust (Figure 23–15). Chinchillas also can release their fur as a defense mechanism. If grabbed too roughly by a predator or handler, the chinchilla will leave a patch of fur behind. Chinchillas are hindgut fermenters with a large stomach, jejunum, and cecum. Chinchillas have 20 teeth, and the dental formula is  $2(I\ 1/1, C\ 0/0, P\ 1/1, M\ 3/3)$ . Male chinchillas have open inguinal rings. The testes are located in the inguinal canal, without a true scrotal sac (Figures 23–16a and b).

## FERRETS

Ferrets (Figure 23–17) are mammals that belong to the family Mustelidae, which includes weasels, mink, and polecats. Ferrets have been in the United States for more than 300 years



(a)



(b)

**Figure 23–16** (a) Genital area of a male chinchilla. (b) Genital area of a female chinchilla. (Courtesy of Michael Gilroy.)

and were originally used for rodent control. Today ferrets are used primarily as pets; however, they are curious and like to get into small spaces and eat just about anything that is lying around.

Ferrets also are used in research and as working animals because of their ability to reach difficult places. Ferrets have long, slender bodies and long tails. Ferret tails are about one-half the length of the head and body. Ferrets have short legs and small, rounded ears. Ferrets are primarily nocturnal; they do not see well in bright light. Ferrets have highly developed senses of hearing, smell, and touch. Ferrets have 40 permanent teeth, and the dental formula is  $2(I\ 3/3, C\ 2/2, P\ 4/3, M\ 1/2)$ . Female ferrets are induced ovulators, which can cause health problems if the female does not come out of heat. **Hyperestrogenism** (hī-pər-ehs-trō-jehn-ihz-uhm) is elevated blood estrogen levels seen in



**Figure 23-17** Fitch ferrets. Ferrets may be restrained by scruffing the skin of the dorsal neck. Male ferrets (right) are larger than female ferrets (left).

intact cycling female ferrets if not bred (Figures 23-18a, b, and c).

## RABBITS

Rabbits are mammals classified as lagomorphs. Rabbits have four upper incisor teeth, whereas rodents have two incisor teeth (Figures 23-19 and 23-20). Rabbits may be dwarf, mini, standard, or giant in size and may be lop-eared (Figures 23-21a through e). Hares are in the same family as rabbits, usually are larger than rabbits, and have longer ears than rabbits. Hares do not build nests as rabbits do, and young hares are born fully furred with their eyes open. Hares live above ground and do not dig tunnels as rabbits do. Rabbits are kept indoors or outdoors as pets, are raised for pelts and food, and are used for research.

Proper ventilation is important in keeping rabbits disease-free. Rabbits are hindgut fermenters, so adequate roughage in the diet is important. Rabbits have a simple glandular stomach and a large cecum. Rabbits cannot vomit. Rabbits also need to gnaw to keep the length of their incisors



(a)

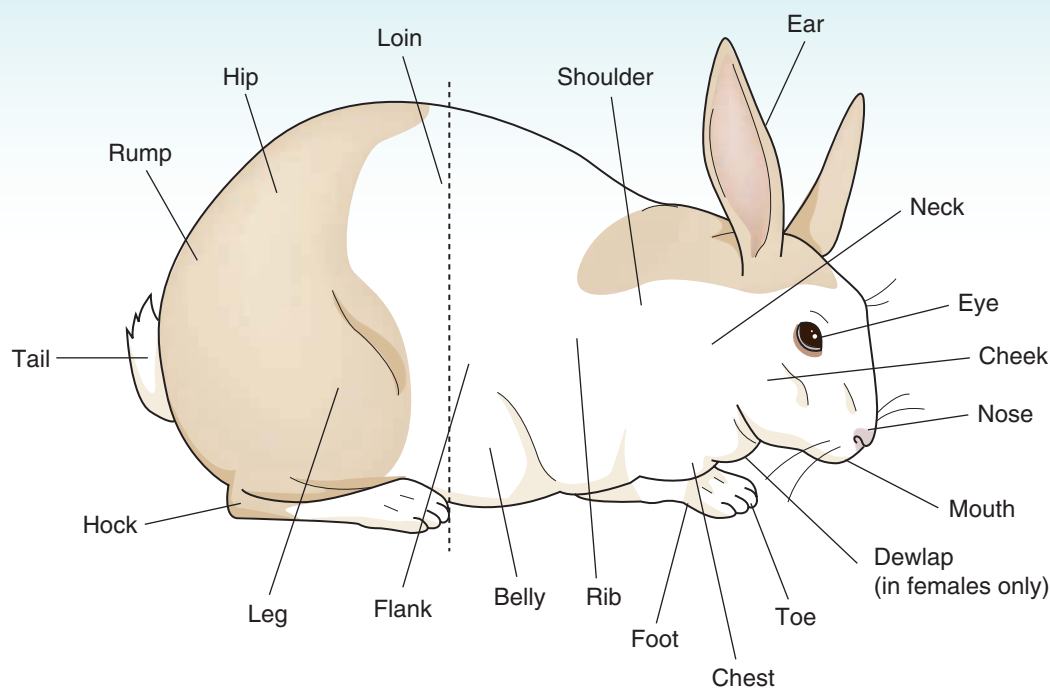


(b)

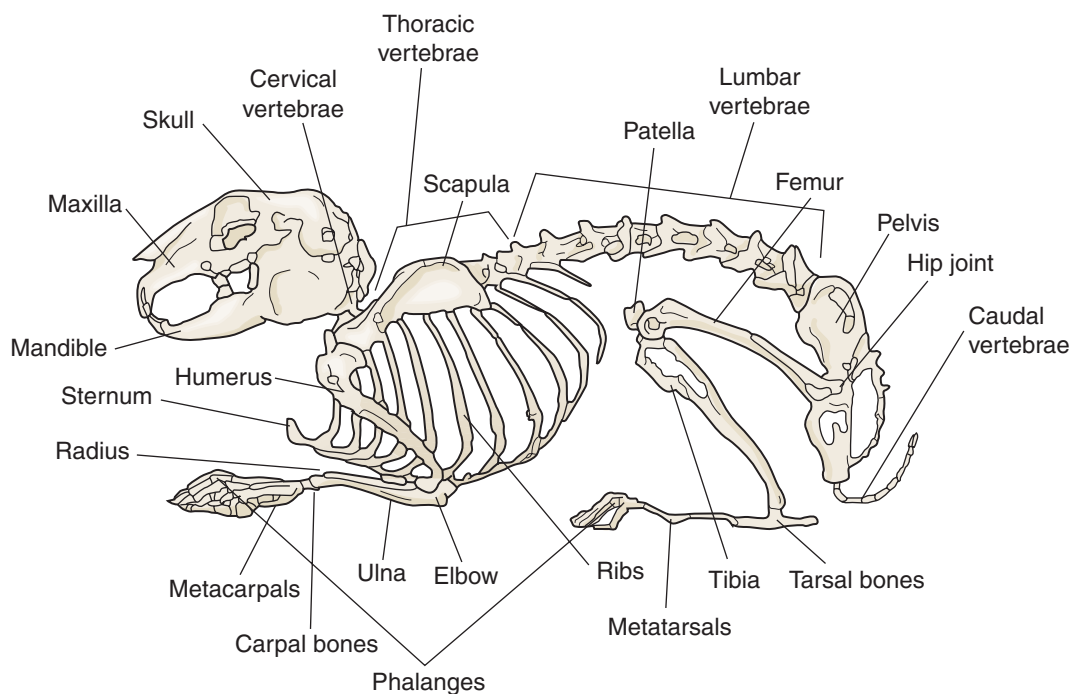


(c)

**Figure 23-18** External genitalia of ferrets. (a) Genital area of a male ferret. (b) Genital area of a nonestrous female ferret. (c) Genital area of an estrous female ferret.



**Figure 23-19** External anatomy of a rabbit.



**Figure 23-20** Skeleton of a rabbit.

in check. Rabbits have 28 permanent teeth, and the dental formula of the rabbit is  $2(I\ 2/1, C\ 0/0, P\ 3/2, M\ 3/3)$ .

Rabbits have powerful hindquarters for jumping. If not restrained properly, a rabbit can kick its rear legs and fracture its spine. In male rabbits, the inguinal canals remain open for life, the scrotum is hairless, and the testes descend at about 12 weeks of age.

- **night stool** (nit stool) = rabbit nocturnal feces that is looser than normal and contains vitamins and nutrients that the rabbit consumes.
- **snuffles** (snuhf-uhlz) = common term for upper respiratory disease of rabbits caused by *Pasteurella multocida* (Figure 23-22).



**Figure 23-21** Types of Rabbits. (a) Dwarf. (b) Mini. (c) Standard. (d) Giant. (e) Lop-eared. (Courtesy of Isabelle Français.)

- **sore hocks** = ulceration of the foot pads and foot area caused by the animal's body weight pressing down on the foot; commonly seen in rabbits housed on wire cage floors.
- **torticollis** (tōr-tih-kō-luhs) = contracted state of the cervical muscles producing torsion of the neck; also called **wry neck** (Figure 23-23).

## REPTILES

Reptiles are cold-blooded vertebrates that have lungs and breathe air. Reptiles have a body covering (bony skeleton, scales, or horny plates) and a heart that has two atria and in most species one ventricle.



**Figure 23–22** Snuffles in a rabbit. (Courtesy of USDA.)



**Figure 23–23** Torticollis in a rabbit. (Courtesy of USDA.)

There are four different types of reptiles: Chelonia (turtles, tortoises, and terrapins), Serpentes (snakes, pythons, and boas), Squamata (iguanas and lizards), and Crocodilia (crocodiles and alligators) (Figures 23–24a through d).

Modern-day reptiles have three body types. One type, including lizards, has long bodies and clearly defined tails. The second type, including snakes, has long bodies that



**Figure 23–24** Types of reptiles. (a) This Western painted turtle is an example of Chelonia. (b) This ball python is an example of Serpentes. (c) This Madagascar day gecko is an example of Squamata. (d) These American alligators are examples of Crocodilia. (Courtesy of Isabelle Francais.)

taper into tails. The third type, including turtles, has short, thick bodies encased in shells.

Movement in reptiles varies with the type of body structure in each group. Crocodiles and lizards have paired limbs that are attached to the body at right angles. This enables the animal to lift its body off the ground while moving. Crocodiles and alligators have strong limbs, whereas lizards have weaker limbs. Snakelike reptiles do not have limbs, and their movement is due to undulating movements of the body. The scales on the underside of the body project outward as the muscles are contracted and relaxed, allowing pressure to move the animal forward. Some turtles and tortoises have limbs that enable them to move on land using a creeping and crawling motion, yet also have modified limbs that enable them to swim.

Reptile skin has a horny surface layer. In lizards and snakes, this layer forms a hard, continuous covering of scales. These scales lie beneath the superficial layer of the epidermis so that the body can grow; this superficial layer is shed, allowing further growth. Crocodiles, alligators, and some lizards have bony dermal scales covered by a horny epidermal layer that also is shed to allow for body growth. Turtles and tortoises do not molt their thick epidermal skin; each year a new epidermal scale is formed beneath the old one. These epidermal scales (scutes) form rings that can be counted, allowing a person to estimate the animal's age.

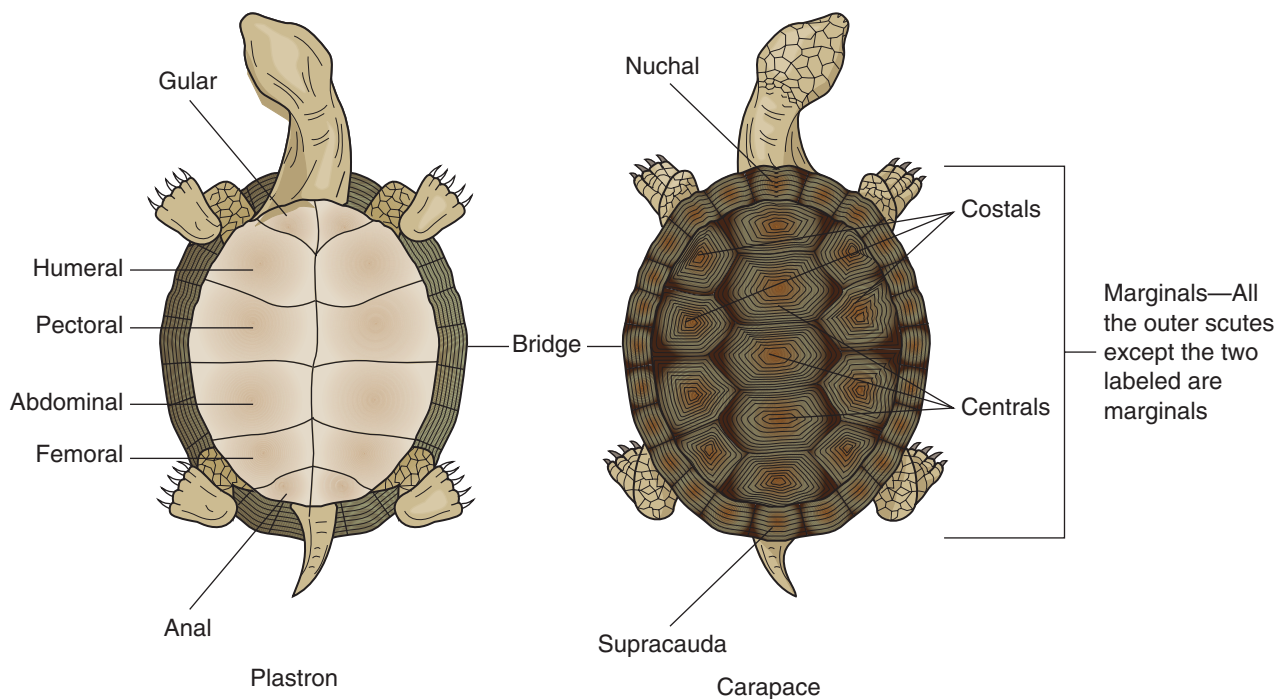
Lizards and snakes have teeth that are fused into the jawbones; some snakes have teeth fused to the palate bones. Crocodile teeth are set in sockets. Turtles and tortoises do not have teeth; their jaws form sharp crushing plates.

The tongues of reptiles vary greatly. Some have short, fleshy tongues that have little movement, whereas other reptiles have

tongues that are long, slender, and forked (some lizards and snakes).

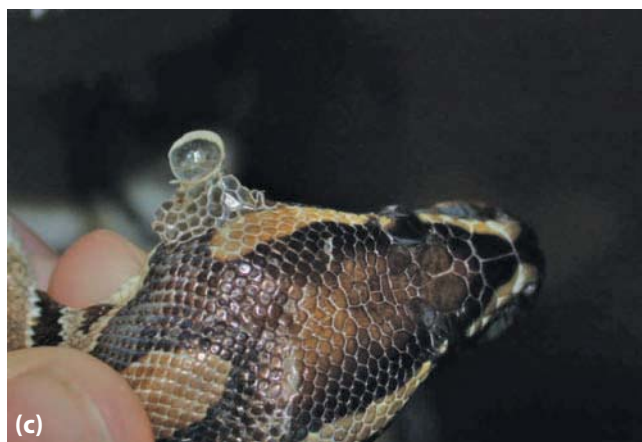
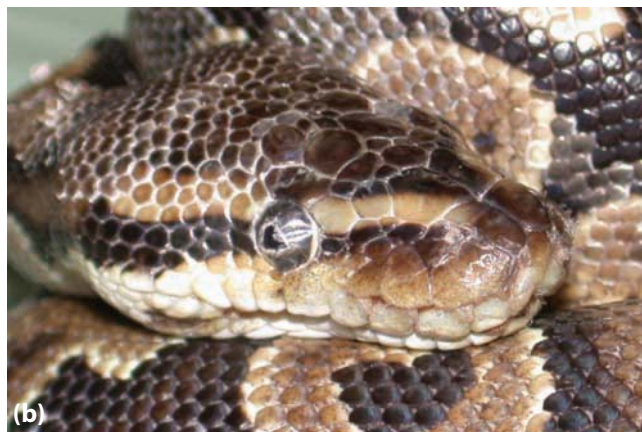
Tortoises, crocodiles, and many lizards and snakes are oviparous (lay eggs that hatch after leaving the female body). Some species are ovoviviparous (eggs hatch inside the body of the female with the live young emerging from the female's body).

- **brille** (brī-uhl) = transparent layer that permanently covers the eyes of snakes (snakes cannot close their eyes and have brille instead of eyelids).
- **carapace** (kahr-ah-pās) = dorsal region of a turtle shell (Figure 23–25).
- **chin glands** = secretory organs located on the throats of turtles; also called **mental glands**.
- **dysecdysis** (dihs-ehck-dī-sihs) = difficult or abnormal shedding.
- **ecdysis** (ehck-dī-sihs) = shedding or molting.
- **femoral pores** (feh-m-ör-ahl poorz) = sexually dimorphic glands prominent in mature lizards that are located on the ventral surface of lizard thighs; also called **femoral glands**.
- **head gland** = small secretory organ located on the head of snakes.
- **musk glands** = four secretory organs that open lateroventrally near the carapace edge of turtles.
- **plastron** (plahs-trohn) = ventral region of a turtle shell.
- **scent gland** = saclike secretory organ located at the base of the tail in snakes.
- **scute** (skoot) = any scalelike structure such as those found on tortoise or turtle shells or on the heads of snakes.



**Figure 23–25** Scutes (scalelike structures) on a turtle shell.

- **spectacle** (spehck-tah-kuhl) = transparent, highly vascular, unshed, abnormal covering over the cornea of some reptiles; also called an **eyecap** or a **brille** (brī-uhl) (Figures 23–26a, b, and c).
- **tail autotomy** (tā-uhl aw-toh-tō-mē) = lizard's ability to lose its tail.



**Figure 23–26** (a) Normal spectacle, or eyecap, in a snake. (b) Spectacle in process of shedding. (c) Shed spectacle. (Courtesy of Kimberly Kruse Sprecher, CVT.)

## AMPHIBIANS

Amphibians are animals that live the larval part of their lives in water and their adult lives partially or completely on land. They are cold-blooded and do not have scales. There are approximately 4,000 species of amphibians in three orders: Gymnophiona (wormlike amphibians called caecilians), Caudata (newts and salamanders), and Salientia (frogs and toads) (Figures 23–27a and b).

Amphibians have thin, moist skin that is used for breathing (cutaneous respiration) and for absorption of water. Amphibian skin is covered with fluid-secreting glands that produce a slimy mucus. This mucus helps conserve moisture; prevents excessive amounts of water from being absorbed into the body; and makes the animals slippery, which aids in their defense. The tongues of amphibians vary greatly from those who do not have tongues to those who have long tongues with sticky tips to aid in the capture of small insects. Amphibians typically eat insects; however, larger species may feed on mice and small rodents.

- **urostyle** (yoor-ō-stil) = long caudal vertebra of some amphibians.



**Figure 23–27** Types of amphibians. (a) American toad; (b) Green tree frog. (Courtesy of Isabelle Francais.)

## REVIEW EXERCISES

---

### Multiple Choice

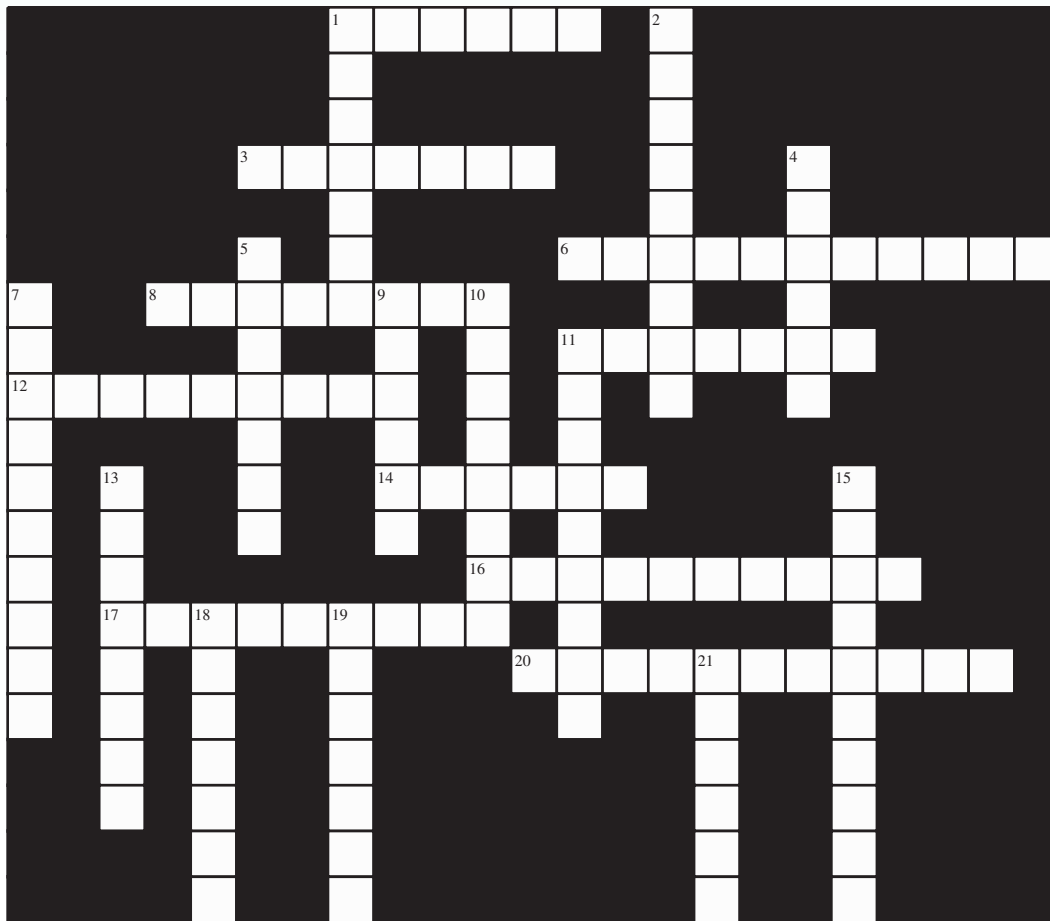
Choose the correct answer.

1. The ventral region of a turtle shell is the
  - a. plastron
  - b. carpace
  - c. dysecdysis
  - d. ecdysis
2. A term for germ-free is
  - a. barrier
  - b. ambient
  - c. axenic
  - d. fomite
3. Biting or chewing the fur of subordinate animals is known as
  - a. cribbing
  - b. barbering
  - c. cannibalism
  - d. polytocus
4. A term meaning outside living organisms is
  - a. in situ
  - b. in vitro
  - c. in vivo
  - d. inbred
5. Rabbit nocturnal feces that is looser than normal is known as
  - a. diarrhea
  - b. night stool
  - c. dark feces
  - d. melena
6. The medical term for shedding or molting is
  - a. dysecdysis
  - b. ecdysis
  - c. estivation
  - d. transgenic
7. The space in the oral cavity of hamsters that allows them to carry food and bedding is the
  - a. oral cavity
  - b. cheek cavity
  - c. cheek pouch
  - d. calvarium
8. The area between the anus and genitalia used to determine the sex of animals is the
  - a. analogous space
  - b. cesarean space
  - c. anogenital distance
  - d. crepuscular area
9. Chinchillas clean themselves by
  - a. fur-slip
  - b. barbering
  - c. dusting
  - d. shining
10. Incompletely developed parts are known as
  - a. homologous
  - b. heterozygous
  - c. homozygous
  - d. rudimentary
11. An animal with a white coat and pink eyes is called a(n)
  - a. albino
  - b. axenic
  - c. cashmere
  - d. agouti
12. Something that carries disease from one animal to another is a
  - a. test group
  - b. vestigial
  - c. vector
  - d. vertical transmission

13. The standard normal against which experimental results are compared is the
- variable
  - control
  - fomite
  - ambient
14. Adjustment of an animal to a new environment is
- ambient
  - acclimatization
  - calvarium
  - gnotobiotic
15. Another term for brille is
- spectacle
  - urostyle
  - scute
  - plastron
16. Wry neck, or the contracted state of the cervical muscles producing torsion of the neck, also is called
- ecdysis
  - dysecdysis
  - carapace
  - torticollis
17. Intact cycling female ferrets may have elevated blood estrogen levels. This condition is called
- scurvy
  - homozygous
  - homologous
  - hyperestrogenism
18. To reduce body temperature, heart and respiration rates, and metabolism to dormancy in winter is called
- calvariumism
  - hibernation
  - estivation
  - metanephrist
19. To reduce body temperature, heart and respiration rates and metabolism to dormancy in summer is called
- calvariumism
  - hibernation
  - estivation
  - metanephrist
20. The written procedure for carrying out experiments is the
- phenotype
  - genotype
  - protocol
  - polytocous

## CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Laboratory and Pocket Pet Terms Puzzle



#### Across

- 1 inanimate carriers of disease
- 3 cleaning method of chinchillas
- 6 contracted state of the cervical muscles producing torsion of the neck
- 8 dorsal region of a turtle shell
- 11 standard "normal" against which experimental results are compared
- 12 to reproduce
- 14 inside living organisms
- 16 study of embryo development
- 17 transparent, unshed, abnormal covering over the cornea of some reptiles
- 20 incompletely developed

#### Down

- 1 shedding of hair patches from rough handling of chinchillas
- 2 behavioral disorder in animals where dominant animals bite or chew the fur from subordinate animals
- 4 something that carries disease from one animal to another
- 5 offspring or descendants
- 7 statement of research supposition
- 9 germ-free
- 10 dormant state during summer
- 11 top of the skull
- 13 ventral region of a turtle shell
- 15 rabbit nocturnal feces
- 18 shedding
- 19 surrounding
- 21 mice and rats

## CASE STUDIES

Define the underlined terms in each case study.

A 6-mo-old female green iguana was presented for examination for lethargy, ataxia, and limb twitching. It was kept in an aquarium with food, water, a hot rock, and a white light source. The diet consisted mainly of head lettuce and grapes. Upon PE, the iguana was noted to be underweight and undersized for its age, and limb tremors could be induced during handling. Based on the history, it was likely that this animal had secondary nutritional hyperparathyroidism, otherwise known as metabolic bone disease. Radiographs were taken, and blood was drawn for a serum chemistry profile. Results indicated poor bone density, hypocalcemia, and hypoproteinemia. The iguana was treated with calcium and vitamin D3 supplementation. The owners were counseled on proper husbandry and nutrition of green iguanas (Figure 23–28).

1. lethargy \_\_\_\_\_
2. ataxia \_\_\_\_\_
3. PE \_\_\_\_\_
4. hyperparathyroidism \_\_\_\_\_
5. metabolic \_\_\_\_\_
6. radiographs \_\_\_\_\_
7. serum \_\_\_\_\_
8. chemistry profile \_\_\_\_\_
9. hypocalcemia \_\_\_\_\_
10. hypoproteinemia \_\_\_\_\_



**Figure 23–28** Green iguana.

A 5-yr-old three-toed box turtle was presented with a swelling on the right side of its head. The turtle was housed in an aquarium with dirt substrate, a water dish, and a hide box. On PE, the right tympanic membrane was noted to bulge out laterally from the head. Oral examination revealed stomatitis characterized by yellow plaques on the oral mucosa. A diagnosis of otitis media and potential hypovitaminosis was made. The abscess in the ear was lanced and debrided. The oral plaques were swabbed for cytology and were found to demonstrate squamous metaplasia consistent with hypovitaminosis A. The turtle was treated with antibiotics and vitamin A supplementation. Husbandry and nutrition were discussed with the owner.

11. tympanic membrane \_\_\_\_\_
12. laterally \_\_\_\_\_
13. oral \_\_\_\_\_
14. stomatitis \_\_\_\_\_
15. plaques \_\_\_\_\_
16. mucosa \_\_\_\_\_
17. diagnosis \_\_\_\_\_
18. otitis media \_\_\_\_\_
19. hypovitaminosis \_\_\_\_\_
20. abscess \_\_\_\_\_
21. lanced \_\_\_\_\_
22. debrided \_\_\_\_\_
23. cytology \_\_\_\_\_
24. squamous \_\_\_\_\_
25. metaplasia \_\_\_\_\_

A 5-yr-old M/N ferret was presented for signs of alopecia on its dorsal lumbar and tail regions and dysuria. Although differential diagnoses of ectoparasites, dermatophytosis, atopy, cystitis, and urolithiasis were considered, the most likely dx was hyperadrenocorticism. This endocrine disease is caused by adrenal gland hyperplasia or neoplasia. Production of excessive androgen hormones results in cessation of the normal hair growth cycle and may cause prostatic hyperplasia, which in turn produces the clinical signs described. Treatment options include surgical excision of the affected adrenal glands and medical therapy aimed at reducing the functional tissue of the adrenal glands. Many ferrets respond very well to the therapeutic options.

26. alopecia \_\_\_\_\_
27. dorsal lumbar \_\_\_\_\_
28. dysuria \_\_\_\_\_
29. ectoparasites \_\_\_\_\_
30. dermatophytosis \_\_\_\_\_

31. atopy \_\_\_\_\_
32. cystitis \_\_\_\_\_
33. urolithiasis \_\_\_\_\_
34. dx \_\_\_\_\_
35. hyperadrenocorticism \_\_\_\_\_
36. hyperplasia \_\_\_\_\_
37. neoplasia \_\_\_\_\_
38. cessation \_\_\_\_\_
39. prostatic hyperplasia \_\_\_\_\_
40. excision \_\_\_\_\_

A 3-yr-old M chinchilla was noted to be limping on its left rear leg. He had taken a fall from the top of a bedroom dresser. Upon presentation to the veterinarian, a midshaft, spiral femoral fx was diagnosed with radiographs. Options included coaptation by splinting the leg, surgical repair of the fx, or restricted cage rest. The owner chose to have the leg splinted. The chinchilla was anesthetized with isoflurane, an inhalant anesthetic, via a face mask. A splint was fashioned with fiberglass casting and bandage materials. One week later it was noted that the splint had shifted, so the animal was returned to the veterinarian. Upon removal of the splint, it was discovered that the leg was no longer viable because vascular and soft tissue damage had occurred. The chinchilla was again anesthetized for surgical amputation of the leg. He recovered well over the next few weeks and ambulated well as a three-legged chinchilla.

41. midshaft \_\_\_\_\_
42. spiral \_\_\_\_\_
43. femoral fx \_\_\_\_\_
44. diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_
45. radiographs \_\_\_\_\_
46. coaptation \_\_\_\_\_
47. splinting \_\_\_\_\_
48. fx \_\_\_\_\_
49. inhalant anesthetic \_\_\_\_\_
50. viable \_\_\_\_\_
51. vascular \_\_\_\_\_
52. amputation \_\_\_\_\_
53. ambulated \_\_\_\_\_

A 2-yr-old M guinea pig was noted to have hematuria and pollakiuria from the owner's hx. On PE, the guinea pig was BAR. All systems examined were WNL other than palpation of the urinary bladder, which elicited vocalization as a result of assumed pain. The guinea pig was restrained for cystocentesis, and a UA was performed. The urine contained numerous erythrocytes and leukocytes, as well as calcium oxalate crystals. A urolith was suspected. Whole body radiographs confirmed the presence of a radiopaque density in the urinary bladder. A cystotomy was performed to remove the calcium oxalate stone. The owners were instructed to feed timothy hay instead of alfalfa hay to decrease dietary calcium intake.

54. hematuria \_\_\_\_\_
55. pollakiuria \_\_\_\_\_
56. hx \_\_\_\_\_
57. BAR \_\_\_\_\_
58. WNL \_\_\_\_\_
59. palpation \_\_\_\_\_
60. vocalization \_\_\_\_\_
61. cystocentesis \_\_\_\_\_
62. UA \_\_\_\_\_
63. erythrocytes \_\_\_\_\_
64. leukocytes \_\_\_\_\_
65. crystals \_\_\_\_\_
66. urolith \_\_\_\_\_
67. radiographs \_\_\_\_\_
68. radiopaque \_\_\_\_\_
69. cystotomy \_\_\_\_\_

A 1-yr-old F domestic mouse was presented for pruritus and a powdery substance on the dorsal aspect of the neck. PE revealed a pruritic mouse with white granular material on the dorsal cervical region. A cellophane tape preparation was performed on the neck debris. Ectoparasitic ascariasis was diagnosed, the most likely agent being *Myobia musculi*. The mouse was treated topically with the parasiticide ivermectin, which was placed on the interscapular skin. The owner was instructed to return for a second treatment in 10 days.

70. pruritus \_\_\_\_\_
71. dorsal \_\_\_\_\_
72. dorsal cervical region \_\_\_\_\_
73. debris \_\_\_\_\_
74. ectoparasitic \_\_\_\_\_
75. topically \_\_\_\_\_
76. parasiticide \_\_\_\_\_
77. interscapular \_\_\_\_\_

Socrates, a 1 1/2-yr-old hooded rat, was examined for what the owner described as a cold. Conjunctivitis and sinusitis were noted on PE. The owner was concerned that there was bleeding from the nares. He was informed that when rats become ill, they groom themselves less, which allows nasal discharge to accumulate on the fur. The red tinge that the owner was seeing was not blood, but a porphyrin pigment that is a normal component of the nasal secretions. Various viral and bacterial etiologic agents are responsible for respiratory disease in rats, including *Mycoplasma*. The antibiotic oxytetracycline was prescribed PO for 2 weeks. The owner was informed that this may be a chronic, recurrent disease.

78. conjunctivitis

---

79. sinusitis

---

80. nares

---

81. nasal

---

82. etiologic

---

83. antibiotic

---

84. PO

---

85. chronic

---



# APPENDIX A

## ABBREVIATIONS

### IMAGING ABBREVIATIONS

a or amp	ampere
A/P	anterior/posterior
APMLO	anterior to posterior and medial to lateral oblique
Ba	barium
CT or CAT	computed (axial) tomography
DL-PaMO	dorsolateral-palmaromedial oblique
DL-PiMO	dorsolateral-plantaromedial oblique
DM-PaLO	dorsomedial-palmarolateral oblique
DP	dorsopalmar
DPl	dorsoplantar
DPr DDiO	dorsoproximal-dorsodistal oblique (often called the skyline)*
D/V	dorsal/ventral
f	frequency
Hz	Hertz (a unit of frequency)
$\lambda$	wavelength
IVP	intravenous pyelogram
kV	kilovolt
kVp	kilovolt peak
kW	kilowatt
LM	lateral to medial
LMO	lateral to medial oblique
mA	milliamperage
mAs	milliamperage in seconds

\*Abbreviation may be preceded with *flexed* and may include a number referring to the deviation from perpendicular for a beam; for example, flexed D30Pr-DdiO is a flexed dorsoproximal-dorsodistal oblique taken at a 30-degree angle to the cassette.

mc	millicurie
ML	medial to lateral
MLO	medial to lateral oblique
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
O	oblique
P/A	posterior/anterior
Pa45Pr-PaDiO	palmaroproximal-palmarodistal oblique (often called the skyline navicular)
PALMO	posterior to anterior and lateral to medial oblique
PAMLO	posterior to anterior and medial to lateral oblique
	rad unit of measurement of absorbed dose of ionizing radiation
RT	radiation therapy
T	period of time (used in ultrasound)
v	velocity
V	volt
V/D	ventral/dorsal
W	watt
X-ray	roentgen ray

### SPECIALIST OR TITLE ABBREVIATIONS

The letter *D* may appear in front of these specialties, which means that the person is a diplomate of that particular college. For example, DACVIM after someone's name means that the person is a diplomate in the American College of Veterinary Internal Medicine.

ABVP	American Board of Veterinary Practitioners
ABVT	American Board of Veterinary Toxicology
ACLAM	American College of Laboratory Animal Medicine
ACPV	American College of Poultry Veterinarians
ACT	American College of Theriogenologists

ACVA	American College of Veterinary Anesthesiologists
ACVB	American College of Veterinary Behaviorists
ACVCP	American College of Veterinary Clinical Pharmacology
ACVD	American College of Veterinary Dermatology
ACVECC	American College of Veterinary Emergency and Critical Care
ACVIM	American College of Veterinary Internal Medicine
ACVM	American College of Veterinary Microbiologists
ACVN	American College of Veterinary Nutrition
ACVO	American College of Veterinary Ophthalmologists
ACVP	American College of Veterinary Pathologists
ACVPM	American College of Veterinary Preventive Medicine
ACVR	American College of Veterinary Radiology
ACVS	American College of Veterinary Surgeons
ACZM	American College of Zoological Medicine
AHT	animal health technician
AIMVT	Academy of Internal Medicine for Veterinary Technicians
ALAT	assistant laboratory animal technician
ASVDT	American Society of Veterinary Dental Technicians
AVDC	American Veterinary Dental College
AVECCT	American Veterinary Emergency and Critical Care Technicians
AZVT	Association of Zoo Veterinary Technicians
CH	certified herbalist
CVA	certified veterinary acupuncturist
CVT	certified veterinary technician
DC	doctor of chiropractic
DVM	doctor of veterinary medicine
LAT	laboratory animal technician
LATG	laboratory animal technologist
LVT	licensed veterinary technician
ND	doctor of naturopathy
RVT	registered veterinary technician
RVTG	registered veterinary technologist
SVBT	Society of Veterinary Behavior Technicians
VA	veterinary assistant
VMD	veterinary medical doctor (veterinariae medicinae doctor)
VNCA	Veterinary Nurses Council of Australia
VTs (Internal Medicine—Small Animal)	Veterinary Technician Specialist in small animal internal medicine

VTs (Internal Medicine—Large Animal)	Veterinary Technician Specialist in large animal internal medicine
VTs (Internal Medicine—Cardiology)	Veterinary Technician Specialist in Cardiology
VTs (Internal Medicine—Neurology)	Veterinary Technician Specialist in Neurology
VTs (Internal Medicine—Oncology)	Veterinary Technician Specialist in Oncology

## ASSOCIATION ABBREVIATIONS

AAHA	American Animal Hospital Association
AALAS	American Association of Laboratory Animal Science
AKC	American Kennel Club
AO	Arbeitsgemeinschaft für Osteosynthesefragen (Association for the Study of Fracture Treatment in Man, founded by a group of Swiss surgeons); used to describe specialized bone plates and instruments used in orthopedic repair
APHIS-VS	Animal & Plant Health Inspector Services—Veterinary Services
ASIF	Association of the Study of Internal Fixation
ASPCA	American Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals
AVMA	American Veterinary Medical Association
CAAHT	Canadian Association of Animal Health Technologists & Technicians
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (human)
CVTEA	Committee on Veterinary Technician Education and Activities
DEA	Drug Enforcement Administration
DHIA	Dairy Herd Improvement Association
DOT	Department of Transportation (used for OSHA regulation of hazardous material transfer)
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
FSIS	Food Safety and Inspection Services
IACUC	Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee
NADC	National Animal Disease Center
NAPCC	National Animal Poison Control Center
NAVTA	National Association of Veterinary Technicians in America
NVSL	National Veterinary Services Laboratories
OFA	Orthopedic Foundation for Animals
OSHA	Occupational Safety & Health Administration

USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
USP	United States Pharmacopeia
VTAS	Veterinary Technician Anesthetist Society

## PHARMACOLOGY ABBREVIATIONS

ac	before meals ( <i>ante cibum</i> )
ad lib	as much as desired ( <i>ad libitum</i> )
bid	twice daily ( <i>bis in die</i> )
BSA	body surface area
cal	calorie
cap	capsule
cc	cubic centimeter (same as mL)
cm	centimeter
conc	concentration
dr	dram; equal to $\frac{1}{8}$ oz or 4 mL
D <sub>5</sub> W	5% dextrose in water
ED	effective dose
ED <sub>50</sub>	median effective dose
fl oz	fluid ounce
g	gram
gal	gallon
gr	grain; unit of weight approximately 65 mg
gt	drop ( <i>gutta</i> )
gtt	drops ( <i>guttae</i> )
hr	hour
IA	intra-arterial
IC	intracardiac
ID	intra-dermal
IM	intra-muscular
IP	intra-peritoneal
IT	intra-thecal
IU	International Unit or intrauterine
IV	intra-venous
kg	kilogram
km	kilometer
L or l	liter
lb or #	pound
LD	lethal dose
LRS	lactated Ringer's solution
m	meter
MBC	minimum bactericidal concentration
mcg or µg	microgram
MED	minimal effective dose
mEq	milliequivalent
mg	milligram

MIC	minimum inhibitory concentration
MID	minimum infective dose
mL	milliliter (same as cc)
MLD	minimum lethal dose
mm	millimeter (also used for muscles)
NPO or npo	nothing by mouth ( <i>non per os</i> )
NS	normal saline
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug
OTC	over the counter
oz	ounce
pc	after meals ( <i>post cibum</i> )
PDR	<i>Physician's Desk Reference</i>
%	percent
pH	hydrogen ion concentration (acidity and alkalinity measurement)
PO or po	orally ( <i>per os</i> )
ppm	parts per million
PR	per rectum
prn	as needed
pt	pint
PZI	protamine zinc insulin
q	every
qd	every day
qh	every hour
q4h	every 4 hours
q6h	every 6 hours
q8h	every 8 hours
q12h	every 12 hours
q24h	every 24 hours
qid	four times daily ( <i>quater in die</i> )
qn	every night
qod or eod	every other day
qp	as much as desired
qt	quart
®	registered trade name (superscript next to drug name)
sid	once daily (q24h is more common abbreviation for once daily)
sig	let it be written as (used when writing prescriptions)
sol'n or soln	solution
SQ, SC, subq, or subcu	subcutaneous
T	tablespoon or tablet (or temperature)
tab	tablet
tid	three times daily ( <i>ter in die</i> )
tsp or t	teaspoon
vol	volume
VPB	<i>Veterinary Pharmaceuticals and Biologicals</i>

## LABORATORY ABBREVIATIONS

ab	antibody
ABO	human blood groups
ag	antigen
alb	albumin
alk phos	alkaline phosphatase
ALT	alanine aminotransferase (formerly SGPT)
amyl	amylase
AST	aspartate aminotransferase (formerly SGOT)
BP	blood pressure
BUN	blood urea nitrogen
CBC	complete blood count
CFT	complement fixation test
CHOL	cholesterol
CK	creatine kinase
CMT	California mastitis test
CREA	creatinine
diff	differential white blood count
EDTA	ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; type of anticoagulant
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
GGT	gamma glutamyl transpeptidase
GLU	glucose
GTT	glucose tolerance test
H&E	hematoxylin and eosin stain
Hb or Hgb	hemoglobin
Hct or crit	hematocrit
HDL	high-density lipoprotein
HPF	high-power field
HW	heartworm
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
LDL	low-density lipoprotein
LPF	low-power field
MCH	mean corpuscular hemoglobin
MCHC	mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration
MCV	mean corpuscular volume
ME	myeloid–erythroid ratio
NRBC	nucleated red blood cell
PCV	packed cell volume
PMN	polymorphonuclear neutrophil leukocyte
PT	prothrombin time
PTT	partial thromboplastin time
qns	quantity not sufficient
qs	quantity sufficient
RBC	red blood cell
rpm	revolutions per minute
SAP	serum alkaline phosphatase
SCC	somatic cell count

sed or SR	sedimentation rate
SGOT	serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase; now abbreviated AST
SGPT	serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase; now abbreviated ALT
SPF	specific pathogen free
sp. gr.	specific gravity
Staph	<i>Staphylococcus</i> bacteria
Strep	<i>Streptococcus</i> bacteria
T <sub>3</sub>	triiodothyronine (one type of thyroid hormone)
T <sub>4</sub>	thyroxine (one type of thyroid hormone)
TB	tuberculin
TBIL	total bilirubin
TNTC	too numerous to count
TP	total protein
UA	urinalysis
WBC	white blood cell
WMT	Wisconsin mastitis test

## VACCINATION ABBREVIATIONS

BVD	bovine viral diarrhea
DHLPP	distemper, hepatitis, leptospirosis, parainfluenza, and parvovirus
DHLPP-CV	distemper, hepatitis, leptospirosis, parainfluenza, parvovirus, and coronavirus
EEE	eastern equine encephalitis
EIA	equine infectious anemia
EPM	equine protozoal myelitis
FeLV, FeLeuk, or FeLuk	feline leukemia virus
FIP	feline infectious peritonitis
FIV	feline immunodeficiency virus
FVRCP	feline viral rhinotracheitis, calicivirus, and panleukopenia
FVRCP-C	feline viral rhinotracheitis, calicivirus, panleukopenia, and chlamydia
IBR	infectious bovine rhinotracheitis
MLV	modified live vaccine
PHF	Potomac horse fever
PI-3	parainfluenza 3 virus
PRRS	porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome
RV	rabies vaccine
TE	tetanus
TGE	transmissible gastroenteritis
WEE	western equine encephalitis
WNV	West Nile virus
VEE	Venezuelan equine encephalitis

# PHYSICAL EXAMINATION, PHYSIOLOGY, AND PATHOLOGY ABBREVIATIONS

ACH	acetylcholine	FUO	fever of unknown origin
ACH	adrenocortical hormone	FUS	feline urological syndrome
ACHe	acetylcholinesterase	GFR	glomerular filtration rate
ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone	GH	growth hormone
ADH	antidiuretic hormone	GI	gastrointestinal
AI	artificial insemination	GSW	gunshot wound
ANS	autonomic nervous system	HBC	hit by car
ASAP	as soon as possible	hCG	human chorionic gonadotropin
BAR	bright, alert, responsive	HR	heart rate
BD/LD	big dog/little dog (used for dogs wounded in a fight)	ICSH	interstitial cell-stimulating hormone
BM	bowel movement	ICU	intensive care unit
BPM	beats or breaths per minute	IVDD	intervertebral disc disease
ċ	with	K-9	canine
C	castrated	Ⓛ	left
cath	catheter	LA	large animal
CC	chief complaint	LDA	left displaced abomasum
ChE	cholinesterase	LE	lupus erythematosus
CHF	congestive heart failure	lg	large
CNS	central nervous system	LH	luteinizing hormone
CO	carbon monoxide	LOC	level of consciousness
CO <sub>2</sub>	carbon dioxide	LV	left ventricle
CP	conscious proprioception	M	male
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation	M/C	male castrated
CRT	capillary refill time	MDB	minimum database
C-section	cesarean section	mm	millimeter
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	MM	mucous membrane
CSM	carotid sinus massage	mm Hg	millimeters of mercury
CVP	central venous pressure	M/N	male neutered
DA	displaced abomasum	MS	mitral stenosis
DD	differential diagnosis	MSDS	material data safety sheet
DDN	dull, depressed, nonresponsive	N	neutered (or normal on physical examination)
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation	NA or N/A	not applicable
DLH	domestic longhair (feline)	NPN	nonprotein nitrogen
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid	OB	obstetrics
DOA	dead on arrival	OHE or OVH	ovariohysterectomy
DSH	domestic shorthair (feline)	OR	operating room
ECG or EKG	electrocardiogram or electrocardiograph	Ṗ	after
EEG	electroencephalogram or electroencephalograph	P	pulse
EMG	electromyogram	PD	polydipsia
F	Fahrenheit or female	PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
FA	fatty acid	PE	physical examination
FLUTD	feline lower urinary tract disease	Pg	pregnant
F/S	female spayed	PM	postmortem; also abbreviation for evening
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone	PMI	point of maximal intensity
		PNS	peripheral nervous system
		POVMR	problem-oriented veterinary medical records
		PU	polyuria
		PVC	premature ventricular complex
		Ⓡ	respirations or right

RDA	right displaced abomasum
RNA	ribonucleic acid
R/O	rule out
RP	retained placenta
RR	respiration rate
$\bar{s}$	without
S	spayed
SA	sinoatrial or small animal
SOAP	subjective, objective, assessment, plan (record-keeping acronym)
stat	immediately ( <i>statim</i> )
T	temperature (tablespoon or tablet)
TLC	tender loving care
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
TPO	triple pelvic osteotomy
TPR	temperature, pulse, and respiration
TSH	thyroid-stimulating hormone
TTA	transtracheal aspiration
TTW	transtracheal wash
TVT	transmissible venereal tumor
URI	upper respiratory infection
UTI	urinary tract infection
VM	vagal maneuver
VSD	ventricular septal defect
WNL	within normal limits
wt	weight

## SYMBOLS

$\cong$	approximately equal to
$\uparrow$	increased
$\downarrow$	decreased
+	positive (used to describe test results); may have multiple +s to indicate degree
—	negative (used to describe test results); may have multiple —s to indicate degree
·	times or multiplication sign
$\checkmark$	check
=	equal to
#	number (in front of number; for example, #1); pound (following number; for example, 50#)
$\neq$	not equal to
<	less than

>	greater than
@	at or each
%	percent
$\sigma$	male
$\varphi$	female
°	degree

## THE Xs

bx	biopsy
dx	diagnosis
ddx	differential diagnosis
fx	fracture
hx	history
Rx	prescription
sx	surgery
tx	treatment

## EYE AND EAR ABBREVIATIONS

AD	right ear
AS	left ear
AU	both ears
IOP	intraocular pressure
OD	right eye (also abbreviation for overdose)
OS	left eye
OU	both eyes

## CHEMICAL ABBREVIATIONS

Fe	iron
H	hydrogen
H <sub>2</sub> O	water
H <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	hydrogen peroxide
HCl	hydrochloric acid
I	iodine
K	potassium
KCl	potassium chloride
N	nitrogen (also abbreviation for normal)
Na	sodium
NH <sub>3</sub>	ammonia
O <sub>2</sub>	oxygen

# APPENDIX B

## PLURAL FORMS OF MEDICAL TERMS

Many plural word forms are formed by adding *s* to the singular form. This is true for medical terms as well. For example, the plural of *laceration* is *lacerations* and the plural of *bone* is *bones*. However, some rules

should be followed when plural forms of medical terms are used. These rules are presented in the following table.

Singular Ending	Change or Deletion from Singular Form	Add Plural Ending	Examples (singular)	Plural Form
s, ch, or sh		es	abscess	abscesses
			stitch	stitches
			brush	brushes
y	delete y	ies	capillary	capillaries
is	delete <i>is</i>	es	diagnosis	diagnoses
um	delete <i>um</i>	a	bacterium	bacteria
us*	delete <i>us</i>	i	alveolus	alveoli
a	delete <i>a</i>	ae	vertebra	vertebrae
ix	delete <i>ix</i>	ices	cervix	cervices
yx	delete <i>yx</i>	ices	calyx	calices
ex	delete <i>ex</i>	ices	cortex	cortices
ax	delete <i>ax</i>	aces	thorax	thoraces
oma <sup>#</sup>	delete <i>oma</i>	omata	stoma	stomata
nx	delete <i>nx</i>	nges	phalanx	phalanges
on <sup>†</sup>	delete <i>on</i>	a	spermatozoon	spermatozoa
en	delete <i>en</i>	ina	foramen	foramina
u	delete <i>u</i>	ua	cornu	cornua

\*except plural of *virus* is *viruses* and plural of *sinus* is *sinuses*

<sup>#</sup>except plural of *carcinoma* may be *carcinomas*

<sup>†</sup>except plural of *chorion* is *chorions*



# APPENDIX C

## PREFIXES, COMBINING FORMS, AND SUFFIXES FOR MEDICAL TERMS

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
<b>A</b>		
a-	away from, no, not, without	L, G
ab-	away from	L
abdomin/o	abdomen	L
able	capable of	L
abort/o	premature expulsion of a nonviable fetus	L
abrad/o or abras/o	scrape off	L
abrupt/o	broken away from	L
abs-	away from	L
absorpt/o	to suck up or in	L
ac-	toward	L
-ac	pertaining to	L, G
acanth/o	spiny	G
acetabul/o	hip socket	L
-acious	characterized by	L
acne/o	point	G
acous/o or acoust/o	hearing	G
-acousia	hearing	G
acr/o	extremities or top	G
acromi/o	point of the shoulder blade	G
acu/o	sharp, severe, sudden, needle	L
acuit/o or acut/o	sharp	L
ad-	toward	L
-ad	toward, to, in the direction of	L
aden/o	gland	G
adhes/o	stickiness or clinginess	L
adip/o	fat	L
adnex/o	bound to	L
adren/o or adrenal/o	adrenal glands	L
aer/o	air or gas	L, G
aesthet/o	sensation or feeling	G
af-	toward	L

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
affect/o	exert influence on	L
ag-	toward	L
agglutin/o	clumping	L
aggress/o	attack or step forward	L
-ago	attack, diseased condition	G
-agra	excessive pain or seizure	G
-aise	ease or comfort	F
al-	similar	L
-al	pertaining to	L, G
alb/i, alb/o, or albin/o	white	L
albumin/o	albumin (one type of protein)	L
alg/e or alg/o	pain	G
algesi/o	pain or suffering	G
-algesia	pain or suffering	G
-algesic	painful	G
algi-	pain or suffering	G
-algia	pain or suffering	G
align/o	to bring in line or the correct position	L
aliment/o	to nourish	L
all-	other or different	G
all/o	other or different	G
alopec/o	baldness	G
alveol/o	small sac	L
amb-	both sides or double	L
amb/i	both sides or double	L
ambly/o	dim or dull	G
ambul/o or ambulat/o	to walk	L
ametr/o	out of proportion	G
-amine	nitrogen compound	L
amni/o	fetal membrane	G
amph-	around, on both sides, or doubly	G

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
amput/o or amputat/o	to cut away or cut off	L	ax/o	axis or main stem	G
amyl/o	starch	G	axill/o	armpit	L
an-	no, not, without	G	azot/o	urea or nitrogen	G
an/o	anus or ring	L	<b>B</b>		
an/o	upward	G	bacill/o	rod	L
ana-	up, apart, backward, excessive	G	bacteri/o	bacteria	G
andr/o	male	G	bar/o	pressure or weight	G
angi-	vessel	G	bas/o	base (not acid)	G
angi/o	vessel	G	bi-	twice, double, or two	L
angin/o	strangling	L	bi/o	life	G
anis/o	unequal	G	bifid/o	split into two parts	L
ankyl/o	bent or stiff	G	bifurcat/o	divide into two branches	L
anomal/o	irregularity	G	bil/i	bile or gall	L
ante-	before or forward	L	bilirubin/o	bilirubin, or breakdown product of blood	L
anter/o	front	L	-bin	twice, double, or two	L
anti-	against	G	bio-	life	G
anxi/o or anxiet/o	uneasy or distressed	L	bis-	twice, double, or two	L
aort/o	aorta, or major artery in the body	L, G	-blast	embryonic	G
ap-	toward	G	blast/i	embryonic	G
aphth/o	small ulcer or eruption	L, G	blephar/o	eyelid	G
apic/o	apex or point	L	borborygm/o	rumbling sound	L
aplast/o	lack of or defective development	G	brachi/o	arm	L
apo-	opposed or detached	G	brachy-	short	G
aponeur/o	aponeurosis	G	brady-	abnormally slow	G
aqu/i, aqu/o, aque/o	water	L	brev/i or brev/o	short	L
-ar	pertaining to	L	bronch/i, bronch/o, or bronchi/o	bronchial tube	L
arachn/o	spider	G	brux/o	to grind	G
arc/o	bow or arch	L	bucc/o	cheek	L
-arche	beginning	G	bucca-	cheek	L
arrect/o	upright	L	bull-	blister	L
arteri/o	artery	L, G	burs/o	sac of fluid near a joint (bursa)	L, G
arthr/o	joint	G	<b>C</b>		
articul/o	joint	L	cac-	bad, diseased, or weak	G
-ary	pertaining to	L	cac/o	bad, diseased, or weak	G
as-	toward	L	cadaver/o	dead body	L
-ase	enzyme	G	calc/i or calc/o	calcium or the heel	L
asphyxi/o	absence of a pulse	G	calcane/o	heel bone (calcaneus)	L
aspir/o or aspirat/o	to breathe in	L	calcul/o	stone	L
asthen-	weakness	G	cali/o or calic/o	cup	L
-asthenia	weakness	G	callos/o or call/i	hard	L
asthmat/o	gasping	L, G	calor/i	heat	L
at-	toward	L	canalicul/o	little duct	L
atel/o	incomplete	G	canth/o	corner of the eye	G
ather/o	plaque or fatty substance	G	capill/o	hairlike	L
athet/o	uncontrolled	G	capit/o	head	L
-atonic	lack of tone or strength	L	capn/o	carbon dioxide	G
atop/o	out of place	G	-capnia	carbon dioxide	G
atres/i	without an opening	G	capsul/o	little box	L
atri/o	atrium or chamber	L	carb/o	carbon	L
attenuat/o	diluted or weakened	L	carcin/o	cancerous	G
aud-	hear or hearing	L	cardi/o	heart	G
audi/o, audit/o, aur/i, or aur/o	hear or hearing	L	cari/o	decay	L
auscult/o	to listen	L	carot/o	sleep or stupor	G
aut/o	self	G			

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
carp/o	carpus or joint of front limbs between the radius or ulna and metacarpals	L, G	circumscrib/o	confined or limited in space	L
cartilag/o	cartilage or gristle	L	cirr/h/o	tawny, orange-yellow	G
caruncul/o	bit of flesh	L	cis/o	cut	L
cat-, cata-, or cath-	down, lower, under, or downward	G	-clasis or -clast	break	G
catabol/o	breaking down	G	clav/i	key	L
cathart/o	cleansing or purging	G	clavicul/o	collarbone, clavicle	L
cathet/o	insert or send down	G	clitor/o	female erectile tissue	G
caud/o	toward the tail	L	clon/o	violent action	G
caus/o, caust/o, cauter/o, or caut/o	burning	L, G	-clysis	irrigation	G
cav/i or cav/o	hollow	L	co-	together, with	L
cavern/o	containing hollow spaces	L	coagul/o or coagulat/o	clump or congeal	L
cec/o	blind gut, or cecum	L	cocc/i or cocc/o	round	L
-cele	hernia, cyst, cavity, or tumor	L	-coccus	round bacterium	L
celi/o	abdomen	G	coccyg/o	tailbone	G
cement/o	cementum	L	cochle/o	snail-like or spiral	L
cent-	hundred	L	-coel	hollow	G
-centesis	surgical puncture to remove fluid or gas	G	coher/o or cohes/o	to stick together	L
cephal-	head	G	coit/o	coming together	L
cephal/o	head	G	col/o or colon/o	colon (part of large intestine)	L, G
-ceps	head	L	coll/a	glue	G
cera-	wax	L	coll/i	neck	L
cerebell/o	cerebellum	L	colp/o	vagina	G
cerebr/o	cerebrum, or largest part of brain	L	column/o	pillar	L
cerumin/o	cerumen, or earwax	L	com-	together	L
cervic/o	neck or necklike	L	comat/o	deep sleep	L, G
chalas/o	relaxation or loosening	G	comminut/o	to break into pieces	L
-chalasis	relaxation or loosening	G	communic/o	to share	L
chalaz/o	hailstone, small lump	G	compatibil/o	to sympathize with	L
cheil/o	lip	G	con-	together or with	L
chem/i, chem/o, or chemic/o	drug or chemical	G	concav/o	hollow	L
chol/e	bile or gall	G	concentr/o	to remove excess water or condense	L
cholangi/o	bile duct	G	concept/o	to receive or become pregnant	L
cholecyst/o	gallbladder	G	conch/o	shell	L, G
choledoch/o	common bile duct	G	concuss/o	shaken together violently	L
cholesterol/o	cholesterol	G	condyl/o	knuckle or knob	L, G
chondr/o or chondri/o	cartilage	G	confus/o	disorder or confusion	L
chord/o	cord or spinal cord	G	conjunctiv/o	pink mucous membrane of the eye or connected	L
chori/o	chorion, or membrane	G	consci/o	aware	L
choroid/o	choroid layer of the eye	G	consolid/o	to become solid	L
chrom/o or chromat/o	color	G	constipat/o	pressed together	L
chym/o	juice	G	constrict/o	to draw tightly together to narrow	L
cib/o	meal	L	contact/o	touched	L
-cidal	death	L	contagi/o	touching of something or infection	L
-cide	killing or destroying	L	contaminat/o	to pollute	L
cili/o	microscopic hairlike projections or eyelashes	L	contine/o or continent/o	to keep in or restrain	L
cine/o	movement	G	contra-	against or opposite	L
circi/o	ring or circle	L	contracept/o	prevention of fertilization of egg with sperm	L
circulat/o	to go around in a circle	L	contus/o	bruise	L
circum-	around	L	convalesc/o	to become strong	L
			convex/o	arched	L
			convolut/o	twisted or coiled	L

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
convuls/o	to pull together	L	dek- or deka-	ten	G
copi/o	plentiful	L	deliri/o	wandering in the mind	L
copulat/o	joining together	L	delta	triangle	L
cord/o	spinal cord	L, G	dem/o	population or people	G
cordi/o	heart	L	-dema	swelling (fluid)	G
cor/o or core/o	pupil	G	demi-	half	L
core-	pupil	G	dendr/o	resembling a tree or branching	G
cori/o	skin or leather	L	dent-	teeth	L
corne/o	transparent anterior portion of the sclera; cornea	L	dent/i or dent/o	teeth	L
coron/o	crown	L, G	depilat/o	hair removal	L
corp/u or corpor/o	body	L	depress/o	pressed or sunken down	L
corpuscul/o	little body	L	derm/o or dermat/o	skin	G
cort-	covering	L	derma-	skin	G
cortic/o	outer region or cortex	L	-desis	surgical fixation of a bone or joint or to bind	G
cost/o	rib	L	deteriorat/o	worsening	L
cox/o	hip or hip joint	L	deut-, deuto-, or deutron	second	G
crani/o	skull	L, G	dextr/o	right side	L
-crasia	mixture	L, G	di-	twice	G
crepit/o or crepitat/o	crackling	L	dia-	through, between, apart, or complete	G
crin/o	to secrete or separate	G	diaphor/o	sweat	G
-crine	to secrete or separate	G	diaphragmat/o	wall across or muscle separating the thoracic and abdominal cavities	G
cris/o or critic/o	turning point	L	diastol/o	expansion	G
-crit	separate	G	didym/o	testes or double	G
cruci-	cross	L	diffus/o	spread out	L
cry/o	cold	G	digest/o	divided or to distribute	L
crypt/o	hidden	G	digit/o	digit	L
cubit/o	elbow	L	dilat/o or dilatat/o	spread out	L
cuboid/o	cubelike	G	dilut/o	to dissolve or separate	L
cuspid/o	pointed or pointed flap	L	diphther/o	membrane	G
cut-	skin	L	dipl/o	double	G
cutane/o	skin	L	dipla-	double	G
cyan/o	blue	G	dips/o	thirst	G
cycl/o ciliary	body of the eye or cycle	G	-dipsia	thirst	G
cyst-, -cyst	bag or bladder	G	dis-	negative, apart, or absence of	L
cyst/o	urinary bladder	G	dis-	duplication or twice	G
cyt/o	cell	G	dislocat/o	displacement	L
-cyte or -cytic	cell	G	dissect/o	cutting apart	L
-cytosis	condition of cells	L	disseminat/o	widely scattered	L
<b>D</b>			dist/o	far	L
dacry-	tear or tear duct	G	distend/o or distent/o	to stretch apart	L
dacry/o	tear or tear duct	G	diur/o or diuretic/o	increasing urine output	G
dacryocyst/o	lacrimal sac	G	divert/i	turning aside	L
dactyl/o	digits	G	domin/o	controlling	L
dart/o	skinned	G	don/o	to give	L
de-	from, not, down, or lack of	L	dors/i or dors/o	back of body	L
dec/i	ten or tenth	L	drom/o	running	G
deca-	ten or tenth	L	-drome	to run together	G
decem-	ten	L	du/o	two	L
decidu/o	falling off or shedding	L	duct/o	to lead	L
decubit/o	lying down	L	-duct	opening	L
defec/o or defecat/o	free from waste	L	duoden/i or duoden/o	duodenum	L
defer/o	carrying down or out	L	dur/o	dura mater or tough, hard	L
degenerat/o	breakdown	L			
deglutit/o	swallow	L			
dehisc/o	to burst open	L			

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
dy- or dyo-	two	L	eruct/o or eructat/o	to belch	L
-dynia	pain	G	erupt/o	to burst forth	L
dys-	difficult, bad, or painful	G	erythem/o	flushed or redness	G
	<b>E</b>		or erythemat/o		
e-	out of or from	L	erythr/o	red	G
-eal	pertaining to	L	es-	out of, outside, or away from	L
ec-	out or outside	G	-esis	abnormal condition or state	G
ecchym/o	pouring out of juice	G	eso-	inward	G
ech/o	sound	G	esophag/o	tube that connects mouth to the stomach (esophagus)	G
eclamps/o	flashing or shining forth	G	esthesi/o	sensation or feeling	G
or eclampt/o			-esthesia	sensation or feeling	G
-ectasia or -ectasis	dilation or enlargement	G	esthet/o	feeling or sense of perception	G
ecto-	out or outside	G	estr/o	female	L
-ectomy	surgical removal or excision	G	ethm/o	sieve	G
eczemat/o	eruption	G	eti/o	to cause	G
edemat/o	swelling, fluid, or tumor	G	eu-	well, easy, or good	G
edentul/o	toothless	L	evacu/o or evacuat/o	to empty out	L
ef-	out	L	eviscer/o or eviscerat/o	disembowelment	L
effect/o	to bring about a response	L	ex-	out of, outside, or away from	L, G
effus/o	pouring out	L	exacerbat/o	to aggravate	L
ejectulat/o	to throw out	L	excis/o	cutting out	L
electr/o	electricity	G	excori/o or excoriat/o	to scratch	L
eliminat/o	to expel from the body	L	excret/o	separate or discharge	L
em-	in	G	excruciat/o	intense pain	L
emaciat/o	wasted away by disease or lean	L	exhal/o or exhalat/o	to breathe out	L
embol/o	something inserted	L, G	-exia or -exis	condition	G
	or thrown in		exo-	out of, outside, or away from	G
embry/o	fertilized egg	G	exocrin/o	to secrete out of	G
-emesis	vomiting	G	expector/o	to cough up	L
emet/o	vomit	G	expir/o or expirat/o	to breathe out or die	L
-emia	blood or blood condition	G	extroph/o	twisted out	G
emmetr/o	in proper measure	G	extern/o	outside or outer	L
emolli/o	to soften	L	extra-	outside or beyond	L
en-	in, into, or within	L, G	extrem/o or extremit/o	outermost or extremity	L
encephal/o	brain	G	extrins/o	contained outside	L
end/o	within, in, or inside	G	exud/o or exudat/o	to sweat out	L
endo-	within, in, or inside	G		<b>F</b>	
endocrin/o	to secrete within	G	faci-	face or form	L
enem/o	to inject	G	faci/o	face or form	L
ennea-	nine	G	-facient	producing	L
enter/o	small intestine	G	fasci/o	fibrous band (fascia)	L
ento-	within	G	fascicul/o	little bundle	L
enzym/o	leaven	G	fatal/o	death or fate	L
eosin/o	red or rosy	G	fauc/i	narrow pass	L
epi-	upon, above, on, or upper	G	febr/i	fever	L
epidemi/o	among the people	G	fec/i or fec/o	sediment	L
epididym/o	tube at the upper part of each testis (epididymus)	G	femor/o	thigh bone (femur)	L
epiglott/o	lid covering the larynx (epiglottis)	G	fenestr/o	window	L
episi/o	vulva	G	fer/o	to carry or bear	L
epithel/i	outer layer of skin or external surface covering	G	-ferent or -ferous	carrying	L
equin/o	horse or horselike	L	fertil/o	productive or fruitful	L
erect/o	upright	L	fet/i or fet/o	fetus	L
erg/o	work	G	fibr/o	fiber	L
			fibrill/o	muscular twitching	L
			fibrin/o	threads of a clot (fibrin)	L

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
fibros/o	fibrous connective tissue	L	globin/o	protein	L
fibul/o	small bone of distal hindlimb (fibula)	L	globul/o	little ball	L
-fic	producing or forming	L	-globulin	protein	L
fic/o	producing or forming	L	glomerul/o	grapelike cluster or clusters of capillaries in the nephron (glomerulus)	L
filtr/o or filtrat/o	to strain through	L	gloss/o	tongue	G
fimbri/o	fringe	L	glosso-	tongue	G
fiss/o or fissur/o	crack, split, or cleft	L	glott/i or glott/o	back of tongue	G
fistul/o	tube or pipe	L	gluc/o or glyc/o	sugar	G
flamme/o	flame-colored	L	glute/o	buttocks	G
flat/o	rectal gas	L	glyc/o	sweet	G
flex/o	bend	L	glycer/o	sweet	L
fluor/o	luminous	L	glycogen/o	animal starch (glycogen)	G
foc/o	point	L	gnath/o	jaw	G
foll/i	bag or sac	L	goitr/o	enlargement of the thyroid gland	L
follicul/o	small sac (follicle)	L	gon/e, gon/o, or goni/o	seed or angle	G
foramin/o	opening	L	gonad/o	sex glands	L, G
fore-	before or in front of	L	gracil/o	slender	L
-form	form, figure, or shape	L	grad/i	to move, go, or step	L
form/o	form, figure, or shape	L	-grade	to go	L
fornic/o	arch or vault	L	-gram	record or picture	G
foss/o	shallow depression	L	granul/o	granule(s)	L
fove/o	pit	L	-graph	instrument for recording; occasionally used to describe the record or picture	G
fract/o	break	L	-graphy	process of recording	G
fren/o	bridle or device that limits movement	L	grav/i	heavy or severe	L
frigid/o	cold	L	gravid/o	pregnancy	L
front/o	forehead or front	L	guttur/o	throat	L
-fuge	to drive away	L	gynec/o	woman	L
funct/o or function/o	to perform	L	gyr/o	turning or folding	G
fund/o	bottom, base, or ground	L	<b>H</b>		
fung/i	fungus	L	hal/o	breath	L, G
furc/o	branching or forking	L	halit/o	breath	L
furuncul/o	boil or infection	L	hallucin/o	to wander in the mind	L
-fusion	to pour	L	hect-, hector-, or hecato	hundred	G
<b>G</b>			hem-	blood	G
galact/o	milk	G	hem/e	deep red iron-containing pigment	G
gamet/o	sperm or egg	G	hem/o or hemat/o	blood	G
gangli/o or ganglion/o	ganglion	G	hemangi/o	blood vessel	G
gangren/o	gangrene	L, G	hemi-	half	G
gastr/o	stomach	G	hepa- or hepar-	liver	G
gastrocnemi/o	calf muscle of hindlimb	G	hepat/o	liver	G
gemin/o	twin or double	L	hept- or hepta-	seven	G
gen/o or genit/o	producing or birth	G	hered/o or heredit/o	inherited	L
-gene	production, origin, or formation	G	herni/o	protrusion of a part through tissues normally containing it	L
-genesis or -genic	producing	G	herpet/o	creeping	L, G
genit/o	related to birth or the reproductive organs	L	heter/o	different	G
genous	producing	G	hetero-	different	G
ger/i or geront/o	old age	G	hex- or hexa-	six	G
germin/o	bud or germ	L	hiat/o	opening	L
gest/o or gestat/o	to bear or carry offspring	L			
gigant/o	giant or very large	G			
gingiv/o	gum	L			
glauc/o	gray	G			
glen/o	socket or pit	G			
gli/o	glue	G			

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
hidr/o	sweat	G	infarct/o	filled in or stuffed	L
hil/o	notch or opening from a body part (hilus)	L	infect/o	tainted or infected	L
hirsut/o	hairy or rough	L	infer/o	below or beneath	L
hist/o or histi/o	tissue	G	infest/o	attack	L
holo-	all	G	inflammat/o	flame within or to set on fire	L
hom/o	same	G	infra-	beneath, below, or inferior to	L
home/o	unchanging	G	infundibul/o	funnel	L
hormon/o	to urge on or excite	G	ingest/o	to carry or pour in	L
humer/o	long bone of the proximal forelimb (humerus)	L	inguin/o	groin	L
hyal/o	glassy, clear	G	inhal/o or inhalat/o	to breathe in	L
hydr/o	water	G	inject/o	to force or throw in	L
hydra-	water	G	innominat/o	nameless	L
hygien/o	healthful	G	inocul/o	to introduce or implant	L
hymen/o	membrane (hymen)	G	insipid/o	tasteless	L
hyper-	over, above, increased, excessive, or beyond	G	inspir/o or inspirat/o	to breathe in	L
hypn/o	sleep	G	insul/o	island	L
hypo-	under, decreased, deficient, or below	G	intact/o	whole	L
hyster/o	uterus	G	inter-	between or among	L
<b>I</b>			intermitt/o	not continuous	L
-ia	state or condition	L, G	intern/o	within or inner	L
-iac	pertaining to	G	interstiti/o	space between things	L
-ial	pertaining to	L	intestin/o	intestine	L
-iasis	condition or abnormal condition	G	intim/o	innermost	L
iatr/o	relationship to treatment or doctor	G	intoxic/o	to put poison in	L, G
-ible	capable of being	L	intra-	within, into, inside	L
-ic	pertaining to	L, G	intrins/o	contained within	L
ichthy/o	dry or scaly	G	intro-	within, into, or inside	L
icter/o	jaundice	L, G	introit/o	entrance or passage	L
ictero-	jaundice	L, G	intussuscept/o	to receive within	L
idi/o	peculiar to an individual	G	involut/o	curled inward	L
idio-	peculiar to an individual	G	ion/o	charged particle	G
-iferous	bearing, carrying, or producing	L	ipsi-	same	L
-ific	producing	L	ir/i or ir/o	iris of eye or rainbow	G
-iform	resembling or shaped like	L	isch/o	to hold back	G
-igo	diseased condition	L	ischi/o	part of pelvis (ischium)	G
-ile	capable of being or pertaining to	L	-ism	condition	G
ile/o	ileum	L	iso-	equal	G
ili/o	part of the pelvis (ilium)	L	-itis	inflammation	G
illusi/o	deception	L	-ium	structure	G
immun/o	protected, safe, or immune	L	<b>J</b>		
impact/o	pushed against	L	jejun/o	jejunum	L
impress/o	pressing into	L	jugul/o	throat	L
impuls/o	pressure or urging on	L	juxta-	nearby	L
in-	in, into, not, without	L	<b>K</b>		
-in	substance, usually with specialized function	L	kal/i	potassium	L
incis/o	cutting into	L	kary/o	nucleus	G
incubat/o	hatching or incubation	L	karyo-	nucleus	G
indurat/o	hardened	L	kata- or kath-	down	G
			kel/o	growth or tumor	G
			kera-	horn or hardness	G
			kerat/o	hornlike, hard, or cornea	G
			ket/o or keton/o	breakdown product of fat (ketones)	German
			kinesi/o	movement	G
			-kinesis	motion	G
			-kinetics	pertaining to motion	G

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
koil/o	hollow or concave	G	-lysis	breakdown, destruction, or separation	L, G
kraur/o	dry	G	-lyst	agent that breaks down	L, G
kyph/o	bent or hump	G	lytic	to reduce or destroy	L, G
<b>L</b>			<b>M</b>		
labi/o	lip	L	macr/o	large or abnormal size	G
labyrinth/o	maze (used to describe the inner ear)	G	macro-	large or abnormal size	G
lacer/o or lacerat/o	torn	L	macul/o	spot	L
lacrim/o	tear or tear duct	L	magn/o	great or large	L
lact/i or lact/o	milk	L	major/o	larger	L
lactat/o	to secrete milk	L	mal-	bad, poor, or evil	L
lacun/o	pit	L	malac/o	abnormal softening	G
lamin/o	one part of the dorsal portion of the vertebra (lamina)	L	-malacia	abnormal softening	G
lapar/o	abdomen or flank	G	malign/o	bad or evil	L
laps/o	to slip or fall downward	L	malle/o	hammer	L
laryng/o	voice box	G	malleol/o	little hammer	L
lat/i or lat/o	broad	L	mamm/o or mast/o	breast	L
later/o	side	L	man/i	rage or hand	L
lax/o or laxat/o	to loosen or relax	L	man/o	hand	L
leiomy/o	smooth muscle	G	mandibul/o	lower jaw	L
lemm/o	peel	G	-mania	obsessive preoccupation	L, G
lent/i	lens of the eye	L	manipul/o	handful or use of hands	L
lenticul/o	shaped like a lens	L	manubri/o	handle	L
-lepsy	seizure	L, G	mastic/o	to chew	L, G
lept/o	thin	G	or mastricat/o		
letharg/o	drowsiness or indifference	L	mastoid/o	mastoid process of temporal bone	L, G
leuco-	white	G	matern/o	of a mother	L
leuk/o	white	G	matur/o	ripe	L
lev/o or levat/o	to lift up	L	maxill/o	upper jaw	L
libid/o or libidin/o	sexual drive	L	maxim/o	largest	L
ligament/o	fibrous tissue connecting bone to bone (ligament)	L	meat/o	opening or passageway	L
ligat/o	binding or tying off	L	med-	middle	L
lingu/o	tongue	L	medi/o	middle	L
lip/o	fat	G	mediastin/o	in the middle	L
-lite or -lith	stone or calculus	L, G	medic/o	medicine, healing, or doctor	L, G
lith/o	stone or calculus	L, G	medicat/o	medication or healing	L
-lithiasis	presence of stones	L, G	medull/o	inner section, soft, or middle	L
lob/i or lob/o	lobe or well-defined part of an organ	L, G	mega-	large	G
loc/o	place	L	megal/o	large	G
loch/i	confinement or birthing process	L, G	-megaly	large or enlargement	G
longev/o	long-lived	L	mei/o	less	L, G
lord/o	bent backward	G	melan/o	black	G
lumb/o	lower back, or loin	L	mellit/o	honey	L
lumin/o	light	L	membran/o	thin skin (membrane)	L
lun/o	moon	L	men/o	menstruation	G
lunul/o	crescent	L	mening/o	membrane lining the central nervous system	L, G
lup/i or lup/o	wolf	L	or meningi/o		
lute/o	yellow	L	menisc/o	crescent	L, G
lymph/o	lymphatic tissue	L	mens-	menstruation	L
lymphaden/o	lymph gland	L	mens/o	menstruation	L
lymphangi/o	lymph vessel	L	ment/o	mind	L
			mes-	middle	L, G
			mes/o	middle	G
			mesenter/o	mesentery or middle intestine	L, G
			mesi/o	middle, or median, plane	G

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
meta-	beyond, change, behind, after, or next	G	nat/i	birth	L
metabol/o	change	G	natr/o	sodium	L
metacarp/o	beyond the carpus	L	nause/o	sick feeling to stomach	L, G
metatars/o	beyond the tarsus	L	necr/o	death	G
-meter	measuring device	G	-necrosis	death of tissue	G
metr/i, metr/o, or metri/o	uterus	G	ne/o	new	G
mi/o	smaller or less	G	neo-	new	G
micr/o	small	G	nephr/o	kidney	G
micro-	small; one-millionth of the unit it precedes	G	nephra-	kidney	G
mictur/o or micturit/o	to urinate	L	nerv/o	nerve	L, G
midsagitt/o	dividing into equal left and right halves	L	neu-	nerves	G
milli-	one-thousandth	L	neur/i or neur/o	nerve	G
-mimetic	mimic or copy	L	neutr/o	neither or neutral	L
mineral/o	naturally occurring nonorganic solid substance (mineral)	L	nigr/o	black	L
minim/o	smallest	L	niter-	nitrogen	L, G
minor/o	smaller	L	nitro-	nitrogen	G
mio-	smaller or less	G	noct/i	night	L
mit/o	thread	G	nod/o	knot or swelling	L
mitr/o	miter having two points on top	L	nodul/o	little knot	L
mobil/o	capable of moving	L	nom/o	control	G
mon/o	single or one	G	non-	no	L
monil/i	string of beads	L	non-, nona-, or nonus-	nine	L
mono-	single or one	G	nor-	chemical term meaning normal or parent compound	Chemical term
morbid/o	disease	L	norm/o	usual	L
moribund/o	dying	L	not/o	back	G
morph/o	shape or form	G	novem-	nine	L
mort/i, mort/o, or mort/u	dead	L	nuch/o	nape	L
mortal/i	death	L	nucle/o	nucleus	L
mot/o or motil/o	movement	L	nulli-	none	L
muc/o or mucos/o	mucus	L, G	numer/o	count or number	L
multi-	many	L	nunci/o	messenger	L
muscul/o	muscle	L	nutri/o or nutrit/o	nourishment or food	L
mut/a	genetic change	L	nyct/o or nyctal/o	night	G
my/o	muscle	G	<b>O</b>		
myc/o or myc/e	fungus	G	o-	egg	G
mydri/o	wide	L, G	ob-	against	L
myel/o	spinal cord or bone marrow; “white substance”	G	obes/o	extremely fat	L
myocardi/o	heart muscle	L	obliqu/o	slanted or sideways	L
myom/o	muscle tumor	L	oblongat/o	oblong or elongated	L
myos/o	muscle	L, G	obstetr/o	one who receives	L
myring/o	tympanic membrane (eardrum)	L	or obstetr/i		
myx- or myxo-	mucus or slime	L, G	occipit/o	back of the skull	L
myx/o	mucus or slime	L, G	occlud/o or oclus/o	to close up	L
myxa-	mucus	L, G	occult/o	hidden	L
<b>N</b>			octa-, octo-, or oct-	eight	G
nar/i	nostril	L	ocul/o	eye	L
narc/o	numbness or stupor	L, G	oculo-	eye	L
nas/i or nas/o	nose	L	odont/o	tooth	G
			-oid	like or resembling	G
			olecran/o	proximal projection on the ulna	G
			olfact/o	smell	L
			oligo-	scanty	G

pachy-	thick	G
palat/o	roof of mouth	L
pall/o or pallid/o	pale	L
palliat/o	hidden	L
palm/o	caudal surface of the manus (front paw) including the carpus	L
palpat/o	to touch	L
palpebr/o	eyelid	L
palpit/o	throbbing	L
pan-	all, entire, or every	G
pancreat/o	pancreas	L
papill/o or papill/i	nipplelike	L

ed. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part.

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
-philia	attraction for or increase in numbers	L, G	poly-	many	G
phim/o	muzzling or constriction of an orifice	G	polyp/o	small growth	G
phleb/o	vein	G	pont/o	part of the brain (the pons)	L
phlegm/o	thick mucus	L, G	poplit/o	caudal surface of the patella	L
phob/o	fear	G	por/o	small opening (pore)	L, G
phon/o	sound or voice	G	-porosis	passage or porous condition	G
-phonia	sound or voice	G	port/i	gate or door	L
phor/o	carry or movement	G	post-	after or behind	L
-phoresis	carrying or transmission	G	poster/o	toward the tail	L
-phoria	to bear, feeling, or mental state	G	potent/o	powerful	L
phot/o	light	G	practic/o or pract/i	practice	G
phren/o	diaphragm	G	prandi/o	meal	L
-phylactic	protective or preventive	G	-prandial	meal	L
-phylaxis	protection or prevention	G	-praxia	action	G
physi/o or physic/o	nature	L	pre-	before or in front of	L
-physis	to grow	G	pregn/o	pregnant or with offspring	L
-phyte	plant	G	prematur/o	too early	L
pigment/o	color	L	preputi/o	foreskin or prepuce	L
pil/o or pil/i	hair	L	press/o	to press or draw	L
pineal/o	pineal gland	L	priap/o	penis	L, G
pinn/i	external ear, or auricle	L	primi-	first	G
pituit/o	pituitary gland	L	pro-	before or on behalf of	L, G
plac/o	flat patch	G	process/o	going forth	L
placent/o	round, flat cake or placenta	L	procreat/o	to reproduce	L
-plakia	thin, flat layer or scale	G	proct/o	anus and rectum	G
plan/o	flat	L	prodrom/o	precursor	L, G
plant/o or plant/i	caudal surface of the pes (rear paw) including the tarsus	L	product/o	to lead forward or yield	L
plas/o or plas/i	growth, development, formation, or mold	L	prolaps/o	to fall downward or slide forward	L
-plasia	formation, development, or growth	G	prolifer/o	to reproduce	L
-plasm	formative material of cells	G	pron/o or prout/o	bent forward	L
plasm/o	something formed	G	prostat/o	prostate gland	G
-plast	primitive living cell	G	prosth/o or prosthet/o	addition or appendage	G
plast/o	growth, development, or mold	G	prot- or proto-	first	G
-plasty	surgical repair	G	prot/o or prote/o	first, original, or protein	G
-plegia or -plegic	paralysis	G	proxim/o	near	L
pleur/o	membrane lining the lungs (pleura)	G	prurit/o	itch	L
plex/o	network	L	pseud/o	false	G
plic/o	fold or ridge	L	psor/o or psor/i	itch	G
-pnea	breathing	G	psych/o	mind	G
-pneic	pertaining to breathing	G	ptomat/o	a fall	G
pneu-	relating to air or lungs	G	-ptosis	drooping or sagging	G
pneum/o	lung or air	G	-ptyalo	spit or saliva	G
or pneumon/o			-ptysis	spitting	G
pod/o	foot	G	pub/o	part of the hip bone (pubis)	L
-poiesis	formation	G	pubert/o	adult	L
poikil/o	irregular	G	pudend/o	pudendum	L
poli/o	gray matter of the brain and spinal cord	G	puerper/i	labor	L
polio-	gray matter of the brain and spinal cord	G	pulm/o or pulmon/o	lung	L
			pulpos/o	fleshy or pulpy	L
			puls/o	beating	L
			punct/o	sting, puncture, or little hole	L
			pupill/o	pupil of the eye	L
			pur/o	pus	L
			purpur/o	purple	L
			pustul/o	blister	L
			py/o	pus	G

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
pyel/o	renal pelvis	G	-rrhage or -rrhagia	bursting forth	G
pylor/o	gatekeeper or pylorus	G	-rrhaphy	suture	G
pyr/o or pyret/o	fever or fire	G	-rrhea	flow or discharge	G
pyramid/o	pyramid-shaped	G	-rrhexis	rupture	G
<b>Q</b>			rug/o	wrinkle or fold	L
quadr/i or quadr/o	four	L	<b>S</b>		
quart-	fourth	L	sacc/o or sacc/i	sac	L
quincu-	five	L	sacr/o	sacrum	L
quint-	fifth	L	sagitta	arrow	L
<b>R</b>			saliv/o	spit	L
rabi/o	rage or madness	L	salping/o	tube (uterine or auditory)	G
rachi/o	spinal column or vertebrae	G	-salpinx	uterine tube, oviduct, or fallopian tube	G
radi/o	radiation or the radius (bone in distal forelimb)	L	sanguin/o or sangu/i	blood	L
radiat/o	giving off radiant energy	L	sanit/o	soundness or health	L
radicul/o	root or nerve root	L	saphen/o	clear or apparent	L
ram/o	branch	L	sapr/o	dead or decaying	G
raph/o	seam or suture	G	sarc/o or sarcomat/o	flesh (connective tissue) or malignancy of connective tissue	G
-raphy	suturing	G	sarco-	flesh	G
re-	back or again	L	-sarcoma	malignant tumor	G
recept/o or recipi/o	receive	L	scalp/o	to carve or scrape	L
rect/o	rectum or straight	L	scapul/o	shoulder blade	L
recuperat/o	to recover	L	-schisis	cleft or divided	G
reduct/o	to bring back together	L	schiz/o	cleft or divided	G
refract/o	to bend back or turn aside	L	scirrh/o	hard	G
regurgit/o	to flood or gush back	L	scler/o	white of the eye (sclera) or hard	G
remiss/o	to let go or give up	L	-sclerosis	abnormal dryness or hardness	G
ren/o	kidney	L	scoli/o	curved or crooked	G
restor/o	to rebuild	L	-scope	instrument for visual examination	G
resuscit/o	to revive	L	-scopic	pertaining to visual examination	G
retent/o	to hold back	L	-scopy	process of visually examining	G
reticul/o	network	L	scot/o	darkness	G
retin/o	nervous tissue of the eye (retina) or net	L	scrot/o	bag or pouch	L
retract/o	to draw back	L	seb/o	wax or sebum	L
retro-	behind or backward	L	sect/o	cutting	L
rhabd/o	rod	G	secti/o	to cut	L
rhabdomy/o	striated muscle	G	secundi-	second	L
-rhage or -rhagia	bursting forth	G	segment/o	in pieces	L
-rhaphy	suture	G	sell/o	saddle	L
-rhea	flow or discharge	G	semi-	half	L
rheum/o	watery flow	L, G	semin/i	sperm, semen, or seed	L
or rheumat/o			sen/i	old	L
-rhexis	rupture	G	sens/i	feeling or sensation	L
rhin/o	nose	G	sensitiv/o	affected by or sensitive to	L
rhiz/o	root	G	seps/o	infection	G
rhonc/o	to snore	L, G	sept- or septi-	seven	L
rhythm/o	rhythm	L, G	sept/o	infection or partition	L
rhytid/o	wrinkle	G	ser/o	clear, fluid portion of blood (serum)	L
rigid/o	stiff	L	seros/o	serous	L
roentgen/o	X-ray	Named for Wilhelm Conrad Röntgen	sesqui-	one and one-half	L
rostri	beak	L	sex-	six	L
rotat/o	to revolve	L	sial/o	saliva or salivary glands	G

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
sialaden/o	salivary glands	G	sthen/o	strength	G
sider/o	iron	G	-sthenia	strength	G
sigmoid/o	sigmoid colon	L, G	stigmat/o	point or spot	L, G
sin/o or sin/u	hollow, sinus, or tubelike passage	L	stimul/o	good or incite	L
sinistr/o	left	L	stomat/o	mouth	G
sit/u	place	L	-stomosis	making a new opening	G
skelet/o	bony framework of the body (skeleton)	G	-stomy	new opening	G
soci/o	companion	L	strab/i	to squint	G
solut/o	dissolved	L	strat/i	layer	G
solv/o	dissolved	L	strept/o	twisted chain	G
soma-	body	G	striat/o	stripe or groove	L
somat/o	body	G	stric-	narrowing	L
somn/o or somn/i	sleep	L	strict/o	to draw tightly together or tie	L
-somnia	sleep	L	strid/o	harsh sound	L
son/o	sound	L	stup/e	stunned	L
sopor/o	sleep	L	styl/o	pointed instrument or pen	L
-spasm	sudden involuntary contraction or tightening	L, G	sub-	under, less, or below	L
spasm/o	sudden involuntary	L, G	subluxat/o	partial dislocation	L
or spasmod/o	contraction or tightening		sucr/o	sugar	L
spec/i	to look at or a sort	L	sudor/i	sweat	L
specul/o	mirror	L	suffoc/o or suffocat/o	to choke	L
sperm/o	sperm cell or seed	G	sulc/o	furrow or groove	L
or spermat/o			super-	above, excessive, or higher than	L
sphen/o	wedge	G	super/o	above, excessive, or higher than	L
spher/o	round, sphere, or ball	G	superflu/o	overflowing or excessive	L
sphincter/o	tight band	L, G	supin/o	lying on the back	L
sphygm/o	pulse	G	supinat/o	bent backward or to place on the back	L
spin/o	backbone	L	suppress/o	to press down	L
spir/o	breathing	L	suppur/o	to form pus	L
spirill/o	little coil	L	or suppurat/o		
spirochet/o	coiled microorganism	L, G	supra-	above or excessive	L
splen/o	spleen	G	supraren/o	above or on the kidney	L
spondyl/o	vertebra	G	sutur/o	to stitch	L
spontane/o	unexplained, voluntary	L	sym-	with or together	G
spor/o	seed	G	symptomat/o	falling together or symptom	G
sput/o	spit	L	syn-	union or association	G
squam/o	scale	L	synaps/o or synapt/o	point of contact	G
-stalsis	contraction	G	syncop/o	to cut short or cut off	G
staped/o or stapedi/o	one of the middle ear bones (stapes or stirrup)	L	-syndesis	surgical fixation of the vertebrae	G
staphyl/o	cluster or bunch of grapes	G	syndesmo/o	ligament	G
stas/i or stat/i	controlling or stopping	G	syndrom/o	running together	G
-stasis	controlling or stopping	G	synovi/o	synovial membrane or synovial fluid	L, G
-static	controlling or stopping	L, G	syring/o	tube	G
steat/o	fat	G	system/o	entire body	G
sten/o	narrowing or contracted	G	or systemat/o		
-stenosis	narrowing, or stricture, of a duct or canal	G	systol/o	contraction	G
ster/o	solid structure	G		<b>T</b>	
stere/o	solid or three-dimensional	G	tachy-	abnormally fast	G
steril/i	barren	L	tact/i	touch	L
stern/o	breastbone	G	tars/o	tarsus, or edge of the eyelid	G
stert/o	to snore	L	tax/o	order or coordination	G
steth/o	chest	G	techn/o or techni/o	skill	G
			tectori/o	covering	L
			tele/o	distant or far	G

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
tempor/o	temple	L	tri-	three	G
ten/o or tend/o	tendon, strain, or to extend	G	trich/o	hair	G
tenac/i	sticky	L	trigon/o	triangle	L, G
tendin/o	tendon	L	-tripsy	crushing stone	G
tens/o	to stretch out, strain, or extend	L	trit- or trito-	third	G
terat/o	malformed fetus	G	-trite	instrument for cutting	L
termin/o	end	L	trochle/o	pulley	G
tert-	third	L	trop/o	to turn or change	G
test/o or test/i	testis or testicle	L	troph/o	nourishment, development, or growth	G
tetan/o	rigid	G	-trophy	nourishment, development, or growth	G
tetra-	four	G	-tropia	to turn	G
thalam/o	inner room or thalamus	G	-tropic or -tropin	having an affinity for or turning toward	G
thanas/o or thanat/o	death	G	tub/o or tub/i	tube or pipe	L
the/o	to put or place	G	tubercul/o	little knot or swelling	L
thec/o	sheath	L, G	tunic/o	covering or sheath	L
thel/o	nipple	G	turbinat/o	coiled or spiral-shaped	L
therap/o	treatment	G	tuss/i	cough	L
or therapist/o			tympan/o	tympanic membrane, or eardrum	G
therm/o	heat	G		<b>U</b>	
thio-	sulfur	G	ulcer/o	sore or ulcer	L
thorac/o	chest	L, G	uln/o	one of the bones in the distal forelimb (ulna)	L
-thorax	pleural cavity or chest	G	ultra-	beyond or excess	L
thromb/o	clot	G	umbilic/o	naval	L
thym/o	thymus gland	G	un-	not	L, G
thyr/o or thyroid/o	shield or thyroid gland	G	ungu/o	nail or hoof	L
tibi/o	tibia	L	uni-	one	L
-tic	pertaining to	L, G	ur/o	urine or urinary tract	G
tine/o	gnawing worm or ringworm	L	-uresis	urination	G
tinnit/o	ringing	L	ureter/o	ureter	G
toc/o	birth	G	urethr/o	urethra	G
-tocia or -tocin	labor or birth	G	-uria	urination or urine	G
tom/o	to cut or section	G	urin/o	urine or urinary organs	L, G
-tome	instrument to cut	G	urtic/o	nettle, rash, or hives	L
-tomy	cutting or incision	G	-us	thing	L, G
ton/o	tension or stretching	G	uter/o or uter/i	uterus or womb	L
tone/o	to stretch	L, G	uve/o	vascular layer of the eye, iris, choroid, or ciliary body	L
tonsill/o	tonsil or throat	L	uvul/o	little grape or uvula	L
top/o	place or location	G		<b>V</b>	
tors/o	to twist or rotate	L	vaccin/o or vaccin/i	vaccine	L
tort/i	twisted	L	vacu/o	empty	L
tox/o or toxic/o	poison	L	vag/o	wandering	L
trabecul/o	beams or little beam marked with crossbars	L	vagin/o	sheath or vagina	L
trache/o or trache/i	windpipe	G	valg/o	bent or twisted outward	L
trachel-	neck	G	valv/o or valvul/o	valve	L
tract/o	to draw, to pull, path, or bundle of nerve fibers	L	var/o	bent or twisted inward	L
tranquil/o	quiet	L	varic/o	swollen or dilated vein	L
trans-	across or through	L	vas/o	vessel, duct, or vas deferens	L
transfus/o	to transfer or pour across	L	vascul/o	little vessel	L
transit/o	changing	L	vaso-	vessel	L
transvers/o	across or crosswise	L	vast/o	great or extensive	L
traumat/o	injury	G			
trem/o	shaking	L			
tremul/o	fine tremor or shaking	L			
treponem/o	coiled or turning microbe	G			
-tresia	opening	G			

Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)	Word Part	Meaning	Word Origin (L = Latin, G = Greek)
vect/o	to carry or convey	L	viril/o	masculine	L
ven/o	vein	L	vis/o	seeing or sight	L
vener/o	sexual intercourse	L	visc/o or viscos/o	sticky	L
venter-	abdomen	L	viscer/o	internal organ	L
ventilat/o	to expose to air	L	vit/a or vit/o	life	L
ventr/o	belly side	L	viti/o	blemish or defect	L
ventricul/o	small chamber or ventricle of the brain or heart	L	vitre/o	glassy	L
venul/o	small vein	L	viv/i	alive	L
verg/o	to twist or incline	L	voc/i	voice	L
verm/i	worm	L	vol/o	caudal surface of forelimbs (palm) or hindlimbs (sole)	L
verruc/o	wart	L	volv/o	to turn or roll	L
vers/o or vert/o	turn	L	vulgar/i	common	L
-version	to turn	L	vulv/o	covering or vulva	L
vertebr/o	backbone	L	<b>X</b>		
vertig/o or vertigin/o	turning around or revolution	L	xanth/o	yellow	G
vesic/o	urinary bladder	L	xen/o	strange or foreign	G
vesicul/o	seminal vesicle, blister, or little bladder	L	xer/o	dry	G
vestibul/o	entrance	L	xiph/o or xiph/i	sword	G
vi/o	force	L	<b>Z</b>		
vill/i	tuft of hair or threadlike projections from a membrane	L	zoo-	life, animal	G
vir/o	poison or virus	L	zygomat/o	yoke or cheekbone	G
			zygot/o	joined or yoked together	G



# INDEX

Note: Page numbers referencing figures are italicized and followed by an “f”. Page numbers referencing tables are italicized and followed by a “t”.

% (percent), 355

## A

A- prefix, *2t*  
 Ab- prefix, *2t*  
 Abdomen, 20, 112  
 Abdominal cavity, 20  
 Abdomin/o combining form, 112  
 Abdominocentesis, 129  
 Abducent nerve (CN VI), *273f*, *273t*  
 Abduction, *2t*, 22, *23f*  
 Abductor muscles, 63  
 Ablation, 303  
 Abomasopexies, 129  
 Abomasum, 114, *116f*, 395  
 Abortion, 253  
 Abrasion, 211  
 Abscess, 211  
 Absorption, 120  
 -Ac suffix, 4  
 Acanthokeratoderma, 213  
 Acariasis, 215  
 Accent marks, 5  
 Accessory nerve (CN XI), *273f*, *273t*  
 Accessory sex glands, 244  
 Acclimatization, *438t*  
 Accommodation, 293  
 Acetabulum, 52  
 Achalasia, 123  
 Acid, 337  
 Acidosis, 231  
 Acne, 211  
 Acous/o combining form, *29t*, 298  
 Acoustic, 298  
 Acoustic nerve (CN VIII), *273f*, *273t*  
 Acoust/o combining form, *29t*, 298  
 Acromegaly, 231  
 Acronyms, defined, 334  
 Acrosome, 243  
 ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone), *227*  
 ACTH stimulation tests, 230  
 Acuity, 293  
 Acute, *337t*  
 Acute bronchitis, 195  
 Acute moist dermatitis, 211  
 Acute renal failure (ARF), 150  
 Ad- prefix, *2t*, 229  
 Addison's disease, 231

Additives, 401  
 Adduction, *2t*, 22, *23f*  
 Adductor muscles, 63  
 Aden/o combining form, 226, 323  
 Adenocarcinoma, 324  
 Adenohypophysis, 226  
 ADH (antidiuretic hormone), 145, 228  
 Adhesion, 66  
 Adip/o combining form, 205  
 Adipose tissue, *25*, *26f*  
 Adjectives, defined, 5  
 Adnexa, 290  
 Adontia, 123  
 Adrenal capsule, *228f*  
 Adrenal cortex, *226f*, 228  
 Adrenal glands, *226f*, 228–229  
 Adrenal medulla, *226f*, 228  
 Adrenalectomy, 232  
 Adrenaline, 229  
 Adren/o combining form, *30t*  
 Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), *227*  
 Adrenopathy, 231  
 Adulticide, 174  
 Adventitious sounds, 192  
 Aerophagia, 123  
 Afebrile, 331  
 Afferent tracts, 266  
 African gray parrots, *429f*  
 Afterbirth, 249–251  
 Afterload, 166  
 Agalactic mares, 99  
 Agglutination, *314f*, *315t*, *334t*  
 Agon, 63  
 Agonal breathing, 192  
 Agonists, 352  
 Agouti, *438t*  
 Agranulocytes, 313  
 Aids, 384  
 Air conduction, 300  
 Air sacs, 422  
 Airborne transmission, 339  
 -Al suffix, 4  
 Albinism, 204  
 Albino, *438t*  
 Albumin, 313  
 Albuminuria, *147t*  
 Aldosterone, 145, 229  
 Aldosteronism, 231  
 Alert, 276

-Algia suffix, 5  
 Alimentary, 4  
 Alkaline, 337  
 Allantois, 250  
 Allergens, 213, 323  
 Allergic dermatitis, 211  
 Allergies, 211, 323  
 Allografts, 356  
 Alopecia, 211, *212f*  
 Alpacas, 100, *404f*  
 Alveolar bone, 109  
 Alveol/o combining form, 190  
 Alveolus/alveoli, 109, 190, 247, 398  
 Ambient, *438t*  
 Amble, 380  
 Ambly/o combining form, 295  
 Amblyopia, 295  
 Ambulation, 61  
 Amelanotic melanomas, 215  
 Amnesia, 276  
 Amniocentesis, 253  
 Amnion, 250  
 Amniotic sac, 250  
 Amphiarthroses, 43, *45f*  
 Amphibians, 453  
 Amplitude, 343  
 Ampulla, 244, 300  
 Amputation, 60  
 Amylase, 120  
 An- prefix, *2t*  
 -An suffix, 4  
 Ana- prefix, 229  
 Anabolic steroids, 229  
 Anabolism, 120  
 Anal glands, 368  
 Anal sacculitis, 123  
 Anal sacs, 119, 368  
 Analgesia, 280  
 Analgesics, 354  
 Analogous, *438t*  
 Anaphylaxis, 323  
 Anaplasia, 27  
 Anastomosis, 129  
 Anatomical order, 5  
 Anatomical position, 341  
 Anatomical terminology  
     for cats, 82–84  
     for cattle, 76–78  
     for dogs, 82–84  
     for equine species, 74–76

Anatomical terminology (*continued*)

- for goats, 78–80
- overview, 73
- for sheep, 80–81
- for swine, 81–82
- Anatomy, 19
  - of birds, 422–426
  - of cats, 368–369
  - of dogs, 368–369
  - of horses, 381–382
  - of rabbit, 449*f*
  - rabbit, 449*f*
- Andr/o combining form, 229
- Androgens, 229
- Anechoic, 343
- Anemia, 5, 316
- Anemic, 5
- Anesthesia, 280
- Anesthetics, 280, 354
- Anestrus, 249
- Aneurysms, 172
- Angi/o combining form, 168
- Angiocardiograms, 171
- Angiocardiography, 171
- Angiograms, 171, 172*f*
- Angiography, 171
- Angiopathy, 172
- Angioplasty, 177
- Angiorrhaphy, 177
- Angora cats, 369
- Anhidrosis, 206
- Anis/o combining form, 295
- Anisocoria, 295
- Anisocytosis, 315*t*
- Ankle, 382, 383*f*
- Ankylosis, 56
- Annulus fibrosis, 272
- An/o combining form, 119
- Anogenital distance, 438*t*
- Anomaly, 25, 177
- Anophthalmos, 295
- Anoplasty, 129
- Anorectal, 119
- Anorexia, 123
- Anoxia, 194
- ANS (autonomic nervous system), 275
- Anserine, 98–99
- Antagonistic muscles, 63
- Antagonists, 352
- Antebrachium, 50
- Antepartum, 252
- Anterior, 18*t*, 20
- Anterior chamber, 292
- Anterior pituitary gland, 226–228
- Anterior segment, 292
- Anthelmintics, 354
- Anti- prefix, 2*t*, 63, 228, 322
- Antibiotics, 354
- Antibodies, 322
- Antibody-mediated (humoral) immunity, 321
- Anticoagulants, 177, 312, 354
- Anticonvulsants, 354
- Antidiarrheals, 129, 354
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 145, 228
- Antidiuretics, 145
- Antiemetics, 2*t*, 129, 354
- Antigens, 322
- Antihypertensives, 170
- Antineoplastic agents, 354
- Antipruritic agents, 354
- Antipyretics, 354
- Antiseptics, 354
- Antiserum, 352
- Antitoxins, 352
- Antitussives, 196, 354
- Antivivisectionist, 438*t*
- Antlers, 209
- Antrum, 112
- Anuria, 2*t*, 147*t*
- Anus, 117
- Aorta, 168–169
- Aortic insufficiency, 172
- Aortic semilunar valve, 165
- Aort/o combining form, 168
- Apertures, 54
- Apex, 162
- Aphakia, 295
- Aphonation, 195
- Apical foramen, 109
- Aplasia, 27
- Apnea, 192
- Apocrine glands, 206
- Aponeuroses, 62–63
- Appendicular skeleton, 45, 47–54
- Appositional, 355
- Apron, 382
- Aptorium, 423
- Aque/o combining form, 293
- Aqueous chamber, 292
- Aqueous humor, 292
- Ar suffix, 4
- Arachn/o combining form, 268
- Arachnoid membrane, 268, 269*f*
- Arcade, 20
- Arch, 47
- ARF (acute renal failure), 150
- Arrector pili, 207
- Arrhythmias, 166, 173*f*
- Arter/i combining form, 169
- Arterectomy, 177
- Arteries, 162, 168–170
- Arteri/o combining form, 29*t*, 168
- Arterioles, 169
- Arteriosclerosis, 5
- Arteriotomy, 177
- Arthralgia, 5, 56
- Arthritis, 56
- Arthr/o combining form, 29*t*
- Arthrocentesis, 54
- Arthrodesis, 60
- Arthrodial joints, 43
- Arthrodynia, 5, 56
- Arthrography, 54
- Arthropathy, 56
- Arthroscopes, 3
- Arthroscopy, 56
- Articular cartilage, 43
- Articular processes, 47
- Articulations, 43
- Artificial insemination, 395
- Artificially acquired active immunity, 322
- Artificially acquired passive immunity, 322
- Ary suffix, 4
- Ascariasis, 123, 124*f*
- Ascending part of colon, 119
- Ascending tracts, 266
- Ascites, 124, 174
- Ase suffix, 120
- Asepsis, 354
- Aseptic technique, 355
- As-fed basis, 384
- Asphyxiation, 194
- Aspiration, 195
- Assays, 230, 334*t*
- Asses, 99
- Assessment, 331
- Assimilation, 121
- Assisted delivery, 255
- Associative neurons, 266
- Asthma, 195
- Astr/o combining form, 266
- Astrocytes, 266
- Astrocytoma, 276
- Asymptomatic, 339
- Asystole, 166
- Ataxia, 66, 276, 277*f*
- Atelectasis, 195
- Ather/o combining form, 172
- Atherosclerosis, 172
- Atlas, 47
- Atonic, 66
- Atopy, 210*f*, 211
- Atraumatic, 2*t*, 339
- Atresia, 124
- Atria, 162
- Atrial systole, 165
- Atri/o combining form, 162
- Atrioventricular (AV) node, 165
- Atrioventricular valves, 163–165
- Atrophy, 27
- Attenuation, 343
- Aud/i combining form, 29*t*, 298
- Audit/o combining form, 29*t*, 298
- Auditory, 298
- Auditory ossicles, 298
- Auditory tube, 298
- Aura, 280
- Aural hematoma, 301, 302*f*
- Aur/i combining form, 29*t*, 298
- Auricles, 83, 298
- Aur/o combining form, 29*t*, 298
- Auscultation, 167–168, 192, 332
- Autoclave, 357, 358*f*
- Autografts, 356

Autoimmune disease, 323  
 Autonomic nervous system (ANS), 275  
 Autosomes, 438*t*  
 AV (atrioventricular) node, 165  
 Avulsion, 355  
 Avulsion fracture, 58  
 Axial skeleton, 45–47  
 Axis, 47  
 Ax/o combining form, 266  
 Axons, 266  
 Azoospermia, 253  
 Azotemia, 148  
 Azygous muscles, 64  
 Azygous vein, 170

## B

B lymphocytes, 320–321  
 Bacillus/bacilli, 338*t*  
 Back, 380  
 Backbone, 47  
 Backfat, 412  
 Bacon, 412  
 Bacteremia, 317  
 Bacteria, 338*t*  
 Bactericidal, 354  
 Bacterin, 352  
 Bacteriostatic, 354  
 Bacteriuria, 147*t*  
 Bad mouth, 381  
 Bag of waters, 250  
 Bag up, 381  
 Bald face, 382, 383*f*  
 Ball-and-socket joints, 43  
 Balling gun, 396  
 Ballottement, 121  
 Band cells, 316  
 Bandages, 357, 358*f*, 361*f*  
 Banding, 382  
 Bands  
   birds, 99  
   sheep, 401  
 BAR acronym, 276  
 Barbering, 438*t*  
 Barbs, 423  
 Barbules, 423  
 Barium enema, 341  
 Barium series, 121, 122*f*  
 Barium sulfate, 341  
 Barium swallow, 341  
 Barrels, 74  
 Barren, 396  
 Barrier sustained, 438*t*  
 Barrows, 99  
 Bars, 74, 208, 381  
 Bartholin's glands, 247  
 Basic, 337  
 Basic physical examination, 331–333  
 Basopenia, 316  
 Basophilia, 316  
 Basophilic, 316  
 Basophils, 312*f*, 314*f*, 315*t*

Beak trimming, 427, 428  
 Beaks, 423  
 Beat, 380  
 Bedding, 384  
 Bedsores, 217  
 Bellwethers, 100  
 Belly band, 357  
 Benign, 323  
 Benign prostatic hypertrophy, 253  
 Benign tumors, 27  
 Berserk Male Syndrome (BMS), 404  
 Biceps, 64  
 Bicornuate uterus, 27  
 Bicuspid, 107, 165  
 Bifid/o combining form, 280  
 Bilateral, 27  
 Bile, 120  
 Biliary, 120  
 Bilirubin, 120  
 Bilirubin tests, 148*t*  
 Binocular, 290  
 Bi/o combining form, 210  
 Biohazards, 438*t*  
 Biopsies, 121, 210–211, 360–361  
 Birds  
   common terminology, 98–99  
   external anatomy terminology, 424–425  
   gastrointestinal system, 425  
   groups of, 99  
   integumentary system, 423–424  
   musculoskeletal system, 425  
   pet bird terminology, 428–429  
   poultry terminology, 426–427  
   ratite terminology, 430  
   respiratory system, 422  
   urogenital system, 425–426  
 Birth, 252–253  
 Birth date, 384  
 Bishoping, 381  
 Bit, 384  
 Bitches, 98  
 Black rat (*Rattus rattus*), 442  
 Bladder, 144–145  
 Blastoma, 324  
 -Blasts suffix, 43  
 Blaze, 383*f*, 384  
 Blebs, 217  
 Blemishes, 384  
 Blepharectomy, 297  
 Blepharitis, 295  
 Blephar/o combining form, 290  
 Blepharoplasty, 297  
 Blepharoptosis, 295  
 Blepharorrhaphy, 297  
 Blepharospasm, 295  
 Blepharotomy, 297  
 Blind spot, 292  
 Blindness, 295  
 Blistering, 384  
 Blisters, 217  
 Bloat, 124

Blood  
   flow of, 164*t*  
   formed elements, 313–316  
   functions of, 312  
   liquid portion of, 313  
   supply, 162  
 Blood pressure, 170–171, 332  
 Blood smear, 316  
 Blood tests, 122, 148*t*  
 Blood vessels, 168–171  
 Bloodborne transmission, 339  
 Bloom, 384  
 Blue macaw, 424*f*  
 Blunt, 361  
 BMS (Berserk Male Syndrome), 404  
 Boar taint, 412  
 Board, 384  
 Boars, 98–99  
 Body, 47, 112  
 Body capacity, 396  
 Bog spavin, 388, 389*f*  
 Boils, 213  
 Bol/o combining form, 229  
 Bolt, 384  
 Bolus, 129  
 Bone conduction, 300  
 Bone marrow biopsy, 316  
 Bone plates, 357, 358*f*  
 Bone screws, 357, 358*f*  
 Bone spavin, 388, 389*f*  
 Bones. *See also* Skeletal system  
   overview, 42–43  
   structures, 54  
 Bony labyrinth, 298  
 Borborygmus, 124  
*Bordetella*, 414  
 Bots, 385  
 Bovine placenta, 251*f*  
 Bovine respiratory syncytial virus, 404  
 Bovine viral diarrhea, 404  
 Bovines. *See* Cattle  
 Bowed tendons, 388, 389*f*  
 Bowline knot, 385  
 Bowman's capsule, 143*t*  
 Box stall, 385  
 Boxlock, 357, 359*f*  
 Brachial plexus, 274  
 Brachium, 50  
 Brachycephalic dogs, 46  
 Brachydont animals, 111  
 Brachygnathia, 106  
 Bradycardia, 166  
 Bradypnea, 192  
 Brain, overview, 269–271  
 Brainstem, 269*f*, 270  
 Branding, 396  
 Breast, in birds, 424  
 Breathing, 192  
 Bred, 396  
 Breech presentation, 252  
 Breeching, 384  
 Breed, 396

- Breeding animals, 430
  - Breed-related terminology, for dogs
    - and cats, 369–370
  - Bridle, 384
  - Brille, 452–453
  - Briskets
    - in cattle, 76
    - in goats, 78
    - in sheep, 80
  - Bristles, 424
  - Broilers, 426
  - Bronchial tree, 190
  - Bronchiectasis, 195
  - Bronchioles, 190
  - Bronchiol/o combining form, 190
  - Bronchiolus, 190
  - Bronchitis, 195
  - Bronch/o combining form, 190
  - Bronchoalveolar lavage, 193
  - Bronchoconstrictors, 196
  - Bronchodilators, 196
  - Bronchopneumonia, 195
  - Bronchoscopes, 193
  - Bronchoscopy, 193
  - Bronchus/bronchi, 190
  - Brood, 426
  - Brood mares, 99
  - Brooder, 426
  - Brown rat (*Rattus norvegicus*), 442
  - Brucellosis, 404
  - Bruxism, 124
  - Bubbling, 192
  - Buccal, 106
  - Buccal surfaces, 20
  - Bucc/o combining form, 106
  - Bucks, 98, 100
  - Budgerigar, fledgling, 429f
  - Buffy coat, 312
  - Bulbourethral glands, 244
  - Bulbs of heel, 208
  - Bulla/bullae, 211, 214f, 217, 298
  - Bulls, 100
  - Bundle of His, 165
  - Bunodont animals, 111
  - Buphthalmos, 295
  - Burns, 212
  - Burros, 99
  - Bursa/bursae, 44–45
  - Bursitis, 56
  - Burs/o combining form, 44
  - Buttons, 251
  - Bypass protein, 401
- C**
- C (cervical), 274
  - Cabrito, 403
  - Cachexia, 124
  - Cage operation, 426
  - Calamus, 423
  - Calcaneus, 53–54
  - Calc/i combining form, 232
  - Calcitonin, 228
  - Calculus, 148
  - Calf jack, 256f
  - Calico cat, 369
  - California mastitis test (CMT)
    - paddle, 264f
  - Calks, 384
  - Callus, 58
  - Calvarium, 438t
  - Calves, 100
  - Calving, 100
  - Calving interval, 396
  - Calyces, 143
  - Camelids, 100, 403–404
  - Canals, 54
  - Cancellous, 42t
  - Cancellous bone, 42t
  - Candling, 426
  - Canine adenovirus, 371
  - Canine distemper, 371
  - Canine hepatitis, 371
  - Canine herpesvirus, 371
  - Canine parainfluenza, 371
  - Canine parvovirus, 371
  - Canines. *See* Dogs
  - Canines (teeth), 107
  - Cannibalism, 438t
  - Cannon bone
    - in cattle, 78
    - defined, 51
    - in goats, 78
    - in horses, 74
    - in sheep, 80
  - Cannulas, 339
  - Canter, 380
  - Canthectomy, 297
  - Canth/o combining form, 290
  - Canthoplasty, 297
  - Canthotomy, 297
  - Canthus, 290
  - Capillaries, 169
  - Capillary refill time (CRT), 169–170
  - Capn/o combining form, 192
  - Capon, 98
  - Capped elbow, 389f
  - Capped hock, 388, 389f
  - Caprines. *See* Goats
  - Caps, 129
  - Carapace, 452
  - Carbuncles, 212
  - Carcasses, 396
  - Carcin/o combining form, 324
  - Carcinogens, 324
  - Carcinomas, 212, 324
  - Cardia, 112
  - Cardiac, 4
  - Cardiac catheterization, 171
  - Cardiac muscle, 26f, 61t, 62f
  - Cardiac output, 165
  - Cardiac tamponade, 172
  - Carding, 402
  - Cardi/o combining form, 29t
  - Cardiomegaly, 5, 172
  - Cardiomyopathy, 172, 175f
  - Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 177
  - Cardiosis, 5
  - Cardiovascular system
    - blood vessels, 168–171
    - combining forms, 29t
    - diagnostic procedures, 171–172
    - functions of, 161
    - heart, 162–168
    - pathology, 172–177
    - procedures, 177
  - Carditis, 174
  - Caribou, 100
  - Carnassial tooth, 110, 368
  - Carnivores, 117
  - Carpal, 5
  - Carpal bones, 50, 52f
  - Carpal pads, 207
  - Carpus, 5, 50
  - Carrier, 339
  - Cartilage, 26f, 43
  - Cartilaginous joints, 43
  - Caruncle, 251
  - Cashmere, 403
  - Cast
    - dressing, 357
    - materials found in urine, 148, 149f
    - position, 385
  - Casting, 385, 396, 412
  - Castration, 257
  - CAT (computed axial tomography) scan, 341–342
  - Cata- prefix, 229
  - Catabolism, 120, 229
  - Catalepsy, 276
  - Cataplexy, 276
  - Cataracts, 295
  - Catecholamine, 229
  - Catheters, 147
  - Cats
    - anatomical terminology, 82–84
    - anatomy and physiology terminology, 368–369
    - arteries in, 169f
    - barium series of, 122f
    - blood transfusion, 177f
    - bones of, 54f–56f
    - breed-related terminology, 369–370
    - common terminology, 98
    - dental formula of, 108t
    - descriptive terminology, 370–371
    - directional terminology of, 19f
    - fractures, 60f
    - linea alba, 63f
    - male genital organs, 242f
    - overview, 367
    - papillae of, 106f
    - quick of nail, 209f
    - rugae of stomach, 106f
    - skeleton of, 50f
    - skin on foot pads, 205f

- spine, 49f
- thoracic radiograph of, 194f
- tooth structure, 110f
- upper respiratory tract infection, 196f
- vaccinations of, 371
- veins of, 171f
- Cattle. *See also* Cows
  - common terminology, 100
  - feeding-related terminology, 401
  - female reproductive tract, 246f
  - industry terminology, 396–398
  - milk-related terminology, 398–401
  - overview, 395
- Cattle mounting, 250f
- Cauda equina, 272
- Caudal (Cd), 18t, 274
- Caudal presentation, 252
- Caudocranial projection, 341t
- Caus/o combining form, 279
- Caust/o combining form, 279
- Cauterization, 217
- Cautery, 357, 360f
- Caval syndrome, 174
- Cavies, 98
- Cavities, 20–22
- Cd (caudal), 18t, 274
- Cec/o combining form, 117
- Cecum, 117
- Cele suffix, 254
- Celiac artery, 169
- Celi/o combining form, 112, 169
- Cell membrane, 22, 24f
- Cell-mediated immunity, 320f
- Cells, overview, *See also names of specific cells*, 22, 24f
- Cellulitis, 212
- Cementum, 109
- Centesis, 339
- Centesis suffix, 4
- Centimeters (cm), 355
- Central nervous system (CNS)
  - brain, 269–271
  - cerebrospinal fluid, 269
  - intervertebral discs, 272
  - meninges, 268–269
  - overview, 265, 266f
  - spinal cord, 271–272
- Central pallor, 313
- Central tail feathers, 423
- Central venous pressure (CVP), 177
- Centrifuges, 336f, 337
- Centrioles, 24f
- Cephalic, 18t
- Cerclage wire, 357, 359f
- Cere, 423
- Cerebellar hypoplasia, 277
- Cerebell/o combining form, 270
- Cerebellum, 269f, 270
- Cerebral cortex, 270
- Cerebr/o combining form, 270
- Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 269
- Cerebrospinal fluid tap (CSF tap), 275
- Cerebrum, 269f, 270
- Cerumen, 206, 298
- Ceruminous glands, 206
- Cervical (C), 274
- Cervical intumescence, 271
- Cervical vertebrae, 48f
- Cervical vertebral malformation, 277
- Cervicitis, 253
- Cervidae, 100
- Cervix, 246–247
- Cesarean derived, 438t
- Cesarean section (C-section), 255, 256f
- Chalaza, 426
- Chalazion, 295
- Chambers, heart, 162–163
- Check ligament, 381
- Checkoff, 412
- Cheek pouch, 438t, 446f
- Cheek teeth, 110
- Cheeks
  - in birds, 423
  - in dogs and cats, 82
  - in horses, 74
- Cheil/o combining form, 106
- Chelated, 352
- Chemical thyroidectomy, 232
- Chemonucleolysis, 60
- Chemotherapy, 4, 325
- Chest
  - in dogs and cats, 82
  - in horses, 75
- Chest cavity, 20, 162
- Chest tube placement, 196, 197f
- Chestnuts, 75, 209–210, 381
- Chevon, 403
- Chewing, 112
- CHF (congestive heart failure), 174
- Chiasm, 272
- Chickens
  - common terminology, 98
  - foot, 427f
  - head, 427f
- Chicks, 98–99
- Chiggers, 215
- Chin, in dogs and cats, 82
- Chin acne, 211
- Chin glands, 452
- Chin spot, 383f, 384
- Chinchillas, 108t, 447
- Chine, 78
- Choana, 422
- Chol/e combining form, 120
- Cholecystectomy, 129
- Cholecystic, 120
- Cholecystitis, 124
- Choledochus, 120
- Cholesterol, 313
- Chondr/o combining form, 29t
- Chondromalacia, 56
- Chondropathy, 56
- Chordae tendineae, 164f
- Chorea, 277
- Choriomeningitis, 277
- Chorion, 250
- Choroid, 291–292
- Choroid plexus, 269
- Choroid tapetum, 291
- Choroid/o combining form, 292
- Chrome suffix, 145
- Chrom/o combining form, 232, 297
- Chromodachryorrhea, 438t
- Chromosomes, 22, 24f
- Chronic, 337t
- Chronic bronchitis, 195
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 195
- Chronic renal failure (CRF), 150
- Chronotropes, 354
- Chucks, 358, 360f
- Chutes, 396
- Chyle, 117
- Chyme, 121
- Cicatrices, 216
- Cilia, 188, 207, 290
- Ciliary body, 292
- Ciliary muscles, 292
- Cinch, 384
- Circa, 230
- Circadian rhythm, 230
- Circumscribed, 216
- Cirrhosis, 124
- Cisterna chyli, 318
- Cisterna magna, 275
- Clamps, 358, 360f
- Clasts suffix, 43
- Clavicle, 50
- Claws, 51, 207–209
- Cleaning a cow, 396
- Cleft palates, 127
- Clinch cutter, 384
- Clinical, 339
- Clipping, 428
- Clips, 402–403
- Clitoris, 247
- Cloaca, 425
- Close breeding, 398, 439t
- Closed fractures, 58
- Clostridial disease, 404
- Clostridium perfringens* type C, 414
- Clotting cells, 316
- Cloven-hoofed animals, 51
- Clutch, 98
- Cm (centimeters), 355
- CMT (California mastitis test) paddle, 264f
- CN (cranial nerves), 273f, 273t
- CNS. *See* Central nervous system
- Co (coccygeal), 274
- Coagulation, 312
- Coaptation, 355
- Coccus, 338t
- Coccygeal (Co or Cy), 274
- Coccygeal vertebrae, 48f
- Cochlea, 300
- Cochlear canal, 300

- Cochlear duct, 300  
 Cochle/o combining form, 300  
 Cockerels, 98  
 Cocks, 98  
 Cod, 396  
 Coffin bone, 51, 52*f*  
 Coffin joint  
   in cattle, 78  
   in goats, 78  
   in horses, 75  
   overview, 51  
   in sheep, 80  
   in swine, 81  
 Coitus, 249  
 Colectomy, 129  
 Colic, 124  
 Colitis, 124  
 Collagen, 205  
 Collarbones, 50  
 Collecting tubules, 143*t*  
 Col/o combining form, 29*t*, 117  
 Colon, 117, 119  
 Colon/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Colonoscopies, 122  
 Color blindness, 296  
 Colostomy, 4, 129  
 Colostrum, 396  
 Colotomy, 129  
 Colp/o combining form, 247  
 Colts, 99  
 Columbiformes, 428  
 Columella, 425  
 Coma, 276  
 Comb, 427  
 Combing, 402  
 Combining forms, *See also names of specific combining forms*, 2–3, 29*t*–30*t*  
 Combining vowels, 2, 3  
 Comedones, 212  
 Comminuted fractures, 58, 60*f*  
 Communicable disease, 337  
 Complement, 322  
 Complementary air, 192*t*  
 Complete blood count, 334*t*  
 Compound fractures, 59  
 Compound pattern hair growth, 207  
 Compression fractures, 58  
 Computed axial tomography (CAT or CT scan), 341–342  
 Concentrate, 401  
 Conception, 250  
 Conchal sinus, 188*t*  
 Concussion, 277  
 Concuss/o combining form, 277  
 Conditional suffixes, 5  
 Condylar, 5  
 Condyles, 5, 53–54  
 Condylloid joints, 43  
 Cones, 292  
 Conformation, 396  
 Congenital defects, 22, 25  
 Congenital diseases, 177  
 Congestion, 174, 195  
 Congestive cardiomyopathy, 174  
 Congestive heart failure (CHF), 174  
 Conjunctiva, 290  
 Conjunctival scrape, 293  
 Conjunctivitis, 295  
 Conjunctiv/o combining form, 291  
 Conjunctivoplasty, 297  
 Connecting neurons, 266  
 Connective tissue  
   muscular system, 61  
   overview, 25, 26*f*  
   skeletal system, 42  
 Conscious, 276  
 Conscious proprioceptive deficit (CP deficit), 277  
 Consonant pronunciations, 6  
 Constipation, 124  
 Constitution, 368  
 Constriction, 168, 292  
 Contact bedding, 438*t*  
 Contact dermatitis, 212  
 Contact surfaces, 20  
 Contagious disease, 337  
 Contour feathers, 423  
 Contra- prefix, 279  
 Contract, 339  
 Contraction, 63  
 Contraindications, 352  
 Contralateral, 279  
 Contrasting prefixes, 2*t*  
 Control, 438*t*  
 Contusions, 212, 277  
 Contus/o combining form, 277  
 Conus, 272  
 Conus medullaris, 272  
 Convergence, 293  
 Convergent strabismus, 297*f*  
 Convoluted, 143  
 Convolut/o combining form, 270  
 Convulsions, 279–280  
 Coonhound paralysis, 279  
 COPD (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease), 195  
 Copr/o combining form, 124  
 Coprodeum, 425  
 Coprolith, 125  
 Coprophagia/coprophagy, 124, 368  
 Copulating, 249  
 Cor pulmonale, 174  
 Core/o combining form, 292  
 Corium, 204, 209, 396  
 Cornea, 291  
 Corneal ulceration, 295, 296*f*  
 Corne/o combining form, 291  
 Corners, 75  
 Cornification, 209  
 Cornus, 246  
 Coronal plane, 18  
 Coronary arteries, 162  
 Coronary band, 75, 208  
 Coronary occlusion, 162  
 Coronary veins, 162  
 Coronavirus, 371, 404  
 Coronet, 75, 208, 383*f*, 384  
 Coron/o combining form, 162  
 Corpora nigra, 292  
 Corpus, 112, 246  
 Corpus albicans, 249  
 Corpus callosum, 270*f*  
 Corpus luteum, 226*f*, 247  
 Corrals, 387  
 Cortex  
   defined, 42*t*  
   hair, 206–207  
   kidney, 142  
 Cortical bone, 42*t*  
 Cortic/o combining form, 142, 228  
 Corticosteroids, 228  
 Cortisol, 229  
 Costals, 47  
 Cost/o combining form, 47  
 Cotyledon, 251  
 Coughs, 196  
 Coverts, 423  
 Cowper's glands, 244  
 Cows  
   anatomical terminology, 76–78  
   common terminology, 100  
   dental formula of, 108*t*  
   diarrhea, 124*f*  
   emaciation, 125*f*  
   epiglottis and larynx of, 189*f*  
   female genital organs and urinary bladder, 248*f*  
   kidney of, 144*f*  
   pneumonia, 195*f*  
   polled breeds, 210*f*  
   reproductive system lateral view, 248*f*  
   rumen fistulas, 129*f*  
   tuberculosis testing, 210*f*  
 CP deficit (conscious proprioceptive deficit), 277  
 CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation), 177  
 Cracks, 381  
 Cradle, 384  
 Cranial, 18*t*  
 Cranial cavity, 20  
 Cranial nerves, 272–273  
 Cranial presentation, 252  
 Crani/o combining form, 45, 269  
 Craniocaudal projection, 341*t*  
 Craniotomy, 60  
 Cranium, 45–46, 269  
 Creep feed, 401  
 Creptitation, 58, 192  
 Crepuscular, 438*t*  
 Crescendo murmurs, 168  
 Crests  
   in cattle, 78  
   defined, 54  
   in goats, 78  
   in horses, 75  
   in sheep, 80

- CRF (chronic renal failure), 150  
 Crias, 100  
 Cribbing, 124, 385, 386f  
 Crimping, 402  
 -Crine suffix, 225  
 Crista/cristae, 300  
 Cristas, 54  
 Crop, 425  
 Crossbred, 396  
 Cross-fostering, 412  
 Cross-sectional plane, 19  
 Cross-tying, 385  
*Crotalus atrox* toxoid, 371  
 Croup, 75, 83, 381  
 Crowns  
   birds, 424  
   teeth, 129  
 CRT (capillary refill time), 169–170  
 Crus, 53, 76  
 Crust, 212, 214f  
 Cryosurgery, 217  
 Cryptorchidism, 253  
 Crypts, 121  
 Crystalluria, 147t  
 Crystals, 148, 149f  
 C-section (cesarean section), 255, 256f  
 CSF (cerebrospinal fluid), 269  
 CSF tap (cerebrospinal fluid tap), 275  
 CT (computed tomography) scan, 341–342  
 Cuboidal cells, 205t  
 Cudding, 401  
 Cuds, 114  
 Cull, 396  
 Cultures, 211  
 Cups, 381  
 Curb, 381  
 Curettage, 355  
 Curettes, 358  
 Cushing, 404  
 Cushing's disease, 231  
 Cuspids, 107  
 Cutane/o combining form, 204  
 Cutaneous, 4  
 Cuticles, 206  
 Cutters, 75  
 Cutting needles, 361  
 Cuttlebone, 428  
 CVP (central venous pressure), 177  
 Cy (coccygeal), 274  
 Cyanosis, 5, 195  
 Cyanotic, 5  
 Cyclopia, 295  
 Cycloplegics, 294  
 Cyesis, 254  
 Cystalgia, 148  
 Cystectomy, 150  
 Cystitis, 148  
 Cyst/o combining form, 29t  
 Cystocele, 148  
 Cystocentesis, 4, 145  
 Cystodynia, 148  
 Cystograms, 146  
 Cystography, 146  
 Cystoliths, 150  
 Cystopexy, 151  
 Cystoplasty, 151  
 Cystoscopes, 146  
 Cystoscopy, 146  
 Cystostomy, 151  
 Cystotomy, 151  
 Cysts, 214f, 216  
   -Cyte suffix, 266, 313  
 Cyt/o combining form, 22, 232  
 Cytology, 22  
 Cytoplasm, 22, 24f  
 Cytotoxic agents, 354  
 Cytotoxic T cells, 322
- ## D
- Dacry/o combining form, 291  
 Dacryoadenitis, 295  
 Dacryocyst, 291  
 Dacryocystectomy, 297  
 Dacryocystitis, 295  
 Dacryocystotomy, 297  
 Dams, 98  
 Data, 438t  
 Dead space, 192t  
 Deafness, 301  
 Debarking, 368  
 Debeaking, 427, 428  
 Debilitated, 323  
 Debridement, 217, 356  
 Debris, 188  
 Debudding, 403  
 Decerebration, 277  
 Decidu/o combining form, 107  
 Deciduous dentition, 107  
 Declaw, 51  
 Decreased lung sounds, 192  
 Decrescendo murmurs, 168  
 Dectes, 303  
 Decubital ulcers, 217  
 Deep, 18t  
 Deer, 100  
 Defecation, 121  
 Defibrillation, 177  
 Degenerative joint disease (DJD), 57  
 Deglutition, 112, 121  
 Dehiscence, 356  
 Dehorn, 396  
 Dehydration, 124  
 Delivery, 252  
 Deltoid muscles, 64  
 Demodectic mange, 215  
 Demyelination, 277  
 Dendrites, 266  
 Dendr/o combining form, 266  
 Dens, 54  
 Dense connective tissue, 26f  
 Dental calculus, 124  
 Dental caries, 124  
 Dental formulas, 107, 108t  
 Dental pad, 401  
 Dental stars, 381  
 Dent/i combining form, 106  
 Dentin, 109  
 Dentition, 106–107  
 Depressor muscles, 64  
 -Derma suffix, 204  
 Dermatitis, 212  
 Dermat/o combining form, 30t  
 Dermato cellulitis, 212  
 Dermatology, 204  
 Dermatomycosis, 212  
 Dermatophytes, 212  
 Dermatophytosis, 212  
 Dermatoses, 212  
 Dermis, 204  
 Dermis layer, 421  
 Derm/o combining form, 30t  
 Descemet's membrane, 291  
 Descending part of colon, 119  
 Descending tracts, 266  
 Desquamation, 205t  
 Detached retina, 297  
 Devocalization, 368  
 Dewclaws  
   in cats, 82  
   in cattle, 78  
   in dogs, 51, 82  
   in goats, 78  
   overview, 209  
   in sheep, 80  
   in swine, 81  
 Dewlap, 78  
 Dexamethasone (dex) suppression tests, 230  
 Dia- prefix, 42  
 Diabetes insipidus, 231  
 Diabetes mellitus, 231  
 Diagnosis, defined, 337t  
 Diagnostic procedures  
   cardiovascular system, 171–172  
   digestive system, 121–123  
   integumentary system, 210–211  
   muscular system, 64  
   respiratory system, 192–194  
   skeletal system, 54, 56  
   urinary system, 145–148  
 Dialysis, 151  
 Diaphragm, 191  
 Diaphragmatic flexures, 119  
 Diaphragmatic hernias, 191, 195  
 Diaphragmat/o combining form, 191  
 Diaphysis, 42t  
 Diarrhea, 4, 124  
 Diarthroses, 43, 45f  
 Diastole, 166  
 Diastolic pressure, 170  
 Diem, 230  
 Diencephalon, 271f, 272t  
 Diestrus, 249  
 Differential, 334t  
 Differential diagnosis, 337t  
 Diffuse cellulitis, 212

- Diffusion, 352
- Digestion, 120–121
- Digestive system
  - combining forms, 29*t*
  - diagnostic procedures, 121–123
  - digestion, 120–121
  - functions of, 105
  - gallbladder, 120
  - gullet, 112
  - large intestine, 117–119
  - mouth, 106–112
  - overview, 105
  - pancreas, 120
  - pathology, 123–129
  - pharynx, 112
  - procedures, 129–131
  - small intestine, 116–117
  - stomach, 112–116
- Digital pads, 207
- Digitigrade animals, 207
- Digits, 51, 52*f*
- Dilated cardiomyopathy, 172, 175*f*
- Dilation, 168, 252, 292
- Diluent, 334*t*
- Diluter, 385
- Dipl/o combining form, 295
- Diplopia, 295
- Dipsticks, 336*f*
- Direct ophthalmoscopy, 294*f*
- Direct-acting hormones, 226
- Direction, muscle, 64
- Directional prefixes, 3*f*, 3*t*
- Directional terminology, 18*t*, 19*f*, 20
- Dirofilariasis, 174
- Dirofilariosis, 174, 176*f*
- Disbudding, 403
- Disc fenestration, 280, 281*f*
- Discograms, 276
- Discography, 276
- Discoid lupus erythematosus (DLE), 212
- Discospondylitis, 56, 277
- Diseases
  - defined, 339
  - terminology, 339
  - types of, 337–338
- Disinfectants, 354
- Disorientation, 276
- Displaced abomasum, 124
- Dissecare, 356
- Dissect, 356
- Distal, 18*t*
- Distal contact surface, 20
- Distal convoluted tubules, 143*t*
- Distal epiphysis, 42*t*
- Distal spots, 384
- Distention, 149
- Distichia, 295
- Distichiasis, 295
- Diuresis, 150
- Diuretics, 150, 174, 228
- Divergent strabismus, 297*f*
- Diverticulitis, 125
- Diverticulum, 125
- Divisions, muscle, 64
- DJD (degenerative joint disease), 57
- DLE (discoid lupus erythematosus), 212
- Doch/o combining form, 120
- Docile, 370
- Docking, 402
- Docks, 75, 78, 80
- Does, 98, 100
- Dogs
  - anatomical terminology, 82–84
  - anatomy and physiology terminology, 368–369
  - angiogram of, 172*f*
  - atlas-axis subluxation, 59*f*
  - breed-related terminology, 369–370
  - castration, 257*f*
  - cesarean section, 256*f*
  - chest tube placement, 197*f*
  - common terminology, 98
  - CRT, 170
  - cystocentesis, 146*f*
  - dental calculus and gingivitis, 124*f*
  - dental formula, 108*t*
  - descriptive terminology, 370–371
  - directional terminology, 19*f*
  - echocardiogram, 172*f*
  - electrocardiography, 167*f*
  - extrinsic eye muscle, 290
  - female reproductive tract, 246*f*
  - foot, 52*f*
  - gastrointestinal tract, 113*f*, 118*f*
  - GDV, 126*f*
  - genital organs
    - female, 248*f*
    - male, 242*f*
  - heart, 174*f*
  - heart of, 163*f*–164*f*
  - hip dysplasia, 57*f*
  - intestinal obstructions, 128*f*
  - IVP, 146*f*
  - lumbar spine, 58*f*
  - melanomas, 216*f*
  - nasal cavity, 187*f*
  - overview, 367
  - petechiae, 216*f*
  - pneumothorax, 196*f*
  - pyoderma, 216*f*
  - pyometra, 254*f*
  - radius and ulna, 44*f*
  - recumbency positions, 23*f*
  - salivary glands, 111*f*
  - salivary mucocele, 128*f*
  - shoulder, 50*f*, 57*f*
  - teeth, 108*f*, 110*f*
  - thoracic radiograph, 194*f*
  - thoracocentesis in, 194*f*
  - transtracheal washes, 194*f*
  - urinary catheterization, 147*f*
  - vaccinations, 371
- Dolichocephalic dogs, 46
- Domestic longhair cat, 369
- Domestic shorthair cat, 369
- Donkeys, 99. *See also* Horses
- Doppler echocardiography, 171
- Dorsal, 18*t*, 20
- Dorsal plane, 18, 19*f*
- Dorsal punctum, 291
- Dorsal recumbency, 22, 23*f*
- Dorsal root, 274
- Dorsoventral projection, 341*t*
- Dosage, 352
- Dosage intervals, 352
- Doses, 352
- Draft horses, 387
- Drains, 358, 359*f*
- Drakes, 99
- Drams, 355
- Drapes, 358
- Drawing blood, 312
- Drenches, 129
- Dressage, 380
- Dressings, 358
- Driving, 385
- Droppings, 425
- Dropsy, 125
- Drugs
  - abbreviations, 355*t*
  - defined, 352
  - terminology, 351–355
- Dry, 398
- Dry matter basis, 385
- Drying off, 399
- Dual purpose, 396
- Ducklings, 99
- Ducks, 99
- Ducts, 206
- Ductules, 206
- Ductus deferens, 243–244
- Dull, 370
- Dunging pattern, 412
- Duoden/i combining form, 117
- Duoden/o combining form, 117
- Duodenum, 117
- Dura, 268
- Dura mater, 268, 269*f*
- Dur/o combining form, 268
- Dusting, 438*t*
- Dynia suffix, 5
- Dys- prefix, 2*t*
- Dyschezia, 125
- Dyscrasia, 316
- Dysecdysis, 452
- Dysentery, 125
- Dyesthesia, 281
- Dyskeratosis, 212
- Dysphagia, 2*t*, 125
- Dysplasia, 27
- Dyspnea, 192
- Dysrhythmia, 166
- Dystocia, 253

Dystrophy, 27, 66

Dysuria, 147*t*

## E

*E. coli*, 404, 414

-Eal suffix, 4

Ear notching, 412, 413*f*

Ear tagging, 396

Eardrum, 298

Ears

equilibrium, 300–301

functions of, 298

hearing, 300

inner, 298–300

middle, 298

outer, 298

pathology, 301–303

procedures, 303

Earwax, 206, 298

Ecchymoses, 213

Eccrine glands, 206

Ecdysis, 452

ECG (electrocardiograms), 4, 166–167, 171, 173*f*

Echocardiograms, 172*f*

Echocardiography, 171

Echoic, 343

E-collar (Elizabethan collar), 368

-Ectasis suffix, 149

Ecthyma, 213

Ecto- prefix, 2*t*

Ectoderm, 251

-Ectomy suffix, 4

Ectoparasites, 2*t*, 213–214

Ectopic pregnancy, 253

Ectropion, 296

Eczema, 213

Edema, 174, 195, 316

Edematous, 316

EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid), 312

EEG (electroencephalography), 276

Efferent tracts, 266

Efficacy, 352

Effluent, 130

Effusion, 195

Eggs, 250*f*, 427*f*

Ejaculating, 249

Ejaculatory duct, 244

EKG (electrocardiograms), 4, 166–167, 171, 173*f*

Elastrator, 358

Elbows

in cattle, 78

in dogs and cats, 82

in goats, 78

in horses, 75

in sheep, 80

in swine, 81

Electrical activity, of heart, 166–167

Electrocardiograms (ECG or EKG), 4, 166–167, 171, 173*f*

Electrocardiographs, 4, 171

Electrocardiography, 4, 166–167, 171

Electroejaculation, 255

Electroejaculators, 255–256

Electroencephalograms, 276

Electroencephalographs, 276

Electroencephalography (EEG), 276

Electrolytes, 231

Electromyograms, 65

Electromyography, 65

Electroretinography, 293

Elevators, 359, 360*f*

Elimination, 144

Elizabethan collar (E-collar), 368

Elk, 100

Emaciation, 125

Emasculatome, 359, 360*f*

Emasculator, 359, 360*f*

Embolism, 174

Embolus, 174

Embryo transfer, 397

Embryos, 250

Embryotomy, 256

Emesis, 125

Emetics, 2*t*, 129, 354

-Emia suffix, 232, 317

Eminence, 54

Emissions, 438*t*

Emphysema, 195

Emu oil, 430

Emulsification, 120

Emus, 99, 430

Enamel, 109

Enarthrosis, 43

Encephalitis, 277

Encephal/o combining form, 29*t*, 268–270

Encephalocele, 277

Encephalomalacia, 277

Encephalomyelitis, 277

Encephalopathy, 277

Endectocides, 354

Endemic, 337*t*

Endings, muscle, 63

Endo- prefix, 2*t*, 225, 247

Endocarditis, 174, 176*f*

Endocardium, 162

Endocrine, 2*t*

Endocrine glands, 27, 28*f*

Endocrine system

adrenal glands, 228–229

combining forms, 30*t*

functions of, 225

gonads, 230

pancreas, 229

parathyroid glands, 228

pathology, 231–232

pineal gland, 230

pituitary gland, 226–228

procedures, 232

thymus, 229–230

thyroid gland, 228

Endocrinopathy, 231

Endoderm, 251

Endodontics, 111

Endogenous, 352

Endolymph, 298

Endometrium tissue, 246

Endoparasite, 2*t*

Endoplasmic reticulum, 24*f*

Endorphins, 280

Endoscopes, 4, 122

Endoscopic surgery, 339

Endoscopy, 4, 339

Endospore, 338*t*

Endosteum, 42*t*

Endothelium, 25

Endotherms, 186

Endotracheal intubation, 196

Enemas, 121

English saddles, 387*f*

Enlarged prostate, 253

Ensiling, 401

Enteric, 4

Enteritis, 125

Enter/o combining form, 29*t*

Enterocolitis, 125

Enteropathy, 5

Enterorrhaphy, 4

Enterostomy, 129

Entropion, 296

Enucleation, 297, 356

Enzootic, 337*t*

Enzootic abortion, 404

Enzymes, 120

Eosinopenia, 316

Eosinophilia, 316

Eosinophilic, 316

Eosinophilic granuloma complex, 213

Eosinophilic plaques, 213

Eosinophilic ulcers, 213

Eosinophils, 312*f*, 314*f*, 315*t*

Epaxial muscles, 64

Ependyma, 270

Epi- prefix, 3*t*, 229, 268

Epicardium, 162

Epidemic, 337*t*

Epidemiology, 339

Epidermis, 204, 205*t*, 421

Epididymis, 243

Epididymitis, 253

Epididym/o combining form, 243

Epidural, 268

Epidural anesthesia, 280

Epidural hematoma, 278

Epidural space, 269*f*

Epiglottis, 189

Epiglott/o combining form, 189

Epilepsy, 277

Epinephrine, 229

Epiphora, 296

- Epiphyseal cartilage, 42*t*  
 Epiphysis, 42*t*  
 Episcleritis, 296  
 Episi/o combining form, 247  
 Episiotomy, 256  
 Epispadias, 148  
 Epistaxis, 195  
 Epithelial tissue, 25, 204  
 Epithelialization, 356  
 Epithelium, 25, 204  
 Epizootic, 337*t*  
 EPM (equine protozoal myelitis), 388  
 Eponyms, 1, 334  
 Epulis, 125  
 Equilibrium, 300–301  
 Equine ehrlichiosis, 388  
 Equine encephalomyelitis, 388  
 Equine influenza, 388  
 Equine laryngeal hemiplegia, 195, 279  
 Equine protozoal myelitis (EPM), 388  
 Equine vaccinations, 388–389  
 Equine viral arteritis (EVA), 388  
 Equine viral rhinopneumonitis (EVR), 388  
 Equines. *See* Horses  
 Equitation, 380  
 Erg, 63  
 Ergots, 75, 209–210  
 Erosive lesions, 214*f*  
 Eructation, 125  
*Erysipelas*, 414  
 Erythema, 213  
 Erythemat/o combining form, 213  
 Erythematous, 213  
 Erythem/o combining form, 213  
 Erythr/o combining form, 213, 313  
 Erythrocytes, 312*f*, 313, 314*f*, 315*t*  
 Erythrocytosis, 316  
 Erythroderma, 213  
 Erythropoietin, 145  
 Eso- prefix, 297  
 Esophageal reflux, 125  
 Esophag/o combining form, 297*t*  
 Esophagoplasty, 129  
 Esophagoscopy, 122  
 Esotropia, 297*f*  
 -Esthesia suffix, 279  
 Estivate, 439*t*  
 Estrogen, 230  
 Estrous cycle, 247–249  
 Estrus, 249  
 Ethmoid bone, 46  
 Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), 312  
 Etiology, 19, 339  
 Eu- prefix, 2*t*, 232  
 Eustachian tube, 298  
 Euthanasia, 370  
 Euthyroid, 2*t*  
 Euthyroidism, 232  
 EVA (equine viral arteritis), 388  
 Eversion, 356  
 Eviscerate, 356  
 Evisceration, 125  
 EVR (equine viral rhinopneumonitis), 388  
 Ewes, 100, 256*f*. *See also* Sheep  
 Ex- prefix, 2*t*  
 Examinations  
   centesis, 339  
   disease terminology, 339  
   endoscopy, 339  
   imaging techniques, 340–343  
   laboratory terminology, 333–337  
   medical terminology, 337  
   pathogenic organisms, 337  
   physical, 331–333  
   types of diseases, 337–338  
 Exanthema, 213  
 Excessive, 339  
 Excise, 356  
 Excisional biopsy, 121, 210, 360  
 Excisions, 210  
 Excretion, 144  
 Exfoliative cytology, 211  
 Exhalation, 192  
 Exo- prefix, 2*t*, 297  
 Exocrine, 2*t*  
 Exocrine glands, 27, 28*f*  
 Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency, 125  
 Exodontics, 111  
 Exogenous, 352  
 Exophthalmos, 296  
 Exostosis, 56  
 Exotropia, 297*f*  
 Expiration, 192  
 Expiratory reserve volume, 192*t*  
 Exsanguination, 439*t*  
 Extender, 385  
 Extension, 22, 23*f*  
 Extensor muscles, 64  
 Exteriorize, 356  
 External auditory canal, 298  
 External auditory meatus, 298  
 External ear, 298  
 External respiration, 193*f*  
 Externus muscles, 64  
 Extra- prefix, 3*t*  
 Extracapsular extraction, 297  
 Extraction, 129  
 Extraocular, 289  
 Extrinsic eye muscle, 290  
 Extrinsic muscles, 290  
 Exudate, 195, 316  
 Eye muscles, 290  
 Eyecap, 453  
 Eyelashes, 290  
 Eyelids, 290  
 Eyes  
   accessories, 290–291  
   choroid, 291–292  
   eye chambers, 292–293  
   functions of, 289  
   pathology, 295–297  
   procedures, 297–298  
   retina, 292  
   sclera, 291  
   vision, 293
- ## F
- F<sub>1</sub> generation, 397  
 Face bones, 46–47  
 Facets, 54  
 Facial nerve (CN VII), 273*f*, 273*t*  
 FAD (flea allergy dermatitis), 213  
 Fallopian tubes, 246  
 Fangs, 107  
 Far side, 387  
 Farrier, 385  
 Farrowing, 99  
 Farrowing crate, 412, 413*f*  
 Farrowing house, 412  
 Farrowing pen, 412, 413*f*  
 Fasc/i combining form, 297*t*  
 Fascia, 61  
 Fasciitis, 66  
 Fasci/o combining form, 297*t*  
 Fat, 205  
 Fatty tumors, 215  
 Fawns, 100  
 Feather picking, 428  
 Feathering, 385  
 Feathers, 423, 424*f*  
 Febrile, 331  
 Fecal examinations, 122  
 Fecal flotation, 123*f*  
 Fecaliths, 125  
 Fecal-oral transmission, 339  
 Feedback control mechanisms, 227*f*  
 Feeders, 397  
 Feeding-related terminology, 401  
 Feedlot, 397, 397*f*  
 Feedstuff, 401  
 Feline calicivirus, 371  
 Feline chlamydia, 371  
 Feline immunodeficiency virus, 371  
 Feline infectious peritonitis, 371  
 Feline leukemia, 371  
 Feline lower urinary tract disease (FLUTD), 148  
 Feline miliary dermatitis, 213  
 Feline panleukopenia, 371  
 Feline rhinotracheitis, 371  
 Feline urologic syndrome (FUS), 148  
 Felines. *See* Cats  
 Felting, 402  
 Female reproductive system  
   cervix, 247  
   mammary glands, 247  
   ovaries, 246  
   overview, 245  
   uterine tubes, 246  
   uterus, 246–247  
   vagina, 247  
   vulva, 247  
 Female symbol, 100  
 Femoral glands, 452

- Femoral head, 52
  - Femoral neck, 52
  - Femoral pores, 452
  - Femoral veins, 170
  - Femur, 52–53, 54*f*
  - Fenestration, 356
  - Feral, 370
  - Ferrets, 98, 108*t*, 447–448
  - Fertilization, 246, 249
  - Fetal defects, 253
  - Fetal extractor, 256*f*
  - Fetlock, 75
  - Fetlock joints
    - in cattle, 78
    - in goats, 78
    - in horses, 75
    - overview, 51
    - in sheep, 80
    - in swine, 81
  - Fetotomy, 256
  - Fetus, 250
  - Fever, 331
  - Fibers, muscle, 61
  - Fibrillation, 166
  - Fibrin/o combining form, 313
  - Fibrinogen, 313
  - Fibr/o combining form, 61
  - Fibroblasts, 205
  - Fibroids, 66, 253
  - Fibroma, 66
  - Fibros/o combining form, 61
  - Fibrous pericardium, 162
  - Fibula, 53, 56*f*
  - Fighting teeth, 110, 404
  - Filiform, 106
  - Fillies, 99
  - Filoplume, 423
  - Filum, 272
  - Filum terminale, 272
  - Fimbriae, 246
  - Finish, 412
  - Finisher pigs, 414
  - Finishing, 401
  - Firing, 385
  - Fissures, 213, 214*f*, 270
  - Fistula/fistulae, 129*f*, 130, 213
  - Fistulous withers, 388, 389*f*
  - Flank
    - in cattle, 78
    - in dogs and cats, 82
    - in goats, 78
    - in horses, 75
    - in sheep, 80
    - in swine, 81
  - Flank incision, 360, 361*f*
  - Flaps, 356
  - Flat bones, 42*t*
  - Flatulence, 125
  - Flea allergy dermatitis (FAD), 213
  - Fledgling, 428
  - Fleece, 402, 404
  - Flehmen reaction, 381
  - Flexion, 22, 23*f*
  - Flexor muscles, 64
  - Flexor tendon, 381
  - Flexures, 119
  - Flightless birds, 99
  - Flighty, 385
  - Floater, 296
  - Floating, 386
  - Floater, 130
  - Flocks, 98–100
  - Fluid-filled lesions, 214*f*
  - Fluorescein dye stain, 293*f*
  - Fluor/o combining form, 343
  - Fluoroscopy, 342–343
  - Flushing, 397
  - FLUTD (feline lower urinary tract disease), 148
  - Flutter, 166
  - Fly strike, 397
  - Foal birth, 252*f*
  - Foal heat, 381
  - Foaling, 99
  - Foals, 99
  - Focus, 339
  - Focusing, 293
  - Follicles, 207, 226*f*
  - Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 227
  - Follicular phase, 247
  - Fomite, 439*t*
  - Fontanelle, 43
  - Foot pads, 207
  - Footrot, 213
  - Forage, 401
  - Foramen, 271
  - Foramen magnum, 271
  - Foramens, 46–47, 54
  - Forearms, 78, 80
  - Forebrain, 271*f*, 272*t*
  - Forehead
    - in birds, 424
    - in goats, 78
    - in sheep, 81–82
  - Forelock, 75
  - Foreneck, 425
  - Foreskin, 245
  - Fossa/fossae, 54
  - Fovea centralis, 292
  - Foveas, 54
  - Fove/o combining form, 292
  - Fox trot, 380
  - Fractures
    - defined, 356
    - terminology, 58–59
  - Free stall, 397
  - Freemartins, 100
  - Freeze branding, 396
  - Frenulum, 106
  - Frequency, 343
  - Freshening, 100
  - Friable, 356
  - Frogs, 76, 208
  - Front limbs, 47–52
  - Frontal bone, 45
  - Frontal lobe, 270
  - Frontal plane, 18
  - Frontal sinus, 188*t*
  - Frostbite, 213
  - FSH (follicle-stimulating hormone), 227
  - Fulguration, 356
  - Full stocking, 384
  - Full-mouthed, 381
  - Fundus, 112
  - Fungi, 207, 338*t*
  - Fungiform, 106
  - Fur, 207
  - Furcula, 425
  - Fur-slip, 439*t*
  - Furuncle, 213
  - Furunculosis, 213
  - FUS (feline urologic syndrome), 148
- ## G
- G (grams), 355
  - Gaggle, 98
  - Gait, 370
  - Gallbladder, 120
  - Gallop, 166, 380
  - Galvayne's groove, 381, 382*f*
  - Gametes, 230, 243
  - Gander, 98
  - Gangli/o combining form, 268
  - Ganglion/ganglia, 266, 268
  - Ganglion/o combining form, 268
  - Gangrene, 213
  - Gaskin, 76
  - Gastrectomy, 4, 130
  - Gastric dilatation, 125
  - Gastric dilatation volvulus (GDV), 125, 126*f*
  - Gastritis, 3, 125
  - Gastr/o combining form, 29*t*
  - Gastrocnemius muscle, 64
  - Gastroduodenostomy, 130
  - Gastroenteritis, 3, 5, 125
  - Gastroenterology, 117
  - Gastrointestinal system, of birds, 425
  - Gastrointestinal waste, 120
  - Gastropexy, 4, 130
  - Gastroscoy, 122
  - Gastrostomy, 4, 130
  - Gastrotomy, 4, 130
  - Gavage, 130
  - GDV (gastric dilatation volvulus), 125, 126*f*
  - Geese, 98
  - Geldings, 99–100
  - Gemellus, 64
  - Gen suffix, 229, 324
  - Gender, 98
  - General anesthesia, 280
  - Generic drugs, 351
  - Genetic disorders, 22
  - Genetics, 22, 25

## Genitalia

- in birds, 425–426
  - in cats, 242f
  - in cows, 248f
  - defined, 241
  - in dogs
    - female, 248f
    - male, 242f
  - in horses, 242f, 248f
  - in oxen, 242f
  - in pigs, 242f, 248f
  - in rodents, 441f–442f
- Genit/o combining form, 241
- Gen/o combining form, 241
- Genotype, 439t
- Gerbils, 108t, 446–447
- Germes, 339
- Gestation, 251
- Gestat/o combining form, 251
- Gest/o combining form, 251
- Get, 386
- GH (growth hormone), 228
- Giardia lamblia*, 371
- Gibs, 98
- Gilts, 99
- Gingiva, 110
- Gingival hyperplasia, 125
- Gingival sulcus, 110
- Gingivectomy, 130
- Gingivitis, 125
- Gingiv/o combining form, 110
- Gland cistern, 399
- Glands, overview, *See also names of specific glands*, 27, 28f
- Glandular stomachs, 112
- Glaucoma, 296f
- Glial cells, 266
- Gliding joints, 44
- Gli/o combining form, 266
- Glomeruli, 142–143
- Glomerul/o combining form, 143
- Glomerulonephritis, 148
- Glossitis, 125
- Gloss/o combining form, 106
- Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX), 273f, 273t
- Glottis, 189
- Glott/o combining form, 189
- Gloves, 370
- Glucagon, 229
- Glucocorticoids, 229
- Glucose, 120
- Glucose tests, 148t
- Glucosuria, 147t
- Glycogen, 120, 229
- Glycosuria, 147t
- Gnath/o combining form, 106
- Gnotobiotic, 439t
- Goats
  - anatomical terminology, 78–80
  - anatomy and physiology terminology, 403
  - common terminology, 100
  - dental formula, 108t

- Gold macaw, 424f
- Golgi apparatus, 24f
- Gomer bulls, 100, 397
- Gonad/o combining form, 30t, 227, 230
- Gonadotropic hormones, 227, 230
- Gonads, 230, 242
- Gon/i combining form, 293
- Goniometry, 293
- Goniotomy, 297
- Goose, 98
- Goslings, 98
- Gouldian finch, 429f
- Gout, 56
- Gouty arthritis, 56
- Graafian follicles, 246
- Gracilis muscles, 64
- Grade, 386
- Grafts, 356
- Gram suffix, 4
- Grams (g), 355
- Grand mal, 280
- Granulocytes, 313
- Granuloma, 213
- Graph suffix, 4
- Graphs, 340
- Graphy suffix, 4
- Gravid/o combining form, 252
- Gray matter, 267, 275f
- Grazing, 401
- Grease heel, 382, 388, 389f
- Grease wool, 402
- Greater omentum, 112
- Greenstick fractures, 58
- Groin, 20
- Grower pigs, 414
- Growth hormone (GH), 228
- Growth plate, 42t, 44f
- Guanacos, 100
- Guard hairs, 207
- Guard llama, 404
- Guinea pigs, 98, 108t, 444
- Gullet, 112
- Guttural pouch, 381, 382f
- Gynecomastia, 231
- Gyr/o combining form, 270
- Gyrus/gyri, 270

## H

- Haemophilus*, 414
- Hair, overview, 206–207
- Half heel, 383f, 384
- Half pastern, 383f, 384
- Half stocking, 383f, 384
- Hallucinations, 277
- Halter, 384, 397
- Ham, 81
- Hamsters, 108t, 444–446
- Hand, 386
- Hand-raised, 428
- Hard palate, 106
- Harem breeding, 404
- Hatching, 427
- Hatchlings, 99
- Haustra, 117, 119f
- Haws, 291
- HCG (human chorionic gonadotropin), 230
- Head collar, 384
- Head gland, 452
- Heads, of bones, 54
- Hearing, 300. *See also* Ears
- Heart
  - blood supply, 162
  - chambers, 162–163
  - electrical activity, 166–167
  - heart sounds, 167–168
  - layers of walls, 162
  - overview, 162
  - pericardium, 162
  - rhythm, 165–166
  - valves, 163–165
- Heart block, 174
- Heart girth, 76, 78, 81, 398
- Heart murmurs, 168
- Heart rate, 332
- Heartbeat, 165
- Heartworm disease, 174, 176f
- Heaving, 386
- Heel (marking), 383f, 384
- Heel crack, 388
- Heels, 76, 78, 81
- Heifers, 100
- Helper T cells, 321–322
- Hemangioma, 213, 324
- Hemangiosarcoma, 324
- Hematemeses, 125
- Hemat/o combining form, 29t, 312
- Hematochezia, 125
- Hematocrit, 334t
- Hematologic system
  - functions of blood, 312
  - overview, 311
  - pathology, 316–317
  - structures of blood, 312–316
- Hematology, 313
- Hematoma, 6, 277–278
- Hematopoiesis, 312
- Hematopoietic, 43
- Hematuria, 147t
- Heme, 313
- Hemiparesis, 278
- Hemiplegia, 278
- Hem/o combining form, 29t, 312
- Hemocults, 122
- Hemodialysis, 151
- Hemoglobin, 313
- Hemograms, 334t
- Hemolysis, 316
- Hemolytic, 316
- Hemoperitoneum, 125
- Hemophilia, 317
- Hemophilus somnus*, 404
- Hemoptysis, 195
- Hemorrhage, 4, 317

- Hemostasis, 177, 317
- Hemostat, 317
- Hemostatic forceps, 360
- Hemothorax, 195
- Hens, 98–99
- Heparin, 205, 312
- Hepatic lipidosis, 368, 369*f*
- Hepatitis, 5, 125
- Hepat/o combining form, 29*t*
- Hepatocytes, 120
- Hepatomas, 6, 125
- Hepatomegaly, 125
- Hepatotomy, 130
- Herbivores, 117
- Herds, 98–100
- Hereditary diseases, 177
- Heredity, 323
- Hermaphroditism, 253
- Hernias, 66, 125–126, 191, 195
- Herniated discs, 56
- Heterozygous, 439*t*
- Hiatal hernias, 125
- Hibernating, 439*t*
- Hide, 412
- Hidr/o combining form, 206
- Hidrosis, 206
- Hilus, 143, 168
- Hindbrain, 271*f*, 272*t*
- Hindgut, 381
- Hinge joints, 44
- Hinnies, 99
- Hip dysplasia, 56, 57*f*
- Hippocampus, 271
- Hips, 52
- Histamine, 205
- Histiocytes, 205, 322
- Hist/o combining form, 25
- Histology, 25
- Hives, 217
- Hobble, 384
- Hobs, 98
- Hocks
  - in cattle, 78
  - in dogs and cats, 83
  - in goats, 78
  - in horses, 76
  - overview, 53
  - in sheep, 81
  - in swine, 81
- Hog hurdle, 412, 414*f*
- Hog snare, 412, 414*f*
- Hogs. *See* Pigs
- Hog-tight, 412
- Holo- prefix, 168
- Holocrine glands, 206
- Holosystolic murmurs, 168
- Holter monitor, 171
- Homeostasis, 141, 275
- Homologous, 439*t*
- Homozygous, 439*t*
- Hooded, 439*t*
- Hoof pick, 384
- Hoof testers, 384
- Hoof walls, 76, 78, 81–82
- Hooks, 53, 78
- Hookworm eggs, 123*f*
- Hooved animals, 208
- Hooves, 76, 78, 81, 207–209
- Hordeolum, 296
- Horizontal plane, 19
- Horizontal transmission, 439*t*
- Hormones, *See also names of specific hormones*, 145, 225
- Horn butt, 78
- Horner's syndrome, 278
- Horns, 209
- Horny layer, 205*t*
- Horses
  - anatomical terminology, 74–76
  - anatomy, physiology, and disease terminology, 381–382
  - common terminology, 99
  - dental formula of, 108*t*
  - equine vaccinations, 388–389
  - equipment, 384
  - feet, 52*f*, 208
  - gastrointestinal tract, 113*f*, 118*f*
  - genital organs
    - female, 248*f*
    - male, 242*f*
  - ischemia to small intestine, 176*f*
  - leg with sequestrum, 58*f*
  - management terminology, 384–387
  - markings, 382–384
  - mode of movement, 380–381
  - movement terminology, 23*f*
  - overview, 379
  - paraphimosis, 254*f*
  - placenta and fetus, 251*f*
  - skeleton, 51*f*
  - terminology for unsoundness, 388
  - types of, 387–388
  - vertebral column, 49*f*
- Hot spots, 211
- Hothouse lambs, 100
- Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), 230
- Humerus, 50, 55*f*
- Humoral (antibody-mediated) immunity, 321
- Hunchback, 56
- Hunters, 386
- Hutch, 397*f*, 398
- Hybrid, 398
- Hybrid vigor, 398
- Hybrids, 439*t*
- Hydro- prefix, 254
- Hydrocephalus, 278
- Hydrochloric acid, 121
- Hydrocortisone, 229
- Hydronephrosis, 149, 150*f*
- Hydrophilic, 352
- Hydrops, 125
- Hydrourerter, 149, 150*f*
- Hymen, 247
- Hyoid, 47
- Hyper- prefix, 2*t*–3*t*, 232
- Hyperadrenocorticism, 231
- Hyperalbuminemia, 317
- Hyperalgesia, 354*f*
- Hypercapnia, 192
- Hyperchromic, 315*t*
- Hypercrinism, 231
- Hyperchoic, 343
- Hyperemia, 317
- Hyperesthesia, 278, 354*f*
- Hyperestrogenism, 447
- Hyperextension, 22
- Hyperflexion, 22
- Hyperglycemia, 2*t*, 125, 231
- Hypergonadism, 231
- Hyperhidrosis, 206
- Hyperinsulinism, 231
- Hyperkalemia, 352
- Hyperkeratosis, 213, 215*f*
- Hyperkinesis, 278
- Hyperlipidemia, 317
- Hypernatremia, 352
- Hyperparathyroidism, 231
- Hyperpituitarism, 231
- Hyperplasia, 27
- Hyperpnea, 192
- Hypersalivation, 112
- Hypersensitivity, 323
- Hypersensitization, 211
- Hypersialosis, 112
- Hypertension, 170
- Hyperthermia, 206
- Hyperthyroidism, 231
- Hypertonic solution, 352, 353*f*
- Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 172, 175*f*
- Hypertrophy, 27
- Hypertropia, 296
- Hyperventilation, 192
- Hypnosis, 278
- Hypo- prefix, 2*t*–3*t*, 232
- Hypoadrenocorticism, 231
- Hypoalgesia, 354*f*
- Hypocalcemia, 232
- Hypocapnia, 192
- Hypochromic, 315*t*
- Hypocrinism, 232
- Hypodermis, 205
- Hypoesthesia, 354*f*
- Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII), 273*f*, 273*t*
- Hypoglycemia, 2*t*, 120, 125, 232
- Hypogonadism, 232
- Hypokalemia, 352
- Hyponatremia, 352
- Hypoparathyroidism, 232
- Hypophysectomy, 232
- Hypophysis, 226
- Hypophysitis, 232
- Hypoplasia, 27
- Hypopnea, 192
- Hypopyon, 296
- Hyposensitization, 211

Hypospadias, 149  
 Hypotension, 170  
 Hypothalamus, 226  
 Hypothermia, 206, 331  
 Hypothesis, 439*t*  
 Hypothyroidism, 232  
 Hypotonic solution, 352, 353*f*  
 Hypotropia, 296  
 Hypovolemia, 352  
 Hypoxia, 176, 192  
 Hypsodont animals, 111  
 Hysterectomy, 256  
 Hyster/o combining form, 30*t*, 246  
 Hystricomorph, 439*t*  
 Hystricomorpha, 442

## I

IA (intra-arterial), 170, 353  
 Iatrogenic, 177  
 Iatrogenic disease, 337  
 -Ic suffix, 4  
 ICSH (interstitial cell-stimulating hormone), 227  
 Icteric serum, 317  
 Icterus, 126  
 Ictus stage, 280  
 ID (intra-arterial), 353  
 Idio- prefix, 277  
 Idiopathic, 177, 277  
 Idiopathic disease, 337  
 Idiopathic polyradiculoneuropathy, 279  
 Ileectomy, 130  
 Ileitis, 126  
 Ile/o combining form, 117  
 Ileostomy, 130  
 Ileum, 6, 117  
 Ileus, 126  
 Iliac, 5  
 Ilium, 5–6, 52–53  
 IM (intramuscular), 2*t*, 354  
 Imaging techniques  
   computed tomography, 341–342  
   fluoroscopy, 342–343  
   magnetic resonance imaging, 342  
   radiology, 340–341  
   ultrasound, 343  
 Imbrication, 356  
 Immobilization, 58  
 Immune system  
   combining forms, 29*t*  
   overview, 320–323  
 Immunity, 320, 322  
 Immunization, 323  
 Immun/o combining form, 320  
 Immunofluorescence, 334*t*  
 Immunoglobulins, 321  
 Immunology, 320  
 Immunosuppressants, 323, 355  
 Immunosuppression, 323  
 Impaction, 126  
 Implantation, 250  
 Implants, 356  
 Impulses, 268  
 In situ, 439*t*  
 In vitro, 439*t*  
 In vivo, 439*t*  
 In wear, 381  
 Inappetence, 126  
 Inappropriate urination, 149  
 Inbred, 398, 439*t*  
 Incidence, 339  
 Incise, 356  
 Incisional biopsy, 121, 210, 360  
 Incisions, 210  
 Incisive, 47  
 Incisive bone, 46  
 Incisors, 107  
 Incomplete fractures, 58  
 Incontinence, 126, 149  
 Incubation, 427  
 Incus, 298  
 Indirect ophthalmoscopy, 294*f*  
 Indirect-acting hormones, 226  
 Induced ovulators, 249, 368  
   -ine suffix, 4  
 Infarcts, 162, 176  
 Infectious bovine rhinotracheitis, 404  
 Infectious disease, 337  
 Infectious tracheobronchitis, 371  
 Inferior, 18*t*, 20  
 Inferior muscles, 64  
 Infestations, 213  
 Inflammation, 127, 195  
 Infra- prefix, 3*t*  
 Infraspinal muscles, 64  
 Infundibulum, 226, 246, 425  
 Ingesta, 112, 121  
 Inguinal area, 20  
 Inguinal hernias, 126  
 Inhalation, 192, 353  
 Inhibit, 323  
 Inner ear, 298–300  
 Innervation, 268  
 Inotropes, 355  
 Inotropy, 165  
 Inspiration, 192  
 Inspiratory reserve volume, 192*t*  
 Inspissation, 123  
 Insufficiency, 168  
 Insulin, 229, 230*f*  
 Insulinoma, 232  
 Intact, 322  
 Integumentary system  
   of birds, 423–424  
   combining forms, 30*t*  
   diagnostic procedures, 210–211  
   functions of, 203  
   pathology, 211–217  
   procedures, 217  
   skin  
   claws, 207–209  
   glands, 206  
   hair, 206–207  
   hooves, 207–209  
   nails, 207–209  
   overview, 204  
   stratification, 204–205  
   vestigial structures, 209–210  
 Inter- prefix, 2*t*–3*t*  
 Interatrial septum, 162  
 Interbrain, 270  
 Intercostal, 2*t*  
 Intercostal muscles, 64  
 Internal respiration, 193*f*  
 Interneurons, 275*f*  
 Internus muscles, 64  
 Interosseous, 51  
 Interstitial cells, 243  
 Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone (ICSH), 227  
 Interstitial cystitis, 149  
 Interstitial fluid, 318  
 Interstitial pneumonia, 195  
 Interventricular septum, 162  
 Intervertebral disc disease (IVDD), 56, 57*f*, 278  
 Intervertebral discs, 47, 272  
 Intestinal flora, 114  
 Intestinal obstructions, 127, 128*f*  
 Intestines, overview, 116–119  
 Intra- prefix, 2*t*–3*t*  
 Intra-arterial (IA), 170, 353  
 Intracapsular extraction, 297  
 Intracranial, 269  
 Intradermal (ID), 353  
 Intradermal skin testing, 210*f*, 211  
 Intramedullary pins, 359*f*, 360  
 Intramuscular (IM), 2*t*, 354  
 Intraocular, 289, 354  
 Intraocular pressure, 294  
 Intraop, 356  
 Intraosseous, 354  
 Intraperitoneal, 354  
 Intrathecal, 354  
 Intratracheal, 354  
 Intravenous (IV), 170, 354  
 Intravenous pyelograms (IVP), 146  
 Intromission, 249  
 Intumescence, 271  
 Intussusception, 126  
 Invasive, 323  
 Inversion, 356  
 Involucrum, 356  
 Ionized, 352  
 Ipsi- prefix, 279  
 Ipsilateral, 279  
 Ir/i combining form, 292  
 Iridectomy, 297  
 Irid/o combining form, 292  
 Iridocorneal, 292  
 Iris, 292  
 Iritis, 296  
 Irit/o combining form, 292  
 Ir/o combining form, 292  
 Irregular bones, 42*t*

Ischemia, 162, 176  
 Ischium, 52–53  
 Isch/o combining form, 176  
 Islets of Langerhans, 229  
 Isoechoic, 343  
 Isografts, 356  
 Isotonic solution, 352, 353f  
 Isthmus, 425  
 -Itis suffix, 3  
 IV (intravenous), 170, 354  
 IVDD (intervertebral disc disease), 56, 57f, 278  
 IVP (intravenous pyelograms), 146

## J

Jack asses, 99  
 Jacks, 99  
 Jaundice, 126, 127f  
 Jejun/o combining form, 117  
 Jejunks, 117  
 Jennies, 99  
 Jills, 98  
 Jog, 380  
 Joint mice, 57  
 Joints, overview, *See also names of specific joints*, 43–44, 45f  
 Jowls, 82  
 Jugular vein, 170  
 Jumper bulls, 100  
 Jumpers, 386  
 Juvenile pyoderma, 216

## K

Keel, 425  
 Keratectomy, 297  
 Keratin, 204  
 Keratinization, 205t  
 Kerat/o combining form, 204, 291  
 Keratocentesis, 298  
 Keratoconjunctivitis, 296  
 Keratoplasty, 298  
 Keratosis, 215  
 Keratotomy, 298  
 Ketoacidosis, 231  
 Ketones tests, 148t  
 Ketonuria, 147t  
 Kg (kilograms), 355  
 Kidding, 100  
 Kidneys, overview, 142–144  
 Kids, 100  
 Kilograms (kg), 355  
 Kilovoltage peak (kVp), 340  
 Kindling, 98  
 Kinesi/o combining form, 63  
 Kinesiology, 63  
 -Kinesis suffix, 63  
 Kits, 98  
 Kittens, 98  
 Knees  
   of cattle, 78  
   of goats, 78

of horses, 76  
 overview, 50, 53  
 of sheep, 81  
 of swine, 82  
 Knocked-down hip, 389f  
 KVP (kilovoltage peak), 340  
 Kyphosis, 56

## L

L (liters), 355  
 L (lumbar), 4, 274  
 Labia, 106, 247  
 Labial surfaces, 20  
 Labile, 339  
 Labi/o combining form, 106  
 Labor, 252  
 Laboratory terminology, 333–337, 438t–441t  
 Labyrinth/o combining form, 298  
 Laceration, 215, 356  
 Lacrimal, 47  
 Lacrimal apparatus, 291  
 Lacrimal canaliculi, 291  
 Lacrimal sac, 291  
 Lacrimal sinus, 188t  
 Lacrimation, 291  
 Lacrim/o combining form, 291  
 Lacrimotomy, 298  
 Lactation, 253  
 Lacteals, 318, 319f  
 Lactiferous ducts, 247  
 Lactiferous sinus, 247  
 Lact/o combining form, 228  
 Lactogenic hormone, 227  
 Lagomorphs, 98, 108t, 448–450  
 Lambing, 100  
 Lambs, 100, 402  
 Lamina/laminae, 47, 54, 382  
 Laminectomy, 60, 281  
 Laminitis, 382, 383f, 389f  
 Lance, 217  
 Lanolin, 402  
 Lapar/o combining form, 112, 130  
 Laparotomy, 4, 130  
 Lapins, 98  
 Lard, 412  
 Large intestine, overview, 117–119  
 Laryngeal, 4  
 Laryngectomy, 196  
 Laryngitis, 195  
 Laryng/o combining form, 29t  
 Laryngopharynx, 188  
 Laryngoplasty, 196  
 Laryngoplegia, 195  
 Laryngoscopes, 193  
 Laryngoscopy, 193  
 Laryngospasm, 195  
 Larynx, 189  
 Laser, 217  
 Latent infection, 439t  
 Lateral, 18t, 19f

Lateral projection, 341t  
 Lateral recumbency, 22, 23f  
 Lateral tail feathers, 423  
 Lather, 386  
 Latissimus muscles, 64  
 Lavage, 356  
 Laxity, 66  
 Layers (chickens), 427  
 Layers, heart, 162, 163f  
 Lead rope, 398  
 Leads, 167  
 Left atrioventricular valve, 165  
 Left laryngeal hemiplegia, 195  
 Left lateral recumbency, 22  
 Left shift, 317  
 Leg cues, 386  
 Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease, 56  
 Legumes, 401  
 Leiomyositis, 66  
 Lens, 292  
 Lensectomy, 298  
 -Lepso suffix, 278  
 Leptomeninges, 268  
 Leptospirosis, 371, 405, 414  
 Lesions  
   defined, 215  
   skin, 214f  
 Lesser omentum, 112  
 Lethal, 339  
 Lethargy, 126, 276  
 Leucopoiesis, 313  
 Leukemia, 317  
 Leuk/o combining form, 3  
 Leukocytes, 312f, 313–316  
 Leukocytopoiesis, 313  
 Leukocytosis, 317  
 Leukoencephalomalacia, 278  
 Leukograms, 334t  
 Leukopenia, 317  
 Levator muscles, 64  
 Levator palpebrae muscles, 290  
 Levels of consciousness, 276  
 Leydig's cells, 243  
 LH (luteinizing hormone), 227  
 Libido, 257  
 Lice, 215  
 Ligament/o combining form, 44  
 Ligaments, 44, 63f  
 Ligate, 356  
 Ligation, 361  
 Ligature, 356, 361  
 Light horses, 388  
 Limbic system, 272  
 Limbs  
   front, 47–52  
   rear, 52–54  
 Limbus, 292  
 Linea alba, 62, 63f  
 Linear granulomas, 213  
 Lines, of bones, 54  
 Lingual surface, 20, 106  
 Lingu/o combining form, 106

Lipase, 120–121  
 Lipemia, 317  
 Lipemic serum, 317  
 Lipids, 205  
 Lip/o combining form, 317  
 Lipomas, 215  
 Lipophilic, 352  
 Lips, 106, 247  
 Liters (L), 355  
 -Lith suffix, 148  
 -Lithiasis suffix, 125, 149  
 Lith/o combining form, 148  
 Lithotripsy, 151  
 Litters, 98, 252  
 Llamas, 100, 108*t*, 404*f*  
 Lobectomy, 197, 232  
 Lobes, 190  
 Lob/o combining form, 190  
 Local anesthesia, 280  
 Localized cellulitis, 212  
 Location, muscle, 64  
 Lockjaw, 389  
 -Logy suffix, 18–19, 241, 340  
 Loins, 76, 78–79, 81–82  
 Long bones, 42*t*, 44*f*  
 Long pastern bone, 51, 52*f*  
 Longe, 386  
 Longissimus muscles, 64  
 Loop of Henle, 143*t*  
 Loose connective tissue, 26*f*  
 Lophodont animals, 111  
 Lordosis, 56  
 Lore, 425  
 Louse, 215  
 Lower GI, 341  
 Lower respiratory tract, 186, 189–191  
 LSA (lymphosarcoma), 324  
 Lumbar (L), 4, 274  
 Lumbar vertebrae, 48*f*–49*f*  
 Lumbosacral intumescence, 271  
 Lumbosacral plexus, 274  
 Lumen, 168  
 Luminous, 343  
 Lumpectomy, 356  
 Lung volume terminology, 192*t*  
 Lunge, 386  
 Lungs, 190  
 Lungworm eggs, 123*f*  
 Luster, 370  
 Luteal phase, 249  
 Luteinizing hormone (LH), 227  
 Lute/o combining form, 227, 292  
 Luteotropin, 227  
 Luxation, 57  
 Lyme disease, 371  
 Lymph, 318  
 Lymph capillaries, 318  
 Lymph nodes, 319*f*  
 Lymphadenectomy, 325  
 Lymphadenitis, 323  
 Lymphadenopathy, 323  
 Lymphangiography, 341

Lymphangioma, 323  
 Lymphatic system  
   combining forms, 29*t*  
   functions of, 318  
   lymph fluid, 318  
   lymph nodes, 318  
   lymph vessels, 318  
   pathology, 323  
   procedures, 323  
   spleen, 318–320  
   thymus, 320  
   tonsils, 318  
 Lymph/o combining form, 29*t*, 318  
 Lymphocytes, 312*f*, 314*f*, 315*t*, 320  
 Lymphocytosis, 317  
 Lymphoid, 318  
 Lymphoma, 324  
 Lymphopenia, 317  
 Lymphosarcoma (LSA), 324  
 Lysis, 316  
 -Lysis suffix, 4  
 Lysosomes, 24*f*

## M

M (meters), 355  
 Macaws, 424*f*  
 Mackerel tabbies, 369  
 Macr/o combining form, 313  
 Macrocephaly, 278  
 Macrocytic, 315*t*  
 Macroenvironment, 439*t*  
 Macrophages, 205, 313, 322  
 Macula lutea, 292  
 Macula/maculae, 215, 300  
 Macular degeneration, 296  
 Macule, 214*f*, 215  
 Macul/o combining form, 292  
 Maggots, 215  
 Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 342  
 Magnets, 398  
 Magnum, 46, 271, 425  
 Maiden mares, 99  
 Major muscles, 64  
 Malabsorption, 126  
 -Malacia suffix, 5  
 Male reproductive system  
   accessory sex glands, 244  
   ductus deferens, 243–244  
   epididymis, 243  
   penis, 245  
   scrotum, 242  
   testes, 242–243  
   urethra, 244  
 Male symbol, 100  
 Malignant, 323  
 Malignant melanomas, 215  
 Malignant tumors, 27  
 Malleolus, 54  
 Malleus, 298  
 Malocclusion, 127  
 Malpresentation, 398  
 Mammary glands, 247  
 Mammary veins, 399  
 Mamm/o combining form, 247  
 Mandibles, 46  
 Mandibular salivary glands, 110  
 Mandibular symphysis, 43  
 Manes, 76  
 Mange, 215  
 Manipulation, 59  
 Man/o combining form, 170  
 Mantle, 423  
 Manubrium, 47  
 Marbling, 398  
 Mares, 99  
 Markings, on horses, 382–384  
 Marrow, 43  
 MAS (milliamperes per second), 340  
 Mast cell tumors (MCTs), 324, 325*f*  
 Mast cells, 205  
 Mastectomy, 4, 256  
 Mastication, 112, 121  
 Mastitis, 253, 254*f*  
 Mast/o combining form, 247  
 Mating, 249  
 Maxilla, 46  
 Maxillary sinus, 188*t*  
 Maximus muscles, 64  
 MCTs (mast cell tumors), 324, 325*f*  
 Measures, pharmacology, 355  
 Meat, 430  
 Meat/o combining form, 145  
 Meatus, 54, 186  
 Meckel's diverticulum, 425  
 Meconium, 252  
 Medial, 18*t*, 19*f*  
 Median plane, 18, 19*f*  
 Mediastinum, 162, 190–191  
 Medius muscles, 64  
 Medulla, 142, 206–207  
 Medulla oblongata, 269*f*–270*f*, 271  
 Medullary cavity, 43  
 Medull/o combining form, 142, 228  
 Megacolon, 127  
 Megaesophagus, 127  
 Megakaryocytes, 316  
 -Megaly suffix, 5  
 Meibomian glands, 290  
 Meiosis, 250  
 Melanin, 204  
 Melan/o combining form, 204  
 Melanocytes, 204  
 Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), 228  
 Melanomas, 215, 216*f*, 324  
 Melatonin, 230  
 Melena, 127  
 Membranes, 20  
 Memory T cells, 322  
 Menace response, 293  
 Mendel, Johann Gregor, 243  
 Meninges, 268–269  
 Meningi/o combining form, 268

- Meningioma, 278  
 Meningitis, 278  
 Mening/o combining form, 268  
 Meningocele, 278  
 Meningoencephalitis, 278  
 Meningoencephalomyelitis, 278  
 Meninx/meninges, 268  
 Meniscus, 43  
 Mental glands, 452  
 Mesaticephalic dogs, 46  
 Mesencephalon, 271*f*, 272*t*  
 Mesenteric lymph nodes, 320*f*  
 Mesentery, 21, 116  
 Mesial contact surface, 20  
 Meso- prefix, 25  
 Mesocephalic dogs, 46  
 Mesoderm, 251  
 Mesothelium, 25  
 Meta- prefix, 3*t*  
 Metabolic acidosis, 192  
 Metabolic alkalosis, 192  
 Metabolism, 120  
 Metacarpal pads, 207  
 Metacarpals, 50–51, 52*f*  
 Metanephric, 439*t*  
 Metaphysis, 42*t*  
 Metastasis/metastases, 324  
 Metastasis, 324  
 Metatarsal pads, 207  
 Metatarsals, 54  
 Metencephalon, 271*f*, 272*t*  
 -Meter suffix, 170  
 Meters (m), 355  
 Metr/i combining form, 30*t*  
 Metri/o combining form, 30*t*, 246  
 Metritis, 253  
 Metr/o combining form, 30*t*, 246  
 Mg (milligrams), 355  
 Mice, 98, 108*t*, 442–444  
 Micro- prefix, 266  
 Microcephaly, 278  
 Microcytic, 315*t*  
 Microenvironment, 439*t*  
 Microfilariae, 174  
 Microfilaricide, 174  
 Microglia, 266  
 Microhematocrit centrifuge, 336*f*  
 Microhematocrit tubes, 335*f*  
 Microorganisms, 337  
 Microphthalmia, 296  
 Microphthalmos, 296  
 Micturition, 144  
 Midbrain, 270–271, 272*t*  
 Middle ear, 298  
 Midline, 18  
 Midsagittal plane, 18, 19*f*  
 Milk solids, 399  
 Milk teeth, 110, 382  
 Milk veins, 399  
 Milk well, 399  
 Milk yield, 399  
 Milking, 399  
 Milk-related terminology, 398–401  
 Milliampere per second (MAS), 340  
 Milligrams (mg), 355  
 Milliliter (mL), 355  
 Millimeter (mm), 355  
 Mineralocorticoids, 228–229  
 Miniature horses, 388  
 Minimal volume, 192*t*  
 Minimus muscles, 64  
 Minor muscles, 64  
 Miosis, 292  
 Miotic agents, 355  
 Mites, 215  
 Mitochondria, 24*f*  
 Mitral valve, 165  
 Mitral valve insufficiency, 176  
 Mitral valve prolapse, 176  
 ML (milliliters), 355  
 Mm (millimeters), 355  
 Molars, 107  
 Mold, 338*t*  
 Molting, 423  
 Monestrous, 249  
 Mongrel, 369  
 Monkey mouth, 381*f*, 382  
 Mono- prefix, 297  
 Monochromatism, 296  
 Monocytes, 312*f*, 314*f*, 315*t*, 322  
 Monocytopenia, 317  
 Monocytosis, 317  
 Monofilament, 361  
 Monogamous, 439*t*  
 Monogastric animals, 112  
 Monoplegia, 278  
 Monorchid, 253  
 Monovalent, 352  
 Moose, 100  
 Morbid, 339  
 Morbidity, 339  
 Moribund, 339  
 Morphology, 313  
 Mortality, 339  
 Motile sperm, 243  
 Motor neurons, 266, 275*f*  
 Mounting, 250  
 Mouse, 98, 108*t*, 442–444  
 Mouth  
     overview, 106–112  
     terminology, 20  
 Movement  
     horses, 380–381  
     muscular system, 63–64  
     terminology, 22  
 MRI (magnetic resonance imaging), 342  
 MSH (melanocyte-stimulating hormone), 228  
 Mucolytics, 196, 355  
 Mucous, 5–6  
 Mucous membrane, 186, 188  
 Mucus, 5–6, 188  
 Mules, 99. *See also* Horses  
 Multifilament, 361  
 Multigravida, 252  
 Multiparous, 252  
 Multiplication, 323  
 Murines, 98, 439*t*  
 Muscle fiber, 61  
 Muscle insertion, 63  
 Muscle origin, 63  
 Muscle tissue, 25, 26*f*  
 Muscular system  
     aponeurosis, 62–63  
     combining forms, 29*t*  
     connective tissue, 61  
     diagnostic procedures, 64  
     fascia, 61  
     functions of, 61  
     movement, 63  
     muscle fibers, 61  
     names of muscles, 63–64  
     pathology, 65  
     procedures, 65  
     tendons, 61–62  
 Musculoskeletal system, 41, 425  
 Musk glands, 452  
 Mutagens, 253  
 Mutton, 402  
 Muzzles  
     of cattle, 78  
     of dogs and cats, 83  
     of goats, 79  
     of horses, 76  
     of sheep, 81  
 Myasthenia, 66  
*Mycoplasma*, 414  
 Mydriasis, 292  
 Mydriatic agents, 355  
 Mydriatics, 294  
 Myectomy, 66  
 Myelencephalon, 271*f*, 272*t*  
 Myelin, 267  
 Myelin sheath, 267  
 Myelitis, 278  
 Myel/o combining form, 29*t*, 268, 271, 313  
 Myelodysplasia, 317  
 Myelograms, 276  
 Myelography, 276  
 Myeloma, 57, 324  
 Myelopathy, 278  
 Myiasis, 215  
 My/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Myocarditis, 176  
 Myocardium, 162  
 Myoclonus, 66, 277  
 Myometrium tissue, 246  
 Myomorpha, 442  
 Myoparesis, 278  
 Myopathy, 66  
 Myoplasty, 66  
 Myorrhesis, 4  
 Myosarcoma, 324  
 Myositis, 66  
 Myotomy, 66  
 Myotonia, 66

Myringectomy, 303  
 Myringitis, 301  
 Myring/o combining form, 298  
 Myxoma, 324

## N

Nails, overview, 207–209  
 Nape, 425  
 Narc/o combining form, 278  
 Narcolepsy, 278  
 Nares, 186  
 Nasal, 47  
 Nasal cavity, 187*f*  
 Nasal gland, 422  
 Nasal septum, 47  
 Nasal turbinates, 186, 187*f*  
 Nas/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Nasogastric intubation, 130  
 Nasogastric tube, 186  
 Nasolacrimal duct, 291  
 Nasopharynx, 188  
 Natural cover, 387  
 Naturally acquired active immunity, 322  
 Naturally acquired passive immunity, 322  
 Nausea, 127  
 Navel, 21, 250  
 Navicular bone, 52  
 Near side, 387  
 Nebulization, 354  
 Necropsy, 361  
 Necrosis, 162, 213  
 Necrotic, 213  
 Needle biopsy, 361  
 Needle teeth, 110, 412, 414*f*  
 Needles, 361  
 Neo- prefix, 27  
 Neonates, 252  
 Neoplasia, 27  
 Neoplasms, 323  
 Nephrectasis, 149  
 Nephrectomy, 151  
 Nephritis, 149  
 Nephro/o combining form, 29*t*, 229  
 Nephroliths, 149  
 Nephromalacia, 150  
 Nephrons, 142, 143*t*  
 Nephropathy, 150  
 Nephropexy, 151  
 Nephroptosis, 150  
 Nephrosclerosis, 150  
 Nephrosis, 150  
 Nephrotic, 4  
 Nephrotoxin, 150  
 Nerve fibers, 266  
 Nerve trunks, 266  
 Nerves, 266, 268  
 Nervous system  
   central, 268–272  
   combining forms, 29*t*  
   defined, 265  
   functions of, 265  
   nerves, 268  
   neurons, 266  
   pathology, 276–280  
   peripheral, 272–275  
   procedures, 280–281  
   supportive cells of, 266  
   surrounding tissue, 267–268  
   synapses, 266  
 Nervous tissue, 25, 27*f*  
 Neuralgia, 278  
 Neurectomy, 281  
 Neur/i combining form, 29*t*, 268  
 Neurilemma, 266  
 Neuritis, 278  
 Neur/o combining form, 29*t*, 268  
 Neuroanastomosis, 281  
 Neuroblastoma, 324  
 Neuroglia, 266  
 Neurohypophysis, 226  
 Neurolemma, 266  
 Neuromuscular junctions, 63  
 Neurons, 266, 267*f*  
 Neuroplasty, 281  
 Neurorrhaphy, 281  
 Neurotomy, 281  
 Neurotransmitters, 266  
 Neuter, 256  
 Neutropenia, 317  
 Neutrophilia, 317  
 Neutrophils, 312*f*, 314*f*, 315*t*  
 Nictitans, 291  
 Nictitating membrane, 291  
 Night blindness, 297  
 Night stool, 449  
 Nippers, 76, 382  
 Nociceptive receptors, 268  
 Nocturia, 147*t*  
 Nodes of Ranvier, 267–268  
 Nodules, 215  
 Noncontagious disease, 337  
 Noninfectious disease, 337  
 Nonionized, 352  
 Nonmyelinated fibers, 268  
 Nonparenteral, 354  
 Nonproprietary drugs, 351  
 Nor- prefix, 229  
 Noradrenaline, 229  
 Norepinephrine, 229  
 Normal sinus arrhythmia, 166  
 Normochromic, 315*t*  
 Normocytic, 315*t*  
 Nose, overview, 186–188  
 Nosocomial infection, 337  
 Nostrils, 186  
 Nothing orally (NPO), 354  
 Nuclear sclerosis, 297  
 Nucleolus, 24*f*  
 Nucleoplasm, 22  
 Nucleus pulposus, 272  
 Nucleus/nuclei, 22, 24*f*, 266  
 Nulligravida, 252  
 Number values, 27, 30*t*

Nutrients, 120  
 Nyctalopia, 297  
 Nystagmus, 280, 297

## O

Obesity, 370  
 Oblique fractures, 59  
 Oblique muscles, 64  
 Oblique projection, 341*t*  
 Obstructions, 127  
 Obtunded, 276  
 Occipital bone, 46  
 Occipital lobe, 270  
 Occiput, 425  
 Occlusal surfaces, 20  
 Occlusion, 127, 176  
 Ocular system, 289  
 Ocul/o combining form, 29*t*, 289  
 Oculomotor nerve (CN III), 273*f*, 273*t*  
 Oculus dexter (OD), 294  
 Oculus sinister (OS), 294  
 Oculus uterque (OU), 294  
 OD (oculus dexter), 294  
 Odont/o combining form, 106  
 Off side, 387  
 Offal, 398  
 Oil glands, 206  
 -Ole suffix, 169  
 Olecranon, 50  
 Olfact/o combining form, 188  
 Olfactory nerve (CN I), 273*f*, 273*t*  
 Olfactory receptors, 188  
 Oligo- prefix, 2*t*, 266  
 Oligodendrocytes, 266  
 Oligospermia, 253  
 Oliguria, 2*t*, 147*t*  
 -Oma suffix, 27, 232  
 Omasum, 114, 116*f*, 395  
 Omnivores, 117  
 Oncology, 323–325  
 Onychectomy, 51, 61  
 Onych/o combining form, 51  
 Onychomycosis, 215  
 Oocytes, 246  
 Oo/o combining form, 246  
 Oophorectomy, 257  
 Oophor/o combining form, 30*t*, 246  
 Opaque, 291  
 Open fractures, 59  
 Open herd, 414  
 Operations. *See* Surgical terminology  
 Ophthalm/o combining form, 29*t*, 289  
 Ophthalmoplegia, 297  
 Ophthalmoscope, 293  
 Ophthalmoscopy, 293  
 -Opia suffix, 295  
 Opisthotonos, 278  
 Opportunistic, 323  
 -Opsy suffix, 210  
 Opt/i combining form, 29*t*, 289  
 Optic chiasm, 269*f*–270*f*

- Optic disk, 292  
 Optic nerve (CN II), 273*f*, 273*t*  
 Optic/o combining form, 29*t*, 289  
 Opt/o combining form, 29*t*, 289  
 Oral administration (PO), 354  
 Oral cavity, 106  
 Oral surgery, 111  
 Orb, of eyeball, 291  
 Orbicularis muscles, 64  
 Orbit, 290  
 Orbital ring, 423  
 Orchiectomy, 257  
 Orchidectomy, 257  
 Orchid/o combining form, 30*t*, 242  
 Orchi/o combining form, 30*t*, 242  
 Orchitis, 253  
 Orch/o combining form, 30*t*, 242  
 Order, anatomical, 5  
 Organ of Corti, 300  
 Organs  
   combining forms, 29*t*–30*t*  
   defined, 27  
 Orgle, 404  
 Orifice, 247  
 Origin, muscle, 63  
 Or/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Orogastic intubation, 130  
 Oronasal fistulas, 127  
 Oropharynx, 188  
 Orthodontics, 111  
 OS (oculus sinister), 294  
 Os penis, 245  
 -Osis suffix, 5  
 Osmosis, 352, 353*f*  
 Oss/e combining form, 29*t*  
 Osselets, 388, 389*f*  
 Oss/i combining form, 29*t*  
 Ossification, 42  
 Ostealgia, 57  
 Ostectomy, 61  
 Osteitis, 57  
 Oste/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Osteoarthritis, 57  
 Osteoblasts, 43  
 Osteocentesis, 61  
 Osteochondrosis, 57  
 Osteochondrosis dissecans, 57  
 Osteoclasts, 43  
 Osteocytes, 43  
 Osteodesis, 61  
 Osteomalacia, 5, 57  
 Osteomyelitis, 57  
 Osteonecrosis, 57  
 Osteopexy, 61  
 Osteophytes, 57  
 Osteoplasty, 61  
 Osteoporosis, 57  
 Osteosarcoma, 325  
 Osteosclerosis, 57  
 Osteostomy, 61  
 Osteotomy, 61  
 Ostrich feathers, 430  
 Ostrich skin, 430  
 Ostriches, 99, 430  
 Otagia, 301  
 Otitis, 302  
 Otitis interna, 303  
 Ot/o combining form, 29*t*, 298  
 Otodectes cynotis, 303  
 Otodectes mites, 302*f*  
 Otoliths, 300  
 Otomycosis, 303  
 Otopathy, 303  
 Otoplasty, 303  
 Otopyorrhea, 303  
 Otorrhea, 303  
 Otos, 318  
 Otoscope, 301, 302*f*  
 Otoscopy, 301  
 OU (oculus uterque), 294  
 -Ous suffix, 4  
 Outbred, 440*t*  
 Outer ear, 298  
 Oval window, 298  
 Ovarian, 4  
 Ovarian arteries, 169  
 Ovarian cysts, 253  
 Ovaries, 226*f*, 230, 246  
 Ovari/o combining form, 30*t*, 246  
 Ovariohysterectomy, 5, 257  
 Over-the-counter drugs, 351  
 Ov/i combining form, 246  
 Oviducts, 246  
 Ovines. *See* Sheep  
 Oviparous, 252  
 Ov/o combining form, 246  
 Ovulation, 247, 249  
 Ovum/ova, 246  
 Oxen, 46*f*, 242*f*  
 Ox/i combining form, 192  
 Ox/o combining form, 192  
 Ox/y combining form, 192  
 Oxytocin, 228  
  
**P**  
 Pace, 380  
 Pachy- prefix, 268  
 Pachymeninx, 268  
 Packs, 98  
 Paddocks, 387  
 Palatal surfaces, 20  
 Palate, 106  
 Palatine, 46  
 Palatine sinus, 188*t*  
 Palat/o combining form, 106  
 Palatoplasty, 130  
 Palatoschisis, 127  
 Palliative, 339  
 Pallor, 216  
 Palmar, 18*t*  
 Palpation, 333  
 Palpebral, 290  
 Palpebral reflex, 293  
 Palpebra/palpabrae, 290  
 Palpitation, 166  
 Pan- prefix, 168  
 Pancreas, 120, 226*f*, 229  
 Pancreatectomy, 232  
 Pancreatitis, 232  
 Pancreat/o combining form, 29*t*, 229  
 Pancreatotomy, 232  
 Pancytopenia, 317  
 Pandemic, 337*t*  
 Panleukopenia, 3  
 Panophthalmitis, 297  
 Panotitis, 303  
 Pansystolic murmurs, 168  
 Panzootic, 337*t*  
 Papillae, 106  
 Papillary duct, 247, 399  
 Papilledema, 297  
 Papilloma, 216  
 Papules, 214*f*, 216  
 Para- prefix, 228, 279, 318  
 -Para suffix, 252  
 Parabronchi, 422  
 Paracentesis, 131  
 Paracostal incision, 360, 361*f*  
 Parainfluenza, 405  
 Parakeratosis, 216  
 Paralumar fossa, 76, 78–79, 81  
 Paralysis, 279  
 Paramedian incision, 360, 361*f*  
 Paraparesis, 278  
 Paraphimosis, 253, 254*f*  
 Paraplegia, 279  
 Parasites, 123*f*, 338*t*  
 Parasympathetic nervous system, 275  
 Parathormone, 228  
 Parathyroid glands, 226*f*, 228  
 Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 228  
 Parathyroidectomy, 232  
 Parenchyma, 120, 190  
 Parenteral, 354  
 -Paresis suffix, 278  
 Paresthesia, 279  
 Parietal bone, 45  
 Parietal layer, 162  
 Parietal lobe, 270  
 Parietal peritoneum, 21, 112  
 Parietal pleura, 191  
 Paronychia, 216  
 Parotid salivary glands, 110  
 Paroxysm, 166  
 Paroxysmal coughs, 196  
 Parrot mouth, 106, 381*f*, 382  
 Parrots, 98  
 Partial gastrectomy, 130  
 Partial obstructions, 127  
 Part/o combining form, 252  
 Parturient paresis, 398  
 Parturition, 252  
 Parvovirus, 414  
 Passeriformes, 429  
 Pastern, 76, 383*f*, 384

- Pastern joint  
   in cattle, 78  
   in goats, 80  
   in horses, 76  
   overview, 51  
   in sheep, 81  
   in swine, 82
- Pasteurella*, 415
- Pasteurellosis, 405
- Pasture mating, 387
- Pastures, 387
- Patches, 214*f*, 216
- Patella, 53
- Patent, 196
- Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), 176
- Pathogen, 337
- Pathogenic, 317
- Pathogenic organisms, 337
- Pathology  
   cardiovascular system, 172–177  
   defined, 19  
   digestive system, 123–129  
   integumentary system, 211–217  
   muscular system, 65  
   respiratory system, 194–196  
   skeletal system, 56–59  
   urinary system, 148–150
- Pathophysiology, 19
- Pathy suffix, 5
- Paunches, 114
- PDA (patent ductus arteriosus), 176
- Pectoral muscles, 64
- Pedals, 78, 80–81
- Pediculosis, 215
- Pedunculated, 323
- Pelts, 207
- Pelvic cavity, 20
- Pelvic flexures, 119
- Pelvis, 52, 53*f*
- Pemphigus, 216
- Pemphigus vulgaris, 216
- Pen/i combining form, 245
- Penia suffix, 3, 317
- Penis, 245
- Pepsin, 121
- Per os, 125
- Per- prefix, 3*t*
- Peracute, 337*t*
- Percent (%), 355
- Perception, 205
- Perch, 429
- Percussion, 193, 333
- Percutaneous, 354
- Percutaneous angioplasty, 177
- Perforating ulcers, 127
- Perfusion, 169
- Peri- prefix, 3, 247
- Perianal fistulas, 130
- Periapical abscesses, 127
- Pericardial fluid, 162
- Pericardial space, 162
- Pericarditis, 176
- Pericardium, 5, 162
- Perilymph, 298
- Perimetrium tissue, 247
- Perineal urethrostomy, 151
- Perine/o combining form, 242
- Perineum, 242, 247
- Periocular, 289
- Periodontal disease, 127
- Periodontal ligaments, 109
- Periodontia, 109
- Periodontics, 111
- Periodontitis, 127
- Perioperative, 3
- Periople, 208, 382
- Periorbita, 290
- Periosteum, 42*t*
- Periostitis, 57
- Peripheral nervous system (PNS)  
   ANS, 275  
   cranial nerves, 272–273  
   overview, 265, 266*f*  
   spinal nerves, 274–275
- Peristalsis, 121
- Peritoneal cavity, 20
- Peritoneal dialysis, 151
- Peritoneum, 20–21, 112
- Peritonitis, 21
- Perivascular, 170
- Permanent dentition, 107
- “Pertaining to” suffixes, 4
- Petechiae, 216
- Pexy suffix, 4
- PH tests, 148*t*
- Phac/o combining form, 292
- Phage suffix, 313
- Phagia suffix, 125
- Phagocytes, 313
- Phagocytosis, 317
- Phalanges, 51, 52*f*, 54
- Phalanx, 51
- Pharmacodynamics, 353
- Pharmacokinetics, 353
- Pharmacologic terminology  
   drug categories, 354–355  
   pharmacology, 351–353  
   routes of administration, 353–354  
   weights and measures, 355
- Pharmacology, defined, 351
- Pharyngitis, 195
- Pharyng/o combining form, 29*t*
- Pharyngoplasty, 197
- Pharyngostomy, 197
- Pharyngotomy, 197
- Pharynx, 112, 188–189
- Phenotypes, 440*t*
- Phe/o combining form, 232
- Pheochromocytoma, 232
- Philia suffix, 316
- Phimosis, 253
- Phleb/o combining form, 29*t*
- Phlegm, 193
- Phobias, 339
- Phonation, 195
- Photophobia, 297
- Phragm/o combining form, 191
- Phren/o combining form, 191
- Phylogeny, 440*t*
- Physal fractures, 59
- Physiology, 19
- Physis, 42
- Phyt/o combining form, 207
- Pia, 268
- Pia mater, 268, 269*f*
- Pica, 127
- Piglets, 99
- Pigs  
   alopecia, 212*f*  
   common terminology, 99  
   dental formula, 108*t*  
   equipment and industry terminology, 412–414  
   genital organs  
     female, 248*f*  
     male, 242*f*  
   management terminology, 414  
   overview, 411  
   vaccinations of, 414–415
- Piles, 412
- Pil/i combining form, 206
- Pil/o combining form, 206
- Piloerection, 207
- Pin feathers, 423
- Pincher, 384
- Pinching, 398
- Pineal body, 230
- Pineal gland, 226*f*, 230, 269*f*–270*f*
- Pinelectomy, 232
- Pineal/o combining form, 30*t*, 230
- Pinealopathy, 232
- Pinioning, 428
- Pinna, 83, 298
- Pinn/i combining form, 298
- Pinning, 356
- Pins, 53, 78, 80
- Pithing, 440*t*
- Pituitarism, 232
- Pituitary, 226*f*
- Pituitary gland, 226–228, 269*f*–270*f*
- Pituit/o combining form, 30*t*, 226
- Placebo, 353
- Placenta, 249
- Placentome, 251
- Planes, 18–19
- Plantar, 18*t*
- Plantigrade animals, 207
- Plaque, 127, 172, 214*f*, 216
- Plasia suffix, 25
- Plasm suffix, 22
- Plasma, 312*f*, 313
- Plasma cells, 321
- Plasma membrane, 22, 24*f*
- Plastron, 452
- Plasty suffix, 4
- Platelets, 316

- Plegia suffix, 279
- Pleura, 191
- Pleural effusion, 174, 195
- Pleural space, 191
- Pleurectomy, 197
- Pleurisy, 195
- Pleuritis, 195
- Pleurodont animals, 111
- Pleuropneumonia, 195
- Plex/o combining form, 268
- Plexus/plexi, 268, 274
- PLR (pupillary light reflex), 276, 293
- Plumb line, 387
- Plume, 423
- PMNs (polymorphonuclear leukocytes), 315t
- Pnea suffix, 192
- Pneu combining form, 190
- Pneumatic bones, 42t
- Pneum/o combining form, 29t
- Pneumocystography, 146
- Pneumonectomy, 197
- Pneumonia, 195
- Pneumon/o combining form, 29t
- Pneumothorax, 195, 196f
- Pneumovagina, 253
- PNS. *See* Peripheral nervous system
- PO (oral administration), 354
- Pocket pet terminology, 438t–441t
- Poiesis suffix, 145, 312
- Poietic suffix, 43
- Poikilocytosis, 315t
- Pointing, 380
- Points, 370, 384
- Poli/o combining form, 279
- Polioencephalomalacia, 279
- Polioencephalomyelitis, 279
- Poliomyelitis, 279
- Poll evil, 388, 389f
- Pollakiuria, 147t
- Polled breeds, 209, 210f
- Polls, 76, 78, 80–81
- Poly- prefix, 2t
- Polychromasia, 315t
- Polycythemia, 317
- Polydactyly, 369
- Polydipsia, 127, 150
- Polyestrous, 249
- Polygamous, 440t
- Polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs), 315t
- Polyneuritis, 279
- Polyphagia, 127
- Polyps, 127, 195, 216
- Polyradiculoneuritis, 279
- Polytocous, 440t
- Polyuria, 2t, 147t, 150
- Polyvalent, 353
- Ponies, 99, 388. *See also* Horses
- Ponies of Americas, 388
- Pons, 269f–270f, 271
- Popliteal sesamoid, 53
- Porcine proliferative enteropathy, 415
- Porcine respiratory and reproductive syndrome (PRRS), 415
- Porcines. *See* Pigs
- Portosystemic shunts, 128
- Positional terminology, 17–18
- Post- prefix, 2t
- Postanesthetic, 2t
- Posterior, 18t
- Posterior chamber, 292
- Posterior pituitary gland, 226, 228
- Postictal stage, 280
- Postop, 357
- Postoperative, 3
- Postpartum, 252
- Postprandial samples, 122
- Postrenal, 150
- Potomac horse fever, 388
- Poultry, 98, 427
- Poults, 98
- PPD (purified protein derivative), 211
- Pre- prefix, 2t
- Preadnesthetic, 2t
- Preen gland, 424
- Prefixes, *See also* names of specific prefixes, 2–3, 27, 30
- Pregnancy, 250–252
- Pregn/o combining form, 251
- Prehensile, 440t
- Prehension, 121
- Preictal stage, 280
- Preload, 166
- Premixing, 401
- Premolars, 107
- Preop, 357
- Preoperative, 3
- Preprandial samples, 122
- Prepuce, 245
- Prerenal, 150
- Prescription drugs, 351
- Presentation, 252
- Press/i combining form, 228
- Pressure, blood, 170–171
- Prevalence, 339
- Priapism, 254
- Priap/o combining form, 245
- Prickle, 205t
- Primary bronchus, 190
- Primary feathers, 423
- Primary hairs, 207
- Primigravida, 252
- Principal bronchus, 190
- Pro- prefix, 249, 313
- Procedural suffixes, 4
- Procedures. *See also* Diagnostic procedures
  - cardiovascular system, 177
  - digestive system, 129–131
  - integumentary system, 217
  - muscular system, 65
  - respiratory system, 196–197
  - skeletal system, 60–61
  - urinary system, 150–151
- Processes, 47, 54
- Proct/o combining form, 119
- Proestrus, 249
- Profile, 334t
- Progenitor, 440t
- Progeny, 440t
- Progesterone, 230
- Prognathia, 106
- Prognosis, 337t
- Prokaryotes, 338t
- Prolactin, 227
- Prolapses, 128, 150
- Pronation, 22
- Pronator muscles, 64
- Prone, 22
- Pronunciation, 5–6
- Propagating, 440t
- Prophylaxis, 174, 339, 353
- Proprioceptive receptors, 268
- Proptosis, 297
- Prosencephalon, 271f, 272t
- Prostate gland, 244
- Prostatitis, 254
- Prostat/o combining form, 244
- Prostatomegaly, 253
- Prosthesis, 360
- Protease, 121
- Protein tests, 148t
- Proteinuria, 147t
- Prothrombin, 313
- Prothrombin time, 334t
- Prot/o combining form, 22
- Protocol, 440t
- Protoplasm, 22
- Protuberances, 54
- Proven, 398
- Proventriculus, 425
- Proximal, 18t
- Proximal convoluted tubules, 143t
- Proximal epiphysis, 42t
- PRRS (porcine respiratory and reproductive syndrome), 415
- Pruritus, 216
- Pseudo- prefix, 254
- Pseudocyesis, 254
- Pseudohermaphroditism, 253
- Pseudopregnancy, 254
- Pseudorabies, 415
- Psittacines, 98, 429
- Pterygoid bone, 46
- Pterylae, 423
- PTH (parathyroid hormone), 228
- Ptosis suffix, 150, 279
- Ptyalism, 112
- Pubic symphysis, 43, 52
- Pubis, 52
- Pudendum, 247
- Puller, 384
- Pullets, 98
- Pulm/o combining form, 190
- Pulmonary edema, 195
- Pulmonary fibrosis, 195

Pulmonary semilunar valve, 163  
 Pulmonic stenosis, 176  
 Pulmon/o combining form, 174  
 Pulp, 109  
 Pulse, 170, 332  
 Pulse detection, 168  
 Pulse rate, 332  
 Punctum, 291  
 Pupillary light reflex (PLR), 276, 293  
 Pupill/o combining form, 292  
 Pupils, 292  
 Puppy pyoderma, 216  
 Puppy strangles, 216  
 Pups, 98  
 Purebred, 369  
 Purified protein derivative (PPD), 211  
 Purkinje fibers, 165  
 Purpura, 216  
 Purulent, 216  
 Pus, 195, 216  
 Pustule, 214f, 216  
 Putrefaction, 213  
 Pyelitis, 150  
 Pyel/o combining form, 143  
 Pyelonephritis, 150  
 Pygostyle, 425  
 Pyloric sphincter, 112  
 Pylor/o combining form, 112  
 Pylorus, 112  
 Pyoderma, 216  
 Pyometra, 254f  
 Pyothorax, 195  
 Pyrexia, 331  
 Pyr/o combining form, 331  
 Pyuria, 147t

## Q

Quadratus muscles, 64  
 Quadriceps, 64  
 Quadriplegia, 280  
 Quadrupeds, 20  
 Quarantine, 370  
 Quarter crack, 388, 389f  
 Quarters, 76, 78, 247  
 Queening, 98  
 Queens, 98  
 Quick, 208, 209f  
 Quickening, 208  
 Quick-release knot, 387  
 Quidding, 128, 382  
 Quittor, 382, 388, 389f

## R

Rabbits, 98, 108t, 448–450  
 Rabies, 371, 388  
 Race, 383f, 384  
 Rachis, 423  
 Rack, 381, 440t  
 Radiation absorbed dose (rad), 340  
 Radiation therapy, 325

Radiculitis, 279  
 Radicul/o combining form, 279  
 Radioactive iodine uptake tests, 230  
 Radiographic contrast medium, 341  
 Radiographic machine, 340f  
 Radiographs, 171, 174f, 324, 340  
 Radiography  
   of cardiovascular system, 171  
   of digestive system, 122  
   of reproductive system, 253  
   of respiratory system, 193, 194f  
   of urinary system, 146  
 Radioimmunoassay, 334t  
 Radiology, 56, 340–341  
 Radiolucent, 340  
 Radiopaque, 340  
 Radius, 44f, 50, 55f, 340  
 Rales, 192  
 Rams, 100  
 Ramus, 54  
 Range of motion, 63  
 Rasp, 384  
 Ratchet, 359f  
   defined, 360  
 Ration, 401  
 Ratites, 99, 430  
 Rats, 98, 108t, 442–444  
*Rattus norvegicus* (brown rat), 442  
*Rattus rattus* (black rat), 442  
 RBCs (red blood cells), 312f, 313, 314f, 315t  
 Reagent strips, 336f  
 Rear limbs, 52–54  
 Receptors, 268  
 Rectal, 354  
 Rectal palpation, 398  
 Rect/o combining form, 119  
 Rectrices, 423  
 Rectum, 117  
 Rectus muscles, 64  
 Recumbency, 22, 23f, 341  
 Red blood cells (RBCs), 312f, 313, 314f, 315t  
 Red bone marrow, 43  
 Red cell count, 334t  
 Redeglutition, 117  
 Reduction, 59, 440t  
 Refinement, 440t  
 Reflex ovulators, 249, 368  
 Reflexes, 268  
 Refraction, 293  
 Refractometers, 335  
 Regimen, 353  
 Regurgitation, 114, 117, 128, 176  
 Relaxation, 63  
 Remastication, 114, 117  
 Remiges, 424  
 Remission, 337t  
 Renal, 4  
 Renal arteries, 169  
 Renal failure, 150  
 Renal infarction, 150

Renal pelvis, 143  
 Renal veins, 170  
 Rendering, 398  
 Ren/o combining form, 29t, 228–229  
 Replacements, 398  
 Reproductive system  
   afterbirth, 249–251  
   birth, 252–253  
   combining forms, 30t  
   estrous cycle, 247–249  
   female, 245–247  
   functions of, 242  
   male, 242–245  
   mating, 249  
   overview, 241  
   pathology, 253–255  
   pregnancy, 251–252  
   procedures, 255–257  
 Reptiles, 450–453  
 Resalivation, 117  
 Resect, 357  
 Residual volume, 192t  
 Resistant, 323  
 Resolution, 343  
 Respiration, 185, 332  
 Respiratory acidosis, 192  
 Respiratory alkalosis, 192  
 Respiratory rate (RR), 192  
 Respiratory system  
   of birds, 422  
   breathing, 192  
   combining forms, 29t  
   diagnostic procedures, 192–194  
   functions of, 185  
   lower respiratory tract, 189–191  
   pathology, 194–196  
   procedures, 196–197  
   upper respiratory tract, 186–189  
 Resuscitation, 177  
 Retained deciduous teeth, 107  
 Retained placenta, 254  
 Reticulocytes, 313  
 Reticulum, 114, 116f, 395  
 Retina, 292  
 Retinal detachment, 297  
 Retin/o combining form, 292  
 Retinopathy, 297  
 Retractable, 370  
 Retractor, 360  
 Retrograde, 146  
 Retrograde pyelograms, 147  
 Retroperitoneal, 21  
 Retroperitoneally, 142  
 Rhea skin, 430  
 Rheas, 99, 430  
 Rheumatoid arthritis, 57  
 Rhinitis, 196  
 Rhin/o combining form, 29t  
 Rhinoplasty, 4  
 Rhinopneumonitis, 196  
 Rhinorrhea, 196  
 Rhombencephalon, 271f, 272t

- Rhomboideus muscles, 64  
Rhoncus/rhonchi, 192  
Rhythm, heart, 165–166  
Rib cage, 47  
Ribosomes, 24*f*  
Ribs, 47  
Rickettsia, 338*t*  
Ridgelings, 99  
Right atrioventricular valve, 163  
Right lateral recumbency, 22  
Rigs, 99  
Ringbone, 388, 389*f*  
Ringing, 412  
Ringtails, 440*t*  
Roaring, 195, 279  
Rodent ulcer, 213  
Rodents  
    chinchillas, 447  
    gerbils, 446–447  
    guinea pigs, 444  
    hamsters, 444–446  
    mice, 442–444  
    rats, 442–444  
    terminology, 440*t*  
Rods, 292  
Roentgens, 340  
Rolling, 381  
Rongeurs, 360  
Roosters, 98–99  
Roots, 2  
Rosettes, 440*t*  
Rostral, 18*t*  
Rotation, 22  
Rotator muscles, 64  
Rotavirus, 415  
Rotovirus, 405  
Rough endoplasmic reticulum, 24*f*  
Roughage, 401  
Rouleaux, 314*f*, 315*t*  
Round window, 298  
Roundworm eggs, 123*f*  
RR (respiratory rate), 192  
-Rrhage suffix, 4  
-Rrhagia suffix, 4  
-Rrhaphy suffix, 4  
-Rrhea suffix, 4  
-Rrhexis suffix, 4  
Ruddy, 369  
Rudimentary, 440*t*  
Rudimentary clavicle, 50  
Ruga/rugae, 106, 112  
Rug/o combining form, 106  
Rumen, 114, 116*f*, 395  
Rumen fistulas, 129*f*  
Rumenostomy, 130  
Ruminal tympany, 124  
Ruminants  
    camelids, 403–404  
    cattle, 395–401  
    gastrointestinal tract, 113*f*, 118*f*  
    goats, 403  
    overview, 395  
    sheep, 401–403  
    stomach, 112, 114–116  
    vaccinations of, 404–405  
Ruminating, 398  
Rumination, 117  
Rump, 80–83, 425  
Rump post, 425  
Rumping, 402  
Running walk, 381  
Rupture, 357  
Ruptured discs, 56
- S**  
S (sacral), 274  
SA (sinoatrial) node, 165  
Sable, 440*t*  
Saccule, 300  
Sacculectomy, 357  
Sacral (S), 274  
Sacroiliac joint, 52  
Sacrum, 48*f*  
Saddle joint, 44  
Saddles, 387  
Sagittal plane, 18, 19*f*  
Saliva, 110  
Salivary glands, 110  
Salivary mucocele, 128  
Salping/o combining form, 246  
Salter-Harris fractures, 59  
Sarc/o combining form, 324  
Sarcomas, 216, 324  
Sarcoptic mange, 215  
Sartorius muscle, 64  
SC (subcutaneous), 354  
Scale, 214*f*, 216  
Scalenus muscles, 64  
Scalpels, 360  
Scapula, 50  
Scapus, 424  
Scars, 216  
SCC (squamous cell carcinoma), 325  
Scent gland, 452  
Schiotz tonometers, 294  
Schirmer tear test, 294  
Schwann cells, 266  
Sciuromorpha, 442  
Sclera, 291  
Scleral injection, 297  
Scleral ring, 425  
Scleritis, 297  
Scler/o combining form, 291  
-Sclerosis suffix, 5  
-Scope suffix, 3–4  
-Scopy suffix, 4  
Scotch hobble, 384  
Scouring, 402  
Scours, 128  
Scout films, 146, 340  
Scratches, 382, 389*f*  
Scrotal hydrocele, 254  
Scrotal structures, 244*f*  
Scrot/o combining form, 242  
Scrotum, 242  
Scurs, 398  
Scurvy, 440*t*  
Scutes, 452  
Seasonally, defined, 249  
Sebaceous cysts, 216  
Sebaceous glands, 206  
Seb/o combining form, 206  
Seborrhea, 216  
Sebum, 206  
Secondary bronchi, 190  
Secondary feathers, 424  
Secondary hairs, 207  
Sect, 357  
Segmental bronchi, 190  
Segmentation, 121  
Seizures, 279  
Selenodont animals, 111  
Self, 369  
Semen, 244  
Semicircular canals, 300  
Seminal vesicles, 244  
Semin/i combining form, 244  
Seminiferous tubules, 243  
Senses, 29*t*  
Sensorineural conduction, 300  
Sensory neurons, 266, 275*f*  
Septicemia, 317  
Sept/o combining form, 186  
Sequela, 195, 339  
Sequestrum, 57, 58*f*  
Serology, 334*t*  
Seroma, 357  
Serous layer, 162  
Serration, 360  
Serratus muscles, 64  
Sertoli cells, 243  
Serum, 313  
Sesamoid bones, 42*t*, 51–52  
Setae, 424  
Settle, 387  
Sex, 98  
Sexual dimorphism, 440*t*  
Sexual transmission, 339  
Shaft, 424  
Shape, muscle, 64  
Shearing, 402  
Shedding, 207, 211  
Sheen, 370  
Sheep  
    anatomical terminology, 80–81  
    common terminology, 100  
    dental formula, 108*t*  
    kidney, 143*f*  
    overview, 401–403  
Shin bones, 78, 80  
Shock, 177  
Shod, 387  
Shoebox, 440*t*  
Shoes, 384  
Short bones, 42*t*

- Short pastern bone, 51, 52*f*  
 Shoulder blade, 50  
 Shoulders, 76, 78, 80–83  
 Shunts, 128, 177  
 Sialaden/o combining form, 110  
 Sial/o combining form, 110  
 Sigmoid flexure, 245  
 Signalments, 331  
 Signs, defined, 337*t*  
 Silage, 401  
 Simple columnar epithelial tissue, 25*f*  
 Simple cuboidal epithelial tissue, 25*f*  
 Simple fractures, 58  
 Simple pattern hair growth, 207  
 Simple squamous epithelial tissue, 25*f*  
 Single-foot, 381  
 Singleton, 402  
 Sinoatrial (SA) node, 165  
 Sinus rhythm, 165  
 Sinuses, 46, 54, 188  
 Sinusitis, 196  
 Sinus/o combining form, 188  
 Sinusoids, 120  
 Sinusotomy, 197  
 Sires, 98  
 Skeletal muscle, 26*f*, 61*t*, 62*f*  
 Skeletal system  
   appendicular skeleton  
     front limbs, 47–52  
     rear limbs, 52–54  
   axial skeleton, 45–47  
   of birds, 422*f*  
   bones, 42–43, 54  
   bursa, 44–45  
   cartilage, 43  
   combining forms, 29*t*  
   connective tissue, 42  
   diagnostic procedures, 54, 56  
   functions of, 41  
   joints, 43–44  
   ligaments, 44  
   pathology, 56–59  
   of pigs, 412*f*  
   procedures, 60–61  
   of rabbits, 449*f*  
   of rodents, 443*f*  
   synovial membrane and fluid, 45  
   tendons, 44  
 Skin, *See also* Integumentary system  
   claws, 207–209  
   glands, 206  
   hair, 206–207  
   hooves, 207–209  
   nails, 207–209  
   overview, 204  
   stratification, 204–205  
   vestigial structures, 209–210  
 Skin lesions, 214*f*  
 Skin scrapes, 211  
 Skin tags, 216  
 Skulls, 46*f*  
 Slings, 360, 412  
 Slit lamp examination, 294  
 Small intestine, overview, 116–117  
 Smooth endoplasmic reticulum, 24*f*  
 Smooth mouth, 382  
 Smooth muscle, 26*f*, 61*t*, 62*f*  
 Snip, 383*f*, 384  
 Snood, 424  
 Snouts, 82, 186, 412  
 Snuffles, 196, 449, 451*f*  
 SOAP method, 334  
 Sock, 382, 383*f*  
 Soft palate, 106, 189  
 Soles  
   of cattle, 78  
   of goats, 80  
   of horses, 76  
   overview, 207–208  
   of sheep, 81  
 Soma, 266  
 Somatic cell count, 398  
 Somat/o combining form, 228  
 Somatotropin, 228  
 Sonograms, 343  
 Sore hocks, 450  
 Sore mouth, 213, 405  
 Sounds, heart, 167–168  
 Sows, 98–99  
 Spasticity, 280  
 Spavin, 388  
 Species-specific anatomical differences, 4  
 Specific pathogen free, 412  
 Spectacle, 453  
 Speculum, 333  
 Spelling, 6  
 Sperm, 243  
 Sperm nests, 425  
 Spermat/o combining form, 243  
 Spermatogenesis, 243  
 Spermatozoon, 243  
 Sperm/o combining form, 243  
 Sphenoid bones, 46  
 Sphenoid sinus, 188*t*  
 Spheroid joints, 43  
 Sphincter muscles, 64  
 Sphincters, 144, 246  
 Sphygm/o combining form, 170  
 Sphygmomanometers, 170, 332, 333*f*  
 Spina bifida, 280  
 Spinal cavity, 20  
 Spinal column, 47  
 Spinal cord, 271–272  
 Spinal ganglia, 275*f*  
 Spinal nerves, 274–275  
 Spines, 54  
 Spinous layer, 205*t*  
 Spinous process, 47  
 Spiral fractures, 59  
 Spir/o combining form, 192  
 Spirochetes, 338*t*  
 Spirometers, 193  
 Spitting, 404  
 Spleen, 318–320  
 Splenectomy, 323  
 Splen/o combining form, 29*t*, 320  
 Splenomegaly, 323  
 Splint bones, 51  
 Splints, 360, 361*f*, 388, 389*f*  
 Spondylitis, 58  
 Spondyl/o combining form, 47  
 Spondylosis, 58  
 Spondylosis deformans, 58  
 Spontaneous ovulators, 249  
 Spot, 383*f*, 384  
 Spotter bulls, 398  
 Spraying, 369  
 Spring lambs, 100  
 Springing, 398  
 Springing heifers, 100  
 Sprites, 98  
 Spurs, 424  
 Sputums, 193  
 SQ (subcutaneous), 354  
 Squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), 325  
 Squamous epithelium, 204  
 Stags, 99–100  
 Stallions, 99, 245*f*  
 Stalls, 398  
 -Stalsis suffix, 121  
 Stanchions, 397*f*, 398  
 Standing heat, 247, 249, 398  
 Stapes, 298  
 Staphylococci, 338*t*  
 Stapling, 361  
 Star, 383*f*, 384  
 Starter pigs, 414  
 Staunch, 370  
 Stay apparatus, 382  
 Steatitis, 369  
 Steers, 100  
 Stenosis, 128, 168  
 Stenotic nares, 196  
 Stents, 177  
 Sterility, 254  
 Sterilize, 355  
 Sternal recumbency, 22, 23*f*  
 Sternum, 47  
 Steroids, 228  
 Stetho- prefix, 168  
 Stethoscopes, 167–168, 192, 332*f*  
 Stifle joint, 53, 76, 78, 80–83  
 Stifled, 388, 389*f*  
 Stimulus/stimuli, 231, 268  
 Stocking, 383*f*, 384  
 Stomach, overview, 112–116  
 Stomas, 130, 197  
 Stomatitis, 128  
 Stomat/o combining form, 29*t*  
 -Stomy suffix, 4  
 Strabismus, 297  
 Strangles, 388  
 Stranguria, 147*t*  
 Stratification, skin, 204–205  
 Stratified squamous epithelial tissue, 25*f*  
 Stratum basale, 205*t*

- Stratum corneum, 205*t*  
 Stratum germinativum, 205*t*  
 Stratum granulosum, 205*t*  
 Stratum lucidum, 205*t*  
 Stratum spinosum, 205*t*  
 Streak canal, 247, 399  
 Streptococci, 338*t*  
*Streptococcus suis*, 415  
 Strictures, 150  
 Stride, 381  
 Stridor, 192  
 Strike, 387  
 Strip, 384  
 Strip cup, 400  
 Stripe, 383*f*, 384  
 Stroma, 190, 290  
 Structural suffixes, 5  
 Studs, 98, 100, 370  
 Stupor, 276  
 Sub- prefix, 2*t*–3*t*, 269  
 Subarachnoid space, 269  
 Subclavian artery, 169  
 Subclinical, 339  
 Subcutaneous (SC or SQ or subq), 354  
 Subcutaneous layer, 205  
 Subdural hematoma, 278  
 Subdural space, 268–269  
 Sublingual, 2*t*, 354  
 Sublingual salivary glands, 110  
 Subluxation, 58, 59*f*  
 Subq (subcutaneous), 354  
 Suction, 357  
 Sudoriferous glands, 206  
 Suffixes, *See also names of specific suffixes*, 2, 4–5  
 Sulc/o combining form, 270  
 Sulcus, 54  
 Sulcus/sulci, 270  
 Super- prefix, 2*t*–3*t*  
 Superficial, 18*t*  
 Superior, 18*t*  
 Supernumerary, 2*t*, 254  
 Supernumerary teats, 400  
 Supination, 22  
 Supinator muscles, 64  
 Supine, 22  
 Supplemental air, 192*t*  
 Supplements, 401  
 Suppressor T cells, 322  
 Supra- prefix, 2*t*–3*t*, 228  
 Suprarenal glands, 228  
 Suprascapular, 2*t*  
 Supraspinatus muscles, 64  
 Surface lesions, 214*f*  
 Surface terminology, 18*t*, 19*f*  
 Surfactant, 190  
 Surgery, defined, 355  
 Surgical clips, 361  
 Surgical excision, 325  
 Surgical suffixes, 4  
 Surgical terminology approaches, 360  
 basic, 355–357  
 biopsies, 360–361  
 equipment, 357–360  
 needles and sutures, 361  
 Susceptible, 339  
 Suspended cage, 440*t*  
 Suspension, 381  
 Sutures, 43, 54, 356*f*, 357, 361  
 Swaged needles, 361  
 Swayback, 56  
 Sweat glands, 206  
 Sweeney, 388, 389*f*  
 Sweetfeed, 401  
 Swine, 81–82, 99. *See also* Pigs  
 Swine influenza, 415  
 Swing, 381  
 Switch, 78  
 Switches, 398  
 Swollen, 339  
 Swollen glands, 323  
 Sympathetic nervous system, 275  
 Symphysis, 43  
 Symptoms, 337*t*  
 Syn- prefix, 63  
 Synapses, 266, 267*f*  
 Synaps/o combining form, 266  
 Synapt/o combining form, 266  
 Synarthroses, 43, 45*f*  
 Syncope, 166, 280  
 Syndromes, 337*t*  
 Synechia, 297  
 Synergists, 63  
 Synovial joints, 43  
 Synovial membrane and fluid, 45  
 Synovi/o combining form, 45  
 Synovitis, 58  
 Synthetic, 230  
 Syrinx, 189, 422  
 Systole, 165–166  
 Systolic pressure, 170
- ## T
- T (thoracic), 274  
 T lymphocytes (T cells), 320–321  
 T<sub>3</sub> (triiodothyronine), 228  
 T<sub>4</sub> (thyroxine), 228  
 Tabbies, 369  
 Tachycardia, 166  
 Tachypnea, 192  
 Tack, 384  
 Tactile hair, 207  
 Tactile perception, 205  
 Tagging, 402  
 Tail autotomy, 453  
 Tail heads, 76, 78, 80–81  
 Tail jacks, 398  
 Tailing, 398  
 Tails  
 of cattle, 78  
 of dogs and cats, 83  
 of goats, 80  
 of horses, 76  
 of swine, 82  
 Talus, 53  
 Tankage, 398  
 Taper needles, 361  
 Tapetum lucidum, 291  
 Tapetum nigrum, 291  
 Tapeworm eggs, 123*f*  
 Target organs, 225  
 Tarsal plate, 290  
 Tarsotomy, 298  
 Tars/o combining form, 290  
 Tarsorrhaphy, 297–298  
 Tarsotomy, 297  
 Tarsus, 53, 83  
 Tartar, 124  
 Tattoos, 398  
 Tease, 387  
 Teaser, 387  
 Teaser bulls, 100, 397  
 Teat canal, 247, 399  
 Teat cannula, 400  
 Teat cistern, 400  
 Teat cups, 400*f*  
 Teat dipping, 400  
 Teat stripping, 401  
 Teats, 76, 78, 80–81, 247, 400  
 Teeth surfaces, 20, 21*f*  
 Telencephalon, 271*f*, 272*t*  
 Temperament, 370  
 Temporal bones, 46  
 Temporal lobe, 270  
 Tendinitis, 66  
 Tendin/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Tend/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Tendons, 44–45, 61–62, 63*f*  
 Tenectomy, 66  
 Tenesmus, 128  
 Teniae, 117, 119*f*  
 Ten/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Tenotomy, 66  
 Tensi/o combining form, 170  
 Teratogens, 253  
 Teratology, 440*t*  
 Teres muscles, 64  
 Terminology. *See also* Anatomical terminology; Pharmacologic terminology; Surgical terminology  
 analysis, 5  
 anatomy of, 2–3  
 basic medical, 337  
 breed-related, for dogs and cats, 369–370  
 cavities, 20–22  
 cells, 22  
 combining forms, 3  
 combining vowels, 3  
 directional, 18*t*, 19*f*, 20  
 feeding-related, 401  
 fractures, 58–59  
 genetics, 22, 25  
 mouth, 20  
 movement, 22

- Terminology. *See also* Anatomical terminology; Pharmacologic terminology; Surgical terminology (*continued*)
- overview, 1
  - planes, 18–19
  - positional, 17–18
  - prefixes, 3, 27, 30
  - pronunciation, 5–6
  - recumbency, 22
  - spelling, 6
  - suffixes, 4–5
  - tissues, 25–29
- Tertiary bronchi, 190
- Tertiary feathers, 424
- Test group, 441*t*
- Testes, 226*f*, 230, 242–243
- Testicular arteries, 169
- Testicul/o combining form, 30*t*, 242
- Testitis, 253
- Test/o combining form, 242
- Testosterone, 230
- Tests. *See* Diagnostic procedures; Examinations
- Tetanus, 389, 405
- Tetany, 66
- Tetralogy of Fallot, 177
- Tetraplegia, 280
- TGE (transmissible gastroenteritis), 415
- Thalamus, 269*f*, 270*f*
- Thel/o combining form, 25
- Therapy suffix, 4
- Theri/o combining form, 241
- Theriogenology, 241
- Thigh bone, 52–53
- Third eyelid, 291
- Thoracentesis, 194
- Thoracic (T), 274
- Thoracic cavity, 20, 47, 162, 191*f*
- Thoracic inlet, 190
- Thoracic radiographs, 194*f*
- Thoracic vertebrae, 48*f*–49*f*
- Thorac/o combining form, 190
- Thoracocentesis, 193–194
- Thoracotomy, 197
- Thorax, 20, 190–191
- Thorax suffix, 190
- Thorough, defined, 370
- Thoroughpin, 388
- Three quartered, 401
- Thrill, 168
- Throat, of birds, 425
- Throatlatch, 384
- Thromb/o combining form, 313
- Thrombocytes, 312*f*, 316
- Thrombocytopenia, 317
- Thrombocytosis, 317
- Thrombosis, 177
- Thrombus, 177
- Throughpin, 389*f*
- Throwback, 370
- Thymectomy, 232, 323
- Thym/o combining form, 29*t*, 230, 320
- Thymoma, 232
- Thymosin, 230
- Thymus, 226*f*, 229–230, 320
- Thyr/o combining form, 30*t*
- Thyroid gland, 226*f*, 228
- Thyroid stimulation tests, 230
- Thyroidectomy, 232
- Thyroiditis, 232
- Thyroid/o combining form, 30*t*
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 227
- Thyromegaly, 232
- Thyrototoxicosis, 232
- Thyroxine (T<sub>4</sub>), 228
- Tibia, 53, 56*f*
- Tic suffix, 4
- Ticked coat, 369
- Ticking, 370
- Tidal volume, 192*t*
- Tie stalls, 398
- Tieing, 250
- Timid, 371
- Tipping, 402
- Tissue, overview, 25–29
- Tissue cultures, 211
- Tissue forceps, 360
- Toe crack, 388, 389*f*
- Toes, 76, 78, 80–81
- Tomography, 342
- Toms, 98
- Tomy suffix, 4
- Tongue, 106
- Ton/o combining form, 63
- Tonometry, 294
- Tonsillectomy, 323
- Tonsillitis, 323
- Tonsill/o combining form, 29*t*, 188, 318
- Tonsils, 188, 318
- Tonus, 63
- Tooth floats, 130*f*
- Topcoat, 207
- Topical anesthesia, 280
- Torsions, 128
- Torticollis, 450, 451*f*
- Tortoiseshell, 370
- Torus/tori, 207
- Touch preps, 324
- Tourniquet, 171
- Toxic/o combining form, 232
- Trachea, 190, 226*f*
- Tracheal bifurcation, 190
- Tracheal washes, 194
- Tracheitis, 196
- Trache/o combining form, 29*t*, 190
- Tracheobronchitis, 196
- Tracheoplasty, 197
- Tracheostomy, 197
- Tracheotomy, 197
- Tracts, 268
- Trans- prefix, 3*t*
- Transdermal, 354
- Transect, 357
- Transfix, 357
- Transfusions, 177
- Transgenic, 441*t*
- Transluminal angioplasty, 177
- Transmissible, 339
- Transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE), 415
- Transmissible venereal tumors, 254–255
- Transmission, 339
- Transplants, 357
- Transtracheal washes, 194
- Transudate, 317
- Transverse fractures, 59
- Transverse muscles, 64
- Transverse part of colon, 119
- Transverse plane, 19
- Transverse presentation, 252
- Transverse processes, 47
- Trappy, 381
- Traumatic, 2*t*, 339
- Traumatic reticuloperitonitis, 398
- Tremors, 280
- Trephination, 61, 194
- Trephine, 61
- Triadan system, 107, 109
- Triceps, 64
- Trich/o combining form, 128
- Trichobezoars, 128
- Tricuspid valve, 163
- Trigeminal nerve (CN V), 273*f*, 273*t*
- Triglyceride, 313
- Trigone, 144
- Triiodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>), 228
- Trimming hooves, 385*f*
- Tripsy suffix, 151
- Trocarization, 131
- Trocars, 339
- Trochanters, 53–54
- Trochlear nerve (CN IV), 273*f*, 273*t*
- Trochleas, 54
- Trochoid joints, 43–44
- Trophy suffix, 25
- Tropia suffix, 297
- Tropic suffix, 227
- Trot, 380*f*, 381
- Trypsin, 120
- TSH (thyroid-stimulating hormone), 227
- Tubercles, 54
- Tuberculosis testing, 210*f*
- Tuberosities, 54
- Tumors, 27, 323–325
- Turbid urine, 145
- Turgor, 353
- Turkeys, 98, 427*f*
- Tush, 382
- Tusks, 110, 412
- Tuss/i combining form, 196
- Twins, 250
- Twitch, 386*f*, 387
- Tympanic bullae, 298
- Tympanic canal, 300
- Tympanic membrane, 298
- Tympan/o combining form, 298

## U

Udders  
     cross section of cranial view, 248*f*  
     defined, 76, 78, 80–81, 247, 401  
     parts of, 399*f*  
 Ulcerative keratitis, 297*f*  
 Ulcers, 128, 214*f*, 217  
 Ulna, 44*f*, 50, 55*f*  
 Ultra- prefix, 3*t*  
 Ultrasound, 122, 253, 343  
 -Um suffix, 5  
 Umbilical cord, 249  
 Umbilic/o combining form, 250  
 Umbilicus, 21, 22*f*, 249  
 Undercoat, 207  
 Underfur, 371  
 Undescended testicles, 253  
 Ungulates, 51, 208  
 Ungul/o combining form, 209  
 Unilateral, 27  
 Unsoundness, 388  
 Unthrifty, 371  
 Upper GI, 341  
 Upper respiratory infection (URI), 196  
 Upper respiratory tract, 186–189  
 Urea, 141  
 Uremia, 150  
 Ureter, 144  
 Ureterectasis, 150  
 Ureterectomy, 151  
 Ureter/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Ureteroliths, 150  
 Ureteroplasty, 151  
 Ureters, 6  
 Urethra, 6, 145, 244  
 Urethral meatus, 145  
 Urethral orifice, 247  
 Urethritis, 150  
 Urethr/o combining form, 29*t*, 244  
 Urethrostenosis, 150  
 Urethrostomy, 151  
 URI (upper respiratory infection), 196  
 Uria, 2*t*  
 Urinalysis, 4, 147  
 Urinary bladder, 144–145  
 Urinary catheterization, 147  
 Urinary retention, 150  
 Urinary system  
     bladder, 144–145  
     combining forms, 29*t*  
     diagnostic procedures, 145–148  
     functions of, 141  
     kidney, 142–144  
     pathology, 148–150  
     procedures, 150–151  
     ureters, 144  
     urethra, 145  
     urine, 145  
 Urinary tract infection (UTI), 150  
 Urination, 144  
 Urine, 142, 145, 147*t*  
 Urine test strips, 148*t*

Urin/o combining form, 141  
 Ur/o combining form, 141  
 Urobilinogen tests, 148*t*  
 Urodeum, 425  
 Urogenital system, 425–426  
 Uroliths, 150  
 Uropoiesis, 145  
 Uropygial gland, 424  
 Urostyle, 453  
 Urticaria, 217  
 Uterine, 4  
 Uterine involution, 252  
 Uterine prolapse, 255  
 Uterine tubes, 246  
 Uter/o combining form, 30*t*, 246  
 Uterus, 246–247, 426  
 UTI (urinary tract infection), 150  
 Utricle, 300  
 Uvea, 292  
 Uveitis, 297

## V

Vaccinations  
     defined, 323  
     of dogs and cats, 371  
     of pigs, 414–415  
     of ruminants, 404–405  
 Vaccines, 323  
 Vacuoles, 24*f*  
 Vagina, 247  
 Vaginal orifice, 247  
 Vaginal prolapse, 255, 256*f*, 426  
 Vaginitis, 255  
 Vagin/o combining form, 247  
 Vagus nerve (CN X), 273*f*, 273*t*  
 Valgus, 59  
 Vallate, 106  
 Valves, heart, 163–165  
 Valv/o combining form, 163  
 Valvotomy, 177  
 Valvul/o combining form, 163  
 Varus, 59  
 Vasculitis, 177  
 Vasectomy, 257  
 Vas/o combining form, 168, 228  
 Vasoconstrictors, 168  
 Vasodilators, 168  
 Vasopressin, 228  
 Vasopressors, 229  
 Vastus muscles, 64  
 Veal, 398  
 Vector, 441*t*  
 Veins, 162, 169–170, 171*f*  
 Velocity, 343  
 Velvet, 209  
 Venipuncture, 333  
 Ven/o combining form, 29*t*  
 Vent, 425  
 Ventilation, 185  
 Ventral, 18*t*, 20  
 Ventral midline incision, 360, 361*f*  
 Ventral punctum, 291  
 Ventral recumbency, 22, 23*f*  
 Ventral root, 274  
 Ventricles, 162, 270, 271*f*  
 Ventricular septal defect (VSD), 177  
 Ventricular systole, 165  
 Ventricul/o combining form, 162  
 Ventriculus, 425  
 Ventrodorsal projection, 341*t*  
 Venules, 169  
 Vermis, 270  
 Verrucae, 217  
 Vertebrae, 47  
 Vertebral column, 47, 49*f*  
 Vertebral foramen, 47  
 Vertebral formulas, 47  
 Vertebral regions, 49*t*  
 Vertebr/o combining form, 47  
 Vertical transmission, 441*t*  
 Vertigo, 303  
 Vesicle, 214*f*, 217  
 Vesicular glands, 244  
 Vesicular sounds, 192  
 Vestibular canal, 300  
 Vestibular disease, 280  
 Vestibular glands, 247  
 Vestibular surfaces, 20  
 Vestibule, 186, 298  
 Vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII), 273*f*, 273*t*  
 Vestigial, 441*t*  
 Vestigial clavicle, 50  
 Vestigial structures, 209–210  
 Viable fetus, 251  
 Vibriosis, 405  
 Vibrissae, 207  
 Vicuna, 100  
 Vigor, 371  
 Vill/i combining form, 121  
 Villus/villi, 120  
 Virulence, 337  
 Viruses, 338*t*  
 Visceral layer, 162  
 Visceral peritoneum, 21, 112  
 Visceral pleura, 191  
 Viscosity, 170  
 Vision, 293. *See also* Eyes  
 Vital capacity, 192*t*  
 Vital signs, normal, 332*f*  
 Vitre/o combining form, 293  
 Vitreous chamber, 293  
 Vitreous floaters, 296  
 Vitreous humor, 293  
 Viviparous, 252  
 Vocal cords, 189  
 Voice box, 189  
 Voiding, 144  
 Volume, lung, 192*t*  
 Volvulus, 128, 129*f*  
 Vomer, 47  
 Vomitus, 125  
 Vowels  
     combining, 3  
     pronunciations, 6

VSD (ventricular septal defect), 177  
Vulva, 247  
Vulv/o combining form, 247

## W

Walk, 380*f*, 381  
Wallow, 412  
Walls  
    heart, 162  
    nail/hoof, 207–208  
Wattle, 80, 403, 424  
Wavelength, 343  
Waxed teats, 382, 387  
Waxing, 387  
WBCs (white blood cells), 312*f*,  
    313–316  
Wean, 398  
Weanlings, 99  
Weights, 355  
Well-circumscribed, 323  
West Nile virus (WNV), 389  
Western, 381  
Western saddles, 387*f*  
Wet mares, 99  
Wethers, 100  
Wheal, 214*f*, 217  
Wheezes, 192  
Whelping, 98  
Whelps, 98  
Whipworm eggs, 123*f*  
White blood cells (WBCs), 312*f*,  
    313–316  
White cell count, 334*t*  
White line, 76  
White matter, 267, 275*f*  
White of eye, 291  
Wicking, 357  
Windbreaks, 398  
Windpipe, 190  
Windsuckers, 253  
Wings, 428*f*  
Winking, 382  
Withers, 76, 80

WNV (West Nile virus), 389  
Wobbler's syndrome, 277  
Wolf teeth, 110, 382  
Wrist, 50  
Wry neck, 450

## X

Xiphoid process, 47

## Y

Yearlings, 99–100  
Yeast, 338*t*  
Yellow bone marrow, 43  
Yolk, 427

## Z

Zoonosis, 339  
Zygomatic bones, 46  
Zygomatic salivary glands, 110  
Zygon, 170  
Zygotes, 250







